This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

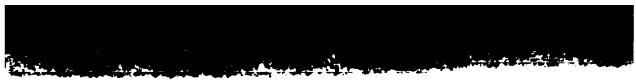
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

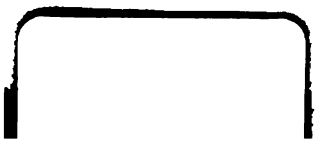
+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`



1978



THE

MISCELLANEOUS DOCUMENTS

OF THE

HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES

FOR THE

FIRST SESSION OF THE FIFTY-SECOND CONGRESS,

1891-'92.

IN FIFTY-THREE VOLUMES.

WASHINGTON:
GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE.
1892.

LELAND STANFORD JUNIOR
LIBRARY
UNIVERSITY.
A. 18623.

INDEX TO HOUSE MISCELLANEOUS DOCUMENTS.

CONTENTS OF THE VOLUMES.

Vol. 1..Nos. 1 to 335 inclusive, except Nos. 11 to 26, 48, 50, 60, 77, 107, 141, 153, 154, 233, 234, 256, 258, 261, 295, 296, 320, and 334.
Vol. 2..No. 11.
Vol. 3..No. 12.
Vol. 4..No. 13, part 1.
Vol. 5..N. 13, part 2.
Vol. 6..No. 13, part 3.
Vol. 7..No. 13, part 4,
Vol. 8..No. 14, part 1.
Vol. 9..No. 14, part 2.
Vol. 10..No. 15, part 1.
Vol. 11..No. 15, part 2.
Vol. 12..No. 15, part 3.
Vol. 13..No. 16, part 1.
Vol. 14..No. 16, part 2.
Vol. 15..Nos. 17 and 18.
Vol. 16..Nos. 19 and 20.
Vol. 17..Nos. 21 and 22.
Vol. 18..No. 23.
Vol. 19..No. 24.
Vol. 20..Nos. 25 and 336.
Vol. 21..No. 26.
Vol. 22..No. 48, part 1.
Vol. 23..No. 48, part 2.
Vol. 24..No. 48, part 3.
Vol. 25..No. 48, part 4.
Vol. 26..No. 48, part 5.
Vol. 27..No. 50, part 1.
Vol. 28..No. 50, part 2.
Vol. 29..No. 60.
Vol. 30..No. 77.
Vol. 31..No. 107.
Vol. 32..Nos. 141, 234, and 320.
Vol. 33..No. 153.
Vol. 34..No. 154.
Vol. 35..No. 233, part 1.
Vol. 36..No. 233, part 2.
Vol. 37..No. 233, part 3.
Vol. 38..No. 256.
Vol. 39..No. 258.
Vol. 40..No261.
Vol. 41..No. 295.
Vol. 42..No. 296.
Vol. 43..No. 334, part 1.
Vol. 44..No. 334, part 2.
Vol. 45..No. 337.
Vol. 46..No. 338, part 1.
Vol. 47..No. 338, part 2.
Vol. 48..No. 338, part 3.
Vol. 49..No. 339.
Vol. 50..No. 340.
Vol. 51..No. 341.
Vol. 52..No. 342.
Vol. 53..No. 343.

Subject.	No.	Vol.
Abernathy, I. T., estate of, report of Court of Claims	200	1
Agriculture, resolution for Committee on Agriculture to report effect of tariff on	73	1
Alabama, resolution to investigate violation of civil-service law in	304	1
Albes, Conrad H., and E. August, referred to Court of Claims	158	1
Allen, Darling, report of Court of Claims	46	1
Allen, L. D., referred to Court of Claims	118	1
report of Court of Claims	192	1
Allen, Martha A., administratrix, referred to Court of Claims	116	1
Alexander, Malinda, referred to Court of Claims	158	1
Anacostia and Potomac River Railroad Company, annual report of	221	1
Anderson, A. E., referred to Court of Claims	119	1
Anderson, David B., report of Court of Claims	45	1
Anderson, James C. (estate of) referred to Court of Claims	214	1
Anderson, Mary H., widow of Hiram, referred to Court of Claims	224	1
Anderson, Mary S., report of Court of Claims	61	1
Andes, Abraham, referred to Court of Claims	139	1
Applewhite, A. M., administrator, report of Court of Claims	105	1
Armelin, Charles, estate of, referred to Court of Claims	150	1
Armistead, Vincent, referred to Court of Claims	210	1
Ash, John, report of Court of Claims	72	1
Astronomical observations, report for 1887	11	2
Atlanta, Ga., St. Phillip's Church, referred to Court of Claims	129	1
Attorney-General: Resolution of request for information relative to prosecution of the sugar trust	215	1
Avery, John, estate of, referred to Court of Claims	209	1
Ayres, Asa B., referred to Court of Claims	225	1
Badeaux, Ulger V., referred to Court of Claims	40	1
Badley, Nannie A., administratrix, report of Court of Claims	30	1
Bailey, John C., report of Court of Claims	33	1
Baker, Sarah K. L., report of Court of Claims	79	1
Balmer, Charles, report of Court of Claims		1
Baltimore, Md., resolution to investigate civil-service violations at	289	1
Balzer, Gustavus A., report of Court of Claims	308	1
Bancroft, Charlotte C., estate of, report of Court of Claims	40	1
Banks, Charles, referred to Court of Claims	180	1
Barnum, Thomas, report of Court of Claims	298	1
Barker, L. A., estate of, report of Court of Claims	257	1

Subject.	No.	Vol.
Bass, Giles W., referred to Court of Claims	120	1
Bates, J. K., estate of, report of Court of Claims	252	1
Baudry, Omer, referred to Court of Claims	236	1
Baugh, William, referred to Court of Claims	210	1
Baynard, Joseph S., referred to Court of Claims	299	1
Beard, I. B., referred to Court of Claims	81	1
Beck, John, report of Court of Claims	72	1
Beckham, William R., referred to Court of Claims	210	1
Beeler, David, report of Court of Claims	314	1
Beezley, Charles F., administrator, report of Court of Claims	265	1
Belcher, D. P., report of Court of Claims	92	1
Bell, Josiah L., referred to Court of Claims	239	1
Bell, Mary A., referred to Court of Claims	129	1
Bennett, Jesse, referred to Court of Claims	158	1
Betsey (schooner), report of Court of Claims	167	1
Bibb, E. C., report of Court of Claims	100	1
Biggers, R. P., estate of, report of Court of Claims	253	1
Biggers, S. E., administrator, report of Court of Claims	253	1
Billingslea, Walter R., referred to Court of Claims	119	1
Birchett, William G., referred to Court of Claims	303	1
Bishop, Clarissa, referred to Court of Claims	225	1
Black, Joseph, referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Black, L. E., referred to Court of Claims	214	1
Blackford, William T., report of Court of Claims	173	1
Blackistone, R. P., referred to Court of Claims	223	1
Blasdell, Cobb & Co., referred to Court of Claims	91	1
Bloom, Henrietta Y., referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Blosser, Joseph, referred to Court of Claims	139	1
Bolling, Rebecca L., administratrix, report of Court of Claims	40	1
Booth, M. A., referred to Court of Claims	128	1
Botto, Luigi, report of Court of Claims	323	1
Bourke, Capt. John G., U. S. Army, referred to Court of Claims	189	1
Bowling, John, heirs of, referred to Court of Claims	260	1
Bradford, Samuel, estate of, referred to Court of Claims	158	1
Branch, Jesse L., referred to Court of Claims	216	1
Brandt, Jesse L., referred to Court of Claims	211	1
Breaux, Pierre, referred to Court of Claims	150	1
Brewer, Elvy, referred to Court of Claims	126	1
Briant, Mrs. E. H., referred to Court of Claims	150	1
Bridges, Sarah E., referred to Court of Claims	130	1
Brown, A. M., referred to Court of Claims	216	1
Brown, Florence A., administratrix, referred to Court of Claims	170	1
Brown, S. W., report of Court of Claims	132	1
Brown, Susan, report of Court of Claims	72	1
Brown, Thomas, referred to Court of Claims	120	1
Brown, Thomas J., referred to Court of Claims	176	1
Bruen, John T., report of Court of Claims	160	1
Buckey, Mary E., referred to Court of Claims	136	1
Buckholder, Martin, administrator, referred to Court of Claims	139	1
Bureau of Ethnology, seventh annual report of	107	31
eighth annual report of	295	41
Bureau of Labor, statement of expenditures by Commissioner of, for fiscal year 1891	27	1
Burke, Hannah, referred to Court of Claims	303	1
Burton, Sarah, report of Court of Claims	306	1
Butler, Philip T., referred to Court of Claims	140	1
Butt, William, referred to Court of Claims	158	1
California, resolution to investigate relative to forest reservations in	333	1
Caldwell, C. C., referred to Court of Claims	246	1
Caldwell, John R., referred to Court of Claims	120	1
Calliope (brig), report of Court of Claims	187	1
Campbell, J. M., referred to Court of Claims	211	1

Subject.	No.	Vol.
Cannon, Jane W., report of Court of Claims	40	1
Capers, Francis T., referred to Court of Claims	299	1
Capital, North O, and South Washington Railway Company, annual report of	54	1
Carl, David and Barbette, referred to Court of Claims	236	1
Caroline (brig), report of Court of Claims	177	1
Carothers, Hugh, report of Court of Claims	40	1
Carpenter, George, referred to Court of Claims	120	1
Carpenter, S. L., report of Court of Claims	285	1
Carr, Rogers & Co., referred to Court of Claims	146	1
Carr, William A., report of Court of Claims	36	1
Carter, Alfred B., referred to Court of Claims	82	1
Carter, Thomas, report of Court of Claims	159	1
Cash, B. F., estate of, report of Court of Claims	191	1
Cate, H. T., report of Court of Claims	272	1
Cattle on Cherokee lands, resolution to investigate	331	1
Census, final reports of the Eleventh	340	50
Census Bureau, resolution relative to a permanent	184	1
resolution to investigate workings of	194	1
	328	1
Charlotte (scow), report of Court of Claims	229	1
Chavis, Preston, report of Court of Claims	46	1
Cheairs, Calvin, report of Court of Claims	249	1
Check, Mrs. Nelson, referred to Court of Claims	140	1
Cheek, R. T., referred to Court of Claims	118	1
Cherokee lands, resolution relative to grazing of cattle on, in violation of law	331	1
Chester, Lester P., referred to Court of Claims	220	1
Choctaw and Chickasaw Indians, resolution relative to payment for their interest in certain reservations	275	1
Christy, John, & Co., referred to Court of Claims	91	1
Chum, A. B., referred to Court of Claims	121	1
Civil service, resolutions to investigate violations of: Alabama	304	1
Baltimore	289	1
Civil Service Commission, response of, to resolution	270	1
Claims:		
private, report of Clerk of the House on indexes of	31	1
List of dismissed, by Court of Claims under Bowman act	276	1
List of judgments for, rendered in district and circuits courts	243	1
Clara Bell (steamer), referred to Court of Claims	201	1
Clark, J. A., report of Court of Claims	101	1
Clark, M. S., report of Court of Claims	313	1
Clement, C. R., report of Court of Claims	156	1
Clerk of the House of Representatives:		
Annual statement of expenditures from office, and payments to employés	4	1
Annual report on property in possession of	9	1
Report of, relative to completion of indexes of private claims	31	1
Letter of, transmitting list of contested-election cases	32	1
Letter of, relative to payments to session employés after July 6	327	1
Report on condition of contingent fund	161	1
Cleveland, Elizabeth J., referred to Court of Claims	216	1
Cobb, J. & O. P., & Co., referred to Court of Claims	91	1
Colbert County, Ala., La Grange College and Lafayette Female Seminary of	120	1
Cole, John S., administrator, report of Court of Claims	69	1
Cole, Mrs. S. M., referred to Court of Claims	138	1
Collard, Thaddeus, report of Court of Claims	42	1
Collier, William R., report of Court of Claims	185	1
Collins, Joseph, referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Columbian Exposition. (*See* World's Columbian Exposition)	68	1
Commissioner of Freedmen's Saving and Trust Company, annual report of	29	1

Subject.	No.	Vol.
Commissioner of Labor, letter of, with statement of expenditures in the Bureau of Labor for 1891	27	1
Committee on Accounts, resolution to designate committees to have clerks	39	1
Committees of the House, resolution for Committee on Accounts to designate clerks to	39	1
List of standing and select	2	1
Confidence (sloop), report of Court of Claims	203	1
Connell, Michael, referred to Court of Claims	140	1
Contingent fund. (*See* House of Representatives.)		
Consular reports:		
Vol. 35, Nos. 124–127	17	15
Vol. 36, Nos. 128–131	18	15
Vol. 37, Nos. 132–135	154	34
Vol. 38, Nos. 136–139	258	39
Vol. 39, Nos. 140–143	339	49
special report on refrigerators and food preservation in foreign countries	19	16
special report on streets and highways in foreign countries	20	16
special report on coal and coal consumption in South America	153	33
Contested elections, letter from Clerk of the House of Representatives transmitting list of cases	32	1
Cook, Jared R., referred to Court of Claims	119	1
Cooner, Mary A., referred to Court of Claims	158	1
Cordell, Lucy, report of Court of Claims	277	1
Cordill, Joseph, referred to Court of Claims	148	1
Coulson, H. H., report of Court of Claims	250	1
Court of Claims, response of, to House resolution	271	1
Courts of the United States, resolution to investigate illegal, etc., practices in connection with	329	1
Cowdon, J., memorial of, relative to Mississippi River Commission	188	1
Crabill, Joseph D., referred to Court of Claims	139	1
Crampton, Richard, referred to Court of Claims	158	1
Crampton, S. W., report of Court of Claims	316	1
Crenshaw, A. B., report of Court of Claims	58	1
Crews, Hamilton, referred to Court of Claims	89	1
Crews, William, report of Court of Claims	243	1
Crosby, William, referred to Court of Claims	138	1
Cross, Joel, referred to Court of Claims	129	1
Crow, William, referred to Court of Claims	127	1
Crum, B. L., estate of, referred to Court of Claims	116	1
Crum, Elizabeth, estate of, referred to Court of Claims	116	1
Culkin, Thomas, estate of, report of Court of Claims	293	1
Cummings, Phœbe, referred to Court of Claims	119	1
Cunningham, Rachel, referred to Court of Claims	158	1
Dalton, Mary V., administratrix, report of Court of Claims	235	1
Dasly, F. O., estate of, referred to Court of Claims	150	1
Davidson, Sarah A., report of Court of Claims	286	1
Davis, A. W., referred to Court of Claims	117	1
Davis, Alexander, report of Court of Claims	35	1
Davis, George W., report of the Court of Claims	242	1
Davis, Mrs. M. M., referred to Court of Claims	119	1
Davis, Marshall, referred to Court of Claims	118	1
De Bevoise, S. H., referred to Court of Claims	209	1
Debnam, Thomas R., referred to Court of Claims	130	1
Deems, Lewis, referred to Court of Claims	169	1
Deitrich, Emily, referred to Court of Claims	217	1
Delahoussaye, Sidonie, referred to Court of Claims	224	1
Delille, Jean, referred to Court of Claims	217	1
De Loach Claiborne, estate of, referred to Court of Claims	209	1
Dennis, Mary A., referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Dent, Warren R., referred to Court of Claims	86	1
Deslonde, Mrs. Frank, referred to Court of Claims	224	1
Desmane, Alphonse, referred to Court of Claims	225	1

Subject.	No.	Vol.
Deucatte, Odon, referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Dickens, Edward V., report of Court of Claims	40	1
Dickson, Emily C., referred to Court of Claims	158	1
Dieters, John, report of Court of Claims	326	1
District of Columbia, letter relative to electric lighting of Massachusetts avenue and Seventeenth street	62	1
Dixon, George O., report of Court of Claims	51	1
Doherty, M. A., referred to Court of Claims	119	1
Dolman, Jacob, refered to Court of Claims	139	1
Donato, Auguste, heirs of, referred to Court of Claims	83	1
Donato, Belote A., referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Doorkeeper of the House of Representatives:		
Report of sale of waste paper, etc	5	1
Report of property in possession of	8	1
Report on folding room	10	1
Dougherty, Mary A., referred to Court of Claims	118	1
Douglas, W. W., administrator, referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Dowdy, W. P., report of Court of Claims	46	1
Downey, Amelia, referred to Court of Claims	139	1
Downing, A. D., estate of, referred to Court of Claims	119	1
Doyle, Johanna, referred to Court of Claims	140	1
Duffy, Eugenia and W. B., referred to Court of Claims	148	1
Dulin, A. F., estate of, referred to Court of Claims	303	1
Dunlap, Joseph, report of Court of Claims	319	1
Duval, Sandy, referred to Court of Claims	139	1
East, Abner, report of Court of Claims	252	1
East, Washington, report of Court of Claims	222	1
Easterly, Isaac, referred to Court of Claims	216	1
Edwards, Emily, referred to Court of Claims	226	1
Edwards, W. W., referred to Court of Claims	225	1
Eight-hour law, resolution to investigate violations of	103	1
Eleventh Census, final reports of the	340	50
Elgin, J. H., report of Court of Claims	93	1
Eliza (ship), report of Court of Claims	204 255	1 1
Elliott, John R., referred to Court of Claims	236	1
Elgey, John, referred to Court of Claims	148	1
English, Valentine S., report of Court of Claims	283	1
Engs, Samuel F., referred to Court of Claims	115	1
Erquhart, C. Augusta, referred to Court of Claims	99	1
Ethnology, contributions to North American, vol. 7	26	21
Seventh Annual Report of Bureau of, 1885-'86	107	31
Eighth Annual Report of Bureau of	295	41
Eulogies on Hon. L. C. Houk	234	32
Hon. W. H. F. Lee	320	32
Ewell, Jane N., estate of, referred to Court of Claims	216	2
Faget, Emile, heirs of, referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Fairfax, John W., report of Court of Claims	145	1
Farley, John A., referred to Court of Claims	214	1
Farrell, Thomas, report of Court of Claims	132	1
Fawcett, Elkanah, report of Court of Claims	312	1
Febrey, John E., report of Court of Claims	152	1
Field, John A., referred to Court of Claims	124	1
Fish Commission, bulletins of (vol. x, 1890)	341	5
Fiske, Martha A., referred to Court of Claims	158	1
Filhiol, H., referred to Court of Claims	65	1
Flick, Catharine, referred to Court of Claims	139	1
Flowers, Elizabeth, referred to Court of Claims	130	1
Flowers, J. G., report of Court of Claims	46	1
Ford, R. L., report of Court of Claims	78	1
Forest reservations, resolution to investigate necessity of, and condition of, in California	333	1
Forgey, James, referred to Court of Claims	227	1

Subject.	No.	Vol.
Fraleix, Martin, referred to Court of Claims	129	1
Francis, Jean, sr., referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Franklin, J. B., referred to Court of Claims	211	1
Franklin, W. A., executor, report of Court of Claims	292	1
Frasuer, Eli, reference to Court of Claims	129	1
Freedman's Saving and Trust Company, annual report of commissioner of	29	1
Friendship (brig) report of Court of Claims	178	1
	321	1
Friendship (schooner) report of Court of Claims	321	1
Fromherz, Leopold, report of Court of Claims	293	1
Fuller, J. B., referred to Court of Claims	118	1
Fusilier, Corrinne Ferret, referred to Court of Claims	150	1
Gallagher, Charles, referred to Court of Claims	133	1
Gallagher, Dr. Thos., resolution to investigate conviction, etc., of	324	1
Gallott, Julia, referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Garrot, Pierre, referred to Court of Claims	236	1
Garett, W. F., referred to Court of Claims	216	1
Garrison, Silas M., referred to Court of Claims	158	1
Geological Survey;		
Bulletins of, 66 to 70	21	17
Bulletin of, 71	22	17
Bulletins of, 72 to 75	23	18
Bulletins of, 76 to 80	24	19
Bulletins of, 81 to 82	25	20
Bulletin of, 83	336	20
Bulletins of, 84 to 86	337	45
Monographs of, Vol. 17	60	29
Monographs of, Vol. 18	77	30
Monographs of, Vol. 19	342	52
Monographs of, Vol. 20	343	53
Georgetown Barge, Dock, Elevator and Railway Co., report of	55	1
Georgetown and Tenallytown Railway Company, letter from secretary transmitting list of stockholders of	57	1
Germania Safety, Vault and Trust Company, administrator, report of Court of Claims	182	1
Gibson, William F., report of Court of Claims	75	1
Gilbreath, Simeon, report of Court of Claims	42	1
Gilfoil, Patrick, referred to Court of Claims	148	1
Gillett, Theodore J., estate of, referred to Court of Claims	227	1
Gober, M. A., administrator, report of Court of Claims	200	1
Gomez, Edwin, referred to Court of Claims	98	1
Goodrich, A. E. and M. E., referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Gordon, R., administrator, report of Court of Claims	292	1
Gorman, George, estate of, report of Court of Claims	202	1
Gosehorn, Sarah, report of Court of Claims	63	1
Govan, J. J., referred to Court of Claims	127	1
Green, Edman, referred to Court of Claims	259	1
Green, S. E., administrator, report of Court of Claims	269	1
Greenhill, Thomas C., referred to Court of Claims	120	1
Grice, John, report of Court of Claims	74	1
Grimmett, Matthew N., referred to Court of Claims	210	1
Grisson, Sarah, referred to Court of Claims	123	1
Grow, ex-Speaker Galusha A., presentation of portrait, proceedings in House	141	1
Guidry, Lesant, heirs of, referred to Court of Claims	150	1
Gullory, Martin, referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Gunnell, Elizabeth, report of Court of Claims	74	1
Haigh, A. V., referred to Court of Claims	176	1
Haller, Jonathan, referred to Court of Claims	139	1
Hamilton, Elyisa, report of Court of Claims	40	1
Hammon, Jacob, referred to Court of Claims	139	1
Hancock, John W., report of Court of Claims	280	1
Hannah (schooner), report of Court of Claims	203	1

Subject.	No.	Vol.
Harding, Francis E., referred to Court of Claims	224	1
Hardman, J. B., report of Court of Claims	252	1
Hardwick, F. E., report of Court of Claims	144	1
Harvey, A. A., guardian, report of Court of Claims	200	1
Harvill, Mrs. L. J., referred to Court of Claims	121	1
Hathaway, John R., referred to Court of Claims	134	1
Hayes, Samuel, referred to Court of Claims	211	1
Hayman, Harry, report of Court of Claims	274	1
Haywood, Mrs. W. Dallas, referred to Court of Claims	130	1
Heard, James A., referred to Court of Claims	120	1
Hearrell, L. B., report of Court of Claims	49	1
Heberlein, August, estate of, referred to Court of Claims	219	1
Hebron, Adeline L., estate of, referred to Court of Claims	119	1
Henkel, Philip, referred to Court of Claims	198	1
Henry (schooner), report of Court of Claims	203	1
Henry (ship), report of Court of Claims	264	1
Herbert, S. B., report of Court of Claims	164	1
Hetty Jane (ship), report of Court of Claims	297	1
Hickman, M. T., referred to Court of Claims	217	1
Higgins, Richard, estate of, referred to Court of Claims	127	1
Hill, Alexander, referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Hill, Joseph A., referred to Court of Claims	128	1
Hiram (brig), report of Court of Claims	273	1
Hitty (ship), report of Court of Claims	247	1
Hobbs, Thomas, referred to Court of Claims	303	1
Holbrook, Julia, referred to Court of Claims	128	1
Holland, James L., estate of, referred to Court of Claims	210	1
Holsten Female College, referred to Court of Claims	211	1
Holt, C. G., administrator of, referred to Court of Claims	130	1
Holt, John M., referred to Court of Claims	216	1
Homestead, Pa.:		
Resolution relative to employment of Pinkerton detectives at	310	1
Evidence taken, in investigating labor troubles at	335	1
Hooper, William, estate of, referred to Court of Claims	66	1
Hoover, Benjamin, referred to Court of Claims	139	1
Hoover, James C., referred to Court of Claims	216	1
Hopper, W. A., administrator of, referred to Court of Claims	119	1
Hough, John H., report of Court of Claims	286	1
Hough, Robert, report of Court of Claims	286	1
Houk, Hon. L. C., eulogies on	234	32
House of Representatives:		
List of members by States	1	1
List of select and standing committees	2	1
List of members and the committees on which they serve	3	1
Report on resolution for Committee on Accounts to designate clerks for committees of	39	1
Rules of	67	1
Report of Clerk on condition of contingent fund	161	1
Letter from the Clerk relative to salary of session employés	327	1
Hubbard, Mary Jane, referred to Court of Claims	211	1
Hughes, William H., administrator, report of Court of Claims	38	1
Humboldt Female College, referred to Court of Claims	216	1
Hume, Isaac, referred to Court of Claims	139	1
Humphreys, J. H., report of Court of Claims	58	1
Hundley, William T., referred to Court of Claims	137	1
Hunt, Anna, administratrix, report of Court of Claims	40	1
Hunt, J. W., report of Court of Claims	222	1
Hurdle, Eunice, referred to Court of Claims	116	1
Hurdley, W. J., administrator, report of Court of Claims	252	1
Hurley, Stephen, report of Court of Claims	232	1
Idaho, resolution to investigate labor troubles in	330	1
Indian Territory, resolution to make inquiries looking to admission of, as State	325	1
Industrial Christian Home of Utah, report respecting operations of	103	1

Subject.	No.	Vol.
Izard, Florimond, referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Jane (schooner), report of Court of Claims	196	1
Jenkins, H. E., report of Court of Claims	267	1
Johnson, Joseph B., referred to Court of Claims	210	1
Jones, F A., administrator, report of Court of Claims	292	1
Jones, Francis S., estate of, referred to Court of Claims	121	1
Jones, Isaac and Thomas C., estate of, referred to Court of Claims	118	1
Jones, John, referred to Court of Claims	210	1
Jones, Dr. John H., referred to Court of Claims	116	1
Jones, Phillip M., administrator, report of Court of Claims	253	1
Jones, Philip R., estate of, report of Court of Claims	253	1
Jordan, R. D., guardian of heirs of, referred to Court of Claims	211	1
Juliana (vessel), report of Court of Claims	281	1
Kannell, John, report of Court of Claims	58	1
Kaylor, Daniel, referred to Court of Claims	216	1
Keating, Martin, referred to Court of Claims	155	1
Keaton, B. R., report of Court of Claims	269	1
Keigan, Mary E., referred to Court of Claims	84	1
Keithley, A. L., report of Court of Claims	101	1
Keithley, W. G., report of Court of Claims	101	1
Kelly, Peter, report of Court of Claims	78	1
Kennedy, Leonora J., referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Kergon, Thomas, referred to Court of Claims	88	1
Kerr, A. C., referred to Court of Claims	126	1
Kibler, Josiah and Jeremiah, referred to Court of Claims	139	1
Kimmons, William M., referred to Court of Claims	116	1
King, Thomas J., referred to Court of Claims	158	1
Kirkpatrick, M. R., report of Court of Claims	186	1
Knight, Elizabeth, referred to Court of Claims	158	1
Knight, Joseph, referred to Court of Claims	236	1
Knight, Joseph S., report of Court of Claims	40	1
Kouns, John, referred to Court of Claims	227	1
Labell, Charles, referred to Court of Claims	126	1
Labor, resolution to investigate sweating system of tenement house	71	1
evidence taken in troubles at Homestead, Pa	335	1
Lafferty, James, referred to Court of Claims	127	1
Lafleur, Ben. M., referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Lafleur, Jean Pierre, referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Lafleur, Marcelin, referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Lake, Daniel, referred to Court of Claims	179	1
Lam, James, estate of, referred to Court of Claims	138	1
Langley, Aaron, report of the Court of Claims	240	1
Lanier, J. C., estate of, report of Court of Claims	265	1
Lanier, N. B., referred to Court of Claims	119	1
La Rue, Mrs. Mary D., referred to Court of Claims	138	1
Lastrapres, Victor, referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Lauderdale, S. Elizabeth, referred to Court of Claims	158	1
Lawhead, William, administrator, referred to Court of Claims	81	1
Lawrence, L. J., referred to Court of Claims	214	1
Lazare, Jean Baptiste, estate of, referred to Court of Claims	83	1
Leake, Mary S., report of Court of Claims	40	1
Leduff, Alexis, referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Lee, Carter R. B., administrator, report of Court of Claims	40	1
Lee, J. C., report of Court of Claims	72	1
Lee, W. H. F., eulogies on	320	32
Leeds (packet ship), report of Court of Claims	273	1
Lefoldt, Julius, referred to Court of Claims	140	1
Legg, A. C., report of Court of Claims	94	1
Leiper, John, referred to Court of Claims	216	1
Lemell, E., referred to Court of Claims	217	1
Lemelle, Charles, estate of, referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Lemelle, Leon, referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Lemelle, Ludger, estate of, referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Lemelle, Rigabert, estate of, referred to Court of Claims	151	1

Subject.	No.	Vol.
Lement, Pierre, referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Lewallen, John Preston, administrator, report of Court of Claims	40	1
Lewis, Abner D., referred to Court of Claims	127	1
Lewis, Mary F., report of Court of Claims	44	1
Lides, David, estate of, referred to Court of Claims	158	1
Lillard, B., estate of, referred to Court of Claims	213	1
Lipscomb, James C., referred to Court of Claims	207	1
Litten, Julius B., referred to Court of Claims	210	1
Logan, Mary S., referred to Court of Claims	121	1
Long, Henry W., referred to Court of Claims	126	1
Long, William R., referred to Court of Claims	158	1
Lowe, Virginia, report of Court of Claims	64	1
Lowenberg, L. M., administrator, report of Court of Claims	293	1
Lucas, E. C., report of Court of Claims	247	1
Luchman, William, referred to Court of Claims	140	1
Lutz, Morris, referred to Court of Claims	139	1
Lynch, David, report of Court of Claims	59	1
McAllister, A. J., report of Court of Claims	132	1
McClintic, William, report of Court of Claims	132	1
McCown, J. I., report of Court of Claims	46	1
McDonald, William, report of Court of Claims	80	1
McGloughlin, Virginia, referred to Court of Claims	83	1
McGuffee, sr., G. V., referred to Court of Claims	86	1
McHenry, L. S., report of Court of Claims	163	1
McKenzie, D. W., report of Court of Claims	278	1
McLaughlin, Ammon, referred to Court of Claims	227	1
McLean, Louisa E., referred to Court of Claims	211	1
McLemord, Sarah L., administratrix, referred to Court of Claims	87	1
McMurtrey, John, referred to Court of Claims	210	1
McNeill, John C., referred to Court of Claims	130	1
Madden, Patrick, report of Court of Claims	232	1
Maddox, Margaret Virginia, referred to Court of Claims	162	1
Marklein, Charles, referred to Court of Claims	106	1
Marshall, Saline County, Mo., Christian Church of, referred to Court of Claims	183	1
Martha (sloop), report of Court of Claims	195	1
Martin, Cyrus, referred to Court of Claims	109	1
Martin, Emily R., estate of, report of Court of Claims	40	1
Martin, John J., referred to Court of Claims	217	1
Mary (sloop), report of Court of Claims	203	1
Mastick, Henry, report of Court of Claims	166	1
Mathews, Harvey, administrator, report of Court of Claims	191	1
Matlock, E. S., estate of, referred to Court of Claims	116	1
Maxwell land grant, resolution relative to alleged conspiracy in connection with	311	1
Mayse, Richard, report of Court of Claims	190	1
Meaher, Timothy, administrator of, referred to Court of Claims	121	1
Meeha, Catharine Barry, referred to Court of Claims	90	1
Members of the House of Representatives:		
List of, by States	1	1
List of select and standing committees	2	1
List of, (alphabetical) and committees on which they serve	3	1
Menillion, Francis, referred to Court of Claims	83	1
Menillon, A. D., estate of, report of Court of Claims	254	1
Menillon, Alphonse, referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Menillon, Alphonse, administrator, report of Court of Claims	254	1
Menillon, Lucien, referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Mercer, Furneyfold, report of Court of Claims	42	1
Metropolitan Railroad Company, annual statement of	53	1
Middlekauff, John C., report of Court of Claims	37	1
Miles, William T., referred to Court of Claims	181	1
Miller, David, report of Court of Claims	76	1
Miller, J. F., report of Court of Claims	72	1
Miller, J. M., report of Court of Claims	279	1

Subject.	No.	Vol.
Milley, S. B., administrator, referred to Court of Claims	139	1
Mineral resources, report on	296	42
Mississippi River Commission, memorial of John Cowdon relative to	188	1
Mitchell, James A., referred to Court of Claims	126	1
Mitchell, Thomas R., and R. T., report of Court of Claims	283	1
Monahan, Mary E., referred to Court of Claims	81	1
Montgomery, Hugh, referred to Court of Claims	217	1
Montgomery, Olivia F., referred to Court of Claims	86	1
Moore, H. A., report of Court of Claims	317	1
Moore, Stativa, referred to Court of Claims	84	1
Moore, Stephen, administrator, referred to Court of Claims	66	1
Morat, F. Louis, report of Court of Claims	290	1
Morgan, Jesse B., referred to Court of Claims	158	1
Morgan, William S., referred to Court of Claims	158	1
Moseley, William, jr., referred to Court of Claims	300	1
Moyer, I. H., report of Court of Claims	305	1
Mulholland, John, Patrick, and Peter, report of Court of Claims	152	1
Mumma, H. C., report of Court of Claims	302	1
Munday, G. W., administrator, referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Murdock, William M., report of Court of Claims	40	1
Murphy, J. J., referred to Court of Claims	84	1
Murphy, James, referred to Court of Claims	119	1
Mussen, Buford, report of Court of Claims	199	1
Nancy (schooner), report of Court of Claims	167	1
Nancy (sloop), report of Court of Claims	112	1
Naval observations (1888)	256	38
Naval Observatory, report of observations from	11	2
Nazareth Literary and Benevolent Institution, report of Court of Claims	251	1
Neal, Rhoda, report of Court of Claims	248	1
Neal, W. H., estate of, referred to Court of Claims	214	1
Neck, George, sr., referred to Court of Claims	154	1
Neidlinger, C. V., report of Court of Claims	143	1
Nelson, John N., referred to Court of Claims	158	1
Nelson, Potter, report of Court of Claims	46	1
Neutrality (schooner), report of Court of Claims	321	1
Newcomer, Joshua, report of Court of Claims	266	1
Newlee, J. G., report of Court of Claims	46	1
New Orleans, La., Odd Fellows' Hall Association of, referred to Court of Claims	96	1
Newsom, Andrew J., estate of, report of Court of Claims	105	1
Nichols, Minerva J., and Frank D., executors, report of Court of Claims	34	1
Nicodemas, John and J. L., report of Court of Claims	72	1
Nixon, Henry C., referred to Court of Claims	130	1
Noland, Pearce, report of Court of Claims	268	1
Noland, William H., referred to Court of Claims	214	1
Norris, Nancy Jane, referred to Court of Claims	158	1
North American Ethnology, contributions to, vol. 7	26	21
Northrup, Charles, referred to Court of Claims	209	1
Oakley, E. C., administrator of, referred to Court of Claims	214	1
Official records of the war of the rebellion. (*See* War of the Rebellion.)		
Official Register (vol. 1), Legislative, Executive, Judicial	50	27
(vol. 2), Post-Office Department	50	28
Ogilvie, R. H., report of Court of Claims	206	1
Oglesby, L. S., referred to Court of Claims	238	1
Okolona, Miss., Independent Order of Odd Fellows of, referred to Court of Claims	118	1
Orendorff, Mary, report of Court of Claims	306	1
Orr, J. W., report of Court of Claims	307	1
Osborne, John, report of Court of Claims	332	1
O'Shea, P. T., referred to Court of Claims	119	1

Subject.	No.	Vol.
Ott, J. W., report of Court of Claims	132	1
Overton Hotel Company, referred to Court of Claims	85	1
Owens, W. B., report of Court of Claims	219	1
Paffinberger, Samuel, report of Court of Claims	294	1
Paillett, Hilliare, estate of, referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Pankey, James, report of Court of Claims	108	1
Pash, Benedict, report of Court of Claims	267	1
Parham, Richard H., administrator, report of Court of Claims	202	1
Parker, Rebecca V., referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Patterson, David K., referred to Court of Claims	118	1
Patrick, Marion, report of Court of Claims	46	1
Peeden, Martha J., administratrix, referred to Court of Claims	210	1
Pension laws, resolution to appoint members to codify, simplify, and arrange	318	1
Perry, O. H., administrator, report of Court of Claims	309	1
Peters, J. L., report of Court of Claims	95	1
Phillips, James B., referred to Court of Claims	245	1
Phœnix (schooner) report of Court of Claims	167	1
	177	1
Pinkerton detectives, resolution of inquiry relative to employment of, by corporations	310	1
Pipkin, H., administrator, report of Court of Claims	291	1
Pope, Daniel S., *et al.*, referred to Court of Claims	175	1
Porche, Louis V., referred to Court of Claims	236	1
Porche, J. A., report of Court of Claims	222	1
Powell, Sarah A., referred to Court of Claims	81	1
Prichard, Catharine M., referred to Court of Claims	97	1
Private claims, report of Clerk of the House relative to indexes of	31	1
Provine, W. G., administrator, report of Court of Claims	40	1
Pulliam, F. J., report of Court of Claims	262	1
Quarles, Mary, report of Court of Claims	46	1
Rabot, Jean Baptiste, referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Randall, ex-Speaker Samuel J., presentation of portrait, proceedings in House	141	1
Randolph, A. M., referred to Court of Claims	115	1
Rosetta (brig), report of Court of Claims	204	1
Rather, James, referred to Court of Claims	216	1
Records of the War of the Rebellion:		
Atlas to	261	40
Vol. 33	12	2
Vol. 34, part 1	13	4
Vol. 34, part 2	13	5
Vol. 34, part 3	13	6
Vol. 34, part 4	13	7
Vol. 35, part 1	14	8
Vol. 35, part 2	14	9
Vol. 36, part 1	15	10
Vol. 36, part 2	15	11
Vol. 36, part 3	15	12
Vol. 37, part 1	16	13
Vol. 37, part 2	16	14
Vol. 38, part 1	48	22
Vol. 38, part 2	48	23
Vol. 38, part 3	48	24
Vol. 38, part 4	48	25
Vol. 38, part 5	48	26
Vol. 39, part 1	233	35
Vol. 39, part 2	233	36
Vol. 39, part 3	233	37
Vol. 40, part 1	338	46
Vol. 40, part 2	338	47
Vol. 40, part 3	338	48
Redwine, J. A., report of Court of Claims	235	1

Subject.	No.	Vol.
Reeves, George W., estate of, report of Court of Claims	128	1
Repley, E. W., referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Restle. Leger, referred to Court of Claims	84	1
Rhodes, Frank, report of Court of Claims	142	1
Rice, J. W., estate of, report of Court of Claims	292	1
Rice, W. H., referred to Court of Claims	120	1
Richards, Alonzo H., referred to Court of Claims	158	1
Roach, Benj., estate of, referred to Court of Claims	86	1
Robertson, Anthony, referred to Court of Claims	139	1
Robinson, Jehu, report of Court of Claims	135	1
Roe, J. A., report of Court of Claims	46	1
Romine, Mary, J., referred to Court of Claims	158	1
Roy, Vienna, referred to Court of Claims	139	1
Royston, Aaron, report of Court of Claims	287	1
Rules of House of Representatives	67	1
Rutledge, Mary J., referred to Court of Claims	158	1
Rutledge. Nancy, referred to Court of Claims	158	1
Russell, Jacob H., report of Court of Claims	230	1
St. Philips Church, Atlanta, Ga., referred to Court of Claims	129	1
Sanders, John C., administrator, referred to Court of Claims	213	1
Sanders, Samuel R., referred to Court of Claims	158	1
Sanders, W. W., referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Sanford, Martha Ann, referred to Court of Claims	127	1
Saunders, Edwin E., estate of, referred to Court of Claims	227	1
Scanlan, Mrs. W. H., referred to Court of Claims	149	1
Schwartz, A. J., administrator, report of Court of Claims	40	1
Scott, John D., referred to Court of Claims	128	1
Scott, Samuel, referred to Court of Claims	119	1
Scott, Mrs. W. A., referred to Court of Claims	214	1
Scoville, W. S., referred to Court of Claims	227	1
Sears, Rebecca, report of Court of Claims	102	1
Secretary of the Treasury, resolution requesting, to obtain and report facts relating to State canals	174	1
Sergeant-at-Arms, report of disbursements	6	1
report on property in possession of	7	1
Sessions, Franklin, referred to Court of Claims	118	1
Shacklett, H. W., report of Court of Claims	70	1
Shadel, Henry A., heirs of, referred to Court of Claims	227	1
Sheely, Mrs. Ann, referred to Court of Claims	148	1
Sheetz, Samuel, referred to Court of Claims	139	1
Shehan, Patrick, report of Court of Claims	252	1
Shepherdess (schooner), report of Court of Claims	203	1
Shipp, F. G., report of Court of Claims	101	1
Shoemaker, A. C. P., report of Court of Claims	218	1
Shoemaker, David, report of Court of Claims	125	1
Short, Hatcher and Hiram, referred to Court of Claims	114	1
Sigur, John A., referred to Court of Claims	150	1
Simerley, Mary E., referred to Court of Claims	131	1
Simmons, H. S., estate of, referred to Court of Claims	211	1
Simmons, J. W., referred to Court of Claims	128	1
Simpson, Cassa, referred to Court of Claims	210	1
Singleton, H. C., estate of, referred to Court of Claims	216	1
Sisco, Mary, administratrix, report of Court of Claims	263	1
Slate, Sarah, report of Court of Claims	222	1
Sloan, William, report of Court of Claims	46	1
Smallwood, Howard F., referred to Court of Claims	136	1
Smith, A. J., referred to Court of Claims	121	1
Smith, Dudley D., heirs of, referred to Court of Claims	227	1
Smith, G. W., report of Court of Claims	122	1
Smith, James W., referred to Court of Claims	138	1
Smith, Nancy C., referred to Court of Claims	116	1
Smith, Vasti, referred to Court of Claims	130	1

Subject.	No.	Vol.
Smithsonian Institution, statement of Secretary of, on expenditures for fiscal year of 1891	28	1
Smithsonian Reports (1891), part 1	334	43
Smithsonian Reports (1891), part 2	334	44
Snyder, James A., executor, referred to Court of Claims	138	1
Snyder, John, report of Court of Claims	193	1
Solair, Fannie, referred to Court of Claims	148	1
Soutter, William R., referred to Court of Claims	165	1
Sparks, D. M., estate of, referred to Court of Claims	121	1
Spates, G. W., report of Court of Claims	193	1
Speakers Grow and Randall, presentation of portraits of	141	32
Speck, David, referred to Court of Claims	138	1
Sprich, Albert H., report of Court of Claims	40	1
Standiford, David, report of Court of Claims	218	1
Starn, Levi, referred to Court of Claims	110	1
State canals, resolution requesting Secretary of the Treasury to ascertain facts	174	1
Steele, J. and J., report of Court of Claims	41	1
Stiff, Martha, referred to Court of Claims	228	1
Store, John, estate of, report of Court of Claims	69	1
Stork, Conrad, referred to Court of Claims	140	1
Stover, Abraham, referred to Court of Claims	138	1
Stowers, Samuel, report of Court of Claims	282	1
Stutts, George W., report of Court of Claims	277	1
Sugar trust, resolution requesting information of Attorney-General	215	1
Summers, Margaret, referred to Court of Claims	119	1
Sutton, S. J., report of Court of Claims	52	1
Swartz, David, referred to Court of Claims	139	1
Sweating system. *See* Labor.		
Talbott, Jacob J., referred to Court of Claims	208	1
Talley, Robert, report of Court of Claims	113	1
Tariff, resolution that Committee on Agriculture investigate effect of, on agriculture	73	1
Tatin, Jean Marie, referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Taylor, Edward H., administrator, report of Court of Claims	257	1
Taylor, George W., estate of, referred to Court of Claims	138	1
Taylor, Jane, estate of, referred to Court of Claims	303	1
Taylor, Thomas W., report of Court of Claims	251	1
Taylor, William E., referred to Court of Claims	158	1
Taylor, William H., report of Court of Claims	244	1
Telletor, E. W., referred to Court of Claims	130	1
Tenement-house labor. *See* Labor.		
Thacher, Thomas, report of Court of Claims	171	1
Thomas, A. R., report of Court of Claims	52	1
Thomas, B. R., report of Court of Claims	269	1
Thomas, Wilkin, report of Court of Claims	40	1
Thompson, George W., referred to Court of Claims	139	1
Thompson, Lewis, executor of, referred to Court of Claims	168	1
Throckmorton, Hugh W., report of Court of Claims	288	1
Thurman, J. G., report of Court of Claims	46	1
Tillman, Francis, report of Court of Claims	157	1
Timberlake, S. R., referred to Court of Claims	214	1
Tolson, John J., administrator, referred to Court of Claims	237	1
Towsend, Peter, report of Court of Claims	219	1
Traweek, Mrs. E. L., referred to Court of Claims	126	1
Tucker, E. J., report of Court of Claims	253	1
Tucker, T. M., estate of, referred to Court of Claims	81	1
Tuscumbia, Ala., Masonic Lodge of, referred to Court of Claims	120	1
Two Sisters (ship), report of Court of Claims	231	1
Underwood, John C., referred to Court of Claims	212	1
Union (sloop), report of Court of Claims	205	1
Union (vessel), report of Court of Claims	281	1
United States Geological Survey. *See* Geological Survey.		

Subject.	No.	Vol.
Unsell, David, estate of, report of Court of Claims	38	1
Utah, report of the commissioner of schools of	47	1
Letter from chairman of Utah Commission respecting operation of Industrial Christian Home Association of	104	1
Vallean, Sarah J., referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Vaughn, Walker, report of Court of Claims	132	1
Vauquah, Louis, referred to Court of Claims	83	1
Verdin, Romain, referred to Court of Claims	150	1
Vernon, A. B., report of Court of Claims	251	1
Victor (schooner), report of Court of Claims	197	1
Vignes, Polona, referred to Court of Claims	151	1
Wakefield, Molisa O., referred to Court of Claims	158	1
Walker, Julius, referred to Court of Claims	128	1
Walker, Osborn, report of Court of Claims	78	1
Walker, Sandy, report of Court of Claims	301	1
Walker, T. J., referred to Court of Claims	214	1
Wallace, Thomas, referred to Court of Claims	127	1
Walls, Joseph L., report of Court of Claims	42	1
Warr, A. V., Ex., report of Court of Claims	286	1
Washington and Arlington Railway Company, annual report of	43	1
Washington and Georgetown Railroad Company, annual report	56	1
Wasson, Richard F., referred to Court of Claims	213	1
Watkins, Nancy J., referred to Court of Claims	120	1
Webb, T. H., report of Court of Claims	78	1
Webb, William S., referred to Court of Claims	120	1
Weitinger, John, report of Court of Claims	232	1
Welck, Benjamin, report of Court of Claims	72	1
Wells, George H., report of Court of Claims	284	1
Wells, James, heirs of, referred to Court of Claims	299	1
Wesson, J. W., report of Court of Claims	78	1
Westmoreland, Mary N., referred to Court of Claims	210	1
Whitaker, William, referred to Court of Claims	119	1
White, B. K., report of Court of Claims	74	1
White, Thomas W., referred to Court of Claims	111	1
White, W. B., report of Court of Claims	315	1
White, Zachariah J., referred to Court of Claims	172	1
Wilhite, H., report of Court of Claims	322	1
Wilkes, Benjamin, referred to Court of Claims	147	1
Wilkes, Francis, referred to Court of Claims	210	1
Williamson, A. O., referred to Court of Claims	210	1
Williams, Harry, report of Court of Claims	52	1
Willis, Edward B., estate of, referred to Court of Claims	119	1
Wilson, R. T., report of Court of Claims	132	1
Wilson, Thomas W., referred to Court of Claims	158	1
Wirtz, William, estate of, report of Court of Claims	182	1
Withers, H. M., report of Court of Claims	42	1
Wolfson, Caroline L., referred to Court of Claims	217	1
Woodson, Tarleton, report of Court of Claims	241	1
Woody, H. T., report of Court of Claims	42	1
World's Columbian Exposition, resolution for inquiry into expenditures, etc	68	1
Wright, Eliza (brig), report of Court of Claims	204	1
Wurtele, Jacob, report of Court of Claims	294	1
Wysong, James, report of Court of Claims	74	1
Wytsinger, John, referred to Court of Claims	210	1
Young, Joseph, report of Court of Claims	156	1
Youngblood, Mrs. Sarah E., referred to Court of Claims	259	1
Yuckley, G. W., report of Court of Claims	42	1
Zaddock, Meador, referred to Court of Claims	130	1

52D CONGRESS, 1st Session. } HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES. { MIS. DOC. No. 25.

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR

BULLETINS

OF THE

UNITED STATES

GEOLOGICAL SURVEY

Nos. 81 and 82

WASHINGTON
GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
1892

LIBRARY CATALOGUE SLIPS.

Series title.

United States. *Department of the interior.* (*U. S. geological survey*).
Department of the Interior | — | Bulletin | of the | United States | geological survey | no. 81 | [Seal of the department] |
Washington | government printing office | 1891

Second title: United States geological survey | J. W. Powell, director | — | Correlation papers | Cambrian | by | Charles Doolittle Walcott | [Vignette] |
Washington | government printing office | 1891
8°. 447 pp. 3 pl.

Author title.

Walcott (Charles Doolittle).
United States geological survey | J. W. Powell, director | — | Correlation papers | Cambrian | by | Charles Doolittle Walcott | [Vignette] |
Washington | government printing office | 1891
8°. 447 pp. 3 pl.
[UNITED STATES. *Department of the interior.* (*U. S. geological survey*). Bulletin 81.]

Title for subject entry.

United States geological survey | J. W. Powell, director | — | Correlation papers | Cambrian | by | Charles Doolittle Walcott | [Vignette] |
Washington | government printing office | 1891
8°. 447 pp. 3 pl.
[UNITED STATES. *Department of the interior.* (*U. S. geological survey*). Bulletin 81.]

ADVERTISEMENT.

[Bulletin No. 81.]

The publications of the United States Geological Survey are issued in accordance with the statute approved March 3, 1879, which declares that—

"The publications of the Geological Survey shall consist of the annual report of operations, geological and economic maps illustrating the resources and classification of the lands, and reports upon general and economic geology and paleontology. The annual report of operations of the Geological Survey shall accompany the annual report of the Secretary of the Interior. All special memoirs and reports of said Survey shall be issued in uniform quarto series if deemed necessary by the Director, but otherwise in ordinary octavos. Three thousand copies of each shall be published for scientific exchanges and for sale at the price of publication; and all literary and cartographic materials received in exchange shall be the property of the United States and form a part of the library of the organization; and the money resulting from the sale of such publications shall be covered into the Treasury of the United States."

On July 7, 1882, the following joint resolution, referring to all Government publications, was passed by Congress:

"That whenever any document or report shall be ordered printed by Congress, there shall be printed, in addition to the number in each case stated, the 'usual number' (1,900) of copies for binding and distribution among those entitled to receive them."

Except in those cases in which an extra number of any publication has been supplied to the Survey by special resolution of Congress or has been ordered by the Secretary of the Interior, this office has no copies for gratuitous distribution.

ANNUAL REPORTS.

I. First Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, by Clarence King. 1880. 8°. 79 pp. 1 map.—A preliminary report describing plan of organization and publications.

II. Second Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, 1880–'81, by J. W. Powell. 1882. 8°. lv, 588 pp. 62 pl. 1 map.

III. Third Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, 1881–'82, by J. W. Powell. 1883. 8°. xviii, 564 pp. 67 pl. and maps.

IV. Fourth Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, 1882–'83, by J. W. Powell. 1884. 8°. xxxii, 473 pp. 85 pl. and maps.

V. Fifth Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, 1883–'84, by J. W. Powell. 1885. 8°. xxxvi, 469 pp. 58 pl. and maps.

VI. Sixth Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, 1884–'85, by J. W. Powell. 1885. 8°. xxix, 570 pp. 65 pl. and maps.

VII. Seventh Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, 1885–'86, by J. W. Powell. 1888. 8°. xx, 656 pp. 71 pl. and maps.

VIII. Eighth Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, 1886–'87, by J. W. Powell. 1889. 8°. 2 v. xix, 474, xii pp. 53 pl. and maps; 1 p. l. 475–1063 pp. 54–76 pl. and maps.

IX. Ninth Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, 1887–'88, by J. W. Powell. 1889. 8°. xiii, 717 pp. 88 pl. and maps.

X. Tenth Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, 1888–'89, by J. W. Powell. 1890. 8°. 2 v. xv, 774 pp. 98 pl. and maps; viii, 123 pp.

The Eleventh and Twelfth Annual Reports are in press.

MONOGRAPHS.

I. Lake Bonneville, by Grove Karl Gilbert. 1890. 4°. xx, 438 pp. 51 pl. 1 map. Price $1.50.

II. Tertiary History of the Grand Cañon District, with atlas, by Clarence E. Dutton, Capt. U. S. A. 1882. 4°. xiv, 264 pp. 42 pl. and atlas of 24 sheets folio. Price $10.00.

III. Geology of the Comstock Lode and the Washoe District, with atlas, by George F. Becker. 1882. 4°. xv, 422 pp. 7 pl. and atlas of 21 sheets folio. Price $11.00.

IV. Comstock Mining and Miners, by Eliot Lord. 1883. 4°. xiv, 451 pp. 3 pl. Price $1.50.

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR

BULLETIN

OF THE

UNITED STATES

GEOLOGICAL SURVEY

No. 81

WASHINGTON
GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
1891

UNITED STATES GEOLOGICAL SURVEY
J. W. POWELL, DIRECTOR

CORRELATION PAPERS

CAMBRIAN

BY

CHARLES DOOLITTLE WALCOTT

WASHINGTON
GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
1891

CONTENTS.

	Page.
Letter of transmittal	13
Outline of this paper	15
CHAPTER I. Introductory	17
Literature	19
List of authors and year of publication	19
List of papers by dates	22
CHAPTER II. Historical review of the geologic and paleontologic work	49
Atlantic Coast Province	50
Newfoundland	50
Nova Scotia	56
New Brunswick and Cape Breton	59
Maine	68
New Hampshire	70
Eastern Massachusetts	72
Paleontology	78
Newfoundland	78
New Brunswick and Cape Breton	80
Eastern Massachusetts	88
Appalachian Province	91
Northern Appalachian district	91
Granular Quartz	91
Red Sandrock	96
Georgia slates	98
Potsdam Sandstone	113
Canadian extension	114
Southern Appalachian district	122
New Jersey	122
Delaware	123
Pennsylvania	124
Maryland	133
Virginia	133
North Carolina	138
Tennessee	139
Georgia	144
Alabama	146
Paleontology	148
Northern Appalachian district	148
Southern Appalachian district	154
New Jersey, etc	154
Tennessee	154
Georgia	155
Rocky Mountain Province	155
Utah and Nevada	155
Idaho	161

Page.

CHAPTER II—Continued.

Montana 162
Canadian extension 163
Paleontology 165
Interior Continental Province 171
Upper Mississippi area 171
Wisconsin 171
Minnesota 181
Iowa 187
Lake Superior sandstone 188
Missouri 199
Eastern border or Adirondack sub-Province 201
Canadian Extension 207
Western Border or Rocky Mountain sub-Province 209
Colorado 209
Wyoming 211
Dakota 214
Southwestern sub-Province 216
Texas 216
Arizona 219
Paleontology 221
Upper Mississippi area 221
Red sandstone of Lake Superior 228
Missouri 229
Eastern border or Adirondack sub-Province 229
Western border or Rocky Mountain sub-Province 233
Texas 234
Arizona 235
CHAPTER III. Nomenclature employed in the description of the formations .. 236
Cambrian 237
Taconic 242
Taconian 243
Primordial 243
Potsdam 244
St. Croix 245
Madison 245
Mendota 245
Tonto 245
Hamburg 246
Secret Cañon 246
Katemcy 246
Riley 246
Hickory 246
Connasauga 246
Montevallo 247
Choccolocco 247
Coosa 247
Rome sandstone 247
Bretonian 247
Acadian 248
St. John's 248
Johannian 249
Georgia 249
Granular Quartz 250

Page.

CHAPTER III—Continued.
Red Sandrock ... 250
Primal ... 251
Chilhowee ... 251
Weisner ... 251
Ocoee ... 252
Prospect ... 252
Eastern and Western sandstone ... 252
Lake Superior sandstone ... 252
Potsdamic ... 252
CHAPTER IV. Summary of the present knowledge of the formations ... 253
Atlantic Coast Province ... 253
Newfoundland and the adjoining coast of Labrador ... 253
Northwestern Newfoundland ... 253
Southwestern Newfoundland ... 256
Eastern and Southeastern Newfoundland ... 257
Nova Scotia ... 262
New Brunswick and Cape Breton ... 262
Maine ... 267
New Hampshire ... 267
Eastern Massachusetts ... 268
Résumé ... 273
Appalachian Province ... 274
Northern Appalachian district ... 275
Canadian extension ... 285
Southern Appalachian district ... 287
New Jersey ... 287
Delaware ... 288
Pennsylvania ... 288
Maryland ... 289
Virginia ... 290
North Carolina ... 299
Tennessee ... 299
Ocoee conglomerate ... 299
Chilhowee sandstone ... 300
Knox sandstone and shale ... 301
Georgia ... 303
Alabama ... 305
Résumé ... 308
Rocky Mountain Province ... 313
Utah and Nevada ... 313
Idaho ... 320
Montana ... 323
Canadian extension ... 326
Résumé ... 328
Interior Continental Province ... 330
Upper Mississippi Valley ... 330
Canadian extension ... 334
Lake Superior sandstone ... 335
Canadian extension ... 339
Missouri ... 339
Eastern border or Adirondack sub-Province and its Canadian extension ... 341
Section at Potsdam ... 342
Section at Chateaugay Chasm ... 342

Page.

CHAPTER IV—Continued.
Section at Hemmingford 343
Section at Keeseville and in Au Sable Chasm 343
Section at Whitehall 344
Section at Saratoga 346
Western border or Rocky Mountain sub-Province 347
South Dakota 347
Wyoming 349
Colorado 351
Southwestern sub-Province 354
Texas 354
Arizona 356
Résumé 357
Synopsis of the Cambrian group 359
Base of Cambrian 362
Summit of Cambrian 362
Sedimentation of the Cambrian group 363
Subdivision of the Cambrian 370
Comparison with the Cambrian rocks of other countries 373
Europe 373
Scotland 376
Ireland 377
China 377
India 378
Australia 378
South America 379
CHAPTER V. Problems for investigation and settlement 380
Local problems 380
Newfoundland 380
Nova Scotia 380
New Brunswick 381
Maine and New Hampshire 381
Eastern Massachusetts 381
New York 381
Adirondack sub-Province 381
Vermont 381
Canadian extension 382
New Jersey 382
Pennsylvania 382
Virginia 383
North Carolina 383
Tennessee 383
Georgia and Alabama 383
Utah and Nevada 384
Colorado 384
Rocky Mountains 384
Arizona 385
Upper Mississippi Valley 385
Missouri 385
Texas 385
Problems affecting our knowledge of the Cambrian group as a whole or in large parts 385
Problems of nomenclature and classification 388
The name 388
The limit of the group 388

Page.

CHAPTER VI.—The criteria and principles used by authors in the correlation of the various parts composing the group, with observations on some methods of correlation 391
Historical notes 391
America 391
Maclure 391
Eaton 392
Bigsby 395
James 396
Bakewell 397
De la Beche 398
Eaton 399
Conrad 399
Hall 401
Emmons 403
Rogers 403
Safford 405
Canada 405
Logan 405
Newfoundland 406
Dana 407
Mississippi Valley 408
Hall 408
Winchell 409
Meek 410
Rocky Mountains 411
Whitney 411
Bradley 411
Fortieth Parallel Survey 412
Explorations and Surveys West of One Hundredth Meridian 412
Geological Surveys of the Territories 412
U. S. Geological Survey 413
Correlations with European formations 414
De Verneuil 414
Hall 415
Barrande 416
Rogers 417
Bigsby 418
Agassiz 419
Matthew 420
Methods of correlation 421
Superposition 421
Organic remains 422
Life zones 424
Stage of evolution 425
Life history 426
Contemporaneity and homotaxis 427
Percentage of species 428
Lithologic character 428
Unconformity 429
Miscellaneous 432
Homogeny 432
Topographic features 434

ILLUSTRATIONS.

Page.

PLATE I. Map showing the distribution, by geologic provinces, of the Cambrian strata as shown by surface outcrops in North America..... 358

II. Map to illustrate geologic provinces and relative thickness of the Cambrian rocks of North America, with theoretic sections of the Cambrian group at the close of Cambrian time..... 365

III. Hypothetical map of the North American continent at the beginning of and during Lower Cambrian time..... 368

FIG. 1. Typical sections of the Atlantic Coast Province 274

2. Typical sections of the Appalachian Province 311

3. Typical sections of the Rocky Mountain Province..... 329

4. Typical sections of the Interior Continental Province..... 357

5. Typical sections of the Interior Continental Province..... 358

LETTER OF TRANSMITTAL.

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR,
UNITED STATES GEOLOGICAL SURVEY,
DIVISION OF GEOLOGIC CORRELATION,
Washington, D. C., April 1, 1891.

SIR: I have the honor to transmit herewith a memoir by Mr. C. D. Walcott, on the Cambrian of North America, prepared for publication as a bulletin.

The Division of Geologic Correlation was created for the purpose of summarizing existing knowledge with reference to the geologic formations of North America, and especially of the United States; of discussing the correlation of the formations found in different parts of the country with one another, and with formations in other continents; and of discussing the principles of geologic correlation in the light of American phenomena. The formations of each geologic period were assigned to some student already well acquainted with them and it was arranged that he should expand his knowledge by study of the literature, and by field examination of classic localities, and embody his results in an essay. The general plan of the work has been set forth on page 16 of the Ninth Annual Report of the Survey, and on pages 108 to 113 of the Tenth Annual Report, as well as in a letter of transmittal to Bulletin No. 80 of the Survey.

The first of the series of essays resulting from this work, prepared by Prof. Henry S. Williams, pertains to the formations of the Carboniferous and Devonian periods, and constitutes Bulletin No. 80. The present essay is the second of the series, and others will follow.

Mr. Walcott finds that the American Cambrian includes three faunas, of which the first and third are of continental range, and that by the aid of these faunas the formations in the various geologic provinces may be classified into three divisions, an upper, a middle, and a lower. He finds also that these divisions may be homotaxially, and perhaps chronologically, compared with divisions of the European Cambrian.

Very respectfully, your obedient servant,

G. K. GILBERT,
Geologist in Charge.

Hon. J. W. POWELL,
Director U. S. Geological Survey.

OUTLINE OF THIS PAPER.

This work is a review, by one who is working in the Cambrian field, of the work of his predecessors, and of the results they and he have thus far obtained as he interprets them. It thus becomes historical and descriptive, and is a general statement of the principles upon which the correlations have been made in establishing the group.

Chapter I gives a statement of the principles upon which the delimitation of the group is based, a few brief remarks upon the nomenclature of the formations, and a list of the books and articles consulted in the preparation of this paper.

Chapter II gives a historical review of the geologic and paleontologic work that has been done in the four provinces in which the sediments of the Cambrian group occur. These are the Atlantic Coast Province; the Appalachian Province, which is divided into the Northern Appalachian and Southern Appalachian areas; the Rocky Mountain Province, and the Interior Continental Province. The latter is divided into the Upper Mississippi Area, the Eastern Border or Adirondack sub-Province, the Western Border or Rocky Mountain sub-Province, and the Southwestern sub-Province of Texas and Arizona. Within each of the provinces the historical data are reviewed by the political divisions of States and Territories, and in British North America by provinces.

The historical review of the geologic work embraces all that has come within the knowledge of the writer of the descriptive geology of the rocks now referred to the Cambrian group. The paleontologic review includes only the mention of the genera and species described by the various authors.

Chapter III is a record of the names that have been employed to designate various formations. It is of an historical rather than a controversial character.

Chapter IV gives a summary of the present knowledge of the formations in each of the four geologic provinces, in the same arrangement as that of the historical review in chapter II. The attempt is made to give a concise statement of the present knowledge of the formations referred to the Cambrian group within each province. The paleontologic references are to the larger subdivisions of the fauna without mention of genera or species. These will be described in special monographs, now in the course of preparation. At the close of this summary there is a synopsis of the Cambrian group, in which it is stated that the group is established by (*a*) the presence in the Rocky Mountain Province of 6,000 feet of limestone with an undetermined mass of quartzite beneath; (*b*) in the Appalachian Province by over 12,000 feet of quartzite, shales, slates, and limestones; (*c*) a continental distribution; (*d*) a characteristic, highly differentiated fauna. A table of the classification of the formations is arranged with the type formation of each subdivision at the head, while beneath are the formations correlated with it.

A map showing the geographic distribution accompanies this chapter; also one on which the sedimentation is illustrated by vertical columns of strata. A section across the continent, with the base of the Ordovician fauna as the upper limit and the columns of strata arranged beneath it, reveals the presence of a great trough along the line of the Appalachians from Alabama to Labrador, and a second trough on the western side of the continent west of the eastern Rocky Mountain ranges. It is claimed that the great interior Continental Province was a land area during

Lower and Middle Cambrian time and that the Cambrian Sea did not enter upon it until the beginning of Upper Cambrian time. A map based (Pl. III) upon this view illustrates the supposed land area at the beginning of Cambrian time.

The base of the group is stated to be where the oldest known fauna that is referred to the Cambrian fauna occurs. The summit of the group is the transition from the Cambrian to the Ordovician fauna, or in the New York section between the Potsdam sandstone and the superjacent Calciferous formation. The rocks or sediments are described and the conclusion reached that there were geographic areas in which different types of sedimentation prevailed, and that as a whole the sediments were deposited in both shallow and deep waters on an ocean bottom that was being slowly depressed in relation to sea level.

The study of the fauna indicates that the group may be conveniently divided into three divisions, lower, middle, and upper. The evidence of the sedimentation and organic remains proves the presence of geographic provinces in Lower Cambrian time that became more strongly differentiated in Middle Cambrian time and less strongly marked in Upper Cambrian time.

The chapter concludes by notes on the Cambrian rocks of Great Britain, Europe, China, India, Australia, and South America.

Chapter V deals with problems for investigation and settlement which are taken up, for the local problems, in the same order of presentation as the matter in chapters II and IV. The general problems respecting our knowledge of the Cambrian group, as a whole, or in large parts, are discussed separately, as are the problems of nomenclature and classification. The latter includes a statement of the problems relating to the name and the limits of the group.

Chapter VI is devoted to the study of criteria and principles used by authors in the correlation of the various parts composing the Cambrian group, with observations on some methods of correlation. The first portion includes the historical notes, and is a review in chronologic order of the principles of correlation used by authors in the United States and Canada, and observations by authors upon correlation of American with European formations. This review shows that many authors have expressed sound views upon methods of correlation and that, with the exception of the additions made since the theory of evolution began to influence paleontologists, the addition to methods has been relatively small. Under the heading of methods of correlation, correlation by superposition, organic remains, lithologic characters, and unconformity are treated of at some length. Under organic remains are considered life zones, stage of evolution, life history, contemporaneity, homotaxis, and percentage of species. Reference is also made to homogeny and topographic features as elements entering into the problems of correlation.

THE CAMBRIAN GROUP OF ROCKS IN NORTH AMERICA.

By Charles D. Walcott.

CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTORY.

This report is an unfinished memoir. It is an account of the present knowledge of a great geologic group that will require prolonged investigation to bring it to the status in descriptive geology already attained by the superjacent members of the Paleozoic system.[1]

The history of the origin and application of the term Cambrian in geologic nomenclature is presented in connection with the description of the names that have been employed in the classification of the various formations characterized by the types of the "First or Primordial Fauna" of Barrande. The basal fauna, as now known, is that of the Olenellus zone; and the upper horizon of the group is drawn at the summit of the series characterized by the Dikellocephalus fauna of North America. The delimitation of the group is based on the principles: (*a*) that the great geologic groups must rest on the broad zoologic characters of their included faunas, and not upon local stratigraphic breaks between certain series of rocks or upon local differences in sedimentation; (*b*) that the most reliable chronologic scale in geology is that afforded by the relative magnitude of zoologic change; and (*c*) that the geologic duration and importance of any system are in strict proportion to the comparative magnitude and distinctness of its collective fauna.[2]

Geologic classification has been largely based upon the imperfections of the geologic record and an arbitrary assumption of breaks in the chain of sedimentation and life that are not of universal extent. Geologic continuity must have been a fact and the sequence of life and deposition continued uninterrupted on some portion of the earth from the earliest Cambrian time to the present day. Such continuity could not have existed in any one province, and it is doubtful if the complete record will ever be regained. In its absence the classification already

[1] In the preparation of the historical portion I received material assistance from Prof. Joseph F. James, who, taking as a basis the bibliographic card-catalogue of Mr. N. H. Darton, prepared a series of brief abstracts which guided me in my historical research.

[2] Lapworth, Charles. Geological Magazine, new ser., dec. II, 1879, vol. 6, p. 3.

established is adopted and then arbitrarily assumed whenever the original basis for it is cleared away by more perfect knowledge.

For convenience of description and geologic cartography, the geologic formation[1] is taken as the primary unit of classification. The combination of these primary units forms the terrane, which may be composed of any number of geologic units. The groupings of the terranes form the groups, and the union of the groups the systems. Thus the Potsdam sandstone of the Adirondacks, the Dutchess County limestone of New York, the upper Knox shales of Tennessee, the Hamburg shales of Nevada, and many other formations unite to form the Upper Cambrian terrane. The union of the Upper Cambrian with the Middle and the Lower Cambrian builds up the Cambrian group. The combination of the Cambrian, Silurian, Devonian, and Carboniferous, forms the Paleozoic system.

The nomenclature of the formations of any group frequently expresses in local terminology the history of the development or evolution of knowledge of the group. For instance, the formations composing the Cambrian begin, in America, with the "Granular Quartz" and then follow the Potsdam sandstone, the St. John shales, the Chilhowee sandstone, etc. The plan of naming the formations from the locality at which they are best developed is a great safeguard and can be frequently adopted. For instance, the Potsdam sandstone of New York has its type locality at Potsdam in St. Lawrence County, where it can be readily identified. To say it is identical with the Upper Cambrian or St. Croix sandstone of the Mississippi Valley, with which it has been identified, and to speak of the latter as the Potsdam sandstone, is to practically state that they are synchronous. The use of the name St. Croix does not imply this. It enables the geologist to mention the formation without assuming a correlation that he may or may not believe in.

[1] Dr. J. J. Bigsby states that "According to Deshayes 'a formation is a space of time represented by a certain number of beds, laid down under the influence of the same phenomena,' or, in other words, a formation is characterized by the constancy of its fossils." (On the Paleozoic basin of the State of New York. Part II. Classification of the Paleozoic strata of the State of New York. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc. London, 1858, vol. 14, pp. 428, 430.)

LITERATURE.

LIST OF AUTHORS AND YEAR OF PUBLICATION.

Adams (C. B.), 1845, 1846, 1847, 1848.
Agassiz (Alexander), 1868.
Agassiz (Louis), 1862.
Ami (H.) and Sowter (T. W. E.), 1887.
Aveline (W.T.); Salter (J.W.), and, 1853.
Bailey (L. W.), 1865, 1879.
Bailey (L. W.) and Matthew (G. F.), 1872.
Bailey (L. W.); Matthew (G. F.), and, 1869.
Bailey (L. W.), Matthew (G. F.), and Ells (R. W.), 1880.
Baily (W. H.), 1865.
Bakewell (Robert), 1829.
Barrande (J.), 1846, 1852, 1853, 1860, 1861.
Barrande (Joachim), and Marcou (Jules), 1860.
Bayfield (H. W.), 1829, 1845.
Beecher (C. E.) and Hall (C. E.), 1886.
Bell (Robert), 1879.
Bergeron (Jules), 1888.
Bigsby (John J.), 1824, 1825, 1827, 1853, 1858, 1863.
Billings (E.), 1860, 1861, 1862, 1865, 1872.
Bradley (Frank H.), 1860, 1872, 1873, 1874, 1875.
Broadhead (G. C.), 1874, 1877, 1882, 1889.
Brögger (W. C.), 1886.
Brooks (T. B.), and Pumpelly (R.), 1872.
Buckley (S. B.), 1874, 1876.
Burt (William A.), 1849.
Calvin (S.), 1888.
Campbell (H. D.), 1885.
Campbell (J.), 1863.
Campbell (J. L.), 1879, 1880, 1884.
Campbell (J. L. and H. D.), 1884, 1885.
Campbell (J. L.) and Ruffner (W. H.), 1883.
Carpenter (F. R.), 1888.
Chamberlin (T. C.), 1877, 1883.
Chamberlin (T. C.); Irving (R. D.), and. 1885.
Chapman (E. J.), 1877.
Chester (Frederick D.), 1884.
Clemson (Thomas G.), 1835.
Comstock (T. B.), 1874, 1890.
Conrad (T. A.), 1839, 1840, 1841, 1842.
Cook (George H.), 1863, 1868, 1874, 1884, 1885.
Crosby (W. O.), 1876, 1880, 1881, 1889.
Dames (Wilhelm), 1883.
Dana (Edw. S.) and Grinnell (G. B.), 1876.
Dana (James D.), 1863, 1872, 1874, 1877, 1885, 1887, 1890.
Dana (J. F. and S. L.), 1818.
Daniels (Edward), 1859.
Dawson (George M.), 1884, 1886, 1887.
Dawson (J. W.), 1850, 1855, 1860, 1862, 1867, 1868, 1873, 1878, 1883, 1888.
D'Invilliers (E.), 1883.
De la Beche (Henry), 1832.
Desor (E.), 1851.
Devine (T.), 1863.
Dewey (Chester), 1819, 1820, 1824.
Dodge (W. W.), 1875.
Dutton (Clarence E.), 1881.
Dwight (William B.), 1886, 1887, 1889.
Eaton (Amos), 1818, 1820, 1822, 1824, 1828, 1830, 1832, 1839.
Elliott (John B.), 1883.
Ells (R. W.), 1887, 1889.
Ells (R. W.); Bailey (L. W.), Matthew (G. F.), and, 1880.
Emmons (Ebenezer), 1837, 1838, 1839, 1840, 1841, 1842, 1844, 1847, 1856.
Emmons (S. F.), 1886.
Emmons (S. F.); Hague (Arnold), and 1877.
Endlich (F. M.), 1878, 1879.
Engelmann (H.), 1857.
Etheridge (R., jr.), 1883, 1890.
Ferrier (W. F.), 1883.
Fitch (Asa), 1850.
Fletcher (Hugh), 1877, 1878.
Foerste (A. F.); Shaler (N. S.), and, 1888.
Foerste (Aug. F.), 1889.
Fontaine (William M.), 1875, 1883.

Ford (S. W.), 1871, 1872, 1873, 1875, 1876, 1877, 1878, 1880, 1881, 1884, 1886.
Foster (J. W.), 18 49.
Foster (J. W.) and Whitney (J. D.), 1849, 1850, 1851.
Frazer (Persifor, jr.), 1878, 1879, 1880, 1882, 1883, 1886.
Geiger (H. R.) and Keith (Arthur), 1891.
Geikie (Archibald), 1882.
Gesner (Abraham), 1836, 1841, 1843, 1845, 1849.
Gilbert (G. K.), 1874, 1875, 1890.
Grinnell (G. B.); Dana (Ewd. S.), and, 1876.
Green (Jacob), 1834.
Hague (Arnold) 1881, 1882.
Hague (Arnold) and Emmons (S. F.), 1877.
Hall (Charles E.), 1881, 1885. (See Beecher, C. E.)
Hall (James) 1839, 1843, 1844, 1845, 1847, 1851, 1858, 1859, 1860, 1861, 1862, 1863, 1873, 1884, 1886.
Hall (James) and Whitfield (R. P.), 1873, 1877.
Hall (James); Logan (W. E.), and, 1866.
Hartt (C. Fred.), 1865, 1868.
Harvey (M.); Hatton (Joseph), and, 1883.
Hatton (Joseph) and Harvey (M.), 1883.
Hayden (F. V.), 1858, 1859, 1861, 1862, 1863, 1869, 1871, 1873, 1874, 1875, 1885, 1888.
Henderson (J. T.), 1885.
Hicks (Henry), 1875.
Hind (H. Y.), 1869, 1870.
Hitchcock (C. H.), 1861, 1862, 1867, 1870, 1873, 1874, 1875, 1877, 1879, 1884, 1885, 1888, 1890.
Hitchcock (Edw.), 1832, 1841, 1859.
Hough (Franklin B.), 1847, 1850, 1851.
Houghton (Douglass), 1839, 1840, 1841.
Howell (Edwin E.), 1875.
Hubbard (Bela), 1849.
Hunt (T. S.), 1852, 1854, 1861, 1868, 1870, 1871, 1875, 1876, 1878, 1879, 1883, 1886.
Hyatt (Alpheus), 1885.
Irving (Roland D.), 1872, 1874, 1875, 1877, 1880, 1883, 1885, 1888.
Irving (R. D.) and Chamberlin (T. C.), 1885.
Jackson (C. T.), 1844, 1849, 1851, 1856, 1859, 1861.
James (Edwin), 1821, 1822.
Jenney (W. P.), 1874.
Johnston (J. F. W.), 1850.
Jukes (J. Beete), 1843, 1862.
Kayser (Emanuel), 1876.
Kerr (W. C.), 1869, 1875.
Killebrew (J. B.), 1874.
King (Clarence), 1876, 1878.
King (H.), 1851.
King (William), 1889.
Kloos (J. H.), 1882.
Lane (Alfred C.), 1889.
Lapham (I. A.), 1851, 1855, 1869.
Lapworth (Charles), 1881.
Lea (Isaac), 1858.
Lesley (J. P.), 1853, 1873, 1883, 1885.
Lewis (H. Carvill), 1883.
Little (George), 1876.
Lloyd (T. G. B.), 1876.
Logan (W. E.), 1845, 1847, 1849, 1850, 1851, 1852, 1854, 1855, 1860, 1861, 1863, 1865, 1866.
Logan (W. E.) and Hall (James), 1866.
Low (A. P.), 1884, 1886.
Lydekker (R.); Nicholson (H. A.), and, 1889.
Lyell (Charles), 1845.
Lyman (B. S.), 1867.
McConnell (R. G.), 1887, 1889.
McCreath (Audrew), 1884.
McCutchen (A. R.), 1884.
McGee (W J), 1890.
Macfarlane (Thomas), 1867.
Maclure (William), 1809, 1817.
Marcou (Jules), 1850, 1861, 1862, 1880, 1885, 1888.
Marcou (Jules); Barrande (Joachim) and, 1860.
Marr (J. E.), 1880, 1883.
Marsh (O. C.), 1869.
Marvine (A. R.), 1875.
Mather (William W.), 1841, 1843.
Matthew (G. F.), 1863, 1865, 1878, 1883, 1884, 1885, 1886, 1887, 1888, 1889, 1890, 1891.
Matthew (G. F.) and Bailey (L. W.), 1869.
Matthew (G. F.); Bailey (L. W.), and, 1872.
Matthew (G. F), and Ells (R. W.); Bailey (L. W.), and, 1880.
Meads (A. D.), 1889.
Meek (F. B.), 1868, 1870, 1871, 1872, 1873, 1877.
Meek (F. B.) and Hayden (F. V.), 1858, 1859, 1861, 1864.
Milne (John) and Murray (Alexander), 1877.
Murchison (R. I.); Sedgwick (Adam), and, 1835.

Murray (Alexander); Milne (John), and, 1877.
Murray (Alexander), 1852, 1854, 1866, 1868, 1870, 1871, 1873, 1881.
Nason (Frank L.), 1891.
Newberry (J. S.), 1861, 1873, 1874.
Newton (Henry), 1880.
Nicholson (H. A.) and Lydekker (R.), 1889.
Norwood (J. C.), 1852.
Ordway (Albert), 1861.
Owen (David Dale), 1843, 1848, 1851, 1852.
Owen (Richard), 1852, 1862.
Peale (A. C.), 1874, 1876, 1879, 1890.
Percival (James G.), 1856.
Perkins (George H.), 1885.
Perry (John P.), 1867, 1868.
Powell (J. W.), 1875, 1876.
Prime (Frederick, jr.), 1878, 1883.
Prout (H. A.), 1851.
Pumpelly (R.); Brooks (T. B.), and, 1872.
Rafinesque (C. S.), 1818.
Rand (T. D.), 1889.
Richardson (James), 1870.
Richthofen (F. F. von), 1882.
Robb (James), 1850.
Roemer (Ferdinand), 1849, 1852.
Rogers (Henry D.), 1838, 1839, 1840, 1841, 1844, 1846, 1857, 1858.
Rogers (Henry D. and W. B.), 1842.
Rogers (William B.), 1838, 1839, 1844, 1856, 1861, 1875, 1879, 1884.
Rominger (C.), 1873, 1887.
Ruffner (W. H.); Campbell (J. L.), and 1883.
St. John (Orestes), 1879, 1883.
Safford (J. M.), 1856, 1869, 1879.
Salter (J. W.), 1859.
Salter (J. W.) and Aveline (W. T.), 1853.
Schoolcraft (H. R.), 1855.
Sears (John H.), 1890.
Sedgwick (Adam), 1838, 1852, 1873.
Sedgwick (Adam) and Murchison (R. I.), 1835.
Selwyn (A. R. C.), 1872, 1879, 1883.
Shaler (N. S.), 1869, 1888, 1889.
Shaler (N. S.) and Foerste (A. F.), 1888.
Shaler (N. S.) and Williams (H. S.), 1891.
Shumard (B. F.), 1852, 1859, 1861, 1862.
Smith (E. A.), 1875, 1876, 1878, 1883, 1884.
Smock (John C.), 1886.
Sowter (T. W. E.); Ami (H.), and, 1887.
Steele (John H.), 1823, 1825.
Stevenson (John J.), 1887.
Strong (Moses), 1877, 1880, 1882.
Swallow (G. C.), 1855, 1871.
Sweet (E. T.), 1876, 1880.
Thompson (Zadock), 1853.
Todd (James E.), 1882.
Troost (Gerard), 1838, 1840, 1841.
Tuomey (M.), 1858.
Tyson (Philip T.), 1860.
Upham (Warren), 1884, 1885, 1888.
Vanuxem (Lardner), 1840, 1842.
Verneuil (Ed. de), 1847.
Wadsworth (M. E.), 1880, 1882, 1884.
Wadsworth (M. E.); Whitney (J. D.), and, 1884.
Walcott (Charles D.), 1879, 1880, 1883, 1884, 1885, 1886, 1887, 1888, 1889, 1890.
Webster (J. W.), 1824.
White (C. A.), 1870, 1874, 1875, 1876, 1879, 1880.
White (George), 1849.
Whiteaves (J. F.), 1878.
Whitfield (R. P.), 1876, 1877, 1878, 1880, 1882, 1884.
Whitfield (R. P.); Hall (James), and, 1873, 1877.
Whitney (J. D.), 1855, 1858, 1862, 1872, 1883.
Whitney (J. D.) and Wadsworth (M. E.), 1884.
Whitney (J. D.); Foster (J. W.), and, 1849, 1850, 1851.
Whittlesey (Charles), 1851, 1863.
Williams (H. S.), 1884.
Winchell (Alexander), 1861, 1864.
Winchell (N. H.), 1873, 1874, 1876, 1878, 1880, 1882, 1883, 1884, 1885, 1886, 1888, 1889.
Winchell (N. H., and H. V.), 1890.
Winwood (H. H.), 1885.
Wolff (J. E.), 1891.
Woodward (Henry), 1884.
Woodward (J.), 1723.
Wooster (L. C.), 1878, 1882, 1884.
Young (A. A.), 1882.

LIST OF PAPERS BY DATES.

1723.

WOODWARD, Dr. J. An essay toward a Natural History of the Earth and Terrestrial Bodies. London, 3d edition, 1723.

1809.

MACLURE, WILLIAM. Observations on the Geology of the United States Explanatory of a Geological Map. Am. Phil. Soc. Trans., vol. 6, 1809, pp. 411–428, map.

1817.

MACLURE, WILLIAM. Observations on the Geology of the United States; with remarks on the probable effects that may be produced by the decomposition of the different classes of rocks on the nature and fertility of soils. With a map and two plates. Am. Phil. Soc. Trans., new series, vol. 1, 1817, pp. 1–91.

1818.

DANA, J. F., and S. L. DANA. Outlines of the Mineralogy and Geology of Boston and its vicinity, with a geological map. Am. Acad. Arts and Sciences, Memoirs, vol. 4, 1818, pp. 129–223.

EATON, AMOS. An Index to the Geology of the Northern States, with a transverse section from Catskill Mountain to the Atlantic. Leicester, 1818, pp. 52.

R(AFINESQUE) C. S. Observations on the Geology of the United States of America, by William Maclure; a notice. Am. Monthly Magazine, vol. 3, 1818, pp. 41–44.

1819.

DEWEY, CHESTER. Sketch of the Mineralogy and Geology of the Vicinity of Williams' College, Williamstown, Mass. (With a map.) Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 1, 1819, pp. 337–346.

1820.

DEWEY, CHESTER. Geological section from Taconick Range, in Williamstown, to the city of Troy, on the Hudson. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 2, 1820, pp. 246–248.

EATON, AMOS. An Index to the Geology of the Northern States. 2d Ed., Troy, N. Y., 1820, pp. 286.

1821.

JAMES, EDWIN. Remarks on the sandstone and floetz formations of the western part of the valley of the Mississippi. Am. Phil. Soc. Trans., new series, vol. 2, 1821, pp. 191–215.

1822.

EATON, AMOS. A geological and agricultural survey of Rensselaer County, New York, with a geological profile, from Onondaga to Massachusetts. Albany, 1822, pp. 70, plate. Memoirs of the Board of Agriculture of the State of New York, 1823, vol. 2, pp. 3–43.

JAMES, EDWIN. Geological sketches of the Mississippi Valley. Phila. Acad. Sci., Jour., vol. 2, 1822, pp. 326–329.

1823.

STEELE, JOHN H. A report of the geological structure of the county of Saratoga. Memoirs of the Board of Agriculture of the State of New York, vol. 2, 1823, pp. 44–84, 155–161.

1824.

BIGSBY, JOHN J. A list of mineral and organic remains occurring in the Canadas. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 8, 1824, pp. 60–88.

DEWEY, CHESTER. A sketch of the geology and mineralogy of the western part of Massachusetts, and a small part of the adjoining States. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 8, 1824, pp. 1–60.

EATON, AMOS. A geological and agricultural survey of the district adjoining the Erie Canal. Albany, 1824, pp. 163, plate.

WEBSTER, J. W. Remarks on the geology of Boston and its vicinity. Boston Jour. Phil. and Arts, vol. 2, 1824, pp. 277–292.

1825.

BIGSBY, J. J. Notes on the geography and geology of Lake Superior. Quar. Jour. Lit., Sci. and Arts (of the Royal Inst. of Gt. Britain,) vol. 18, 1825, pp. 1–34, 228–269, map.

STEELE, JOHN H. A description of the Oolitic Formation lately discovered in the county of Saratoga, and State of New York. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 9, 1825, pp. 16–19.

1827.

BIGSBY, J. J. On the geology of Quebec and its vicinity. Geol. Soc. London, Proc., vol. 1. 1827, pp. 37, 38.

1828.

EATON, AMOS. Geological nomenclature, exhibited in a synopsis of North American rocks and detritus. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 14, 1828, oppo. p. 144, pp. 145–159; 359–368.

——— Annunciation of the second part of Prof. A. Eaton's report of the geological survey on the Erie Canal. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 13, 1828, pp. 383–385.

1829.

BAKEWELL, ROBERT. Introduction to Geology, 1st American Edition, New Haven, 1829.

BAYFIELD, H. W. Outlines of the geology of Lake Superior. Quebec Lit. and Hist. Soc. Trans., vol. 1, 1829, pp. 1–43.

1830.

EATON, AMOS. Geological text-book, prepared for popular lectures on North American geology; with applications to agriculture and the arts. Albany, 1830, pp. 64, pls. and map.

1832.

DE LA BECHE, HENRY. Geological Manual, Philadelphia, 1832.

EATON, AMOS. Geological text-book for aiding the study of North American Geology; being a systematic arrangement of facts collected by the author and his pupils under the patronage of the Hon. Stephen Van Rensselaer. Second edition. 5 plates. Albany, 1832.

——— Geological equivalents. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 21, 1832, pp. 132–138.

——— Four cardinal points in stratigraphical geology established by organic remains Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 21, 1832, pp. 199–200.

HITCHCOCK, EDW. Report on the geology of Massachusetts; examined under the direction of the government of that State during the years 1830 and 1831. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 22, 1832, pp. 1–70, with map.

1834.

GREEN, JACOB. Descriptions of some new North American trilobites. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 25, 1834, pp. 334–337.

1835.

CLEMSON, THOMAS G. Notice of a geological examination of the country between Fredericksburg and Winchester, in Virginia, including the gold region. Geol. Soc. Pennsylvania, Trans., vol. 1, 1835, pp. 298–313. (Colored map of sections.)

SEDGWICK, ADAM, and R. I. MURCHISON. On the Silurian and Cambrian systems, exhibiting the order in which the older sedimentary strata succeed each other in England and Wales. Brit. Assoc. Report for 1835, part 2, pp. 59–61.

1836.

GESNER, ABRAHAM. Remarks on the geology and mineralogy of Nova Scotia. Halifax, N. S., 1836, pp. 272.

1837.

EMMONS, EBENEZER. First annual report of the second geological district of New York. First annual report of the geological survey of New York, Albany, 1837, pp. 97–150; map.

1838.

EMMONS, EBENEZER. Report of the geologist of the second geological district of New York. Second annual report of the geological survey of New York, Albany, 1838, pp. 185–250; pl. 4, map.

ROGERS, HENRY D. Second annual report on the geological exploration of the State of Pennsylvania. Harrisburg, 1838, pp. 93, plate.

ROGERS, WILLIAM B. Second report of the progress of the geological survey of the State of Virginia, for the year 1837. Richmond, 1838, pp. 24. (This report occupies pp. 147–188 in the reprint "Geology of the Virginias," New York, 1884.)

SEDGWICK, ADAM. A synopsis of the English series of stratified rocks inferior to the old red Sandstone, with an attempt to determine the successive natural groups and formations. Geol. Soc. London, Proc. vol. 2, 1838, pp. 675–685 (read May 23, 1838).

TROOST, GERARD. Fourth report of the geologist of the State of Tennessee. Nashville, 1838. Map, pp. 628–652.

1839.

CONRAD, T. A. Notes on American Geology. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 35, 1839, pp. 237–251.

——— Second annual report on the paleontological department of the survey. Third annual report of the geological survey of New York, Albany, 1839, pp. 57–66.

EATON, AMOS. Cherty Limerock, or Corniferous Limerock, proposed as the line of reference for State geologists of New York and Pennsylvania. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 36, 1839, pp. 61–71, 198.

EMMONS, EBENEZER. Third annual report of the second geological district. Third annual report of the geological survey of New York, Albany, 1839, pp. 201–239.

HALL JAMES. Third annual report of the fourth geological district of New York. Third annual report of the geological survey of New York, Albany, 1839, pp. 287–339.

HOUGHTON, DOUGLASS. [Peninsula District.] Second annual report State geologist of Michigan, Detroit, 1839, pp. 4–39.

ROGERS, HENRY D. Third annual report on the geological survey of the State of Pennsylvania. Harrisburg, 1839, pp. 119.

ROGERS, WILLIAM B. Report of the progress of the geological survey of Virginia, for 1838 (Richmond, 1839), pp. 32. (This report occupies pp. 189–244 of the reprint "Geology of the Virginias," New York, 1884.)

1840.

CONRAD, T. A. On the Silurian system, with a table of the strata and characteristic fossils. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 38, 1840, pp. 86–93.
EMMONS, EBENEZER. Fourth annual report of the survey of the second geological district of New York. Fourth annual report of the geological survey of New York, Albany, 1840, pp. 259–353.
HOUGHTON, DOUGLASS. Third Ann. Rep. State Geol. of Michigan. House Reps. Document No. 8. 1840, pp. 33.
ROGERS, HENRY D. Description of the geology of the State of New Jersey, being a final report. Philadelphia, 1840, with plate and map. pp. 301.
——— Fourth annual report on the geological survey of the State of Pennsylvania. Harrisburg, 1840, pp. 252.
TROOST, GERARD. Fifth geological report on the State of Tennessee. Nashville, 1840, pp. 44, 3 maps.
VANUXEM, LARDNER. Fourth annual report of the geological survey of the third district. Fourth report of the geological survey of New York, Albany, 1840, pp. 355–383.

1841.

CONRAD, T. A. Fifth annual report on the paleontology of New York. Fifth annual report of the geological survey of New York, Albany, 1841, pp. 25–57.
EMMONS, EBENEZER. Geology of the Montmorenci. American Magazine, vol. 1, 1841, pp. 146–150.
GESNER, ABRAHAM. Third report on the geological survey of the Province of New Brunswick. St. John, 1841, pp. 88.
HITCHCOCK, EDWARD. Final report on the geology of Massachusetts, 2 vols., Amherst, 1841, vol. 1, pp. XII, 299; vol. 2, pp. 300–831; 55 pls.
HOUGHTON, DOUGLASS. Report [on the Northern or Upper Peninsula]. Geol. Survey Michigan, 4th Ann. Rep. State geologist, 1841, pp. 4–89.
MATHER, W. W. Fifth annual report on the geological survey of the first geological district. Fifth annual report of the geological survey of New York, Albany, 1841, pp. 63–112.
ROGERS, H. D. Some observations on the geological structure of Berkshire, Massachusetts, and neighboring parts of New York. Am. Phil. Soc., Proc., vol. 2, 1841, pp. 3, 4.
——— Fifth annual report on the geological exploration of Pennsylvania. Harrisburg, 1841, pp. 156 and plate.
TROOST, GERARD. Sixth annual report of the geological survey of Tennessee by the State geologist. Nashville, 1841, pp. 48.

1842.

CONRAD, T. A. Observations on the Silurian and Devonian systems of the United States, with descriptions of new organic remains. Phila. Acad. Sci., Jour., vol. 8, 1842, pp. 228–235.
EMMONS, EBENEZER. Geology of New York, part 2, comprising the survey of the second geological (northern) district, 1842, pp. 438, pls. 17.
——— Topography, geology, and mineral resources of the State of New York. Gazetteer of the State of New York, by J. Disturnell, Albany, 1842, pp. 5–25.
ROGERS, H. D., and W. B. ROGERS. On the physical structure of the Appalachian Chain, as exemplifying the laws which have regulated the elevation of great mountain chains generally. Brit. Assoc. Rept., vol. 12, Trans. Sec., pp. 40–42; Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 44, 1842, pp. 359–362; Trans. Am. Assoc. Geol. and Nat., 1843, pp. 474–531.
VANUXEM, LARDNER. Geology of New York. Geology of the Third (central) Geological District. Albany, 1842, pp. 307.

1843.

GESNER, ABRAHAM. Report on the Geological Survey of the Province of New Brunswick, with a Topographical Account of the Public Lands and Districts Explored in 1842. St. John, 1843, pp. 88.
——— Memoir of the Geology of Nova Scotia, with a map. Geol. Soc. London, Proc., Vol. 4, 1843, pp. 186–190.
HALL, JAMES. Geology of New York. Geology of the Fourth (western) Geological District. Albany, 1843, pp. xxvii, 686, 19 pls. and map.

HOUGH, FRANKLIN B. Catalogue of Mineralogical and Geological Specimens Received from F. B. Hough. Third Annual Rep. of Regts. Univ. State Cab. Nat. Hist. 1850, pp. 31–33.

——— On the Cylindrical Structure Observed in Potsdam Sandstone. Am. Assoc. Proc., vol. 4, 1850, pp. 352–354.

JOHNSTON, J. F. W. Report on the Agricultural Capabilities of the Province of New Brunswick. Fredericton, 1850, pp. 262.

LOGAN, W. E. Report on Bay St. Paul and Murray Bay. Geol. Sur. Canada, Rept. Progress for 1849–'50. Toronto, 1850, pp. 7–31.

——— Report on Rocks on South Side of the St. Lawrence. Geol. Sur. Canada, Rept. Progress for 1849–'50. Toronto, 1850, pp. 31–72.

MARCOU, JULES. Réponse à la lettre de MM. Foster et Whitney sur le lac Supérieur. Soc. géol., France, Bull. 2e sér., vol. 8, 1850, pp. 101–105.

ROBB, JAMES. (Letter on the Geological Structure of New Brunswick.) Report on the Agricultural Capabilities of the Province of New Brunswick, by J. F. W. Johnston, Fredericton, 1850, pp. 12, 13.

1851.

DESOR, E. [Potsdam Sandstone on the River St. Croix.] Boston Soc. Nat. Hist. Proc., vol. 3, 1851, p. 202.

FOSTER, J. W., and J. D. WHITNEY. On the Age of the Sandstone of Lake Superior, with a Description of the Phenomena of Igneous Rocks. Am. Assoc. Proc., vol. 5, 1851, pp. 22–39.

——— Lower Silurian System. Potsdam and Calciferous Sandstones. Rept. on Geol. of Lake Superior Land District, part 2, 1851, pp. 110–139.

HALL, JAMES. [Geological Investigations on Drummond's Island and the North Shores of Lakes Huron and Michigan, etc.] Am. Acad. Proc., vol. 2, 1851, pp. 253, 254.

——— Description of New or Rare Species of Fossils from the Palæozoic Series. Rept. on the Geology of the Lake Superior Land District, by Foster and Whitney, part 2, 1851, pp. 203–231.

——— Parallelism of the Palæozoic Deposits of the United States and Europe. Rept. on the Geology of the Lake Superior Land District, by Foster and Whitney, part 2, 1851, pp. 285–318.

JACKSON, C. T. [Some Observations on the Age of the Sandstones of the United States.] Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 3, 1851, pp. 335, 336, 337–339.

KING, H. Some Remarks on the Geology of the State of Missouri. Am. Assoc. Proc., vol. 5, 1851, pp. 182–199.

LAPHAM, I. A. On the geology of the southeastern portion of the State of Wisconsin; being the part not surveyed by the United States geologists. Rept. on the geology of the Lake Superior land district by Foster and Whitney, part 2, 1851, pp. 167–172.

LOGAN, W. E. On the occurrence of a track and footprints of an animal in the Potsdam sandstone of Lower Canada. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 7, 1851, pp. 247–257.

OWEN, D. D. On the paleontology of the lowest sandstones of the Northwest. Am. Assoc., Proc., vol. 5, 1851, pp. 169–172.

PROUT, H. A. Description of a new Graptolite found in the lower Silurian rocks near the Falls of the St. Croix River. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 11, 1851, pp. 187–191.

WHITTLESEY, CHARLES. Remarks upon the section from the Falls of Wolf River, through Navarino to Lake Michigan. Rept. on the geology of the Lake Superior land district, by Foster and Whitney, part 2, 1851, pp. 174–177.

——— The dip, bearing, and thickness of the Silurian groups. Rept. on the geology of the Lake Superior land district, by Foster and Whitney, part 2, 1851, pp. 177–189.

1852.

BARRANDE, J. Système de la Bohême, vol. 1, 1852, p. 88.

HUNT, T. S. Remarks on the lithological and paleontological characters of the Potsdam sandstone. Am. Assoc., Proc., vol. 6, 1852, pp. 271–273.

LOGAN, W. E. Report [on country between Rivière du Nord and Beauharnois]. Geol. Survey of Canada. 1851–'52, 1852, pp. 5–56.

——— On the age of the copper-bearing rocks of Lakes Superior and Huron, etc. British Assoc. Rep. for 1851–'52, Trans. of sections pp. 59–62. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 14, 1852, pp. 224–229.

——— On the footprints occurring in the Potsdam sandstone of Canada. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc. London, vol. 8, 1852, pp. 199–208.

MURRAY, ALEX. Report [of country lying between rivers Ottawa and St. Lawrence]. Geol. Survey of Canada for 1851–'52, 1852, pp. 57–91.

NORWOOD, J. C. Description of the geology of middle and western Minnesota, including the country adjacent to the northwest and part of the southwest shore of Lake Superior. Rep. Geol. Survey of Wis., Iowa, and Minn., and incidentally of a portion of Nebraska Territory, by D. D. Owen, Philadelphia, 1852, pp. 215–418.

OWEN, D. D. Geol. Survey of Iowa, Minnesota, and Wisconsin, and incidentally of a portion of Nebraska Territory, Philadelphia, 1852, pp. xvii–xxxviii, 39–206, plates.

OWEN, RICHARD. Description of the impressions and footprints of the Protichnites from the Potsdam sandstone of Canada. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc. London, vol. 8, 1852, pp. 214–225.

ROEMER, FERD. Die Kreidebildungen von Texas und ihre organischen Einschlusse, Bonn, 1852, pp. 100.

SEDGWICK, ADAM. On the classification and nomenclature of the Lower Paleozic rocks of England and Wales. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc. London, vol. 8, 1852, pp. 136–168.

SHUMARD, B. F. Local details of geologic sections on the St. Peter's, Mississippi, Wisconsin, Baraboo, Snake, and Kettle Rivers. Report of a geological survey of Wis., Iowa, and Minn., and incidentally of a portion of Nebraska Territory, by D. D. Owen, Philadelphia, 1852, pp. 475–531, pls.

1853.

BARRANDE, J. [Silur-Fauna im Wisconsin und im New York.] Neues Jahrbuch für Miner., 1853, pp. 335–347.

——— [Silur-Gebilde im Texas und am Oberen-See.] Neues Jahrbuch für Miner., 1853, pp. 446, 447.

BIGSBY, J. J. On the geology of Quebec and its environs. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 9, 1853, pp. 82–101.

LESLEY, J. P. [Report on Hiwassee copper region.] First annual report of the board of directors of the Hiwassee Mining Company, made May 11, 1853. New York, 1853, pp. 12–19.

SALTER, J. W., and W. T. AVELINE. On the "Caradoc sandstone" of Shropshire. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc. London, vol. 9, 1853, pp. 62–73.

THOMPSON, ZADOCK. Geology of Vermont. Natural History of Vermont. Burlington, 1853, Appendix, pp. 40–58.

1854.

HUNT, T. S. On some of the crystalline limestones of North America. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 18, 1854, pp. 193–200.

LOGAN, W. E. [Exploration on the north side of the St. Lawrence, between Montreal and Cape Tourmente.] Geol. Surv. Canada, Rep. progress for 1852–'53, 1854, pp. 5–74.

MURRAY, ALEX. [Exploration between Kingston and Lake Simcoe.] Geol. Surv. Can., Rep. progress for 1852–'53, 1854, pp. 75–152.

1855.

DAWSON, J. W. Acadian Geology, first edition. Edinburgh, 1855, pp. 384.

LAPHAM, I. A. Geological map of Wisconsin. Milwaukee, 1855.

LOGAN, W. E. [Sur la formation silurique des environs de Québec.] Soc. géol. France, Bull., 2e sér., vol. 12, 1855, pp. 504–508.

SCHOOLCRAFT, H. R. Observations on the geology and mineralogy of the region embracing the sources of the Mississippi River and the Great Lake basins during the expedition of 1820. Schoolcraft's Mississippi River, Phila., 1855, pp. 303–362. Reprint from report made in 1820.

SWALLOW, G. C. Geology of Missouri. [Silurian system.] Geol. Survey Missouri, 1st and 2d Ann. Repts, part 1, 1855, pp. 107–133.

WHITNEY, J. D. Remarks on some points connected with the geology of the north shore of Lake Superior. Am. Assoc. Proc., vol. 9, 1855, pp. 204–209.

1856.

EMMONS, EBENEZER. American Geology, containing a full statement of the principles of the science, with full illustrations of the characteristic American fossils. Albany, 1856. Vol. 1, pt. 2.

——— Geological report of the midland counties of North Carolina. New York and Raleigh, 1856, pp. xx, 347, map and 12 pls.

JACKSON, C. T. [On the Braintree argillite and its trilobites.] Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 6, 1856, pp. 42–44.

PERCIVAL, JAMES G. Annual report of the geological survey of the State of Wisconsin, Madison, 1856, pp. 111.

ROGERS, W. B. Proofs of the Protozoic age of some of the altered rocks of eastern Massachusetts from fossils recently discovered. Am. Acad., Proc., vol. 3, 1856, pp. 315–318.

——— [On trilobites from Braintree and on the geological relations of the district.] Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 6, 1856, pp. 27–29, 40, 41.

——— Discovery of Paleozoic fossils in eastern Massachusetts. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 22, 1856, pp. 296–298.

SAFFORD, J. M. A geological reconnaissance of Tennessee, 1st biennial report, Nashville, 1856, pp. 154 and map.

1857.

ENGELMANN, H. Report of a geological exploration from Fort Leavenworth to Bryan's Pass, made in connection with the survey for a road from Fort Riley to Bridger's Pass, under Bryan. Rept. Sec. of War, Appendix H, 1857, pp. 489–517.

ROGERS, H. D. On the correlation of the North American and British Paleozoic strata. British Assoc. Adv. Sci., vol. 26, 1857, Trans. Sec., pp. 175–186.

1858.

BIGSBY, JOHN J. On the Paleozoic basin of the State of New York. Part I. A synoptical view of the mineralogical and fossil characters of the Paleozoic strata of the State of New York. Quar. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 14, pp. 335–427.

——— Part II. Classification of the Paleozoic strata of the State of New York, Ibid. pp. 427–452.

HALL, JAMES. Geology of Iowa, vol. 1, 1858, pp. 35–146, 473–724.

HAYDEN, F. V. Explorations under the War Department. Explanations of a second edition of a geological map of Nebraska and Kansas, based upon information obtained in an expedition to the Black Hills, under command of Lieut. G. K. Warren, topographical engineer, U. S. Army. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 26, 1858, pp. 276–278.

LEA, ISAAC. [On the trilobite formation at Braintree, Massachusetts.] Phila. Acad. Sci., Proc., vol. 9, 1858, p. 205.

MEEK, F. B., and F. V. HAYDEN. Fossils of Nebraska. Letter from F. B. Meek and F. V. Hayden. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 25, 1858, pp. 439–441.

ROGERS, HENRY DARWIN. The geology of Pennsylvania. Two vols. Philadelphia, 1858. Vol. 1, pp. 596, and pls; vol. 2, pp. 1046 and 30 pls., and atlas of 2 maps and 2 pls.

TUOMEY, M. Second biennial report on the geology of Alabama, Montgomery, 1858, pp. 168 and pl.

WHITNEY, J. D. Geol. Surv. Iowa, vol. 1, 1858, pp. 259–472.

1859.

BIGSBY, JOHN J. On the Paleozoic basin of the State of New York. Part III. An inquiry into the sedimentary and other external relations of the Paleozoic fossils of the State of New York. Quar. Jour. Geol. Soc. London, vol. 15, 1859, pp. 251–335.

DANIELS, EDWARD. [Notes on geology of Wisconsin and adjacent States.] Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 6, 1859, pp. 309, 310.

HALL, JAMES. Remarks upon the trilobites of the shales of the Hudson River group. Palæontology of New York, vol. 3, supplement to vol. 1, 1859, pp. 525–529.

HAYDEN, F. V. Explorations under the War Department. Explanations of a second edition of a geological map of Nebraska and Kansas, based upon information obtained in an expedition to the Black Hills, under command of Lieut. G. K. Warren, topographical engineer, U. S. Army. Phila. Acad. Sci., Proc., vol. 10, 1859, pp. 139–153.

HITCHCOCK, EDWARD. [Catalogue of State cabinet and notes on metamorphic rocks.] Sixth annual report of the secretary of Massachusetts Board of Agriculture, etc., by Charles L. Flint, Boston, 1859, pp. iii–lxix.

JACKSON, C. T. [On a trilobite from Braintree.] Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 7, 1859, p. 54.

MEEK, F. B., and F. V. HAYDEN. [Some remarks on the geology of the Black Hills and portions of the surrounding country.] Phila. Acad. Sci., Proc., vol. 10, 1859, pp. 41–49, map.

SALTER, J. W. On the fossils of the lingula-flags or "zone primordiale." Quar. Jour. Geol. Soc, London, vol. 15, 1859, pp. 551–555.

SHUMARD, B. F. Letter touching the late discovery of Lower Silurian rocks, equivalent to the Potsdam sandstone and Calciferous sandrock of the New York system, in Burnet County, Texas. Trans. Acad. Sci., St. Louis, vol. 1, 1859, pp. 672, 673.

1860.

BARRANDE, J. Trilobiten der Primordial-Fauna in Massachusetts. Neues Jahrb., für Miner, 1860, pp. 429–431.

BILLINGS, E. On some new species of fossils from the limestone near Point Levi, opposite Quebec. Canadian Naturalist, vol. 5, 1860, pp. 301–324.

——— [Review of] Acadian Geology, and a Supplementary Chapter thereto. Canadian Naturalist, vol. 5, 1860, pp. 450–455.

BRADLEY, F. H. Description of a New Trilobite from the Potsdam Sandstone. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 30, 1860, pp. 241, 242.

DAWSON, J. W. Supplementary Chapter to Acadian Geology, Edinburgh, 1860, pp. 70.

HALL, JAMES. Note upon the trilobites of the shales of the Hudson River group, in the town of Georgia, Vt. Thirteenth Ann. Rep. State Cab. Nat. Hist., 1860, pp. 113–119. Report upon the Geology of Vermont, vol. 1, 1861, pp. 367–372.

LOGAN, SIR W. E. On the track of an animal lately found in the Potsdam formation. Canadian Naturalist, vol. 5, 1860, pp. 279–285.

MARCOU, JULES; JOACHIM BARRANDE and. On the Primordial fauna and the Taconic system; with additional notes by Jules Marcou. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 7, 1860, pp. 369–382; Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 31, 1860, pp. 212–215; Canadian Naturalist, vol. 6, 1860, pp. 108–112.

TYSON, PHILIP T. First Report of the State Agricultural Chemist of Maryland. Annapolis, 1860, pp. 145 and 20, map.

1861.

BARRANDE, J. Documents anciens et nouveaux sur la faune primordiale et le système taconique en Amérique. Soc. géol. France, Bull., 2e sér., vol. 18, 1861, pp. 203–321.

BILLINGS, E. On the Age of the Red Sandstone Formation of Vermont. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 32, 1861, p. 232.

HALL, JAMES. On the Primordial fauna and Point Levi fossils. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 31, 1861, pp. 220–226. Canadian Naturalist, vol. 6, 1861, pp. 106–120.

——— Report of the Superintendent of the Geological Survey [of Wisconsin] Exhibiting the progress of the work. January 1, 1861. Madison, 1861, pp. 52.

——— Correction for the 13th Annual Report. Fourteenth Ann. Rep. State Cab. Nat. Hist., 1861, p. 110.

HAYDEN, F. V. Sketch of the geology of the country about the headwaters of the Missouri and Yellowstone rivers. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 31, 1861, pp. 229–245.

HITCHCOCK, C. H. Hypozoic and Paleozoic rocks. Report on the geology of Vermont, descriptive, theoretical, economical, and scenographical, vol. 1, 1861, pp. 257–294. Notes on the Sections, vol. 2, 1861, pp. 595–682.

——— [On the Geology of Vermont, chiefly in connection with the Taconic system.] Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 7, 1861, pp. 426, 427.

——— General Report on the Geology of Maine. Prelim. Rep. on the Natural History and Geology of Maine. Augusta, 1861, pp. 146–328.

HUNT, T. STERRY. On some points in American geology. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 31, 1861, pp. 392–414. Canadian Naturalist, vol. 6, 1861, pp. 81–105.

JACKSON, C. T. [On a trilobite from Braintree.] Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 8, 1861, p. 58.

LOGAN, W. E. Remarks on the fauna of the Quebec group of rocks and the Primordial zone of Canada. Canadian Naturalist, vol. 5, 1860, pp. 472–477; vol. 6, 1861, pp. 106–120; Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 31, 1861, pp. 216–220. Remarques sur la faune des roches du groupe de Québec et sur la zone primordiale du Canada. Soc. géol., France, Bull., 2e sér., vol. 18, 1861, pp. 309–914.

MARCOU, JULES. The Taconic and Lower Silurian rocks of Vermont and Canada. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 8, 1861, pp. 239–253.

MEEK, F. B., and F. V. HAYDEN. Descriptions of new Lower Silurian (Primordial) Jurassic, Cretaceous, and Tertiary Fossils, collected in Nebraska; with some remarks on the rocks from which they were obtained. Phila. Acad. Sci., Proc., vol. 13, 1861, pp. 415–447.

NEWBERRY, J. S. Geological Report. Report upon the Colorado River of the West, explored in 1857–'58 by Lieut. J. C. Ives. Part III, 1861, pp. 154.

ORDWAY, ALBERT. On the occurrence of other fossil forms at Braintree, Massachusetts. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 8, 1861, pp. 5, 6.

ROGERS, WILLIAM B. [Notes on the geological structure of western Vermont.] Report on the geology of Vermont, vol. 1, 1861, pp. 326, 327.

——— [On fossiliferous pebbles of Potsdam rocks in Carboniferous conglomerate north of Fall River, Massachusetts.] Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 7, 1861, pp. 389–391.

——— Remarks on the geology of the neighborhood of St. John, New Brunswick. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist.. Proc., vol. 7, 1861, p. 176.

SHUMARD, B. F. [Letter on the Primordial of Texas.] Soc. géol. France, Bull., 2e sér. vol. 18, 1861, pp. 218, 219.

——— The Primordial zone of Texas, with descriptions of new fossils. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 32, 1861, pp. 213–221.

WINCHELL, A. Geology. [General sketch.] Geol. Surv. Michigan, 1st Biennial Rep. of Prog., Lansing, 1861, pp. 21–141.

1862.

AGASSIZ, LOUIS. [On the difference between faunas of zoological and geological periods.] Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 8, 1862, p. 58.

BILLINGS, E. On Prof. J. Hall's claim to priority in the determination of the age of the Red Sandrock series of Vermont. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 33, 1862, pp. 370–376.

——— Further observations on the age of the Red Sandrock formation (Potsdam Group) of Canada and Vermont. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 33, 1862, pp. 100–105. (See note and corrections, same vol., pp. 421, 422.)

DAWSON, J. W. On the flora of the Devonian period in Northeastern America. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 18, 1862, pp. 296–330.

HALL, JAMES. Physical geography and general geology. Geol. Survey Wisconsin, vol. 1, 1862, pp. 1–72, maps.

——— On a new crustacean from the Potsdam sandstone. Canadian Naturalist, vol. 7, 1862, pp. 443–445.

——— Supplementary note to the 13th Ann. Rep. State Cab. Nat. Hist., New York. Fifteenth Ann. Rep. State Cab. Nat. Hist., New York, 1862, p. 114.

——— [Letter on the Primordial of America.] Soc. géol. France., Bull., 2e sér., vol. 19, 1862, pp. 725–734.

——— On the Potsdam sandstone and Hudson River rocks in Vermont. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d. ser., vol. 33, 1862, pp. 106–108.

HAYDEN, F. V. The Primordial sandstone of the Rocky Mountains in the Northwestern Territories of the United States. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 33, 1862, pp. 68–79. Canadian Journal, new ser., vol. 7, 1862, pp. 149–151.

HITCHCOCK, C. H. Reports on the Geology of Maine. Second Annual report on the natural history and Geology of Maine. Augusta, 1862, pp. 223–264, 266–312, 323–332, 343–352, 377–382, 388–395, 404–405, 422–430, map.

——— Fossils of the Potsdam Group in North America. Portland Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc. vol. 1, 1862, pp. 87–90.

JUKES, J. BEETE. The Student's Manual of Geology. Second edition, Edinburgh, 1862, pp. xx, 764.

MARCOU, JULES. [The slate of Nova Scotia metamorphic Taconic rock.] Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 9, 1862, p. 47.

OWEN, RICHARD. Preliminary observations; General report and description by counties. [Lower and Upper Silurian.] Geological reconnaissance of Indiana, made in 1859–'60, Indianapolis, 1862, pp. 3–26, 30–91.

SHUMARD, B. F. Notice of some new and imperfectly known fossils from the Primordial Zone (Potsdam and Calciferous sand group) of Wisconsin and Missouri. St. Louis Acad. Sci. Trans., vol. 2, 1862, pp. 101–107.

WHITNEY, J. D. [Stratigraphical geology.] Geol. Survey Wisconsin, vol. 1, 1862, pp. 140–192.

1863.

BIGSBY, J. J. On the Cambrian and Huronian formations. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc. London, vol. 19, 1863, pp. 36–52.

CAMPBELL, J. Report on the Gold Fields of Nova Scotia. Halifax, 1863, pp. 12.

COOK, GEORGE H. Report of Prof. George H. Cook upon the geological survey of New Jersey, and its progress during the year 1863, pp. 13.

DANA, JAMES D. Manual of geology, 1st ed., New Haven, 1863.

DEVINE, T. Description of a new trilobite from the Quebec group. Canadian Naturalist, vol. 8, 1863, pp. 95–98; 210, 211.

HALL, JAMES. Preliminary notice of the fauna of the Potsdam sandstone, with remarks on the previously known species of fossils and descriptions of some new ones from the sandstone of the Upper Mississippi Valley. 16th Ann. Rep. Regents Univ. State Cab. Nat. Hist., 1863, pp. 119–220. Albany Inst., Trans., vol. 5, 1867, pp. 93–195.

HAYDEN, F. V. On the geology and natural history of the Upper Missouri. Am. Philos. Soc. Trans., new ser., vol. 12, 1863, pp. 1–217, with map.

LOGAN, W. E. Geological Survey of Canada; Report of Progress from its Commencement to 1863. Montreal, 1863, pp. 983.

MATTHEW, G. F. Observations on the geology of St. John County, New Brunswick. Canadian Naturalist, vol. 8, 1863, pp. 241–259.

WHITTLESEY, CHARLES. The Penokie Mineral Range, Wisconsin. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 9, 1863, pp. 235–244.

1864.

MEEK, F. B., and F. V. HAYDEN. Paleontology of the Upper Missouri; a report upon collections made principally by the expeditions under command of Lieut. G. K. Warren in 1855–'56. Invertebrates. Smithsonian Contributions, No. 172, 1864, pp. 136, plates.

WINCHELL, ALEXANDER. Notice of a small collection of fossils from the Potsdam sandstone of Wisconsin and Lake Superior sandstone of Michigan. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 37, 1864, pp. 226–232.

1865.

BAILEY, L. W. Observations on the geology of Southern New Brunswick. Fredericton, 1865, pp. 1–30, 31–122.

BAILY, W. H. The Cambrian rocks of the British Islands, with especial reference to the occurrence of this formation and its fossils in Ireland. Geol. Magazine, vol. 2, 1865, pp. 385–400.

BILLINGS, E. Paleozoic Fossils, vol. I. Containing descriptions and figures of new or little known species of organic remains from the Silurian rocks. 1860–'65. Montreal, 1865, pp. 426. (Of this volume pp. 1–24 were issued in Nov., 1861; pp. 25–56 issued Jan. 1862; pp. 57–168 issued in June, 1862; pp. 169–344 issued Feb., 1865; pp. 395–416 published in Canadian Naturalist, vol. 5, 1860, pp. 301–324.)

HARTT, C. FRED. Preliminary notice of a fauna of the Primordial period in the vicinity of St. John, N. B. Observations on the geology of southern New Brunswick. 1865, pp. 30, 31.

LOGAN, W. E. Geological Survey of Canada. Atlas of maps and sections with an Introduction and Appendix. [To accompany report of Progress from commencement to 1863.] Montreal, 1865, 11 maps and sections.

MATTHEW, G. F. On the Azoic and Paleozoic rocks of southern New Brunswick. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 21, 1865, pp. 422–434, map. Canadian Naturalist, new ser., vol. 3, 1865, pp. 387–391.

1866.

LOGAN, W. E. Lower Silurian Rocks of North America. Geol. Surv. Newfoundland, Rep. Prog. for 1864, Montreal, 1866, pp. 45, 46. Revised ed. 1881, pp. 47–50.

——— Report for 1866. Geol. Surv. Canada. Rep. of Prog. 1863 to 1866; 1866, pp. 3–27.

LOGAN, W. E., and JAMES HALL. Geological map of Canada and part of the United States, from Hudson's Bay to Virginia and from the Missouri River to Newfoundland. Montreal, 1866.

MURRAY, ALEXANDER. Sequence and distribution of the rocks of the great Northern Peninsula. Geol. Survey Newfoundland. Rep. of Prog. for 1864. Montreal, 1866, pp. 10, 44. Revised edition 1881, pp. 5–47.

1867.

DAWSON, J. W. On recent geological discoveries in the Acadian provinces of British America. Am. Assoc., Proc., vol. 16, 1867, pp. 117–119. Canadian Naturalist, new ser., vol. 3, 1868, pp. 295–297.

HITCHCOCK, C. H. The Winooski marble of Colchester, Vermont. Am. Assoc., Proc., vol. 16, 1867, p. 119.
——— The geology of Vermont. Am. Assoc., Proc., vol. 16, 1867, pp. 120–122.
LYMAN, B. S. On the Lower Silurian brown hematite beds of America. Am. Assoc., Proc., vol. 16, 1867, pp. 114–117.
MACFARLANE, THOMAS. On the geological formations of Lake Superior. Canadian Naturalist, new ser., vol. 3, 1867–'68, pp. 177–201, 241–256.
PERRY, JOHN P. The red sandstone of Vermont and its relations. Am. Assoc., Proc., vol. 16, 1867, pp. 128–134.

1868.

AGASSIZ, ALEXANDER. On the position of the sandstone of the southern slope of a portion of Keweenaw Point, Lake Superior. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 11, 1868, pp. 244–246.
COOK, GEORGE H. Geology of New Jersey. (With 13 maps in portfolio and 7 pls. bound in volume.) Newark, 1868, pp. 900.
DAWSON, J. W. Acadian geology. The geological structure, organic remains, and mineral resources of Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and Prince Edward Island, 2d ed., London, 1868, pp. xxvi, 694, map.
HARTT, C. FRED. Fossils of the Primordial or Acadian group at St. John. In Dawson, Acadian geology, 1868, pp. 641–657.
HUNT, T. STERRY. On some points in the geology of Vermont. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 46, 1868, pp. 222–229.
MEEK, F. B. Preliminary notice of a remarkable new genus of corals, probably typical of a new family * * * from the Silurian rocks of Nevada Territory. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 45, 1868, pp. 62–64.
——— Note on Ethmophyllum and Archeocyathus. Am Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol 46, 1868, p. 144.
MURRAY, ALEXANDER. Of the sequence and distribution of the formations. Report upon the geological survey of Newfoundland for 1868, St. Johns, 1868, pp. 68. Revised edition, 1881, pp. 137–186.
PERRY, JOHN P. Queries on the red sandstone of Vermont and its relations. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 11, 1868, pp. 341–353.

1869.

HAYDEN, F. V. Geological Report of the Exploration of the Yellowstone and Missouri Rivers, under the direction of Capt. W. F. Raynolds, 1859–'60. Washington, 1869, pp. 144, with a geological map.
HIND, H. Y. Report on the Waverly Gold District, with geological maps and sections. Halifax, 1869, pp. 62.
KERR, W. C. Report of the State Geologist of North Carolina. Raleigh, 1869, pp. 57.
LAPHAM, I. A. Geological map of Wisconsin. Milwaukee, 1869.
MARSH, O. C. Description of a new species of Protichnites from the Potsdam sandstone of New York. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 48, 1869, pp. 46–49.
MATTHEW, G. F., and L. W. BAILEY. Remarks on the age and relations of the metamorphic rocks of New Brunswick and Maine. Am. Assoc. Proc., vol. 18, 1869, pp. 179–195. Canadian Naturalist, new ser., vol. 4, 1869, pp. 326–328.
SAFFORD, JAMES M. Geology of Tennessee. Nashville, 1869, pp. 551, 7 pls. and map.
SHALER, N. S. [On the relations of the rocks in the vicinity of Boston.] Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 13, 1869, pp. 172–178.

1870.

HIND, H. Y. Preliminary Report on a Gneissoid Series Underlying the Gold-bearing Rocks of Nova Scotia, and supposed to be the equivalent of the Laurentian system. Halifax, N. S., 1870, pp. 14.
——— Report on the Sherbrooke Gold District, together with a paper on the gneisses of Nova Scotia, and an abstract of a paper on gold mining in Nova Scotia. Halifax, N. S., 1870, pp. 79.
——— On two gneissoid series in Nova Scotia and New Brunswick, supposed to be the equivalents of the Huronian (Cambrian) and Laurentian. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 26, 1870, pp. 468–479.
——— On the Laurentian and Huronian series in Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 49, 1870, pp. 347–355.
HITCHCOCK, C. H. The geology of Vermont. In geology of northern New England, 1870, pp. 5. Note added May 25, 1882.
HUNT, T. STERRY. On the geology of Eastern New England. Am. Jour. Sci., 2dser., vol. 50, 1870, pp. 83–90.

MEEK, F. B. Descriptions of fossils collected by the United States Geological Survey under the charge of Clarence King, esq. Phila. Acad. Sci., Proc., vol. 22, 1870, pp. 56–64.

MURRAY, ALEXANDER. Of the rocks and associated minerals [of Bonavista Bay, etc.]. Report upon the geological survey of Newfoundland for 1869, St. Johns, 1870. Revised edition, 1881, pp. 194–205.

RICHARDSON, JAMES. Report on the south shore of the St. Lawrence, below Quebec. Geol. Surv. Canada, report progress for 1866 to 1869, 1870, pp. 119–141, map.

WHITE, C. A. General geology. Azoic, Lower Silurian, Upper Silurian, and Devonian systems. Geol. Survey Iowa, vol. 1, Des Moines, 1870, pp. 167–183.

1871.

FORD, S. W. Notes on the primordial rocks in the vicinity of Troy, N. Y. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 2, 1871, pp. 32–34. Canadian Naturalist, new ser., vol. 6, 1872, pp. 209–213.

HAYDEN, F. V. Report of F. V. Hayden [on the geological survey of Wyoming]. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., 4th Ann. Report, 1871, pp. 11–81.

HUNT, T. S. On the geology of the vicinity of Boston. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 14, 1871, pp. 45–49.

MEEK, F. B. Notice of a new brachiopod from the lead-bearing rocks at Mine La Motte, Missouri. Phila. Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 23, 1871, pp. 185–187.

MURRAY, ALEXANDER. Of Primordial Silurian and related formations. Rep. Geol. Surv. N. F. for 1870, St. Johns, 1870 [1871], pp. 30–43. Revised edition, London, 1881, pp. 232–241.

SWALLOW, G. C. Remarks on the geological map and section of the rocks of Missouri. American Naturalist, vol. 5, 1871, pp. 541, 542. Am. Asso., Proc., vol. 20, 1871, p. 262.

1872.

BAILEY, L. W. and G. F. MATTHEW. Preliminary report on the geology of southern New Brunswick. Geol. Surv. Canada, Rep. of Prog., 1870–'71, 1872, pp. 13–240.

BILLINGS, E. Note on the discovery of fossils in the "Winooski marble" at Swanton, Vermont. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 3, 1872, pp. 145–146. Canadian Naturalist, new ser., vol. 6, p. 351.

——— On some fossils from the Primordial rocks of Newfoundland. Canadian Naturalist, new ser., vol. 6, 1872, pp. 465–479.

——— On some new species of Potsdam fossils. Canadian Naturalist, new ser., vol. 6, 1872, pp. 213–226, 240.

BRADLEY, F. H. On the discovery of the Quebec formation in Idaho. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 4, 1872, p. 133.

BROOKS, T. B., and R. PUMPELLY. On the age of the copper-bearing rocks of Lake Superior. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 3, 1872, pp. 428–432.

DANA, JAMES D. Green Mountain geology. On the quartzite. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 3, 1872, pp. 179–186, 250–256.

FORD, S. W. Descriptions of some new species of Primordial fossils. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 3, 1872, pp. 419–422.

HUNT, T. S. History of the names Cambrian and Silurian in geology. Canadian Naturalist, new ser., vol. 6, 1872, pp. 281–312, 417–448.

IRVING, R. D. On the age of the quartzites, schists, and conglomerates of Sauk County, Wisconsin. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 3, 1872, pp. 93–99. Wisconsin Acad. Sci., Trans., vol. 1, 1872, pp. 129–137.

MEEK, F. B. Report on the paleontology of eastern Nebraska. Final Report U. S. Geological Survey of Nebraska, Washington, 1872, pp. 82–139.

SELWYN, A. R. C. Notes and Observations on the gold fields of Quebec and Nova Scotia. Geol. Surv. Canada, Report Prog. for 1870–71, 1872, pp. 252–282.

WHITNEY, J. D. [On some fossils from Eureka, Nevada.] California Acad. Sci., Proc., vol. 4, 1872, p. 200.

——— Note on the occurrence of the "Primordial fauna" in Nevada. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 3, 1872, pp. 84–86.

1873.

BRADLEY, FRANK, H. Report of Frank H. Bradley, geologist of the Snake River Division. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., 6th Ann. Rep., 1873, pp. 193–271.

——— Explorations of 1872; U. S. Geological Survey of the Territories, under Dr. F. V. Hayden; Snake River Division. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 6, 1873, pp. 194–207.

DAWSON, J. W. Impressions and footprints of aquatic animals and imitative markings on Carboniferous rocks. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 5, 1873, pp. 16–24.
——— Address [On fauna and species in geological time; on the Laurentian and Primordial, and on the so-called glacial period.] Canadian Naturalist, new ser., vol. 7, 1873, pp. 1–11.
FORD, S. W. Remarks on the distribution of the fossils in the Lower Potsdam rocks at Troy, N. Y., with descriptions of a few new species. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol 5, 1873, pp. 134–140.
HALL, JAMES. Notes on some new and imperfectly known forms among the Brachiopoda, etc. 23d Ann. Rep. N. Y. State Mus. Nat. Hist., 1873, pp. 244–247.
HALL, JAMES, and R. P. WHITFIELD. Notice of two new species of fossil shells from the Potsdam sandstone of New York. 23d Rept. New York State Mus. Nat. Hist., 1873, pp. 241, 242.
HAYDEN, F. V. Report of F. V. Hayden. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., 6th Ann. Rep., 1873, pp. 13–85.
HITCHCOCK, C. H. The Geology of Portland. Am. Assoc., Proc., vol. 22, part 2, 1873, pp. 163–175.
LESLEY, J. P. The iron ores of the South Mountain along the line of the Harrisburg and Potomac Railway in Cumberland County, Pennsylvania. Am. Phil. Soc., Proc., vol. 13, 1873, pp. 3–21.
MEEK, F. B. Preliminary paleontological report * * * with remarks on the ages of the rocks, etc. U. S. Geol. Survey of the Territories, 6th Ann. Rep., 1873, pp. 429–518.
——— Reports on the Geological Survey of the State of Missouri, 1855–1871, 1873, pp. 111–188.
MURRAY, ALEX. Distribution of the Formations [of Avalon]. Report upon the Geol. Survey of Newfoundland for the year 1872, St. John's, 1873, pp. 14–34. Revised edition, London, 1881, pp. 279–297.
NEWBERRY, J. S. Circles of deposition in American sedimentary rocks. Am. Assoc. Proc., vol. 22, 1873, part 2, pp. 185–196. Canadian Naturalist, new ser., vol. 7, 1873, pp. 163–164.
ROMINGER, C. Paleozoic rocks. Geol. Survey Michigan, Upper Peninsula, 1869–1873, vol. 1, pt. 3, 1873, pp. 1–105.
SEDGWICK, ADAM. [On the classification of the Cambrian rocks.] A Catalogue of the Collection of Cambrian and Silurian Fossils contained in the Geological Museum of the University of Cambridge, by J. W. Salter, 1873, pp. ix–xxxiii.
WINCHELL, N. H. General sketch of the geology of Minnesota. Geol. and Nat. Hist. Survey Minnesota, First Ann. Rep. for 1872, 1873, pp. 40–48, 60–118.
——— Preliminary Geological Map of Minnesota, 1872. Geol. and Nat. Hist. Survey Minnesota. First Ann. Rep. for 1872, 1873. Map faces p. 45.

1874.

BRADLEY, FRANK H. Note on the occurrence of metamorphic Silurian rocks in North Carolina. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 8, 1874, p. 390.
BROADHEAD, G. C. Geological Survey Missouri. Including field work of 1873–74, vol. 1. Jefferson City, 1874, pp. 18–34, 322–370.
BUCKLEY, S. B. First Annual Report of the Geological and Agricultural Survey of Texas. Houston, 1874, pp. 142.
COMSTOCK, T. B. Geological report. Report upon the Reconnaissance of Northwestern Wyoming, made in the summer of 1873, by William A. Jones, 1874, pp. 85–184, with a colored geological map.
COOK, GEO. H. Geological Survey of New Jersey. Map of northern New Jersey, showing the iron ore and limestone districts, 1874.
DANA, JAMES D. Reasons for some of the changes in the subdivisions of geological time in the new edition of Dana's Manual of Geology. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 8, 1874, pp. 213–216.
GILBERT, G. K. On the age of the Tonto sandstone. (Abstract.) Washington Phil. Soc. Bull., vol. 1, 1874, p. 109.
HAYDEN, F. V. Report of F. V. Hayden, U. S. Geologist. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., Seventh Ann. Rep. 1874, pp. 17–82.
HITCHCOCK, C. H. Physical history of New Hampshire. Geology of New Hampshire, Concord, 1874, vol. 1, pp. 506–545.
——— History of the geological surveys of New Hampshire. Geology of New Hampshire, vol. 1, 1874, pp. 3–55.
IRVING, R. D. On the age of the copper-bearing rocks of Lake Superior; and on the westward continuation of the Lake Superior synclinal. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 8, 1874, pp. 46–56.

IRVING, R. D. On some points in the geology of northern Wisconsin. Wisconsin Acad. Sci., Trans., vol. 2, 1874, pp. 107–119.
JENNEY, W. P. (Recent explorations in the geology of Western Texas.) New York Lyceum Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 2, 1874, pp. 68, 69.
KILLEBREW, J. B. Resources of Tennessee. Nashville, 1874, pp. 26–46.
NEWBERRY, J. S. Remarks on geology of Western Texas. New York Lyceum Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 2, 1874, pp. 69, 70.
PEALE, A. C. Report of A. C. Peale, M. D., geologist of the South Park Division. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., Seventh Ann. Rep., 1874, pp. 193–273.
WHITE, C. A. Preliminary report upon invertebrate fossils collected by the expeditions of 1871, 1872, and 1873, with descriptions of new species. Geog. and Geol. Sur. West of 100th Mer., Lieut. Wheeler in charge, Washington, 1874, pp. 27.
WINCHELL, N. H. The geology of the Minnesota Valley. Geol. and Nat. Hist. Sur. Minn., Second Ann. Rep. for 1873, 1874, pp. 127–212.

1875.

BRADLEY, FRANK H. On the Silurian age of the southern Appalachians. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 9, 1875, pp. 279–288, 370–383.
DODGE, W. W. Notes on the geology of eastern Massachusetts. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 17, 1875, pp. 388–419.
FONTAINE, WILLIAM M. On the primordial strata of Virginia. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 9, 1875, pp. 361–369, 416–428.
FORD, S. W. Note on the discovery of a new locality of primordial fossils in Rensselaer County, New York. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 9, 1875, pp. 204–206.
GILBERT, G. K. Report on the geology of portions of Nevada, Utah, California, and Arizona examined in the years 1871 and 1872. Geog. and Geol. Expl. and Surv. West of the 100th Mer., Lieut. Geo. M. Wheeler in charge, vol. 3, Geology, 1875, pp. 17–187.
——— Report on the geology of portions of New Mexico and Arizona examined in 1873. Geog. and Geol. Expl. and Surv. West of the 100th Mer., Lieut. G. M. Wheeler in charge, vol. 3, 1875, pp. 503–567.
HAYDEN, F. V. Catalogue of the collections in geology and natural history obtained by the expedition under command of Lieut. G. K. Warren. Appx. to Rept. Sec. of War, in Rept. of Topog. Eng., for 1858 (reprint edition of 1875, pp. 59–125, map).
HICKS, HENRY. The physical conditions under which the Cambrian and Lower Silurian rocks were probably deposited over the European area. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc. London, vol. 31, 1875, pp. 552–558.
HITCHCOCK, C. H. Remarks on the stratigraphic structure of the Cambrian and Cambro-Silurian rocks of western Vermont. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 18, 1875, pp. 191–193.
HOWELL, EDWIN E. Report on the geology of portions of Utah, Nevada, Arizona, and New Mexico examined in the years of 1872 and 1873. Geog. and Geol. Expl. and Sur. West of the 100th Mer., Lieut. Geo. M. Wheeler in charge, vol. 3, Geology, 1875, pp. 227–301.
HUNT, T. STERRY. (Remarks on Massachusetts geology.) Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 17, 1875, pp. 509, 510.
IRVING, ROLAND D. Note on some new points in the elementary stratification of Primordial and Canadian rocks of south-central Wisconsin. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 9, 1875, pp. 440, 443.
KERR, W. C. Report of the geological survey of North Carolina, vol. 1. Raleigh, 1875, pp. xviii, 325.
MARVINE, A. R. Report on the geology of route from St. George, Utah, to Gila River. Arizona, examined in 1871. Geog. and Geol. Expl. and Sur. West of 100th Mer., Lieut. Geo. M. Wheeler in charge, vol. 3, Geology, 1875, pp. 189–225.
POWELL, J. W. Exploration of the Colorado River of the West and its tributaries, explored in 1869, 1870, 1871, and 1872. Washington, 1875, pp. 214.
ROGERS, W. B. On the Newport conglomerate. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 18, 1875, pp. 97–101.
SMITH, E. A. Geological Survey of Alabama. Report of progress for 1874. Montgomery, Alabama, 1875, pp. 139.
WHITE, C. A. Report upon the invertebrate fossils collected in portions of Nevada, Utah, Colorado, New Mexico, and Arizona by parties of the expeditions of 1871–'74. Expl. and Surv. West of the 100th Mer., Lieut. Geo. M. Wheeler, in charge, vol. 4, pt. i, 1875, pp. 219.

1876.

BUCKLEY, S. B. Second Annual Report of the Geological and Agricultural Survey of Texas. Houston, 1876, pp. 96.

CROSBY, W. O. Report on the Geological Map of Massachusetts. Boston, 1876, pp. 42.

DANA, EDW. S., and G. B. GRINNELL. Geological report. Report of a geological reconnoissance from Carroll, Montana Territory, on the upper Missouri, to the Yellowstone Park and return, made in the summer of 1875, under Wm. Ludlow, 1876, pp. 93–137.

FORD, S. W. On additional species of fossils from the Primordial of Troy and Lansingburgh, Rensselaer County, New York. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 11, 1876, pp. 369–371.

HUNT, T. STERRY. On the history of the crystalline stratified rocks. Am. Assoc. Proc., vol. 25, 1876, pp. 205–208.

——— The Cornwall iron mine and some related deposits in Pennsylvania. Am. Inst. Mining Eng., Trans., vol. 4, 1876, pp. 319–324.

KAYSER, EMANUEL. Ueber primordiale und untersilurische Fossilien aus der Argentinischen Republik. Beiträge zur Geologie und Palaeontologie der Argentinischen Republik; part II, Palaeontologischer Theil, I Abtheilung, 1876, pp. 33.

KING, CLARENCE. Paleozoic subdivisions on the Fortieth parallel. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 11, 1876, pp. 475–482.

LITTLE, GEORGE. Geological Survey of the State of Georgia. Hand-book of the State of Georgia, with geologic map of the State, by T. P. Janes, 1876, pp. 17–61.

LLOYD, T. G. B. Geological notes from the State of New York. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, 1876, vol. 32, pp. 76–79.

PEALE, A. C. [Report on Middle Division.] Stratigraphy—Paleozoic formations. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories. Ann. Rep. for 1874, 1876, pp. 110–120.

POWELL, J. W. Report on the Geology of the Eastern Portion of the Uinta Mountains and a Region of Country Adjacent Thereto. Washington, 1876, pp. 3–73, 136–210.

SMITH, EUGENE A. Report of Progress of the Geological Survey of Alabama for 1875. Montgomery, 1876, pp. 220.

SWEET, E. T. Notes on the geology of northern Wisconsin. Wisconsin Acad. Sci., Trans., vol. 3, 1876, pp. 40–55.

WHITE, CHARLES A. Invertebrate paleontology of the plateau province, together with notice of a few species from localities beyond its limits in Colorado. Report on the geology of the eastern portion of the Uinta Mountains, by J. W. Powell. Washington, 1876, pp. 74–135.

WHITFIELD, R. P. Descriptions of new species of fossils. Report of a reconnoissance from Carroll, Montana Territory, on the Upper Missouri, to the Yellowstone Park and return, made in the summer of 1875, under William Ludlow, 1876, pp. 139–145.

——— Description of new fossils. Report of Geol. Recon. of Black Hills. Appx. PP. of report of Chief of Engineers, 1876, pp. 1202, 1203.

WINCHELL, N. H. Notes on the deep well drilled at East Minneapolis, Minnesota, in 1874–'75. Minnesota Acad. Sci. Bull., vol. 1, 1876, pp. 187–189.

——— Report on the geology of Fillmore County. Geol. and Nat. Hist. Survey Minnesota; 4th Ann. Rep., for 1875, 1876, pp. 13–74, map.

——— Geological report [of a reconnaissance of the Black Hills of Dakota, made in the summer of 1874, by Capt. William Ludlow]. Report of the Chief of Engineers, Appx. PP, 1876, pp. 1131–1172.

1877.

BROADHEAD, G. C. The southeastern Missouri lead district. Am. Inst. Mining Eng. Trans., vol. 5, 1877, pp. 100–107.

CHAMBERLIN, T. C. [Geology of eastern Wisconsin.] Chapters 7 and 8, Lower and Upper Silurian. Geology of Wisconsin, Survey of 1873–'77, vol. 2, 1877, pp. 257–394.

CHAPMAN, E. J. On the probable nature of the supposed fossil tracks known as Protichnites and Climactichnites. Canadian Journal, new ser., vol. 15, 1877, pp. 486–490.

DANA, JAMES D. An account of the discoveries in Vermont geology of the Rev. Augustus Wing. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 13, 1877, pp. 332–347, 405–419; vol. 14, 1877, pp. 36–37.

FLETCHER, HUGH. Report of explorations and surveys in Cape Breton, Nova Scotia Geol. Surv. Canada, Rep. Progress for 1875–'76, 1877, pp. 369–418.

FORD, S. W. Note on Microdiscus speciosus. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 13, 1877, pp. 141, 142.
——— On some embryonic forms of trilobites from the Primordial at Troy, New York. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 13, 1877, pp. 265–273.
HAGUE, ARNOLD, and S. F. EMMONS. Descriptive geology. U. S. Geol. Expl. of the Fortieth Par. under Clarence King, vol. 2. 1877, pp. 890.
HALL, JAMES, and R. P. WHITFIELD. Paleontology [of the 40th parallel]. General remarks. U. S. Geol. Survey of the 40th parallel, vol. 4, 1877, pp. 199–302.
HITCHCOCK, C. H. Geology of New Hampshire, Concord, 1877, vol. 2, pp. 3–36.
——— Geological map of New Hampshire and Vermont, with notes on topography and geology. In Geology of Northern New England, 1877, pp. 17.
IRVING, ROLAND D. The Lower Silurian rocks. (Geology of central Wisconsin.) Geology of Wisconsin, Survey of 1873–1877, vol. 2, 1877, pp. 525–607.
——— Note on the age of the crystalline rocks of Wisconsin. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 13, 1877, pp. 307–309.
MEEK, F. B. Paleontology. Report of the Geol. Sur. of the Fortieth Parallel, vol. 4, 1877 pp. 197.
MILNE, JOHN, and ALEXANDER MURRAY. On the rocks of Newfoundland. Geological Magazine, vol. 4, new ser., decade II, 1877, pp. 251–262.
STRONG, MOSES. Geological formations. [Geology and topography of the lead regions.] Geology of Wisconsin, Survey of 1873–'77, vol. 2, 1877, pp. 668–688.
WHITFIELD, R. P. Preliminary report on the paleontology of the Black Hills. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Rocky Mountain Region, 1877, pp. 49.

1878.

DAWSON, J. W. Supplement to the second edition of Acadian Geology, containing additional facts as to the geological structure, fossil remains, and mineral resources of Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and Prince Edward Island, London, 1878, pp. 102.
ENDLICH, F. M. Report of F. M. Endlich, geologist of the White River division. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., 10th Ann. Rep., 1878, pp. 61–131.
FLETCHER, HUGH. Report on the geology of part of the counties of Victoria, Cape Breton, and Richmond, Nova Scotia. Geol. Surv. Canada, Rep. progress for 1876 '77. Montreal, 1878, pp. 402–456.
FORD, S. W. On certain forms of Brachiopoda occurring in the Swedish Primordial. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 15, 1878, pp. 364–366.
——— Note on the development of Olenellus asaphoides. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 15, 1878, pp. 129, 130.
——— Note on Lingulella coelata. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 15, 1878, pp. 127–129.
——— Two new species of Primordial fossils. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 15, 1878, pp. 124–127.
FRAZER, PERSIFOR, jr. (Note on the Martic anticlinal and on ripple marks on a slab of limestone.) Am. Phil. Soc., Proc., vol. 17, 1878, p. 725.
HUNT, T. S. Special report on the trap dikes and Azoic rocks of southern Pennsylvania. 2d Geol. Surv. Pa., E., 1878, pp. 253.
——— On the geology of the Eozoic rocks of North America. (Abstract.) Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 19, 1878, pp. 275–279.
KING, CLARENCE. Systematic geology. U. S. Geol. Exploration of the Fortieth Parallel, Clarence King, geologist in charge, vol. 1, 1878, pp. xii, 803.
MATTHEW, G. F. Report on the slate formations of the northern part of Charlotte County, New Brunswick. Geol. Surv. Canada, Rep. progress for 1876–'77. Montreal, 1878, pp. 321–350.
PRIME, FREDERICK, Jr. On the Paleozoic rocks of Lehigh and Northampton Counties, Pennsylvania. Am. Phil. Soc., Proc., vol. 17, 1878, pp. 248–254.
——— *Monocraterion lesleyi*, n. sp. Appendix to report on the Brown hematite deposits of the Siluro-Cambrian limestones of Lehigh County. 2d Geol. Surv. Penn., DD, 1878, pp. 79, 80.
——— On the discovery of Lower Silurian fossils in limestone associated with hydromica slates in eastern Pennsylvania. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 15, 1878, pp. 261–269.
SMITH, EUGENE A. Outline of the geology of Alabama. Berney's Hand-book of Alabama, 1878, pp. 129–196.
——— The iron ores of Alabama, with special reference to their geological relations. Am. Assoc., Proc., vol. 27, 1878, pp. 246–258.
WHITEAVES, J. F. On some Primordial fossils from southeastern Newfoundland. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d. ser., vol. 16, 1878, pp. 224–226.
WHITFIELD, R. P. Preliminary descriptions of new species of fossils from the lower geological formations of Wisconsin. Geol. Sur. of Wisconsin, Ann. Rep. for 1877, 1878, pp. 50–89.

WINCHELL, N. H. The geology of Rock and Pipestone Counties. Geol. and Nat. Hist. Survey Minnesota, 6th Ann. Rep. for 1877, 1878, pp. 93–111.
WORCESTER, L. C. Work in St. Croix, Dunn, and adjacent counties. Geol. Survey Wisconsin, Ann. Rep. for 1877, 1878, pp. 36–41.

1879.

BAILEY, L. W. Report on the pre-Silurian (Huronian) and Cambrian or Primordial Silurian rocks of southern New Brunswick. Geol. Surv. Canada, Rep. of Prog., 1877–78, 1879, pp. 34 DD.
BELL, ROBERT. Report on an exploration of the east coast of Hudson's Bay, 1877. Geol. Surv. Canada, Rep. Prog. for 1877–78 1879, pp. 37C.
CAMPBELL, J. L. Silurian formation in Central Virginia. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser. vol. 18, 1879. pp. 16–29. Geology of Virginia. Balcony Falls. The Blue Ridge and its geological connections. Some theoretical considerations. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser. vol. 18, 1879, pp. 435–445.
ENDLICH, F. M. Report on the geology of the Sweetwater district. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., 11th Ann. Rep., 1879, pp. 3–156.
(FRAZER, PERSIFOR.) [On the relations of the South Mountain rocks in Pennsylvania.] Am. Inst. Mining Eng. Trans., vol. 7, 1879, pp. 336–339.
HITCHCOCK, C. H. Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut. (Geological formations.) Macfarlane's Am. Geol. R. R. Guide, 1879, pp. 56–66.
HUNT, T. S. Dominion of Canada. (Geological formations.) Macfarlane's Am. Geol. R. R. Guide, 1879, pp. 52–55.
PEALE, A. C. Report on the geology of the Green River district. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., 11th Ann. Rep., 1879, pp. 509–644.
ROGERS, WILLIAM B. Virginia and West Virginia. (Geological formations.) Macfarlane's Am. Geol. R. R. Guide, 1879, pp. 179–185. Table of the geological formations found in Virginia and West Virginia. The Virginias, vol. 1, 1880, pp. 14, 15; vol. 3, 1882, pp. 61.
SAFFORD, JAMES M. Tennessee. (Geological formations.) Macfarlane's Am. Geol. R. R. Guide, 1879, pp. 196–199.
SELWYN, A. R. C. Report of observations on the stratigraphy of the Quebec group and the older crystalline rocks of Canada. Geol. Surv. Canada, Rep. of Prog. 1877–'78, pp. 15A. Canadian Naturalist, new ser., vol. 9, 1879, pp. 17–31.
ST. JOHN, ORESTES. Report of the geological field work of the Teton division. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., 11th Ann. Rep., 1879, pp. 321–508.
WALCOTT, C. D. Descriptions of new species of fossils from the Calciferous formation. 32d Rep. State Mus. Nat. Hist. N. Y., 1879, pp. 129–131.
WHITE, C. A. Report on the paleontological field work for the season of 1877. 11th Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Territories for 1877, 1879, pp. 251–265. (General discussion.)

1880.

BAILEY, L. W., G. F. MATTHEW, and R. W. ELLS. Report on the geology of southern New Brunswick embracing the counties of Charlotte, Sunbury, Queens, Kings, St. John, and Albert. Geol. Survey Canada, Rep. of Prog., 1878–'79, 1880, pp. 26D.
CAMPBELL, J. L. The Silurian formation in Central Virginia. (Revised.) The Virginias, vol. 1, 1880, pp. 41–45, 54–56.
——— The mineral resources and advantages of the country adjacent to the James River and Kanawha Canal and the Buchanan and Clifton Forge Railway. The Virginias, vol. 1, 1880, pp. 2–8.
CROSBY, W. O. Contributions to the geology of eastern Massachusetts. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., occasional papers, No. 3, 1880, pp. 286.
FORD, S. W. Note on the trilobite, Atops trilineatus of Emmons. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 19, 1880, pp. 152, 153.
FRAZER, PERSIFOR, Jr. The geology of Lancaster County. Second Geol. Survey Penn., Rep. progress in 1877, CCC. Harrisburg, 1880, pp. x, 350.
IRVING, R. D. The mineral resources of Wisconsin. Am. Inst. Mining Eng. Trans., vol. 8, 1880, pp. 478–508.
——— The Lake Superior or Potsdam sandstone. [Geology of the eastern Lake Superior district.] Geol. of Wisconsin, vol. 3, 1880, pp. 207–210.
——— Geological structure of Northern Wisconsin. [General geology of the Lake Superior region.] Geol. of Wisconsin, vol. 3. 1880, pp. 1–25.
MARCOU, JULES. Sur les colonies dans les roches taconiques des bords du lac Champlain. Soc. géol., France, Bull., 3e sér., vol. 9, 1880, pp. 18–46

MARR, J. E. On the pre-Devonian rocks of Bohemia. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc. London, vol. 36, 1880, pp. 591–619.
NEWTON, HENRY. Geology. Section IV. The Silurian. The Potsdam sandstone. U. S. Geog. and Geol. Survey of the Rocky Mountain region, J. W. Powell in charge: Report on the Black Hills of Dakota. 1880, pp. 80–107.
STRONG, MOSES. Geology of the upper St. Croix district. Geology of Wisconsin, survey of 1873–1879, vol. 3, 1880, pp. 390–428.
SWEET, E. T. Lake Superior sandstone. [Geology of the Western Lake Superior District.] Geology of Wisconsin, survey of 1873–1879, vol. 3, 1880, pp. 350–352.
WADSWORTH, M. E. Notes on the geology of the iron and copper district of Lake Superior. Cambridge Mus. Comp. Zool. Bull., vol 7, 1880, pp. 157.
WALCOTT, C. D. The Permian and other Paleozoic groups of the Kanab Valley, Arizona. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 20, 1880, pp. 221–224.
WHITE, C. A. Note on Acrothele. U. S. Nat. Mus. Proc., vol. 3, 1880, p. 47.
WHITFIELD, R. P. Paleontology of the Black Hills of Dakota. Report on the geology and resources of the Black Hills of Dakota, 1880, pp. 325–468.
WINCHELL, N. H. Section of a deep well at Emmetsburgh, Iowa. Minn. Acad. Sci. Bull., vol. 1, 1880, pp. 387, 388.

1881.

CROSBY, W. O. Geology of Frenchman's Bay. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc. vol. 21, 1881, pp. 109–117. Geology of Frenchman's Bay, Maine, just east of Mt. Desert Island. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 23, 1882, p. 64.
DUTTON, CLARENCE E. The physical geology of the Grand Cañon District. U. S. Geol. Survey, 2d Ann. Rep. 1880–'81, 1881, pp. 47–166.
FORD, S. W. Remarks on the genus Obolella. Am. Jour Sci., 3d ser., vol. 21, 1881, pp. 131–134.
——— Embryonic forms of trilobites from the Primordial rocks of Troy, N. Y. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 22, 1881, pp. 250–259.
HAGUE, ARNOLD. Report [on work in Eureka District]. U. S. Geol. Survey, 2d Ann. Rep., 1880–'81, 1881, pp. 21–35.
HALL, CHARLES E. The geology of Philadelphia County and of the southern parts of Montgomery and Bucks. 2d Geol. Survey Pa., C6, 1881 pp. XVII, XVIII, 93.
LAPWORTH, CHAS. Materials for the correlation of the Lower Palæozoic rocks of Britain and Scandanavia. Geological Magazine, new ser., decade II, vol. 8, 1881, pp. 260–266, 317–322.

1882.

BROADHEAD, G. C. Marble of southeast Missouri. Kansas City Review, vol. 5, 1882, pp. 523–526.
FRAZER, PERSIFOR. Mémoire sur la Géologie de la parte sud-est de la Pennsylvanie. Lille, 1882, pp. 179.
GEIKIE, ARCHIBALD. Text Book of Geology. London, 1882, pp. xi, 971.
HAGUE, ARNOLD. Abstract of report on geology of the Eureka district, Nevada. U. S. Geol. Survey, 3d Annual Report, 1881–1882, 1882, pp. 237–290.
KLOOS, J. H. Geological notes on Minnesota. (Translated by N. H. Winchell.) Geol. and Nat. Hist. Survey Minnesota, 10th Ann. Rep. for 1881, 1882, pp. 175–200.
RICHTOFEN, F. F. von. Geologische Beobachtungen am Reiseweg durch die südliche Mantschurei. Drittes Capitel, in "China, Ergebnisse Reisen und darauf gegrundeter Studien," vol. 2, 1882, pp. 69–124.
STRONG, MOSES. Geological formations. [Geology of the Mississippi region north of the Wisconsin River.] Geology of Wisconsin, Survey of 1873–1879, vol. 4, 1882, pp. 38–91.
TODD, JAMES E. A description of some fossil tracks from the Potsdam sandstone. Wisconsin Acad. Sci., Trans., vol 5, 1882, pp. 276–281.
WADSWORTH, M. E. On the relation of the Quincy granite to the primordial argillite of Braintree, Massachusetts. Boston Soc. Nat., Hist. Proc., vol. 21, 1882, pp. 274–277.
WHITFIELD, R. P. Paleontology [of Wisconsin]. Geology of Wisconsin, vol. 4, 1882, pp. 163–363.
WINCHELL, N. H. The Potsdam Sandstone. Geol. and Nat. Hist. Survey Minnesota, 10th Ann. Rep. for 1881, 1882, pp. 123–136.
——— The geology of the deep well drilled by C. C. Whelpley at Minneapolis, at the "C" Washburn Mill. Geol. and Nat. Hist., Survey Minnesota, 10th Ann. Rep. for 1881, 1882, pp. 211–217.
WOOSTER, L. C. Detailed Geology. [Geology of the lower St. Croix district.] Geology of Wisconsin, Survey of 1873–1879, vol. 4, 1882, pp. 109–130.
YOUNG, A. A. Further observations on the crystallized sands of the Potsdam sandstone of Wisconsin. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 24, 1882, pp. 47–49.

1883.

CAMPBELL, J. L., and W. H. RUFFNER. A Physical Survey extending from Atlanta, Georgia, across Alabama and Mississippi to the Mississippi River, along the line of the Georgia Pacific Railway. New York, 1883, pp. 3–117.

CHAMBERLIN, T. C. General geology. Historical geology. Palæozoic era. Geol. Wisconsin, Survey of 1873–1879, vol. 1, 1883, pp. 119–200.

——— The copper-bearing series of Lake Superior. Science, vol. 1, 1883, pp. 453–455.

DAMES, WILHELM. Cambrische trilobiten von Lian-Tung. In China, by F. F. von Richtofen, vol. 4, 1883, pp. 1–36, pls. 1 and 2.

D(AWSON), J. W. Impressions on Potsdam sandstone. Science, vol. 1, 1883, p. 177.

D'INVILLIERS, E. The Geology of the South Mountain Belt of Berks County, 2d Geol. Sur. of Penna. D3, vol. 2, part 1, 1883, pp. xxii–441.

ELLIOTT, JOHN B. The age of the Southern Appalachians. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 25, 1883, pp. 282–298.

ETHERIDGE, R., Jr. Trilobites and other fossils from the Mersey River district. Papers and Proc. Roy. Soc. Tasmania for 1882–1883, pp. 151–158.

FERRIER, W. F. Notes on a fossil track from the Potsdam sandstone of northern New York State. Canadian Naturalist, new ser., vol. 10, 1883, pp. 466, 467.

FONTAINE, W. M. Notes on the mineral deposits at certain localities on the western part of the Blue Ridge. The Virginias, vol. 4, 1883, pp. 21, 22, 42–47, 55–59, 73–76, 92, 93.

——— [Letter on relations of Archæan and associated formations in Virginia.] Geol. Chester Co., Pa. 2d Geol. Surv. Pa., C4. 1883, pp. xiii–xvi.

FRAZER, PERSIFOR. Geological notes on the several townships of Chester County. 2d Geological Sur. Penn. The Geol. of Chester County, C4, 1883, pp. 215–345.

HATTON, JOSEPH, and M. HARVEY. Geology of Newfoundland. Newfoundland, the oldest British Colony, its history, its present condition, and its prospects in the future. London, 1883, pp. 178–187. Boston, 1883, pp. 150–157.

HUNT, T. STERRY. The Geology of Lake Superior. Science, vol. 1, 1883, pp. 218, 219.

——— The geology of Port Henry, New York. Canadian Naturalist, new ser., vol. 10, 1883, pp. 420–422.

IRVING, R. D. The copper-bearing rocks of Lake Superior. U. S. Geol. Survey, Monographs, vol. 5, 1883, pp. xvi, 464. U. S. Geol. Survey, 3rd Ann. Rep., 1881–'82, 1883, pp. 89–188.

——— The copper-bearing rocks of Lake Superior. Science, vol. 1, 1883, pp. 140, 141, 359, 360, 422.

LESLEY, J. PETER. The Geology of Chester County after the surveys of Rogers, Frazer, and Hall. (With plate and map.) 2d Geol. Surv. Penn. CCCC, 1883, pp. i–xx, 1–54, 63–213, 351–354.

LEWIS, H. CARVILL. The Geology of Philadelphia. Franklin Institute Jour., 3d ser., vol. 85, 1883, pp. 359–374, 422–427.

MARR, JOHN E. The classification of the Cambrian and Silurian rocks. The Sedgwick Prize Essay for the year 1882. Cambridge and London, 1883, pp. xxiv, 147.

MATTHEW, G. F. Illustrations of the fauna of the St. John group. Royal Soc. Canada, Proc. and Trans., vol. 1, 1883, section IV, pp. 87–108, pp. 271–279.

PRIME, FREDERICK, Jr. Geology of Lehigh and Northampton Counties. 2d Geol. Surv. Pa., D3, vol. 1, 1883, pp. 161–212, 2 maps.

SELWYN, A. R. C. Age of the rocks on the northern shore of Lake Superior. Science, vol. 1, 1883, pp. 11, 221.

——— Notes on the geology of the southeastern portion of the Province of Quebec. Geol. Surv. Canada, Rep. Prog., for 1880, '81–'82, 1883, pp. 1A–7A.

SMITH, EUGENE A. Geological features and divisions of Alabama. Geol. Surv. Alabama, Rept. for 1881 and 1882, 1883, pp. 178–181, 192–210.

ST. JOHN, ORESTES. Report on the geology of the Wind River district. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., 12th Ann. Rep., 1883, pp. 173–269.

WADSWORTH, M. E. The Argillite and conglomerate of the Boston Basin. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 22, 1883, pp. 130–133.

WALCOTT, C. D. The Cambrian system in the United States and Canada. Washington Phil. Soc., Bull., vol. 6, 1883, pp. 98–102.

——— Pre-Carboniferous Strata in the Grand Cañon of the Colorado, Arizona. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 26, 1883, pp. 437–442, 484.

WHITNEY, J. D. Geology of Lake Superior. Science, vol. 1, 1883, p. 39.

WINCHELL, N. H. The Lake Superior rocks. Science, vol, 1, 1883, p. 334.

1884.

CAMPBELL, J. L. Geology of the Blue Ridge near Balcony Falls, Virginia; a modified view. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., 1884, vol. 28, pp. 221–223. The Virginias, vol. 5, 1884, p. 145.

CAMPBELL, J. L. and H. D. The Snowdon slate quarries. The Virginias, vol. 5, 1884, pp. 162, 163, 170.

CHESTER, FREDERICK D. Preliminary notes on the geology of Delaware. Laurentian, Paleozoic, and Cretaceous areas. Phila. Acad. Sci., Proc., vol. 36, 1884, pp. 237–259.

COOK, GEO. H. Geological Survey of New Jersey. Annual report of the State Geologist for the year 1884, 1884, pp. 168, map and 4 pls.

DAWSON, GEORGE M. Recent geological observations in the Canadian Northwest Territory. Science, vol. 3, 1884, pp. 647, 648.

FORD, S. W. On the age of the glazed and contorted slaty rocks in the vicinity of Schodack Landing, Rensselaer County, New York. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 28, 1884, pp. 206–208.

——— Note on the discovery of primordial fossils in the town of Stuyvesant, Columbia County, New York. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 28, 1884, pp. 35–37.

HALL, JAMES. Cryptozoon, n. g., Cryptozoon proliferum, n. sp. 36th Ann. Rep. State Mus. Nat. Hist, 1884, Pl. VI.

HITCHCOCK, C. H. Geological sections across Vermont and New Hampshire. Am. Mus. Nat. Hist., Bull., vol. 1, 1884, pp. 155–179, plates 16–18. On thirteen sections across Vermont and New Hampshire. Science, vol. 4, 1884, p. 327.

LOW, A. P. Explorations and Surveys in the interior of the Gaspé Peninsula, 1883. Geol. Survey Canada, 1882–3–4, 1884, pp. 21F.

MCCREATH, ANDREW. The Iron Ores of the Valley of Virginia. Am. Inst. Mining Eng. Trans., vol. 12, 1884, pp. 17–26.

MCCUTCHEN, A. R. Northwest Georgia. (Geologic description.) Tenth Census U. S., vol. 6; Report on Cotton Production in the United States, pt. 2, 1884, pp. 285–295.

MATTHEW, G. F. The geologic age of the Acadian fauna. The primitive Conocoryphean. British Assoc. Rep. 54th meeting, 1884, pp. 742, 743. The geologic age of the Acadian fauna. Geol. Mag., new ser., decade 3, vol. 1, 1884, pp. 470, 471.

ROGERS, WM. B. A reprint of annual reports and other papers on the Geology of the Virginias. New York, 1884, pp. xv, 832, with map and colored sections.

SMITH, E. A. General description of the State of Alabama. Tenth Census U. S., vol. 6; Report on Cotton Production in the United States, pt. 2, 1884, pp. 19–69 (bottom pagination), map.

UPHAM, WARREN. The Geology of Minnesota. Vol. 1 of Final Report, 1884, pp. 404–532, 562–588, 632–647.

WADSWORTH, M. E. On the relation of the "Keweenawan Series" to the Eastern sandstone in the vicinity of Torch Lake, Michigan. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 23, 1884, pp. 172–180.

WALCOTT, C. D. Paleontology of the Eureka District. U. S. Geol. Surv. Monograph, vol. 8, 1884, pp. 298.

——— On the Cambrian faunas of North America; preliminary studies. U. S. Geol. Survey Bull. No. 10; vol. 2, 1884, pp. 283–354. Separately paged, 1–74.

——— Notes on Paleozoic rocks of Central Texas. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 28, 1884, pp. 431–433.

——— Potsdam fauna at Saratoga, New York. Science, vol. 3, 1884, pp. 136, 137.

WHITFIELD, R. P. Notice of some new species of Primordial fossils in the collections of the Museum and correction of previously described species. Am. Mus. Nat. Hist., Bull., vol. 1, 1884, pp. 139–154.

WHITNEY, J. D., and M. E. WADSWORTH. The Azoic system and its proposed subdivisions. Harvard Mus. Comp. Zool., Bull., vol. 7, 1884, pp. 331–565.

WINCHELL, N. H. Notes on the age of the rocks of the Mesabi and Vermilion iron districts. Geol. and Nat. Hist., Survey Minnesota, 11th Ann. Rep. for 1883, 1884, pp. 168–170.

——— The geology of Minnesota. Vol. 1 of the Final Report, 1884, pp. 1–324, 347–366, 376–393, 533–561, 648–673.

WOODWARD, HENRY. Notes on the remains of Trilobites from South Australia. Geol. Magazine, n. ser., dec. III, vol. 1, 1884, pp. 342–344.

WOOSTER, L. C. Transition from the copper-bearing series to the Potsdam. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 27, 1884, pp. 463–465.

1885.

CAMPBELL, H. D. The Potsdam group east of the Blue Ridge at Balcony Falls, Virginia. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 29, 1885, pp. 470–474.

CAMPBELL, J. L, and H. D. CAMPBELL. Review of William B. Rogers's Geology of the Virginias. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 30, 1885, pp. 357–374; vol. 31, pp. 193–202.

COOK, G. H. Contact phenomena with the Paleozoic rocks. Geol. Surv. of New Jersey. Ann. Rep. State Geologist for 1885. Trenton, 1885, pp. 53–55.

DANA, JAMES D. On Taconic rocks and stratigraphy, with a geological map of the Taconic region. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 29, 1885, pp. 205–222, 437–443.

HALL, CHARLES E. Laurentian magnetic iron-ore deposits from northern New York, accompanied by a geological map of Essex County. Report of the State Geologist for the year 1884. Albany, 1885, pp. 23–34; map op. p. 23.

HAYDEN, F. V. (Report of the Montana division.) U. S. Geol. Survey, 6th Ann. Rep., 1884–'85, 1885, pp. 48–53.

HENDERSON, J. T. Geology [of Georgia]. The Commonwealth of Georgia. The Country; the People; the Productions. Atlanta, 1885, pp. 74–117.

HITCHCOCK, C. H. Geological map of Maine (with notes on geology of). In Geology of North England, 1885, pp. 4.

HYATT, ALPHEUS. Expedition to Newfoundland. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 23, 1886, pp. 316–319. Cruise of the *Arethusa*. Science, vol. 6, 1885, pp. 384–386.

IRVING, R. D. Preliminary paper on an investigation of the Archean formations of the Northwestern States. U. S. Geol. Survey, 5th Ann. Rep. 1883–84, 1885, pp. 175–242.

IRVING, R. D., and T. C. CHAMBERLIN. Observations on the junction between the Eastern sandstone and the Keweenaw series on Keweenaw Point, Lake Superior. U. S. Geol. Sur. Bull. No. 23, 1885, pp. 124.

LESLEY, J. P. A geological hand atlas of the sixty-seven counties of Pennsylvania, embodying the results of the field work of the survey from 1874 to 1884. 2d Geol. Surv. Penn., X, 1885, pp. cxii.

MARCOU, JULES. The "Taconic System" and its position in stratigraphic geology. Am. Acad. Proc., vol. 20, 1885, pp. 174–256.

MATTHEW, G. F. An outline of recent discoveries in the St. John group. New Brunswick Nat. Hist. Soc., Bull. No. 4, 1885, pp. 97–102.

——— Illustrations of the fauna of the St. John group, continued; on the Conocoryphea, with further remarks on Paradoxides. Royal Soc. Canada, Trans. and Proc., vol. 2, sec. iv, 1885, pp. 99–124.

PERKINS, GEO. H. The Winooski or Wakefield marble of Vermont. Am. Naturalist, vol. 19, 1885, pp. 128–136.

UPHAM, WARREN. Notes on the geology of Minnehaha County, Dakota. Geol. and Nat. Hist. Survey Minnesota, 13th Ann. Rep. for 1884, 1885, pp. 88–97.

WALCOTT, C. D. Paleontologic Notes. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 29, 1885, pp. 114–117.

——— Paleozoic notes; new genus of Cambrian trilobites, Mesonacis. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 28, 1885, pp. 328–331.

WINCHELL, N. H. Fossils from the red quartzite at Pipestone. Geol. and Nat Hist. Surv. Minn., 13th Ann. Rep. for 1884, 1885, pp. 65–72.

WINWOOD, H. H. Geological age of the Rocky Mountains. Geol. Magazine, new ser., dec. III, vol. 2, 1885, p. 240.

1886.

BEECHER, C. E., and C. E. HALL. Field notes on the geology of the Mohawk Valley. 5th Ann. Rep. of Geologist of New York for 1885, 1886, pp. 8–10, map.

BRÖGGER, W. C. Om alderen af Olenelluszonen i Nordamerica. (On the age of the Olenellus zone in North America.) Aftryck ur Geol. Fören. i Stockh. Förhan, No. 101, Bd. 8, 1886, pp. 182–213.

DAWSON, GEO. M. Preliminary report on the physical and geological features of that portion of the Rocky Mountains between latitudes 49° and 51° 30′. Geol. Survey Canada, new ser., vol. 1, 1886, pp. 169B.

DWIGHT, WILLIAM B. Discovery of fossiliferous Potsdam strata at Poughkeepsie, New York. Am. Assoc., Proc., vol. 34, 1886, pp. 204–209.

——— Recent explorations in the Wappinger Valley limestone of Dutchess County, New York. No. 5: Discovery of fossiliferous Potsdam strata at Poughkeepsie, New York. (Illustrated by map, Plate VI.) Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser. vol. 31, 1886, pp. 125–133. Primordial Rocks of the Wappinger Valley Limestone. Vassar Brothers Inst. Trans., vol. 4, 1887, pp. 130–141.

EMMONS, S. F. Geology and mining industry of Leadville, Colorado. Monographs of U. S. Geol. Survey, vol. 12, part 1, 1886, pp. 362.

FORD, S. W. Note on the age of the Swedish Paradoxides beds. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 32, 1886, pp. 473–476.

FRAZER, PERSIFOR. General notes. Sketch on the geology of York County, Pennsylvania. Am. Phil. Soc., Proc., vol. 23, 1886, pp. 391–410.

HALL, JAMES. Note on some obscure organisms in the roofing slates of Washington County, New York. 29th Rept. State Mus. Nat. Hist. N. Y., 1886, p. 160.

HUNT, T. STERRY. The Taconic question in geology. Mineral physiology and physiography. A second series of Chemical and Geological Essays. 1886, pp. 517–686.

LOW, A. P. Report of the Mistassini expedition, 1884–85. Geol. and Nat. Hist. Surv. Canada, new ser., vol. 1, 1886, pp. 33D.

MATTHEW, G. F. Synopsis of the fauna in division 1 of the St. John group, with preliminary notes on the higher faunas of the same group. New Brunswick Nat. Hist. Soc., Bull. No. 5, 1886, pp. 25–31.

——— The Cambrian faunas of Cape Breton and Newfoundland. (Abstract.) Canadian Record Sci., vol. 2, 1886, pp. 255–258.

——— Illustrations of the fauna of the St. John group continued. No. III. Descriptions of new genera and species (including a description of a new species of Solenopleura by J. F. Whiteaves). Trans. Roy. Soc. Canada, vol. 3, sec. iv, 1886, pp. 29–84. (Proc. for 1885.)

——— Note on the occurrence of Olenellus (?) kjerulfi in America. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 31, 1886, pp. 472, 473.

SMOCK, JOHN C. A geological reconnoissance in the crystalline rock region, Dutchess, Putnam, and Westchester Counties, New York. 39th Ann. Rep. State Mus. Nat. Hist., 1886, pp. 166–185.

WALCOTT, C. D. Classification of the Cambrian of North America. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 32, 1886. pp. 138–157.

——— Second contribution to the studies of the Cambrian faunas of North America. U. S. Geol. Survey Bull. No. 30; vol. 4, 1886, pp. 729–1095. (Separate paging, pp. 1–369.)

——— Cambrian age of the roofing slates of Granville, Washington County, New York. Am. Assoc. Proc., vol. 35, 1887, pp. 229, 231. (Separates issued 1886.)

WINCHELL, N. H. New species of fossils. 14th Ann. Rep. Minn. Geol. and Nat. Hist. Surv. 1886, pp. 313–318.

——— Revision of the stratigraphy of the Cambrian in Minnesota. Ibid, pp. 325–337.

1887.

AMI, H., and T. W. E. SOWTER. Report of the geological branch [of Ottawa Field Naturalists' Club.] Ottawa Naturalist, vol. 1, 1887, pp. 93–97.

DANA, JAMES D. On Taconic rocks and stratigraphy, with a geological map of the Taconic regions. Part 2: the Middle and Northern part. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 33, 1887, pp. 270–276, 392–419, pl. 11. (Continued from vol. 29, 1885, p. 443.)

DAWSON, G. M. On certain borings in Manitoba and the Northwest Territory. Royal Soc. Canada, Proc. and Trans., vol. 4, section iv, 1887, pp. 85–99.

[DAWSON, G. M.] [Notes on exploration in the Yukon district.] Science, vol. 10, 1887, pp. 165, 166.

DWIGHT, WILLIAM B. Primordial rocks of the Wappinger Valley limestones and associated strata. Vassar Brothers Inst., Trans., vol. 4, 1887, pp. 206–214. Discovery of additional Potsdam and pre-Potsdam strata of the Olenellus group near Poughkeepsie, New York. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 34, 1887, pp. 27–32.

ELLS, R. W. Report on the geology of a portion of the eastern townships of Quebec. Geol. Sur. Canada, 1886, new ser., vol 2, 1887, pp. 1 J–70J.

MCCONNELL, R. G. Report on the geological structure of a portion of the Rocky Mountains, with a section. Geol. Surv. Canada, 1886, new ser., vol. 2, 1887, pp. 1D–41D.

MATTHEW, G. F. Illustrations of the faunas of the St. John group. No. 4. Canadian Rec. Sci., vol. 2, 1887, pp. 357–363, 432. (Abstract.)

——— On the Cambrian faunas of Cape Breton and Newfoundland. Royal Soc. Canada, Proc. and Trans., vol. 4, section iv, 1887, pp. 147–157.

——— On the kin of the Paradoxides (Olenellus?) kjerulfi. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 33, 1887, pp. 390–392.

ROMINGER, C. Description of Primordial fossils from Mount Stephens, Northwest Territory of Canada. Philadelphia Acad. Sci., Proc. 1887, pp. 12–19.

STEVENSON, JOHN J. A geological reconnoissance of Bland, Giles, Wythe, and portions of Pulaski and Montgomery Counties of Virginia. Am. Philos. Soc. Proc., vol. 24, 1887, pp. 61–108.

WALCOTT, CHARLES D. Fauna of the "Upper Taconic" of Emmons, in Washington County, New York. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 34, 1887, pp. 187–199.

1888.

BERGERON, JULES. Note sur la présence de la Faune primordiale (Paradoxidien) dans les environs de Ferrals-des-Montagnes (Hérault). Bull. Soc. géol. France, 3e sér., vol. 16, 1888, pp. 232–235.

CALVIN, S. Notes on the formations passed through in boring the deep well at Washington, Iowa. American Geologist, vol. 1, 1888, pp. 28–31.

CARPENTER, F. R. Notes on the geology of the Black Hills. Preliminary Rep. Dakota School of Mines, on the Black Hills of Dakota, 1888, pp. 11–52.

DAWSON, J. W. On the Eozoic and Paleozoic rocks of the Atlantic coast of Canada in comparison with those of western Europe and the interior of America. Quar. Jour. Geol. Soc. London, vol. 44, 1888, pp. 797–817. Canadian Record of Science, vol. 3, 1888, pp. 182, 183, 230, 231.

HAYDEN, F. V. Report of Montana division of geology. U. S. Geol. Survey, 7th Ann. Rep., for 1885–'86, 1888, pp. 85–87.

HITCHCOCK, C. H. Date of the publication of the report upon the geology of Vermont. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 24, 1888, pp. 33–37.

IRVING, R. D. On the classification of the early Cambrian and pre-Cambrian formations. U. S. Geol. Survey, 7th Ann. Rep. for 1885–'86, 1888, pp. 365–454.

MARCOU, JULES. American Geological Classification and Nomenclature. Cambridge, 1888, pp. 75.

——— The Taconic of Georgia and the report on the geology of Vermont. Memoirs Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., vol. 4, 1888, pp. 105–131.

MATTHEW, G. F. On a basal series of Cambrian rocks in Acadia. Canadian Record Science, vol. 3, 1888, pp. 21–29.

——— On the classification of the Cambrian rocks of Acadia. Canadian Record Science, vol. 3, 1888, pp. 71–81.

——— Illustrations of the fauna of the St. John group, No. IV. Part 1. Description of a new species of Paradoxides (Paradoxides regina). Part 2. The smaller trilobites with eyes (Ptychoparidæ and Ellipsocephalidæ). Royal Soc. Canada, Trans., vol. 5, sec. iv, 1888, pp. 115–166.

SHALER, N. S. On the geology of the Cambrian district of Bristol County, Massachusetts. Bull. Mus. Comp. Zoöl. Harvard College, vol. 16, 1888, pp. 13–26, map.

SHALER, N. S., and A. F. FOERSTE. Preliminary descriptions of North Attleborough fossils. Bull. Mus. Comp. Zoöl. Cambridge, vol. 16, 1888, pp. 27–41.

UPHAM, WARREN. The geology of Minnesota. Vol. 2 of final report, 1888, pp. 102–263, 309–425, 612–645.

WALCOTT, C. D. Discovery of fossils in the lower Taconic of Emmons. Am. Assoc. Proc., vol. 36, 1888, pp. 212, 213.

——— The Taconic system of Emmons and the use of the name Taconic in geologic nomenclature. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser. vol. 35, 1888, pp. 229–242, 307–327, 394–401.

——— Cambrian Fossils from Mount Stephens, Northwest Territory of Canada. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 36, 1888, pp. 161–166.

——— The stratigraphical succession of the Cambrian faunas of North America. Nature, vol. 38, 1888, p. 551.

WILLIAMS, H. S. Report of the subcommittee on the Upper Paleozoic (Devonic). International Congress of Geologists, American Committee. Report to the session of the congress held in London, September 17, 1888, pp. 1–31C.

WINCHELL, N. H. The Geology of Minnesota. Vol. 2, of final report, 1888, pp. 1–191, 264–398.

——— A great Primordial quartzite. Am. Geologist, vol. 1, 1888, pp. 173–178.

1889.

BROADHEAD, G. C. The geological history of the Ozark uplift. American Geologist, vol. 3, 1889, pp. 6–13.

CROSBY, W. O. Physical history of the Boston Basin. Lowell Free Lectures, 1889–'90. Boston, 1889, pp. 22.

DWIGHT, W. B. Recent explorations in the Wappinger limestones and other formations of Dutchess County, New York. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 38, 1889, pp. 139–153.

ELLS, R. W. Second report on the geology of a portion of the Province of Quebec. Geol. Sur. Canada, vol. 3, new ser., 1889, pp. 1K–120K.

FOERSTE, A. F. The paleontological horizon of the limestone at Nahant, Mass., Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 24, 1889, pp. 261–263.

KING, WILLIAM. Note on the discovery of Trilobites by Dr. H. Warth in the Neobolus beds of the Salt Range. Records of the Geol. Sur. of India, vol. 22, 1889, pp. 153–157.

LANE, ALFRED C. The geology of Nahant. Boston Society Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 24, 1889, pp. 91–95.

MATTHEW, G. F. How is the Cambrian divided? A plea for the classification of Salter and Hicks. Am. Geologist, vol. 4, 1889, pp. 139–148.

———. On the classification of the Cambrian rocks in Acadia. Supplementary note. Canadian Record Science, vol. 3, 1889, pp. 303–315, 371, 372.

———. On the Cambrian organisms in Acadia. Canadian Rec. Sci., vol. 3, 1889, pp. 383–387.

MCCONNELL, R. G. Notes on the geology of Mount Stephen, British Columbia. American Geologist, vol. 3, 1889, pp. 22–25.

MEADS, A. D. The Stillwater deep well. American Geologist, vol. 3, 1889, pp. 342, 343.

NICHOLSON, H. A., and R. LYDEKKER. A manual of paleontology for the use of students with a general introduction on the principles of paleontology. 3d edition, 2 vols. Edinburgh and London, 1889.

RAND, T. D. A discussion on the rocks of Penusylvania and New York. New York Acad. Sci. Trans., vol. 8, 1889, pp. 47–51.

SHALER, N. S. The geology of the island of Mount Desert, Maine. 8th Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Survey, part 2, 1889, pp. 987–1061.

WALCOTT, C. D. Stratigraphic position of the Olenellus fauna in North America and Europe. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 37, pp. 374–392; vol. 38, 1889, pp. 29–42.

———. Descriptive notes of new genera and species of the Lower Cambrian or Olenellus zone of North America. U. S. National Museum, Proc., vol. 12, 1889, pp. 33–46.

———. Descriptions of new genera and species of fossils from the Middle Cambrian. U. S. National Museum, Proc., vol. 11, 1889, pp. 441–446.

WINCHELL, N. H. The crystalline rocks of Minnesota. General report of progress made in the study of their field relations. Statement of problems yet to be solved. Geol. and Nat. Hist. Survey of Minn. 17th Ann. Rep. for 1888, 1889, pp. 5–74.

1890.

COMSTOCK, THEO. B. A preliminary report on the geology of the central mineral region of Texas. 1st Ann. Rep. Geol. Surv. of Texas for 1889, 1890, pp. 239–391.

DANA, J. D. Sodgwick and Murchison; Cambrian and Silurian. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 39, 1890, pp. 167–180.

———. Areas of continental progress in North America and the influence of the conditions of these areas on the work carried forward within them. Geol. Soc. America, Bull., vol. 1, 1890, pp. 36–48.

ETHERIDGE, R., jr. On some Australian species of the family Archæocyathinæ. Trans. Roy. Soc. South Australia, vol. 13, 1890, pp. 10–22.

GILBERT, G. K. Lake Bonneville. Monographs U. S. Geol. Survey, vol. 1, 1890, pp. 438.

HITCHCOCK, C. H. Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Rhode Island, and Connecticut. (Geological formations.) Macfarlane's Am. Geol. R. R. Guide, 2d ed., 1890, p. 86.

MATTHEW, G. F. On Cambrian organisms in Acadia. Roy. Soc. Canada Trans., vol. 7, Proc., sec. iv, 1890, pp. 135–162.

MCGEE, W J. The southern extension of the Appomattox formation. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 40, 1890, pp. 15–41.

PEALE, A. C. Report of Dr. A. C. Peale (on the Montana division of geology). U. S. Geol. Surv., 10th Ann. Rep., 1890, pp. 130–132.

SEARS, JOHN H. The stratified rocks of Essex County (Massachusetts). Essex Institute, Bull., vol. 22, 1890, pp. 31–47 (separate, pp. 17).

WALCOTT, C. D. A review of Dr. R. W. Ells's second report on the geology of a portion of the province of Quebec; with additional notes on the "Quebec group." Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 39, 1890, pp. 101–115.

——— Description of new forms of Upper Cambrian fossils. U. S. National Museum, Proc., vol. 13, 1890, pp. 267–279.

——— The fauna of the Lower Cambrian or Olenellus zone. 10th Ann. Rept. U. S. Geological Survey, Part I, 1890, pp. 509–763, pls. 49–98.

WINCHELL, N. H., and H. V. WINCHELL. The Taconic iron ores of Minnesota and of western New England. Am. Geologist, vol. 6, 1890, pp. 263–274.

1891.

GEIGER, H. R., and ARTHUR KEITH. The structure of the Blue Ridge near Harper's Ferry. Bull. Geol. Soc. America, vol. 2, 1891, pp. 155–164.

HAYES, C. WILLARD. The overthrust faults of the southern Appalachians. Bull. Geol. Soc. America, Vol. 2, February, 1891, pp. 141–154.

MATTHEW, G. F. Illustrations of the fauna of the St. John group No. 5. Roy. Soc. of Canada Trans., vol. 8, sec. iv, 1891, pp. 123–166.

NASON, FRANK L. The Post-Archean age of the white limestones of Sussex County, New Jersey. Am. Geologist, vol. 7, 1891, pp. 241–252.

SHALER, N. S., and H. S. WILLIAMS. On the geology of Little Falls, New York. Bull. Geol. Soc. America, vol. 2, 1891, pp.

SMITH, EUGENE A. Geological structure and description of the valley regions adjacent to the Cahaba Coal Fields. Geol. Survey of Alabama. Report on the Cahaba Coal Fields, by Joseph Squire. Pt. II, 1890 (issued March, 1891), pp. 133–180.

WOLFF, J. E. On the Lower Cambrian age of the Stockbridge limestone at Rutland, Vermont. Bull. Geol. Soc. America, vol. 2, 1891, pp. 331–337.

CHAPTER II.

HISTORICAL REVIEW OF THE GEOLOGIC AND PALEONTOLOGIC WORK.

The scope of this review is limited, with a few exceptions, to the notice of papers and memoirs that have added something original to the preexistent knowledge of the rocks and faunas now referred to the Cambrian group.

Several methods of presenting the historical data have suggested themselves.

(1) Chronologic; (2) Geographic and chronologic; (3) Chronologic, geographic, and stratigraphic.

(1) *Chronologic.*—This method necessitates reference to papers in the order of their publication, whether they treat of Cambrian rocks in Newfoundland, New York, Alabama, or Nevada. All is subservient to the chronologic record.

(2) *Geographic and chronologic.*—This method permits of the chronologic grouping of the papers referring to the rocks under consideration in geographic areas.

(3) *Chronologic, geographic, and stratigraphic.*—This third and more comprehensive method arranges the review in the form of a statement of the historical data as in the second method, with the addition of treating of such primary divisions separately as may be thought worthy of such consideration. To this there may also be added, in exceptional instances, the chronologic arrangement of the discoveries and opinions of some of the more prominent investigators and authors.

The second method is adopted in this review in connection with the third, where the latter is necessary in order to present more clearly the evolution of the present knowledge of the rocks and fauna of the Cambrian group.

The Cambrian group can usually be divided into three primary divisions. *First*, the Lower Cambrian; *second*, Middle Cambrian; *third*, Upper Cambrian. This nomenclature will be used throughout the review, when it is necessary to refer to a standard generally known.

Rocks of Cambrian age occur on the North American continent in four principal geographic areas or geologic provinces. In reviewing the literature it is possible, owing to the investigators in each province having limited their work to their respective provinces, to present the history of discovery and publication in each by itself, as follows:

I. *The Atlantic Coast or Eastern Border Province.*

II. *The Appalachain Chain.*

III. *The Rocky Mountain or Western Border Province.*

IV. *The Interior Continental or Central Province.*

The record of paleontologic investigation in each province will follow the geologic review.

ATLANTIC COAST PROVINCE.

The Atlantic coast province includes the deposits on the island of Newfoundland, the provinces of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick and Cape Breton, and the States of Maine, New Hampshire, and eastern Massachusetts.

NEWFOUNDLAND.

Systematic geologic investigation in Newfoundland began with Prof. J. Beete Jukes, who in 1843[1] published a report of his studies in field and office. He describes the relation of the strata at the base of the Paleozoic section (now referred to the Olenellus zone), to the unconformably subjacent crystalline rocks about Conception Bay, and mentions the red shales in which the Olenellus fauna is now known to occur, as well as the green and dark shales of the Paradoxides zone, as subsequently known. A description is given of the upper slate formation as shown on the islands in the bay, under the name of Bell Island shale and grits; and of the lower slate under the name of St. John's slate, 2,000 to 3,000 feet thick, as seen near the town of St. John's; also the superjacent Signal Hill sandstone, about 800 feet thick.[2] In the absence of fossils no attempt was made to correlate the formations with those of England. On the map accompanying the report the geographic distribution is given of the lower slate (St. John's) and of the upper slate (Bell Island) formations about Conception Bay and Smith Sound.

Two years later Capt. H. W. Bayfield[3] described a sandstone with subjacent red and white limestone on the Straits of Belle Isle, which he stated contained a species of Cyathophyllum. This is the first notice of the Lower Cambrian rocks containing Archæocyathus, and it is the second recorded discovery of fossils now referred to the Olenellus zone.

At a meeting of the Boston Society of Natural History, April 20, 1859, Dr. C. T. Jackson exhibited a trilobite from the calcareous slate of St. Mary's Bay, Newfoundland, which he thought identical with *Paradoxides harlani* from Braintree, Massachusetts. He said that this formation could be followed, though in an interrupted line, from Braintree to Newfoundland.[4]

In 1859 Mr. J. W. Salter[5] received a specimen of the genus Paradox-

[1] General report of the geological survey of Newfoundland in 1839 and 1840, pp. 160, 2 pls., London, 1843.

[2] Op. cit. pp. 55–60.

[3] On the junction of the transition and primary rocks of Canada and Labrador. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 1, 1845, pp. 450–459.

[4] On a trilobite from Braintree. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 7, 1859, p. 54.

[5] On the fossils of the Lingula-flags or "Zone Primordiale." Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 15, 1859, pp. 551–555.

ides, collected from the upper slate of St. Mary's Bay, Newfoundland, which he described under the name of *Paradoxides bennetti*, calling attention to its relation to *Paradoxides spinosus* and *P. bohemicus*, of Bohemia.

In 1862, Prof. Jukes, referring to his work in Newfoundland, stated that he included under the upper slate formation the Bell Isle shale and gritstone and variegated slate; and in the lower slate formation the Signal Hill sandstones and St. John's slate. He says he did not find any fossils in them, but that Mr. C. Bennett subsequently found trilobites of the genus Paradoxides (named *P. bennetti* by Mr. J. W. Salter) in the slates on the west side of St. Mary's Bay. "These slates belong to the group I called the St. John's slate, which is covered conformably by the Signal Hill sandstone. The Variegated slate group, on the other hand, passes up into the Bell Isle shale and gritstone, and near Brigus Harbor, in Conception Bay, may be seen to rest unconformably on the St. John's slate" (as described in 1843).[1] This is the unconformity now recognized between the Cambrian and Algonkian rocks.

Eighteen years after Captain Bayfield had reported on the strata of the north side of the straits of Belle Isle, Sir William E. Logan[2] described the strata resting on the gneiss as red and green sandstones, 231 feet thick, overlain by gray, reddish, and greenish limestone. In the limestone a number of fossils were found which Mr. Billings identified with those found in the "Red Sandrock" of Vermont. The formation was referred to the Lower Potsdam by Logan. Fifteen miles across the straits, on the Newfoundland coast, the rocks are apparently of Calciferous age; and he concluded that the Potsdam sandstone zone was buried beneath the waters of the Straits.[3] In the description of the section at Bonne Bay, on the west coast of Newfoundland,[4] it is compared with that at the Straits of Belle Isle; and on pages 865–867, the section at Bonne Bay is given in detail. Of this 1,711 feet are, by the contained fossils, referred to the Potsdam group.

In the report of the Geological Survey of Newfoundland for 1864[5] a summary is given of the then existing view of the succession of the Lower Paleozoic rocks in North America. For Newfoundland the succession of the rocks now referred to the Cambrian is Upper Potsdam, Lower Potsdam, and St. John's group, and Newfoundland is cited as the locality where the lower portion of the series is complete. The lowest, or St. John's group, is correlated with that of St. John, New Brunswick, and the Paradoxides beds of Braintree, Massachusetts. The lower Potsdam is represented by several hundred feet of limestones and

[1] The student's manual of geology. Second edition. Edinburgh, 1862, p. 457.

[2] Geological survey of Canada. Report of progress from its commencement to 1863. Montreal, 1863, pp. 983, 11 plates. Atlas of maps and sections, with an introduction and appendix. Montreal, 1865. 9 maps and sections.

[3] Op. cit., p. 288.

[4] Op. cit., p. 293.

[5] Logan, W. E., Lower Silurian Rocks of North America. Geol. Surv. Newfoundland, Rep. Prog. for 1864, Montreal, 1866, pp. 45, 46. Revised edition, 1881, p. 49.

sandstones on the Straits of Belle Isle, and on White Bay, Newfoundland, and by the slates of St. Albans and Georgia, Vermont. The Upper Potsdam is that of Wisconsin and Minnesota, represented in the typical Potsdam of New York. This horizon is not recognized in the northern part of Newfoundland, but occurs on Conception Bay, in the southeastern part. The tabulation made by Logan has been followed very largely by all writers upon American geology, and the succession was not changed until 1888, when it was discovered that the St. John group of Mr. G. F. Matthew was above the Lower Potsdam of Billings and Logan.

The Geological Survey of Newfoundland, under the direction of Dr. Alexander Murray, added materially to our knowledge of the Lower Paleozoic rocks. All the strata beneath the Calciferous or Quebec group were referred to the Potsdam group.[1] In the neighborhood of Canada Bay, on the east coast, the entire series referred to the Potsdam has a thickness of 1,153 feet, of which the lower 760 feet belong to the Lower Cambrian zone, as shown by *Olenellus vermontana* occurring in the upper portion.[2] In the report of field work for 1868, Dr. Murray[3] describes the rocks about Conception Bay, in the southeastern portion of the island. Of the lowest bed exposed on Manuel's Brook, a small stream that flows into Conception Bay, he says: "On Manuel's Brook a very coarse conglomerate may be seen, in strong and moderately regular beds, resting directly upon the syenitic gneiss of the valley above. * * * About 400 yards below the bridge the conglomerate is overlaid conformably by a set of dark brown or blackish shales, * * * with some hard calcareous beds interstratified," and this series extends down the stream nearly to the bay.[4] Dr. Murray also describes, in a section at Topsail Head, a gray compact limestone in strong solid beds, 1 to 2 feet thick, showing a vertical thickness of about 100 feet, together with some interstratified shale. The limestone is subjacent to a dark brown, finely laminated shale. Detailed sections are given of the shales and sandstones exposed on Kelly's and Great Bell Islands, Conception Bay; the former has a thickness of 712 feet and the latter of 476 feet. A summary of the rocks referred to the Lower Silurian gives an entire thickness of 3,880 feet.[5] Figures of five sections accompany the text, in which the unconformity between the Lower Silurian rocks and the subjacent intermediate system or Huronian and the Archean is well shown. The subjacent slates and Signal Hill sandstones of Jukes are referred by Dr. Murray to the Cambrian group on account of fossils having been found there, which Mr. Billings described as *Aspidella terra-novica* and Arenicolites.[6]

[1] Sequence and distribution of the rocks of the great Northern Peninsula. Geol. Surv. Newfoundland, Rep. Prog. for 1864, Montreal, 1866, pp. 10, 44. Revised edition, 1881, pp. 5–47.

[2] Op. cit., p. 10.

[3] Of the sequence and distribution of the formations. Report upon the geological survey of Newfoundland for 1868, St. John's, 1868, p. 68. Revised edition, 1881, pp. 154–167.

[4] Op. cit., p. 154.

[5] Op. cit., pp. 157–160.

[6] Op. cit., p. 144.

In the report for 1869 a description is given of the Lower Paleozoic rocks studied by Mr. Howley as they occur on Trinity Bay and St. Mary's Bay.[1] The variegated slates of Jukes are described as containing Paradoxides and the superjacent argillaceous shales and sandstones carry Cruziana and other fossils. These last represent the rocks of the Bell Islands in Conception Bay. In the report for 1870[2] a summary is given of the then existing knowledge of the Primordial formations in southeast Newfoundland. In descending order the upper formation is a brown and black micaceous shale with the gray micaceous sandstones of Great Bell Isle, Conception Bay. The organic contents are: Two species of Lingula, four species of Palæophycus, *Eophyton linnæanum* of Torrell, another Eophyton and *Cruziana semiplicata* Salter. Thickness, 476 feet. He says that the slates of Little Bell Isle and the beds of shale beneath the water are considered to have a thickness of 1,426 feet, to which the Kelly's Island sandstone and shale are to be added, with a thickness of 720 feet. [As now known this forms the upper division of the Cambrian.] Beneath this he describes the black slates, with *Paradoxides bennetti*, having a thickness of 150 feet. On St. Mary's Bay this division, united with the red, green, and black shales or slates, in which *Paradoxides bennetti*, *Conocephalites gregarius* and other fossils were recognized, has a thickness of 1,045 feet. [This forms the middle division of the Cambrian as now known.] Below this the hard thick beds of gray and reddish limestone of Topsail Head, Brigus South Head, Conception Bay, and the Little Salmonier River of St. Mary's Bay are united with various outcrops of red, green, and blackish argillaceous slates and a series of sandstones below. [These form the lower division of the Cambrian as now known.] The total thickness of the section described is 5,972 feet.[3] Several sections are illustrated to show the relation of the Primordial-Silurian to the subjacent rocks.

In the report for 1872 the Primordial-Silurian rocks are described as they are exposed on Trinity Bay, etc., by Dr. Murray.[4] He states that on paleontological grounds Mr. Billings is disposed to draw a marked distinction between the upper strata of the section of 1870 and the lower members of that section, in consequence of an apparent hiatus or break in organic development between the Paradoxides beds and the fossiliferous strata of Great Bell Island in the Conception Bay section. The lower measures he [Billings] appears to regard as the equivalent of the lower Lingula flags of Great Britain, or the Menevian group of Salter and Hicks; while the upper parts contain forms in some degree typical of the horizon of the Upper Potsdam.[5] This is followed by a

[1] Murray, Alexander. Of the rocks and associated minerals [of Bonavista Bay, etc.]. Report upon the geological survey of Newfoundland for 1869. Revised edition. 1881, pp. 200–203.

[2] Murray, Alexander. Of Primordial, Silurian, and related formations. Geol. Surv. Newfoundland for 1870, St. John's, 1870, pp. 30–43. Revised edition, 1881, pp. 232–241.

[3] Op. cit., pp. 237–239.

[4] Distribution of the formations [of Avalon]. Report upon Geol. Surv. of Newfoundland for 1872. St. John's, 1873, pp. 14–34. Revised edition. London, 1881, pp. 285–297.

[5] Op. cit., p. 291.

list of the species described by Mr. Billings from the Paradoxides zone and the strata of Great Bell Island.

Prof. John Milne traveled extensively along the coast of Newfoundland, and published the results of his geologic studies in association with the "Notes on Geology" by Alexander Murray.[1] The Primordial-Silurian is spoken of as a separate division; then, superjacent to the rocks of this formation, come the Potsdam and Calciferous. There does not appear to be any additional data to that already given in the report on the geology of Newfoundland by Dr. Murray.

When describing some fossils collected by Mr. T. C. Weston, of the Canadian Geological Survey, in 1874, from St. Mary's, Trinity, and Conception Bays, Newfoundland, Prof. J. F. Whiteaves states that the paleontological evidence sustains the view of Sir W. E. Logan that the slates of St. John's, Newfoundland, probably belong to the same horizon as the Acadian or St. John group of St. John, New Brunswick.[2] Of the deposits on the islands of Conception Bay he says: "From Mr. Murray's report already quoted it would appear that the shales of Kelly's Island are not quite so old as those of Manuel's Brook, but that they are older than the Menevian sandstones of Great Bell Island."[3]

Dr. Murray appears to have considered the Potsdam zone as above the Primordial beds of Newfoundland. This is shown in the chapter on the "Geology of Newfoundland," where a summary of the geology is presented as taken from Dr. Murray's work.[4]

Prof. Alpheus Hyatt, in his expedition to Newfoundland, visited the north coast of the Straits of Belle Isle, and collections were made at Anse au Loup and Amour Cove from the "so-called Potsdam sandstones and limestones of the Canadian survey. The observations made at these points indicate a fauna quite distinct from those of any of the limestones or slates of the west coast of Newfoundland. The absence of Cephalopoda and the prevalence of primitive forms of Archæocyathus show the rocks to be probably older than those of the Quebec group at Port au Choix and other localities. The primitive sponges, or Archæocyathi, have here replaced corals completely, and may be described as reef-builders, since numerous hummocks and masses and parts of the strata are formed entirely of their remains. Immediately below these limestones, and conformable with them, lie the red sandstones, several layers of which are perforated with Scolithus burrows."[5]

A brief summary of the Lower Cambrian rocks of Newfoundland, was given by Mr. C. D. Walcott, in a study of the Cambrian faunas of

[1] On the rocks of Newfoundland. Geol. Mag., new ser., decade II, vol. 4, 1877, pp. 251–262.

[2] On some Primordial fossils from southeastern Newfoundland. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 16, 1878, p. 225.

[3] Op. cit., p. 226.

[4] Hatton, Joseph, and M. Harvey. Geology of Newfoundland. Newfoundland, the oldest British colony, its history, its present condition, and its prospects in the future. London, 1883, pp. 178–187. American edition, Boston, 1883, pp. 150–157.

[5] Expedition to Newfoundland. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist. Proc., vol. 23, 1886, p. 319. Cruise of the *Arethusa*. Science, vol. 6, 1885, p. 386.

North America[1] when discussing the stratigraphic position of the Olenellus fauna. In it he says[2] that the only locality known where the two faunas occur in the same geographic area is on Conception Bay, Newfoundland; and special stress is placed on the occurrence at Topsail Head of several species of fossils typical of the Olenellus zone at the Straits of Belle Isle. This fauna was referred to the Middle Cambrian,[3] although Dr. Murray states in his section of 1868 that Mr. Billings referred the species to the Potsdam.[4] By this Mr. Billings probably meant his lower Potsdam, which is now (1890) included in the Lower Cambrian.

In an abstract of a paper on the Cambrian faunas of Cape Breton and Newfoundland, published in advance of the paper read before the Royal Society of Canada, Mr. G. F. Matthew[5] classifies the horizons of the Cambrian as follows:

(1) The horizon of *Paradoxides kjerulfi.*
(2) The horizon of the Conocoryphees.
(3) The horizon of *Paradoxides tessini.*
(4) The horizon of *Paradoxides spinosus.*
(5) The horizon of *Paradoxides davidis.*

It is stated[6] that "in this classification of the various Newfoundland horizons in the Paradoxides zone Mr. Matthew has placed that of *Paradoxides kjerulfi* first or oldest, because that is its position in Scandinavia." In the final paper[7] he speaks of the fossils found at Topsail Head, and Brigus on Conception Bay, mentioning *Agraulos strenuus*, Iphidea (allied to *Iphidea bella* Billings), and *Stenotheca paupera* Billings. He says these fossils do not give sufficiently firm indications to make it clear that they are older than some other horizons mentioned hereafter. He then describes the fossils of the Paradoxides zone. A new species, *Solenopleura bombifrons*, is described from the limestone of Topsail Head.[8]

In the summer of 1888 Mr. C. D. Walcott made a careful study of the Cambrian section in Newfoundland, and determined the Olenellus zone to be beneath the Paradoxides zone, and not above it, as arranged by Logan in his scheme of 1864. A detailed section of the Cambrian strata on Conception Bay was published, with lists of the fossils occurring at the different horizons in it.[9]

---

[1] Second contribution to the studies on the Cambrian faunas of North America. U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. No. 30, vol. 4, 1886.

[2] Op. cit., p. 49.

[3] Op. cit., p. 29.

[4] Of the sequence and distribution of the formations. Report upon the geological survey of Newfoundland for 1868. Revised edition, 1881, "P. 1" of section, p. 157.

[5] The Cambrian faunas of Cape Breton and Newfoundland (abstract). Can. Record Sci., vol. 2, 1886, pp. 255–258.

[6] Op. cit., p. 258.

[7] On the Cambrian faunas of Cape Breton and Newfoundland. Royal Soc. Canada, Proc. and Trans., vol. 4, section iv, 1887, pp. 147–157.

[8] Op. cit., p. 156.

[9] The stratigraphical succession of the Cambrian faunas of North America. Nature, vol. 38, 1888, p. 551. Stratigraphic position of the Olenellus fauna in North America and Europe. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 37, 1889, pp. 374–392; vol. 38, 1889, pp. 29–42.

NOVA SCOTIA.

The altered or metamorphic slate belt of the Atlantic coast of Nova Scotia is represented on an early geological map by Dr. Abraham Gesner[1] as extending from Cape Canso to Cape Sable. He states that the area is within the primary district and composed principally of granite, gneiss, and mica slate. A general description of the rocks is given in the account of the local geology of the townships in which they occur.

At a meeting of the Geological Society of London on May 10, 1843, Dr. Gesner[2] presented to the society a geological map of Nova Scotia, accompanied by a memoir on the geology. In the text[3] the lowermost of the Silurian rocks devoid of animal remains is referred to the Cambrian. The map was not published with his paper. It appeared in 1845[4] in connection with papers by Mr. Richard Brown, on the geology of Cape Breton, and Mr. J. W. Dawson, on the Lower Carboniferous rocks or gypsiferous formation of Nova Scotia. The strata now provisionally included in the Cambrian group are indicated on the map as micaceous and chloritic slates, clay slate, quartz rock, and graywacke slate. They extend entirely around the central area of granite and syenite, and are separated from the Atlantic coast by a broad belt of color designated as granite. At a later date Gesner described the stratified non-fossiliferous rocks or Cambrian group of Nova Scotia[5] as an extended belt of hornblende slate, chlorite slate, clay slate, graywacke slate, and quartzite, succeeding the granite and its associates, and with them occupying almost the whole of the Atlantic side of the province. No fossil remains have been found in any of these metamorphic masses.

In 1850 Dr. J. W. Dawson described the Atlantic coast series as follows:

> The prevailing stratified rocks in this group are compact and flaggy gray quartzite (often weathering white), mica slate, and clay slate, the latter usually of dark colors, and occasionally passing into flinty slate and quartzite. * * *
>
> The hypogene rocks associated with them are white and flesh-colored granite, which has penetrated the metamorphic rocks in large irregular bands and masses.[6]

As a result of his study of this group of rocks Dr. Dawson concluded that they belonged either to some of the older members of the Silurian system or to a still earlier period. In the first edition of the Acadian Geology Dr. Dawson stated that the rocks are certainly older than the Devonian; and he was inclined to believe that they represented the Potsdam sandstone and Utica and Hudson River shales, in an altered condition.[7] On the accompanying map their geographic distribution

---

[1] Remarks on the geology and mineralogy of Nova Scotia. Halifax, N. S., 1836, pp. 272.

[2] A geological map of Nova Scotia, with an accompanying memoir. Geol. Soc. London, Proc., vol. 4, 1843, pp. 186–190.

[3] Op. cit., p. 187.

[4] Geological Map of Nova Scotia. (Accompanying papers by J. W. Dawson and Richard Brown.) Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 1, 1845, oppo., p. 23.

[5] The industrial resources of Nova Scotia. Halifax, N. S., 1849, pp. 233, 234.

[6] On the metamorphic and metalliferous rocks of eastern Nova Scotia. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 6, 1850, p. 348.

Acadian Geology, 1st Edition, Edinburgh, 1855, p. 357.

is shown and in the legend they are noted as "perhaps altered Lower Silurian" strata.

In a supplementary chapter to the first edition the slates and quartzites of the Atlantic coast belt are spoken of, and it is suggested that they may be a continuation of the Primordial zone of Newfoundland, in which Paradoxides have been found.[1] Mr. E. Billings reviews this supplementary chapter and says:[2] "We are strongly inclined to the belief that this supposition will yet turn out to be well founded."

In 1862 the slates of the Nova Scotia metamorphic slate belt were referred to the Taconic System.[3] A more detailed description of the rocks was published by Dr. J. W. Dawson, in 1868, in which they are stated to be formed of granite, gneiss, mica slate, quartz rock or quartzite, and clay slate. The granite appears to be intrusive, and the gneiss is considered a product of a metamorphism or baking of sedimentary rocks. The clay slate or argillaceous slate abounds, and is usually, along the Atlantic coast, of a gray and black color, varying very much in texture and hardness.[4] He states that the series has not afforded fossils, but it appears to be a continuation of the older slate series of Mr. J. B. Jukes in Newfoundland, which has afforded trilobites of the genus Paradoxides. On the map accompanying the volume the geographic distribution of the series is clearly exhibited.

In a general description of the Nova Scotia gold field Mr. J. Campbell[5] publishes a section across the gold-bearing rocks of the Atlantic coast, in which the arrangement and relative position of the different groups of strata are well shown. There is a great thickness of quartzite subjacent to blue and gray slates divided midway by the "black rock." Very few details are given of the section, as the report is mainly devoted to a description of mining and the mode of occurrence of gold.

When reporting upon the Waverly gold district Prof. H. Y. Hind stated that he had found *Palæotrochus minor* and *Palæotrochus major* of Emmons, besides numerous concretionary forms, in the Waverly beds. He considers (*a*) that these fossils, if identical with those from North Carolina, probably establish the age of the gold-bearing rocks of Nova Scotia; (*b*) that they occur near the base of the Lower Silurian System; (*c*) that they belong to the upper part of the Potsdam formation and the lower part of the Calciferous formation, and (*d*) that they are subjacent to the great mass of serpentine and red slates, discovered by Dr. Honeyman in Antigonish, which belong to the Quebec group. The gold series is correlated with that described by Dr. Emmons in North

[1] Supplementary chapter to the Acadian Geology, Edinburgh, 1860, p. 53.

[2] [Review of] Acadian Geology and a Supplementary Chapter thereto. Canadian Nat., vol. 5, 1860, pp. 450–455.

[3] Marcou, Jules. [The slate of Nova Scotia, metamorphic Taconic rock.] Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 9, 1862, p. 47.

[4] Acadian Geology. The geological structure, organic remains, and mineral resources of Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and Prince Edward Island, 2d. ed. London, 1868, pp. 613–615.

[5] Report on the Gold Fields of Nova Scotia. Halifax, 1863, pp. 12.

Carolina.[1] In a paper presented to the Geological Society of London,[2] and subsequently published in the report on the Sherbrooke gold district of Nova Scotia, Prof. Hind describes the gold-bearing rocks of Nova Scotia as follows:

The gold-bearing rocks of Nova Scotia are of Lower Silurian age, and rest either on Huronian strata or, where these have been removed by denudation, on the old Laurentian gneiss. The gold is found chiefly in beds of auriferous quartz of contemporaneous age with the slates and quartzites composing the mass of the series, which in Nova Scotia is 12,000 feet thick, and the auriferous beds are worked, in one district or another, through a vertical space of 6,000 feet.[3]

In a report on the gneissoid series underlying the gold-bearing rocks of Nova Scotia the same writer[4] states that he has provisionally referred the gold-bearing series to the Lower Silurian, but that conclusive evidence derived from fossils has not been obtained from the gold-bearing slates and quartzites. Since the discovery of the forms resembling the Palæotrochus of Emmons, noticed in his report on the Waverly district, he has sent to Mr. Billings slabs containing supposed fossils from the Sherbrooke rocks. Mr. Billings thought that a species of Orthis and an Eospongia were indicated. In describing the gold-bearing rocks under the head of "Lower Silurian" Prof. Hind[5] says:

The known gold-bearing rocks of Nova Scotia consist of quartzites, sandstones, and grits, interstratified with argillaceous slates and thin conformable beds of auriferous quartz. This portion has an ascertained thickness exceeding 9,000 feet. * * * The thickness of the black slates in Nova Scotia exceeds 3,000 feet, so that the gold-bearing rocks of the province have a known thickness of 12,000 feet.

The essential parts of the description in the last paper are also printed in the American Journal of Science.[6]

In his report on the gold fields of Quebec and Nova Scotia, Dr. A. R. C. Selwyn[7] speaks of the geological position of the Atlantic coast series of stratified gold-bearing slate and quartzite, stating that all former observers are agreed that they probably belong to the Lower Silurian series. His first impression of them was that they represented the groups known in Britain as the Harlech grit or quartzite, and the Lingula-flag series. He discovered in the gray sandy and flaggy pyritous slates at the Oven's Bluffs numerous specimens of the genus Eophyton, and states that Mr. Billings regarded this genus as characteristic of the Primodial Silurian epoch. He then gives an account of the distribution of the genus Eophyton, and in conclusion says: "In

[1] Report on the Waverly Gold District, with geological maps and sections. Halifax, 1869, p. 61.

[2] On two gneissoid series in Nova Scotia and New Brunswick, supposed to be the equivalents of the Huronian (Cambrian) and Laurentian. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 26, 1870, pp. 468–479.

[3] Report on the Sherbrooke gold district, together with a paper on the gneisses of Nova Scotia and an abstract of a paper on gold mining in Nova Scotia. Halifax, N. S., 1870, p. 3.

[4] Preliminary report on a gneissoid series underlying the gold-bearing rocks of Nova Scotia, and supposed to be the equivalent of the Laurentian system. Halifax, N. S., 1870, pp. 14.

[5] Op. cit., p. 8.

[6] On the Laurentian and Huronian series in Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 48, 1870, pp. 351–353.

[7] Notes and observations on the gold fields of Quebec and Nova Scotia. Geol. Surv. Canada. Report Prog. for 1870–'71, 1872, pp. 268–270.

general aspect, and in the succession of the beds the whole series in Nova Scotia closely resembles the Cambrian and Lingula-flag series of North Wales."[1]

Dr. J. W. Dawson reviews his studies of the Atlantic coast belt of Nova Scotia in the supplement to the second edition of the Acadian Geology,[2] and places the slates and quartzite in the Cambrian. He states that the evidence of fossils in determining the precise age of these rocks is unfortunately as yet somewhat imperfect, and quotes Prof. Hind as saying that the entire thickness of the series is 12,000 feet; of this the lower or quartzite and slate division comprises about 9,000 feet, and the upper or ferruginous slate division about 3,000 feet.

On the colored geological map of the Dominion of Canada, published in 1882, the Cambrian rocks of Nova Scotia are made to extend from near the northeastern point of the peninsula south to Sable River, where they are interrupted by a mass of granite that extends to Harrington Harbor. From this point around the western slope to Annapolis Basin they occupy a wide strip along the shore. As represented on the map they occupy nearly one-half of the area of Nova Scotia.

In 1888 Sir William Dawson reviewed the rocks referred to the Cambrian group on the Atlantic coast of Canada,[3] stating that the Atlantic coast or gold series of Nova Scotia in their western extension appeared to rest on rocks of Huronian aspect. He also says:

> It has unfortunately afforded no well-characterized fossils. The markings called Eophyton and certain radiating bodies (Astropolithon) found in it are, however, similar to those occurring elsewhere in Lower Cambrian rocks. Murray was disposed to regard this formation as corresponding to his Huronian in Newfoundland; but it does not agree with this either in mineral character or in fossils, and is perhaps rather to be regarded as a great development of the lowest member of the Cambrian, an exaggerated equivalent of the Harlech grits and Llanberris slates. In this case, however, it may be expected that it will yet afford true Cambrian fossils.[4]

NEW BRUNSWICK AND CAPE BRETON.

In the report for 1842 on the geology of New Brunswick Dr. Abraham Gesner[5] uses the term "Cambrian system." He says:

> This name has been applied to a group of rocks situated beneath the "Silurian" strata, from which it is not always separated by any very distinct line of demarcation, so far as its lithological character is concerned. The few organic remains, however, found in this group are sufficiently characteristic to make it appear that the forms of animal life during the period of the accumulation of its strata were different from those found in the upper Silurian rocks.

---

[1] Op. cit., p. 271.

[2] Supplement to the second edition of Acadian Geology, containing additional facts as to the geological structure, fossil remains, and mineral resources of Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and Prince Edward Island, London, 1878, pp. 81–83.

[3] On the Eozoic and Palæozoic rocks of the Atlantic coast of Canada, in comparison with those of western Europe and of the interior of America. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc. London, 1888, vol. 44. pp. 804–807. Canadian Record of Science, vol. 3, 1888, pp. 182, 183, 230, 231.

[4] Op. cit., p. 805.

[5] Report on the geological survey of the Province of New Brunswick, with a topographical account of the public lands and districts explored in 1842. St. John, 1843, p. 72.

The rocks of this group extend from the American boundary line and cross the St. John a little above the Meductic, and proceed in a northeast direction toward Bathurst. * * *

The strata consist chiefly of grauwacke, grauwacke slate, and clay slate. The grauwacke may be compared to a very compact sandstone. There are also beds of conglomerate, containing bowlders and pebbles of almost every variety of rock. The cementing matter is generally calcareous or argillaceous; but it is sometimes silicious, and the beds change imperceptibly into quartz rock. The slates are of different colors; red, blue, and green are often seen. Many of them contain lime, and others will supply roofing slate.

The local details of the distribution of this series are not given, nor is the locality of the city of St. John mentioned. Portions of the rocks mentioned by Dr. Gesner are, however, now included in the Cambrian group.

In his third report Dr. Gesner[1] recognizes two series of rocks, both of which are referred to the Silurian age. The upper group consists of limestones, slates, and sandstones, containing the remains of plants, mollusks, etc. The older group is formed of conglomerates, gray slates, sandstones, talcose slates, and the trap beds of Mispeck and Black Rivers.

On a map prepared by Dr. James Robb,[2] the geographic distribution of the formations described by Dr. Gesner is outlined, and under the "Cambrian system" we find the indicated distribution of the Cambrian rocks to include Carboniferous, Devonian, Lower Silurian, and Cambrian as now known. In the text of the volume accompanying the map Mr. J. F. W. Johnston[3] describes the geographic distribution of the rocks and also their general character. He states that the rocks of the Cambrian are distinguished from those of the Silurian by their greater hardness and by their containing less lime.

In speaking of the rocks referred to the Lower Silurian and Cambrian, by Gesner and Robb, Mr. J. W. Dawson[4] states that for the distribution of these rocks, as indicated on the map, he was indebted principally to the map prepared by Dr. Robb. Of the rocks he says:

I do not think that at present there is any good ground for separating the so-called Cambrian rocks from those last mentioned [Silurian], though it is quite probable that they may belong to an older formation, or that they may be older members of the same formation.

When relating the results of a visit to New Brunswick Prof. W. B. Rogers[5] described, by the aid of a section, the stratigraphic features exhibited at the junction of the older and less ancient groups of strata on the St. John's and Kennebecasis Rivers, a few miles above the city

[1] Third report on the geological survey of the province of New Brunswick. St. John, 1841, pp. 5–11.

[2] [Letter on the geological structure of New Brunswick.] Report on the agricultural capabilities of the province of New Brunswick, by J. F. W. Johnston. Fredericton, 1850, pp. 12, 13.

[3] Report on the agricultural capabilities of the province of New Brunswick. Fredericton, 1850, pp. 17, 18.

[4] Acadian Geology, first edition, 1855, pp. 324, 325.

[5] Remarks on the geology of the neighborhood of St. John, New Brunswick. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 7, 1861, p. 176.

of St. John, as observed by Dr. Robb and himself. Referring to the probable ages of the two groups he states that the only fossils discovered consist of vegetable impressions found by Dr. Robb at several localities, and some black scale-like fragments of shells that he found about the city of St. John in loose pieces of siliceous slate. At several points the layers of rock in place are crowded with these remains, the more entire of which presented the form and markings of a Lingula.

Dr. J. W. Dawson described in 1862 the strata about St. John, and published a section[1] that includes the shales and slates of the vicinity of the city; and, in the same section, a series of beds which have since proved to be of Devonian age. He states that the age of the lower members was less certain. They may represent either the Middle and Lower Devonian, or may be in part of Silurian age. "The only determinable fossil, the Lingula of the St. John shales, affords no decisive solution of this question."

In proposing a classification for the pre-Devonian rocks of New Brunswick, Mr. G. F. Matthew[2] states that Gesner's older group is to a great extent younger than his upper series. He reviews the classification of Dr. Dawson[3] dividing the formations into several groups, proposing the name St. John group for Nos. 5 and 6 (in part) of Dawson's section of 1862. He says that the St. John group is formed of several zones of soft, black, dark gray, finely laminated shales, alternating with zones of coarser gray slates, containing numerous thin beds of fine-grained sandstone, the whole having a thickness of about 3,000 feet. The fossils noticed were a Lingula, a Conchifer, Annelids and Coprolites.[4] The Coldbrook group, No. 6 of Dawson, in part, is given a thickness of 3,000 feet or more composed of greenish gray slate, bright red slaty conglomerate and dark red sandy shale, with a reddish conglomerate, grit and hard, gray sandstone. The paper is accompanied by a map showing the geographical distribution; also a section crossing the district in the vicinity of St. John. In a foot-note mention[5] is made of the discovery of numerous trilobites of two or three species, but they were so excessively distorted that the genera could not be made out.

In some observations on the geology of southern New Brunswick, Prof. L. W. Bailey[6] reprinted the table of formations published by Mr. Matthew in 1863. In a table on page 14 he places the St. John group at the base of the Lower Silurian as an equivalent of the Potsdam or Primordial of New York and the Quebec group of Canada. A full description of the St. John group is given,[7] and accompanying it a letter

[1] On the flora of the Devonian period in northeastern America. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc. London, vol. 18, 1862, p. 303.

[2] Observations on the geology of St. John County, New Brunswick. Canadian Nat., vol. 8, 1863. p. 243.

[3] Op. cit., p. 242.

[4] Op. cit., p. 244.

[5] Op. cit., p. 247.

[6] Observations on the geology of southern New Brunswick. Fredericton, 1865, p. 8.

[7] Op. cit., pp. 26–31.

from Mr. C. Fred Hartt,[1] in which he states that he has recognized four genera of trilobites from the St. John rocks, viz, Paradoxides, Conocephalites, Agnostus and a new genus (?) allied to Conocephalites. There are also six species of Brachiopods, belonging to the genera Orthisina, Discina, Obolella, and Lingula. Although all of the species are apparently new, the occurrence of Paradoxides and Conocephalites led Mr. Hartt to correlate the entire fauna with the Primordial fauna of Barrande. He states that the lower part of the St. John group, at Coldbrook, has been divided by Mr. Matthew, on lithological grounds, into three bands, viz:

No. 1.—The lower or arenaceous band, with no determinable fossils, and constituting passage beds from the Coldbrook group.

No. 2.—Argillaceous shales, rich in fossils, Paradoxides, Orthisina ?, Conocephalites, Obolella.

No. 3.—Carbonaceous shales, full of fossils, Paradoxides, Conocephalites, Orthisina, Discina, etc., all much distorted.

In the same year Mr. G. F. Matthew described the Azoic rocks of southern New Brunswick.[2] He gave the geographic distribution of the St. John series, and a detailed section of the formation, to which he assigned a total thickness of 4,500 feet. He mentions the identification of the fauna by Prof. Hartt; and refers the St. John group to the Lower Silurian, correlating it with the *Paradoxides harlani* beds of Massachusetts; with the *Paradoxides bennetti* beds of Newfoundland; the Lingula flags of Great Britain; the alum-schists of Scandinavia and "Étage C" of Barrande in Bohemia.[3] He states that the upper portion of the section may be the equivalent of the Calciferous, perhaps the Chazy. The subjacent Coldbrook group is referred to the Huronian, while the terms Cambrian and Huronian are used as synonyms in their application to the Coldbrook formation.[4]

In noticing the discoveries made by Messrs. G. F. Matthew and C. F. Hartt, Dr. J. W. Dawson refers to the correlation made by Prof. Hartt, and proposes to call this series, represented in New Brunswick by the St. John slates, the *Acadian series*.[5] In 1868 he republished all the facts known to him in relation to the St. John group, naming it the Acadian group, and including it under the Lower Silurian.[6] The section given by Mr. Matthew is published, and also descriptions by Mr. C. F. Hartt of all the species discovered by Messrs. Matthew and Hartt in the St. John group.[7]

---

[1] Preliminary notice of a fauna of the Primordial period in the vicinity of St. John, N. B. Observations on the Geology of southern New Brunswick, 1865, pp. 30, 31.

[2] On the Azoic and Paleozoic rocks of southern New Brunswick. Quar. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 21, 1865, pp. 422–434, map.

[3] Op. cit., pp. 426, 427.

[4] Op. cit., p. 427.

[5] On recent geological discoveries in the Acadian provinces of British America. Am. Assoc., Proc., vol. 16, 1867, p. 118. Canadian Nat., new series, vol. 3, 1868, pp. 295–297.

[6] Acadian Geology. The geological structure, organic remains, and mineral resources of Nova Scotia, New Brunswick and Prince Edw. Island, London, 1868, pp. 637–641, 2d ed.

[7] Op. cit., pp. 641–657.

In 1869 Messrs. Matthew and Bailey[1] described in a general manner the rocks referred to the Lower Silurian and stated that this series includes about 150 feet of slates (holding Paradoxides, Conocephalites, Agnostus, and other trilobites, besides several genera of Brachiopods), and an overlying mass, measuring not less than 2,000 feet, of flags and slates containing Linguläe, worm burrows, etc. Under the caption of "Lower Silurian," the same writers, three years later,[2] include the St. John or Acadian group. A brief historical sketch is given, and a list of fossils that have been described from the formation, with a statement that the apparent thickness of the whole formation, as measured in the city of St. John, is about 4,500 feet. Owing to the disturbed condition of the beds the actual thickness may be much less. If repetitions occur, the aggregate thickness of the series, exclusive of the lower red beds—which have been called Upper Coldbrook—will not much exceed 2,000 feet.[3] This general description is followed by a detailed one, and a copy of Mr. Matthew's section at the city of St. John.[4] The St. John group is then described as found in the Kennebecasis Valley, in northern King's County; in Wickham, Queen's County; in Nerepis Valley, and in Charlotte County.

In the supplement to the second edition of Acadian Geology, Dr. J. W. Dawson[5] introduces the term "Cambrian" and includes under it the Acadian series of St. John and also the great Atlantic coast series of Nova Scotia. Nothing is added in the way of descriptive details to those given in the edition of 1868.

During the survey of the island of Cape Breton, Mr. Hugh Fletcher discovered near Marion Bridge, on the banks of the Mira River, a series of light gray, slaty, fine-grained, feldspathic sandstones, associated with red and green mottled sandstone in which he found numerous specimens of Obolella. He points out the lithologic resemblance of these rocks to the Primordial rocks found by Mr. Alexander Murray in the southeastern part of Newfoundland and to those on the Strait of Belle Isle examined by Mr. Richardson.[6] He also describes a series of purple, red, and green slates, sandstones, and limestones, that he refers to the Lower Silurian.[7] A detailed section of the rocks is given as they occur along St. Andrew Channel. In one of the greenish and blue papery slates he found impressions of an Obolella, with the head and tail of a trilobite, recognized by Mr. Billings as of Primordial or Quebec

[1] Remarks on the age and relations of the metamorphic rocks of New Brunswick and Maine. Am. Assoc., Proc., vol. 18, 1869, pp. 182, 183. Can. Nat., new ser., vol. 4, 1869, pp. 326–328.

[2] Preliminary report on the geology of southern New Brunswick. Geol. Surv. Canada, Rep. of Prog., 1870–'71, 1872, p. 134.

[3] Op. cit., p. 135.

[4] Op. cit., pp. 136, 137.

[5] Supplement to the second edition of Acadian Geology, containing additional facts as to the geological structure, fossil remains, and mineral resources of Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and Prince, Edward Island, London, 1878, p. 81.

[6] Report of explorations and surveys in Cape Breton, Nova Scotia. Geol. Surv. Can., Rep. Prog. 1875–'76, 1877, p. 393.

[7] Op. cit., p. 388.

group age. In his report for the following year he[1] described a number of sections, referring them to the Lower Silurian, and mentioning the occurrence of Lingula, Obolella, and Dictyonema in some of the beds.

In a report on the slate formation in the northern part of Charlotte County, New Brunswick, Mr. G. F. Matthew[2] states that the St. John group occurs in the interval between the Kingston or Upper Silurian rocks and the inclosing Laurentian ridges in King's County. No details are given of the St. John group.

A report on the Primordial-Silurian rocks of New Brunswick by Mr. L. W. Bailey[3] presents a detailed description of the St. John group. A section is given of the strata on Ratcliffe's Mill-stream and Handford Brook and local details of geographic distribution. This is accompanied by a list of the fossils found which were identified by Mr. J. F. Whiteaves.

In a later report on the geology of southern New Brunswick[4] the Cambrian or Primordial Silurian rocks are described as occupying basins or trough-like depressions among the older hills of pre-Cambrian rocks east of the St. John River.

In speaking of the strata carrying the Paradoxides in the vicinity of the city of St. John, Mr. G. F. Matthew[5] states that the strata of the St. John group fill a number of narrow, trough-like basins lying between the Bay of Fundy and the central Carboniferous area of New Brunswick. A carefully measured and detailed section of the St. John outcrop is given with a description of the conditions under which the fossils occur in the same. A thickness of 2,900 feet is assigned to the section.

The same writer argues in a paper on the "Geologic Age of the Acadian Fauna"[6] that on the evidence of the trilobites the St. John group does not quite correspond to the Menevian of Wales, in the restricted application of that term; but, as a whole, they indicate the subjacent Solva group as the equivalent formation to the St. John group. He repeats this correlation a year later,[7] when he says: "Prof. Hartt fixed the age of the St. John group as nearly as was possible in his time

[1] Report on the geology of part of the counties of Victoria, Cape Breton, and Richmond, Nova Scotia. Geol. Surv. Can, Rep. Prog. for 1876–'77. Montreal, 1878, pp. 429–437.

[2] Report on the slate formations of the northern part of Charlotte County, New Brunswick. Geol. Surv. Canada, Rep. Prog. for 1876–'77. Montreal, 1878, pp. 342, 343.

[3] Report on the pre-Silurian (Huronian) and Cambrian or Primordial Silurian rocks of southern New Brunswick. Geol. Surv. Can., Rep. Prog., 1877–'78, 1879; p. 28DD–34DD.

[4] Bailey, L. W., G. F. Matthew, and R. W. Ells. Report on the geology of southern New Brunswick, embracing the counties of Charlotte, Sunbury, Queens, Kings, St. John, and Albert. Geol. Surv. Can., Rep. Prog., 1878–1879, 1880, pp. 6D–8D.

[5] Illustrations of the fauna of the St. John group. Royal Soc. Canada, Proc. and Trans., vol. 1, sec. iv, 1883, pp. 8.–83; pp. 271–279.

[6] The Geologic Age of the Acadian fauna. The Primitive Conocoryphean. British Assoc. Rep., 54th meeting, 1884, pp. 742–743. The Geologic Age of the Acadian Fauna. Geol. Mag., new ser., decade 3, vol. 1, 1884, pp. 470–471.

[7] An outline of recent discoveries in the St. John group. New Brunswick Nat. Hist. Soc. Bull. No. 4, 1885, p. 98.

as 'Primordial,' or, as we now call it, Cambrian." He then calls attention to the article in which he correlated the St. John group fauna with the Solva group, stating, "In other words, it is the fauna of the older part of the Lower Cambrian."

In a preliminary study of the Cambrian fauna of North America[1] a review is given of the history of the term "St. John group" by Mr. C. D. Walcott. In this the use of "St. John" was advocated as against "Acadian," and all species described by Mr. C. F. Hartt in the second edition of Dawson's Acadian Geology were illustrated.

When discussing the faunas of the St. John group, Mr. Matthew[2] states that it is highly probable that the group covers nearly the whole of the Cambrian age; and that the fauna of the Upper Cambrian is equivalent to that of the shallow-water deposit of the St. John group near the summit of the series. The fauna discovered by Mr. Fletcher in the Cambrian shales of Mira River, Cape Breton Island, is considered by Mr. Matthew[3] to belong to the Olenus division of the Cambrian fauna. The species recognized by him are *Peltura scarabæoides*, *Sphærophthalmus alatus*, and *Agnostus pisiformis*. In the same paper he mentions the faunas of the Olenus division as found in Newfoundland. (An abstract of this paper appeared in the Canadian Record of Science, vol. 2, 1886, pp. 255–258.)

Incited by the announcement of the discovery of fossils beneath the Paradoxides zone in Sweden and Russia, Mr. Matthew[4] began anew the study of the red rocks beneath the Paradoxides zone. These strata had been spoken of as the upper member of the Coldbrook group[5] and as constituting a series lower than the Primordial rocks at the base of the Silurian. They were subsequently joined to the St. John group[6] as the base of that group. In a later report in 1888, Mr. Matthew[7] says: "It is now found that this red series is unconformable, not only to the St. John group, but also (as had been previously discovered) to the underlying Coldbrook group." In the valley of Long Reach of the St. John River Mr. Matthew estimates that the red series has a thickness of 1,200 feet. He compares it with the red shales described by Dr. Murray in Newfoundland[8] and correlates it with the Caerfai group of Wales and the lower division of the Sparagmite formation of Norway.[9] A detailed description of the section is given[10] with names of the fossils that have been found in the various beds. These include trails and casts of marine

[1] On the Cambrian faunas of North America; preliminary studies. U. S. Geological Survey Bull. No. 10, vol. 2, 1884, p. 289, separately paged, p. 9.

[2] Illustrations of the fauna of the St. John group, No. 4, Can. Rec. Sci., vol. 2, 1887, p. 362. (Abstract.)

[3] On the Cambrian faunas of Cape Breton and Newfoundland. Royal Soc. Canada Proc. and Trans., vol. 4, sec. 4, 1887, p. 147.

[4] On a basal series of Cambrian rocks in Acadia. Can. Rec. Sci., vol. 3, 1888, pp. 21–29.

[5] Observations on the geology of southern New Brunswick. Fredericton, 1865, p. 24.

[6] Bailey, L. W., and G. F. Matthew. Preliminary report on the geology of southern New Brunswick. Geol. Surv. Can., Rep. Prog., 1870–'71, 1872, p. 59.

[7] On a basal series of Cambrian rocks in Acadia. Can. Rec. Sci., vol. 3, 1888, p. 22.

[8] Op. cit., p. 23. [9] Op. cit., p. 25. [10] Op. cit. p. 27.

worms, tracks, and an unrecognized brachiopod. This paper was followed in the same year by an article on the classification of the Cambrian rocks of Acadia in which the classification of the Cambrian system in Acadia and Newfoundland is given as follows:[1]

Series A.—The Basal series or Etemmian.
Series B.—The St. John group or Acadian.
Series C.—The Lower Potsdam or Georgian.
Series D.—The Potsdam sandstone and limestone.

The division of series A was noticed in the preceding paper by Mr. Matthew. In series B he includes the zone of Paradoxides; describes the rocks in detail, and gives lists of the genera of the fossils. Series C, the Lower Potsdam of Billings, he states has not been recognized on the mainland of Acadia, but is found in the Island of Cape Breton, where the fossils are Bathyurus, Orthisina, Orthis, *Hyolithes princeps*. This series is placed provisionally above B.[2] Series D, or the Potsdam series of New York and the Mississippi Valley, is stated to be absent from New Brunswick and, as far as known, from the eastern border of the continent.[3]

A reclassification of the Cambrian rocks of North America was published in 1888 by Mr. C. D. Walcott as follows:[4]

TABLE I.—*Lower Silurian (Ordovician) system.*

Subdivisions.	Terranes.	Faunas.
Upper Cambrian	Potsdam, Knox, Tonto, Bell Isle, etc	Dicellocephalus or Olenus.
Middle Cambrian	St. John, Avalon, Braintree	Paradoxides.
Lower Cambrian	Georgia, Prospect, Terra Nova	Olenellus.

This is followed by a comparison of typical sections of the Cambrian system in Sweden, Newfoundland, New York, and the Rocky Mountains. The section on Manuel's Brook, Conception Bay, Newfoundland, where the true stratigraphic succession of the Cambrian deposits in America was first discovered, is given in detail.

On learning of the discovery of the Olenellus fauna beneath the Paradoxides zone in Newfoundland, Mr. Matthew published a second paper "On the classification of the Cambrian rocks in Acadia," in which he arranged the Cambrian system as it occurs in Acadia as follows:[5]

	Localities.
D. Upper Cambrian (Potsdam series)	Unknown.
C. Middle and Lower Cambrian—Acadian series	St. John, etc.
B. Lower Cambrian—Georgian series	Cape Breton.
A. Basal Cambrian—Etcheminian series	St. John, etc.

[1] Matthew, G. F. On the classification of the Cambrian rocks of Acadia. Can. Rec. Sci., vol. 3, 1888, p. 72.
[2] Op. cit., pp. 73–74. [3] Op. cit, p. 80.
[4] The stratigraphical succession of the Cambrian faunas in North America. Nature, vol. 38, 1888, p. 551.
[5] On the classification of the Cambrian rocks in Acadia. No. 2. Can. Rec. Sci., vol. 3, 1889, p. 310.

Instituting comparisons between the sections of Sweden and New Brunswick, he discusses the general relations of the Cambrian fauna of North America. The organic remains found in band B are an Agraulos, and at the base of the zone an Ellipsocephalus, of the type associated with *Olenellus* (?) *kjerulfi* in Europe. At the base of band B he found a species of Obolus which he described as *Obolus pulcher*.[1] This comprises the Lower Cambrian fauna or pre-Paradoxides fauna as known to him from New Brunswick up to date.

In another paper on the "Cambrian organisms in Acadia," published in the same year, he notes the discovery in the lower beds of the St. John section, beneath the Paradoxides beds, of several varieties of sponges, a species of Palæochorda and another undescribed species. Undoubted examples of Platysolenites of Pander also occur.[2] Mention is made of the discovery above the Paradoxides zone in the Olenus horizon, of three species of fossils, and above this another stage which he has placed under the title of Peltura beds, corresponding in age to the Cape Breton Upper Cambrian beds.

In September, 1889, Mr. Matthew[3] argues for the uniting of the Olenellus or Lower Cambrian, and the Paradoxides or Menevian zone, as one division of the Cambrian, and the strata above the Paradoxides zone as the upper division, thus returning to the classification of Salter and Hicks, adopted for the Cambrian strata of Wales.

The full text of Mr. Matthew's paper on the Cambrian organisms in Acadia was distributed in June, 1890. It deals almost entirely with the pre-Paradoxides or Basal series of the Cambrian section of New Brunswick, and is accompanied by both tabulated and illustrated sections and sketch maps of Hanford Brook and Caton's Island.[4] It is referred to at length in the description of the Cambrian rocks of New Brunswick in this paper (Chapter. IV).

In a paper read May 28, 1890, Mr. G. F. Matthew gives a detailed description of the geologic structure of the St. John basin in connection with three sections crossing it. Further notice of it will be found in the summary of our present knowledge of the St. John terrane of New Brunswick.[5]

In a list of the geological formations of the Maritime Provinces of Canada, Dr. George M. Dawson tabulates the Cambrian as follows:[6]

2*c*. Upper Cambrian	Miré and St. Andrew series. Cape Breton.
2*b*. Middle Cambrian	Acadian series.
2*a*. Lower Cambrian	Atlantic Coast series. Nova Scotia.

[1] Op. cit., p. 306.

[2] On the Cambrian organisms in Acadia. Can. Rec. Sci., vol. 3, 1889, p. 384.

[3] How is the Cambrian divided? A plea for the classification of Salter and Hicks. Am. Geol., vol. 4, 1889, pp. 133–148.

[4] On Cambrian organisms in Acadia. Trans. Roy. Soc. Can., vol. 7, sec. 4, 1890, pp. 138–143.

[5] Matthew, G. F. Illustrations of the fauna of the St. John group, No. 5. Trans. Roy. Soc. of Canada, vol. 8, sec. 4, 1891, pp. 123–130, pls. II–XVI.

[6] An American Geological Railway Guide. James McFarlane. 2d ed., 1890, p. 52.

MAINE.

When describing the quartz rock of Bar Harbor, Mount Desert Island, Prof. C. H. Hitchcock[1] suggested a Lower Silurian age for the siliceous slates associated with the coarse sandstone or quartz rock, by comparison with similar rocks on Flint Island, of which he had stated that the correlation was more from fancy than real argument, because it reminded him so much of the Potsdam sandstone in its external appearance.

At a later date he says:[2]

> The first rock is a sandstone at Bar Harbor, dipping at an angle of twelve degrees. Ripple marks cover the surface of many layers, and curious cylindrical stems tantalize us by their resemblance to fossils. The formation is probably of Cambrian age.

The strata included under the title of "Cambrian" about Portland, Maine, is described by Prof. Hitchcock[3] as follows:

> These rocks crop out in Saco, a dozen miles west. They are clay slates and indurated argillaceous schists, the latter having a northwest strike, while the rocks of the older series run northeasterly. These rocks are in character and position allied to the Cambrian Paradoxides slates of Massachusetts, and exist in immense mass along the coast of Maine west of Saco, and in New Hampshire.

The correlation of these beds is based entirely upon their lithological characters, as no mention is made of any fossils having been found in them.

In his account of the geology about Frenchman's Bay, on the coast of Maine, Dr. W. O. Crosby describes the slate formation. The prevailing rock is a compact and well jointed argillite or clay slate, of black, drab, and purple tints, with distinct stratification. The author concluded that these rocks are the newest rocks on this part of the coast, by their relations in dip and distribution to the present contours of the land; by their uncrystalline character; by their relations to the intrusives; by the fossils which they contain. The latter he describes as smoothly and even gracefully curved semi-cylindrical grooves and ridges about a line in diameter; they are often a foot or two in length, and might sometimes be regarded as annelid trails, but in other cases they are irregularly branched in a way that would be impossible with worm-grooves, but is very suggestive of smooth, slender fucoids.[4] The general conclusion reached was that the Frenchman's Bay series belonged somewhere between the top and bottom of the Cambrian, with the chances in favor of its being near the latter. In other words, his observations tended to corroborate the suggestion made by Prof. Hitchcock twenty years before. He further states:

---

[1] Reports on the Geology of Maine. Second annual report on the natural history and geology of Maine. Augusta, 1862, pp. 269-271.

[2] Geology of New Hampshire. Concord, 1877, vol. 2, p. 32.

[3] The geology of Portland. Am. Assoc. Proc., vol. 22, pt. 2, 1873, p. 168.

[4] Geology of Frenchman's Bay, Maine. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 21, 1881, pp. 111-116. Geol. of Frenchman's Bay, Maine, just east of Mount Desert Island. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 23, 1882, p. 64.

The resemblance of these rocks to the Acadian slates of the Boston Basin and St. John is very marked; and I join with Prof. Hitchcock in anticipating the discovery on the Maine coast of characteristic Primordial fossils.[1]

In describing a geologic map of Maine, Prof. Hitchcock says that he is unable to divide the Cambrian and Huronian, owing to a want of knowledge of their distribution.

They are the talcose and mica schists of the reports, called the Quebec group by H. Y. Hind and Sir W. E. Logan; the St. John's group in New Brunswick, and the Merrimack, Rockingham, Kearsage, Andalusite, and Coös groups of the New Hampshire reports. * * * They were called Cambrian in New Brunswick by Gesner, and in our second report it was said that this term might ultimately express their true age. Subsequently Bailey and Matthew referred them to the Lower Devonian but the drift of opinion is towards the earlier view at present.[2]

On the map it is very difficult to make out the distribution, owing to the color of the Laurentian, Silurian, and the Cambrian being apparently identical. The supposed Cambrian rocks of New Hampshire and southeastern Canada follow up the valley of the St. John River from a little distance above the entrance of the Allegosh River, and along the Canadian boundary line nearly to the boundary of New Hampshire. The Canadian extension of these rocks is described more in detail and will be mentioned under the head of the Canadian Extension of the Northern Appalachian District (Chapter IV).

In the latest contribution that we have upon the subject of the geological age of the siliceous slate and associated sandstones or quartz rocks of Mount Desert, Maine, Prof. Shaler says:[3]

We note in the first place that there is a total absence of limestones in all the sections exposed to view. A careful study of the drift materials on the south part of Mount Desert and on the Cranberry Islands where we could hope to find traces of hidden limestones shows that there are no limy beds in the sedimentary deposits of this island. The aggregate thickness of the various Mount Desert sections can not be less than about 6,000 feet and may amount to one-half more than this estimate. It seems as if this fact must exclude the hypothesis that these strata were formed anywhere in the periods above the level of the Cambrian, for nowhere above that level do we have any such sections barren of limy matter.

It may be next noted respecting the schistose series of Mount Desert that those of its east and west margins are of singularly uniform composition. They were doubtless originally shales and thin sandstones of great uniformity of structure. Their texture is not such as at all points to exclude the preservation of fossils; indeed the greater portion of the deposits are well fitted to exhibit organic remains, yet they have afforded no trace of them. Nowhere above the level of the Cambrian series do we find any section of this description. On these grounds, it seems reasonable to place the greater part of the Mount Desert rocks in the lower portion of the Cambrian section, if not yet lower in the geological column.

This coincides with the views of Hitchcock and Crosby, that the strata under consideration are of pre-Silurian and probably of Cambrian age.

---

[1] Op. cit., p. 117.

[2] Geological map of Maine (with notes on geology of). In Geology of Northern New England, 1885, p. 2.

[3] The geology of the island of Mount Desert, Maine. Eighth Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Survey, pt. 2, 1888, p. 1059.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.

In the final report of the geology and mineralogy of New Hampshire, Dr. C. T. Jackson describes the Cambrian system as understood by him at that time, and states that metamorphic Cambrian rocks occur in New Hampshire, but they contain no fossils. He also says:

The oldest transition, or Cambrian rocks, occur in Maine and Vermont, and dip in opposite directions, indicating an anticlinal axis in New Hampshire.

On the eastern side of this axis we discover the first distinct fossils in the slate strata on the Kennebec River, where the strata dip boldly to the northwestward.

On the western side we have not yet determined the limits of the Cambrian fossils, but indistinct remains of organic substances, whose nature is problematical, occur in the neighborhood of Castleton, and along the western flank of the Green Mountains. They were supposed by Dr. Carr, who first noticed them, to be graptolites, which are supposed to be allied to sea-pens. Graptolites are described by Murchison as belonging to the lower part of the Silurian system. He states, however, that these pen-like serrated fossils have a great vertical range in the older or protozoic rocks, being found from the lower part of the Ludlow formation down to very ancient beds in the Cambrian system.

Should these fossils prove to be graptolites, they would indicate the proximate limits of the Cambrian rocks on the western side of the New Hampshire anticlinal axis, where the strata dip to the southeastward.

It will be observed that the strata become more and more recent as we proceed eastward and westward from this axis, as is proved by order of superposition, lithological characters and fossil contents of the rocks.[1]

Prof. Hitchcock says[2] that the term Cambrian is misapplied by Dr. Jackson, and the ideal section showing the structural geology is incorrect in many of its details. In the final report of the second geological survey of New Hampshire he describes the Rockingham mica-schist as an uncouth mica-schist. The Merrimack group is a micaceous quartzite that has not yet been fully separated from the previous group. It abounds in beds of coarse, indigenous granite, which seem to have been altered in situ from the feldspathic conglomerate. In certain parts of Strafford County the granite beds predominate, forming numerous hills, while the slate occupies the valleys between.[3] Some schists with interbedded clay slates which are referred to the Merrimack group, are supposed to be equivalent to the Paradoxides beds of Massachusetts.

The Connecticut Coös period can easily be divided into three parts: first, the epoch of the deposition of the mountain masses of silica; second, of hornblende and mica schists; third, of limestone.[4]

In the White Mountain region there are several small areas of andalusite slate, supposed to be the equivalent of the Coös group. * * * * The Coös period was terminated by eruptions of syenitic granite. * * * * The Coös quartzite now constitutes a distinct range of mountains.[5]

The Mount Mote conglomerate is formed of an eruption of igneous material cementing together the slaty fragments. This is included in the

[1] Final report on the geology and mineralogy of the State of New Hampshire, with contributions towards the improvement of agriculture and metallurgy. Concord, 1844, p. 14.

[2] History of the Geological Surveys in New Hampshire. Geology of New Hampshire, vol. 1, 1874, p. 11.

[3] Physical history of New Hampshire. Geology of New Hampshire, Concord, 1874, vol. 1, p. 536.

[4] Op. cit., p. 537. [5] Op. cit., p. 538.

section between the Huronian and the Helderberg period. On the map facing page 536 the formations referred to the mica-schist period are clearly outined. In a subsequent paper Prof. Hitchcock[1] presented a table or scheme representing the stratigraphical column of New Hampshire. The Cambrian includes at the summit the Rockingham schists, and below, in order, the calciferous mica-schist, the Coös group, clay slates, and Mount Mote conglomerate. The description of the various formations is given on page 13 and on the map the geographic distribution is delineated. This paper appears to have been prepared and published prior to the issue of the second volume of the Geology of New Hampshire[2] and it does not refer to the volume. On page 674 of the latter work the formations in New Hampshire are tabulated as follows:

			Feet.
Paleozoic.		Upper Helderberg (Vermont) 200; Lower Helderberg, 500	700
		Calciferous mica schist	4,800
	Coös group.	Staurolite slate	3,000
		Mica schist, often staurolitferous	3,300
		Quartzite	1,000
		Cambrian slates (Connecticut Valley)	3,000
		Total Paleozoic	15,800
Paleozoic?		Kearsarge andalusite group	1,300
		Rockingham mica-schist	6,000
		Merrimack group	4,300
		Ferruginous slates, with steatite (probably repetition of preceding)	
		Total Paleozoic?	11,600

Under the head of Cambrian, in the Geology of Northern New England, Prof. Hitchcock says:[3]

The discussions about the value of the Cambrian series are leading geologists to assign to this place in the column a thick mass of sediment, usually without fossils and largely argillaceous in character. We may for the present place here the following groups: (1) Mica-schists of southern New Hampshire. (2) Merrimack group, including argillo-quartzites in Coös County. (3) Coös group. (4) Clay slates. (5) Mount Mote conglomerates.

In one of his later papers, Prof. Hitchcock,[4] in speaking of the various formations that make up the mica-schist group, says they may be called Silurian, Cambrian, or pre-Cambrian, according as each author is inclined to regard New England as very ancient or on the verge of the Paleozoic. In a table giving the thickness of the formations[5] the Cambrian slate series has a thickness of 4,000 feet; and beneath it

[1] Geological map of New Hampshire and Vermont, with notes on topography and geology. In Geology of Northern New England, 1874, p. 9.

[2] Hitchcock, C. H. Geology of New Hampshire, Concord, 1877, vol. 2.

[3] Geological map of New Hampshire and Vermont, with notes on topography and geology. In Geology of Northern New England, 1874, p. 13.

[4] Geological sections across Vermont and New Hampshire. Am. Mus. Nat. Hist., Bull., vol. 1, 1884, p. 168.

[5] Op. cit., pp. 178, 179.

we find the Crystalline group that was referred to the Cambrian in the Geology of Northern New England in 1874, as follows:

Crystalline group.

	Feet.
Calciferous mica-schist and Coös group	12,000
Kearsarge group	1,300
Rockingham mica-schist	6,000
Merrimack group	4,300

Beneath the Merrimack group the Huronian is placed, with a thickness of 12,000 feet.

In a tabulation of the geological formations of Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut, by Prof. Hitchcock,[1] the calciferous mica-schist, staurolite slate and schists, quartzite, andalusite schists, and Rockingham mica-schists are included in the Cambrian. In a foot-note he says that the quartzite, staurolite slate and schist, and the calciferous mica-schists may yet prove to be Silurian. In his classification of the Paleozoic rocks of New England he places under Cambrian the St. John or Braintree slate, Taconic slate, and Roxbury conglomerate.

In a table published in 1890 he includes only the Potsdam, Georgia, Acadian, and the Taconic slate (in part) in the Cambrian. All of the foliated crystalline rocks of New England are classified as pre-Cambrian.[2]

EASTERN MASSACHUSETTS.

The references to the argillite and limestone in which the Cambrian faunas have been found, in the Boston and Narragansett Basins, occur in most of the publications relating to the geology of eastern Massachusetts. In 1818 Messrs. J. F. and S. L. Dana stated that the argillite was the oldest rock known in the region.[3] Its distribution is shown in a general way upon the map accompanying the report. It is stated to be subjacent to the syenite in Milton and Braintree, and to be stratified. In the works of Prof. Amos Eaton[4] the rocks of eastern Massachusetts are shown in sections, but nothing is added to the data given by the Messrs. Dana.

The next description of the geology of Boston and vicinity, by Dr. J. W. Webster,[5] mentions that the light gray clay slate is the only rock found on the Boston Peninsula in situ. He noticed the presence of the slate in Quincy and also at Nahant.

[1] Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut. (Geological formations.) Macfarlane's Am. Geol. R. R. Guide, 1879, p. 56.

[2] Idem., second edition, 1890, p. 86.

[3] Outlines of the mineralogy and geology of Boston and its vicinity, with a geological map. Am. Acad. Arts and Sciences, Memoirs, vol. 4, 1818, pp. 129-223.

[4] An Index to the Geology of the Northern States, with a transverse section from Catskill Mountain to the Atlantic. Leicester, 1818, pp. 52. A Geological and Agricultural Survey of the District Adjoining the Erie Canal, Albany, 1824, pp. 163, plate.

[5] Remarks on the geology of Boston and its vicinity. Boston Jour. Phil. and Arts, vol. 2, 1824, pp. 277-292.

In 1832 Prof. Edward Hitchcock[1] described the argillite in the vicinity of Boston, and stated that the unstratified rocks were of igneous origin and intrusive among the stratified rocks. A general description of the argillite is given in the text with localities, and on the map the geographic distribution, as known to him, is delineated. This includes the Quincy locality. In the final report of the Massachusetts survey Dr. Edward Hitchcock, in speaking of the argillaceous slate of the eastern part of the State, says that owing to its intimate connection with varieties of rock referred to the Graywacke group it ought to be described as one of the members of it, although marked as a distinct deposit on the map. He considered this slate as older than the graywacke, because fragments of the slate occur in one of the varieties of conglomerate of the graywacke.[2] On the same page, in describing the limestone in the southwest part of Attleborough, he says small beds of compact light gray limestone occasion the red sandrock. He did not see much of it in place, but the numerous blocks in the stone walls indicated its existence in that locality. On the map accompanying the report the argillaceous slate is shown in eastern Braintree, the central part of Quincy, and thence extends across Milton and Dorchester to Roxbury. A small outcrop is also indicated on the north side of Nahant. The North Attleborough locality of the Cambrian as now known is covered by the Carboniferous (No. 17 of the legend of the map). The description in the report of 1841 is essentially the same as in the preliminary report of 1833.

In an article on the crystalline limestones of North America Dr. T. S. Hunt[3] suggests that the limestones interstratified with the red slates at Attleborough, as described by Dr. Hitchcock, may correspond to those which with similar slate and sandstone are met with at the base of the Carboniferous formation in Canada and in New Brunswick.

The long silence in relation to the geologic age of the altered rocks of eastern Massachusetts in the vicinity of Braintree was finally broken in 1856 by the announcement of Prof. W. B. Rogers that trilobites of the genus Paradoxides had been discovered at a quarry in a belt of siliceous and argillaceous slate lying on the boundary of Quincy and Braintree, about 10 miles south of Boston. In announcing this discovery he compares the species found with *Paradoxides spinosus* of Barrande. He states:[4]

> The rock in which these fossils occur is a compact, dense, rather fine-grained, silico-argillaceous slate or slaty sandstone, containing little or no carbonate of lime. * * * * * One of the most curious facts relating to the trilobite of the Quincy and Braintree belt is its seeming identity with *Paradoxides harlani*, described by Green in his Monograph of North American Trilobites.

[1] Report on the geology of Massachusetts, examined under the direction of the government of that State during the years 1830 and 1831. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 22, 1832, pp. 1–70, with map.

[2] Final report on the geology of Massachusetts, 1841, vol. 2, p. 537, Amherst.

[3] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 18, 1854, p. 199.

[4] Proofs of the Protozoic age of some of the altered rocks of eastern Massachusetts from fossils recently discovered. Am. Acad. Proc., vol. 3, 1856, p. 317.

He adds further:

The occurrence of well preserved fossils among rocks so highly altered and so contiguous to great igneous masses as are the fossiliferous slates of Quincy may well encourage us to make careful search in other parts of New England where heretofore such an exploration would have been deemed useless.[1]

Prof. Louis Agassiz, in commenting upon the announcement of Prof. Rogers, said that, geologically speaking, its importance could hardly be overestimated. We have now, he remarked, a standard level upon which to build up the formation of the metamorphic rocks.[2] Prof. Rogers also communicated the knowledge of the discovery of the Braintree fossils to Prof. J. D. Dana, in a letter dated August 13, 1856.[3] He states that his attention was called to the locality by Peter Wainwright, Esq., who resided in the vicinity of the quarry.

Dr. Isaac Lea[4] visited the Braintree quarry, and in reporting upon it to the Philadelphia Academy of Natural Sciences stated that he agreed with Prof. Rogers in placing this formation among the more ancient of the Paleozoic periods. "It lies directly on the granite rocks, or rather it is squeezed in, and is embraced by these rocks (on the east and west sides), which are disturbed by an upheaval." He considered the trilobite found there to be undoubtedly the same as described by Prof. Green many years before under the name of *Paradoxides harlani*.

Prof. W. B. Rogers again called attention to the Braintree locality[5] for the purpose of noting the fact that the formation was among the oldest of the Paleozoic series, and situated somewhere about the level of the Primal rocks (Potsdam sandstone and the Protozoic sandstone of Dr. D. D. Owen), containing Dikellocephalus in Wisconsin and Minnesota.

In 1856 Prof. C. T. Jackson[6] described the rock at Braintree as a blue gray, argillaceous slate, containing silicate of lime but no carbonate, and some disseminated iron pyrites. The stratification of the rock, as indicated by its grain and cleavage, dips to the north 50°, and runs east and west. The existence of the genus Paradoxides in the argillaceous slates of Braintree, proves them to belong to the lowest of the fossiliferous Silurian rocks, and he believed them to be the geological equivalents of the argillaceous slates of Sweden, which are in a similar manner disrupted by the intrusion of syenite.

---

[1] Am. Acad., Proc., vol. 3, 1856, p. 318. [2] Ibid., p. 319.

[3] Discovery of Paleozoic fossils in eastern Massachusetts. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 22, 1853, pp. 296-298.

[4] [On the trilobite formation at Braintree, Massachusetts.] Phila. Acad. Sci., Proc., vol. 9, 1858, p. 205.

[5] [On trilobites from Braintree and on the geologic relations of the district.] Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 6, 1856, pp. 27-29, 40, 41.

[6] [On the Braintree argillite and its trilobites.] Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 6, 1856, pp. 42-44.

In arranging the collections of the State cabinet of Massachusetts, Dr. Edward Hitchcock placed the rock near Boston which carries the trilobites in the Silurian and Cambrian.[1]

Prof. W. B. Rogers sent to Mons. J. Barrande[2] a photograph of the Paradoxides found at Braintree. Barrande compared it with *Paradoxides spinosus* and concluded that *Paradoxides harlani* was a synonym of *Paradoxides spinosus*.

In 1861 Prof. Rogers[3] announced the discovery by Mr. Norman Easton of pebbles carrying fossils of the Potsdam fauna in Carboniferous conglomerate north of Fall River, Massachusetts. He thought the forms distinctly recognized in the pebbles were Lingula of two species, resembling *Lingula prima* and *L. antiqua* of Emmons, from the Potsdam sandstone of New York, and that the rocks from which the pebbles were derived were probably closely connected in time with the period of the Braintree Paradoxides beds. The conglomerate in which the pebbles occur is considered to be of Carboniferous age.

Various communications were made to the Boston Society of Natural History respecting the Paradoxides fauna at Braintree, by Messrs. Jules Marcou and C. T. Jackson in 1861 and 1862. From that time until 1869 little attention appears to have been given to the Braintree rocks. In the latter year Prof. N. S. Shaler[4] described the rocks in the vicinity of Boston, and referred to the argillites of Braintree, stating that they were deposited in deep water. In 1870 Dr. T. S. Hunt examined the rocks near Braintree, and stated that the unaltered argillites of Braintree, holding the Primordial fauna, were observed by Prof. Shaler and himself to rest directly upon a hard porphyrite felsite of the ancient series. He says:[5]

> The fact that the Primordial strata of Braintree have suffered no metamorphism is the more significant, since the beds of similar age in New Brunswick and Newfoundland rest unconformably on crystalline strata supposed to belong to the same ancient series that underlies the Braintree beds, and are, like these, unaltered sand and mud rocks.

In 1875 Mr. W. W. Dodge[6] described the rocks at and about Braintree in the Boston Basin with great detail, and accompanied this with a discussion of the correlation of the Paradoxides beds with the various lower Paleozoic rocks of Europe.

In the same year, in some remarks on Massachusetts geology, Dr. T. S. Hunt[7] reaffirms his observation on the relations of the fossiliferous

---

[1] [Catalogue of State cabinet and notes on metamorphic rocks] 6th annual report of the Secretary of Massachusetts Board of Agriculture, etc., by Charles L. Flint, Boston, 1859, p. iv.

[2] Trilobiten der Primordial-fauna in Massachusetts. Neues Jahrb. für Mineral., 1860., pp. 429–431.

[3] On fossiliferous pebbles of Potsdam rocks in Carboniferous conglomerate north of Fall River, Massachusetts. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 7, 1861, pp. 389–391.

[4] On the relations of the rocks in the vicinity of Boston. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol 13, 1869, pp. 172–178.

[5] On the geology of the vicinity of Boston. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 14, 1871, p. 48.

[6] Notes on the geology of eastern Massachusetts. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 17, 1875, pp. 388–419.

[7] [Remarks on Massachusetts geology.] Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 17, 1875, pp. 508–510.

rocks of Braintree and St. John, New Brunswick, to the subjacent crystalline Huronian strata.

The following year Prof. W. O. Crosby described the Geological Map of Massachusetts, and said:[1]

> Although the fossils characteristic of the Acadian group have been found at only one locality in Massachusetts, viz, Hayward's quarry, in Braintree, yet most observers agree that the greater portion of the slates in the vicinity of Boston are probably of Primordial age; and I have so represented them on the map.

The strata referred to are then described in a general way.

In 1875 Prof. W. B. Rogers[2] announced the discovery of impressions suggestive of the fossil Lingula mentioned by him from Fall River, in pebbles of the conglomerate, at Newport, Rhode Island. The pebbles consist of a gray siliceous rock or quartzite.

The memoir of Prof. W. O. Crosby on the Geology of eastern Massachusetts, with its accompanying map, appeared in 1880. He says:[3]

> The Paleozoic rocks of eastern Massachusetts occur, as already indicated, only in limited basins or depressions excavated in the ancient crystalline formations. . . .
>
> The most diligent search, continued for many years, by, in the aggregate, a small army of observers, has failed to bring to light, among the rocks of the Boston Basin, more than one locality affording fossils. This is the celebrated slate quarry of the south shore of Hayward's Creek, in the extreme northeast corner of Braintree.

Prof. Crosby[4] concludes that the Paradoxides bed in Braintree is the established base line for the stratigraphy of the Boston Basin; and that all the rocks in the Boston Basin above the Shawmut group, and including the Paradoxides bed, belong to one and the same essentially conformable series; although (p. 186) there is in the Boston Basin essentially but one conglomerate and one slate, and the former underlies the latter. From this it follows that the slate is of Primordial age, and the conglomerate must be of the same age, or older. The conglomerate is stated to pass gradually into the slate, and a detailed description of these two formations is given as they occur in the Boston Basin. On the map a part of Nahant is colored to indicate the Cambrian slate. In the text he describes white and gray limestones that in texture are very compact and highly crystalline or saccharoidal. These have a thickness collectively of perhaps 20 feet. He assigns to the conglomerate a maximum volume not exceeding 1,000 feet; and considers that the greatest thickness of the slates cannot be much less than that of the conglomerate, though in some cases falling below 500 feet.[5]

Dr. M. E. Wadsworth,[6] in discussing the relation of the Quincy granite to the Primordial argillite of Braintree, states that Dr. Hunt was

---

[1] Report on the geological map of Massachusetts, Boston, 1876, p. 40.

[2] On the Newport conglomerate. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 18, 1875, p. 100.

[3] Contributions to the geology of eastern Massachusetts. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Occasional papers, No. 3, 1880, p. 181, 183.

[4] Op. cit., pp. 184, 185. [5] Op. cit., p. 266.

[6] On the relation of the Quincy granite to the Primordial argillite of Braintree, Massachusetts. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 21, pp. 274–277, 1882.

mistaken in regarding the granite as of Huronian age, as was Prof. Shaler in regarding it as a metamorphosed sedimentary rock. He says the argillite is surrounded by intrusive granite of a later age, thus adopting the view advanced by Dr. Hitchcock in 1832. In describing the slates, he says they dip a little west of south at an angle of 55°, nearly as given by Mr. Lea. He thinks that, judging from their writings, Profs. Rogers and Shaler based their conclusions regarding the dip of the argillite upon its structural character. In another paper, published the following year, Dr. Wadsworth discusses the argillite and conglomerate of the Boston Basin,[1] and concludes from studies made by him that there are at least two distinct argillites. One like that underlying the conglomerate on Beacon street, Boston, and resembling in some of its characters the Paradoxides argillite at Braintree. The second is of coarser grain, often more decidedly arenaceous, and generally of a gray, black, or reddish color, and forms the Somerville argillites ("Cambridge slates.") It is stated:[2]

> So far as we have any evidence at present the oldest surface rocks in this basin are the argillites and the schists of allied character. Of these we only know the age of a very small area in Braintree and Quincy. * * * Older rocks than the Braintree (Paradoxides) argillites may exist, but of their existence we thus far have no proof.

The discovery of fossils of Lower Cambrian age near North Attleborough, Bristol County, Massachusetts, by Prof. N. S. Shaler,[3] located a second area of Cambrian rocks in eastern Massachusetts. He describes the geographic distribution and the character of the rocks, and in an accompanying paper in connection with Mr. A. F. Foerste gives a description of the fauna. As the description of the strata and the fauna is that which is given in our summary of the present knowledge of the rocks of eastern Massachusetts, it is here omitted.

In a review of the stratigraphic position of the Olenellus fauna by Mr. C. D. Walcott in 1889,[4] it is shown that the Paradoxides fauna of Braintree, Massachusetts, of St. John, New Brunswick, and of southeastern Newfoundland, is superjacent to the Olenellus fauna, and thus above the Olenellus fauna as found at North Attleborough by Prof. Shaler. This is presented more fully in a paper in the Tenth Annual Report of the Director of the U. S. Geological Survey.[5]

In a sketch of the physical history of the Boston Basin, Prof. W. O. Crosby[6] mentions the old and more or less altered or metamorphic slates of the Braintree quarry, and states it to be clearly established that the

---

[1] The argillite and conglomerate of the Boston Basin. Boston Soc. Nat Hist., Proc., vol. 22, 1883, pp. 130–133.

[2] Op. cit., pp. 132, 133.

[3] On the geology of the Cambrian district of Bristol County, Massachusetts. Bull. Mus. Comp. Zoöl. Harv. College, vol. 16, 1888, pp. 13–26.

[4] Stratigraphic position of the Olenellus fauna in North America and Europe. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 37, 1889, pp. 374–392; vol. 38, 1889, pp. 29–42.

[5] The fauna of the Lower Cambrian or Olenellus zone. 10th Ann. Rep. U. S. Geological Survey, 1890 pp. 509–763, plates 49–98.

[6] Physical History of the Boston Basin. Lowell free lectures, 1889–1890. Boston, 1889, pp. 22.

granite is eruptive through, and therefore newer than the Primordial slate. The evidence of the trilobites shows that the slates were formed very far back in geological time, and near the base of the recognized geological formations. In a résumé of the geological history of the Boston Basin,[1] a general description of the Primordial slates and quartzites and their physical relations is given.

In mentioning the discovery of fossils in the limestones at Nahant, Mr. A. F. Foerste correlated the Nahant limestone with the red slates of North Weymouth, and concluded that they are stratigraphically beneath the Braintree Paradoxides beds, and that the red slates of Mill Cove at North Weymouth are of Olenellus age and beneath the Paradoxides strata.[2]

In 1889 Mr. A. C. Lane described the geology of Nahant from a mineralogical standpoint,[3] and in the following year Prof. J. H. Sears published a description of the stratified rocks of Essex County, which includes the limestones and associated slates of Nahant. He mentions finding *Hyolithes princeps*, *Hyolithes communis* var. *emmonsi*, *Hyolithes impar*, and *Stenotheca rugosa*.[4] He also discovered an outcrop of the Lower Cambrian limestone in a valley between Prospect Hill and Hunslow's Hill, in Rowley, in which fragments of Hyolithes occur.

PALEONTOLOGY.

NEWFOUNDLAND.

The first announcement of the discovery of the Cambrian fauna in Newfoundland appears to be by Mr. J. W. Salter[5] in the description of *Paradoxides bennettii*. He referred the species to the "Lingula flags or Zone Primordiale."

From collections made by the Canadian Geological Survey Mr. E. Billings described in 1861[6] the fauna from the Cambrian strata on the north side of the Straits of Belle Isle, on the Labrador shore, at L'Anse au Loup, and assigned it to the horizon of the "Lower Potsdam," correlating it with the fauna found in Franklin County, Vermont, which is described in the same paper. The species described are *Palæophycus incipiens*, *Archæocyathus atlanticus*, *Obolus labradoricus*, *Obolella chromatica*, *O. (Kutorgina) cingulata*, *Conocephalites miser*, *Bathyurus senectus*, *B. parvulus*, *Salterella rugosa*, *S. pulchella*, and *S. obtusa*. The new

[1] Op. cit., pp. 19–22.

[2] The Paleontological horizon of the limestone at Nahant, Massachusetts. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist. Proc., vol. 24, 1889, pp. 261–263.

[3] Geology of Nahant. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist. Proc., vol. 24, 1889, pp. 91–95.

[4] The stratified rocks of Essex County. Essex Institute Bull., vol. 22, 1890, p. 32.

[5] On the fossils of the Lingula flags or "Zone Primordiale." Quar. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 15, 1859, p. 552.

[6] Paleozoic Fossils, vol. 1. Containing descriptions and figures of new or little known species of organic remains from the Silurian rocks. 1830–1865. Montreal, 1865, pp. 426. (Of this volume pp. 1–24 were issued in November, 1861; pp. 25–56 issued January, 1862; pp. 57–168 issued June, 1862; pp. 169–344 issued February, 1865; pp. 395–416 published in Canadian Naturalist, vol. 5, 1860, pp. 301–324.)

genera are Archæocyathus, Obolella, Kutorgina, and Salterella. In reprinting, in 1865, the article published in 1861, Mr. Billings added a new species, *Archæocyathus profundus*; and in the same year described *Acrotreta gemma* from near Portland Creek.

The mode of occurrence of the Cambrian section and fauna on the northwest coast of Newfoundland is given by Sir William Logan in the description of the geological section near Bonne Bay.[1]

From a collection of fossils from Newfoundland sent by Mr. Alexander Murray to Mr. E. Billings, there was described in 1865 *Bathyurus gregarius=Solenopleura gregarius* from the Paradoxides horizon of southeast Newfoundland.[2] Subsequently he [3] described the fauna found at Great Bell Island and also "Fossils from the Menevian Group," under which we find *Obolella? miser*, *Straparollina remota*, *Hyolithes excellens*, *Agraulos socialis*, *A. strenuus*, *A. affinis*, *Solenopleura communis*, *Anopolenus venustus*, *Paradoxides tenellus*, *P. decorus*, *Iphidea*, n.gen., *Iphidea bella*, *Stenotheca pauper*, *Scenella*, n. gen., *Scenella reticulata*. Also from the shales and sandstones of Great Bell Island, Conception Bay: *Eophyton linnæanum*, *E. jukesi*, *Arthraria antiquata*, *Lingula murrayi*, *Lingulella* (?) *affinis*, *L.* (?) *spissa*, and *Cruziana similis*.

With the exception of *Obolella? miser*, *Solenopleura communis*, *Stenotheca pauper*, and *Scenella reticulata* the species described in 1872 were republished in the appendix to the report of progress of the Geological Survey of Newfoundland for 1881.

In 1878 Mr. J. F. Whiteaves described[4] a new species of Lingula, *L. billingsiana*, from the shales of Kelley's Island, and republished Murray's geological section on Manuel's Brook, southeast Newfoundland, with a list of fossils collected there as follows: 1. *Agnostus acadicus*; 2. *Agnostus* (sp. undet.); 3. *Microdiscus punctatus*; 4. *M. dawsoni*; 5. *Conocephalites tener*; 6. *C. baileyi*; 7. *C. orestes?*; 8. *Paradoxides* sp. undet.), stating that Nos. 1, 3, 4, 5, 6, and possibly 7, are common to the Primordial slates of St. John, New Brunswick, and to the shales of Manuel's Brook.

In 1887 when reviewing the Cambrian faunas of Cape Breton and Newfoundland Mr. G. F. Matthew[5] described a new species from the Olenellus zone, *Solenopleura bombifrons*, and identified from Manuel's Brook *Paradoxides* sp., *Agnostus gibbus* (?), *Agraulos socialis*, and *Hyolithes* sp. From Trinity Bay he identified in addition to the species mentioned by Mr. Billings *Eocystites* sp., *Agnostus lævigatus*, *A. punctu-*

[1] Geological Survey of Canada; report of progress from its commencement to 1863. Montreal, 1863. pp. 865–867.

[2] Paleozoic Fossils, vol. 1. Containing descriptions and figures of new or little known species of organic remains from the Silurian rocks. 1860–1865, p. 363.

[3] On some fossils from the Primordial rocks of Newfoundland. Canadian Naturalist, new ser., vol. 6, 1872, pp. 465–479.

[4] On some Primordial fossils from southeastern Newfoundland. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 16, 1878, p. 226.

[5] On the Cambrian faunas of Cape Breton and Newfoundland. Roy. Soc. Canada Proc. and Trans., vol. 4, sec. 4. 1887, pp. 147–157.

osus, var., Agnosti of three other species, and *Microdiscus punctatus*. From Highland Cove in the same bay, *Paradoxides davidis*, *Centropleura loveni*, *Agnostus punctuosus*, var., *A. brevifrons*, *A. lævigatus*, *A. acadicus*, var. *declivis*.

In connection with the study of the stratigraphy of the Cambrian rocks of Newfoundland, the writer described [1] a number of species from the lower or Olenellus zone, and the middle or Paradoxides zone. From the former there were *Obolella atlantica*, *Coleoloides*, n. gen., *Coleoloides typicalis*, *Hyolithes terranovicus*, *H. similis*, *Helenia*, n. gen., *Helenia bella*, *Microdiscus helena*, *Olenellus* (*M.*) *bröggeri*, *Avalonia*, n. gen., *Avalonia manuelensis*, *Solenopleura harveyi* and *S. howleyi*. From the Paradoxides zone there was described the genus Karlia and the species *K. minor*.[2]

In 1890 Mr. C. D. Walcott[3] described *Agraulos strenuus*, var. *nasutus*, from Manuel's Brook.

NEW BRUNSWICK AND CAPE BRETON.

The first description of the Cambrian fauna as found at St. John, New Brunswick, by Mr. C. Fred. Hartt[4] included the following species: *Eocystites primævus* Billings, *Lingula matthewi*, *Lingula*, n. s., *Obolella transversa*, *Discina acadica*, *Orthis billingsi*, *Orthis*, n. sp., *Conocephalites baileyi*, *C. matthewi*, *C. robbi*, *C. orestes*, *C. elegans*, *C. ouangondianus*, *C. tener*, *C. aurora*, *C. thersites*, *C. gemini-spinosus*, *C. halli*, *C. quadratus*, *C. neglectus*, *C. formosus*, *Conocephalites*, n. sp. (?), *Microdiscus dawsoni*, *Agnostus acadicus*, *Agnostus similis*, *Paradoxides lamellatus*.

It appears that the *Eocystites primævus* was submitted to Mr. Billings, to name the genus and species, in manuscript, and was printed in connection with Mr. Hartt's paper. The *Paradoxides micmac*, figured by Dr. Dawson at the close of Mr. Hartt's paper, was named by the latter in manuscript. The figure is a restoration, and no description accompanies it. In the report of Messrs. Bailey and Matthew[5] it is stated that Mr. E. Billings identified from the St. John group, in the Kennebecasis Valley, fragments of Paradoxides and the pygidium of an Agnostus, three species of Conocephalites, one of Ellipsocephalus, one of Agnostus, what appeared to be a fragment of Salterella, and specimens of Palæophycus of two or three kinds. Among the collections examined by Prof. J. F. Whiteaves for Professor Bailey[6] there is a new

[1] Descriptive notes of new genera and species from the Lower Cambrian or Olenellus zone of North America. U. S. Nat. Mus., Proc., vol. 12, 1889, pp. 33–46.

[2] Descriptions of new genera and species of fossils from the Middle Cambrian. U. S. Nat. Mus. Proc., vol. 11, 1889, pp. 441–446.

[3] The fauna of the Lower Cambrian or Olenellus zone. 10th Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Sur., 1890, p. 654.

[4] Fossils of the Primordial or Acadian group at St. John. Dawson, Acadian Geology, 1868, pp. 641–657.

[5] Preliminary report on the geology of southern New Brunswick. Geol. Surv. Canad., Rep. Prog., 1870-1871, 1872, p. 140.

[6] Report on the pre-Silurian (Huronian) and Cambrian or Primordial Silurian Rocks of Southern New Brunswick. Geol. Surv. Can. Rep. of Prog., 1877–'78, 1879, pp. 30, 31 DD.

species of Agnostus and one of Hyolithes noted in association with other species described by Mr. Hartt.

In the year 1883 the first of Mr. G. F. Matthew's[1] memoirs on the fauna of the St. John group made its appearance. In this is given a brief historical review of the work that had already been done upon the fauna by Prof. Hartt, and a statement that from the collections made from time to time during the progress of the Canadian geological survey in New Brunswick Mr. Billings identified fragments of Ellipsocephalus and Salterella and the remains of two species of Hyolithes. Besides these, there are the supposed plant remains of the genera Palæophycus, Eophyton, etc., of the higher divisions of the St. John group.[2] Mr. Matthew made large collections, which were destroyed by the great fire at St. John in the spring of 1877. His published studies were based upon new material collected subsequently to that date.

In the first memoir we find that he recognized three well defined species of Paradoxides and six varieties, as follows: *Paradoxides lamellatus* Hartt; *P. lamellatus* var. *loricatus* Matthew; *P. acadicus* Matthew; *P. eteminicus* Matthew; *P. eteminicus*, vars. *suricoides*, *breviatus*, *quacoensis*, *malicitus*, and *pontificalis*.

A review by Mr. C. D. Walcott[3] of the typical collections upon which Prof. C. F. Hartt based his species, led to a revision of the genera and species, with the following results:

Lingula matthewi	=	Acrothele matthewi.
Discina acadica	=	Palæacmea (?) acadica.
Theca acadica	=	Hyolithes acadica.
Agnostus similis	=	Agnostus acadicus.
Microdiscus pulchellus	=	Microdiscus punctatus Salter.
Conocephalites matthewi	=	Conocoryphe matthewi.
gemini-spinosus	=	Conocoryphe matthewi.
baileyi	=	Conocoryphe baileyi.
elegans	=	Conocoryphe elegans.
robbi	=	Ptychoparia robbi.
formosus	=	robbi.
ouangondianus	=	ouangondiana.
aurora	=	ouangondiana var. aurora.
quadrata	=	quadrata.
orestes	=	orestes.
thersites	=	orestes var. thersites.
tener	=	tener.
neglectus	=	tener.

The genus Harttia and species, *Harttia matthewi*, is proposed for a small patelloid form of gasteropod. Mr. Matthew was requested to give names to the new species, other than the preceding, and he proposed *Lingula ? dawsoni* (p. 15), *Hyolithes danianus* (p. 20.), *Hyolithes micmac*

[1] Illustrations of the fauna of the St. John group. Royal Soc. Canad., Proc. and Trans., vol. 1, sec. 4, 1883, pp. 87–108. Supplementary section, pp. 271–279.

[2] Op. cit., p. 89.

[3] On the Cambrian faunas of North America; preliminary studies. U. S. Geol. Surv. Bull., No. 10, vol. 2, 1884, pp. 283–354, plates.

(p. 21), *Conocoryphe walcotti* (p. 30). The subgenus Salteria was proposed by the author to include the *Conocephalites baileyi*[1] of Hartt.

All of the species were figured and described, with the exception of *Conocoryphe walcotti*. This included figures of the three species of Paradoxides, *P. lamellatus* Hartt, *P. acadicus* Matthew, and *P. eteminicus* Matthew.

Some of the results of Mr. G. F. Matthew's studies are given in two papers read before the British Association for the Advancement of Science at the Montreal meeting in 1884. In one he refers to the geological age of the Acadian fauna, and correlates it with the fauna of the St. John group and that of the Solva group of Wales. In the second is given a description of the development of *Ctenocephalus matthewi* and other species of the genus Conocoryphe.[2]

In Mr. Matthew's second memoir on the fauna of the St. John group,[3] presented to the Royal Society of Canada in 1884, additional notes are given of the *Paradoxides acadicus* and *P. lamellatus*. He proposes the name *Paradoxides micmac* for a large species, which he thinks is probably the one figured in Acadian Geology.[4] The original species to which Mr. Hartt intended to apply the name is unknown. The *Conocephalites matthewi* of Hartt is referred to the genus Ctenocephalus of Corda. A detailed description is given of the species, and also of the various stages of its growth, as found in the St. John slates. *Conocoryphe baileyi*, *C. elegans*, and *C. walcotti* are described and figured. In the description of the plate[5] the subgeneric name Hartella is placed after Ctenocephalus and Bailiella after Conocoryphe.

In 1885 *Obolella transversa* Hartt was referred by Mr. C. D. Walcott to the new genus Linnarssonia, together with the closely allied Menevian species, *Obolella sagittalis*.[6]

In a paper read before the Natural History Society of New Brunswick in 1885, Mr. G. F. Matthew stated[7] he had found some Pteropods that appeared to have several distinct septa at the base of the tube. He sent them to Prof. Hyatt, who wrote that the aspect of the siphon is due to the compression of the sharper against the flatter side. The form of the sutures favors this impression. "These fossils with their distinct septa are startlingly similar to certain forms of Nautiloidea, but there is no siphon. They, however, confirm Von Jhernig's and my opinion that the Orthoceratites and Pteropods have had a common, but as yet undiscovered, ancestor in ancient times."

---

[1] Op. cit., pp. 31, 32.

[2] The geological age of the Acadian fauna. The primitive Conocoryphean. British Association Rep., 54th meeting, 1884, pp. 742–743. The geologic age of Acadian fauna. Geol. Mag., new ser., decade 3, vol. 1, 1884, pp. 470–471.

[3] Illustrations of the fauna of the St. John group, continued; on the Conocoryphea, with further remarks on Paradoxides. Royal Soc. Canada, Trans. and Proc., vol. 2, sec. 4, 1885, pp. 99–124.

[4] Op. cit., p. 101. [5] Op. cit., p. 124.

[6] Palæontologic Notes. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 29, 1885, p. 115.

[7] An outline of recent discoveries in the St. John group. New Brunswick Nat. Hist. Soc. Bull., No. 4, 1885, p. 102.

The third contribution by Mr. Matthew,[1] presented to the Royal Society of Canada in 1885, treats of the Protozoa, Hydrozoa, Brachiopoda, Pteropoda, Gasteropoda, Phyllopoda, Ostracoda, and some of the Trilobita.

Of the Protozoa, *Archæocyathus? pavonoides*, *Protospongia? minor*, *P.? minor* var. *distans*, the new genus Eocoryne and the species *Eocoryne geminum* are described. Of Hydrozoa *Dendrograpsus? primordialis* Protograpsus, n. g., with the species *Protograpsus alatus*. But one species of the Echinodermata is mentioned, *Eocystites primævus* of Billings. The new forms of Brachiopoda are: *Lingulella? inflata*, *L. linguloides*, *Acrotreta baileyi*, *A.? gulielmi*, *Kutorgina latourensis*, *K.? pterineoides*, *Orthis quacoensis*. Of species previously described *Lingulella dawsoni*, *Linnarssonia transversa* Hartt, *Linnarssonia misera* Billings, *Acrothele matthewi* Hartt, and *Orthis billingsi* Hartt, are described and illustrated.

Among the Pteropods the new subgenus Camerotheca is proposed, and the species *Hyolithes* (*Camerotheca*) *gracilis*, *H.* (*C.*) *danianus*, and *H.* (*C.*) *micmac* are described and illustrated. The genus Diplotheca includes *Diplotheca hyattiana* and the variety *caudata*; also *Hyolithes acadicus* of Hartt, and its varieties, *sericea*, *obtusa*, and *crassa*.

The Gasteropoda include a notice of the genus Stenotheca and the description of the new species, *Stenotheca hicksiana*, *S. concentrica*, *S. radiata*, *S. nasuta*, and *S. triangularis*. The subgenus Parmophorella is proposed to include the original species, *Discina acadica* Hartt. *Stenotheca acadica* and *Hartlia matthewi* Walcott are described and illustrated. To the Phyllopoda (?) the new genus Lepiditta, with the species *L. alata* and *L. curta*, and the new genus Lepidilla, with the species *Lepidilla anomala*, are referred. Mr. Matthew says that these forms are very minute, and belong either to lamellibranchs or. Phyllopods. The Ostracod Crustaceans include the new genera Hipponicharion and Beyrichona. One species is referred to the former genus, *H. eos*, and two to the latter, *B. papilio* and *B. tinea*. To the genus Primitia he refers one new species, *P. acadica*.

The Trilobita include the new species of Agnostus, *A. regulus*, *A. partitus*, *A. vir*, *A. vir.* var. *concinus*, *A. tessella*, *A. umbo*, *A. obtusilobus*, and *A. acutilobus*. *Agnostus acadicus* Hartt is described and figured and the variety *declivis* proposed. *Microdiscus pulchella* Hartt is placed as a variety of *M. punctatus* Salter, and a new variety, *precursor*, is proposed to be included under *punctatus*. *M. dawsoni* Hartt is also described and figured. Of the larger forms of the Trilobita, *Agraulos* (?) *articephalus* is proposed, *Solenopleura acadica* of Whiteaves is figured and described for the first time, and *Paradoxides abenacus* is proposed as a new species. A redescription of *Paradoxides micmac* and the proposal of a variety, *suricus* of *P. acadicus* concludes the references to previously described species.

[1] Illustrations of the fauna of the St. John group, continued. No. III. Descriptions of new genera and species (including a description of a new species of Solenopleura by J. F. Whiteaves). Royal Soc. Canada, Trans. vol. 3, sec. 4, 1886, pp. 29–84. (Proc. for 1885.)

In a synopsis of the fauna in Division 1 of the St. John group, Mr. Matthew[1] notes the occurrence of thirty genera, sixty-five species, and twenty-one varieties of fossils. He states that in a higher horizon in the Kennebecasis Bay area he has found the following association of species:[2]

Anopolinus? sp.	Agnostus (cfr. Nathorsti, Brögg).
Parabolina? sp.	A. (cfr. parvifrons, Linrs.)
Anomocare? 2 sp.	A. umbo.
Ptychoparia, 2 sp.	A. acadicus Hartt, var.
Agraulos socialis Bill., var.	Hyolithes, sp.
Microdiscus punctatus Salter, var.?	Linnarssonia transversa Hartt, sp.
Agnostus acutilobus (cfr. gibbus).	

In some preliminary notes on the higher fauna[3] he says that—

The heavy band of black slates which runs through the center of the city of Saint John has yielded the following species, contained in calcareous nodules:

Ctenopyge (cfr.) spectabilis Brögg.	Kutorgina (cfr.) cingulata Bill.
Orthis (cfr.) lenticularis Dal.	Kutorgina?

These indicate a horizon in the upper part of the Lingula flags.

A series of slates are exposed along the north side of the Kennebecasis Basin, whose fossils indicate that they also pertain to the upper part of the Cambrian system:

Conocephalites, a species with broad free cheek and flaring genal spine.	Kutorgina (?), sp.
	Lingulella (cfr.) lepis Salter.
	Lingulella, sp.
Ptychoparia, a small species.	Eophyton linnæanum Torrell, var,
Agnostus (cfr.) pisiformis Ang.	Eophytera, sp.
A. (cfr.) richmondensis Wal.	Arthraria, sp.

In a note to the American Journal of Science Mr. Matthew[4] states that he has found *Olenellus* (?) *kjerulfi* in the Kennebecasis River Basin in band *c* and *d* of his Division 1; and that the same species occurs in the Cambrian beds of Newfoundland. Upon this reported discovery Mr. S. W. Ford[5] endeavored to show that as the species was found at the base of the St. John Paradoxides beds and at the base of the Swedish Paradoxides beds it was a true Paradoxides, and therefore did not influence the question of the stratigraphical position of the Olenellus fauna in North America.

In an abstract of a paper on the Cambrian faunas of Cape Breton and Newfoundland in the Canadian Record of Science, vol. 2, 1886, pp. 255–258, that preceded the main report in the Royal Society of Canada Transactions,[6] Mr. G. F. Matthew points out that the slates of Mira River, Cape Breton, contain several species of trilobites, which show that these measures are in the upper part of the Olenus zone or Lingula flags of Great Britain. The species observed were *Peltura scarabeoides*

[1] Synopsis of the fauna in Division 1 of the St. John group, with preliminary notes on the higher faunas of the same group. New Brunswick Nat. Hist. Soc., Bull. 5, 1886, pp. 25–31.

[2] Op. cit., p. 29. [3] Op. cit., p. 30.

[4] Note on the occurrence of *Olenellus (?) kjerulfi* in America. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 31, 1886, p. 472.

[5] Note on the age of the Swedish Paradoxides beds. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 32, 1886, pp. 473–476.

[6] On the Cambrian faunas of Cape Breton and Newfoundland. Royal Soc. Canada, Proc. and Trans., vol. 4, Sec. 4, 1887, pp. 147–157.

Wahl., *Sphærophthalmus alatus*, and *Agnostus pisiformis*. There was also a small Lingulella similar to that which characterizes the upper flags of the St. John group, and an Orthis similar to *Orthis lenticularis* of Dalman.

In discussing the evidence afforded by the smaller-eyed trilobites of Division 1 of the St. John group, Mr. G. F. Matthew[1] speaks of their bearing on the origin of the Cambrian fauna. He also gives a list of fossils known to him at that date from Division 1 of the St. John series. The total is thirty genera, sixty-five species, and twenty-one varieties, the same as in the paper previously mentioned in the synopsis of the fauna of the St. John group.[2] Mention is made by Mr. Matthew of additional species from the St. John group in 1888.[3] In the measures on the St. John River corresponding to those of Band B in Division 1 of the St. John Basin, a calcareous organism that may be referred to Oldhamia has been found. It resembles *O. antiqua*, but branches less freely. In the same sandstone occurs an elegantly ornamented Lingulella (?) of peculiar form. Mr. Matthew compares it with *Lingula? favosa* of the Eophyton sandstones of Sweden. In Division 2 of the St. John group were found several genera of seaweeds, among which are two graceful species related to Taonurus or Spirophyton; also fragments of bodies of a small crustacean that is probably a Hymenocaris. In a paper published soon after on the "Classification of the Cambrian Rocks of Acadia," Mr. Matthews states[4] that the Lower Potsdam of Billings, or Georgian of Mr. Walcott, is found in the island of Cape Breton, where the fossils are Bathyurus (sub-genus?), Orthisina, Orthis, and *Hyolithes princeps*. Remarks upon the affinities of the characteristic genera of the Georgian and other portions of the Cambrian fauna occur in this paper.

Mr. Matthew presented Part IV of his illustrations of the fauna of the St. John group to the Royal Society of Canada in 1887.[5] The first species described is the great *Paradoxides regina*, one of the largest trilobites yet discovered in the Cambrian rocks. This is followed by a description of "The smaller trilobites with eyes." An undetermined species is referred to the genus Ellipsocephalus, and *Agraulos? whitfieldianus* is described with its variety *compressa*. The subgenus Strenuella is proposed, with the species *Strenuella? halliana* as its type. A discussion of the genus Liostracus of Angelin is followed by descriptions of *Liostracus tener* Hartt, *L. ouangondianus* Hartt, and varieties *immarginata*, *aurora*, *gibba*, and *plana*, and a

[1] Illustrations of the fauna of the St. John group, No. IV. Pt. I: Description of a new species of Paradoxides (*Paradoxides regina*). Part 2: The smaller trilobites with eyes (Ptychoparidæ and Ellipsocephalidæ). Royal Soc. Canada Trans., vol. 5, sec. 4, 1888, pp. 115-166.

[2] Illustrations of the fauna of the St. John Group. Canadian Rec. Sci. vol 2, 1887, p. 361.

[3] On the basal series of Cambrian rocks in Acadia. Canadian Record Science, vol. 3, 1888, pp. 28, 29.

[4] Canadian Rec. Sci., vol. 3, 1888, p. 74.

[5] Illustrations of the fauna of the St. John group, No. IV. Pt. 1. Description of a new species of Paradoxides (Paradoxides regina). Pt. 2. The smaller trilobites with eyes (Ptychoparidæ and Ellipsocephalidæ). Royal Soc. Canada, Trans., vol. 5, sec. 4, 1888, pp. 115-166.

notice of the development of the young of this species. Under Ptychoparia, *Liostracus linnarssoni* Brögger is identified from the St. John series. For the narrow form he proposes the variety *alata*, and this is followed by a description of the development of the young. To the genus Solenopleura of Angelin he refers the *Conocephalites robbi* of Hartt, and gives a description of the development of the young as far as known to him. A more extended description of *Solenopleura acadica* of Whiteaves is given, and the variety *elongata* proposed.

In the second paper by Mr. Matthews on the classification of the Cambrian rocks in Acadia[1] the species *Obolus pulcher* is described from the base of Band B of division 1 of the St. John group. In the middle of the band Mr. Matthews recognized an Agraulos and at the base an Ellipsocephalus. This paper also contains a discussion of the Olenellus fauna as found in Nevada. In a paper read later in 1889, entitled "On the Cambrian Organisms in Acadia,"[2] Mr. Matthew states that he has found in this lower series beneath the Paridoxides zone a species that recalls *Fucoides circinnatus* (p. 384), the Obolus which was described later, and undoubted examples of Platysolenites of Pander. In mentioning the fauna and flora of the Paradoxides beds, he says the basket sponges and the rod-like sponges (?) are common to both this and Series B. In all the fine layers of this band species of Protospongidæ may be found, but no examples of the typical Protospongia of the Paradoxides beds have been observed. A new species of Obolus and three species of Lingulella are mentioned as being described in the paper, and the Algæ are represented by several different types, among which are a Buthotrephis and a microscopic form parasitic on the latter organism. There are also some quite small oval forms, resembling Hydrocystium, which may have been algoid. Among the new species of the Paradoxides beds is a little Platyceras. He says that *Paradoxides pontificalis* is found to be a narrow, and *P. micmac* a broad form of *Paradoxides hicksi* of Wales (p. 385). From stage 2, the Olenus beds, he reports abundant remains of a large Protospongia, including *Protospongia fenestrata* of Salter, and *P.* (?) *major* of Hicks, and another large species. From the fossils which appear to have been placed in the upper part of division 2 are some that have been found in Kennebecasis Basin of the Cambrian rocks. These are Leptoplasti, allied to *L. stenotus* of Angelin, *Agnostus pisiformis*, var. and *Agnostus nathorsti*, var. From division or stage 3, the Peltura beds, he mentions two species, Ctenopyge (cf. *C. flagillifer* and *C. spectabilis*), *Orthis lenticularis*, and a Kutorgina. At the bottom of the division *Lingulella lepis* and another large species, *L. ampla*, var.? are found. These beds are correlated with beds of Cape Breton containing species of Peltura, etc. (p. 386).

In a paper by Mr. Matthew, entitled "How is the Cambrian divided?

[1] Canadian Record Science, vol. 3, 1889, pp. 303–315. [2] Ibid., pp. 383–397.

A plea for the classification of Salter and Hicks,"[1] a comparison of the genera of the different horizons of the Cambrian is made.

In the full paper on the Cambrian organisms of Acadia, published in 1890, Mr. Matthew describes the stratigraphic position of the fauna that he considers beneath the Paradoxides beds, and compares it with the lower Cambrian fauna of Sweden and Russia. The new genera and species described are:[2]

Phycoidella, n. g., p. 144.
Phycoidella stichidifera n. sp., p. 144.
Palæochorda setacea n. sp., p. 145.
Hydrocytium (?) silicula n. sp., p. 146.
Microphycus n. g., p. 146.
Microphycus catenatus n. sp., p. 146.
Monadites n. g., p. 147.
Monadites globulosus n. sp., p. 147.
Monadites pyriformis n. sp., p. 147.
Monadites urceiformis n. sp., p. 147.
Radiolarites n. g., p. 148.
Radiolarites ovalis n. sp., p. 148.
Plocoscyphia (?) perantiqua n. sp., p. 148.
Astrocladia (?) elongata n. sp., p. 148.
Astrocladia (?) elegans n. sp., p. 149.
Astrocladia (?) virguloides n. sp., p. 149.
Dichoplectella n. g., p. 149.
Dichoplectella irregularis n. sp., p. 149.
Hyalostelia minima n. sp., p. 150.
Obolus (?) major n. sp., p. 155.
Lingulella martinensis n. sp., p. 155.
Leperditia ventricosa n. sp., p. 159.
Leperditia steadi n. sp., p. 160.

He also describes and illustrates:

Buthotrephis antiqua Brongn., p. 144.
Platysolenites antiquissimus Eichw., p. 150.
Obolus pulcher Matth., p. 151.
Volborthella tenuis Schmidt, p. 156.
Psammichnites gigas Torrell, p. 157.
Arenicolites lyelli Torrell, var. minor, p. 159.

In a note at the close of the descriptions it is stated that he has learned that a suggestion made by him in reference to *Olenellus kjerulfi* has met with acceptance from a number of naturalists and the generic name Holmia is proposed for *Olenellus kjerulfi*.[3] Mention is made of the relations of the genera Olenellus, Olenoides, and Mesonacis.

In his fifth contribution to the illustrations of the fauna of the St. John group Mr. G. F. Matthew describes the following new genera and species:[4] *Platyceras aperta*, n. sp., p. 132, *Agraulos* (?) *holocephalus*, n. sp., p. 138, *Medusichnites*, n. gen., p. 143, with five varieties, *Lingu-*

[1] Am. Geologist, vol. 4, 1889, pp. 139–148.
[2] On Cambrian Organisms in Acadia. Royal Soc. Canada, Trans., vol. 7, 1890, sec. 4, pp. 135–162.
[3] Op. cit., p. 160.
[4] Illustrations of the fauna of the St. John group No. V. Roy. Soc. of Canada, Trans., vol. 8, 1891, pp. 130–166, pls. 11–16.

lella starri, n. sp., p. 146, *Lingulella radula*, n. sp., p. 147, *Eoichnites*, n. gen., p. 148, *Ctenichnites*, n. gen., p. 151, *Ctenichnites ingens*, n. sp., p. 151, *Frœna ramosa*, n. sp., p. 159, *Arenicolites brevis*, n. sp., p. 159, *Goniadichnites*, n. gen., p. 160, *Goniadichnites trichiformis*, n. sp., p. 160, *Monocraterion magnificum*, n. sp., p. 161.

In addition to the preceding Mr. Matthew has remarked upon several genera and species that have been previously described from the Cambrian rocks. They include: *Eocoryne geminum* Matt., p. 130, *Lepidilla anomala*, Matt., p. 130, Orthis and Orthisina, p. 131, *Stenotheca* Salter, p. 132, *Stenotheca concentrica*, Matt., p. 133, var. *radiata* Matt., p. 133, *Stenotheca triangularis* Matt., p. 134. In his remarks upon the genus Stenotheca he concludes that the type species is not a molluscan shell, but should be referred to a Phyllopod crustacean. This includes the typical form, but does not include *Discina acadica*, of Hartt, as the latter is a patelloid gasteropod. *Conocoryphe walcotti* Matt., p. 134, *Conocoryphe baileyi* Hartt, p. 135, *Paradoxides lamellatus* Hartt, p. 135, *Paradoxides micmac*, var., *pontificalis* Matt., p. 136, *Agraulos* (?) *whitfieldianus* Matt., p. 138, *Agraulos socialis* Bill., p. 138, *Medusites princeps* Torrell, p. 140, *Medusites radiata* Nathorst, p. 141, *Medusites costata*, p. 142, *Eoichnites linnæanus* Torrell, p. 148, *Psammichnites* Torrell, p. 157, *Frœna*, Roualt, p. 158, *Monocraterion* Torrell, p. 160, *Monocraterion tentaculatum*, p. 161, *Histioderma hibernicum*, p. 162.

EASTERN MASSACHUSETTS.

The first description of a fossil from the Cambrian rocks of eastern Massachusetts is that of *Paradoxides harlani*, by Dr. Jacob Green,[1] from specimens sent to him by Dr. Richard Harlan, who supposed they came from Trenton Falls, in the State of New York. It was not until 1856[2] that the true horizon from which the specimens came was discovered. In making the announcement of the discovery Prof. Rogers quoted from Barrande on the distribution of the genus Paradoxides, and stated that he considered the specimens from Braintree, 10 miles south of Boston, to be identical with the *Paradoxides harlani* described by Green in 1834. He says the fossils in the Braintree quarry are in the form of casts, some of them of great size and lying in various levels in the strata, and that as far as he could observe they all belong to one species and agree more closely with Barrande's *Paradoxides spinosus* than with any other form known to him. A fine figure of *Paradoxides harlani* was published by Prof. Rogers,[3] in his final report of the geological survey of Pennsylvania, under the name of *P. spinosus*.

Mons. J. Barrande, in referring to the discovery of Paradoxides in the slates of Braintree,[4] institutes a comparison of the specimens from

[1] Descriptions of some new North American trilobites. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 25, 1834, p. 336.

[2] Proofs of the Protozoic age of some of the altered rocks of eastern Massachusetts, from fossils recently discovered. Am. Acad. Proc., vol. 3, 1856, pp. 315-318.

[3] The Geology of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, 1858, vol. 2, p. 816.

[4] Trilobiten der Primordial-fauna in Massachusetts. Neues Jahrb. for 1860, pp. 429-431.

there and *Paradoxides spinosus* from Bohemia, and concludes that *P. harlani* is a synonym for *P. spinosus*.

In 1861 Prof. Jackson[1] exhibited a small trilobite from Braintree of the species *Paradoxides harlani*, stating that it seemed identical with forms from Newfoundland described as *Paradoxides bennetti* from St. Mary's Bay. In a foot-note accompanying a paper on the geology of the vicinity of Boston, by Dr. T. S. Hunt,[2] the writer says:

> Mr. Billings informs me that he regards the *Paradoxides bennettii* (Salter) from Newfoundland as identical with the *Paradoxides harlani* (Green) from Braintree.

A number of collectors obtained specimens of *Paradoxides harlani* from the Braintree beds, but it was not until 1861 that a notice of other species appeared. Mr. Albert Ordway[3] stated at a meeting of the Boston Society of Natural History that he had found a fragment of a trilobite which he referred to the genus Ellipsocephalus. He also reported finding a distinct fucoidal impression which shows three branches, each about 4 inches long, but not sufficiently well marked to afford any evidence as to its nature. Mr. Ordway also published a figure of a head of *Paradoxides harlani* when comparing that species with *Paradoxides spinosus*, Boeck., considered by Barrande identical with *P. harlani*.[4]

In his notes on the geology of eastern Massachusetts Mr. W. W. Dodge[5] reviews the then existing information in relation to the fauna of the Paradoxides zone of Braintree—the Braintree slates—mentioning *Paradoxides harlani* and a few obscure traces of fossils found at that locality. A general description of the Cambrian fauna of Wales is given in this connection.

The second described species from the Paradoxides beds of Braintree is *Arionellus quadrangularis* by Prof. R. P. Whitfield.[6] This is probably the species of Ellipsocephalus referred to by Mr. Ordway.

A review of the fauna of the Braintree argillites by Mr. C. D. Walcott[7] included a mention of the species previously described, and a description of a new Pteropod, *Hyolithes shaleri*, and a new species of trilobite, *Ptychoparia rogersi*. The species described by Prof. Whitfield as *Arionellus quadrangularis* was referred to the genus Agraulos.

Under the title of "Preliminary descriptions of North Attleborough fossils" Messrs. N. S. Shaler and A. F. Foerste[8] made the most important contribution to the Cambrian fauna of Massachusetts since the discovery of *Paradoxides harlani*. They identified the fauna as that

---

[1] [On a trilobite from Braintree.] Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., vol. 8, 1861, p. 58.

[2] Boston Soc. Nat. Hist. Proc., vol. 14, 1871, p. 48.

[3] On the occurrence of other fossil forms at Braintree, Mass. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist. Proc., vol. 8, 1861, pp. 5, 6.

[4] Op. cit., p. 3.

[5] Notes on the geology of eastern Massachusetts. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist. Proc., vol. 17, 1875, pp. 405–407.

[6] Notice of some new species of Primordial fossils in the collections of the Museum, and correction of previously described species. Am. Mus. Nat. Hist., Bull., vol. 1, 1884, p. 147.

[7] On the Cambrian Faunas of North America; preliminary studies. U. S. Geol. Surv. Bull. No. 10, vol. 2, 1884, pp. 323–329. Separately paged, pp. 43–49.

[8] Bull. Mus. Comp. Zool., Harv. College, vol. 16, 1888, pp. 27–39.

of the Olenellus zone, as found in the vicinity of Troy, New York. The species described are:

Obolella crassa, var.	H. communis var. emmonsi.
Obolella (?)	H. americanus.
Fordilla troyensis.	H. princeps.
Lamellibranch (?)	H. billingsi.
Scenella reticulata.	Hyolithellus micans.
Stenotheca rugosa, var. paupera.	Salterella curvatus.
S. rugosa var. abrupta.	Aristozoë.
S. curvirostra.	Microdiscus bellimarginatus.
Platyceras primævum.	M. lobatus.
Pleurotomaria (Raphistoma) attleborensis.	Paradoxides walcotti.
	Ptychoparia mucronatus.
Hyolithes quadricostatus.	Ptychoparia attleborensis.

Of these, two genera—Pleurotomaria and Paradoxides—have not heretofore been found in a strongly marked Olenellus zone fauna. A comparison of *Paradoxides walcotti* with specimens of *Olenellus asaphoides* from Troy, New York, of the same size, show them to be generically, if not specifically, identical. This removes Paradoxides from the Olenellus fauna.

Under the view that the Olenellus fauna preceded the Paradoxides fauna Prof. Shaler[1] speaks of *Paradoxides walcotti* as the surviving member of the series, and says the occurrence of the genus indicates close affinities with the Braintree Cambrian horizon. He made careful search for indications of the stratigraphic relations of the North Attleborough and Braintree section but without success. In mentioning the Braintree locality it is stated that a number of distinct remains occur near the Neponset River, and the beds have much the same aspect and are apparently about the same distance from the syenites as those at Braintree.[2]

A notice and description of the fauna found at North Attleborough from the Olenellus horizon, was followed in 1889[3] by the announcement of the discovery of Hyolithes in limestone near East Point, Nahant. Mr. Foerste correlates the limestone and associated shales with those of North Attleborough, and states that the species of Hyolithes appears to be the same as that found at North Attleborough. He proposes the name of *Hyolithes inæquilateralis*. From a study of the type specimens the writer believes it to be identical with *H. communis* var. *emmonsi*.

As now known, the entire Cambrian fauna from eastern Massachusetts includes from the Paradoxides or Middle Cambrian zone four genera and four species, and from the Olenellus or Lower Cambrian zone, twelve genera and nineteen species.

---

[1] On the geology of the Cambrian district of Bristol County, Massachusetts. Bull. Mus. Comp. Zool., Harv. College, vol. 16, 1888, p. 21.

[2] Op. cit., p. 23.

[3] Foerste, A. F. The paleontological horizon of the limestone at Nahant, Massachusetts. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 24, 1889, pp. 261–263.

APPALACHIAN PROVINCE.

The Appalachian Province includes the outcrops of Cambrian strata on the line of the Appalachian system of mountains, from the lower St. Lawrence Valley on the north, to Georgia and Alabama on the south.

For the purpose of presenting the historical data the province will be divided as follows:

A. Northern Appalachian district.

B. Southern Appalachian district.

NORTHERN APPALACHIAN DISTRICT.

The northern Appalachian district includes the Hudson River and Lake Champlain area east of the river and lake and an extension northeastward into Canada, as far as the vicinity of Cape Rosier on the St. Lawrence River.

The Hudson River and Lake Champlain area will first be considered. It includes the strata referred to the Cambrian, found on the western slope of the Green Mountains, the foot hills and the more level country stretching westward toward the Hudson River and Lake Champlain.

The earliest reference in the literature to a distinct formation that is now referred to the Cambrian is found in a description of the geology of western Massachusetts and eastern New York. On this account this formation, the "Granular Quartz," will be treated historically as it has been mentioned by authors in Massachusetts, New York, and Vermont, until the year 1861, when its history will be carried forward with that of the "Red Sandrock" and the "Georgia Slates," with which it was then correlated.

GRANULAR QUARTZ.

The first differentiation of a formation referred to the Lower Cambrian in America was made by Prof. Amos Eaton in 1818.[1] Prior to that time Mr. William Maclure, the pioneer of systematic geology in America, published a map with descriptions of the rocks of the Eastern United States, in which all the strata now referred to the Cambrian system in the Appalachian range were included in the Transition series. On his first map[2] the Transition rocks are represented as extending from Hudson, in the valley of the Hudson, south to the vicinity of Poughkeepsie, and thence southwest throughout New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Virginia, eastern Tennessee, northern Georgia, and into Mississippi. On the map accompanying a later work[3] the Transi-

[1] An index to the geology of the Northern States, with a transverse section from Catskill Mountain to the Atlantic. Leicester, 1818, pp. 52.

[2] Observations on the geology of the United States explanatory of a geological map. Am. Phil. Soc. Trans., vol. 6, 1809, pp. 411–428, map.

[3] Observations of the geology of the United States, with remarks on the probable effects that may be produced by the decomposition of the different classes of rocks on the nature and fertility of soils. With a map and two plates. Am. Phil. Soc. Trans., new ser., vol. 1, 1817, pp. 1–91.

tion rocks are extended north into the valley of Lake Champlain as far as the Canadian border. On the south they terminate in Georgia a short distance south of the Tennessee line.[1]

In his first publication on the rocks between the Catskill Mountains west of the Hudson River and the Atlantic Ocean, Prof. Amos Eaton[2] separated the "Granular Limestone and Quartz" as No. 2 of the section, and an argillaceous and siliceous slate as No. 9, giving the localities at which they occur. Two years later this classification was reviewed[3] and the "Granular Quartz" dropped out of the nomenclature, only to reappear again with a very accurate description of the formation as it occurs in Vermont.[4] It is interesting to note in this publication, that the "Granular Limerock" is mentioned as accompanying the "Transition Granular Quartz" from Whitehall on Lake Champlain, to Barnegat on the Hudson. Up to this time Prof. Eaton appears to have regarded the terms "Granular Quartz" and the "Granular Limerock" as interchangeable. In the classification of 1824,[5] however, the "Granular Quartz" is separated from the "Granular Limerock" and fully described. The "Transition Argillite" and the "Primitive Argillite" are also defined, and some of the localities given are now known as localities of Lower Cambrian slates. The geologic profile accompanying the memoir of 1824 exhibits the differentiation made by Prof. Eaton in the classification of the rocks between the primitive granite and the secondary.

In the geologic nomenclature of to-day the "Granular Quartz" is included in the Lower Cambrian, and the "Granular Limerock" equals the Trenton-Chazy-Calciferous limestone. The "Primitive Argillites" of Williamstown Mountain equal the Upper Hudson or Lorraine shales. The "Transition Argillite" is nearly all Cambrian, with the exception of a small portion near the Hudson River. The Calciferous sandrock is of the same age as the "Transition Argillite." The Graywacke of Peterborough Mountain, and the Metalliferous limerock is of Silurian (Ordovician) age. The "Transition Argillite" is mostly of Lower Cambrian age, and much of the so-called Calciferous sandrock and Graywacke of the section, represented as resting on the upturned edges of the "Argillite," are portions of the same series to which the "Argillite" belongs. Near the Hudson River a profound fault

[1] In a review of Maclure's memoir by C. S. Rafinesque it is suggested by him that "We must especially collect and describe all the organic remains of our soil, if we ever want to speculate with the smallest degree of probability on the formation, respective age, and history [of our strata." (Observations on the geology of the United States of America, by William Maclure; a notice. Am. Monthly Magazine, vol. 3, 1818, pp. 41-44.)

[2] An Index to the Geology of the Northern States, with a transverse section from Catskill Mountain to the Atlantic. Leicester, 1818.

[3] Eaton, Amos. An Index to the Geology of the Northern States, 2d ed., 1820, pp. 154-212.

[4] Eaton, Amos. A geological and agricultural survey of Rensselaer County, New York, with a geological profile from Onondaga to Massachusetts, p. 15, plate. Albany, 1822. Memoirs of the board of agriculture of the State of New York, 1823, vol. 2, p. 9.

[5] A geological and agricultural survey of the district adjoining the Erie Canal, 1824, pp. 30, 56-58, plate. Albany.

with a great horizontal thrust has forced the Lower Cambrian over and on to the Silurian (Ordovician) rocks. The misunderstanding of the true relations of these rocks and a dependence upon their lithological characters led Prof. Eaton into an error that has come down to the present day in memoirs relating to the "Taconic System."

Prof. Eaton reviewed his work from time to time until 1832, when his final scheme of classification appeared. It is reprinted in the following tabulation, with the equivalents of his formations as known in the nomenclature of to-day.[1]

	Eaton's Nomenclature (1832).	1891.
III.—Lower Secondary.	3. Corniferous limerock	Upper Helderberg.
	3. Coodiferous limerock	Niagara.
	2. Millstone grit and rubble } Second Graywacke	Oneida, Clinton, Medina.
	1. Second Graywacke slate. } Second Graywacke	Utica, Hudson.
II.—Transition.	3. Metalliferous limerock	Trenton.
	3. Calciferous sandrock	Calciferous.
	3. Sparry limerock	Trenton, Chazy.
	2. Millstone grit and gray rubble } First Graywacke.	Lower and Middle Cambrian and Silurian.
	2. Graywacke slate } First Graywacke.	Hudson.
	1. Argillite { Roof slate, Wacke slate, Clay slate }	Considerable Hudson, but includes a great mass of Lower Cambrian in Rensselaer County, N. Y.
I.—Primitive.	3. Granular limerock	Trenton-Chazy limestone, Calciferous. Cambrian limestone.
	2. Granular quartz	Lower Cambrian.
	1. Granite, Mica slate, Hornblende and Talcose rock	Algonkian, pre-Cambrian, and Archean.

The stratigraphic position of the "Granular Quartz" (2 of the Primitive) is correctly represented, and it is now known to contain *Olenellus* sp.? A large portion of the strata referred to the "Argillite" (1, of the Transition) is also known to carry *Olenellus asaphoides* and to belong to the Lower Cambrian terrane. In the text the "Graywacke slate" (2, of the Transition) is described as resting unconformably upon the upturned edges of the "Argillite" (1), and it is so represented in the section. This is essentially the same as the section of 1820 and as in the more detailed section of 1824.

Rev. Chester Dewey studied the geology of the vicinity of Williamstown, Massachusetts, and in 1819[2] published a short sketch of the mineralogy and geology of this region. He followed this in 1820 by a geologic section from the Taconic range in Williamstown to the city of

[1] Geological Text-book for aiding the study of North American Geology; being a systematic arrangement of facts collected by the author and his pupils under the patronage of the Hon. Stephen Van Rensselaer. Second edition, 5 plates. Albany, 1832.

[2] Sketch of the Mineralogy and Geology of the vicinity of Williams' College, Williamstown, Massachusetts. (With a map.) Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 1, 1819, pp. 337–346.

Troy, on the Hudson.[1] In this section the relations of the quartz formation to the mica slates of the Archean are shown, and in a general way the Lower Cambrian slate is described. This is referred to the Transition argillite. In 1824[2] he described the formation more in detail. On the map accompanying this paper the distribution of the various rock masses is more accurately given than in any maps published prior to those of Prof. James D. Dana, when studying the strata referred to the Taconic system. It exhibits an acquaintance with the surface distribution of the rock masses and a clear comprehension of the classification and correlation of rocks on the principle of lithologic characters. The distribution of the Granular Quartz and its relation to the subjacent primitive rocks, or the mica slate of the map, is particularly well worked out.

Dr. E. Emmons, a pupil of Prof. Eaton, adopted the order of succession of the strata as proposed by Eaton, and separated the "Granular Quartz" (2), "Granular Limerock" (3), and "Argillite" (1) to form a distinct series of rocks between the "Granite" (1) and the "Graywacke" (2) of the Transition. To this series of rocks he gave the name "Taconic," as Nos. 3 and 1 are largely developed in the Taconic range of mountains. His central idea was that the rocks were non-fossiliferous and beneath the zone of animal life, and were separated by their mineralogical characters from the subjacent and superjacent rocks.[3]

In accordance with the belief that the "Granular Quartz" belonged to a system of rocks which were beneath the zone of animal life, Dr. Emmons considered it the oldest of the sedimentary rocks, and far beneath the Potsdam sandstone surrounding the Adirondack mountains. He thus differentiated the Potsdam sandstone and the "Granular Quartz" as two distinct formations. The work of Messrs. Dewey and Emmons added little to the knowledge of the true position of the "Granular Quartz" in the geologic series, as they did not discover fossils in it or the associated formations.

Prof. H. D. Rogers, in summing up the results of his study of the marbles and sandstones of the western portion of Berkshire County, Massachusetts, states that he considered the Berkshire limestone and marble to be the equivalent of the (Trenton) limestone series of the New York section; and that the semi-vitrified quartz was equivalent to the sandstone at the base of the same series (the Potsdam sandstone).[4] In the same year, 1841, a discussion of these formations was published in

[1] Geological section from Taconick range, in Williamstown, to the city of Troy, on the Hudson Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 2, 1820, pp. 246–248.

[2] A sketch of the geology and mineralogy of the western part of Massachusetts, and a small part of the adjoining States. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 8, 1824, pp. 1–60.

[3] Geology of New York, Part 2, comprising the survey of the second geological (Northern) district, 1842, pages 135–164.

[4] Some observations on the geological structure of Berkshire, Massachusetts, and neighboring parts of New York. Am. Phil. Soc. Proc., vol. 2, 1841, pp. 3, 4. On the physical structure of the Appalachian Chain, as exemplifying the laws which have regulated the elevation of great mountain chains generally. Trans. Am. Assoc. Geol. Nat., 1842, p. 482.

the Geology of Massachusetts,[1] in which the quartzite is described with many details. In the table on page 303, the "Granular Quartz" is placed at the base of the Paleozoic, or Sedimentary series, that is, at the base of the stratified rocks.

Dr. W. W. Mather,[2] in his survey of this region, concluded with Prof. Rogers that the "Granular Quartz" and other rocks referred to the Taconic by Emmons were the same as those of the Champlain division of the New York section, modified by metamorphic agency and the intrusion of Plutonic rocks. This correlates the "Granular Quartz" with the Potsdam sandstone. The "Granular Quartz" and the Potsdam sandstone were referred to the Primal series by Prof. H. D. Rogers[3] along with all the quartzites that were found at the supposed base of the Paleozoic series in the Appalachian region and north through New York and Vermont into Canada, and westward into the Mississippi Valley. This reference to the Primal series is more fully described in the final report of the Geological Survey of Pennsylvania.[4]

Prof. Ebenezer Emmons described the "Granular Quartz" with considerable detail as the basal member of his Taconic system.[5] In the reports of 1844 and 1847 its occurrence in western Massachusetts and western Vermont is noticed, and it is stated that in all probability it occurs as far north as the Canadian border. Its extension into Vermont had been previously noted by Messrs. Eaton and Dewey, and we find in the first annual report of the Vermont survey the statement by Prof. C. B. Adams[6] that a quartz rock constitutes the western base of the Green Mountains from the north part of Addison County to Massachusetts; and it is further said[7] that the quartz rock accompanies the Stockbridge limestone, disappearing with it in the north part of Addison County, and that near Lake Dunmore a bowlder was found in the vicinity of the quartzite beds containing two remarkable species of Polyparia(?). Two years later, in speaking of an excursion into Bennington County Prof. Adams says that the Quartz rock may equal the Potsdam sandstone, but there has evidently been too great a disturbance in this region to admit of certain conclusions.[8]

A full description of this formation is presented under the heading of

[1] Final report on the geology of Massachusets, vol. 2, 1841, pp. 560–593.

[2] Mather, William. Natural History of New York. Pt. 1, Geology of New York; geology of the first (southeastern) district. Albany, 1843, p. 438.

[3] On American Geology and present condition of geological research in the United States. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 47, 1844, pp. 151–154.

[4] The geology of Pennsylvania. Philadelphia, 1858, vol. 2, p. 751.

[5] Geology of New York, pt. 2, comprising the survey of the second geological (northern) district. 1842, pp. 135–164. The Taconic System; based on observations in New York, Massachusetts, Vermont, and Rhode Island, pp. i–vii, 67, 6 plates, Albany, 1844. Agriculture of New York, vol. 1, pp. 45–112, plates 21, map. Albany (1846), 1847. American Geology, containing a full statement of the principles of the science, with full illustrations of the characteristic American fossils. 8vo. Albany, 1856, vol. 1, pt. 2, pp. 122.

[6] First Annual Report on the Geology of Vermont. Burlington, 1845, p. 57.

[7] Op. cit., p. 61.

[8] Third Annual Report on the Geology of the State of Vermont. Burlington, 1847, p 13.

"Quartz Rock" in the final report of the Geological Survey of Vermont by Prof. C. H. Hitchcock.[1] Detailed descriptions are given of its character as found in Vermont, where it is said to have a thickness of at least 1,000 feet.[2] On this same page we read that "much of the quartz rock in the valley between Bristol and Starksboro can not be distinguished from members of the red sandrock series." Several species of fossils are mentioned as occurring in it; they are: A species of Lingula, a mollusk, resembling the Modiolopsis, a straight chambered shell (?), a few crinoidal columns, the *Scolithus linearis* (Hall), a few fucoids, and some indeterminable forms which are evidently organic.[3] The exact geological horizon of the quartz rock is not determined.

At this point the review of the literature referring to the "Granular Quartz" will be postponed until it is taken up in connection with the "Red Sandrock" and "Georgia Slates" of Vermont. In 1861 the three formations were practically united in one geologic terrane by the discoveries of Messrs. Billings and Barrande and the correlations of the Geological Survey of Vermont. A review of the references made to the Red Sandrock and the Georgia Slates will next be given, and then the three formations will be considered together as they are described in New York and Vermont.

RED SANDROCK.

When describing the formation terminating the Champlain group of the New York section Dr. E. Emmons correlated the brown or red-brown sandstone of Vermont, on the eastern border of Lake Champlain, as found at Addison, Charlotte, Burlington, and Colchester, with the gray sandstones that terminate the Lorraine shales of Jefferson County, New York.[4] He thus assigned the "Red Sandrock" of the future to the summit of the Lower Silurian.

In presenting the results of his study of a section crossing Vermont from the Green Mountains to Lake Champlain, Prof. C. T. Jackson[5] mentions the occurrence at Burlington Falls of a red sandstone containing numerous beds of buff colored and blue compact limestone destitute of fossils. He referred it to the Potsdam sandstone of Dr. Emmons. "At Willard's quarry the red sandstone rock alternates with a bright red slate, covered with ripple marks made by the waters, from which the sediment was originally deposited." He further states that a mile from Burlington, on the Winooski River, large beds of compact blue and excellent white limestone are found.

Prof. C. B. Adams describes in the first report of the Geological

[1] Hypozoic and Paleozoic rocks. Report on the Geology of Vermont, descriptive, theoretical, economical, and scenographical, vol. 1, 1861, pp. 342–357.

[2] Op. cit., p. 355.

[3] Op. cit., p. 356.

[4] Geology of New York, pt. 2, comprising the survey of the second geological (northern) district. 1842, pp. 123, 124.

[5] Final Report on the Geology and Mineralogy of the State of New Hampshire, with contributions towards the improvement of agriculture and metallurgy. Concord, 1844, p. 161.

Survey of Vermont the occurrence of roofing slates in southern Vermont[1] which he refers to the Taconic slate of Dr. Emmons, without a further attempt to assign them to a geologic horizon.

In the following year a section is given of Snake Mountain by Prof. Adams[2] in which the Red sandrock is shown resting conformably upon the Hudson River shale. In 1847 he referred to his studies of the Red sandrock[3] and noticed the discovery of fragments of trilobites which Prof. James Hall identified as Conocephalus.[4] He next assigned his Red Sandrock to the Upper Silurian, correlating it with the Medina sandstone.[5] Dr. E. Emmons criticised this view of Adams, and stated that he was in error. He regarded the formation as of Calciferous or of Potsdam age as proved by the fossils, stating that the rocks rest on the Taconic slate.[6] Prof. Adams reasserted his view in 1848,[7] stating that no line of fracture occurred above the Trenton limestone, and that the Snake Mountain section showed that it contained Utica and Hudson River rocks. Later, Dr. Zadock Thompson adopted the view that the Red sandrock was in its natural position on the summit of Snake Mountain.[8] The view that the Red sandrock series was the equivalent or the Medina of the New York section was sustained by Prof. W. B. Rogers[9] and the Medina or Clinton age of the "Red sandrock" was supported by the Geological Survey of Vermont.[10]

Mr. E. Billings, on learning of the discovery of fossils in the "Red sandrock" near Swanton, Vermont, by Dr. G. M. Hall and Rev. J. D. Perry, visited the locality and found a small Theca and a Conocephalites. Upon this paleontological evidence he referred the strata to about the horizon of the Potsdam sandstone, to which position it has since been assigned by most authors who have had occasion to mention it.[11] Mr. Billings also corrected the statement of Prof. Hall, that the trilobites of the Georgia slate were from the Hudson terrane, and referred them to the Primordial or Lower Potsdam. This transferred the Georgia series and the associated "Red sandrock" to the Cambrian.[12]

I have thus far referred only to the "Red sandrock," as it was mentioned more definitely, and assigned to a geological position prior to the argillaceous and arenaceous shales and slates that overlie it. As the "Red sandrock" and these shales or slates will be spoken of together

[1] First Annual Report on the Geology of Vermont. Burlington, 1845, p. 35.
[2] Second Annual Report on the Geology of the State of Vermont. Burlington, 1846, p. 163.
[3] Third Annual Report on the Geology of the State of Vermont. Burlington, 1847, pp. 13–15.
[4] Letter on certain fossils in the Red sandrock of Highgate. Third Annual Report on the Geology of the State of Vermont. Burlington, 1847, p. 31.
[5] On the Taconic System. Am. Jour. Agric. and Sci., vol. 6, 1847, p. 260.
[6] (On the Taconic System.) Am. Jour. Agric. and Sci., vol. 6, 1847, p. 260.
[7] On the Taconic Rocks. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 5, 1848, pp. 108–110.
[8] Geology of Vermont. Nat. Hist. of Vermont, Burlington, 1853, Appendix, p. 45.
[9] (Notes on the geological structure of western Vermont.) Report on the Geology of Vermont, vol. 1, 1861, pp. 326, 327.
[10] Hitchcock, C. H. Report on the geology of Vermont. Notes on the sections, vol. 2, 1861, p. 650.
[11] On the age of the red sandstone formation of Vermont. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 32, 1861, p. 242.
[12] On Prof. J. Hall's claim to priority in the determination of the age of the red sandrock series of Vermont. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 33, 1862, pp. 370–376.

hereafter, I will now go back and give a short résumé of the history of the latter as mentioned by various authors.

GEORGIA SLATES.

The first notice we find of the slates and shales now referred to the Georgia terrane of Vermont is by Prof. Amos Eaton, in 1818. The argillaceous and siliceous slates and, in isolated masses, a graywacke slate (Nos. 9 and 10 of his figured section) are shown to the east and west of the Hudson River, the slates on the east alone belonging to the Cambrian.[1] These slates were referred to the transition class.[2] In the next edition of his index[3] these beds are referred to the Argillite (7) and the Graywacke (9), these terms being then applied to them as seen in Rensselaer County, New York, and in all of Eaton's subsequent publications. It is the Argillite (1) and the First Graywacke or the Graywacke slate of the First Graywacke of the nomenclature of 1832[4] and his paper of 1839.[5] On Rev. Chester Dewey's Geological Map of 1824[6] the same area in Rensselaer County is included under the term "Grey Wacke" and in part "Transition Argillite."

In defining the limits of the Taconic System in 1844,[7] the northward extension of Prof. Eaton's Argillite and Graywacke of Rensselaer County into Washington County was called the Taconic slates, and it was in this series, a mile north of Bald Mountain, that the first fossils of the Olenellus or Lower Cambrian zone were found by Dr. Asa Fitch. These slates, with their interbedded arenaceous layers, formed the Upper Taconic of Emmons, which he stated could be traced northward to the Canadian border. In the map accompanying Dr. Emmons's memoir on the Taconic System, published in 1844, all of the strata east of the Hudson are colored Taconic slates, or included in the Taconic system. The same strata in the map of 1842, published by the Geological Survey of New York, are included under the Hudson River group.

Dr. Asa Fitch, a practicing physician in Washington County, New York, studied the local geology, and, under the headings of "Taconic

[1] The Greywacke or Grit area of the eastern part of Rensselaer County is now known to be above the metalliferous limestone of Eaton or the Trenton limestone series of the New York State Survey. The recent work of Mr. T. Nelson Dale, of the U. S. Geological Survey, establishes this and proves that I was incorrect in referring this area to the Cambrian on the map accompanying the paper on the Taconic System of Emmons and the use of the name Taconic in geologic nomenclature. (Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 35, 1888, pl. 3.) It is probable that the eastern portion of the Cambrian area, as there mapped, to the north of the Berlin Grit area, in western Bennington and Rutland counties, Vermont, may also prove to be of Lower Silurian (Ordovician) age. (C. D. W., June, 1891.)

[2] An index to the geology of the Northern States, with a transverse section from Catskill Mountain to the Atlantic. Leicester, 1818, pp. 27–30.

[3] An index to the geology of the Northern States. 2d ed., 12mo, Troy, N. Y., 1820, p. 163.

[4] Geological Text Book, 2d ed., 1832.

[5] Cherty lime-rock or Corniferous lime-rock proposed as the line of reference for State geologists of New York and Pennsylvania. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 36, 1839, pp. 69, 70.

[6] A sketch of the geology and mineralogy of the western part of Massachusetts and a small part of the adjoining States. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 8, 1824, pp. 1–60.

[7] Emmons, E. The Taconic System; based on observations in New York, Massachusetts, Vermont and Rhode Island. Albany, 1844, pp. i–vii, 67, 6 plates.

slate" and "Taconic sandstone,"[1] gives a description of the slates and interbedded sandstone with considerable detail. He thinks that they may belong to an older system than the New York rocks, but no evidence is given to support this view. On page 865, Dr. Fitch states that in the summer of 1844 he found at Reynold's Inn the first fossils known from the Taconic slate, and sent them to Dr. Emmons, who named and published illustrations of two species. Dr. Fitch also describes an annelid trail, *Helminthoidichnites tenuis*, from the "Taconic slate" of Granville.[2]

Dr. C. B. Adams, of the Geological Survey of Vermont, called the northward extension of the Upper Taconic slate (of Emmons) of Washington and Rensselaer Counties, the roofing slates of the Taconic system, and included them in his Hudson River group.[3]

The fossils described from a locality of this horizon, near Troy, New York, in the paleontology of New York,[4] were included by Prof. James Hall with those of the Hudson River group and were considered to be of that age. This same view was taken by him of the northward extension of this series in Vermont, when he described the trilobites from the shales of Georgia in 1859. At the close of this article he says:[5]

> In addition to the evidence heretofore possessed regarding the position of the shales containing the trilobites, I have the testimony of Sir W. E. Logan that the shales of this locality are in the upper part of the Hudson River group, or forming a part of the series of strata which he is inclined to rank as a distinct group above the Hudson River proper. It would be quite superfluous for me to add one word in support of the opinion of the most able stratigraphical geologist of the American continent.

Prof. C. H. Hitchcock,[6] in speaking of the trilobite rock of Vermont, from which Prof. Hall's specimens were obtained, stated that he considered them as overlying the equivalent of the Oneida, which was superjacent to the Hudson River Rocks.

The attention of M. Joachim Barrande having been called to the fossils found in the Georgia slate, he studied them with great care, and published an extended review of the literature referring to them, and discussed the paleontologic proof of the age of the rocks.[7] He decided that the fauna was equivalent to his Primordial fauna of central Bohemia, and that it could not be referred to the Second fauna, as had been done by the American observers. Under the impression that Dr. Em-

---

[1] A Historical, Topographical, and Agricultural Survey of the County of Washington. Trans. N. Y. State Agric. Soc. for 1849, 1850, pp. 830–857.

[2] Op. cit., p. 868.

[3] First Annual Report on the Geology of the State of Vermont, Burlington, 1845, p. 61. On the Taconic Rocks, Am. Jour. Sci., 2d series, vol. 5, 1848, pp. 108–110.

[4] Paleontology of New York, vol. 1, containing descriptions of the organic remains of the lower division of the New York system, 1847, pp. 252, 256, 257.

[5] Remarks upon the trilobites of the shales of the Hudson River group. Paleontology of New York, vol. 3, supplement to vol. 1, 1859, p. 529.

[6] On the geology of Vermont, chiefly in connection with the Taconic System. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist. Proc., vol. 7, 1861, pp. 426, 427.

[7] Documents anciens et nouveaux sur la faune primordiale et le système taconique en Amérique. Soc. géol. France, Bull., 2e sér., vol. 18, 1861, pp. 203–321.

mons's stratigraphic work was correct, M. Barrande credited him with having correctly located the Primordial fauna in America.

In 1861 Prof. Hall changed the reference of the Georgia trilobites from the Hudson River group to the Quebec group.[1] In a letter written to M. J. Barrande, dated April, 1862, the explanation of this is given. He states that his own conviction was that the Red sandrock and the Granular Quartz of Vermont were of the age of the Potsdam sandstone and that the schists and shales which held the trilobites belong between the Potsdam sandstone and the Trenton limestone. He thus changed his views in relation to the age of the rocks containing Olenellus and other trilobites, and referred them to the lower portion of what is now designated as the Silurian (Ordovician). He says:

> You will understand, then, that if my views touching the relations of these rocks are exact the valley of the Hudson River from the high lands on the south of Lake Champlain, save a small number of inconsiderable exceptions, is occupied by rocks of the Primordial zone, that is, by rocks placed between the Potsdam sandstone and the Trenton group. Thus the Hudson River group in its typical localities belongs to the Primordial period.[2]

In explaining how he came to adopt the view that the trilobites from the Georgia slates of Vermont and those described by Dr. Emmons from the black slates of Washington County belonged to the Hudson River group, together with the strata in which they were contained, he says:

> I wish to claim nothing for myself or for my former views, for we owe the final solution of this question to the Canadian survey. Yet there remain some divergent views in regard to the relation between the shales and the Potsdam sandstone.

He further states that this arose from his seeing the Potsdam sandstone run beneath the slate at Whitehall, New York, and a number of other places; that at no point where the Potsdam sandstone is seen is there any shale or other formation beneath it, excepting the crystalline rocks of the Adirondacks. Speaking of the "Granular Quartz," he says that it presents the same relation as the Potsdam sandstone to the schistose rocks; that he has always referred it without hesitation to the Potsdam sandstone. He held the view that the schistose rocks, with their impure sandstones, brecciated limestones, and calciferous sandrock, are to be placed between the Potsdam sandstone and the Trenton limestone group; that the relation of this group of schists or slates to the Potsdam sandstone seems to be that of an upper formation. In none of the outcrops that he saw in the disturbed region east of the Hudson was there one that could explain the phenomena presented, on the supposition that the sandstone is the upper rock. He then quotes the nomenclature of Eaton to show that it was almost the same as that finally adopted by the Geological Survey of New York, that is, the order of superposition of the formations, the "Granular Quartz" being placed at the base. It is also stated that the graptolites found in the beds

[1] Correction for the thirteenth annual report. 14th Ann. Rep., State Cab. Nat. Hist., 1861, p. 110.
[2] Letter on the Primordial of America. Soc. géol. France, Bull., 2e sér., vol. 19, 1862, p. 732.

formerly referred to the Hudson River are considered to belong to the Primordial fauna.[1]

The geologists of the Vermont survey in their final report included the shales and associated slates and arenaceous beds under the title of Georgia group. In proposing the name Georgia group to designate these rocks, Prof. C. H. Hitchcock said:[2]

> We use the term *Georgia group* to designate this terrain, from the town of Georgia in Franklin County, where it is developed in its full proportions and where the most interesting fossils have been found. It is a name also which does not involve any theory, and may be used by both parties in the controversy respecting its age. * * * The Georgia slate includes what Prof. Emmons has ranked as the black slate, Taconic slate, and roofing slate; and yet not altogether, for we have regarded all the black slate beneath the red sandrock as belonging to the Hudson River group. The characteristic trilobites of the Georgia slate are represented by Emmons in his Taconic System, 1844, as found in the black slate.

The following fossils are cited as characterizing the Georgia slate in Vermont: *Barrandia thompsoni* Hall, *B. vermontana* Hall, *Bathynotus holopyga* Hall, *Graptolithus milesi* Hall, the trail of an annelid, and unknown species of fucoides.[3]

The stratigraphic position of the Georgia series was considered to be above the sandstone which represented the Oneida conglomerate, and the thickness of the slate was thought to be at least 3,000 feet.[4] A discussion of the stratigraphic position of the faunas found in the Georgia slates by Prof. James Hall, Sir William E. Logan, and M. J. Barrande, accompanies the chapter. A fair presentation of the argument for and against the Silurian age of the terrane is given. In a note upon the trilobites of the shales of the Hudson River group, in the same volume, Prof. Hall redescribes the fossils mentioned in his paper of 1859. In the second volume of the Geology of Vermont, on page 799, the "sparry limestones" occurring as thin bands in the roofing slate series in Fairhaven, Vermont, are correlated with the red sandrock or Winooski marble of the northern portion of the State.

In describing the rocks of Waterville, Maine, Prof. C. H. Hitchcock[5] states that the slates are similar in mineralogical structure to the Georgia slates of Vermont, which are equivalent to the Potsdam sandstone.

With the determination (*a*) by Mr. E. Billings that the "Red sandrock" was of primordial age;[6] (*b*) by Mons. Barrande that the fossils from the Georgia slate belonged to the Primordial fauna; (*c*) that the "Granular Quartz" was the basal member of the Paleozoic, and had been correlated with the Potsdam sandstone, which, from its included

[1] Op. cit., p. 732.
[2] Hypozoic and Paleozoic rocks. Report on the geology of Vermont, vol. 1, 1861, p. 358.
[3] Op. cit., p. 367. [4] Op. cit., p. 366.
[5] General report on the geology of Maine. Preliminary Rep. on the Nat. Hist. and Geology of Maine. Augusta, 1861, p. 233.
[6] On the age of the red sandstone formation of Vermont. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 32, 1861, p. 232.

fossils in the Mississippi Valley, was also referred to the Primordial, the review of the history of these three Cambrian formations as they appear in New York and Vermont is carried forward as that of one terrane.

In speaking of the determination of the age of the slates in Georgia, Vermont, Mr. E. Billings states that Mons. Barrande first determined their age.[1] He further says:

> At the time I wrote the note on the Highgate trilobites it was not known that these slates were conformably interstratified with the Red sandrock. This discovery was made afterwards by the Rev. J. B. Perry and Dr. G. M. Hall, of Swanton.

He also mentions the discovery on the Straits of Belle Isle, by Mr. J. Richardson, of the Canadian Geological Survey, of *Scolithus linearis*, *Paradoxides thompsoni*, and *P. vermontana*, and a number of other species of which a list would be given further on. He adds:

> The sandstones and limestones of the north shore of the straits [of Belle Isle] appear to be of the age of the Potsdam of Pennsylvania and Tennessee. The form of the Scolithus is identical with that which occurs in these two States, and some portions of the rock is a coarse red sandstone, exactly like the specimens sent to me about a year ago from Tennessee by Prof. Safford.

Mention is made of the discovery by Rev. J. B. Perry and Dr. G. M. Hall of a group of fossils interstratified with the Red sandrock east of Swanton, Vermont. Of the species found, four occur in the limestone which overlies the sandstone with *Scolithus linearis* on the north shore of the Straits of Belle Isle.

> Taking all these facts together scarcely anything more is necessary to show that the Red sandrock of Vermont is of the age assigned to it by me from an examination of Conocephalites at Highgate in July last. * * * Barrande's opinion, founded altogether upon the aspect of these trilobites is thus completely verified.[2]

At the close of the paper is a list of the fossils found in Vermont and on the Straits of Belle Isle, all of which are referred to the Potsdam group.[3] In speaking of the claim of Mr. Billings, that he had identified the Primordial fauna in the Red sandrock and determined its geological age, Prof. James Hall[4] states that he had published sections and made statements in relation to the age of these rocks to show that he considered them to be of the age of the Potsdam sandstone of the New York section. In reply Mr. Billings[5] said that the sections spoken of by Prof. Hall do not cross at any point the Red sandrock or Georgia slates, where they are recognized by Prof. Hall as belonging to the Potsdam. On the contrary, they are marked on the section as belonging to the Trenton-Hudson series.

---

[1] Further observations on the age of the red sandrock formation (Potsdam group) of Canada and Vermont. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 33, 1862, pp. 100-105. (See note and corrections, same vol., pp. 421-422.)

[2] Op. cit., p. 102. [3] Op. cit., p. 104.

[4] On the Potsdam sandstone and Hudson River rocks in Vermont. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 33, 1862, pp. 106-108.

[5] On Prof. J. Hall's claim to priority in the determination of the age of the Red sandrock series of Vermont. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 33, 1862, pp. 370-376.

When tracing the formations that occur north of the Vermont and Canada boundary to the southward, Sir William E. Logan studied a section in the vicinity of Swanton, Vermont, in which the Georgia slates and the Olenellus fauna occur above the Red sandrock.[1] The latter are red and white dolomites in sandy layers. The measurement of this section gave a thickness of 710 feet, including 190 feet of shale, carrying the fossils which Mr. Billings described. He traced the rocks of the Swanton section north to the vicinity of Saxe's Mill, near the United States and Canadian border, where a measured section of the dolomitic sandstone gave a thickness of 1,410 feet.[2] These sections cross the Red sandrock formation of the older authors. The name Red sandrock is a misnomer, as there is in reality comparatively little sand or arenaceous material, other than arenaceous limestone of a highly dolomitic character, in the entire section.

Prof. Jules Marcou took a very active interest in the discussion of the stratigraphic position of the fauna found in the slates of Georgia, Vermont, and published numerous papers upon the subject from 1860 to 1888. In a paper published in 1861[3] he records some of his own observations, saying that in Vermont the Potsdam sandstone has exactly the same aspect and composition as at Potsdam, in the State of New York. Near Saxe's Mills, a mile east of Highgate Springs, it contains two species of Conocephalites, *C. adamsi* and *C. vulcanus*. He states that the formation is broken up into narrow bands that are numerous and well developed west of Mr. Parker's farm at Georgia, and also on the road between St. Albans and Swanton, Vermont; and that although at first they appear to be interstratified with the Georgia slates, they are not so, but may be compared with the steps of a ladder placed over, or even a little wedged into the Georgia slates and Lingula flags. He says:

> This group has been known for a long time in Vermont by the name of Red Sandrock. * * * Below the Potsdam sandstone lie great masses of slate, four or five thousand feet thick, which for convenience I should divide into three parts.[4]

These are the Lingula flags, Georgia slates, and St. Albans group.

The Georgia slates are stated to be characterized by Primordial fossils, notably *Paradoxides* (*Olenellus*) *thompsoni*, *P. vermontana*, *Peltura holopyga*, *Obolella cingulata*, etc.[5]

In noting the discovery of fossils in the Winooski marble, at Swanton, Vermont, Mr. E. Billings[6] states that fossils were discovered by Mr. Solon M. Allis, of Burlington, Vermont, who sent them to him for ex-

[1] Geological Survey of Canada; report of progress from its commencement to 1863. Montreal, 1863, pp. 281, 282.

[2] Op. cit., p. 282.

[3] The Taconic and Lower Silurian rocks of Vermont and Canada. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist. Proc., vol. 8, 1862, pp. 239-253.

[4] Op. cit., p. 244. [5] Op. cit., p. 245.

[6] Note on the discovery of fossils in the "Winooski marble," at Swanton, Vermont. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 3, 1872, pp. 145, 146, Canadian Nat., new ser., vol. 6, p. 351.

amination. He found a species of Salterella, which he identified as *Salterella pulchella.* He observes that the Winooski marble, both at Swanton and St. Albans, seems to underlie the Georgia slates, and he says:

It is generally of a reddish, mottled color, but sometimes gray or greenish. The limestone at the Straits of Belle Isle, in which *S. pulchella* is found, is also red, gray, and greenish; and is, I have no doubt, of the same age. At this latter locality it overlies a red or brownish sandstone, conformably, which holds *Scolithus linearis.* I consider the Belle Isle sandstone to be the "Quartz rock" of the Green Mountains of Vermont. In that case, the limestone at Belle Isle occupies, stratigraphically, the position of the Stockbridge limestone as represented by Dr. Emmons in his American Geology, part 2, p. 19.[1]

Under the title "Geology of Vermont," Prof. C. H. Hitchcock tabulates the formations of that State.[2] The Potsdam group is made to include the Red Sandrock, part of the Hudson River slate, part of the Georgia slate, most of the quartz rock, and the Potsdam sandstone of West Haven. Speaking of the latter he says, the Potsdam rocks flank the gneiss upon the west side as far north as Middlebury. He further observes that the quartz rock is probably the same as the red sandstone; that both are overlain by the Levis[3] limestone, and resemble each other very much near their supposed union. "I find this view of the identity of those two formations confirmed by the late map of the Canadian survey, published in 1866."

In an article on some points in the Geology of Vermont, Dr. T. S. Hunt states:

It happens, then, from the facts already set forth, that the Potsdam formation, which at its outcrop at the foot of the Adirondacks and Laurentides includes only from 300 to 700 feet of sandstone, is represented a few miles to the eastward by not less than 2,000 feet of dolomites, sandstones, and slates, and moreover that occupying a position between the calciferous and chazy formations, which are contiguous at their eastern outcrop, there becomes intercalated within this short distance a fossiliferous group, several thousand feet in thickness.[4]

The explanation of this is quoted from Logan's opinion, to the effect that the Potsdam sandstone accumulated along the shore, while shales and limestones were accumulating to a greater thickness in the deeper water of the adjacent ocean. In summing up the evidence as to the age of the rocks of western Vermont he says:

All the evidence, paleontological and stratigraphical, as yet brought forward affords no proof of the existence in Vermont of any strata (a small spur of Laurentian excepted) lower than the Potsdam formation, which the present advocates of the Taconic system regard as forming its summit. * * * That strata still older than the Potsdam of New York and Vermont were deposited in some portions of the oceanic area is apparent from the existence in New Brunswick of the St. John's slates holding a Primordial fauna older than the Potsdam, and it is not impossible

[1] Op. cit., p. 351.
[2] Am. Assoc. Proc., vol. 16, 1867, p. 120.
[3] Levis group, including the "Eolian limestones," "Hudson River limestones," and the greater portion of the Georgia slate. (Op. cit., p. 120.)
[4] On some points in the geology of Vermont. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 46, 1868, p. 225.

that their equivalents may underlie the Potsdam formation of Vermont. No such rocks, have, however, as yet been detected in either Vermont or Canada.[1]

That Dr. Hunt also confounded the typical Potsdam sandstone of the Adirondacks, the quartzite of the western base of the Green Mountains, and the Primordial series described by Murray in Newfoundland is shown by his statement that a few hundred feet of typical Potsdam sandstone in New York are represented in Vermont, Quebec, and Newfoundland by thousands of feet of strata lithologically very unlike the type.[2]

In 1867 Prof. C. H. Hitchcock identified the Winooski marble of Vermont as the Red Sandrock, and stated that *Olenellus thompsoni* and *O. vermontana* occurred in the superjacent slaty layers.[3] In the same volume he presents a table of the strata from the Silurian to the Devonian, inclusive, as found in Vermont, and in this connection he says he considers the Taconic to be of Lower Silurian age. This included, as described by Emmons, the Georgia slates.[4]

At the time of the presentation of the two foregoing papers by Prof. Hitchcock a paper on the Red sandrock of Vermont and its relations was read by Mr. J. B. Perry.[5] He concluded that the Red sandrock was equivalent to the Potsdam, and that the sedimentary beds below the Potsdam were not Utica or Lorraine, but belong to the Primordial zone of Barrande. The Potsdam is considered to be the top of the Primordial, not the base of the Silurian. In the table of formations the Red sandrock or Potsdam is placed at the top of the Taconic system, and the Taconic slate with the quartzite limestone or conglomerate at the base. The following year the same author[6] again stated that the Red sandrock was of Potsdam age and not Medina, and he subdivided the slates below into the Swanton and Georgia series, as older than the Utica slate, referring them to the Primordial of Barrande.

In a summary of the Geology of Vermont, by Prof. C. H. Hitchcock,[7] published in connection with the Geology of Northern New England, it is stated, under the head of "Potsdam Group," that it includes (1) black slate, or part of the "Hudson River slate" of the former report of the Vermont Survey. (2) Georgia slate. (3) Red Sandrock and quartz rock at the base of the Green Mountains. (4) Potsdam sandstone, the same as the original beds in New York.

---

[1] Op. cit., p. 229.

[2] On the geology of eastern New England. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 50, 1870, p. 85.

[3] The Winooski marble of Colchester, Vermont. Am. Assoc. Proc., vol. 16, 1867, p. 119.

[4] The Geology of Vermont. Am. Assoc. Proc., vol. 16, 1867, p. 122.

[5] Am. Assoc. Proc., vol. 16, 1867, pp. 128-134.

[6] Queries on the red sandstone of Vermont and its relations. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 11, 1868, pp. 341-353.

[7] The geology of Vermont. In Geology of northern New England, 4to, 1870, p. 2.

The Red sandrock is described as extending from St. Armand, province of Quebec, to Bridport, Vermont.

The brightest red rocks are found along the western border; so that while the alliance of the red rock of Burlington and the quartzite of Bennington seems incongruous, it is otherwise with the reddish rocks of Moukton and the brown quartz of Starksboro' and Bristol.[1]

It is stated that the name Georgia was applied to the group of slates carrying Olenellus. It was then supposed that the slates were entirely distinct from the sandstones, but further investigation has shown an interstratification, with the presence of the characteristic trilobites throughout the beds.

Of the "Granular Quartz" on the western slope of the Green Mountains he says:

No rock can be more distinct from all others than the quartzite from the State line north to Starksboro', consisting chiefly of pure vitreous silica, sometimes hardly showing a sedimentary composition. * * * The group makes a mountain range throughout, some of the peaks exceeding 3,000 feet in height. * * * An abundance of *Scolithus linearis* appears in this formation, and the rock was referred to the Potsdam in 1841 by H. D. Rogers and W. B. Rogers, in opposition to E. Emmons, who subsequently called it "granular quartz," lying at the base of the Taconic system, thousands of feet below the former.[1]

In 1871 Mr. S. W. Ford[2] published an account of a section of rocks at Troy, New York, in which he had found the Olenellus fauna. In 1884, he added[3] a description of a section near Schodack Landing, south of Troy, in Columbia County, New York. By the contained fauna the strata were correlated with those described by Sir William Logan, in Vermont, Canada, and Newfoundland.

Prof. J. D. Dana,[4] from 1872 to 1877 worked out, with considerable detail, the stratigraphic relations of the "Granular Quartz," of Berkshire County, Massachusetts, to the subjacent Archean and the superjacent Silurian limestone, adding many details to the general outlines published by Messrs. Eaton, Dewey, and Emmons. In the description of the quartzite, limestone, and associated rocks of Great Barrington, Berkshire County, Massachusetts,[5] it is stated that the quartzite of Great Barrington alternates with mica schist, and that both of the rocks for the most part overlie the Stockbridge limestone. Of the Green Mountain quartzite, Prof. Dana says:[6] "In the first place there are quartzites of more than one age in New England, west of the Connecticut River." A

[1] Op. cit., p. 3.

[2] Notes on the Primordial rocks in the vicinity of Troy, New York. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 2, 1871, pp. 32–34. Can., Nat., new ser., vol. 6, 1872, pp. 209–212.

[3] On the age of the glazed and contorted slaty rocks in the vicinity of Schodack Landing, Rensselaer County, New York. Am. Jour. Sci, 3d ser., vol. 28, 1884, pp. 206–208.

[4] Green Mountain geology. On the quartzite. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 3, 1872, pp. 179–186, 250–256. An account of the discoveries in Vermont geology of the Rev. Augustus Wing. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 13, 1877, pp. 332–347, 405–419; vol. 14, pp. 36–37, 1877.

[5] On the quartz, limestone and associated rocks of the vicinity of Great Barrington, Berkshire County, Mass. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 4, 1872, p. 362.

[6] Green Mountain geology. On the quartzite. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 3, 1872. p. 181.

Helderberg quartzite exists at Bernardston, Massachusetts, and another quartzite of different age, about 3 miles west of Plymouth, Vermont, is interstratified with gneiss; and then there is the great quartzite of the Green Mountain range, whose relation to the quartzites interbedded in the gneiss is unascertained. "We can not assume, therefore, that this last is all of one geological age." After examining the quartzite of Canaan, Connecticut, he was led to the conclusion from the facts observed that the quartzite is the inferior rock, and rests unconformably beneath the limestone.[1]

When briefly presenting some conclusions concerning the stratigraphical structure of the Cambrian of western Vermont, Prof. C. H. Hitchcock[2] states that Dr. Emmons believed the rocks were deposited against the western base of the Green Mountains, in order of, first, the Granular Quartz, then the Stockbridge limestone, and lastly the various slates which were capped by the black slates holding Olenellus. The report says further:

> Prof. Hitchcock suggested as a better theory of structure, that sediments were formed contemporaneously, both upon the Green Mountains and the Adirondack side of the valley, thus making the granular quartz on the east side of the valley of the same age with the Potsdam sandstone at Whitehall, N. Y., and elsewhere west of Lake Champlain. Next, the Calciferous sandstone, Levis, Chazy, and Trenton limstones, were deposited entirely across the valley and by means of their fossils are now identified adjacent to both the quartz rock and the typical Potsdam sandstone. Thirdly, the limestones are succeeded by slates. This theory of original deposition differs from that of Emmons, in supposing that sedimentation was being effected both on the Green Mountain and Adirondack borders, instead of on the former only.[3]

In summing up the account of the discoveries of Rev. Augustus Wing in Vermont geology, Prof. Dana says:[4]

> The Red sandrock on the west of the Eolian limestone—admitted to be Potsdam or Primordial in age—and the Quartzyte on the east which often rises into mountain ridges, are of the same formation, and come nearly or quite together in Monkton, on the northern limits of the limestone area (p. 414).
>
> The quartzyte of the eastern range, with that also of the local belts in the Eolian limestone area, is regarded as Potsdam (or Primordial) in age, because it contains in many places *Scolithi* (worm-burrows) and *Fucoids* like those found in the Potsdam sandstone; because also it adjoins Calciferous limestone beds at the localities just mentioned in North Middlebury and New Haven; and because it joins the Red sandrock in Monkton, and one rock has in many places the character of the other, although not commonly alike in color, and showing differences explainable on the ground of the greater metamorphism of the quartzyte. "In Monkton, the Red sandrock and the Quartzyte meet in a succession of short anticlinals, thus cutting off to the north the great trough or synclinal;" and "the Red sandrock absolutely overlies the beds of Red sandrock in one anticlinal and the quartzyte in another anticlinal, and both hold *Scolithus linearis*."[5]

---

[1] Op. cit., p. 186.

[2] Remarks on the stratigraphical structure of the Cambrian and Cambro-Silurian rocks of western Vermont. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 18, 1875, p. 191.

[3] Op. cit., p. 191.

[4] An account of the discoveries in Vermont geology of the Rev. Augustus Wing. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 13, 1877, p. 414-416; vol. 14, pp. 36-37.

[5] Op. cit. p. 416.

Dr. T. S. Hunt, in 1878,[1] gives an historical review of the rocks referred to the Cambrian and Taconic systems and in this way speaks of the "Upper Taconic" and refers it to the Cambrian, and the "Granular Quartz" to an Archean system. Again, in 1883,–'84,–'86, he went over the same ground,[2] but did not add any original information upon the subject. He adopted the view of Prof. Eaton so well expressed in the section of 1824, and brought down to 1886 the erroneous view of the unconformity between the Calciferous sandrock and the Argillite. To the strata which Dr. Emmons included in the Taconic system, in 1842, he gave the name Taconian, referring them to a pre-Cambrian, Archean, group of rocks.

In a paper upon the colonies in the Taconic rocks of the borders of Lake Champlain,[3] Prof. Jules Marcou gives a résumé of his investigations in northern Vermont up to date. In the vertical section accompanying the geological map, the Potsdam sandstone is placed at the summit of the upper Taconic series, and then in order below, the Swanton schists, Phillipsburg group, Georgia schists, and the St. Albans group. On sections in the text the Potsdam sandstone is represented as unconformably superjacent to the Georgia slates, the Phillipsburg group, and the Swanton schists, and the St. Albans group. A general description is given of the formations as interpreted by Prof. Marcou. As now known the Potsdam sandstone as identified by him, is the Red sandrock of the Vermont geologists, or the arenaceous magnesian limestone of Logan. Its stratigraphical position is at the base of the series described, or at the base of the Lower Cambrian as now understood.

A series of geological sections across Vermont and New Hampshire by Prof. C. H. Hitchcock[4] have the Red Sandrock series marked as Potsdam and the Georgia slate series as Cambrian. The Granular Quartz of the southern portion of Vermont is all marked Potsdam. In the text[5] Prof. Hitchcock says:

> Three bands of sandstone therefore are referred to the Potsdam in the Champlain valley: first, the normal gray sedimentary beds at the foot of the Adirondacks, always known under this name since 1840; second, the quartzite on the flank of the Green Mountains; third, a range of red sandstone and dolomite from the Canada line to Bridport, where it is succeeded by outcrops of a material not distinguishable from the first named band. Partly accompanying the middle band is a series of slates and hard sandstones, passing into roofing slates called the Georgia group in the State report, which carries such fossils as Olenellus and Angelina, and is, therefore, thought to be somewhat older than the typical Potsdam sandstone.

In the same publication Prof. R. P. Whitfield[6] states it to be his

[1] Special report on the trap dikes and azoic rocks of southern Pennsylvania. 2d Geol. Surv. Pa., E., 1878, p. 253.

[2] The Taconic question in geology. Mineral Physiology and Physiography. A second series of chemical and geological essays, with a general introduction. 1886, pp. 517–686.

[3] Sur les colonies dans les roches taconiques des bords du lac Champlain. Soc. géol. France, Bull., 3me sér, vol. 9, 1880, pp. 18–46.

[4] Geological sections across Vermont and New Hampshire. Am. Mus. Nat. Hist., Bull., vol. 1, 1884, pp. 155–179.

[5] Op. cit., p. 160.

[6] Notice of some new species of Primordial fossils in the collections of the Museum, and corrections of previously described species. Am. Mus. Nat. Hist., Bull., vol. 1, 1884, p. 140.

impression that the New York typical Potsdam is about equivalent to the lower portion of the Wisconsin series; and that the Acadian beds of Canada and Vermont, and perhaps the other Atlantic areas, are not appreciably different in age; but the difference in faunæ is more the result of conditions upon which life depended than a difference in time. This generalization of Prof. Whitfield placed the "Granular Quartz," "Red sandrock" or dolomite, Georgia slate and the Potsdam sandstone of New York and the Upper Mississippi Valley in one geologic horizon, the equivalent of the lower beds of the Mississippi Valley section.

In 1888 Prof. N. H. Winchell[1] correlated the "Granular Quartz" of Emmons's Taconic system with the Potsdam sandstone, and mentions its westward extension in the Mississippi Valley. In another paper[2] he says that the stratigraphical relations of the "Granular Quartz" and the Potsdam of New York are the same; that the fossils are cognate with those of the Red Sandrock and with those that have been found in the Potsdam; that the Red sandrock overlies the Georgia unconformably, and that the stratigraphic relations of the Granular Quartz and the Potsdam sandstone to the granite are the same as those of a Primordial quartzite of the northwest to the granite.[3]

In summing up the opinions of the geological position of the quartzite on the eastern border of the limestone, and between the limestone and the Archean, Prof. J. D. Dana[4] says that he pointed out in 1872 that the quartzite formation in southeastern Dutchess County lay between the limestone and the adjoining Archean, and the same also occurs in other localities; that he inferred from the position and apparent conformability that its age was Potsdam or that of the lowest beds of the Lower Silurian of the region; also, that there is a quartzite west of the border of the limestone that overlies the limestone conformably, and is an independent formation and newer than the limestone. In his stratigraphic conclusions at a later date[5] the Cambrian quartzites are supposed to be those immediately adjacent to the Archean gneiss and equivalent to the Potsdam sandstone, while those that occurred at a horizon above the limestone are supposed to belong to the Hudson period.

In a paper on "The Taconic System and its position in stratigraphic geology" Prof. Jules Marcou[6] tabulates the strata referred to the Taconic system in eastern North America. In this, the Saratoga limestone, with Dikellocephalus is the summit of the series, above the Red sandrock of Vermont and the Potsdam sandstone of Keeseville, New York.

[1] A great Primordial Quartzite. Am. Geol., vol. 1, 1888, pp. 173–178.

[2] The crystalline rocks of Minnesota. General report of progress made in the study of their field relations. Statement of problems yet to be solved. Geol. and Nat. Hist., Survey of Minn., 17th Ann. Rep. for 1888, 1889, pp. 5–74.

[3] Op. cit., pp. 49, 50.

[4] On Taconic rocks and stratigraphy, with a geological map of the Taconic region. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 29, 1885, p. 209.

[5] On Taconic rocks and stratigraphy, with a geological map of the Taconic regions. Part 2. The middle and northern part. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 33, 1887, pp. 408–409.

[6] Am. Acad., Proc., vol. 20, 1885, p. 234.

In order, below, comes the Swanton slates, and the Phillipsburgh or Point Levis group, subjacent to which are the Georgia slates (or Olenellus zone). The Paradoxides zone, the Upper Cambrian or Eophyton sandstone of Great Bell Island, Newfoundland, and the Aspidella and Arenicolites slates of St. John's, Newfoundland, are assembled under the name "St. Albans group."

In this table, under the upper formations or "Potsdam group," there are brought together the summit of the Cambrian (the Saratoga limestone) and the base of the Cambrian (the Red sandrock of Vermont), as well as the Keeseville sandstone, which is the lower portion of the Upper Cambrian. In the "Swanton slates" (Trenton-Hudson terrane) and in the "Phillipsburg or Point Levis group," we have the Calciferous-Chazy zone. The Eophyton sandstone placed beneath the Georgia slates and the Paradoxides beds is the equivalent of the Saratoga limestone placed at the summit of the series. The Aspidella and Arenicolites slates of St. John, Newfoundland, are of pre-Cambrian age. Thus the lower or "St. Albans group" includes pre-Cambrian, Upper Cambrian, and Paradoxides zone strata.

In an article on the Winooski or Wakefield marble of Vermont, Prof. G. H. Perkins[1] described several sections of the strata containing the quarries worked for marble, one of which has a thickness of 1,410 feet, another 790, and another 710 feet. He found *Saltcrella pulchella* in the marble beds and considered the series to be of Primordial age.

When describing a section in the Cambrian formation of western Vermont in the town of Georgia, Franklin County, Mr. C. D. Walcott[2] stated that the section consisted of a massive belt of limestone 1,000 feet in thickness subjacent to a series of argillaceous shales, at the base of which the Olenellus fauna occurred. He also stated that this section includes in its vertical range the sections above and below Troy, N. Y., in the Hudson River Valley, and those of Newfoundland and the Straits of Belle Isle. This was followed in the same year[3] by a detailed description of the Georgia section, and another section taken near the Canadian and United States boundary in the township of Highgate. At this latter locality the Red sandrock series has a thickness of 1,170 feet; the Georgia slates a thickness of 1,000 feet. A list of the fossils occurring in the strata is given in the tabulated section. Following the nomenclature proposed by Sir William Logan, the Red sandrock series and the Georgia slates are referred to the Middle Cambrian subjacent to the Potsdam sandstone of the Adirondacks, and above the Paradoxides slates of New Brunswick.[4] In the same year he determined by paleontological evidence that the roofing slates of Granville,

[1] Am. Naturalist, vol. 19, 1885, pp. 128-136.

[2] Classification of the Cambrian System of North America., Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 32, 1886, p. 145.

[3] Second contribution to the studies of the Cambrian faunas of North America. U. S. Geol. Survey Bull. No. 30, 1886, pp. 13-20.

[4] Op. cit., pp. 63, 64.

Washington County, New York, which includes green and purple slates, were of the same geologic age as the Georgia slate.[1]

The extension of the "Granular Quartz" of the eastern part of New York into Dutchess County was described by Dr. W. W. Mather[2] as it occurred about Stissing Mountain. He refers to it as the "Granular Quartz" and Potsdam sandstone. Within a few years Prof. John C. Smock[3] examined the geological structure of the mountain, stating that the quartzite was unconformably superjacent to the Archean rocks; and that no fossils had been found in it. In the description of the Primordial rocks of the Wappinger Valley, by Prof. W. B. Dwight,[4] mention is made of the quartzite about Stissing Mountain, as well as the discovery by himself and Mr. C. D. Walcott of Middle[5] Cambrian remains in the arenaceous quartzite and limestones on the flanks of the mountain. It is thus correlated with the Olenellus beds of the Georgia series of Vermont.

At the Ann Arbor meeting of the American Association for the Advancement of Science, held in August, 1885, Prof. Dwight[6] announced the discovery of fossiliferous Potsdam strata at Poughkeepsie, New York. He says[7]:

> Lithologically, the rock is here very variable. It is everywhere calcareous, all its varieties effervescing freely with acids. It is also everywhere more or less arenaceous, often conspicuously so; from being compact and massive it changes to a rock fissile into thin slabs or to one splitting into the thinnest leaves, which are covered with loose sand as they decompose.
>
> This rock passes on the one hand into a smooth fine-grained, argillaceous limestone, and then into a very fissile calcareous shale or, on the other hand, into a quartzite, somewhat calcareous.

An account of the localities at which the rock occurs and a list of eleven species of fossils are given. This paper was published more in detail in the number of the American Journal of Science for February, 1886, and was accompanied by a map on which the geographic distribution of the Potsdam and related strata are shown.[8]

Prof. Dwight[9] announced in 1889 the discovery of fossiliferous strata

---

[1] Walcott, C. D. Cambrian age of the roofing slates of Granville, Washington County, New York. Am. Assoc., Proc., vol. 35, 1887, pp. 220, 221. (Advance sheets published 1886.)

[2] Natural Hist. of New York. Part 1. Geology of New York; Geology of the first (southeastern) district. Albany, 1843, pp. 418, 423, 436, 437.

[3] A geological reconnoissance in the crystalline rock region, Dutchess, Putnam, and Westchester Counties, New York. Thirty-ninth Ann. Rep. State Mus. Nat. Hist., 1886. pp. 166–185.

[4] Primordial rocks of the Wappinger Valley limestones and associated strata. Vassar Brothers Inst., Trans., vol. 4, 1887, pp. 206–214. Discovery of additional fossiliferous Potsdam strata and pre-Potsdam strata of the Olenellus group near Poughkeepsie, N. Y Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 34, 1887, pp. 27–32.

[5] Now classed as Lower Cambrian.

[6] Discovery of fossiliferous Potsdam strata at Poughkeepsie, N. Y., Am. Assoc., Proc., vol 34, 1886, pp. 204–209.

[7] Op. cit., p. 205.

[8] Recent explorations in the Wappinger Valley limestone of Dutchess County, N. Y., No. 5. Discovery of fossiliferous Potsdam strata at Poughkeepsie, N. Y. (illustrated by map, Plate VI). Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 31, 1886, pp. 125–133. Primordial rocks of the Wappinger Valley limestones Vassar Brothers' Inst. Trans., vol. 4, 1887, pp. 130–141, Plate 1.

[9] Recent explorations in the Wappinger Valley limestones and other formations of Dutchess County, N. Y. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 38, 1889, pp. 139–153.

of the Paradoxides zone at Stissing, Dutchess County. In the limestone and calcareous shale immediately overlying the Olenellus limestone, at the south end of Stissing Mountain, he discovered a fauna that is correlated with the Middle Cambrian or Paradoxides fauna, thus establishing the middle member of the Cambrian system in addition to the Lower Cambrian and Upper Cambrian that had been previously found in this region. A plate illustrating the fauna accompanies the paper.

In 1887 Mr. C. D. Walcott[1] published a description of the fauna of the Upper Taconic of Emmons, of Washington County, New York. In this a statement of the stratigraphic position of the fauna was made, based on the correlation with the fauna of the Georgia slates of Vermont. This was followed in 1888 by an account of the discovery of fossils in the Granular Quartz near Bennington, Vermont.[2] The discovery was further described in a paper which followed on the Taconic system of Emmons,[3] where an account is given of the mode of occurrence of the "Granular Quartz" in western Massachusetts and Vermont. The quartzite is referred to the Middle (now Lower) Cambrian zone, of which the Olenellus bearing shales of the Georgia section are the type. A description is given[4] of the slates and shales, and it is stated the formations of the Upper Taconic have a thickness of 14,000 feet. In these the Olenellus fauna occurs more or less abundantly at various horizons. An examination of the sections and the fauna of the "Granular Quartz" and "Taconic" shales and slates, shows that the former is stratigraphically and faunally the equivalent of the upper part of the latter; while the "Granular Quartz" is a sandy deposit of the shore line, and the shales and slates the offshore accumulation of sediments. On the map accompanying this paper the geographic distribution of the "Granular Quartz," the "Red sandrock" of Vermont, and the Georgia slates and their southward extension as the Taconic slates is represented.

In a tabular view of the American Classification and Nomenclature, published in 1888, by Prof. Jules Marcou,[5] the Taconic system is divided into upper, middle, and lower divisions. In the upper division the Potsdam sandstone, Swanton slates, Phillipsburg and Point Levis formations are included. The middle division includes the Georgia formation and the St. John or Paradoxides zone, of New Brunswick, of Braintree, Massachusetts, and of St. Mary's Bay, Newfoundland. In the lower division are the Chuar and Grand Cañon formations of the Grand Cañon, Arizona, the sandstones of Great Bell Island, and the slates of St. John's, Newfoundland. The confusion in this table is not

[1] Fauna of the "Upper Taconic" of Emmons, in Washington County, New York. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 34, 1887, pp. 187–199.

[2] Discovery of fossils in the Lower Taconic of Emmons. Am. Assoc., Proc., vol. 36, 1888, pp. 212, 213.

[3] The Taconic System of Emmons and the use of the name Taconic in geologic nomenclature. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d series, vol. 35, 1888, pp. 229–242, 307–327, 394–401.

[4] Op. cit., pp. 241, 242.

[5] American Geological Classification and Nomenclature. Cambridge, 1888, p. 75.

as great as that of the 1885 paper. The Swanton slates, of Hudson age, and the Phillipsburgh and Point Levis formation of Calciferous age, are placed with the Potsdam sandstone; while in the Lower Taconic we find the sandstones of Great Bell Island, which are the geologic equivalent of the Potsdam sandstone.

During the summer of 1888 Mr. C. D. Walcott visited Newfoundland and studied[1] a section on Manuel's Brook, Conception Bay, that extends from the Archean gneiss up to the Olenellus and Paradoxides zones. In this unbroken section it was found that the Olenellus fauna occurred at the base and the Paradoxides fauna above. This necessitated a revision of the classification of the Cambrian. The Lower Cambrian with the Olenellus fauna is at the base; next the Middle Cambrian with the Paradoxides fauna, and lastly the Upper Cambrian or Potsdam zone, at the summit of which the Dikellocephalus fauna occurs. This correlation places the "Red Sandrock" series, the Georgia shale and slate series, the "Granular Quartz," and the "Upper Taconic" of Emmons beneath the Middle Cambrian or Paradoxides zone of the Atlantic coast.

In a paper on the fauna of the Olenellus zone[2] a brief historical review is given of the rocks referred to the Olenellus zone in Vermont and eastern New York, and also an account of the sections and the distribution of the fauna.

In a paper read before the Geological Society of America, December 30, 1890, Dr. J. E. Wolff noted the discovery of fossils of supposed Lower Cambrian age in the limestones of the East Rutland Valley, Vermont. The limestones rest conformably upon the basal quartzite carrying the Olenellus fauna.[3]

Potsdam sandstone.—The Potsdam sandstone of the Adirondack area appears only in a few small outcrops in Vermont and eastern New York. According to Prof. C. H. Hitchcock, there are three different localities in Vermont:[4] near the Lake Champlain shore in West Haven, Orwell, and the east part of Shoreham, in the counties of Addison and Rutland. There were none of these of sufficient importance to be indicated on the map of 1877. The outcrops in eastern New York are practically a continuation of the Vermont exposures. They occur in the vicinity of Whitehall, New York, and south to Fort Ann, Washington County.

In the review of the references made to the "Red Sandrock" series of Vermont, frequent mention has been made of its correlation with the Potsdam sandstone as well as of the correlation of the "Granular Quartz" with the Potsdam sandstone of the Adirondack area. As now known, these two belong to distinct geological horizons, as claimed by

[1] The stratigraphical succession of the Cambrian faunas of North America. Nature, vol. 38, 1888, p. 551.

[2] Walcott, C. D. The fauna of the Lower Cambrian or Olenellus zone. 10th Ann. Rep. U. S. Geological Survey, 1890, pp. 509–763.

[3] Bull. Geol. Soc. America, vol. 2, 1891, pp. 334–337.

[4] Hypozoic and Paleozoic rocks. Report on the geology of Vermont, vol. 1, 1861, p. 365.

Dr. Emmons in 1842. As the typical Potsdam sandstone in this district is an extension of the sandstone of the Adirondack sub-area within its borders, the review of its literature will be united with that of the typical Potsdam of the Adirondack district.

The occurrence of the Upper Cambrian or Potsdam zone as distinct from the Georgia slate and "Red Sandrock," is spoken of in the description of the section crossing the town of Georgia, Vermont,[1] where mention is made of the discovery of a fauna closely related to that of the Upper Cambrian. This is the same horizon referred to on page 17, par. 14.

In a description of a section crossing the typical Taconic area of eastern New York and western Massachusetts by Mr. C. D. Walcott,[2] the typical Potsdam sandstone is not recognized. It is stated that certain shales designated as Terrane No. 2, may represent the Potsdam terrane, or it may be represented by the lower part of the limestones of Terrane No. 3, or the upper part of the Quartzite of Terrane No. 1.

CANADIAN EXTENSION.

The Canadian extension of the Northern Appalachian District is from the United States boundary northeast to the vicinity of Point Levis, Quebec, on the western side of the extension of the Green Mountain or Sutton Mountain anticlinal, and from Quebec down the south shore of the St. Lawrence River to Cape Rosier, Gaspé. On the eastern side of the anticlinal the supposed Cambrian rocks of New Hampshire, crossing the southeastern portion of the province of Quebec, to the Maine boundary, are also included.

The first notice of the rocks, subsequently referred to the Cambrian in the vicinity of Quebec, was by Dr. J. J. Bigsby.[3] He divided the strata into three series. First, the slaty series, composed of slates and grauwacke, occasionally passing into a brown limestone, and alternating with calcareous conglomerate in beds, some of which are charged with fossils; second, the limestone series; third, gneiss. In the beds of this conglomerate on the south side of the St. Lawrence he noticed the presence of trilobites, encrinites, corallines, and other fossils. He considered them above the supposed equivalent of the Carboniferous limestone of the English geologists.

In his description of the succession of the strata at Montmorenci Falls, Dr. E. Emmons states that the rock forming the falls is a gneiss, and in the figure illustrating the section the Potsdam sandstone is shown resting unconformably upon the gneiss and subjacent to the Trenton limestone, but with a conglomerate between it and the Trenton limestone.[4] He subsequently correlated the sandstones that are extensively

[1] Walcott, C. D. Second contribution to the studies of the Cambrian faunas of North America. U. S. Geol. Survey, Bull. No. 30, 1886, p. 19.

[2] The Taconic System of Emmons and the use of the name Taconic in Geologic nomenclature. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 35, 1888, p. 240.

[3] On the geology of Quebec and vicinity. Proc. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 1, 1827, p. 37.

[4] Geology of the Montmorenci. The American Magazine, vol. 1, 1841, p. 148.

used in the construction of buildings, both public and private, and in the fortifications of Quebec, with the gray sandstone terminating the Lorraine section of Jefferson County, New York.[1] These sandstones were subsequently named the Sillery sandstones by Sir W. E. Logan, who at first followed the correlation made by Dr. Emmons, and referred them to the Lorraine shales or Hudson River group.

In the report of progress for 1843, of the Geological Survey of Canada,[2] an account is given in a very general manner of an exploration by Sir W. E. Logan of the rocks on the south shore of the lower St. Lawrence, near Cape Rosier; and they are further described in the report for 1844, as seen from Cape Chat toward Cape Rosier, going down the river. This is followed in the report for 1847–'48[3] by a description of the rocks of the extension of the Green Mountains into Canada, and the strata upon the west which are now supposed to be of Cambrian age. They were then referred to the Hudson River group, with the possible addition of the Shawangunk conglomerate. In their extension it is stated[4] that these recognized rocks of the Hudson River group have a continuous run from Lake Champlain along the south bank of the St. Lawrence to Cape Rosier.

In a report on the rocks on the south side of the St. Lawrence, in the report of progress for 1849–'50,[5] a preliminary description is given of five masses of rock met with. They include the dark gray slates, gray, green, and occasionally red shales, hard sandstones, and a red and green shale that were subsequently largely referred to the Quebec group by Sir Wm. Logan, and now, in part, to the Cambrian by Dr. R. W. Ells. In a report for 1852–'53[6] a description is given of the strata on the north shore of the St. Lawrence between Cap Rouge River and Quebec. At the base there is a succession of hard, sandy layers, with softer shales that extend along the river shore for some distance, and then thick beds of sandstone separated by thinner bands of red and green shales. The red and green shales have a great thickness further down the river. Mr. Logan says that it would be hazardous to pronounce with confidence what it is, from the probably contorted condition of the strata. In regard to the sandstones, however (supposed to represent the Oneida conglomerate), no folds have been detected. They are thought to be about 900 feet in thickness. This is the first preliminary description of the sandstones and shales that were subsequently referred to the Lauzon and Sillery series of the Quebec group.[7]

[1] Geology of New York, part 2, comprising the survey of the 2d geological (northern) district. 1842, p. 125.

[2] [Account of the general structure of an extended area in North America.] Geological survey Canada, report of progress for 1843. 1845, pp. 6–13 [Documentary Edition.]

[3] Logan, W. E. Geological survey Canada, report for progress 1847–'48. 1849, pp. 2–17 [Documentary Edition.]

[4] Op. cit., p. 17.

[5] Logan, W. E. [Report on rocks on south side of the St. Lawrence.] Geological survey Canada report of progress for 1849–'50. Toronto, 1850, pp. 32–33.

[6] Logan, W. E. [Exploration on the north side of the St. Lawrence, between Montreal and Cape Tourmente.] Geological survey Canada, report of progress for 1852–'53, 1854, pp. 5–74.

[7] Op. cit., p. 34.

Dr. J. J. Bigsby,[1] in describing the geology of Quebec and its environs, states that the Potsdam sandstone only occurs distinctly, as far as yet known in the neighborhood, at the Falls of Montmorenci; but at Jeune Lorette there are traces of it. He says that—

> The sandstone of Montmorenci has been unhesitatingly declared to represent the Potsdam rock by the New York State geologists, as well as by Sir Charles Lyell and Mr. Logan. With these high authorities I have only to concur. Its geological position is that of the Potsdam sandstone; but its aspect and mineral condition are very different from that of Lake Superior and of the Thousand Islands, near Kingston, Upper Canada.[2]

In describing the geology of the Falls of Montmorenci, he says:

> The sandstone is plentiful on the east bank of the river above the bridge, and is a yard or more thick, as well as on the west bank both above and below the bridge; the plane of contact with the enclosing rock being clean and abrupt. It is white, brownish red or bright green, in well defined layers. Bowlders of the gneiss occur in it.[3]

A section is introduced in which the Potsdam sandstone is represented as beneath the Trenton limestone, and with the latter resting unconformably against the gneiss. It is stated that the Potsdam sandstone at this place has not yet been found to contain organic remains.

Dr. Bigsby described the north shore of the St. Lawrence, from Quebec to Cap Rouge, as consisting of frequent alternations of gritty gray sandstone, and red, brown, and black clay shale. On the south side of the St. Lawrence, near Point Levis, the rocks are stated to be formed of minute alternations of clay-slate, coarse sandstone, calcareous and other conglomerates that were met with on the north side of the river.[4]

In the report of progress for 1852–'53, published in 1854, Sir W. E. Logan[5] describes the red and green shales and green sandstones from Cap Rouge to Quebec, considering them to belong to the Hudson River group of the New York section.

In a description of the Silurian rocks of the environs of Quebec, the same writer[6] states that the only exposure of the Potsdam formation in the vicinity of Quebec is at Lorette, where the sandstone is 7 metres in thickness and without the fossils which characterize the formation in other parts of Canada. The shales and sandstone of the Sillery formation are stated to correspond to the conglomerates of the Oneida formation of the New York geologists. This same view was expressed in the geological essay prepared for the Paris Exposition of 1855 by Messrs. Logan and Hunt.

From the collections of fossils made by the Geological Survey of Canada at Point Levis during the years 1856–'57, Mr. E. Billings, paleon-

---

[1] On the geology of Quebec and its environs. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., vol. 9, 1853, pp. 82–101.
[2] Op. cit., p. 84. [3] Op. cit., p. 88. [4] Op. cit., pp. 94, 95.
[5] (Exploration on the north side of the St. Lawrence, between Montreal and Cape Tourmente.) Geol. Surv. Canada, report progress for 1852–'53, 1854, pp. 33, 34.
[6] (Sur la formation silurique des environs de Québec.) Soc. géol. France, Bull., 2e sér., vol. 12, 1855, p. 505.

tologist of the survey, decided that the rocks there and those which had been associated with them by Sir William E. Logan belonged at the base of the Lower Silurian and not at the summit, as had hitherto been held. These conclusions were announced by Logan in a letter to Mons. J. Barrande published in 1860.[1] In this letter the whole Quebec group, from the base of the magnesian conglomerate with their accompanying magnesian shales, to the summit of the Sillery sandstone, is stated to have a thickness of perhaps from five to seven thousand feet. It appears to be a great development of strata at about the horizon of the Chazy and Calciferous of the New York section.

He says he is not prepared to state that a typical form of the Potsdam sandstone is present where the shales are in greatest force.

> Neither am I prepared to assert its absence, as there are in some places masses of granular quartzite, not far removed from the magnesian rocks of the Quebec group, which require farther investigation; but, from finding wind-mark and ripple-mark on closely succeeding layers of the Potsdam sandstone where it rests immediately upon the Laurentian series, we know that this arenaceous portion of the formation must have been deposited immediately contiguous to the coast of the ancient Silurian sea, where part of it was even exposed at the ebb of tide. Out in deep water the deposit may have been a black, partially calcareous mud, such as would give the shales and limestones which come from beneath the Quebec group.
>
> In Canada no fossils have yet been found in these shales, but the shales resemble those in which *Oleni* have been found in Georgia (Vermont). These shales appear to be interposed between eastward dipping rocks equivalent to the magnesian strata of the Quebec group, and they may be brought up by an overlapping anticlinal or dislocation. We are thus led to believe that these shales and limestones, which may be subordinate to the Potsdam formation, will represent the true Primordial zone in Canada.[2]

In 1863 Sir Wm. E. Logan published his great résumé of the work done by the Geological Survey of Canada from its commencement to 1863.[3] He describes the northward extension of the Georgia series and Red Sandrock of Vermont into Canada, stating that they had been traced but a short distance when they become faulted out and replaced by a later formation.[4]

The Sillery shales and sandstones, as well as the conglomerate beds of Point Levis, Quebec, are described in detail and assigned to about the horizon of the Calciferous-Chazy formations of the New York section. The Levis and Sillery formations are referred to the Quebec group, and the latter series is traced southwestward along the western base of the Sutton Mountain range. The Levis formation is divided into seventeen parts, consisting of alternating calcareous shales, argillaceous shales, limestone conglomerate, and gray sandstone. The upper beds consist of

---

[1] Logan, W. E. Remarks on the fauna of the Quebec group of rocks and the Primordial zone of Canada. Canadian Naturalist, vol. 5, 1860, p. 475; vol. 6, 1861, pp. 106–120; Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 31, 1861, pp. 216–220. Remarques sur la faune des roches du groupe de Québec et sur la zone primordiale du Canada, Soc. géol. France, Bull., 2e sér., vol. 18, 1861, pp. 309–314.

[2] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 31, p. 219.

[3] Geological Survey of Canada. Report of progress from its commencement to 1863. Montreal, 1863, pp. 983.

[4] Op. cit., p. 285.

red and green shales with thin layers of gray sandstone or quartzite in which Lingula and Obolella were found. At the summit of the red and green shales, interstratified sandstones appear and succeed the shales, with a thickness of about 2,000 feet, forming the Sillery division of the Quebec group (p. 232). Subsequently he[1] divided the Quebec group into three parts: Levis or lower; Lauzon or middle; and Sillery or upper. The Lauzon or middle division embraces the red, green, and purple slates of the section above and below Quebec and on the island of Orleans. The only fossils known were *Obolella pretiosa* and fragments of Lingula. The sandstones and accompanying shales of the original Sillery were referred to the Sillery or upper division with the exception of those separated to form the Lauzon. The Levis, or lower division, was distinguished by its yellow, dark and black shales and the presence of numerous graptolites and Calciferous-Chazy fossils.

Up to this time none of the rocks of the Quebec group had been referred to the Cambrian system, or to an equivalent formation, beneath the Calciferous zone of the New York series. Messrs. Billings, Hall, and Barrande spoke of the Primordial character of some of the fossils of the Point Levis conglomerate, but the series as a whole was referred by Mr. Logan to the Calciferous-Chazy zone.

Sir W. E. Logan also described the conglomerate beds of Bic Harbor and Trois Pistoles on the shore of the St. Lawrence River, where bowlders of limestone were found containing fossils of the Olenellus fauna.[2] The shales in which the bowlders occur are supposed at the present time to be of Upper Cambrian age.

The report on the south shore of the St. Lawrence River below Quebec, by Mr. James Richardson, contains the information that another series of rocks came to the surface, differing from those farther to the west. He says:

> These rocks have heretofore been classed with those of the Quebec group, but they appear to underlie them unconformably, and being in some places marked by fossils which Mr. Billings considers to be of Potsdam age, they are now placed in the upper part of the Potsdam group.[3]

They consist at the summit of a light drab quartz rock with intercalated beds of conglomerate holding limestone pebbles in an arenaceous matrix, the whole forming a series 600 feet in thickness. This is superjacent to a series of gray sandstones and interstratified shales with a thickness of 700 feet in which near the base a conglomerate occurs; below this a third division of gray limestones and limestone conglomerate occurs in beds of from 1 to 6 inches thick. A species of Salterella was observed in the limestone, and a species of Archæocyathus in the shales. The third series is assigned a thickness of 700 feet; and the

[1] Logan, W. E., Report of, for 1866. Geol. Survey Canada, report of progress from 1863 to 1866, 1866, p. 4.

[2] Geological Survey of Canada, report of progress from its commencement to 1863. Montreal, 1863, p. 260.

[3] Report on the south shore of the St. Lawrence, below Quebec. Geol. Survey Canada, report progress for 1866, to 1869, 1870, p. 120.

entire section 2,000 feet. A number of species of the Olenellus fauna were found in the pebbles of the conglomerate near St. Denis Station on the Grand Trunk Railway, and also at Bic Harbor.[1]

The reference by Mr. Richardson of the rocks mentioned in the preceding paragraph to the Potsdam zone is objected to by Dr. A. R. C. Selwyn.[2] He says that after examining a considerable portion of these supposed Potsdam rocks, there is in his opinion at present no sufficient evidence, either paleontological, stratigraphical, or mineralogical, for separating this belt from other very large areas of the Quebec group, hitherto assigned, the larger part to the Lauzon, but in some places also to the Levis and Sillery formations. He states that on any map now published it is best to include the whole of the rocks of this great fossiliferous belt in one group, as the data are insufficient to separate the Potsdam zone from the other rocks of the Silurian. The group referred to is No. 1,[3] the Lower Silurian. The second is "the volcanic group, probably Lower Cambrian." Group No. 2 is described as consisting of a great variety of crystalline, subcrystalline, and altered rocks, including red, gray, and greenish siliceous slates and argillites, great masses of diorite, epidotic and serpentinous breccias and agglomerates, etc.[4] Of the age of this group he says:

> If fossils are found I should expect them to indicate a lower horizon than the Levis formation, probably not far removed from that of the St. John group and Atlantic coast series of Nova Scotia, or Lower Cambrian.[5]

This series forms part of the Sillery formation of Mr. Logan.

In speaking of the reference of the Volcanic group to the Cambrian Dr. Selwyn quotes from the paper read before the Royal Society of Canada in May, 1882, as follows:[6]

> The upper portion of this series was designated "the volcanic belt" from the association with it, especially on the southeast side of the main axis, of a great variety of what were considered to be altered eruptive and irruptive rocks, but whether the strata forming this igneous belt are more nearly allied to the Lower Cambrian than to the Upper Huronian is not, fossils being absent, easily determined.

On the map of the Dominion of Canada geologically colored from surveys made by the Geological Corps from 1842 to 1882, under the direction of Dr. Selwyn, there is quite a broad belt of rocks colored Cambrian that extends from Cape Rosier on the Gaspé Peninsula southeasterly along the shores of the St. Lawrence to Point Levis, Quebec. From Point Levis it turns more to the south, extending along the western margin of the Archean anticlinal to Mississquoi Bay, at the foot of Lake Champlain. A narrower strip is represented as extending

---

[1] Op. cit., p. 130.

[2] Report of observations on the stratigraphy of the Quebec group and the older crystalline rocks of Canada. Geol. Survey Canada, report of progress, 1877-'78, 1879, p. 4A. Can. Nat., new ser., vol. 9, 1879, pp. 17-31.

[3] Op. cit., p. 3A. [4] Op. cit., p. 5A. [5] Op. cit., p. 6A.

[6] Notes on the geology of the southeastern portion of the Province of Quebec. Geol. Survey Canada, report of progress, 1880-'81-'82, 1883, p. 2A.

from the north end of the Archean anticlinal or axis, along the eastern side of the latter to Lake Memphremagog. A smaller area is colored Cambrian in the southeastern part of the Province of Quebec, near the Maine boundary, at the northeastern corner of New Hampshire. In a map of a part of the Province of Quebec published in 1887, the distribution of the Cambrian about the Sutton Mountain anticlinal, or the Archean axis, extending north from the Green Mountains, is given more in detail than in the map of 1882.

In the table of the geological formations, accompanying Macfarlane's American Geological Railway Guide, Dr. T. S. Hunt places the following groups in the Lower Cambrian, in descending order:[1]

Potsdam.
Sillery.
Acadian (Menevian).
Lower Taconic.

This same nomenclature is followed in the list of the geological formations of Canada on page 52.

In a report on the explorations and surveys in the interior of the Gaspé Peninsula, Mr. A. P. Low[2] states that the Cambrian system is represented along the Ste. Anne River and along the east and west flanks of Table-top Mountain, by gray and black shales, limestones, and limestone-conglomerates of the Levis formation. He says:

> These form but a small part of the great area of these rocks, which stretches from Cape Rosier along the south side of the Gulf of St. Lawrence to Quebec and thence through the Eastern Townships into the United States.

In describing the Silurian rocks on a previous page[3] he says the limestones rest in places upon a pinkish or gray sandstone of no great thickness, which is seen on the Ste. Anne and Matane Rivers and on the west side of Lake Matapedia. This sandstone is supposed to be the lowest part of the system.

In his surveys of the eastern portion of the Province of Quebec, Dr. R. W. Ells[4] included in the Cambrian the extension to the northeast of those rocks described as Cambrian by Dr. Selwyn. As described in the reports of the Geological Survey of Canada for 1886, 1887, they consist for the most part of hard quartzite interstratified with mica schists and black slates. Dr. Ells also referred the trappean rocks of Broughton to the Cambrian. All of this series, as described by Dr. Selwyn and Dr. Ells, is unconformably overlapped by the Sillery red slates, conglomerates, and sandstones. It is not improbable that some of the strata referred to the Lower Cambrian may prove to belong to that system of rocks, but in the absence of fossils it is very uncertain whether the strata

[1] Dominion of Canada. (Geological Formations.) Macfarlane's Am. Geol. R. R. Guide, 1879, p. 51.

[2] Explorations and surveys in the interior of the Gaspé Peninsula, 1883. Geol. Surv. Canada, 1882–'83–1884, p. 14F.

[3] Op. cit., p. 12F.

[4] Second report on the geology of a portion of the Province of Quebec. Geological Survey Canada, new ser., vol. 3, 1889, pp. 1K–120K.

under consideration should be referred to the Cambrian or to some of the pre-Cambrian series of rocks. In a review of Dr. Ells's work by Mr. C. D. Walcott[1] it is suggested that from the occurrence of Lower Cambrian fossils (the Olenellus fauna) in grayish limestone interbedded with purple, green, and black slates, in Washington County, New York, the rocks containing them occupy a similar stratigraphic position to those described by Dr. Ells in the Canadian section. Dr. Ells considered that portions of the strata referred to the Lower Cambrian are very much like those of the gold series of Nova Scotia, while, in part, they resemble the Cambrian of New Brunswick. Stratigraphically they occupy a position between the chloritic and micaceous schists of the Archean and the superjacent Sillery.[2]

The Canadian extension of the rocks referred to the Cambrian System by Prof. C. H. Hitchcock in New Hampshire is represented upon the geological map of Canada, published by Sir William E. Logan in 1864 as the Quebec group, thus being identified with the Quebec group series upon the western side of the Gaspé limestone series. References have been made to them by various authors who have written upon the geology of the townships of eastern Quebec, but not in a manner to distinguish the strata now referred to the Cambrian.

When describing this belt of rocks in 1886, Dr. R. W. Ells[3] states that Prof. Hitchcock has referred a belt composed principally of blackish, wrinkled slates and schistose sandstones, which form a ridge extending northeast from the vicinity of Canaan, between Hall's and Indian streams to the Quebec boundary, to the Lower or Cambrian system. The strata present a well defined anticlinal structure, which is recognized in the adjoining townships of Emberton and Ditton in Quebec, and northeast past the outlet of Lake Megantic and onward to the Maine boundary. The slates are penetrated by quartz veins, which in places have proved more or less auriferous.

> In character and aspect the gold-bearing slates of Ditton and the area to the northeast almost exactly resemble, as already intimated, the rocks of the Nova Scotia gold series.[4]

As far as known no fossils have been found in this series to identify the horizon, in either New Hampshire, Canada, or Maine. This is true also of the second area inclosed on either side of the Stoke Mountains and the Sherbrooke anticlinal. The strata forming the western area west of Sutton Mountain anticlinal have already been mentioned.

The presence of rocks of supposed Cambrian age is indicated on the geological map of Canada, published in 1882, on the eastern side of Hudson's Bay, near the mouth of Big Whale River, and in the vicinity

[1] A review of Dr. R. W. Ells's second report on the geology of a portion of the Province of Quebec, with additional notes on the "Quebec group." Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 39, 1890, p. 101–115.

[2] Ells, R. W. Second report on the geology of a portion of the Province of Quebec. Geol. Surv. Canada, vol. 3, 1889, p. 87K.

[3] Report on the geology of a portion of the eastern townships of Quebec. Geol. Surv. Canada, 1886, new ser., vol. 2, 1887, pp. 24J 25J.

[4] Op. cit., p. 25J.

of Richmond Bay. The observations upon which this identification is based were made by Dr. Robert Bell, who explored the east coast of Hudson Bay in 1877. He names the series the Manitounuck group, correlating it with the Nipigon series north of Lake Superior. By combining the sections of slates and sandstones he obtains a thickness of 2,800 feet for the entire section on this part of the coast.[1]

References to the occurrence of rocks of supposed Cambrian age on Lakes Mistassini and Mistassinis are made by Mr. A. P. Low in his report on the Mistassini expedition. The limestones, owing to the absence of any fossil remains, have been referred to the Cambrian horizon on account of their lithologic resemblance to Cambrian rocks of the east side of James Bay.[2]

A map of Lake Mistassini accompanies the report, on which the boundary between the Laurentian and supposed Cambrian formations is traced.

Dr. George M. Dawson tabulates the formations; he refers to the Cambrian in Ontario and Quebec as follows:[3]

3*b*. Sillery and Levis.
3*a*. Calciferous.
2*c*. Upper and Lower Potsdam.
2*b*. Keweenian.
2*a*. Animikie.

SOUTHERN APPALACHIAN DISTRICT.

The Southern Appalachian district includes the outcrops of strata referred to formations of the Cambrian group in northern and central New Jersey, southeastern and southern central Pennsylvania, western Maryland, Virginia, and North Carolina, eastern Tennessee, northwestern Georgia, and northeastern Alabama.

NEW JERSEY.

In a table showing the geologic succession of the lower Secondary or Appalachian rocks as they occur in New Jersey, Prof. Rogers[4] places as No. 1 of the series of formations a compact and very quartzose sandstone, of light bluish gray color, approaching to white. He discovered the formation in only three or four small isolated areas along the western outcrops of the Primary rocks. Prof. Cook refers to this sandstone lying upon the gneiss as the "Potsdam sandstone" as known in New York. It is only a few feet in thickness.[5] In a subsequent report a sketch is given of a section at Franklin Furnace, which shows the sand-

[1] Report on an exploration of the east coast of Hudson's Bay, 1877. Geol. Surv. Canada, Rep. Prog. for 1877-78. 1879, p. 17C.

[2] Report of the Mistassini Expedition, 1884–'85. Geol. and Nat. Hist. Surv. Canada, new ser., vol. 1, 1885, p. 31D.

[3] Macfarlane James: An American Geological Railway Guide. Second ed., 1890, p. 58.

[4] Description of the Geology of the State of New Jersey, being a final report. Philadelphia, 1840, p. 45.

[5] Report of Prof. George H. Cook upon the geological survey of New Jersey, and its progress during the year 1863. 1864, p. 6, par. 9.

stone resting unconformably on the gneiss and passing conformably beneath the superjacent Magnesian limestone.[1] There are also doubtfully included under the "Potsdam sandstone" several outcrops of quartzite and conglomerate, and the conglomerates and sandstones of the Green Pond Mountain range. On the large geological map of northern New Jersey, published in 1874,[2] the "Potsdam sandstone" includes shales, sandstones, slaty grits, quartz rock, and the Green Pond Mountain conglomerate; this entire series is represented by one color, extending on the trend of the Green Pond Mountain range from the New York boundary southwesterly into the central portion of Morris County.

In the annual report for 1884 the Green Pond Mountain rocks are included with the "Devonian and Silurian rocks."[3] This leaves the so-called "Potsdam sandstone" as the only Cambrian formation within the State. The following year reference is made by Prof. Cook[4] to the contact phenomena with the Paleozoic rocks. In New Jersey one point is at "Owen's Island," in Sussex County, two-thirds of a mile south of the State line, as described by Prof. Rogers in his report of 1836. At this point the sandstone dips 20° northwest, and the Archean 70° to the southwest. Near Franklin Furnace a similar unconformity occurs, and the same conditions appear persistent along the entire northwestern margin of the highlands in New Jersey, though no other actual contact has been observed along this line.

In a paper presented to the Geological Society of America December 31, 1890, Prof. Frank L. Nason stated he had found fossils of Lower Cambrian age in the quartzite resting on the pre-Paleozoic rocks at Hardistonville, Sussex County, New Jersey, and at Franklin Furnace, in the same county. He also discovered fragments of a species of Kutorgina in the superjacent limestone.[5]

DELAWARE.

In the northwestern corner of the State of Delaware there is a triangular area of sandstone referred to the "Potsdam" sandstone by Mr. Fred. D. Chester. He states that it extends into Pennsylvania, and is best exposed beyond the State line.

> At Nivin's limestone quarry a mass of quartzite forms what is clearly an anticlinal fold, over which is a corresponding anticlinal of Magnesian limestone.[6]

The extension of this sandstone into Pennsylvania is shown upon the map of Chester County, Pennsylvania, where it occurs in the township of London.

---

[1] Geology of New Jersey. Newark, 1868, p. 72.

[2] Cook, Geo. H. Geological Survey of New Jersey. (Map of) northern New Jersey, showing the iron-ore and limestone districts. 1874, in two sheets.

[3] Cook, Geo. H. Geological Survey of New Jersey. Annual report of the State geologist for the year 1884. 1884, p. 29.

[4] Contact phenomena with the Paleozoic rocks. Geological Survey of New Jersey. Annual Report of the State Geol. for 1885. Trenton, 1885, pp. 53–55.

[5] Unpublished.

[6] Preliminary notes on the geology of Delaware—Laurentian, Paleozoic, and Cretaceous areas. Phila. Acad. Sci. Proc., vol. 36, 1884, p. 248.

PENNSYLVANIA.

In the second annual report of the State geologist of Pennsylvania, Prof. H. D. Rogers summarizes in a table the order of stratification, the geographical position, composition, and thickness of the lower Secondary formation in Pennsylvania, east of the Susquehanna River.[1] The description of formation No. I, or the sandstone of the South Mountain, is as follows:

In the ascending order, the first formation which we meet with, reposing on the primary rocks of the South Mountain, * * * is a remarkably compact and rather fine-grained sandstone, usually white or of some light shade of gray. * * * The formation ranges, according to my present belief, from the Delaware, at Easton, more or less interruptedly across the State to the Maryland line, pursuing an undulating, irregular belt, coinciding with the northern and northwestern side of the chain of hills most commonly called in this State the South Mountain, the prolongation of the Highlands of New York and of the Blue Ridge of Maryland and Virginia.[2]

It contains, as far as yet examined in Pennsylvania, very few organic remains, the best defined species discovered in it being a marine plant, indicative of the oceanic position into which the materials of this stratum were originally swept.

I have satisfied myself that this rock is not confined to the Appalachian region of Pennsylvania, but that it possesses a prodigiously extensive range, not only through Maryland and Virginia, but in a contrary direction through New Jersey and New York, and I believe beyond those limits, constituting everywhere the lowermost formation of the widespread Secondary strata which it encircles in a somewhat interrupted belt, following the primary boundary of these rocks from Tennessee to Lake Champlain, and thence northwestward to the northern shores of Lake Huron and Lake Superior [3]

Prof. Rogers recognized the sandstone at many points in New Jersey and New York, and considered it identical with the formation in northeastern New York, described by Prof. Eaton under the name of Calciferous sandrock,[4] and states that it is probably the same stratum which Dr. Bigsby has mentioned as existing on the north side of Lake Huron.[5] In the table showing the order of stratification, formation No. I is assigned a probable thickness of 1,000 feet.

A description is given in the third report[6] of the geographic distribution of the sandstone as it occurs in the various counties of the southeastern portion of the State.

In Northampton and the eastern corner of Lehigh the sandstone * * * is subordinate in importance to the gneiss and other primary rocks on which it rests.[7]

---

[1] Second Annual Report on the Geological Exploration of the State of Pennsylvania. Harrisburg, 1838, oppo. p. 19.

[2] Op. cit., p. 21.

[3] Op. cit., pp. 22, 23.

[4] The Potsdam sandstone was not differentiated from the calciferous sandrock by Eaton. He included the sandstone and the superjacent calcareous sandstone, under the common name of calciferous sandrock, as one formation.

[5] Op. cit., p. 23.

[6] Rogers, Henry D. Third Annual Report of the Geological Survey of the State of Pennsylvania. Harrisburg, 1839, pp. 14–16.

[7] Op. cit., p. 15.

In the fourth report[1] formation No. 1 is spoken of as the extensive slate and sandstone formation constituting "The lowest member of our older Secondary or Appalachian rocks." The slates of the Pigeon Hills are referred to the lowest Secondary formation of the State, and the strata comprise different portions of formation No. I, consisting of dark slate and a light colored sandstone. The stratigraphic succession of the various beds referred to formation No. I of South Mountain, southwest of the Susquehanna, is given in detail. The intercalated limestone bed is considered to belong to the upper part of the division,[2] and there is a bluish slate interstratified in the sandstone. In the report of the following year[3] the geographical range of the rocks of the South Mountains from the Delaware to the Schuylkill is outlined. The white and gray sandstone of formation I is not a continuous stratum in the belt of the South Mountains where they traverse Northampton and Lehigh Counties, but it is very probable it occurs at the base of all the primary ridges, buried under a deep covering of loose diluvium.[4] Mention is made of its various points of outcrop and its occurrence in Berks County, and many details are given of the distribution of the sandstone and the mode of its occurrence in relation to the subjacent primary rocks.

In his grand summary of the geology of Pennsylvania, Prof. H. D. Rogers gives a synoptic description of the Primal series or "Potsdam" sandstone of New York, as follows:[5]

The Primal series, under its fullest and most diversified condition, or that which it wears in the Appalachian chain in Pennsylvania, Virginia, and Tennessee, is a thick fourfold group composed of two slates and two great arenaceous rocks in alternation: (1) The highest or Primal newer slate is a greenish and brownish talco-argillaceous slate, sometimes very soft and shaly. In Pennsylvania it has a thickness of about 700 feet. (2) The next, the Primal white sandstone, is a compact, white and yellowish, fine-grained, vitreous sandstone, often containing specks of kaolin. This rock, which is of easy recognition and of an immense range, has a thickness in some parts of the Blue Ridge of Virginia of at least 300 feet. This is the Potsdam sandstone of New York. (3) The Primal older slate is a brown and greenish gray sandy slate, containing much feldspathic and talcose matter. It has hitherto disclosed no fossils. The thickness of this bed in the Atlantic slope in Pennsylvania is several hundred feet, and in the Blue Ridge of Virginia is not less than 1,200 feet. (4) The Primal conglomerate, the lowest of the yet distinctly recognized formations of the Primal series, is a heterogeneous conglomerate of quartzose, feldspathic, and slaty pebbles, imbedded in a talco-silicious cement. The thickness of this rock in Virginia and Tennessee, north of which it has not been discovered, is at least 150 feet.

In New York and the Northwestern States this series presents a materially different type, the Primal white sandstone being almost the sole representative.

Thickness.—The thickness of the entire series is considerably more than 2,000 feet.

[1] Rogers, H. D. Fourth Annual Report on the Geological Survey of the State of Pennsylvania. Harrisburg, 1840, pp. 33-35.

[2] Op. cit., p. 41.

[3] Rogers, H. D. Fifth Annual Report on the Geological Exploration of Pennsylvania. Harrisburg, 1841, pp. 16-26.

[4] Op. cit., pp. 26, 27.

[5] The Geology of Pennsylvania. Philadelphia, 1858, vol. 2, pp. 751, 752.

Geographical distribution.—In its geographical distribution this primal series ranges coextensively, or nearly so, with the other formations of the older Paleozoic division to be presently traced; that is to say, it shows two great continuous outcrops, one stretching southwest along the Appalachian chain and the other west from the St. Lawrence, through New York, Canada West, Northern Michigan, Wisconsin, and Minnesota beyond the Mississippi. It is probably likewise brought to the day in the anticlinals of Missouri, Arkansas and Texas, which elevate the gneissic strata on which it rests.

The only fossils found were a peculiar fucoid in the newer Primal slate, annelid borings in the Primal white sandstone, "one or two brachiopodus mollusks, especially lingula. In Wisconsin and other northwestern localities this formation contains several species of trilobites, and abounds in lingulæ, obolus, and an orbicula."[1] Trilobites were also found on Lake Champlain.

Under the heading of "Equivalents" is the following:

These strata seem to be on the horizon of the lower Festiniog group or lingula flags of England, and equivalent to the obolus and lingula sandstone of Sweden and Russia. They represent, too, the primordial zone of Bohemia, and are therefore on the horizon of the very dawn of discovered life.[2]

This summary of Prof. Rogers gives his information respecting the Primal series in Pennsylvania, Virginia, and Tennessee up to the time of publication. Under the heading of "Depositions and disturbances of the Primal period," he discusses the probable conditions under which the sediments were deposited, and sums up the period as one of vast duration; "an enormous age of quiet sedimentation with almost no life in the wide turbid sea."[3] The paleontological record for the Primal series is given a very few words: Three or four fossils known in the white sandstone, and a vaguely defined plant in the subjacent shale in the Appalachian region. But in Wisconsin, the white sandstone imbeds, on a succession of thin floors, some seventeen more species. Two of these are identical with those of the eastern outcrop, so the total number of species known at that date was eighteen. The distribution of the Primal series in Pennsylvania is tabulated in volume I[4] and local details are given in the description of the various counties in which outcrops of the rocks and slates occur.

On an accompanying geological map the geographic distribution of the Primal series is delineated. As a whole it extends with many interruptions diagonally across the southeastern portion of the State, from South Mountain in Adams County to Northampton and Bucks Counties, on the Delaware River.

Two maps of sections also accompany the report of 1858. On the line of section No. 2, the Primal is represented, in Northampton County, at Frey's Run and along Durham Creek to the Delaware River. At Attleborough, in Bucks County, a synclinal of the Primal sandstone is represented as occurring in the midst of the older Primal slate.

[1] Op. cit., p. 751. [2] Op. cit., p. 752. [3] Op. cit., p. 781. [4] Op. cit., pp. 122, 123.

Section No. 3 crosses the Primal slate in Berks County and represents the Primal sandstone dipping southeasterly from the Primal slate forming Mount Pleasant. The Primal sandstone is shown again in Montgomery County at Barren Hill and it is placed in the midst of "Primal mica slate."

Section No. 4, in crossing Lancaster and Chester Counties, passes through the Primal series at Neversink Hill, near Reading, and also at Welsh Mountain, where the Primal sandstone is represented as forming a low anticlinal.

On the line of section No. 5, the Primal sandstone occurs to the west of the Primal slates and gneiss that form Millbough Hill in Berks County. In Lancaster County, on the line of the same section, the sandstones occupy the south end of Welsh Mountain. In Mine ridge the Primal slates and gneiss are represented as much distorted, while the sandstone forms an anticlinal and synclinal axis.

Sections Nos. 7 and 8 cross the South Mountain in Adams and York Counties; and the entire section of the mountain is represented as Primal, as stated in the text. The rocks of Pigeon Hills, to the southeast in section 7, are also referred to the "Primal" and to the "Primal slate, altered and crystalline;" and the same reference is made of the southwestern extension of the slates of the hills where crossed by section 8.

I have been unable to find any account of original researches upon the Primal rocks during the period between the final report of Prof. H. D. Rogers and the renewal of their study by Prof. J. P. Lesley in 1873.

In a paper by the latter, on the iron ore of the South Mountain of Cumberland County, a diagrammatic sketch is given of a cross-section of the county at Carlisle, in which the "Potsdam" sandstone rests on the gneiss for a long distance.[1] On the following page a sketch of a section shows the sandstone, resting on the Azoic slates and gneiss; and beneath is a series of iron ore bearing slates that, in turn, are subjacent to the Calciferous sandstone and Trenton limestone.

In describing the Cornwall iron mines and some related deposits, in Pennsylvania, Dr. T. S. Hunt[2] refers Prof. Rogers's Primal slate of the mines to a portion of the Lower Taconic series of Emmons and beneath the horizon of the Potsdam sandstone of the New York system. This reference carries with it the ores which are found in Pennsylvania along the borders of the Mesozoic and Red Sandstone formations of this portion of the State.

In another paper Dr. Hunt notes the discovery by Prof. Prime of a species of Monocraterion, in the Auroral limestone of Pennsylvania, and says:

[1] The iron ores of the South Mountain along the line of the Harrisburg and Potomac Railway in Cumberland County, Pennsylvania. Am. Phil. Soc. Proc., vol. 13, 1873, p. 4.

[2] The Cornwall iron mine and some related deposits in Pennsylvania. Am. Inst. Mining Eng., Trans., vol. 4, 1876, p. 320.

These same limestones in Pennsylvania, which belong to the Lower Taconic series of Emmons, have also afforded an undescribed species of Lingula.[1]

In reporting on the Paleozoic rocks of Lehigh and Northampton Counties Mr. Fred. Prime, jr., states that the very lowest beds of the Potsdam sandstone are actually pudding-stones, containing pebbles the size of a man's fist and larger, and fragments of red, unaltered orthoclase. The upper beds are composed of a hard, compact quartzite containing greater or less quantities of feldspar nodules. The sandstone often, as elsewhere, contains Scolithus.[2] He gives the geographic distribution of the sandstone as found about the South Mountain in the two counties mentioned. Of the upper Primal slates he says:

Next above the Potsdam sand stone occur hydromica slates, which Rogers has called the Upper Primal slates, but which really form a portion of the No. II limestone, and gradually pass into this. They overlie the Potsdam conformably and are far more persistent in their occurrence.[3]

In the limestone he found specimens of the genus Monocraterion in Lehigh County, specimens of Lingula, and a single specimen of an orthoceratite.[4] In the vicinity of Allentown and Bethlehem the sandstone is about 25 feet thick. The contact between the gneiss and the sandstone is distinctly seen about 2 miles from Allentown, on the Lehigh Valley Railroad track. (Prof. Prime's paper was also printed in the American Journal of Science, under the following title: "On the Discovery of Lower Silurian Fossils in Limestone Associated with Hydromica Slates, and on other points in the Geology of Lehigh and Northampton counties, Eastern Pennsylvania.")[5]

The species of Monocraterion was described and illustrated by Prof. Prime in 1878.[6] It is stated to be from the Siluro-Cambrian limestone.

Prof. Rogers referred nearly all of the strata of the South Mountain, southwest of the Susquehanna River, to the Primal series. He says:

In its geological constitution this tract is without much variety, for it contain scarcely any rocks except those of the Primal series.[7]

He describes the ridges as composed of the Primal white sandstone and the intervening valleys and plateaus of the Primal upper slate. These strata are represented as very much disturbed and extensively metamorphosed. This view is not accepted by Dr. Persifor Frazer, who says that in his report of 1875 (Second Geological Survey of Pennsylvania, CC) it is clearly shown, both in the text and in the graphic illustrations, that the Potsdam or Primal formation of Rogers is wanting over all that country with the exception, perhaps, of scattered patches on the northwestern flank of the South Mountain chain.[8]

[1] On the history of the crystalline stratified rocks. Am. Assoc., Proc., vol. 25, 1876, p. 208.

[2] On the Paleozoic rocks of Lehigh and Northampton Counties, Pennsylvania. Am. Phil. Soc., Proc., vol. 17, 1878, pp. 248, 249.

[3] Op. cit., p. 249. [4] Op. cit., p. 251.

[5] Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 15, 1878, pp. 261–269.

[6] 2d Geol. Sur., Penn., DD. 1878, pp. 79–80.

[7] The Geology of Pennsylvania. Philadelphia, 1858, vol. 1, p. 203.

[8] Frazer, Persifor, jr. (On the relations of the South Mountain rocks in Pennsylvania.) Am. Inst. Mining Eng., Trans., vol. 7, 1879, p. 336.

In noting the discovery of the Martic anticlinal in Lancaster County, Dr. Frazer calls attention to its exposing fundamental gneiss and granatoid beds in the new railroad cuttings along the left bank of the Susquehanna River and how it sheds off to the north and to the south at least 16,000 feet of Primal (Cambrian?) slates.[1] In a special report upon the geology of Lancaster County the same writer describes the character and mode of occurrence of the "Chikis" quartzite. The actual thickness of the quartzite above water level is not much over 300 feet.[2] Between the limestones and the quartzite there is, he says—

A vast series of hydro-mica schists and decomposed argillaceous slates, which insensibly grow in the deep more and more chloritic until this mineral lends its color as well as its name to the larger part of the whole formation, but generally the chloritic series is divided from these nacrites by a quartzite.[3]

He says further:

A vast series of slates intervene between the lowest rocks of all on the Susquehanna and the formation last described.[4]

As the result of his survey of the southern parts of Montgomery, Bucks, and Philadelphia Counties, Mr. Chas. E. Hall[5] decides that the South Valley Hill hydromica and chlorite slates, which were considered by Prof. Rogers as equivalent to his Primal of the North Valley Hill, are not altered Primal slates, but no other than a series of slates overlying the limestones of No. II or the slates of the Hudson Period. He also gives a description of the Primal quartzite of Rogers, speaking of it as the Potsdam sandstone.[6] He gives his opinion of the age of the sandstone known as the Edge Hill Rock, in Chester County, as follows: "The Itacolumite, or Edge Hill Rock, I consider proven, beyond dispute, to be the equivalent of the Potsdam sandstone." [7]

In a memoir upon the geology of the southeastern portion of Pennsylvania, Dr. Persifor Frazer gives a summary of the general characters and geographical distribution of the Primal quartzite and the subjacent and superjacent schists. The upper division of the Primal of Rogers is referred to No. III or Auroral, and the chloritic schists, subjacent to the quartzite, are referred to the Huronian, the quartzite alone representing the Primal or Potsdam of Rogers.[8] The geographic distribution of the formation in Chester, Lancaster, York, and Adams Counties is represented on the map accompanying the memoir.

Prof. Lesley, in his description of the geology of Chester County, after the surveys of Messrs. Rogers, Frazer, and Hall[9] writes:

---

[1] [Note on the Martic anticlinal and on ripple marks on a slab of limestone]. Am. Phil. Soc., Proc., vol. 17, 1878, p. 725.

[2] The geology of Lancaster County. Second Geol. Survey Penn., Rep. Prog. in 1877, CCC. Harrisburg, 1880, p. 7.

[3] Op. cit., p. 5. [4] Op. cit, p. 8.

[5] The geology of Philadelphia County and of the southern parts of Montgomery and Bucks. Second Geol. Survey Pa., C6., 1881, pp. xvii–xviii, 93.

[6] Op. cit., pp. 7, 8. [7] Op. cit., p. xvii.

[8] Mémoire sur la Géologie de la partie sud-est de la Pennsylvanie. Lille, 1882, p. 75.

[9] The geology of Chester County, after the surveys of Rogers, Frazer, and Hall. Second Geol. Sur. Penn., CCCC; 1883, p. viii.

Dr. Frazer divides the Potsdam sandstone formation into an upper and a lower. * * * The upper, or *Kennett rock* division, he identifies with Mr. Hall's Edge Hill rock.

The lower is the Toughkenamon division. Dr. Frazer himself says that the latter, or the lower division, "is composed of weathered particles of a gneiss or syenite loosely compacted and laminated." The second or Kennett rock is the upper division and "it is a thin-bedded rock, lying in plates of fairly parallel sides, composed of fragments of white limpid quartzite, and is generally large-grained."[1]

Prof. Lesley quotes Prof. Rogers's description of the Primal series as it occurs at various localities in the county, together with many of Dr. Frazer's observations; stating that he described three principal and a few very subordinate and doubtful areas of the Primal rock north of the Chester Valley. One important conclusion of Dr. Frazer's is here quoted:

In mentioning thus the "Primal," the quartzite and quartzose sandstone alone are considered here. It will be seen further on that abundant evidence sustains the view that the greater part if not all of the weathered feldspar porphyries, conglomerates, &c., in the townships both north and south of the Chester Valley are really *Lower Potsdam*. The effect of this would be to add a border of these rocks to the area of the (silicious) Potsdam as at present indicated on the map, and thus contract by this much the remaining area of real Azoic or Hypozoic.[2]

The report of Mr. E. V. D'Invilliers upon the geology of the South Mountain belt of Berks County contains an extended description of the "Potsdam" sandstone, or No. 1 of Rogers's classification. The opening paragraph throws a doubt upon the correlation that has been made of this lower sandstone with the Potsdam sandstone of New York:

It would be safer to name this formation the *Reading Sandstone;* but in the descriptions of its outcrops along the Little Lehigh, the Lehigh, and the Delaware Rivers, in vol. I of this report, it has been called *Potsdam Sandstone*, taking for granted that any sand formation underneath the Magnesian limestones of the Great Valley must be the same sand formation which in northern New York underlies the Corniferous [Calciferous?], Chazy, and other limestones of the Mohawk Valley.[3]

The lower sandstone or conglomerate and the lower Primal slates of Rogers were not recognized in Berks County.

The lowest bed of the sandstone, always seen resting on the gneiss, is a coarse conglomerate of angular quartz rock fragments of all sizes in a silicous paste. * * * The term *sub-Potsdam conglomerate* would express its position underneath the *Potsdam quartzite white sandstone proper*, belonging to it by conformity, and separated from the gneiss by nonconformity.[4]

A detailed description of the outcrop of the sandstones and their general character follows. Certain areas of slate exist in places between the sandstone and the Magnesian limestone and are referred to the Primal series. Where the slate is not present the limestone is im-

[1] Geological notes in the several townships of Chester County. Second Geol. Surv. Penn. The geology of Chester County. C4, 1883, p. 307.

[2] The geology of Chester County, after the surveys of Rogers, Frazer, and Hall. Second Geol. Surv. Penn., CCCC; 1883, p. 159.

[3] The geology of the South Mountain Belt of Berks County. Second Geol. Surv. of Penn., D3, 1883, vol. 2, p. 99.

[4] Op. cit., p. 109.

mediately above the Potsdam sandstone. "Its place in the series is next above the Potsdam sandstone formation No. I."[1]

In a lecture upon the geology of Philadelphia, Prof. H. Carvill Lewis describes the Primal slates and Potsdam sandstone as follows:

On top of the gneiss and at the base of that great group of fossiliferous rocks known as the Paleozoic System, is a peculiar formation in the middle strata of which occur the oldest fossils yet found in the vicinity of Philadelphia. The lower part of the formation is the pale sandy slate which forms Edge Hill and Barren Hill, and the northern base of Chestnut Hill. The slates are closely folded and stand often almost perpendicular. * * * A sandstone, which from its great development at Potsdam, N. Y., has been named from that place, overlies the slates and often contains long tubular fossils, known as *Scolithus linearis*, which appear to be the casts of worm-holes. * * * On top of this fossiliferous sandstone is a series of soft, iron-bearing shales, often decomposed into variegated clays, carrying extensive beds of iron ore (limonite).[2]

The "Potsdam" sandstone is described by Prof. Fred. Prime, jr., as it occurs in Lehigh and Northampton Counties. It rarely exceeds 25 feet in thickness, and there are no underlying rocks of any thickness between it and the unconformably subjacent Laurentian rocks. The Primal upper slate of Rogers is classed with the Siluro-Cambrian limestone.[3]

Prof. J. P. Lesley's hand atlas of the sixty-seven counties of Pennsylvania contains a description of the rocks referred to the Potsdam quartzite, No. I, of Rogers, in each of the counties in which they occur; and the geographic distribution is shown upon the maps of the counties. The text presents the best general statement of the distribution of the strata now referred to the Cambrian in Pennsylvania that has yet been published.[4]

Prof. Lesley's résumé was followed in 1886 by an important contribution by Dr. Persifor Frazer entitled "A sketch of the Geology of York County, Pennsylvania." In adopting the classification of the Geological Congress for the system he places under the heading "Cambric" the Hellam quartzite or Potsdam sandstone.[5] The lower series or talcose slates of Rogers are considered in all probability as identical with the Azoic schists; and it is stated that abundant instances occur of the unconformable contact of the quartzite upon the supposed equivalent schists in Chester County. On the geological map accompanying this memoir the details and distribution of the Potsdam formation are delineated. The talcose schist of Rogers, or the upper member of his Primal series, is referred to the "Siluric" as "hydro-mica schists."[6]

Dr. T. Sterry Hunt objects to the interpretation of Prof. Rogers, that

---

[1] Op. cit., p. 137.

[2] The geology of Philadelphia. Franklin Inst. Jour., 3d ser., vol. 85, 1883, p. 425.

[3] Geology of Lehigh and Northampton Counties. Second Geol. Surv. Penn., D3, vol. 1, 1883, pp. 210, 212.

[4] A geological hand atlas of the sixty-seven counties of Pennsylvania, embodying the results of the Verity field work of the survey, from 1874 to 1884. Second Geol. Surv. Penn., X, 1885, pp. cxii.

[5] General notes. Sketch on the geology of York County, Pennsylvania. Am. Phil. Soc., Proc., vol. 23, 1886, p. 398.

[6] Op. cit., p. 409.

the Primal sandstone, Auroral limestone, and Matinal shales of central Pennsylvania are represented in southeastern Pennsylvania. He criticises the correlation upon the evidence of the presence of *Scolithus linearis*, stating that he has shown it to be very distinct from that found in the Potsdam sandstone. The argument for this is given in his "Azoic Rocks of Pennsylvania."[1] In a later publication Dr. Hunt concludes that—

> There is, in fact, up to this time, no evidence that the typical Potsdam sandstone and Calciferous sandrock of northern New York exist in eastern Pennsylvania; but on the contrary there are many reasons for supposing that in this region, as in eastern Canada and along the eastern side of the Champlain and Hudson River Valleys, the period of these two subdivisions of the New York system is represented by the First Graywacke of Eaton, the Upper Taconic of Emmons, which, as will be shown farther on, is now recognized as contemporaneous with the typical Potsdam and Calciferous subdivisions. Rocks supposed to represent this Graywacke series are found in the great valley of Pennsylvania, and these, together with the divisions immediately preceding them—namely, the Primitive quartz rock, the Primitive lime rock, and the transition argillite—which constitute the Lower Taconic of Emmons—are, as we shall endeavor to show, represented by the so-called Primal, Auroral, and Matinal of the southeastern area.[2]

He refers the sandstone, limestone, and shale to his pre-Cambrian Taconian system, correlating the formations with the Granular quartzite, Granular limestone, and Transition argillite of the eastern New York section. This correlation, made long before by Prof. Rogers, is sustained by the latest observations. The "Granular quartz" of Eaton's section is known to be of Lower Cambrian age; the limestone, of the Trenton-Chazy horizon, and the argillite is referred to the Hudson terrane. If the correlation based upon lithologic characters and stratigraphic position by Messrs. Rogers and Hunt be correct, then the quartzite of southeastern Pennsylvania is of Cambrian age, and the limestones, with their superjacent shales and schists, are the equivalents of the Trenton and Hudson terranes.

The statement that the Upper Taconic of Emmons is contemporaneous with the typical Potsdam and Calciferous subdivisions is no longer sustained, as the Upper Taconic of Emmons is mainly the Lower Cambrian of the New York section.

In a discussion on the rocks of Pennsylvania and New York, Mr. T. D. Rand[3] mentions the Cambrian of Chester Valley, near Philadelphia, and, as undetermined, the hydro-mica schist of the South Valley Hill. He states that the Potsdam really exists in between the schist and the limestone, which refers the schist to the Archean. The sandstone is very thin, but it rests upon the Laurentian shore of the ancient ocean, which explains the differences of thickness as compared with the rocks to the northwest.

---

[1] Special report on the trap dikes and Azoic rocks of southeastern Pennsylvania. Second Geol. Surv. Pa., E. 1878, pp. 134–139.

[2] The Taconic Question in Geology. Mineral Physiology and Physiography. A second series of chemical and geological essays: 1886, p. 534.

[3] A discussion on the rocks of Pennsylvania and New York. New York Acad. Sci., Trans., vol. 8, 1889, pp. 50, 51.

MARYLAND.

A brief description is given by Prof. P. T. Tyson, in his first report,[1] of the rocks in Maryland referred to the Primal series of Rogers. Two formations are referred to the Primal: (1) a hard sandstone; and (2) a slate, varying in color from gray to brownish and greenish. On the map accompanying the report the geographic distribution of the Primal series is indicated.

VIRGINIA.

One of the earliest attempts to differentiate, by lithologic characters, the formations of the Blue Ridge of Virginia is on the map of a section crossing it east of Winchester.[2] The Transition, or blue limestone, is represented as passing beneath the limestone shale that, in turn, dips beneath a gray schistose rock. This section is of interest only when interpreted by the later sections of Prof. Rogers.

Prof. William B. Rogers describes in the Second Report of the Progress of the Geological Survey of Virginia the Primal series in the central counties of the State, or of the Great Valley, as follows:

(No. 1.) This rock or group of rocks, which is frequently exhibited in extensive exposures along the western side and base of the Blue Ridge, more especially in the middle counties of the valley, is usually a compact, rather fine-grained, white or yellowish gray sandstone. Where resting on the declivity of the ridge it presents a gentle inclination to the northwest—while the subjacent and more ancient strata of the ridge, in almost every instance, dip steeply to the southeast. In Page, Rockingham, Augusta, and Rockbridge counties this rock forms the irregular and broken ranges of hills lying immediately at the foot of the main Blue Ridge, and sometimes attaining an altitude little inferior to that of the principal mountain. A level region, sometimes of considerable breadth, and strewed profusely with the fragments of this rock, in general intervenes between these rugged hills and the first exposures of the valley limestone. * * * Talcose and micaceous matter make their appearance in it. * * * This micaceous and talcose variety is sometimes found in the same hill underlying the more purely silicious rock. The latter, in nearly all the exposures from the Balcony Falls to Thornton's Gap, as well as in various other places, exhibits vague, fucoidal and zoophytic impressions on the surfaces of bedding, together with innumerable markings at right angles to the stratification, penetrating in straight lines to great depths in the rock, and from their frequency and parallelism determining its cleavage in nearly vertical planes. These markings are of a flattened, cylindrical form, from one-eighth to one-tenth of an inch broad, giving the surface of the fractured rock a ribbed appearance, and resembling perforations made in sand which have been subsequently filled up without destroying the distinctness of the original impression. Precisely similar markings are found in great abundance in the white compact sandstone occurring at a higher point in the series, associated with numerous unequivocal impressions of fucoides.

The extent to which these sandstones are developed is comparatively inconsiderable in the southern and northern counties of the valley, and their structure and composition are in many respects materially changed.[3]

---

[1] First Report of the State Agricultural Chemist of Maryland. Annapolis, 1860, pp. 34, 35.

[2] Clemson, Thos. G.: Notice of a geological examination of the country between Fredericksburgh and Winchester, in Virginia, including the gold region. Geol. Soc. Penn., Trans., vol. 1, 1835, map, oppo. p. 298.

[3] Second report of the progress of the geological survey of the State of Virginia, for the year 1837. Richmond, 1838, p. 14.

The description of formation No. I in the third annual report is as follows:

The lowest of the Appalachian rocks consist for the most part of a close-grained white or light gray sandstone, in some places containing beds of a rather coarse conglomerate of white silicious pebbles. Near the bottom in many instances a brownish slaty sandstone occurs alternating with the former, while towards the top or approaching the next formation, the sandstone passes into reddish and brownish and olive-colored argillaceous slates.

This formation in Virginia is exclusively confined to the western slope of the Blue Ridge and the narrow belt of rugged hills and mountains extending thence to the commencement of the valley limestone.[1]

In a paper on "The Lower Silurian brown hematite beds of America," Mr. B. S. Lyman states that all these beds seem to lie within the Virginia and Pennsylvania geological formation No. I, wholly below the Calciferous Sandrock of No. II.[2]

On the map accompanying the reprint of the annual reports and other papers on the geology of the Virginias, published in 1884, Prof. Rogers has included under one color, formations I to III or the Primal, Auroral and Matinal series. On the large series of sections, however, the three are differentiated and No. I or the Primal series is shown in sections 1 to 19, and also in 89.

Prof. W. M. Fontaine has added many details to the section of the Primal series described by Prof. Rogers, at Balcony Falls in Rockbridge County. The sketch of the Balcony Falls section[3] is supplemented by that of Rockfish Gap and Harper's Ferry.

For a further notice of the results of Prof. Fontaine's work the reader is referred to the description of the Cambrian rocks of Virginia.

In a note upon the Potsdam or Primal group of Virginia, prepared for Macfarlane's American Geological Railway Guide, Prof. W. B. Rogers puts as equivalent formations No. I of the Pennsylvania and Virginia surveys or Primal of the annual reports and Potsdam group. The latter is used in the nomenclature of the rocks of Virginia and West Virginia. In the note explaining the Potsdam group, he says:

The Potsdam, or Primal group, includes in Virginia, where complete, besides the Potsdam proper, the ferriferous shales next above, and the slates, shaly grits, and conglomerates, below this formation. It is exposed in varying mass and completeness on the western slope and in the west flanking hills of the Blue Ridge throughout much of its length, often, by inversion, dipping to the southeast, in seeming conformity beneath the older rocks of the Blue Ridge, but often, also resting unconformably upon or against them. These older rocks, comprising masses referable probably to Huronian and Laurentian age, include also a group of highly altered beds, corresponding apparently to the copper-bearing or Keweenian series of northern Michigan, and perhaps to the lately described Dimetian rocks of Wales.[4]

---

[1] Report of the progress of the geological survey of Virginia, for 1838 (Richmond, 1839), p 6. A reprint of the annual reports and other papers, on the geology of the Virginias. New York, 1884, pp. 197, 198.

[2] On the Lower Silurian brown hematite beds of America. Am. Assoc., Proc., vol. 16, 1867, p. 114.

[3] On the primordial strata of Virginia. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 9, 1875, pp. 363-369.

[4] Rogers, W. B. Virginia and West Virginia. [Geological formations.] Macfarlane's Am. Geol. R. R. Guide, 1879, p. 181.

It will be noticed that Prof. Rogers adopts the same reference for the ferriferous or iron-bearing slates and shales that his brother did for the supposed equivalent formation in Pennsylvania.

Prof. J. L. Campbell published two papers in 1879,[1] in which the Primal series of Prof. Rogers is described. These were followed in 1880 by a revised description of the Silurian formation in central Virginia.[2] His observations will be noticed in the section on the Cambrian rocks of Virginia. In another paper he gives a definition of the "*Primordial*" as follows:

The Primordial.—The great bed of ferriferous shales and sandstones skirting the western base of the Blue Ridge from Tennessee to the Potomac; in the upper part of formation No. I of Prof. Rogers's Appalachian series.[3]

The most complete and detailed description of the formations referred to the Primal series of Rogers is that of Prof. W. M. Fontaine, published in 1883.[4] The section is formed of conglomerate at the base, subjacent to shales, upon which the so-called Potsdam quartzite rests. The upper member of the Primal series is the ferriferous shales. The entire thickness of this section is given as 2,380 feet, and the data given by Prof. Fontaine will be used largely in the summing up of our knowledge of the Primal series in Virginia. The reader is referred to that section for further details.

In an article upon the iron ores of the valley of Virginia, Mr. Andrew McCreath divides the "Primal or Potsdam sandstone" (Primal or Potsdam formation) into (1) lower slates, (2) sandstone, (3) upper slate.

First. In the *lower slates*, or those geologically underneath the Potsdam sandstone occurs a red hemitite ore, sometimes in beds of considerable thickness and of good quality. This is the so-called "specular ore" of the Blue Ridge, and it has been quite extensively developed at numerous points, notably in Botetourt and Bedford Counties. * * * Second. In the *Potsdam sandstone* itself, important beds of iron-ore have been observed. The ore is generally a close-grained, brittle, dark brown hematite, invariably cold-short. In Rockbridge County a bed of it fully ten feet thick is exposed for a considerable distance on the Vesuvius property. * * * Third. The *upper slates*, however, are by far the most important from an economical standpoint, forming, as they do, one of the richest repositories of brown hematite iron ore in Virginia. They intervene between the Potsdam sandstone and the base of the calciferous limestone, and they are found all along the western slope of the Blue Ridge—being geologically coextensive with it. They are generally more or less disintegrated, or decomposed into variegated clays; and while they may not always carry a continuous ore bed, yet, wherever the formation exists, deposits of iron ore of greater or less extent may be confidently looked for.[5]

---

[1] Silurian formation in central Virginia. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 18, 1879, pp. 16–29. Geology of Virginia; Balcony Falls; The Blue Ridge and its geological connections. Some theoretical considerations. Ibid., pp. 435–445.

[2] The Silurian formation in central Virginia (revised). The Virginias, vol. 1, 1880, pp. 41–45, 54–56.

[3] The mineral resources and advantages of the country adjacent to the James river and Kanawha Canal and the Buchanan and Clifton Forge Railway. The Virginias, vol. 1, 1880, p. 3.

[4] Notes on the mineral deposits at certain localities on the western part of the Blue Ridge. The Virginias, vol. 4, 1883, pp. 21, 22, 42–44.

[5] The iron ores of the valley of Virginia. Am. Inst. Mining, Eng., Trans., vol. 12, 1884, pp. 18–20.

In the sheet of sections accompanying "The Virginias" by Prof. William B. Rogers, printed in 1884, section 9 crosses the Primal series of Rockbridge County, about 30 miles north of Balcony Falls. On the eastern slope of the Blue Ridge a small synclinal basin of the Primal series is represented as resting in a hollow in the gneiss; on the western slope, the Primary series is shown as it occurs in numerous sections crossing the Great Valley and the Blue Ridge. The editor of the sections, Mr. Jed. Hotchkiss, states in the note accompanying them that the sections are "exact reproductions, in so far as the geology is concerned, of the sections as Prof. Rogers left them." From this it is evident that Prof. Rogers became aware of the presence of the Primal series on the upper eastern slope of the Blue Ridge in Rockbridge County after the publication of the third annual report in 1839, as he stated then that the Primal rocks were confined to the western side of the ridge.

Messrs. J. L. and H. D. Campbell, while studying the geological relations of the Snowdon slate quarries in Amherst County, on the borders of the counties of Rockbridge and Bedford, discovered the presence of the Balcony Falls series of Cambrian rocks and found that the quartzite passed beneath the slate of the quarries.[1] On the map accompanying the paper (p. 170), an ideal section shows the shales and conglomerates resting on the gneiss beneath the sandstone, which they have referred to the Potsdam owing to its carrying Scolithus borings, and above the latter is the slate belt, in which the quarries are located. Under the title of "Geology of the Blue Ridge near Balcony Falls, Virginia; a modified view," Prof. Campbell corrects the statement made in a former paper, in the American Journal of Science in 1879, that the rocks of the southeast slope are of Archean age. He adds a sentence as follows:

> We may conclude, therefore, that this portion of the Blue Ridge has been formerly spanned by a grand arch, or series of arches, of Cambrian age, upturned perhaps at the time of their upheaval—the broken fragments of which have been carried away, and only the abutments left to tell the story of a great catastrophe.[2]

In a letter on relation of Archean and associated formations in Virginia, Prof. W. M. Fontaine states that he finds in Virginia a valuable guide to the true base of the Potsdam in the conglomerates.

> The lowest conglomerate is not always seen. It is often very coarse, with pebbles sometimes 4 to 5 inches in diameter, and composed of Laurentian or Huronian material, according to the nature of the underlying rock. The matrix is often shaly or slaty.
>
> It is the conglomerates overlying this stratum that afford the best guide, for they may always be seen.
>
> They are simply pebble beds in the slate or shale. The pebbles are from the size of a musket bullet down, and usually of quartz, often pink in color. The pebbles look as if they had been scattered over a muddy bottom, forming a very peculiar conglomerate in which all the material except the pebbles is a fine slate or shale. Sometimes some partially decayed feldspathic matter occurs with the pebbles.

[1] The Snowdon slate quarries. The Virginias, vol. 5, 1884, pp. 162, 163.

[2] Geology of the Blue Ridge near Balcony Falls, Virginia; a modified view. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., 1884, vol. 28, pp. 222, 223.

These *shaly conglomerates*, as we may call them, might sometimes be *mistaken for certain amygdaloids of the Huronian* when the latter are weathered, but careful examination will always detect the difference. I have never seen any shaly conglomerate in the Huronian.

I am now of the opinion that the conglomerates at the railroad bridge at Harper's Ferry are these lower Potsdam strata, but would require a reexamination of them before I make up my mind positively. I am also inclined to think that Frazer's Mountain Creek conglomerate is the same.[1]

During the year 1885 Prof. H. D. Campbell published a more detailed account of the discovery of the Potsdam group east of the Blue Ridge. A résumé of the section is given as it occurs on the northwestern slope of the Blue Ridge at Balcony Falls for the purpose of comparing the rocks as found upon the southeastern slope. On the eastern slope the strata lie in a basin of Archean rocks forming a synclinal, a section of which practically reduplicates the lower portion of a section of the "Potsdam group" of the western slope. A map and figure of the section accompany the paper.[2] In a second article in connection with his father, the Cambrian-Primordial (No. 1 of Rogers) is described in considerable detail,[3] and mention is made of the discovery of another area referred to the "Potsdam group" on the eastern slope of the Blue Ridge, at Tye River gap, in Nelson County.

Prof. J. J. Stevenson identifies the Cambrian rocks, crossing Montgomery, Pulaski, and Wythe Counties, as the Lower Knox shales and the Potsdam of the Tennessee section. Under the title "Cambrian" he says:

Here are placed the Lower Knox shales and the Potsdam. The former are probably equivalent to the Hydromica schists of Pennsylvania and the lower part of the Calciferous of New York; the latter is the Potsdam of New York, vastly increased in thickness.

No fossils were observed in the Knox or the Potsdam shale with the exception of *Scolithus linearis*. The geographic distribution of the formations referred to the Cambrian is shown on a map accompanying the paper. Further reference will be made to Prof. Stevenson's paper in describing the Cambrian rocks of Virginia.[4]

In a paper read before the Geological Society of America December 31, 1890, by Messrs. H. R. Geiger and Arthur Keith, it is stated that the shales and quartzite at Harper's Ferry represent the Hudson and Medina series and not the Primal series as stated by Profs. Rogers and Fontaine. They present a number of sections showing the stratigraphic position of the beds. In these the normal succession is limestone, shales, and sandstone. The shales succeed the limestones, and overlap

[1] (Letter on relations of Archean and associated formations in Virginia.) Geol. Chester Co., Pa., 2d Geol. Surv., Ct, 1883, p. xv.

[2] The Potsdam group east of the Blue Ridge at Balcony Falls, Virginia. Am Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 29, 1885, pp. 470–474.

[3] Review of William B. Rogers's Geology of the Virginias. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 30, 1885, pp. 364–368.

[4] A geological reconnaissance of Bland, Giles, Wythe, and portions of Pulaski and Montgomery Counties of Virginia. Am. Phil. Soc. Proc., vol. 24, 1887, pp. 86–87.

upon the pre-Paleozoic rocks, the quartzite in turn resting upon the shales. This makes the limestones represent the Great Valley limestone of Virginia or the Calciferous-Chazy-Trenton belt; the shales, the Hudson series, and the sandstone, the Medina series of the New York section.[1]

NORTH CAROLINA.

As now known the Cambrian rocks of North Carolina are confined to the extreme western boundary, where the Ocoee conglomerate and Chilhowee sandstone series extend across from Tennessee. This was recognized by Prof. J. M. Safford in his work in Tennessee; and Prof. W. C. Kerr notes the occurrence of thin-bedded, siliceous slates at Paint Rock, on the State line. He says of them:

> They are called by Prof. Safford, the geologist of the State of Tennessee, Chilhowee sandstones, and are set down conjecturally by several eminent geologists as Potsdam sandstone. They have never yielded any fossils by which their geological horizon might be determined. A few very thin beds of argillaceous slate are found interpolated here and there between the quartzose strata.
>
> Passing up the deep gorge which the river has excavated, the quartzites are soon found to be interbedded with and are finally replaced by shales and grits, the latter generally fine, but occasionally approaching in appearance a breccia or conglomerate. These are succeeded by heavy beds of argillaceous slates and shales, which in turn give place, at Warm Springs, to a heavy bedded blue and gray limestone. This is followed by a calcareous, compact, fine-grained sandstone, which presently passes into a gray, much jointed quartzite rising in vertical cliffs along the river for 2 miles, and succeeded by a well characterized coarse conglomerate with bluish gray slates and shales, at and below the mouth of Laurel River. A little above this point comes in a very extensive and conspicuous bed of feldspathic quartzite, or petrosilex, which continues for more than a mile, and then graduates through a gneissoid rock into a series of gray, drab, and mottled argillaceous slates and shales. This succession of quartzites, grits, shale, limestone, and conglomerate occupies in direct cross section a space of more than 10 miles. I have elsewhere referred to the identity of this formation with that which is so conspicuous on Valley River, and shall therefore call it the *Cherokee Slates*. They pass in a northeast course up the Laurel Valley and through the Smoky or Unaka Mountains into Tennessee.[2]

In a note on the occurrence of metamorphic Silurian rocks in North Carolina, Prof. F. H. Bradley states that the rocks about Franklin are of Lower Silurian age, and the marbles of Murphy and vicinity are the equivalents of the Knox limestones of Tennessee, which are of Quebec group age.[3] This statement of Prof. Bradley's is noted here, as it is probable that the formations examined by him are equivalent to those exposed on the French Broad, between Warm Springs, North Carolina, and Paint Rock. If so, they may be of Cambrian age. In a paper published the following year, Prof. Bradley refers[4] to the strata in the vicinity of Murphy, in southwestern North Carolina, and takes the view

[1] Bull. Geol. Soc. America, vol. 2, 1891, pp. 155–163.

[2] Report of the State Geologist of North Carolina. Raleigh, 1869, p. 29.

[3] Note on the occurrence of metamorphic Silurian rocks in North Carolina. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 8, 1874, p. 390.

[4] On the Silurian age of the southern Appalachians. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 9, 1875, pp. 286, 382.

already mentioned. There is, however, more or less of uncertainty in relation to the identification of the rocks about Murphy and on the line of the Hiwassee River; so much so that outside of the recognized Chilhowee strata I think it would be very hazardous to state that the Cambrian is represented in southwestern North Carolina. In his description of the stratified rocks, Prof. Kerr states that so far as known the Primordial is represented only in its lowest member, where it crosses the northwest border in a few points along the Smoky Mountain.[1] A description of the section upon the French Broad, from Paint Rock to Warm Springs, is reprinted by him (pp. 138, 139), with the statement that Prof. Safford makes the Paint Rock sandstones to be Chilhowee or Potsdam; the grits and conglomerates below and above Warm Springs to be Ocoee or sub-Potsdam; while the limestone is referred to the Knox Dolomite, which is above the Potsdam.[2] He also gives Prof. Bradley's identification of the rocks that belong to Cherokee County in the southwestern portion of the State.

TENNESSEE.

The classification adopted by Dr. Gerard Troost, in his fourth report as geologist of the State of Tennessee, is as follows:[3]

1. Primordial, or Primitive, or Crystalline.
2. Transition or Fragmentary.
3. Secondary or Sedimentary.
4. Tertiary or Upper Secondary.

In mentioning this classification he says:

I should have confined myself to the two first parts of this division, the Primordial and Transition series, as they constitute the greatest part of the district that I have examined.

This nomenclature is used in the fifth annual report, where he states that the Crystalline Primordial rocks form the highest part of the Appalachian Chain. The line of contact of the Primordial rocks with the Transition or Fragmentary coincides in a general way, but not exactly with the boundary line between Tennessee and North Carolina.

The country lying between the Great Smoky Mountains and the Cumberland Mountains, or East Tennessee, is for the most part composed of strata of grauwacke, sandstone, and limestone alternating with each other, and in which organic remains are rarely found; these strata are highly inclined, approaching in some places towards the vertical, dipping more or less towards southeast and running nearly parallel with the Smoky Mountain ridge; they are covered in several places by horizontal strata of limestone of a dark gray, approaching to a black color, and having a granular structure. It is in some places characterized by *Maclurites*, Le Sueur, *Conotubularia*, nobis, *Isotellus*, Dekay, and several species of *Calamopora*, Goldf.[4]

On the map and sections accompanying the report the Primordial or Crystalline series is colored blue, and the Secondary or Grauwacke

[1] Report of the geological survey of North Carolina, vol. 1, 1875, p. 115. Raleigh.
[2] Op. cit., p. 140.
[3] Fourth report of the geologist of the State of Tennessee. Nashville, 1838, p. 630.
[4] Fifth geological report on the State of Tennessee. Nashville, 1840, p. 5.

series, composed of grauwacke, slaty grauwacke, sandstone, and limestone, which extend from the Primordial series to where they are lost under the Cumberland Mountains, is colored yellow, thus roughly outlining the relations of the Cambrian and pre-Cambrian rocks of eastern Tennessee.

Before publishing the Sixth Annual Report, Dr. Troost read Murchison's "Siluria," and also the observations of Prof. Sedgwick on the Cambrian rocks of Wales. In discussing the changes of nomenclature made necessary in accepting the views of Messrs. Murchison and Sedgwick, he says:

After having pointed out, in my last report, the line of junction of the Primordial or crystalline rocks in East Tennessee, I mentioned that the country west of the line, which separates Tennessee from the State of North Carolina, is composed of grauwacke, slate, limestone, etc. All this country, according to the views of Murchison and Sedgwick, belongs to a new division, which they call the *Cambrian system*.

This series of strata contains few organic remains; in fact, I have carefully examined, in this respect, the Tennessee strata and have never discovered any in them.[1]

In his attempt to identify the Cambrian and Siluriansy stems in Tennessee, he included rocks in the Cambrian system that, under the original definition of Sedgwick for that system in Wales, is surprisingly correct. In describing the geographic distribution of the Cambrian system, he says:

I consider the termination of the *Cambrian System* towards the west. This system commences, as already observed, about the line which separates the State of Tennessee from North Carolina; and, as mentioned in my preceding reports, is also, with a few exceptions, the line of separation between the transition and primordial strata. It runs sometimes a few miles into North Carolina; sometimes penetrates, for a few miles, into Tennessee, forming the great Unica or Smoky Mountain, Bald Mountain, and Iron Mountains; but the culminating ridge of this mountain chain is mostly composed of the Cambrian rocks, while south of it the crystalline or Primordial rocks are found.

Leaving this ridge in a north, or rather northwest direction, we have a series of slaty rocks, containing here and there chlorite, passing into talcose slate—or into quartzite. This series seems to be equivalent to Sedgwick's *Lower Cambrian* series; some extensive strata, mostly of brown or reddish brown, fine grained limestone occur occasionally in this series; such a stratum is seen about 5 miles west from the Primordial rocks, crossing, near the Warm Springs in Buncombe County, the French Broad River. We have then a series of strata of slates and sandstone, and about 4 or 5 miles west of Newport a limestone stratum appears again, extending through Cocke and Sevier counties, parallel to the above-mentioned high chain. I suppose the Lower *Cambrian system* terminates there.

Upon the Lower Cambrian rocks follows another series. It is composed of roofing slate, glossy aluminous slate, and sandstone. A ridge of fine roofing slate crosses Sevier County. I believe that this series commences with Star's, Tellico, and Chilhowee Mountains in McMinn, Monroe, and Blount counties, ranging parallel with the great Smoky Mountain, extending in a southeastern direction through Sevier County. I have not been able to trace it further to the northeast. This series seems to be equivalent to the Middle Cambrian. * * *

I consider, as stated above, that Bay's Mountain forms the upper part of the *Cambrian system*—or, that it perhaps belongs to the Old Red sandstone—that hence towards

[1] Sixth annual report of the geological survey of Tennessee, by the State geologist. Nashville, 841, p. 4.

the north of that mountain chain another formation commences, which is the *Silurian system* of Murchison, and extends northward as far as the line which separates this State from Virginia—in fact, it continues into that State.[1]

In his description of Sevier County the roofing slate and other slaty rocks and the non-fossiliferous limestones are referred to the Cambrian group.[2]

Dr. Troost identified the Cambrian group in Tennessee with that of Wales entirely upon the lithologic characters and the absence of organic remains; and upon the fact that it was succeeded by a series of limestones from which he obtained and identified Silurian fossils. Although, in the light of our present knowledge, there were many inaccuracies in this correlation it exhibits a comprehensive grasp of the views expressed by Messrs. Murchison and Sedgwick and unusual clearness in the correlation of the groups of rocks in the two countries.

In a sketch of the general geology of the Hiwassee copper region Prof. J. P. Lesley describes the primary region of the Hiwassee and Ocoee Rivers as a southern prolongation of the metamorphic rocks of the Blue Ridge, South Mountain, and Highlands of the Middle and Northern States.

It greatly resembles in every important geological particular the range of the White Hills in New Hampshire. * * * * They are not primary rocks, granites or porphyry, but the Primal and Matinal sandstones, shales, and limestones and conglomerates at the base of the older secondary series, baked, crystallized and upturned in collapsed synclinal and anticlinal axes.

He describes the section on the line of the Ocoee River as formed of slightly metamorphosed conglomerate strata.

In places these rocks are a simple pea conglomerate, quartzose, and interstratified with the hardest homogeneous blue and gray grits and scarcely altered.[3]

The preceding correlation was based upon the view that the strata now referred to the pre-Cambrian Algonkian series were metamorphosed Primal and Matinal rocks, corresponding in age to the unaltered Primal and Matinal rocks to the westward. That they might form a great group of strata beneath the Primal and superjacent to the Primary proper, or Archean, was not at the time entertained by the writer.

In 1856 Prof. J. M. Safford published his first report of "A Geological Reconnaissance of the State of Tennessee," in which he classified the formations as follows:[4]

Formation I.—The mica slate group.
II.—The Ocoee conglomerates and slates.
III.—The Chilhowee sandstones and shales.
IV.—The Magnesian limestone and shale group.

[1] Op. cit., pp. 5, 6. [2] Op. cit., p. 28.
[3] First annual report of the board of directors of the Hiwassee Mining Company, made May 11, 1853. New York, 1853, p. 16.
[4] A Geological Reconnaissance of Tennessee; first biennial report. Nashville, 1856, pp. 151-154.

Formations III and IV were referred to the Cambrian system, and the formations above IV to the Silurian and Devonian systems, etc.

The term Cambrian was used provisionally to unite the first two fossil-bearing formations. The upper portion of formation No. IV, or the limestone member, was subsequently, in 1869, referred to the Knox dolomite.

This preliminary report was followed in 1869 by the volume on "Geology of Tennessee," in which all the strata now referred to the Cambrian are described in detail.[1] A map illustrating the geographic distribution of the formations in the State, and a transverse section from the North Carolina line west, showing the stratigraphic relations of the formations, accompanies the volume.

In speaking of the age of the metamorphic rocks of eastern Tennessee, which have been referred to by various authors as altered Silurian rocks, Prof. Safford says:

> I have no reason for believing that this group within Tennessee includes the metamorphosed beds of any formation of more recent date than the Ocoee conglomerate and slates. A portion of the beds are certainly referable to the Ocoee group; the remainder, although conformable, may be older, and most likely are. * * * In the northern part of the State, at many points, the passage of the Ocoee beds into gneiss is gradual and apparent. A considerable part, indeed, of our metamorphic rocks can be, I think, thus referred to these beds. The question as to the greater age of other parts is not so easily settled, and must remain open for the present. I know of no sufficient reason for referring any of these rocks to the Huronian or Laurentian series of Canada.[2]

It will thus be seen that the line of demarcation between the pre-Cambrian rocks and the Cambrian rocks has not been closely defined in Tennessee. It is only by comparison with the more clearly defined line found in the sections of the Blue Ridge in Virginia that we are led to consider that the metamorphosed rocks belong to an Algonkian group between the Cambrian and the Archean. The studies which are now in progress under the direction of the Geological Survey clearly demonstrate this, and give as the base of the Cambrian a series of sandstones. Where the sandstones and conglomerates are made up of the material derived from the adjacent Algonkian or Archean rocks they will necessarily have something of the character of those rocks, and it may be difficult in many instances to indicate the actual line of demarcation, especially where the basal beds have been more or less altered and disturbed by the subsequent folding, faulting, and compression that accompanied the Appalachian uplift.

As defined by Safford, Series II, or the Potsdam group of Tennessee, consists of—

1. The Ocoee conglomerate and slates.
2. The Chilhowee sandstone.
3. The Knox group of shales, dolomites, and limestones.

---

[1] Geology of Tennessee. Nashville, 1869, pp. 182–226.

[2] Op. cit., pp. 177, 178.

As known to me at the present time the dolomites and limestone are referred to the Lower Silurian, as the equivalent of the Calciferous and Chazy zones of the New York section. This refers the Knox shale to the Upper Cambrian. Prof. Safford states that it is not easy to separate lithologically the *Ocoee sub-group* from the *Chilhowee*, as they often run into each other. The distinction between the latter and the *Knox* is much more apparent.[1]

The Ocoee Conglomerate.—The typical section of the Ocoee conglomerate in the gorge of the Ocoee River, is described by Prof. Safford as follows:

> The strata are well displayed. They are, in general, coarse gray conglomerates, talcose, chlorite and clay slates repeatedly interstratified, all having a semi-metamorphic aspect. The slates predominate, and of these, the greenish and light bluish gray, or the chloritic and talcose varieties, are the most abundant. * * * The middle part of the section presents little conglomerate, but in the upper part it abounds. * * * The lower part of the gorge has several bands of conglomerate.[2]

The thickness of the Ocoee formation was not determined. Provisionally it was estimated to be more than 10,000 feet (p. 186). As shown on the map, the main portion of the Ocoee conglomerate occurs south of Nolichucky River. In Johnson County, in the extreme northeastern corner of the State, it occurs as a narrow band next to the metamorphic series. South of the French Broad River, it occupies a wide belt to the Georgia line. Prof. Safford says it is truly a mountain-making formation.

The recent work of the U. S. Geological Survey has shown that the Ocoee conglomerate is of Silurian age, and it is not to be included with the Cambrian.

The description of the Chilhowee sandstone, and Knox shales and sandstone, will be given in the summary of the present knowledge of the Cambrian rocks of Tennessee.

A résumé of the geology is given in a report upon the resources of Tennessee, by Mr. J. B. Killebrew,[3] which was prepared by Prof. Safford. It is a brief restatement of the character of the formations as described in the "Geology of Tennessee," and the geological map accompanying it is based upon that published in 1869.

When discussing the Silurian age of the Southern Appalachians, Prof. F. H. Bradley considered that the Knox group, of Safford, included the Quebec group and the Calciferous; the Chilhowee sandstone represented the typical Potsdam; and the Ocoee the Lower Potsdam or Acadian group. He also thought that the rocks of North Carolina, south and west of the Little Tennessee, together with the metamorphic area of Georgia, north of a line parallel with and 10 miles south of the Chattahoochee (and *probably* that south of this line), and the entire metamorphic area of Alabama, are *Silurian or newer*, with the possible excep-

[1] Op. cit., p. 182. [2] Op. cit., p. 184.
[3] Resources of Tennessee. Nashville, 1874, pp. 36-46.

tion of two or three small patches not over 10 miles in diameter.[1] A description of sections from Athens and Knoxville, Tennessee, to Murphy, North Carolina, accompany the paper.

The descriptive notes and conclusions of Prof. Bradley were followed, in 1883, by the expression of a somewhat similar view of the age of the Southern Appalachians by Mr. J. B. Elliott,[2] in which he concluded with Bradley that the metamorphosed strata east of the unaltered Ocoee and other "Lower Silurian" rocks were formed of metamorphosed strata of the Knox section.

In the table of formations accompanying Macfarlane's American Geological Railway Guide, Prof. J. M. Safford arranges the formations now referred to the Cambrian in the following descending order:

3*b*. Knox shale.
3*a*. Knox sandstone.
2*b*. Chilhowee sandstone.
2*a*. Ocoee group.

He places as equivalent formations, following Dana's Manual, the Ocoee and the Acadian; the Chilhowee and the Potsdam; the Knox sandstone and the Calciferous; and the Knox shale and the Quebec. This is the classification suggested by Bradley.[3] The Metamorphic group, No. 1, beneath the Ocoee group, is correlated with the Archean.

In an attempt to assign to the proper stratigraphic horizon the rocks referred to the Cambrian group in the United States and Canada, Mr. C. D. Walcott correlated the Knox shale and sandstone with the Potsdam sandstone. The supposed subjacent Chilhowee sandstone and Ocoee conglomerate were referred to a position corresponding to the *horizons* of the Olenellus and Paradoxides faunas.[4] Subsequently, references to the two formations were omitted, pending an investigation of their true stratigraphic position. The discovery, in 1889, of the Olenellus fauna in the shales resting conformably in the Chilhowee series, thus verifying Prof. Safford's section, affirms the correlations of 1883, except that it carries the Middle Cambrian zone above the Chilhowee sandstone and drops the Ocoee, if it proves to be beneath the Chilhowee quartzite, back into the Basal Cambrian.

GEORGIA.

Of the Transition, or older fossiliferous rock formation, Mr. George White said, in 1849, that it has been less explored than any other part of the geology of Georgia.

That part of it which extends from the western base of the primary rocks to the Chattoogatta range of mountains, and which forms the valley of the Oostanaula

[1] On the Silurian age of the Southern Appalachians. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 9, 1875, pp. 279, 280.
[2] The age of the Southern Appalachians. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 25, 1883, pp. 282–298.
[3] Tennessee. (Geological formations.) Macfarlane's Am. Geol. R. R. Guide, 1879, p. 196.
[4] The Cambrian System in the United States and Canada. Washington Phil. Soc., Bull., vol. 6, 1883, p. 100. Second contribution to the studies of the Cambrian faunas of North America. U. S. Geol. Survey, Bull. No. 30, 1886, p. 63.

River, belongs probably to the older series of the New York formations, as those portions which have been examined contain Potsdam sandstones, Calciferous sandrock and limestones of the Trenton group. Very few fossils have been found in it.[1]

This brief description is accompanied by a map, upon which the transition or oldest fossiliferous formations are indicated by one color, in the northwestern corner of the State.

As in the case of North Carolina and Alabama, a long interval elapsed between the first geological survey and the renewal after the conclusion of the civil war. In 1876 Mr. George Little published an account of the geological formations in Georgia, to accompany Janes's Hand-Book of the State. He divides the Lower Silurian into two periods.

The hydromica schists of the copper-bearing series of the Mobile mine and Ducktown, and Ocoee conglomerates and slates along the Ocoee River on the Tennessee line, and on the Etowah River, near Cartersville, are the lowest in position of the rocks in the State, and form a group of (2) Primordial rocks corresponding to what is called the (2*a*) Acadian epoch in Canada. The conglomerate is made up of feldspar and a bluish quartz. The slates are hard and siliceous. This group of rocks is overlaid in the Cohutta Mountains, and on Pine Log Mountain in Bartow County, by a sandstone called the Chilhowee, from a mountain of that name in Tennessee, corresponding to the Potsdam sandstone in New York, * * * and belongs also to the (2) Primordial period and to the (2*b*) Potsdam epoch. This sandstone appears in the north of Haralson and Paulding counties, and in Yonah Mountain, White County, and Tallulah Mountain, Habersham County, being at all these places altered into gneiss by metamorphism.

The next period, called (3) Canadian, embracing the (*a*) *Calciferous* * * * of New York, * * * the (*b*) *Quebec* epoch in Canada, and the (*c*) *Chazy* limestone of New York, is represented by impure sandstones and cherty dolomitic limestones in the northwestern counties; by a sandstone on the western slope of the Cohutta Mountains; and in the metamorphic region to the eastward and southward by calcareous schists, hydromica schists, marble, and itacolumite of the Quebec epoch, and by calcareous schists of the (*a*) Calciferous epoch.[2]

This arrangement follows that of Prof. Safford in Tennessee except that the Knox sandstone and the Knox shales are not included.

In a work on "The Commonwealth of Georgia," prepared under the direction of J. T. Henderson[3] in 1885, there is a general description of the geology of the State. The Acadian or the Ocoee and Chilhowee formations and the Knox shales are all recognized. Reference to this description will be made in the summary of our present knowledge of the Cambrian rocks of Georgia.

In the Tenth Census report a brief résumé of the geology is given with relation to the soils formed from their decomposition. In this Mr. A. R. McCutchen states that the aggregate thickness of the groups, estimating the Primordial at 8,000 feet, and taking the maximum thickness of each of the higher groups, amounts to about 20,000 feet. The Primordial and Calciferous are followed by rocks referred to the Quebec

[1] Statistics of the State of Georgia. Savannah, 1849, p. 22.

[2] Little, George. Geological survey of the State of Georgia. Hand-book of the State of Georgia, with geologic map of State, by T. P. Janes, 1876, p. 37.

[3] Geology (of Georgia). The Commonwealth of Georgia. The country; the people; the productions. Atlanta, 1885, pp. 73-117.

group; first by about 2,400 feet of shales, and then by 5,000 feet of cherty limestones[1]. Combining these estimates we have 8,000 feet of Primordial and 2,400 feet of shales corresponding in position to the Knox shales, which gives a total of 10,400 feet for the Cambrian rocks of Georgia, as estimated. This paper is accompanied by a section crossing Dade, Walker, and Gordon Counties in northwestern Georgia. The stratigraphic relations of the Cambrian rocks are shown as they occur in Gordon County.

A geological section of the Cambrian rocks of northwestern Georgia has recently been published by Mr. C. Willard Hayes of the U. S. Geological Survey. It is referred to in the description of the Cambrian rocks of Georgia.[2]

ALABAMA.

The report of Prof. M. Tuomey for 1858[3] contains a very general description of the formations of the State, and on the accompanying map the Silurian and Devonian formations are included under one color, so that it is impossible to differentiate that portion of the Silurian formation which has subsequently been found to belong to the Cambrian group. In a general north and south section, showing the disposition of the strata, the Silurian and Devonian rocks are represented as unconformably subjacent to the Coal Measures and mountain limestone.

A long interval elapsed between the work of Prof. Tuomey and the organization of the geological survey under Prof. Eugene A. Smith. In the report of progress of the latter, for the year 1875, a general description of the geological formations of Bibb, Shelby, Talladega, and Calhoun Counties is given. In this area there is a large development of metamorphic rocks described by Prof. Smith in the report for 1874.[4] Of this series he says:

> On the southeastern border of the Silurian formation in Alabama, from the Georgia line to the northeast corner of Chilton County, a stratum of crystalline limestone, almost pure carbonate of lime, may be traced by its occasional exposures. * * * Succeeding this limestone and *apparently* overlying it conformably * * * is a series of semi-metamorphic strata between 15,000 and 20,000 feet in thickness, striking northeast and southwest and dipping at high angles (45°) southeast. This series, beginning below, is composed of greenish gray hydro-mica slates (talcoid slates, nacreous argillites, talcose slates), passing upwards into a conglomerate by enclosing lumps of quartz; these slates are succeeded by thick beds of quartzite, alternating with greenish chloritic schists. The quartzite in places is a thin-bedded silicious slate, again a thick-bedded quartzose conglomerate, and still again a laminated quartzose or arenaceous rock, not very coherent, and enclosing small grains of quartz.

[1] Northwest Georgia. (Geologic description.) Tenth Census U. S., vol. 6; Report on Cotton Production in the United States, Part 2, 1884, p. 287.

[2] The overthrust faults of the southern Appalachians. Bull. Geol. Soc. America. Vol. 2, Feb., 1891, p. 143, pl. 3.

[3] Second biennial report on the geology of Alabama. Montgomery, 1858, pp. 168.

[4] Geological survey of Alabama. Report of progress for 1874. Montgomery, Alabama, 1875, pp. 21–25.

This series of quartzites in their several varieties makes up the main body of the Blue Mountains range in Alabama.

These strata are the probable equivalents in Alabama of the Ocoee conglomerates and slates of Prof. Safford, of the Tennessee survey, by him referred to the Silurian age underlying the Potsdam. By Prof. Sterry Hunt the entire system of crystalline schists has been referred to pre-Silurian and pre-Cambrian age. My own observations in the field while inclining me to the latter view, have not been sufficiently extended to enable me to form an independent judgment on this point. * * * Mr. F. H. Bradley refers to the Lower Silurian all the metamorphic rocks of North Carolina as far east as Franklin.[1]

This metamorphic belt is apparently the same as the altered Silurian rocks of Prof. Bradley, as stated by Prof. Smith, and also of the altered rocks forming the northward extension of the Blue Ridge through Tennessee, Virginia, and Maryland into Pennsylvania, where it forms the South Mountain.

In the report for 1875 Prof. Smith states that he has followed the Tennessee subdivisions as found in Prof. Safford's published volume.[2] Under the caption of "Lower Silurian," the Primordial or Cambrian period is divided into (1) Acadian epoch and (2) Potsdam epoch. The Acadian slates and conglomerates of Talladega County are considered to be the exact equivalents of Safford's Ocoee slates and conglomerates.[3] The direct superposition of the sandstone referred to the Potsdam, upon the Acadian slates, is not well shown in Alabama. The formation consists of fine-grained conglomerate, heavy-bedded sandstone, and sandy shale. The most characteristic markings of the rocks of this formation are the sandy rods, caused by the filling in with sand of the burrows of a marine worm, *Scolithis linearis*.[4]

The Knox sandstone and Knox shales are referred to the Canadian period, thus following Prof. Safford's arrangement in Tennessee. The Knox sandstone is considered to rest upon the sandstone referred to the Potsdam, but no contact of the two formations in such a position is known to him. The sandstone is a calcareous sandstone associated with hard calcareous shales.

The Knox shales are very similar to those of Tennessee, and succeed conformably the Knox sandstone. The line between the Knox shale and the Knox dolomite is difficult to draw since the lower part of the dolomite contains beds of blue limestone similar to those in the upper part of the shale. This report contains much detailed information of the strata referred to the Cambrian in Alabama, and will be principally used in the description of the Cambrian rocks of that State.

In a paper on the iron ores of Alabama, with special reference to their geological relations, Prof. Smith states that the Potsdam sandstone frequently contains large amounts of iron, principally as *limonite*. In the Kahatchee hills, in Talladega County, the sandstone is sometimes impregnated with iron in the form of *specular ore* or as *magnetite*.

[1] Op. cit., pp. 21, 22.

[2] Report of progress of the geological survey of Alabama for 1875. Montgomery, 1876, pp. 7, 8.

[3] Op. cit., p. 127. [4] Op. cit., p. 14.

Small beds of limonite are found in the Knox sandstone and Knox shales.[1] In 1878 the same writer published an outline of the geology of Alabama accompanied by a map of the State, based upon that of Tuomey, published in 1858. Of the age of the metamorphic rocks he says that until further examination he leaves the question of age an open one, except in two instances, in which he believes at least a part of them are metamorphosed Silurian beds.[2]

The classification and general description of the formations is essentially the same as that contained in the reports of 1874–'75.

In a report on the physico-geographical and agricultural features of Alabama, Prof. Smith notes the character of soil produced by the rocks of the different formations, from the Potsdam to the Coal measures.[3] This paper was also printed in a general description of the State of Alabama, in vol. 6, of the Tenth Census.[4]

A brief description of the Cambrian rocks of Alabama is given by Prof. Eugene A. Smith, in a report on the geological structure and description of the valley region adjacent to the Cahaba coal field.[5] A summary of it is given in the description of the Cambrian rocks of Alabama.

References are made to the geology of Alabama, in a general way, by Dr. T. S. Hunt, Prof. Smith, and various mining engineers, but I have not, with the exception of the preceding notice, met with original contributions to the knowledge of the Cambrian rocks, since the publication of Prof. Smith's detailed description.

PALEONTOLOGY.

NORTHERN APPALACHIAN DISTRICT.

The first discovery of fossils in rocks, now referred to the Lower Cambrian, was made by Dr. Asa Fitch.[6] In the summer of 1844 he found trilobites in a black slate in Washington County, New York, which was referred by Dr. E. Emmons to the Taconic slate or Argillite (1 of Eaton). Dr. Fitch sent the fossils to Dr. Emmons, who described from them two species of trilobites under the names of *Atops trilineatus* and *Elliptocephalus asaphoides*.[7] Believing that the rocks in which the trilobites occurred were unconformably beneath the Potsdam sandstone,

[1] The iron ores of Alabama, with special reference to their geological relations. Am. Assoc. Proc., vol. 27, 1878, pp. 247, 248.

[2] Outline of the geology of Alabama. Berney's Hand-Book of Alabama, 1878, p. 140.

[3] (Geological features and divisions of Alabama.) Geol. Survey of Alabama. Report for 1881 and 1882, 1883, pp. 178–181; 192–210.

[4] General description of the State of Alabama. Tenth Census U. S., vol. 6. Report on cotton production in the United States, part 2, 1884, pp. 19–69.

[5] Geological Survey of Alabama. Report on the Cahaba coal field, part II, 1890, pp. 148–150. (Issued January, 1891.)

[6] A Historical, Topographical, and Agricultural Survey of the County of Washington. Trans. N. Y. State Agric. Soc. for 1819, 1850, p. 865.

[7] The Taconic System, based on observations in New York, Massachusetts, Vermont, and Rhode Island, p. 20, 21 Albany, 1844.

Dr. Emmons called them the oldest known fossils in America. In the same work Dr. Emmons described *Fucoides rigida*, *F. flexuosa*, *Gordia marina*, *Diplograptus simplex*, and others of Silurian (Ordovician) age that he referred to the Taconic system.

The second description of fossils was made by Prof. James Hall in the Paleontology of New York, vol. 1, 1847. Under the title "Description of fossils of the Hudson River group," the following species were described as new: *Orbicula cælata* (p. 290), *Orbicula? crassa* (p. 290), *Avicula? desquamata* (p. 292), *Theca? triangularis* (p. 313), *Metoptoma? rugosa* (p. 306), *Palæophycus virgatus* (p. 263), and *Agnostus lobatus* (p. 258). A description and figures are given of *Olenus asaphoides*, Emmons, on pages 256, 257, pl. 67, figs. 2a–c. In a later publication[1] he identified Conocephalus and Olenus from the Red Sandrock formation of Highgate, Vermont, but did not assign them to a geologic horizon. In studying a collection sent to him by Rev. Zadock Thompson, Prof. Hall determined and described *Olenus thompsoni*, *O. vermontana*, *Peltura* (*Olenus*) *holopyga*, referring them to the Hudson River group.[2] He supported this reference by the statement that Sir William Logan referred the shales containing the fossils to the upper part of the Hudson River group. In 1860[3] he proposed the genus Barrandia, to include *Olenus thompsoni* and *O. vermontana*. The genus Bathynotus was established to include *Olenus* (*Peltura*) *holopyga*. In 1861[4] the reference of these trilobites was changed from the Hudson River group to the Quebec group; and a little later a strong defense was made of the reference of the fossils of the Georgia slates to the Hudson River and Quebec groups, the authority of Sir William E. Logan for the stratigraphic position of the rocks being cited.[5] Discovering that the proposed generic name, Barrandia, was preoccupied, he substituted the name Olenellus in 1862.[6] This is the first introduction of the name which is now given to the Lower Cambrian fauna.

The last reference of Prof. Hall to the fauna is the proposal of the genus Discinella for what he considered to be a small brachiopod, but which investigation proves to be the operculum of *Hyolithellus micans*.[7]

In notes on the fossils of Washington County, Dr. Asa Fitch[8] de-

[1] Hall, James: Letter on certain fossils of the red sandrock of Highgate. 3d Annual Report on the Geology of the State of Vermont. Burlington, 1847, p. 31.

[2] Remarks upon the trilobites of the shales of the Hudson River group. Paleontology of New York, vol. 3, supplement to vol. 1, 1859, pp. 525–529.

[3] Note upon the trilobites of the shales of the Quebec group in the town of Georgia, Vermont. 13th Annual Report State Cab. Nat. Hist., 1860, pp. 113–119. Report upon the geology of Vermont, vol. 1, 1861, pp. 367–372.

[4] Hall, James; Correction for the 13th Ann. Rep. 14th Ann. Rep. State Cab. Nat. Hist., 1861, p. 110.

[5] Hall, James: Letter on the Primordial of America. Soc. géol. France, Bull., 2e sér vol. 19, 1862, pp. 725–734.

[6] Supplementary note to 13th Ann. Rep. State Cab. Nat. Hist. N. Y. 15th Ann. Rep. State Cab. Nat. Hist. N. Y., 1862, p. 114.

[7] Notes on some new and imperfectly known forms among the brachiopoda, etc. 23d Ann. Rep. N. Y. State Mus. Nat. Hist., 1873, p. 246.

[8] A Historical, Topographical, and Agricultural Survey of the County of Washington. Trans. N. Y. State Agric. Soc. for 1849, 1850.

scribes *Palæophycus rectus* (p. 862), *Buthotrephis* (?) *asteroides* (p. 863), *Helminthoidichnites tenuis* (p. 866), from the slates now referred to the Lower Cambrian. He also mentions *Palæophycus virgatus* Hall, *Buthotrephis* (?) *flexuosus* Emmons (p. 862), and *Gordia marina* of Emmons as *Helminthoidichnites marina* (p. 868).

The fauna of the "Red sandrock" of Vermont was first discovered by Prof. C. B. Adams in 1847,[1] who sent the specimens to Prof. James Hall. The latter identified Conocephalus, but did not refer the fossils to any geological horizon. Prof. Adams in 1848[2] mentions the Conocephalus and also an Atrypa, like *Atrypa hemispherica* (equivalent to *Camerella? antiquata* Billings).

Mr. E. Billings, as paleontologist to the Geological Survey of Canada, took up the study and correlation of the older paleozoic faunas, and was the first to assign the fossils described by Prof. Hall to a pre-Potsdam horizon and to correlate the strata containing them with the Upper Primal sandstones of Pennsylvania, and the limestones of the Straits of Belle Isle.[3]

In 1861 he described a number of Lower Silurian fossils from the "Potsdam group" of Vermont and assigned the following species to the horizon of *Paradoxides thompsoni* of Hall: *Palæophycus congregatus*, *P. incipiens*, *Obolella* (*Kutorgina*) *cingulata*, *Orthisina festinata*, *Camerella antiquata*, *Conocephalites adamsi*, *C. teucer*, *C. vulcanus*, *C. arenosus*.

A little later he published a note on the "Red sandrock" formation of Vermont,[4] in which he refers the formation to the base of the Lower Silurian somewhere within the horizon of the Potsdam and identifies Conocephalites from the formation. In reprinting in 1865 the article published in 1861[5] he correlates the primordial fauna of the "Red sandrock" of Vermont with that of Newfoundland and Labrador, and refers them to the Potsdam group, stating that there is no paleontological evidence of precise similarity of age, but the general affinities and scope of the fossils and the physical relations of the rocks prove that there can be no great difference.

Under the title "On some new species of fossils from the limestone near Point Levi, opposite Quebec,"[6] Mr. Billings described the fauna collected by the Geological Survey of Canada from the limestone conglomerate. He designated the rocks simply as Limestone Nos. 1, 2, 3, and 4, not recognizing at the time that the bowlders were transported and imbedded in a secondary deposit; and that the fossils in the bowl-

[1] 3d Annual Report on the geology of the State of Vermont. Burlington, 1847, pp. 31.

[2] On the Taconic rocks. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 5, 1848, p. 109.

[3] Paleozoic fossils, vol. 1. Containing descriptions and figures of new or little known species of organic remains from the Silurian rocks. 1860–1865. Montreal, 1865, pp. 1, 2.

[4] Billings, E.: On the age of the Red sandstone formation of Vermont. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 32, 1861, p. 232.

[5] Billings, E.: Paleozoic Fossils, vol. 1, 1865, p. 371.

[6] On some new species of fossils from the limestone near Point Levi, opposite Quebec. Canadian Nat., vol. 5, 1860, pp. 301–324.

ders were of Upper Cambrian age while those of the limestone matrix, which resembled in character the limestone of the bowlders, was deposited in situ, and carried the Calciferous fauna. As far as I have been able to separate the species by a study of the material from the bowlders and the limestone matrix the following may be referred to the Upper Cambrian or Potsdam fauna: *Camerella calcifera* ?, *Agnostus americanus*, *A. orion*, *A. canadensis*, *Dikelocephalus magnificus*, *D. planifrons*, *D. belli*, *D. oweni*, *D. megalops*, *D. cristatus*, *Arionellus cylindricus*, *A. subclavatus*, *Menocephalus sedgwicki*, *M. globosus*, *Conocephalites zenkeri*, *Asaphus illænoides*.

Mr. T. Devine, of Quebec, having discovered several nearly perfect trilobites in the conglomerate limestone at Point Levi, described two species of them. One as *Olenus ? logani*,[1] the other as *Menocephalus salteri*.[2] In a foot-note accompanying the description of *Olenus ? logani* Mr. Billings states that the species is unquestionably congeneric with those which he had described as *Dikelocephalus belli* and *D. oweni* from the same locality.

To the species described from Point Levi in 1860 Mr. E. Billings added in 1865[3] *Dikelocephalus devinei*, *D. hisingeri*, *D. affinis*, *D. sexostris*, *D. selectus*, and *D. pauper*. He also figured in this connection *Olenus ? logani*, Devine and *Menocephalus salteri*, Devine.

In 1872 Mr. Billings returned to the study of the fossils of the older Paleozoic rocks and described one new genus and several species found in bowlders, of several beds of conglomerate at St. Simon, below Quebec, as follows: The genus Obolella and the species *Obolella gemma* and *O. circe*, *Platyceras primævum*, *Hyolithes americanus*, *H. communis*, *H. princeps*, *H. micans*. On page 240 of the same volume the genus Hyolithellus is proposed for the species *Hyolithes micans*; and on page 351 he notes the discovery of *Salterella pulchella* in the Winooski marble of Vermont.[4]

The Cambrian fauna of northern Vermont was further enlarged in 1884 by Prof. R. P. Whitfield[5] describing *Orthisina orientalis* (p. 144), *Nothozoa vermontana* (p. 144), *Dikelocephalus, marcoui* (p. 150), and *Angelina hitchcocki* (p. 148); all of which were referred by him to the horizon of the Potsdam sandstone.

The oldest Phyllopod crustacean, *Protocaris marshi*, was described by Mr. C. D. Walcott[6] in 1884 from the Georgia slates of Vermont,

[1] Description of a new trilobite from the Quebec group. Canadian Nat., vol. 8, 1863, p. 95.
[2] Op. cit., p. 210.
[3] Paleozoic Fossils, vol. 1, 1865, pp. 195–200.
[4] On some new species of Potsdam fossils. Canadian Nat., vol. 6, new ser., 1872, pp. 213–226, 240.
Note on the discovery of fossils in the "Winooski Marble" at Swanton, Vermont. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 3, 1872, p. 145. Canadian Nat., new ser., vol. 6, 1872, p. 351.
[5] Notice of some new species of Primordial fossils in the collections of the Museum, and correction of previously described species. Am. Mus. Nat. Hist. Bull., vol. 1, 1884, pp. 139–154.
[6] On the Cambrian faunas of North America; preliminary studies. U. S. Geol. Survey, Bull. No. 10, 1884, p. 59.

where it is found in association with *Olenellus thompsoni* and *O. vermontana*. The latter was referred to the new genus Mesonacis in 1885.[1]

Mr. S. W. Ford began, about 1868, a study of the rocks and fossils of the hills east of Troy, New York, from which vicinity the first fossils of the Olenellus fauna, found in New York, were obtained. These were described by Prof. Hall, in 1847, and referred by him to the Hudson River group. Entering into correspondence with Mr. E. Billings, and comparing the fauna he found at Troy with that from below Quebec, referred by Mr. Billings to the Lower Potsdam, he concluded that the strata containing the fauna at Troy should be referred to an equivalent horizon. In his first paper[2] he mentions finding eighteen species, eight of which are referred to described species and ten remained to be described. Mr. Ford published a number of papers from 1871 to 1885,[3] in which he described the rocks, and fossils found in them, that occur near Troy, and also a little south of Schodack landing, in Columbia County, N. Y. The fossils described by him are: *Protocyathus rarum*, *Archæocyathus rensselæricum*, *Obolella nitida*, *Scenella retusa*, *Hyolithes emmonsi*, *H. impar*, *Agnostus nobilis*, *Leperditia troyensis*, *Microdiscus meeki*, *M. speciosus*, and *Solenopleura nana*. One of the most interesting of Mr. Ford's studies is that on the embryonic development of *Olenellus asaphoides*. From the data thus obtained he decided that the Olenellus fauna followed the Paradoxides fauna in time.[4]

---

[1] Paleozoic notes; new genus of Cambrian trilobites Mesonacis. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 29, 1885, pp. 328–330.

[2] Ford, S. W.: Notes on the primordial rocks in the vicinity of Troy, New York. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 2, 1871, pp. 32–34. Canadadian Nat., new ser., vol. 6, 1872, pp. 209–212.

[3] Descriptions of some new species of primordial fossils. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 3, 1872, pp. 419–422.

On some new species of fossils from the Primordial or Potsdam group of Rensselaer County, New York. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 5, 1873, pp. 211–215.

Remarks on the distribution of the fossils in the Lower Potsdam rocks at Troy, New York, with descriptions of a few new species. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 6, 1873, pp. 134–140.

Note on the discovery of a new locality of primordial fossils in Rensselaer County, New York. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 9, 1875, pp. 204–206.

On additional species of fossils from the primordial of Troy and Lansingburg, Rensselaer County, New York. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 11, 1876, pp. 369–371.

Note on Microdiscus speciosus. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 13, 1877, pp. 141, 142.

On some embryonic forms of trilobites from the primordial rocks at Troy, New York. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 13, 1877, pp. 265–273.

Two new species of primordial fossils. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 15, 1878, pp. 124–127.

Note on *Lingulella cælata*. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 15, 1878, pp. 127–129.

Note on the development of *Olenellus asaphoides*. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 15, 1878, pp. 129, 130.

On certain forms of Brachiopoda occurring in the Swedish primordial. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 15, 1878, pp. 364–366.

Note on the trilobite *Atops trilineatus* of Emmons. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 19, 1880, pp. 152, 153.

Remarks on the genus Obolella. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 21, 1881, pp. 131–134.

On additional embryonic forms of trilobites from the primordial rocks of Troy, New York. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 22, 1881, pp. 250–259.

Note on the discovery of primordial fossils in the town of Stuyvesant, Columbia County, New York. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 28, 1884, pp. 35–37.

[4] Embryonic forms of trilobites from the primordial rocks of Troy, New York. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 22, 1881, pp. 250–259.

In 1836 Prof. William B. Dwight announced the discovery of the fauna of the Potsdam zone in limestone near Poughkeepsie, New York. He gives a list of eleven species as follows:[1]

Lingulepis pinnaformis.
Lingulepis minima.
Lingulepis acuminata (probably).
Obolella (Lingulella) prima.
Obolella sp.
Platyceras sp.
Ptychoparia (Conocephalites) n. sp.
Dikelocephalus sp.
Ptychaspis sp.
Stromatocerium ?
Remains of crinoid columns.

The review of the Olenellus or Lower Cambrian fauna by Mr. C. D. Walcott in 1886[2] resulted in the description of the following species from Vermont: *Climacograptus? emmonsi* (p. 93), *Orthisina transversa* (p. 121), *Scenella? varians* (p. 127) and *Microdiscus parkeri* (p. 157). This was followed in 1887[3] by an account of the discovery of a number of new species of fossils from the Upper Taconic slate of Emmons in Washington County, New York. The new species described are as follows:

Lingulella granvillensis.
Linnarssonia taconica.
Orthis salemensis.
Modiolopsis (?) prisca.
Hyolithellus micans, var. rugosa.
Aristozoa rotundata.
Leperditia (I) dermatoides.
Microdiscus connexus.
Olenoides fordi
Solenopleura (?) tumida.
Ptychoparia (?) fitchi.
P. (?) clavata.

In describing a section of the Cambrian rocks in northern Vermont notice is taken by Mr. Walcott of the occurence in the upper beds of a fauna resembling that of the Upper Cambrian or Potsdam zone.[4]

In a paper announcing the discovery of the fossiliferous strata of the Paradoxides zone at Stissing Mountain, Dutchess County, New York, Prof. W. B. Dwight[5] identified *Hyolithes billingsi?* (p. 143) and described as new *Leperditia ebenina* (p. 144), *Kutorgina stissingensis* (p. 145), and *Olenoides stissingensis* (p. 147), correlating the fauna with that of the Middle Cambrian of the Rocky Mountain province.

In a review of the Lower Cambrian fauna by Mr. C. D. Walcott, prepared for the Tenth Annual Report of the U. S. Geological Survey, a number of new species and genera are proposed, most of which are described in a preliminary paper published in the Proceedings of the U. S. National Museum.[6] These are *Archæocyathus dwighti* (p. 34), *Plan-*

[1] Recent explorations in the Wappinger Valley limestone of Dutchess County, New York. No. 5; Discovery of fossiliferous Potsdam strata at Poughkeepsie, New York. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 31, 1886, p. 131.

[2] Second contribution to the studies of the Cambrian faunas of North America. U. S. Geol. Survey, Bull. No. 30, 1886.

[3] Fauna of the "Upper Taconic" of Emmons, in Washington County, New York. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 34, 1887, pp. 187–199.

[4] Second contribution to the studies of the Cambrian faunas of North America. U. S. Geol. Survey, Bull. No. 30, 1886, pp. 17, 19.

[5] Recent explorations in the Wappinger limestones and other formations of Dutchess County, New York. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 38, 1889, pp. 139–153.

[6] Descriptive notes of new genera and species of the Lower Cambrian or Olenellus zone of North America. U. S. Nat. Mus. Proc., vol. 12, 1889, pp. 33–46.

olites annularius (p. 34), *Agnostus desideratus* (p. 39), and *Zacanthoides eatoni* (p. 45), from Washington County, and *Camerella minor* (p. 36), from Dutchess County, New York; *Kutorgina cingulata*, var. *swantonensis* (p. 36) from northern Vermont.

In 1890 the following new species were described:[1] *Trachyum vetustum*, Dawson, from Metis, Canada; *Phyllograptus cambrensis*, from Georgia, Vermont; *Stenotheca* (?) *rugosa* var. *acuta costa*, *erecta*, and *levis*, *Platyceras dawsoni*, from St. Simon, Quebec; *Olenoides ellsi*, from below Quebec, Canada; *O. desiderata*, from Highgate Springs, Vermont; *Conocoryphe reticulata*, from Washington County, New York; *Ptychoparia metisensis* and *Agraulos redpathi*, from below Quebec.

SOUTHERN APPALACHIAN DISTRICT.

NEW JERSEY, ETC.

The Cambrian fauna of New Jersey, Delaware, Pennsylvania, Maryland, and Virginia is thus far restricted to the presence of the Annelid boring *Scolithus linearis*. It is extremely probable that trilobites and other fossils will be found in the Granular Quartzite series, or the basal quartzite and the immediately superjacent shales and limestones.

TENNESSEE.

The Cambrian fauna of Tennessee consists of *Scolithus linearis* tubes found in the Chilhowee sandstone; while in the shales just above the sandstone occur numerous Annelid trails, a species of Hyolithes like *H. americanus*, an Ostracod crustacean, *Isoxys chilhoweana*, and a species of Olenellus closely allied to *Olenellus thompsoni* and *O. asaphoides* in that portion of the head preserved.[2]

From the upper part of the Knox shale Prof. J. M. Safford[3] has named, without description or illustration, several species, as follows:

Crepicephalus similis, Safford.
roanensis, Safford.
tennesseensis, Safford.
Lonchocephalus fecundus, Safford.
Agnostus arcanus, Safford.
Lingula prima? Conrad.

Quite a large fauna occurs at this horizon in the collections of the Geological Survey which has not yet been studied with care. As far as examined it appears to be of the type of the Upper Cambrian of the Mississippi Valley.

[1] Walcott, C. D.: The fauna of the Lower Cambrian or Olenellus zone. 10th Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Surv., 1890, pp. 598–655.
[2] Ibid., p. 626.
[3] Geology of Tennessee. Nashville, 1869, p. 212.

GEORGIA.

A trilobite was sent to the great exhibition in London in 1851 said to be found somewhere in Georgia. Mr. J. W. Salter[1] describes the species as *Conocephalus antiquatus*, comparing it with *C. striatus* of the Primordial rocks of Bohemia. The exact locality from which this species came was not known until collections were made in northwestern Georgia by the U. S. Geological Survey in 1885. It was then found to be associated with a fauna much like that of the Middle Cambrian fauna of the Rocky Mountains. The specimens occur in and upon siliceous concretions imbedded in the Coosa Valley shales of Floyd County and to the southwest in Alabama.

A second species was described by Mr. C. D. Walcott in 1889 as *Olenoides curticei*. It occurs on and in siliceous concretions found in the shales of the Coosa Valley.[2]

ROCKY MOUNTAIN PROVINCE.

The area of Cambrian rocks in this province includes the Cambrian outcrops of northern and western Utah, Nevada, eastern Idaho, and the Gallatin River district of Montana. The Canadian extension is considered separately.

UTAH AND NEVADA.

During the progress of the geological survey of the fortieth parallel, under the charge of Mr. Clarence King, Prof. F. B. Meek described two species of trilobites from Antelope Spring, Nevada, *Pardoxides (?) nevadensis* and *Conocoryphe (Conocephalites) kingi*, referring them to the Primordial zone.[3]

In the following year Prof. J. D. Whitney exhibited before the California Academy of Sciences some fossils that had been collected by Mr. J. E. Clayton near Eureka, Nevada. He referred them to the age of the Potsdam sandstone, identifying *Agraulos oweni*, M. and H., or a species closely resembling it; *Lingulepis prima*, *Obolella*, *Conocoryphe*, *Paradoxides*, etc.[4] A note on the occurrence of the Primordial fauna in Nevada was also sent to the American Journal of Science by Prof. Whitney. In this he mentions the occurrence of certain Primordial species, and the persistence with which these constantly recurring trilobites and brachiopods are found at various localities. In Bohemia they occur in argillaceous shales; throughout the United States, from New York to the Rocky Mountains, in the Potsdam sandstone, or in shales or slates; in Texas, and now in Nevada, in limestones.[5]

---

[1] On the fossils of the Lingula-flags or "Zone Primordiale." Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 15, 1859, p. 564.

[2] Descriptions of new genera and species of fossils from the Middle Cambrian. U. S. National Museum Proc., vol. 11, 1889, p. 443.

[3] Descriptions of fossils collected by the United States Geological Survey, under the charge of Clarence King, esq. Phila. Acad. Sci., Proc., vol. 22, 1870, pp. 62–64.

[4] [On some fossils from Eureka, Nevada.] California Acad. Sci., Proc., vol. 4, 1871, p. 200.

[5] Note on the occurrence of the "Primordial Fauna" in Nevada. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 3, 1872, p. 35.

In the Sixth Annual Report of the U. S. Geological Survey of the Territories, Prof. F. H. Bradley states that his section along the Wasatch range of Utah is not complete. The bedded quartzites, referred to the Potsdam from the character of the overlying strata, rest unconformably upon the "Metamorphic." No fossils were found in the quartzite or in the superjacent gray and calcareous shales. The limestone above the shales is referred to the Niagara.[1]

During the progress of the survey west of the one hundredth meridian Mr. G. K. Gilbert visited the Antelope Spring locality, discovered by Mr. J. E. Clayton, and mentioned by Prof. Whitney when calling attention to the Primordial fossils found there. The fauna occurs in a blue gray, calcareous shale, some 200 feet in thickness. In addition to the species described by Mr. Meek, he collected *Bathyurellus* (*Asaphiscus*) *wheeleri*, Agnostus, and Discina. Beneath the blue gray shales is a massive gray limestone, 900 feet in thickness, superjacent to a vitreous sandstone.[2] From our present knowledge of the Cambrian rocks in Nevada, the gray limestone, blue gray shales, and an upper gray limestone some 200 feet in thickness all belong to the Cambrian.

The section of the Oquirrh range at Ophir City, Utah, was found by Mr. Gilbert to have, near its base, 100 feet of light gray limestone containing Conocoryphe and Dikelocephalus. Subjacent to this a massive limestone with coralline mottling extends downward some 300 feet to an argillaceous shale, in which Mr. J. E. Clayton found *Olenus gilberti*.[3] At the south end of the Timpahute range of eastern Nevada Mr. Gilbert also discovered a succession of shales and sandstones, in which he found Conocoryphe in the lower portion, and above, a band of purple ripple-marked vitreous sandstone, with bands of siliceous shale.[4] The descriptions of *Olenus* (*Olenellus*) *gilberti* and *O.* (*O.*) *howelli* of Meek are printed on pages 182 and 183 of Mr. Gilbert's report.

In the same volume Mr. E. E. Howell states that at Pioche, Nevada, the massive quartzite forming the base of the section is subjacent to about 400 feet of arenaceous and calcareous shales of a reddish yellow color, containing in the more calcareous portions several types of Primordial fossils in great abundance.[5] From the material found by Mr. Howell, Mr. Meek described two species of trilobites, *Olenellus howelli* and *O. gilberti*.

On the map accompanying the Wheeler survey reports, published in 1874, the Cambrian rocks are included under the same color with those of the Silurian.

---

[1] Report of Frank H. Bradley, geologist of the Snake River division. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., 6th Ann. Rep., 1873, p. 194.

[2] Report on the geology of portions of Nevada, Utah, California, and Arizona, examined in the years 1871 and 1872. Report on Geog. and Geol. Expl. and Survey west of the 100th meridian, in charge of Lieut. Geo. M. Wheeler, vol. 3, Geology, 1875, p. 167.

[3] Op. cit., pp. 166, 167.

[4] Op. cit., p. 169.

[5] Report on the geology of portions of Utah, Nevada, Arizona, and New Mexico examined in the years of 1872 and 1873. Rept. Geog. and Geol. Expl. Sur. west of the 100th mer., in charge of Lieut. Geo. M. Wheeler, vol. 3, Geology, 1875, p. 258.

A reconnaissance of the northwestern portion of the Wasatch Mountains in Utah was made by Prof. F. H. Bradley in 1872. He found that the crest and eastern slopes are composed of quartzite and limestone. The former, a white and ferruginous quartzite, 1,500 feet in thickness, was referred to the Potsdam, and a band of superjacent gray calcareous shale, 1,000 to 1,200 feet thick, to the Lower Silurian. The section as arranged by Prof. Bradley is as follows:[1]

3. Blue and gray magnesian limestones, partly pebbly, 1,900 to 2,000 feet	Upper ? and Lower Silurian.
4. Gray calcareous shales, 1,000 to 1,200 feet	
5. White and ferruginous quartzite, base pebbly, 1,500 feet	Potsdam.

Under the title of "Paleozoic subdivisions of the fortieth parallel" Mr. Clarence King describes the strata referred to the Cambrian system. This includes 12,000 feet of quartzites and argillites in the Big Cottonwood Cañon section of Utah, superjacent to which is a shaly zone some 75 feet in thickness, carrying well defined Primordial fossils. He says:

> Comparing the quartzites and argillites with those of the Cambrian section in Wales, the likeness is too great to pass unnoticed, and in view of the enormous developments of these low-lying rocks, as compared with the Silurian lying above the Primordial horizon, I have determined to draw a line at the upper limit of the Primordial period to include the uppermost members of the Potsdam epoch and to consider the whole underlying conformable series as Cambrian down to the point of their nonconformity with the Archean. In the extreme east of our work, in the region of the Rocky Mountains, the Cambrian formation is of variable thickness and nowhere reaches an exposure of over 100 feet. In middle Nevada the uppermost zone of the Cambrian, equivalent to the calcareous and argillaceous shales of the Wahsatch, is an immense body of dark limestones at least 3,000 feet in thickness carrying Primordial fossils throughout; the downward continuation of the series being there entirely hidden by the overlying Quaternary desert.[2]

This general definition of the Cambrian is accompanied by a list of the fossils described by Messrs. Hall and Whitfield.

The Cambrian section of Big Cottonwood Cañon referred to by Mr. King is described by Mr. S. F. Emmons with more detail.[3] On the west side of Box Elder Peak, near the little village of Call's Fort, in a body of dark blue argillaceous slates in the lower portion of the Ute limestone body, Mr. Emmons states that the following fossils of the Quebec group were found: *Dikelocephalus wasatchensis*, *D. gothicus*, *Crepicephalus* (*Loganellus*) *quadrans*, and *Lingulepis ella*.[4] In the section on Muddy Cañon, within 25 feet of the base of the series, occurs a body of calcareous shales, interstratified with narrow beds of a dark,

[1] Explorations of 1872; United States Geological Survey of the Territories, under Dr. F. V. Hayden; Snake River division. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 6, 1873, p. 194.

[2] King, Clarence: Paleozoic subdivisions on the 40th parallel. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 11, 1876, p. 476.

[3] Hague, Arnold, and S. F. Emmons: Descriptive Geology. U. S. Geol. Expl. of the Fortieth Par.; vol. 2, 1877, pp. 366, 367.

[4] Op. cit., p. 405.

fine-grained limestone, which contains abundant organic remains. Two species were recognized, *Dikelocephalus quadriceps* and *Conocephalites subcoronatus*.[1] The reference of the fossils at Call's Fort and Muddy Cañon to the Quebec group was on the authority of the paleontologists. More recent studies of this fauna, by Mr. Walcott, in connection with the section at Big Cottonwood Cañon prove that the fauna mentioned at these localities is a portion of the Middle Cambrian fauna, and that the Upper Cambrian strata are absent in the section by nondeposition.

In the Weber Cañon region of the Wasatch Mountains, 800 to 1,000 feet beneath limestones referred to the Devonian, there were obtained from a shaly limestone three forms of trilobites, which Mr. Emmons thought probably indicated the horizon of the Potsdam group. One was identified as *Ogygia parabola* and another as Crepicephalus allied to *C. diadematus*.[2]

In the Oquirrh Mountains, at Ophir City, Utah, the section discloses a thickness of about 400 feet of compact reddish white Cambrian quartzite, above which are about 100 feet of greenish yellow clay slate, in which numerous trilobites and primordial fossils occur.[3]

In the Schell Creek Mountains of Nevada there are limestones in which primordial fossils have been found overlying heavy bodies of quartzite. Among the organic remains of this range two species have been identified: *Crepicephalus* (*Loganellus*) *anytus* and *Lingulepis mœra*.[4]

At the northern end of Pogonip Ridge, of the White Pine Mountains of central Nevada, Mr. Arnold Hague mentions the presence of obscure outcrops of mica slates and black arenaceous and argillaceous slates and shales, in turn overlaid by an undetermined thickness of a compact, vitreous, steel-gray quartzite, closely resembling the Cambrian quartzites of other Nevada localities. Above this quartzite, and forming the lower beds along the greater part of the ridge, occurs the Pogonip limestone, which extends to the top of Pogonip Mountain, with a thickness of from 3,000 to 4,000 feet of strata. They dip with an angle of 24° to 30° eastward. The lower beds are a fine-grained, somewhat siliceous, black limestone, varying considerably in compactness and bedding, and frequently passing into calcareous shales. Higher up in the series, they develop more of a dark blue color, banded with layers of fine arenaceous limestones and occasional cherty bands a few inches in thickness.[5] From the lower beds of the limestone series he collected thirteen species of Upper Cambrian fossils.

Mr. Hague states that in Eureka mining district, northwest of White Pine, the section of Prospect Mountain has the same lithologic habit as that at White Pine, and carries throughout the greater part of the forma-

---

[1] Op. cit., p. 410.
[2] Op. cit., p. 377.
[3] Op. cit., p. 444.
[4] Op. cit., p. 486.
[5] Hague, Arnold, and S. F. Emmons: Descriptive Geology. U. S. Geol. Expl. of the 40th Par.; Clarence King, vol. 2, 1877, pp. 542, 543.

tion Primordial fossils, showing beyond doubt that the two series of beds are the same and equivalent to the Potsdam sandstone of Wisconsin. This statement is followed by a list of fifteen species, all of which belong to the Upper Cambrian fauna.[1]

The collections made by the officers of the Fortieth Parallel Survey were studied and reported upon by Messrs. Hall and Whitfield. Of the fauna referred to the Potsdam period they say: "Although there is not a single species common to the two regions, yet there is such a close generic resemblance as to leave no doubt whatever of the positive identity of the formations." They mention the resemblance between the fauna referred to the Potsdam zone in Texas and the Upper Mississippi Valley, Wisconsin, Minnesota, etc.[2] In speaking of the trilobites from the base of Ute Peak, Wasatch range, Utah, they state that the fauna is referred to the Quebec group on the evidence of the Brachiopodus and Molluscan fauna.[3] There must have been some confusion in relation to the occurrence of trilobites and the Molluscan fauna, as the trilobites belong to the Lower Cambrian zone, and have nothing in common with the fauna which they refer to the Quebec group.

In the comprehensive review of the geology of the fortieth parallel, Mr. Clarence King describes the Cambrian and Silurian rocks largely from the data published in the volume of Messrs. Hague and Emmons[4] and in the recapitulation of the Paleozoic he gives a condensed description of the Cambrian as known to him in Utah and Nevada. The base of the Cambrian is never seen. This is explained by the fact that the Cambrian sediments accumulated in the deep valleys between the Archean ridges, and that the lower beds have not subsequently been brought up to the surface. Under the term Cambrian he includes all of the rocks of the lowermost Paleozoic exposures up to and including the whole of the Primordial, thus following approximately the eastern nomenclature. In describing the rocks referred to the Cambrian he says:

> Thus far, among the reported occurrences of the rocks of this horizon in the Cordilleras, the locality at the mouth of Big Cottonwood Cañon must remain as the finest example and the stratigraphical type. The lowest member—the Cottonwood slates, a group about 800 feet thick, which here rest upon highly metamorphic Archean schists—has thus far yielded no organic forms. Though searched by us with considerable care, it presented no indications of life. The rocks are dark blue, dark purple, dark olive-green, and blackish argillites, all highly siliceous, and as a group sharply defined from the light-colored quartzitic schists which conformably overlie them. This second group, by far the greatest of the whole Cambrian series, is a continuous zone of schists which have a prevailing quartzitic character, though varied with considerable amount of argillaceous matter. It would seem to be the product of a fine-grained arkose formation, simply compressed into dense schists. From 8,000 to 9,000 feet thick, it has a general uniformity of lithological condition from bottom to top,

[1] Op. cit., pp. 547, 548.

[2] Hall, James, and R. P. Whitfield: Paleontology (of the 40th Parallel). General remarks. U. S. Geol. Survey of the 40th Parallel, vol. 4, 1877, pp. 199, 200.

[3] Op. cit., p. 200.

[4] Systematic Geology: U. S. Geol. Exploration of the 40th Parallel, Clarence King, geologist in charge, vol. 1, 1878, pp. 154–189.

except that in the region of Twin Peaks are some phlogopite schists and siliceous zones carrying considerable muscovite. The phlogopite members recur in the Egan Cañon region. The prevailing colors of this member are gray, greenish gray, drab, and pale brown; never dark colors. Conformably overlying it are 2,500 to 3,000 feet of cream-color and salmon- color and white quartzites and quartzo-feldsites. Occasional sheets of conglomerate are seen in the quartzites not far below the summit of the Cambrian.[1]

The details of the Cottonwood Cañon section to this point have not been quoted, as these rocks are beneath the line provisionally drawn between the Cambrian and pre-Cambrian rocks. This will be noticed under the description of the Cambrian rocks of the Rocky Mountain province. Above the quartzite series there is a thin series of green siliceous argillites which are usually not more than 75 or 80 feet thick, in which fossils of a Primordial type have been found. A description is given of the Cambrian as recognized in central Nevada, and a comparison made between it and the Cambrian of the Mississippi Valley and the Wasatch section. A complete list of the fossils of the Utah and Nevada Cambrian is given on page 231, and on page 233 a list of those from the Quebec group, eight of which are from the Middle Cambrian zone, and will be mentioned under the description of the Cambrian fauna of the Rocky Mountain province. The geographic distribution of the Cambrian rocks and their mode of occurrence, as shown in cross-section, is represented on the sheets of the atlas accompanying the report.

In 1882 Mr. Arnold Hague published a preliminary report on the geology of the Eureka district,[2] which was followed in 1883 by the abstract of a report on the geology of the district.[3] In this latter report a detailed description is given of the Cambrian rocks of the Prospect Mountain section. It is accompanied by a map of the district and a plate of sections showing the relation of the Cambrian rocks to the superjacent formations.

The fauna of the Cambrian rocks of the Eureka district was described and illustrated by Mr. C. D. Walcott in 1884. A short description of the range of the species is given, also a tabulation of the Paleozoic section of Central Nevada, showing the vertical range of genera.[4] This was republished in 1886 with greater detail,[5] accompanied by an original description of the Big Cottonwood Cañon section (pp. 38, 39), and a section in the Highland range, 125 miles south of the Eureka section (pp. 33–35), with notes upon the section at Pioche and Ophir City.

---

[1] Op. cit., pp. 229, 230.

[2] Report [on work in Eureka district]. 2d annual report U. S. Geol. Survey, 1880–'81. pp. 21–35, 1882.

[3] Hague, Arnold: Abstract of report on geology of the Eureka district, Nevada. U. S. Geol. Surv., 3d annual report, 1881, 1882, pp. 237–290, 1883.

[4] Paleontology of the Eureka district. U. S. Geol. Survey, Monograph vol. 8, 1884.

[5] Second contribution to the studies of the Cambrian faunas of North America. U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. No. 30, 1886, pp. 30–33.

IDAHO.

In a letter to Prof J. D. Dana, dated Fort Hall, Idaho, July 7, 1872, Prof. F. H. Bradley wrote to announce the discovery of the Quebec group. In a limestone he found many trilobites, some gasteropods and brachiopods, and beneath the limestone a compact ferruginous quartzite, which from its position he considered as representing the Potsdam sandstone.[1] Near Malade City he discovered a series of limestones containing Conocoryphe, Bathyurus, Dikelocephalus, Agnostus, etc. He states in a later report that—

> The first examination of these Malade rocks was made at a point where the section terminated below in a very quartzitic sandstone, which occupied the relative position of the Potsdam, and was accordingly referred with doubt to that group in a letter extract which was published in the August number of the American Journal of Science. Later examinations have shown that this was really a part of the true Quebec, whose base is not here exposed.[2]

The fossils collected by Prof. Bradley were studied by Mr. F. B. Meek, who identified the genera Agnostus, Conocoryphe, etc., along with several genera of the Lower Silurian fauna, and gave Prof. Bradley the paleontologic data for his correlation.[3]

It is to be borne in mind that at the time of the work referred to, the Quebec group was made to cover the horizons of the Potsdam, Calciferous, and Chazy of the New York section. Again, throughout the writings of Messrs. Hayden, Bradley, and Meek there are found many references to the Quebec group, of strata that belong to different formations. This confusion arose primarily from the misinterpretation of the mode of occurrence of the Upper Cambrian and Lower Silurian faunas at Point Levis, Canada, the typical locality of the Quebec group.

The Cambrian rocks north of Malade City were studied by Dr. A. C. Peale in 1877, in the Portneuf and Bannock ranges. He also visited the Bear River range. Several carefully measured sections are published with a summary of the rocks referred to the Silurian that will be referred to in the description of the rocks of Idaho.[4]

The northern end of the Portneuf range, in the vicinity of Mount Putnam, came within the Teton district of Prof. Orestes St. John. The central portion of the mountain is formed of ancient quartzite, alternating with slaty micaceous shale, which alternates with limestones above; and on the northern terminus of Mount Putnam there is an exhibition of the full series of the Paleozoic formations as developed in this region.[5]

---

[1] On the discovery of the Quebec formation in Idaho. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 4, 1872, p. 133.

[2] Bradley, Frank H.: Report of Frank H. Bradley, geologist of the Snake River division. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., 6th Ann. Rep., 1873, p. 201.

[3] Preliminary paleontological report, * * * with remarks on the ages of the rocks, etc. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Territories, embracing portions of Montana, Idaho, Wyoming, and Utah. 6th Ann. Rep., 1873, pp. 431, 432.

[4] Report on the geology of the Green River district. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., 11th Ann. Rep., 1879, pp. 567–572, 599, 613–616.

[5] Report of the geological field work of the Teton division. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., 11th Ann. Rep., 1879, pp. 477–484.

On the map accompanying the twelfth annual report of the Hayden survey, issued in 1883, the geographic distribu tion of the strata referred to the Silurian (which includes the Cambrian and the quartzite referred to the Potsdam and a portion of the limestones referred to the Quebec) is delineated as it occurs in southeastern Idaho. This is based on the work of Messrs. Bradley, Endlich, St. John, and Peale, of the Hayden survey.

MONTANA.

During the field season of 1872 Dr. F. V. Hayden made a geologic reconnaissance of certain portions of Montana and noted the presence of limestone on the Gallatin River, above Gallatin City, that contained numerous fossils. The thickness of the entire series of strata referred to the Lower Silurian is estimated at 1,600 feet. The massive limestones referred to the Potsdam group are about 400 feet thick and pass gradually down into 50 feet of thinly laminated, cherty limestones or calcareous mud layers, with abundant organic remains. These are separated by a purplish sandstone that rests upon variegated shaly clays, yellow, green, etc., then hard, dull purplish brown quartzose sandstones, which in turn are underlaid by alternating sandstones and clays, the whole having a thickness of over 1,000 feet.[1]

The fossils collected were studied by Mr. F. B. Meek, who identified the genera Lingulepis, Conocoryphe, Bathyurus, Acrotreta, Hyolithes, and Agnostus from the beds of the east side of the Gallatin River.[2]

Strata of "Primordial age" were discovered by Messrs. Dana and Grinnell upon the southwestern slope of Little Belt Mountains and the south extremity of the Belt range of mountains; these are referred to with certainty, owing to the finding of Primordial fossils.[3]

In 1884 Dr. F. V. Hayden revisited the Gallatin River locality, in company with Dr. A. C. Peale.[4] The section near the mouth of the East Gallatin River was studied in detail by Dr. Peale and two lithologically well defined groups determined.

In the report of the following year the East Gallatin group is spoken of as probably Middle Cambrian.[5]

In his administrative report to the Director of the U. S. Geological Survey for the field season of 1889, Dr. A. C. Peale tabulates the Gallatin River Paleozoic section, and includes under the Cambrian the Gallatin limestone, 835 feet in thickness, and the Gallatin sandstone, 415 feet. Beneath the Gallatin limestones are 5,000 feet of conglomer-

[1] Report of F. V. Hayden, U. S. Geol. Sur. of the Terr., 6th Ann. Rep., 1873. p. 72.

[2] Preliminary paleontological report, . . . with remarks on the ages of the rocks, etc. U. S. Geol. Sur. of the Territories, embracing portions of Montana, Idaho, Wyoming, and Utah; 6th Ann. Rep., 1873, pp., 431, 432.

[3] Geological report. Report of a geological reconnoissance from Carroll, Montana Terrritory, on the Upper Missouri, to the Yellowstone Park and return, made in the summer of 1875, by Wm. Ludlow; 1876, p. 22.

[4] Administrative Report Montana Division. U. S. Geol. Survey, 6th Ann. Rep., 1884-'85, 1885, pp. 49-51.

[5] Ibid., U. S. Geol. Survey, 7th Ann. Rep. for 1885-'86, 1888, p. 86.

itic micaceous sandstones, with bands of siliceous limestones and indurated clay shales, which he refers to the Algonkian.[1]

CANADIAN EXTENSION.

The discovery of rocks of Cambrian age in the western portion of British Columbia is of recent date. During the summer of 1883 Dr. G. M. Dawson and Mr. R. G. McConnell investigated the Paleozoic rocks on the line of the Canadian Pacific Railroad and discovered at the Crow Nest Pass a great thickness of limestone of Devonian age, beneath which is a great series of slaty and quartzite rocks. No fossils were found in the beds, but some were found in detached fragments, which are referred to the Cambrian.[2] In the report published in 1886 Dr. G. M. Dawson says that of the rocks referred to throughout his report as Cambrian no complete general section can be offered. Along the line of the Columbia Valley the basal beds were not observed. The component beds of the great Cambrian series are, in the main, quartzites and quartzitic shales, passing into argillites, occasionally including limestones or more or less calcareous or dolomitic materials and conglomerates.[3]

Near Waterton Lake a section was measured 3,000 feet in thickness; another at South Kootanie Pass had a minimum (estimated) thickness of the outcropping Cambrian beds of 11,000 feet, and it included neither the summit nor the base of the series. Other sections were measured, but none were found in which the whole volume of the formation could be ascertained.[4]

Dr. Dawson compares these sections with that of the Wasatch Mountains of Utah; and more recent discoveries have shown that they are quite similar in character. If the view of separating the pre-Olenellus beds from the Cambrian is accepted, most of the South Kootanie Pass rocks will be referred to the Algonkian, corresponding in this respect to the Algonkian (?) of the Big Cottonwood section of the Wasatch Mountains, Utah.

Dr. Dawson further states that Mr. H. H. Winwood announced the discovery of Cambrian fossils in the Kicking Horse Pass in a letter to the Geological Magazine in 1885.[5] From among the specimens obtained at that time Mr. C. D. Walcott recognized *Olenellus howelli* and *Olenoides levis*, trilobites characteristic of the Prospect Mountain group of Nevada.[6] Numerous other references occur in Dr. Dawson's report in connection with the description of the local details of the

[1] Administrative Report, Montana Division. U. S. Geol. Surv., 10th Ann. Rep., 1890, p. 131.

[2] Dawson, Geo. M.: Recent geological observations on the Canadian Northwest Territory. Science, vol. 3, 1884 p. 648.

[3] Preliminary report on the physical and geological feature of that portion of the Rocky Mountains between lat. 49° and 51° 30'. Geol. Survey Canada, new ser., vol. 1, 1886, p. 157B.

[4] Op. cit., p. 158B.

[5] Geological age of the Rocky Mountains. Geol. Mag., new ser., dec. 3, vol. 2, 1885, p. 240.

[6] Preliminary report on the physical and geological features of that portion of the Rocky Mountains between latitudes 49° and 51° 30'. Geol. Surv. Canada, new ser., vol. 1, 1886, p. 140B.

geology. One of these refers to the finding of a specimen of *Ptychoparia oweni* M. and H. on the Cascade River in débris brought down from the mountain, indicating the presence of the Cambrian in the Cascade Mountains.[1]

An admirable map accompanies Dr. Dawson's report, and includes the region between latitude 49° and 50° 30′. The geographic distribution of the Cambrian quartzite series and its relations to the superjacent Carboniferous and Devonian rocks is delineated, and their stratigraphic position is shown in an accompanying diagrammatic section.

When exploring the Yukon district in 1887 Dr. Dawson[2] discovered that the country north of Dease Lake had a granitic nucleus with Paleozoic rocks on its flanks, ranging from the Cambrian to the Carboniferous. No details are given.

The detailed exploration of the Paleozoic rocks west of the great Archean area, near the border of British Columbia and Alberta, was undertaken by Mr. R. G. McConnell, and his results are presented in the annual report of the Canadian Survey for 1886. The Castle Mountain group, a great limestone formation, has a known minimum thickness of 7,700 feet. The lower portion is of Cambrian age, and the upper part forms the base of the Lower Silurian (Ordovician). Beneath the Castle Mountain group the Bow River series forms a great thickness of dark colored argillites, associated with some sandstones, quartzites, and conglomerates. The portion exposed has an estimated thickness of 10,000 feet, and in the upper part of it occur the fossils mentioned by Dr. Dawson, *Olenellus gilberti*, etc.[3] The occurrence of fossils of Cambrian age in the lower portion of the Castle Mountain group is noted on page 28D of the report.

The fauna from the slates or shales at the base of the Castle Mountain group, in the Mount Stephen section, was described by Dr. C. Rominger in 1887,[4] and reviewed by Mr. C. D. Walcott in the following year.[5]

In noticing the two papers just mentioned Mr. R. G. McConnell gives a résumé of the section at Mount Stephen. He states that no fossils have been detected in the lower part of the Bow River series, but specimens of *Olenellus gilberti* were found by Dr. Dawson in 1884 about 2,000 feet below the top of the formation. The next fossiliferous zone occurs near the junction of Bow River and Castle Mountain groups, where Paradoxides was found; and a third zone, between 3,000 and 4,000 feet higher up, carries the fauna described by Dr. Rominger.[6]

---

[1] Op. cit., p. 143B.

[2] Notes on exploration in Yukon District. Science, vol. 10, 1887, p. 165.

[3] Report on the Geological Structure of a portion of the Rocky Mountains, with a section. Geol. Surv. Canada, Ann. Report, new ser., vol. 2, 1887, pp. 24–30 D.

[4] Description of Primordial fossils from Mount Stephens, Northwest Territory of Canada. Phila. Acad. Sci. Proc., 1888, pp. 12–19, Pl. I.

[5] Cambrian fossils from Mount Stephens, Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 36, 1888, pp. 161–166.

[6] Notes on the geology of Mount Stephen, British Columbia. American Geologist, vol. 3, 1889, pp. 23–28.

In a "Note on the geology of the Selkirk Range," of British Columbia, Dr. George M. Dawson states that the Olenellus fauna has been found 3,000 feet down in the Bow River series.[1] He refers the Nisconlith, and the lower 15,000 feet of the Selkirk series, of the Selkirk section, to the Cambrian, and correlates them with the Bow River and lower portion of the Castle Mountain series of the western side of the Rocky Mountains. (The details of these series are given in chapter IV, of this paper.)

PALEONTOLOGY.

The first description of Cambrian fossils from the Rocky Mountain province is that by Mr. F. B. Meek, in 1868, who described from the material discovered by Mr. Clayton at Silver Peak, Nevada, *Ethmophyllum whitneyi* and *E. gracile*.[2] Shortly after he changed the reference of these species to Archæocyathus, making *A. whitneyi* and *A. gracile*.[3] In 1870 he added *Paradoxides? nevadensis* and *Conocoryphe* (*Conocephalites*) *kingi*, from Antelope Spring, Nevada. From the known position of the genus Conocephalites the two species were referred by him to the Primordial zone.[4]

In 1872 Prof. J. D. Whitney calls attention to the occurrence of the Primordial fauna near Eureka, Nevada, at a locality discovered by Mr. J. E. Clayton. He identified a species closely related to *Agraulos oweni* of Meek and Hayden, and fragments of the genera Conocoryphe, Paradoxides, Lingulepis, and Obolella.[5] A notice of this discovery was also published in the proceedings of the California Academy of Sciences in the same year. (Vol. 4, p. 200.)

From the Upper Cambrian rocks of southeastern Idaho and southern Montana, Mr. F. B. Meek described in 1873 *Iphidea?? sculptilis* (p. 479), *Agnostus bidens* (p. 463), *Conocoryphe* (*Conocephalites*) *gallatinensis* (p. 485), *Bathyurus? haydeni* (p. 482), *B. serratus* (p. 480), *Bathyurellus* (*Asaphiscus*) *bradleyi* (p. 484), *Bathyuriscus wheeleri* (p. 485, foot-note). It is stated on page 465 that *Bathyuriscus* (*Dikelocephalus?*) *truncatus* is described in the report. It does not, however, appear in the text. He also identified the species *Acrotreta subconica* Kutorga (*A. attenuata* proposed if it proved to be a distinct species, p. 463), *Hyolithes gregaria* M. & H., *Camerella calcifera* Billings, and *Agnostus josepha*, Hall. Numerous generic references are made from the fragments in the collection, and in the lists from various localities species of the Calciferous zone of the Lower Silurian (Ordovician) occur, especially in the list of the collection from Malade City.[6]

[1] Bull. Geol. Soc. America, vol. 2, 1891, p. 171.

[2] Preliminary notice of a remarkable new genus of Corals, probably typical of a new family, * * * from the Silurian rocks of Nevada Territory. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 45, 1868, pp. 62–64.

[3] Note on Ethmophyllum and Archæocyathus Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 46, 1868, p. 144.

[4] Meek, F. B.: Descriptions of fossils collected by the U. S. Geological Survey, under the charge of Clarence King, esq. Phil. Acad. Sci. Proc., vol. 22, 1870, pp. 62–64.

[5] Note on the occurrence of the "Primordial Fauna" in Nevada. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 3, 1872, pp. 84, 85.

[6] Preliminary paleontological report, * * * with remarks on the ages of the rocks, etc. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., embracing portions of Montana, Idaho, Wyoming, and Utah; 6th Annual Report, 1873, pp. 463–487.

From the collections made by the geologists of the Wheeler survey west of the one hundredth meridian, Dr. C. A. White describes, in a preliminary report, *Cruziana linnarssoni*, *C. rustica*, *Acrotreta? subsidua*, *Trematis pannulus*, and *Agnostus interstricta*. He also identified *Hyolithes primordialis* Hall?; and published the manuscript description by Mr. Meek of *Olenellus gilberti* and *O. howelli*.[1] From the strata referred to the age of the Quebec group he describes *Acrotreta pyxidicula* (p. 9) and *Dikelocephalus flagricaudus* (p. 12). The former species was subsequently identified by Mr. C. D. Walcott as *Acrotreta gemma* of the Upper Cambrian, and the latter species is referred to the Middle Cambrian fauna as *Zacanthoides flagricaudus*. The manuscript descriptions of *Olenellus gilberti* and *O. howelli* by Mr. Meek were also printed in 1875 under the names of *Olenus* (*Olenellus*) *gilberti* and *O.* (*O.*) *howelli* in the report of Mr. G. K. Gilbert.[2]

The species described by Dr. White in his preliminary report of 1874 were redescribed and illustrated by him in 1875. In addition to the species mentioned in the preliminary report he describes and illustrates *Concoryphe* (*Ptychoparia*) *kingi* Meek (p. 40) and *Asaphiscus wheeleri* Meek (p. 43.)[3]

The two species described by Mr. Meek from Antelope Spring, Utah, in 1870, were redescribed and illustrated by him in 1877, under the names of *Conocoryphe* (*Ptychoparia*) *kingi* and *Paradoxides? nevadensis*. In the description of the latter species he gave reasons for believing that the generic reference was incorrect, and that the species belonged to an undescribed genus. For this genus, if the species proved not to be Paradoxides, he proposed the genus Olenoides.[4]

The description of the collections of the Fortieth Parallel Survey by Messrs. Hall and Whitfield added a large number of new forms to the Middle Cambrian fauna.[5]

The new species described are:

Obolella discoidea, p. 205.
Lingulepis mæra, p. 206.
? minuta, p. 206.
Kutorgina minutissima, p. 207.
Leptæna melita, p. 208.
Crepicephalus (Loganellus) haguei, p. 210.
(Loganellus) nitidus, p. 212.
(Loganellus) granulosus, p. 214.
(Loganellus) maculosus, p. 215.

[1] Preliminary report upon invertebrate fossils collected by the expeditions of 1871, 1872, and 1873, with descriptions of new species, pp. 27. Geog. and Geol. Sur. west of 100th Mer., Lieut. Wheeler in charge, Washington, 1874, pp. 4–12.

[2] Report on the geology of portions of Nevada, Utah, California, and Arizona examined in the years 1871 and 1872. Report on Geog. and Geol. Expl. and Sur. west of 100th Mer., vol. 3, Geology, 1875, pp. 182, 183.

[3] Report upon the invertebrate fossils collected in portions of Nevada, Utah, Colorado, New Mexico, and Arizona by parties of the expeditions of 1871–'74. Wheeler's Expl. and Sur. west of the 100th Mer., vol. 4, pt. 1, 1875.

[4] U. S. Geol. Expl. of the 40th Parallel, vol. 4, pt. 1, 1877, pp. 20–25.

[5] Ibid., vol. 4, 1877, pt. 2, pp. 205–246.

Crepicephalus (Loganellus) unisulcatus, p. 216.
(Loganellus) simulator, p. 218.
(Loganellus) anytus, p. 219.
(Bathyurus) ? angulatus, p. 220.
Conocephalites (Pterocephalus) laticeps, p. 221.
Ptychaspis pustulosa, p. 223.
Chariocephalus tumifrons, p. 224.
Dikelocephalus bilobatus, p. 226.
multicinctus, p. 226.
flabellifer, p, 227.
Agnostus communis, p. 228.
neon, p. 229.
prolongus, p. 230.
tumidosus, p. 231.
Lingulepsis ella, p. 232.
Conocephalites subcoronatus, p. 237.
Crepicephalus ? (Loganellus) quadrans, p. 238.
Dikelocephalus quadriceps, p. 240.
wasatchensis, p. 241.
? gothicus, p. 242.
Ogygia producta, p. 244.
parabola, p. 245.

Of these species those from *Lingulepsis ella* to *Ogygia parabola*, inclusive, are referred to the Quebec group, and the others to the Potsdam. The descriptions are accompanied by fine illustrations of all the species mentioned.

In 1880 Dr. C. A. White referred his *Acrotreta ? subsidua*, described in 1874, to the genus Acrothele of Angelin.[1]

The study of a collection made by the U. S. Geological Survey from the Eureka district, Nevada, gave Mr. C. D. Walcott material for the description of a number of new species from the Cambrian. They include the following:[2]

Acrothele ? dichotoma, p. 14.
Scenella ? conula, p. 15.
Kutorgina whitfieldi, p. 18.
prospectensis, p. 19.
Orthis eurekensis, p. 22.
Stenotheca elongata, p. 23.
Agnostus richmondensis, p. 24.
seclusus, p. 25.
Olenellus iddingsi, p. 28.
Dikelocephalus nasutus, p. 40.
richmondensis, p. 41.
? angustifrons, p. 42.
iole, p. 43.
marica, p. 44.
? expansus, p. 45.
Ptychoparia (?) prospectensis, p. 46.
(?) linnarssoni, p. 47.

[1] Note on Acrothele. U. S. Nat. Mus. Proc., vol. 3, 1880, p. 47.
[2] Paleontology of the Eureka district. U. S. Geol. Surv., Monograph, vol. 8, 1884, pp. 11–64.

Ptychoparia (?) (Solenopleura) (?) breviceps, p. 49.
(?) pernasutus, p. 49.
(Euloma?) dissimilis p. 51.
occidentalis, p 51.
similis, p. 52.
similis, var. robustus, p. 53.
(Euloma?) affinis, p. 54.
læviceps, p. 54.
(Pterocephalus) occidens, p. 58.
Anomocare? parvum, p. 59.
Agraulos? globosus, p. 61.
Arethusina americana, p. 62.
Ogygia? spinosa, p. 63.
(?) problematica, p. 63.

The following genera and species are mentioned and illustrated:

Protospongia fenestrata, p. 11.
Lingulepis mæra, p. 12.
? minuta, p. 13.
Lingula? manticula, p. 13.
Obolella discoidea, H. & W., p. 14.
Acrotreta gemma, Billings, p. 17.
Under this species are also included *Acrotreta subconica* and *A. attenuata*, Meek, 1873, and *Acrotreta pyxidicula*, White, 1874.
Kutorgina sculptilis, Meek, p. 20.
The synonymy of this species includes *Iphidea* (*?*) *sculptilis*, 1873, and *Kutorgina minutissima*, H. & W., 1877.
Leptæna melita, H. & W., p. 22.
Hyolithes primordialis, Hall, p. 23.
Agnostus bidens, Meek, p. 26.
communis, H. & W., p. 27.
neon, H. & W., p. 27.
prolongus, H. & W., p. 28.
Olenellus gilberti, Meek, p. 29.
howelli, Meek, p. 30.
Dikelocephalus bilobatus, H. & W., p. 40.
osceola, Hall, p. 40.
? quadriceps, H. & W., p. 45.
Ptychoparia oweni, M. & H., p. 55.
Under this species are placed as synonyms *Conocoryphe* (*Ptychoparia*) *gallatinensis*, Meek, 1873, *Crepicephalus* (*Loganellus*) *centralis*, Whitfield, 1877.
anytus, H. & W., p. 56.
granulosus, P. haguei and P. nitidus, H. & W., p. 57.
Under the latter species *Crepicephalus* (*Loganellus*) *simulator*, H. & W., 1877, is placed as a synonym.
unisulcatus, H. & W., p. 38.
(Pterocephalus) laticeps, H. & W., p. 59.
Ptychaspis minuta, Whitfield (?) p. 60.
Chariocephalus (?) tumifrons, H. & W., p. 61.

Notes on the genus Acrotreta of Kutorga are given on page 16; and observations on *Olenellus howelli* on pages 32–39.

In 1886 Mr. C. D. Walcott reviewed the species which he then considered to belong to the Olenellus, or Middle Cambrian fauna.[1]

The following new species were described from Utah and Nevada:

Eocystites ?? longidactylus, p. 94.
Orthis ? highlandensis, p. 119.
Hyolithes billingsi, p. 134.
Leperditia ? argenta, p. 146.
Olenoides typicalis, p. 183.
levis, p. 187.
Ptychoparia housensis, p. 201.
piochensis, p. 201.
Crepicephalus liliana, p. 207.
augusta, p. 208.
Orytocephalus, new genus, p. 210.
Orytocephalus primus, p. 210.
Bathyuriscus howelli, p. 216.

The genus Ethmophyllum, described by Mr. Meek in 1868, and the species placed under it referred in the same year to Archæocyathus, is redefined as the genus Ethmophyllum, with *Ethmophyllum whitneyi* as the type (p. 81.) *Ethmophyllum gracile* Meek is placed as a synonym of the latter species. Descriptions and illustrations of the following species also appear in this work:

Protospongia fenestrata, Salter, p. 90.
Lingulella ella, H. & W. p. 97.
Acrotreta gemma, Billings, p. 98.
Kutorgina pannula, White, p. 105.
prospectensis, Walcott, p. 106.
Acrothele subsidua, White, p. 108.
Scenella ? conula, Walcott, p. 127.
Stenotheca ? elongata, Walcott, p. 129.
Agnostus interstrictus, White, p. 149.
Olenellus iddingsi, Walcott, p. 170.
gilberti, Meek, p. 170.
Olenoides nevadensis, Meek, p. 181.
spinosus, Walcott, p. 184.
? flagricaudus, White, p. 185.
quadriceps, H. & W., p. 187.
wasatchensis, H. & W., p. 189.
Ptychoparia kingi, Meek (sp.), p. 193.
quadrans, H. & W., p. 199.
? prospectensis, Walcott, p. 202.
subcoronata, H. & W., p. 205.
Anomocare ? parvum, Walcott, p. 209.
Bathyuriscus productus, H. & W., p. 217.
Asaphiscus wheeleri, Meek, p. 220.

A discussion of several of the genera is also presented.

In a paper on the stratigraphic position of the Olenellus fauna Mr. C. D. Walcott reviewed the stratigraphic position of the fauna described in Bulletin 30 of the U. S. Geological Survey, and referred the

[1] Second contribution to the studies of the Cambrian faunas of North America. U. S. Geol. Survey, Bull. No. 30, 1886.

following species, formerly assigned to the Lower Cambrian fauna, to the Middle Cambrian zone, considering the Olenellus zone to include only the Lower Cambrian fauna.[1] The species are:

Protospongia fenestrata, Salter.
Eocystites ?? longidactylus, Walcott.
Leperditia argenta, Walcott.
Agnostus interstrictus, White.
Olenoides nevadensis, Meek (sp.).
quadriceps, Hall & Whitfield (sp.).
wasatchensis, H. & W. (sp.).
spinosus, Walcott.
typicalis, Walcott.
Ptychoparia housensis, Walcott.
kingi, Meek (sp.).
piochensis, Walcott.
?prospectensis, Walcott.
quadrans, H. & W. (sp.).
subcoronata, H. & W. (sp.).
Bathyuriscus howelli, Walcott.
productus, H. & W. (sp.).
Asaphiscus wheeleri, Meek.

Ptychaspis piochensis occurs 100 feet above the Olenellus zone proper, in the Highland range section, but as it also occurs 1,137 feet higher up in the same section, it is now referred to the Middle Cambrian fauna and not to the Olenellus fauna.[2]

The presence of Cambrian fossils at Kicking Horse Pass of the Rocky Mountain division of the Canadian Pacific Railway was announced by Mr. H. H. Winwood in 1885.[3] Indirect reference was also made to this by Dr. G. M. Dawson in 1884.[4] The specimens obtained at that time were examined by Mr. C. D. Walcott, who recognized *Olenellus howelli* and *Olenoides levis*, trilobites characteristic of the Prospect Mountain group of Nevada.[5]

During the survey by Mr. R. G. McConnell of the section along the line of the Canadian Pacific Railway there was discovered at Mount Stephen a zone of fossiliferous slate 2,000 feet above the base of the Castle Mountain limestone. From the collections obtained Dr. C. Rominger described the new genus Embolimus and five new species of trilobites, viz: *Ogygia klotzi*, *O. serrata*, *Embolimus spinosa*, *E. rotundata*, and *Conocephalites cordillerœ*. He also identified *Menocephalus salteri* ?, Billings, *Bathyurus* ?, *Agnostus* ("compare *A. interger* Barr"), and the genera Orthis, Obolella, Kutorgina, Leptæna ?, Metoptoma, and Hyolithes.[6]

[1] Stratigraphic succession of the Olenellus fauna in North America and Europe. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 37, pp. 374–392; vol. 38, 1889, pp. 29–42.
[2] Op. cit., p. 387.
[3] Geological age of the Rocky Mountains. Geol. Magazine, new ser., dec. 3, vol. 2, 1885, p. 240.
[4] Recent geological observations on the Canadian Northwest Territory. Science, vol. 3, 1884, p. 648.
[5] Preliminary report on the physical and geological features of that portion of the Rocky Mountains between latitudes 49° and 51° 30′. Geol. Surv. Canada, new ser., vol. 1, 1886, p. 140B.
[6] Description of Primordial fossils from Mount Stephen, Northwest Territory of Canada. Philadelphia Acad. Sci., Proc., 1887, pp. 12–19.

A review of Dr. Rominger's work on the Mount Stephen fossils by Mr. C. D. Walcott resulted in his determining that *Embolimus spinosa*, Rom.= *Zacanthoides spinosus*, Walcott; *Embolimus rotundata*, Rom.=*Bathyuriscus howelli*, Walcott; *Ogygia serrata*=*Olenoides nevadensis*, Meek; and that *Conocephalites cordillerœ*, Rom.=*Ptychoparia cordillerœ*, Rom. (sp.), and *Ogygia ? ? klotzi*, Rom., are new to the previously known Cambrian fauna. The genus Zacanthoides is proposed to include *Olenoides typicalis*, *O. spinosus*, *O. levis*, and *O. flagricaudus*, described in 1886. There were also identified from the material studied by Dr. Rominger *Agnostus interstrictus*, *Acrotreta gemma*, *Kutorgina prospectensis*, and *Hyolithellus micans*.[1] Subsequently from the collection studied by Dr. Rominger there were described by Mr. Walcott, *Lingulella macconelli* *Crania ? columbiana*, *Acrotreta gemma* var. *depressa*, *Orthisina alberta*, *Platyceras romingeri*, *Karlia stephenensis*, *Bathyuriscus* (*Kootenia*) *dawsoni*, and the genus Ogygopsis was proposed to include the *Ogygia klotzi* of Rominger. *Linnarssonia sagittalis* was also identified.[2]

In 1890 Mr. C. D. Walcott[3] described three new species from the Highland range section of Central Nevada, referring them to the Upper Cambrian. These species are *Hyolithes attenuatus*, *H. curvatus*, and *H.* (?) *corrugatus*.

INTERIOR CONTINENTAL PROVINCE.

This province includes the Upper Mississippi area, the eastern border or Adirondack subprovince, the western border or Rocky Mountain subprovince, and the Llano County area of central Texas and the Grand Cañon of Arizona as a minor southwestern subprovince.

UPPER MISSISSIPPI AREA.

For convenience of reference the review of the literature pertaining to Wisconsin, Minnesota, and Iowa is assembled for each State. The Ozark area of southeastern Missouri is considered separately, and the Lake Superior sandstones and the controversy in relation to them is noticed under a distinct heading, after the description of the recognized Upper Cambrian rocks of Wisconsin, Iowa, and Minnesota, and their extension into Canada. This division also includes the references to the Cambrian rocks of Michigan.

WISCONSIN.

In 1843, in notes on the geology of the Western States, Dr. D. D. Owen called attention to the presence of a sandstone on the Mississippi River, at Prairie du Chien, visible beneath the Lower Magnesian lime-

[1] Cambrian fossils from Mount Stephens. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 36, 1888, p. 165.

[2] Descriptions of new genera and species of fossils from the Middle Cambrian. U. S. National Museum, Proc., vol. 11, 1889, pp. 441–446.

[3] Description of new forms of Upper Cambrian fossils. U. S. Nat. Mus. Proc., vol. 13, 1890, pp. 267–279.

stone of the Wisconsin River.[1] Five years later, in the report of a geological reconnaissance of the Chippewa land district of Wisconsin, he describes with considerable detail Formation 1, or the lower sandstone of the Upper Mississippi. The formation, as a whole, is subdivided into five parts. The lowest part rests upon crystalline and metamorphic rocks, in the eastern part of the Chippewa land district, as a coarse sandstone overlaid by a still coarser quartzose sandstone.[2] At the Falls of the St. Croix the schistose, silico-calcareous layers of the second division are highly fossiliferous. In the third division the prevailing genera are Lingula and Orbicula[3] and it is designated as the "Lingula sandstone." In speaking of the beds of sandstone beneath the fossiliferous layers at Mountain Island it is stated that in all probability this is the western equivalent of the Lingula beds of the New York Potsdam sandstone.[4]

A notice of the discovery of the fauna in the lower sandstone of Wisconsin was communicated by Dr. Owen in 1848 to the Geological Society of France through a letter to M. de Verneuil.[5]

In a letter descriptive of the geology of southeastern Wisconsin addressed to Mr. J. W. Foster, Mr. I. A. Lapham states that—

> The *Inferior*, or *Potsdam sandstone*, is found at Janesville and above, occupying the bed of the river. The grains are rounded, smooth, and without apparent cement; the rock easily crumbles upon exposure; color white or red. The white variety might be used for the manufacture of glass. The discovery, in 1849, of that singular and characteristic fossil described by Mr. Hall as *Scolithus linearis* (New York Pal., vol. 1, p. 2) in this rock, in Sauk County, may be considered as settling the question of the identity of this rock with the Potsdam sandstone of the New York reports. It occupies much of the counties Marquette and Columbia, enters Dane County, and is seen in the banks of Rock River from Lake Koshkonong to Janesville.
>
> * * * II. *Calciferous rock of Eaton.*—Resting immediately upon the sandstone, at Janesville, is a limestone with grains of the same sand intermixed, giving it the form and appearance of an oolite limestone; the amount of sand diminishing as you rise from the surface of the sandstone. It accords exactly with the description given of a portion of the calciferous sandstone of New York, and contains the same fucoid (*Palæophycus tubularis*), as well as other characteristic fossils. Its character and relative position also clearly show that it is the same rock that, farther west and north, is called the *Lower Magnesian limestone*, by Drs. Owen and Locke.[6]

In the same report, Mr. Charles Whittlesey describes the sandstone as it occurs near Wolf River, etc., stating it to be a sandstone easily crushed between the fingers, which has been so extensively denuded that it is only here and there that a trace of its former existence is

---

[1] On the geology of the Western States. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 45, 1843, p. 164.

[2] Owen, David Dale: Report of a geological reconnaissance of the Chippewa land district of Wisconsin, and incidentally of a portion of * * * Iowa and of the Minnesota territory. Letter of the Secretary of the Treasury communicating a report of a geological reconnaissance of the Chippewa land district of Wisconsin, etc., by D. D. Owen, Thirtieth Congress, first session, Senate Ex. Doc. No. 57, 1848, p. 13.

[3] Op. cit., p. 14.

[4] Op. cit., p. 15.

[5] Letter on geology of Wisconsin Territory. Bull. Soc. géol. France, 2e sér., vol. 5, 1848, pp. 294–296.

[6] Lapham, I. A.: "On the geology of the southeastern portion of the State of Wisconsin, being the part not surveyed by United States geologists." Rept. on the geology of the Lake Superior land district, by Foster and Whitney, part 2, 1851, p. 169.

left.[1] On the Upper Menomonee River the sandstone has a thickness of 150 feet, and the entire thickness is estimated at 200 feet.[2]

In giving an account of his investigations in connection with the geological survey under the direction of Messrs. Foster and Whitney, Prof. J. Hall states:

> I have also satisfied myself that the sandstones of the Upper Mississippi are of the same age as the Potsdam sandstones, and that the Lower Magnesian limestone of the Western geologists is identical with the calciferous sandstone of New York, the next member of the series above the Potsdam sandstone. The thin bed of sandstone succeeding this rock can not be identified as the Potsdam sandstone by itself, but must be regarded as a repetition of the arenaceous deposits below, which likewise alternate with the calciferous sandstone near its base.[3]

He thus corroborates the view of Dr. D. D. Owen that the lower sandstone of Wisconsin is the equivalent of the New York Potsdam.

In 1851 M. E. Desor called attention to the presence at St. Croix of a fossiliferous sandstone 800 feet beneath that described by Professor Hall, in which he found fossils.[4]

In a paper on the paleontology of the lowest sandstone of the northwest Dr. D. D. Owen states that he observed multitudes of Lingulas and Orbiculas disseminated in strata abutting against the southwest side of the trap range that crosses the St. Croix River at the falls. This was in 1847. During the remainder of this season and in that of 1848 he found finer-grained and more laminated soft sandstones, with subordinated silico-calcareous layers, charged with Obolus, like those which characterize the lowest sandstones of Russia. This was in a section on the Mississippi, between the Falls of St. Anthony and the mouth of the Wisconsin River. From the results of these observations he finally developed beneath the Lower Magnesian limestone at least six different trilobite beds, separated by from 10 to 150 feet of intervening strata.[5]

In the final report on the geology of the Upper Mississippi Valley, the same writer describes the lower sandstone as composed of light-colored quartzose sandstone that forms the greater part of the formation, with intercalations of magnesian limestone, especially toward its upper part, where it graduates into Formation No. 2, and at certain localities argillaceous, and other beds of a mixed character form a considerable portion of its lower mass.[6] In a table of the elementary stratification of the lowest Protozoic sandstones he places the Lake Superior ferrugi-

[1] Remarks upon the section from the falls of Wolf River, through Navarino to Lake Michigan. Rept. on the geology of the Lake Superior land district, by Foster and Whitney, part 2, 1851, p. 174.

[2] Whittlesey, Charles: The dip, bearing, and thickness of the Silurian groups. Rept. on the geology of the Lake Superior land district, by Foster and Whitney, part 2, 1851, p. 183.

[3] (Geological investigations on Drummond's Island and the north shores of Lakes Huron and Michigan, etc.) Am. Acad. Proc., vol. 2, 1851, p. 254.

[4] [Potsdam sandstone on the river St. Croix.] Boston Soc. Nat. Hist. Proc., vol. 3, 1851, p. 202.

[5] On the paleontology of the lowest sandstones of the Northwest. Am. Assoc. Proc., vol. 5, 1851, pp. 169–172.

[6] Geol. Surv. of Wisconsin, Iowa, and Minnesota, and incidentally of a portion of Nebraska Territory, Philadelphia, 1852, p. 48.

nous and argillaceous sandstones, shales, and conglomerates at the base, assigning it a thickness of 5,000 feet. Above this occur coarse grits and sandstones of the Chippewa, Black and Wisconsin Rivers.[1] The placing of the lower sandstone of Lake Superior in this position is theoretical. Above the coarse sandstone the formation is divided into six trilobite beds, as follows:[2]

Table of the elementary stratification of the lowest Protozoic sandstones.—Formation 1.

			Feet.
f.	Sixth Trilobite bed...	Quartzose, light-colored sandstones of various degrees of induration, with intercalations of beds of magnesian limestone, with glistening crystalline facets, and calcareo-siliceous oolite, produced by rounded grains of quartz, encased in calcareous cement, containing Euomphalas and imperfect Trilobites. Locally with a band of green earth	50 to 85
		Mammillary and botryoidal layer of white sandstone; sometimes banded with yellow	5 to 6 inches.
e.		Thick beds of soft, yellowish and brown sandstone, sometimes with botryoidal, hard, projecting concretions passing downward into fine-grained soft sandstones approaching tripoli	40 to 50
	Fifth Trilobite bed...	Ash-colored and yellowish argillo-calcareous and magnesio-calcareous beds, containing *Dikelocephalus minnesotensis.*	
		Stillwater Trilobite bed	8 to 10
		Green, red, and yellowish sandstones with thin, schistose, dolomitic intercalations	40
		Upper, brown dolomitic layers containing Orthis, Lingulas, and columns of Crinoidea as at La Grange Mountain	4
	Fourth Trilobite bed..	Alternations of yellow, laminated sandstones, with green particles disseminated	5
		Marine Mill Trilobite grit	5
		Fucoidal layers, and thin-bedded green and yellow sandstones, at their base often a band of about 6 inches of green earth used by the Indians as a pigment	30 to 40
d.		Green and red sandstones, charged with silicate of iron	5
		Loose, green sand, and soft green sandstone	15
	Third Trilobite bed...	Micaceous sandstone, containing *Dikelocephalus meniskaensis, D. granulosa,* etc	3
		Alternations of green and ferruginous sandstones	20
		Micaceous sandstones containing *D. meniskaensis,* etc	2
		Thin layers of green sand, alternating with green earth, impregnated with silicate of iron	30 to 40
		Lower, brown siliceo-calcareous and dolomitic bands of Mountain Island, and elsewhere	4
		Soft, thin-bedded sandstones, with scales of mica disseminated	10 to 15
c.		Coarse lingula grit, green, yellow, sometimes almost white	100 to 130

[1] Op. cit., p. 52. [2] Op. cit., pp. 52, 53.

Table of the elementary stratification of the Lowest Protozoic sandstones, etc.—Continued.

			Feet.
b.	Second Trilobite bed..	Fine grit. Place of the Menomonie Trilobite grit (?). White and yellow sandstone, and Obolus layers of Black River	15
	First Trilobite bed....	Ferruginous Trilobite grits. Schistose sandstone, containing fork-tailed Trilobite beds and Obolus layers	1 to 8
		Magnesio-calcareous rock, with Obolus and fork-tailed Trilobite	3
		Highly fossiliferous schistose, siliceo-calcareous layers, interlaminated with argillaceous, marly beds, charged with sulphate of iron; the former full of Lingulas and Orbiculas (Falls of St. Croix)	50
a.		Sandstone, with oblique lines of deposition, alternating with pebbly sandstones and coarse grits of the Chippewa and Black and Wisconsin Rivers near the falls	50 to 100
		Place of the Lake Superior ferruginous and argillaceous sandstones, shales, and conglomerates	5,000

The geographic distribution of the formation is shown on the map accompanying the report.

The local details of the sections in Wisconsin are reported upon by Prof. B. F. Shumard. Much of the information here given was used by Dr. Owen in giving the summary of the divisions referred to Formation No. 1, or the lower sandstone.[1]

The sandstones of the south shore of Lake Superior are described by Mr. J. C. Norwood, and a section given of them as seen at the mouth of Cranberry River. He also describes the sandstones of the St. Croix River.[2]

In his annual report of the geological survey of the State of Wisconsin Prof. J. G. Percival describes the lower sandstone with considerable detail, but without special addition to the information given by Dr. Owen. He separates, however, the quartz rock of the Baraboo and of Portland from the Lower sandstone.[3]

The volume of the geological survey of Wisconsin, by Prof. James Hall, contains a general account of the Potsdam sandstone. The opening paragraph describes it as follows:

The lowest rock of the series is the Potsdam sandstone, which is known in the northwest as the Lower sandstone, in contradistinction to the Upper or St. Peter's sandstone, which lies above the Lower Magnesian limestone. This is equivalent to the Potsdam sandstone in New York, and holds in all respects the same geological position: it is the lowest fossiliferous rock observed in the geological surveys of New York, where it received its name.

This rock has been traced, with slight interruptions, westward from Lake Cham-

[1] Geol. Report of local, detailed observations in the valleys of the Minnesota, Mississippi, and Wisconsin Rivers. Report of a geological survey of Wisconsin, Iowa, and Minnesota; and incidentally of a portion of Nebraska Territory. Philadelphia, 1852, pp. 475–531.

[2] Geol. Report of a survey of portions of Wisconsin, and Minnesota. Rep. Geol. Surv. of Wisconsin, Iowa, and Minnesota; and incidentally of a portion of Nebraska Territory. Philadelphia, 1852, pp. 275–277.

[3] Annual Report of the Geological Survey of the State of Wisconsin. Madison, 1856, pp. 92–101.

plain through Canada to the outlet of Lake Superior and along the south shore of that lake.[1]

This is followed by a general account of the formation and of the organic remains found in it.[2]

In the same volume Prof. J. D. Whitney prints a brief résumé of the Potsdam or lower sandstone.[3]

In a paper entitled "Preliminary notice of the fauna of the Potsdam sandstone," Prof. James Hall states that in 1850 he had the opportunity of tracing the formations from Drummond's Island and St. Mary's River to the head of Green Bay and thence across the country to the Mississippi River.[4] He comes to this conclusion:

> The position of the sandstone on the St. Mary's admitted of no doubt, and its relative position to the lower limestone had before that time been well determined, and the same was likewise ascertained by the several exploring parties along different lines between Lake Superior and Green Bay.
>
> Throughout Wisconsin there is no difficulty in recognizing the following sequence:
>
> Trenton limestone;
> Black River or Buff limestone;
> Birdseye limestone;
> St. Peter's sandstone;
> Lower Magnesian limestone, or calciferous sandstone;
> Potsdam sandstone.
>
> The St. Peter's sandstone holds the place of the Chazy limestone of the more eastern localities, and, with this exception, we have the same sequence that we find in New York, many of the fossils being common to the limestone of New York and Wisconsin.
>
> Dr. Owen, in his published report, has adopted this view of the sequence, and the explorations of subsequent years have confirmed the opinions then entertained; and I believe at this time every geologist will admit the identity of the Potsdam sandstone of New York and the Lower sandstone of the Upper Mississippi Valley.
>
> In speaking of this sandstone I shall, therefore, without hesitation, refer to it as the Potsdam sandstone.[5]

A list of fossils described in the memoir is given to illustrate their stratigraphic position.[6] In this list the fauna is divided into that of the lower beds, middle beds, and upper beds, the latter characterized especially by the presence of the genus Dikelocephalus. In a supplementary note on the Potsdam sandstone that accompanies the memoir he gives a résumé of the evidence upon which the lower sandstone of the Upper Mississippi Valley has been placed in parallelism with the sandstone of New York, known as the Potsdam sandstone, as follows:[7]

> In comparing the older rocks of New York and of the East generally with those of the West, it should not be forgotten that there is a long interval on the line of the

[1] Physical geography and general geology. Geol. Surv. Wisconsin, Report, vol. 1, 1862, p. 14.
[2] Op. cit., pp. 20-23.
[3] Stratigraphical geology. Geol. Surv. Wisconsin, Rep., vol. 1, 1862, pp. 140-144.
[4] Preliminary notice of the fauna of the Potsdam sandstone, with remarks on the previously known species of fossils and descriptions of some new ones from the sandstone of the Upper Mississippi Valley. 16th Ann. Rep. Regents Univ. N. Y., State Cab. Nat. Hist., 1863, pp. 119, 120.
[5] Op. cit., p. 120.
[6] Op. cit., p. 209.
[7] Op. cit., pp. 211-213.

northern outcrop of these ancient strata, between the St. Lawrence and the western limit of Michigan on the Menomonee River, where we can expect little aid from paleontology. The fossiliferous beds of these ancient formations in Wisconsin lie to the west of what appears to have been a great promontory at the time of their deposition, stretching southward from the region of Lake Superior far into the ancient sea. The disconnection caused by this promontory between the East and the West would of itself prepare us to expect a fauna differing in a great degree from beds of corresponding age on the opposite sides.

It has been shown, by the investigations of the Canadian Survey, that not only the Potsdam sandstone, but all the fossiliferous beds below the Birdseye and Black River limestones are absent from Kingston on Lake Ontario to Lacloche on Lake Huron. From Lacloche to Lake Superior there is a sandstone coming in below the Birdseye limestone, which, from its position, may be considered of the age of the Chazy[1] formation and equivalent to the St. Peters sandstone of Wisconsin and Minnesota; and it is this sandstone, doubtless, which has been taken for the Potsdam sandstone in some localities along that line.

The succeeding Birdseye and Black River formation, from Lacloche to Lake Superior, has become a buff-colored magnesian limestone, or weathering externally to this color, but still holding the characteristic fossils.

In New York a sandstone (the Potsdam) lies immediately beneath a magnesian limestone (the "Calciferous sandrock"): this deposit is succeeded by a calcareous formation (the Chazy), including a sandstone and surmounted by the Birdseye, Black River, and Trenton limestones.

In Wisconsin, Iowa, and Minnesota, we have undoubted Trenton limestone, and below it a buff-colored magnesian limestone containing so many of the characteristic fossils of the Birdseye and Black River limestones as to leave no doubt of the parallelism of these beds with those of New York. Below this magnesian limestone we have the St. Peters sandstone, corresponding, as already shown, with the Chazy formation; and beneath this a magnesian limestone, which, in its position and lithological character, corresponds in all respects with the "*Calciferous sandrock*" of New York.

It is from all these facts that the lower sandstone of the Upper Mississippi Valley has been placed in parallelism with the sandstone of New York known as the "Potsdam."

Notwithstanding, however, that this sequence is precisely like that observed in New York, it may not yet be regarded as proved that the sandstone, from which I have described these fossils, is in all respects the equivalent of the Potsdam sandstone of New York, Vermont, and Canada. It may represent more, or it may represent less than that formation. The *lower* accessible beds of the Mississippi Valley may represent the Potsdam of 150 or 200 feet in thickness in the typical localities in New York, while the middle and upper beds of the West may be of epochs not represented in that part of the series studied in New York; and in some other places, as in the regions just mentioned, the same epochs may be represented by a shaly or semicalcareous deposition, or may be included in the commencement of the Calciferous epoch. It should not therefore be regarded as decided that the Potsdam sandstone, as developed in New York, occupies the entire interval from the base of the oldest sedimentary formation of the Paleozic era to the Calciferous sandstone. From what we know of the primordial fauna in other localities, we are prepared to find beds above or below, or both above and below, the epoch represented (so far as now known) by the Potsdam sandstone of New York, and which may still be of the same period.

[1] The "Chazy formation" of the Canadian Geological Survey, in its eastern localities, includes a sandstone which comes in below the greater part of the limestone, leaving from 10 to 20 feet of shale and limestone beneath (Geology of Canada, 1863, p. 123). It is apparently this sandstone of the Chazy formation, having in Canada a thickness of 50 feet, which has become augmented in its western extension, while the calcareous part of the formation has partially or entirely disappeared.

He then enters upon the discussion of the relative age of the sandstones of Wisconsin and those of Lake Superior, and concludes that while the older beds of the latter area are apparently below the fossiliferous beds of the Upper Mississippi Valley, the newer sandstone of the St. Mary's River, which is apparently of the age of the St. Peter sandstone, or the Chazy formation, will be found overlying the fossiliferous sandstone, either with or without the intervention of the Lower Magnesian limestone.[1]

On a geological map of Wisconsin published in 1855 Mr. I. A. Lapham delineates the distribution of a sandstone occurring beneath the Lower Magnesian limestone. Under the same color he includes the sandstone on the south shore of Lake Superior, both on the north and southeastern side of the trap rocks of Keweenaw Point. The distribution of the fossiliferous sandstone south and southeast and east of the northern area of the primitive rocks is also laid down.[2] In a new geological map of Wisconsin, published in 1869, only the sandstones of the northwestern portion of the State are colored as Potsdam sandstone. In the vicinity of the shores of Lake Superior the Michigan area on the map of 1855 is left uncolored.

A paper on the age of the quartzites, schists, and conglomerates of Sauk County, Wisconsin, by Prof. R. D. Irving, proves conclusively that the quartzites are of pre-Potsdam age, and that the latter are deposited unconformably upon the flanks of the hill formed by the quartzites.[3] The evidence given by Prof. Irving negatives the conclusion arrived at by Dr. Alexander Winchell in his description of the fossils of Sauk County, where he states that Ptychaspis and Dikelocephalus occur at the base of the Potsdam, and that the quartzites in question are the lower beds of the Potsdam formation.[4] In the region of south-central Wisconsin, especially in Dane and Columbia Counties, Prof. Irving obtained a thickness of 800 feet for the lower or Potsdam sandstone, and for the superjacent Mendota limestone 30 feet, above which occurs the Madison sandstone, with a thickness of 35 feet. He refers only the lower or Potsdam sandstone to the Primordial.[5]

The sketch on the geology of northern Wisconsin by Mr. E. T. Sweet gives a general description of the Potsdam sandstone, and attention is called to the fact that all the strata at the falls of St. Croix belong to this sandstone formation and that none of them are of igneous origin, as suggested by Dr. Owen.[6]

---

[1] Op. cit., p. 220.

[2] Lapham, I. A.: Geological Map of Wisconsin. Milwaukee, 1855. Also a map for 1869.

[3] On the age of the quartzites, schists, and conglomerates of Sauk County, Wisconsin. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 3, 1872, pp. 95–99. Wisc. Acad. Sci. Trans., vol. 1, 1872, pp. 129–137.

[4] Notice of a small collection of fossils from the Potsdam sandstone of Wisconsin and the Lake Superior sandstone of Michigan. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 37, 1864, pp. 226–232.

[5] Note on some new points in the elementary stratification of the Primordial and Canadian rocks of south-central Wisconsin. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 9, 1875, pp. 441, 443.

[6] Notes on the geology of northern Wisconsin. Wisc. Acad. Sci. Trans., vol. 3, 1876, p. 51.

A note on the age of the Crystalline rocks of Wisconsin by Prof. Irving states that the exact junction between the Potsdam and the Huronian formations is often to be seen, the almost loose sand of the Potsdam, with numerous fossils, together with fragments derived from the older rocks, lying upon and wedged in between the tilted edges of Huronian quartzite, schist, or other rock. Exactly similar unconformability is to be seen at the Dalles of the St. Croix River between the Potsdam and copper-bearing series; the horizontal beds of the former, filled with shells of Lingulella, lying directly upon the columnar, melaphyre (?) of the latter series, the exact junction of the two series being exposed.[1]

The description of the geology of eastern Wisconsin by Prof. T. C. Chamberlin contains a detailed account of the "Potsdam sandstone." He says:

> That it is the exact equivalent of the Potsdam sandstone of New York, as would seem to be implied by the name, is not absolutely certain, but as the term has been used to designate this formation in previous reports upon the geology of the State, and as the weight of evidence and authority favors this view, the name Potsdam sandstone will be used without further qualification in this report.[2]

The sandstone varies greatly in thickness, ranging from zero to about 1,000 feet. A detailed account of the formation is given with a list of the fossils found in the sandstone. The Madison sandstone and Mendota limestone are included as subdivisions of the terrane.

Reference to the description of the Lower or "Potsdam" sandstone series of central Wisconsin by Prof. R. D. Irving,[3] will be made under the description of the Potsdam terrane in Wisconsin.

A general description of the mode of occurrence and character of the Potsdam sandstone in the lead regions of northwestern Wisconsin was published by Mr. Moses Strong in 1877.[4]

Upon the basis of work in St. Croix, Dunn, and adjacent counties, Mr. L. C. Wooster subdivided the "Potsdam" as follows:[5]

> The numbers indicate the distances below the Lower Magnesian limestone.
>
> (*a*) Upper calcareous band: This varies greatly in thickness, and is the probable northwestern equivalent of the Mendota limestone near Madison; 75 to 85 feet.
>
> (*b*) Lower calcareous band: The limestone characters and the thickness are more uniformly persistent than in *a*; 145 to 195 feet.
>
> (*c*) Hudson trilobite beds: Quite rich in trilobites and brachiopods, including one new species of the former, with several undetermined ones; 150 to 200 feet.
>
> (*d*) Glauconite layers: These comprise those layers which are very rich in glauconite. Crinoid stems were found in these at Hudson; 160 to 210 feet.
>
> In *b*, *c*, and *d*, the lesser distance from the Lower Magnesian is true for western St. Croix County, while the greater is nearer true for points east.

---

[1] Note on the age of the Crystalline rocks of Wisconsin. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 13, 1877, p. 368.

[2] (Geology of eastern Wisconsin.) Geol. Wisc., Surv. of 1873-'77, vol. 2, 1877, p. 257.

[3] (Geology of central Wisconsin.) Geol. Wisc., Surv. of 1873-'77, vol. 2, 1877, pp. 525-607.

[4] Geol. Wisc. Surv. of, 1873-'77, vol. 2, 1877, pp. 668-688.

[5] Work in St. Croix, Dunn, and adjacent counties. Geol. Surv. Wisconsin, Ann. Rep. for 1877, 1878 pp. 36, 37.

(*e*) Eau Claire trilobite beds: These hold at least seven species of trilobites, of which three are new, and a few brachiopods. These beds mark the lower limit of calcareous matter in the formation; 450 feet.

(*f*) Eau Claire grit: These layers mark the upper limit of the coarse sandstones, almost conglomerates; 680 feet.

The mode of occurrence and character of the "Potsdam" sandstone in the upper St. Croix district is described in great detail by Mr. Moses Strong.[1] In this he shows the unconformity between the "Potsdam" and the subjacent strata referred to the Keweenawan (Keweenaw) series, and describes the various sections of the sandstone exposed. The knowledge of the local details of the distribution and character of the "Potsdam" sandstone of the Mississippi region north of the Wisconsin River was increased by him in 1882 by the publication of many sections and descriptive details that will be used in a summary of our knowledge of the Cambrian rocks of that region.[2]

The "Potsdam" terrane of the lower St. Croix district was described by Mr. L. C. Wooster in the same volume with the report of Mr. Strong. This report also contains considerable data that will be referred to in the description of the Cambrian rocks of the region.[3]

The geographic distribution of the "Potsdam" sandstone and its relation to the subjacent pre-Cambrian rocks and the superjacent magnesian limestone is shown with great accuracy upon the general geological map of Wisconsin, published in 1881, and in the two sections at the bottom of the sheet.

A note by A. A. Young on the crystallized sands of the "Potsdam" sandstone of Wisconsin describes the manner in which the original grains of the sandstone are surrounded by crystalline envelopes of quartz.[4]

The summary of the geology of Wisconsin by Prof. T. C. Chamberlin contains a description of the rocks of the "Potsdam" period. These include the "Potsdam" epoch, the Lower Magnesian epoch, and the St. Peters epoch, in part. A general description of the formations, accompanied by an account of the life of each epoch, is followed by some general observations upon the Cambrian age, to which the formations are referred.[5]

The occurrence of a conglomerate formed of bowlders from the trap of the copper-bearing series in a matrix of sandstone that contains fragments of Linguloid shells, apparently *Lingulepis pinnaformis*, is noted by Mr. L. C. Wooster at a locality on the St. Croix River. From the mode of occurrence of the conglomerate he concludes that it must have

[1] Geology of the upper St. Croix district. Geology of Wisconsin, survey of 1873–1879, 1880, vol. 3, pp. 390–428.

[2] [Geology of the Mississippi region north of the Wisconsin River.] Geol. Wisconsin, survey of 1873–'79, vol. 4, 1882, pp. 38–91.

[3] [Geology of the lower St. Croix district.] Geol. Wisconsin, survey of 1873–'79, vol. 4, 1882, pp. 109–130.

[4] Further observations on the crystallized sands of the Potsdam sandstone of Wisconsin. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 24, 1882, pp. 47–49.

[5] General Geology. Geol. Wisconsin, survey of 1873–'79, vol. 1, 1883, pp. 119–200.

accumulated along a cliff of the copper-bearing rocks and that the age of the conglomerate must be late "Potsdam."[1]

In an extended paper on the classification of early Cambrian and pre-Cambrian formations Prof. R. D. Irving illustrates the unconformity between the "Potsdam" sandstone and the subjacent Huronian and Keweenawan rocks. He also discusses the similar stratigraphic relations of the Cambrian and pre-Cambrian rocks of the Grand Cañon Region.[2]

MINNESOTA.

The presence of the lower sandstone along the Mississippi River below the Falls of St. Anthony to the Iowa line was proved by the survey of Dr. D. D. Owen in Wisconsin, Iowa, and Minnesota. Alternating exposures of the strata occur along the river and some of the tributaries flowing into it from the west.[3] On the accompanying map there is also a narrow area colored Potsdam along the valley of the Minnesota or St. Peter's River.

Little additional information in regard to Minnesota was published until Prof. N. H. Winchell, in the first annual report of the geological survey of Minnesota, discussed, under the title of "Potsdam Sandstone," the Sioux quartzite of northwestern Minnesota, and "The St. Croix Sandstone," the fossiliferous sandstone of the southeastern portion of the State, referred to the Potsdam by Dr. Owen.[4] Of the term "Potsdam," he says:

> This term is strictly applicable only to the sandstones of New York State, to which the name was first given, and to the equivalents of those strata in their extension through the West. It has been abundantly proved that the red sandstones of Lake Superior, however disturbed and changed locally, or however much increased in thickness by the agency of volcanic outbursts, are the exact equivalents of the New York *Potsdam*. They occupy the first position over the metamorphic slates of the *Huronian* rocks on which they lie unconformably, and from which they differ in being but slightly and only locally metamorphosed. They retain usually their evidently sedimentary characters, and have not well preserved fossil remains.[5]

He states further that in Wisconsin the upper sandstones are found to lie unconformably upon the red sandstones where they have been tilted by volcanic agency, thus referring the quartzite of Sauk County to the Potsdam, and the superjacent fossiliferous, Upper Cambrian sandstones that have been correlated by authors with the Potsdam of New York, to his St. Croix sandstone. The red sandstone or Sioux quartzite is said to be both older than and unconformable with the

[1] Transition from the copper-bearing series to the Potsdam. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 27, 1884, pp. 463–465.

[2] On the classification of the early Cambrian and pre-Cambrian formations. U. S. Geol. Surv., 7th Ann Rep. for 1885–'86, 1888, pp. 365–454.

[3] Geol. Surv. of Wis., Iowa, and Minn., and incidentally of a portion of Nebraska Territory, Philadelphia, 1852, pp. 48, 49.

[4] General sketch of the geology of Minnesota. Geol. and Nat. Hist. Survey Minnesota, 1st Ann. Rep. for 1872–'73, 1st ed., pp. 68–80.

[5] Op. cit., p. 68.

light colored sandstones that occupy a conspicuous place in the bluffs of the Upper Mississippi, below the Lower Magnesian limestone. Of the *Sioux quartzite* he says that—

Its features here are easily identifiable with those of the Potsdam at the rapids in the St. Mary's River, at Sault Ste. Marie, Michigan. In their passage to the west, the over-lying, light-colored sandstones seem to become more largely developed. They acquire a thickness, including the intercalated beds of shale, of about 600 feet in their exposures along the Mississippi River.[1]

Of the fossils collected from the horizontal beds at the Falls of the St. Croix it is said they:

Were described as coming from the *Potsdam sandstone*, and were supposed to belong to a horizon much lower than that of the *Lingula Beds* of the *Potsdam* of New York. The name has been still further removed from its original use by the Iowa geologists, *in its application only to these upper beds*, and in giving the name *Sioux quartzite* to the western representative of the original *Potsdam*. Dr. Owen, although he recognized many points of difference between the Lake Superior and New York *Potsdam*, and these light-colored sandstones of the St. Croix and Upper Mississippi, seems not to have noted the important fact that the former are everywhere subject to distortions and fractures by volcanic forces, while the latter are never known to be disturbed by such causes. It is true that he embraces both the red and the light-colored sandstones in the designation of "Potsdam," and argues at length to prove the great age of the red. (Geological Survey of Wisconsin, Iowa and Minnesota, p. 187.)

It is in accord with geological precedent, therefore, to separate these two sandstone formations under different names, retaining the name of *Potsdam* for the older, and giving provisionally the name of the St. Croix River, on which they are best exposed, to the latter.

The following reasons may be assigned:

(1) The *Potsdam* beds were laid down before the close of the volcanic disturbance so evident in the rocks of the early Silurian and pre-Silurian ages; the *St. Croix* beds were deposited and still lie in horizontal layers, unconformably not only over the *Laurentian* and latest trappean rocks of the northwest, but also on the upturned beds of the Potsdam.[2]

(2) This reason has little bearing and will not be quoted.

(3) The lithological characters of the *Potsdam* beds are uniformly different from those of the *St. Croix* beds. The former are hard and often vitreous, usually of a brick-red color. Their bedding is very distinct, and often separated into slaty layers by partings of red shale. They are strongly marked by the so-called fucoidal impressions. They are frequently ripple-marked and sun-cracked. The latter are white or buff-colored, often friable, and constitute a heavy bedded or massive sandstone, of handsomely rounded quartzose grains.

(4) This notes differences in chemical composition.

(6) [3]The *Potsdam sandstone* has a thickness of at least 400 feet; (Note—D. Owen makes the thickness of the Potsdam (red sandstones of Lake Superior) over 5,000 feet. See Owen's report on Wisconsin, Iowa, and Minnesota, p. 193); the *St. Croix* sandstone also has a thickness of over 500 feet. It is more in keeping with the canons of geological nomenclature to give separate titles to formations so well defined and so largely developed.

(7) This gives the evidence of paleontologic differences. He states that the fossils of the Potsdam sandstone of New York are *Lingula*

[1] Op. cit., p. 69. [2] Op. cit., pp. 69, 70. [3] 5th does not occur in the original.

antiqua (Con.) and *Lingula prima* (Con.), a Discina (or Orbicula), and uncertain impressions supposed to be of a Pleurotomaria and of crinoidal remains. A species of Theca has also been described from Keeseville. In comparison to this he cites a large number of species described by Owen and Hall from Wisconsin.[1]

(8) In this it is shown that the number of species of the Lake Superior district and from the New York district, in the sandstone referred by him to the Potsdam sandstone, are the same, namely three.

Notwithstanding these considerations, it has not been thought best to attempt the delineation of the areas of these sandstones separately on the preliminary geological map accompanying this report.[2]

A detailed description of the lithological characters of the St. Croix and Potsdam sandstone is also given.[3]

The preceding observations by Prof. Winchell have been quoted in detail as they are the foundation for the theoretical views subsequently advanced by him correlating the Potsdam sandstone of New York with various other sandstones of pre-Silurian age.

On the map accompanying the report (opposite p. 45) the Sioux quartzite area of northwestern Minnesota is colored the same as the St. Croix sandstone of the southeastern portion of the State. In the legend the color is placed under the heading of Potsdam and St. Croix.

In the fourth annual report Prof. Winchell describes the St. Croix sandstone as it occurs in Fillmore County and illustrates the geographic distribution on an accompanying map.[4] In some notes on a deep well drilled at Minneapolis, Minnesota, the same writer states that Nos. 11, 12, and 13 represent the St. Croix sandstone with a total thickness of 217 feet. Beneath this there is a red marl and red sandstone which he refers to the same horizon as the catlinite beds of the Sioux quartzite series. Of No. 14 it is said: "No. 14 may represent the Lingula flags or the upper portion of the Potsdam, so called." No. 15 is correlated as undoubtedly the upper portion of the great series of marls and sands which characterize this horizon in Minnesota. "It is the same formation as the rock that embraces the well known 'pipestone' or catlinite of Minnesota."[5]

The Sioux quartzite is referred by Prof. Winchell to the Potsdam sandstone in a description of the geology of rocks in Pipestone County in the sixth annual report. It includes the famous pipestone quarry near the center of Pipestone County.[6]

A more extended account of the strata referred to the "Potsdam" sandstone is published by Prof. Winchell in the tenth annual report

[1] Op. cit., p. 71. [2] Op. cit., p. 73. [3] Op. cit., pp. 75-80.

[4] Report on the geology of Fillmore County. Geol. and Nat. Hist. Surv., Minnesota; 4th Ann. Rep. for 1875, 1876, pp. 31-32.

[5] Notes on the deep well drilled at East Minneapolis, Minnesota, in 1874-'75. Minn. Acad. Sci., Bull., vol. 1, 1876, pp. 188-189.

[6] The geology of Rock and Pipestone Counties. Geol. and Nat. Hist. Survey, Minnesota, 6th Ann. Rep., for 1877, 1878, p. 97.

of the survey. In this he affirms that the horizontal fossiliferous beds referred to the Potsdam by Dr. Owen, Prof. Hall, and other authors is above the true Potsdam of New York, and that the latter is represented by the rocks of the copper-bearing series in the west; also, that no fossils representing the Primordial fauna have yet been discovered in the west nor have any been found in the western representative of the Potsdam; and finally, that the second fauna of Barrande is found in the Quebec group of Canada and in the St. Croix sandstone of the west, lying in each case above the Potsdam sandstone.[1]

An article by Dr. J. H. Kloos, translated by Prof. Winchell, describes the rocks of the Falls of St. Anthony and the St. Croix River, and gives a description and a diagrammatic section of the river bank at Taylor's Falls, illustrating an unconformity between the Potsdam sandstone and the subjacent copper-bearing rocks.[2]

In an account of the geology of a deep well drilled at Minneapolis Prof. Winchell states that the drill passed through sandstone in the lower portion of the well as indicated in the following section:[3]

	Feet.
1. Drift	10
2. Trenton limestone	24
3. Light, crumbling sandstone (St. Peter?)	125
4. Brown-red pipestone clay	2
5. Potsdam sand	42
6. Red quartzite, Potsdam	102
7. Light colored Potsdam sand and shales	722
8. Red Potsdam sandstone and shales at least	347
	1,374

Particular attention is called to the brown-red pipestone clay of the section, which is the equivalent of No. 12 of that section on page 212. No. 6 of the section quoted is compared to a layer of red quartzite, seen at New Ulm, Minnesota, and at Baraboo, Wisconsin. Commenting upon this he says:

> Thus we find an interbedded red quartzite in the Potsdam formation similar to those seen in the same formation in the Black Hills and in several other places in the Rocky Mountain region.[4]

Attention is called to this statement as it is a correlation of a quartzite of the Upper Cambrian rocks of the Black Hills with a bed of quartzite in the Sioux quartzite series of Minnesota and the Baraboo quartzite series of Wisconsin.

In a tabulation of the strata beneath the lower fossiliferous sand-

[1] The Potsdam Sandstone. Geol. and Nat. Hist. Survey Minnesota, 10th Ann. Rep. for 1881, 1882, p. 136.

[2] Geological notes on Minnesota. (Translated by N. H. Winchell.) Geol. and Nat. Hist. Survey Minnesota, 10th Ann. Rep. for 1881, 1882, pp. 186–200.

[3] The geology of the deep well drilled by C. C. Whelpley at Minneapolis, at the "C" Washburn Mill. Geol. and Nat. Hist. Survey Minnesota, 10th Ann. Rep. for 1881, 1882, p. 217.

[4] Op. cit., p. 214.

stone or St. Croix sandstone, Prof. N. H. Winchell defines the Potsdam formation as follows:[1]

Potsdam formation.—Tilted red sandstones, shales and conglomerates, changed by igneous gabbros and dolerites locally to red quartzites, felsites, quartz-porphyries and to red granite. The Keweenian and Huronian in part, in Wisconsin.

He places the Taconic group second and defines it as follows:

Taconic group.—Horizontal black slates and gray quartzites, with interbedded limestones and diorites (the Animikie group), changed to tilted slates, quartzites, iron ores, and silicious marble. The Gunflint beds, the Mesabi iron rocks, the Ogishke Muncie conglomerate (?), the Thomson slates and quartzites, the Vermilion iron rocks; the Huronian in part, in Wisconsin and Michigan.

A description of the Sioux quartzite as it occurs at New Ulm is given by Prof. Winchell in the second annual report.[2] In the first volume of the final report of the Minnesota survey he describes the St. Croix sandstone as it occurs in Houston, Winona, and Fillmore Counties.[3] The entire thickness of the formation in Winona varies from 488 to 558 feet.[4] Under the title of Potsdam quartzite a description is given in this volume by Messrs. Winchell and Upham of the pre-Cambrian quartzite of northwestern Minnesota.[5]

From the Sioux quartzite series at Pipestone, Minnesota, Prof. Winchell described, in 1885, *Lingula calumet* and *Paradoxides barberi*, referring them to the equivalent of the Potsdam sandstone of New York.[6]

In a note on the revision of the stratigraphy of the Cambrian in Minnesota, Prof. Winchell includes under the St. Croix terrane, Jordan sandstone, St. Lawrence limestone, shales, and Dresbach sandrock.[7] It is interesting to note that after the upper member of the St. Croix, the Jordan sandstone, we find "Potsdam" (?); also after the Dresbach sandstone at the base and (Potsdam) after formations placed as pre-St. Croix.

The geological age of the Sioux quartzite of the pipestone quarries in Dakota and Minnesota is discussed by Prof. R. D. Irving,[8] who concludes that their tilted position, great thickness, and lithological contrast with the Potsdam sandstone "make it evident that they are not merely a downward continuation of that formation, but, on the contrary, form a great unconformably underlying series."

---

[1] Notes on the age of the rocks of the Mesabi and Vermilion iron districts. Geol. and Nat. Hist., Survey Minnesota, 11th Ann. Rep. for 1883, 1884, p. 170.

[2] The geology of the Minnesota Valley. Geol. and Nat. Hist. Surv., Minn. 2d Ann. Rep. for 1873, 1874, p. 157.

[3] The Geology of Minnesota. Vol. I, of the Final Report, 1884, pp. 223–227, 257–259.

[4] Op. cit., p. 258.

[5] Op. cit. pp. 422–424, 490–503.

[6] Fossils from the red quartzite at Pipestone. Geol. and Nat. Hist. Surv. Minnesota, 13th Ann. Rep. for 1884, 1885, pp. 65–72.

[7] Revision of the stratigraphy of the Cambrian in Minnesota. Geol. and Nat. Hist. Survey Minnesota, 14th Ann. Rep. for 1885, 1886, p. 337

[8] Preliminary paper on an Investigation of the Archean formations of the Northwestern States. U. S. Geol. Surv. 5th Ann. Rep., 1883-84, 1885, pp. 201, 202.

Mr. Warren Upham in notes on the geology of Minnehaha County, Dakota,[1] refers to the rocks in various portions of Minnehaha County as "*Typical Potsdam quartzite,*" but he mentions no reasons for concluding it to be of this age. No fossils were found in it.

In the second volume of the Geology of Minnesota Prof. N. H. Winchell states that the St. Croix formation in Wabasha County is about 250 or 300 feet in thickness; and it is not known to vary particularly in its stratigraphic composition from that of Winona County.[2] In the account of the geology of Goodhue County he describes the formation and accompanies it with a list of the fossils found in the St. Croix formation in the Upper Mississippi Valley.[3]

In the same volume Mr. Warren Upham describes the St. Croix sandstone as it occurs in Chisago County, in the valley of the St. Croix River.[4] He also describes the formation as it occurs in Pine County, along the upper portion of the St. Croix River.[5]

In an article on the age of the St. Croix sandstone, Prof. N. H. Winchell discusses its relations to the typical Potsdam of New York and concludes it is a distinct formation.[6] In an account of a deep well drilled at Stillwater, Minnesota, it is stated by Mr. A. D. Meads that—

> The well starts at about 740 feet above the sea, and after passing through 701 feet of drift, white friable sandstone, and green shales belonging to the St. Croix and so-called Potsdam of the Northwest, enters a series of dark red and brown shales and brown feldspathic sandstones which exhibited a thickness of more than 1,500 feet. These gradually assume characters of a volcanic detrital tuff—"amygdaloidal," calcitic, kaolinic, still brown, slightly siliceous—and finally at the depth of about 3,300 feet unmistakable beds of trap rock were encountered, alternating with sandstone beds. At this depth some grains of native copper were seen in the drillings.[7]

Prof. N. H. Winchell has recently published his latest conclusions on the Taconic rocks of Minnesota. On the evidence of the tracks described by Mr. G. F. Matthew[8] he considers the Taconic (Lower Cambrian) age of the "Animike" formation to be sufficiently established, and thinks the name Taconic should be substituted for Animike.[9] The Pewabic quartzite is referred to the base of the "Animike," although he says: "it was at first supposed to be the equivalent of the Potsdam (Paradoxides horizon) which apparently overlies the "Animike."[10]

A correction is made in relation to the reference of the stratigraphic position of the Granular quartz as follows:[11]

---

[1] Notes on the geology of Minnehaha County, Dakota. Geol. and Nat. Hist. Survey, Minnesota, 13th Ann. Rep. for 1884, 1885, pp. 88-97.

[2] The Geology of Minnesota. Vol. 2 of Final Report, 1888, p. 13

[3] Op. cit., pp. 31-36.

[4] The Geology of Minnesota. Vol. 2, Final Report, 1888, pp. 407, 409.

[5] Op. cit., pp. 637-642.

[6] Geol. and Nat. Hist. Surv. of Minn., 17th Ann. Rep. for 1888, 1889, pp. 56-64.

[7] The Stillwater Deep Well. American Geologist, vol. 3, 1889, p. 342.

[8] Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 39, 1890, p. 145.

[9] The iron ores of Minnesota. Geol. and Nat. Hist. Surv. Minnesota. Bull. No. 6, 1891, p. 113.

[10] Op. cit., p. 125.

[11] Op. cit. Foot note on pp. 417, 418.

The writer wishes to correct the view published by him in the American Geologist a few years ago ("A Great Primordial Quartzyte," vol. 1, p. 178), that the granular quartz probably overlies the black slate of the Taconic system, and is equivalent of the Red sandrock of Vermont. The Red sandrock appears to be a part and near the top of the "Georgia series" and above the Winooski marble, but the "granular quartz" lies below the Winooski marble. The typical Potsdam is probably the "granular quartz." But the Red sandrock, and also some light-colored, loose sandstones still higher have very largely been regarded its equivalent.

IOWA.

On the map accompanying Dr. D. D. Owen's report of the geological survey of Wisconsin, Iowa, and Minnesota a small area is colored as the Potsdam sandstone of New York, in the northeastern corner of the State.[1]

As State geologist of Iowa, Prof. J. Hall stated that the Potsdam sandstone attains its greatest exposures in Minnesota and Wisconsin north of the limits of Iowa, and about the regions of Lake Pepin. The excavation of the Upper Iowa River, however, has removed the calciferous sandstone; so that at the junction of that river with the Mississippi there is exposed a broad belt of the lower rock. A general description of the sandstone is given with the statement that some slightly calcareous bands contain fragments of trilobites. In numerous localities shells of Lingula are found, though by no means so abundantly as in the same rocks in Minnesota. These fossiliferous bands appear in the vicinity of Lansing.[2] In the same volume there is a general account of the Potsdam or inferior sandstone by Prof. J. D. Whitney.[3]

In a general description of the geology of Iowa Dr. C. A. White describes the Sioux quartzite as occurring in the extreme northwestern corner of the State. In the table of classification he places it as Huronian (?) and beneath the Potsdam sandstone.[4] This is the quartzite referred to the Potsdam in Minnesota by Prof. N. H. Winchell. In describing the Potsdam sandstone Dr. White states that it reaches a known thickness in Iowa of 300 feet, and it is exposed only in a small portion of the northeastern corner of the State.[5]

In the account of a deep well at Emmetsburg, Iowa, Prof. N. H. Winchell refers to a white sandstone found beneath the blue shales of St. Croix, assigning it a thickness of 107 feet. The rock beneath this, which Mr. Swan, who kept a record of the well, called granite, is referred to the Potsdam quartzite.[6]

---

[1] Geol. Surv. of Wisc., Iowa, and Minn.; and, incidentally, of a portion of Nebraska Territory, Philadelphia, 1852.

[2] Geology of Iowa, vol. 1, 1858, pp. 47-48.

[3] Ibid., pp. 328-331.

[4] General geology. Azoic, Lower Silurian, Upper Silurian, and Devonian systems. Geol. Surv. Iowa, Rep., vol. 1, 1870, p. 168.

[5] Op. cit., p. 172.

[6] Section of a deep well at Emmetsburg, Iowa. Minn. Acad. Sci. Bull., vol. 1, 1880, pp. 387, 388.

In describing a deep well at Washington, in southeastern Iowa, Prof. S. Calvin states that a gray sandstone 1,230 feet from the surface probably represents the upper part of the Potsdam series.[1]

LAKE SUPERIOR SANDSTONE.

In an account of a journey along the south shore of Lake Superior, Dr. J. J. Bigsby describes a red and white sandstone, for the most part horizontal, that predominates along the shore, resting in places on granite.[2] He also mentions the red sandstone of Point Keewawoonan and the sandrock described to him by Mr. Thomson.[3]

The description of the geology of Lake Superior, by Capt. H. W. Bayfield, mentions a horizontally stratified sandstone that he traced from one extremity of the lake to the other, on both the north and south shores, and on many of the islands in the lake. A description of the mode of occurrence of the sandstone on the south shore of the lake is given, with several diagrams illustrating the unconformity between the granite and the sandstone.[4] He considers it quite probable that the formation extended to the west and southwest as far as the foot of the Rocky Mountains, and that it might possibly be the same as the sandstone at the Falls of Niagara, etc., but concluded it required much more elaborate investigation than has yet been bestowed to render it certain that the sandstone of Lake Superior and that of the extensive tracts of country mentioned are the same formation. He then gives reasons for terming the sandstone of Lake Superior the Old Red. These are its position immediately on the granite, its structure, and component parts.[5] No fossils were observed. The student will find in this paper of Capt. Bayfield's a very fair description of the sandstones as they occur about Lake Superior, and it is worth reading in connection with the controversy in relation to their age.

As State geologist of Michigan Dr. Douglass Houghton reported upon the strata of the northern peninsula. In the second annual report he says that "the *Old Red sandstone*" has been very much shattered by the protrusion of trap rock through it.[6] In his third report a more extended account is given of the Lake Superior sandstone on the Ste. Marie River. The sandstone passes conformably beneath the superjacent limestone.[7] Of the bulk of the formation he says:

> The Lake Superior sandstone in its easterly prolongation does not attain a very great thickness, but in proceeding westerly this thickness is vastly increased, attaining on the south shore of Lake Superior to several hundred feet.

---

[1] Notes on the formations passed through in boring the deep well at Washington, Iowa. American Geologist, vol. 1, 1888, p. 30.

[2] Notes on the geography and geology of Lake Superior. Quart. Jour. Lit., Sci. and Arts (of the Royal Inst. of Gt. Brit.) vol. 18, 1825, p. 33.

[3] Op. cit., p. 260.

[4] Outlines of the geology of Lake Superior. Quebec Lit. and Hist. Soc. Trans., vol. 1, 1829, p. 17, figs. 2 and 3, on plate.

[5] Op. cit., p. 19.

[6] (Peninsula District.) Second annual report State geologist of Michigan, Detroit, 1839, p. 14.

[7] Third annual report State geologist of Michigan. House Reps. Document, No. 8, 1840, p. 14.

So far as my examinations during the past year have extended the rock is destitute of fossils, and in fact after a careful examination (several years ago) along its whole line of outcrop, on the southerly shore of Lake Superior, I have never been able to detect in the rocks a single contained fossil.[1]

The fourth report describes the "lower or red sandstone and shales" as follows:

The red sandstone, with its accompanying red and gray shales, occupies a much larger extent of the country bordering upon Lake Superior than any other single rock or group of rocks. It rests upon the primary and metamorphic rocks immediately west from Chocolate River; upon the conglomerate and mixed rocks from near Eagle River, of Keweenaw Point, west to the head of Lake Superior; upon the primary trap, metamorphic and conglomerate rocks of the north shore of the lake, and upon the conglomerate rock of Isle Royale. It is this rock which forms the basis of the level plateaus or valleys occupying the spaces between the several ranges of hills south from Lake Superior, and west from Chocolate River. In these last situations this rock is frequently seen undisturbed to surround the bases of isolated knobs of granite, though when near to or in contact with knobs or [of] trap there are invariable evidences of very great disturbance.[2]

A second bed of sandstone is described as the "upper or gray sandstone." "Upon the shore of Lake Superior, and extending from Point Iroquois to Grand Island, a sandstone occurs, differing widely in its appearance from that before described. This sandstone rests *unconformably* upon the red sandstone, the former dipping gently to the south or southeast, while the latter dips very considerably to the north or northwest."[3]

A sandy limerock rests conformably and immediately upon the upper or gray sandstone. The tabulation of the rocks of the Upper Peninsula is as follows:[4]

9. Tertiary clays and sands.
8. Upper limerock group (embracing as members the Drummond Island and Mackinaw limestones).
7. Lower lime rock and shales.
6. Sandy or intermediate limestone.

		Thickness.
5. Upper or gray sandstone, mean	feet..	700
4. Lower or red sand rock and shales, extreme	do...	6,500
3. Mixed conglomerate and sand rock, extreme	do...	4,200
2. Conglomerate rock, extreme	do...	5,260

1. Metamorphic, trap, and primary rocks.

A detailed account of the red sandrock and shales is given on pages 37 to 41. This is followed by a description of the upper or gray sand rock, of which he says:

The only remaining rock which separates the red sandrock from the limestone lying to the south is a gray or brownish sandrock that is almost wholly composed of grains of quartz, usually feebly cemented with calcareous matter. The composition of this rock differs from that of the lower sand rock in being more exclusively quartz, while in epoch of deposition the rock under consideration should not be confounded with that of the red sandstone. It has already been stated that the red sandrock of

[1] Op. cit., p. 15.
[2] Fourth Ann. Rep. State geologist of Michigan, 1841, pp. 18, 19.
[3] Op. cit., p. 19.
[4] Op. cit., p. 22.

the south coast dips regularly northerly, while the upper or gray sandstone dips equally regularly south or southeasterly, in which respect the last-mentioned rock conforms to the limestones resting upon it, while it rests itself upon the uptilted edge of the red sandrock below.[1]

The upper sandrock, like the lower, abounds in clearly defined ripple marks, and its line of cleavage is very irregular, frequently being opposed to the line of stratification over very considerable districts of country. Two indistinct species of fucoides were all the fossils noticed in connection with it.

I was unable to obtain any observations upon the thickness of the upper sand rock which were satisfactory, but from the imperfect observations which were obtained I was led to conclude that the average thickness as far westerly as the Pictured Rocks does not vary far from 700 feet. The upper sandrock, like the rocks before mentioned, wedges out as far as we proceed in an easterly direction.[2]

When presenting to the Boston Society of Natural History an account of his visit to Lake Superior Prof. H. D. Rogers states that he discovered in the neighborhood of Chocolate and Carp Rivers the following conditions of stratification:

First, a group of rocks, the equivalents, undoubtedly, of the Primal sandstone and Primal slate of Profs. W. B. Rogers and H. D. Rogers, denominated, in the nomenclature of the New York survey, the Potsdam sandstone, and these rocks, highly inclined, and traversed by parallel east and west axes. Secondly, upon the uptilted edges of this earliest Paleozoic formation rests, in an unconformable position and with a very gentle northern dip, the conglomerates and shales of the red sandstone series. Specimens of the conglomerate were displayed, in which the pebbles were all from the older rocks. Mr. Rogers thought this fact of unconformable superposition an almost conclusive proof of a post-Paleozoic date; and he proceeded to argue, from various points of analogy between the red sandstone itself, its trappean dikes, and their mineral associations, with similar components of the Mesozoic or new red sandstone of the Atlantic States, that the formation in question is of equivalent age and origin with this last-named interesting group of rocks.[3]

In his reconnaissance of the Chippewa land district of Wisconsin, Dr. D. D. Owen examined a portion of the shores of Lake Superior. He noted the red sandstone, its mode of occurrence, and character. He states that various views have been advanced by different writers regarding the age of the red sandstone, marls, and conglomerates of Lake Superior. Some authors have referred them to the date of the oldest sandstones of the New York system; others believe them to be contemporaneous with the New Red sandstone of Great Britain and the *bunter Sandstein* of Germany. He further states:

Judging, however, from lithological and mineralogical character, there certainly is strong presumptive evidence that they were deposited subsequently to the Carboniferous era.

He calls attention to the strong resemblance between them and the formations above the Coal Measures, not only of the State, but of some parts of Europe.

Ranging through Connecticut, New Jersey, Maryland, and Virginia there are red sandstone and marly beds that are almost a counterpart of some portion of the Lake Superior formations, as well in aspect as in composition; like them, too, they are

[1] Op. cit., pp. 41, 42.

[2] Op. cit., pp. 42, 43.

[3] On the mineralogy and geology of the south shore of Lake Superior. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist. Proc. vol. 2, 1846, p. 125.

traversed by ranges of intrusive trap, with accompanying veins of copper. * * * To draw up in detail a comparison between these formations and those of the Northwest would, at this early stage of the survey of Wisconsin, be premature.[1]

In 1849 Prof. C. T. Jackson argued that the red sandstone and conglomerate rocks of Keweenaw Point existed there anterior to the elevation of the trap rocks, and that the eastern sandstone and the red sandstone were the same in geologic age. After reviewing the mode of occurrence and the relation of the sandstone to other rocks, especially a limestone from which a fragment of *Pentamerus oblongus* was obtained, indicating the upper member of the Niagara, New York series, he concluded that the sandstone of Keweenaw Point was not of the Potsdam series, but that it was most probably the New Red, or that system of sandstones which is regarded as such in New England.[2]

In their report of 1849 Messrs. Foster and Whitney color the accompanying map of Keweenaw Point so as to indicate that they consider the sandstone and conglomerate superior to the trap series, forming the base of the Silurian system. The same coloring and nomenclature are used on the map of the district between Mackinaw Bay and Chocolate River, and that between Portage Lake and Montreal River and Isle Royale.[3]

In the same volume, following the report by Foster and Whitney, is a general description of the region between Keweenaw Point and Montreal River. The writer says the age of the sandstone of Lake Superior could not be determined by any evidence he had been able to collect. It is entirely destitute of fossils, and lies directly upon granitic rocks.[4] Whether it is written by Mr. Foster or Prof. Whitney is not stated.

Mr. J. W. Foster states that he is disposed to regard the sandstone of Lake Superior as resting at the base of all the fossiliferous rocks.[5] He evidently considered the horizontally bedded sandstone at Keweenaw Point the same as the disturbed sandstone on the opposite side. Full descriptive details of the sandstones at Keweenaw Point are also given by Mr. W. A. Burt.[6] In the same report Mr. Bela Hubbard states that the Red sandrock is the equivalent of the Potsdam red sandrock of the New York reports, and that on the map the geographic distribution skirts the trap range on both sides, but having by far its broadest extension on the south side.

---

[1] Report of a geological reconnaissance of the Chippewa land district of Wisconsin; and incidentally of a part of Iowa and of the Minnesota Territory, 30th Congress, 1st sess., Senate Ex. Doc. No. 57, 1848. pp 57-58.

[2] Report on the geological and mineralogical survey of the mineral lands of the United States in the State of Michigan, Ex. Doc. No. 5, House of Reps., 31st Congress, 1st sess., part 3, 1849, pp. 398, 399, 452.

[3] Synopsis of the explorations of the geological corps in the Lake Superior land district in the northern peninsula of Michigan, Ex. Doc. No. 5, House of Reps., 31st Congress, 1st sess., part 3, 1849, pp. 605–625.

[4] Op. cit., p. 655.

[5] Notes on the geology and topography of portions of the country adjacent to Lakes Superior and Michigan, in the Chippewa land district, Ex. Doc. No. 5, 31st Congress, 1st sess., part 3, 1849, p. 781.

[6] Topography and geology of the survey of a district of township lines south of Lake Superior, 1845. H. R. Ex. Doc. No. 5, part 3, 1849, pp. 815–839.

It here lies in nearly horizontal strata, though at the coast a slight dip inland is observable, becoming more apparent as it approaches the basin of Portage Lake. In its approach to the trap, however, it is found more or less tilted from its original horizontal position, and is also very much altered by its contact with that igneous rock. The evidences both of the deposition of this extensive rock formation in calm and shallow waters and of the subsequent change induced in it by the trap rocks when in a fused or heated state are very important.[1]

In their report upon the copper region of Lake Superior, Messrs. Foster and Whitney tabulate the stratified sedimentary rocks as follows:[2]

I. *Conglomerate.*—Not strictly a sedimentary rock, but a volcanic tuff.

II. *Inferior sandstone.*—Potsdam sandstone.

III. *Compact or Lower Magnesian limestone.*—Calciferous sandstone, Chazy limestone, Bird's-eye and Black River limestone.

This table is followed by a detailed description of the conglomerate, sandstone and superjacent limestone. No attempt is made to differentiate the horizontally bedded Red sandstone, of Keweenaw Point, from the banded sandstone that occurs on the western part of the Point.

Of the transition of the sandstone to the magnesian limestone they say:

The sandstone, as we ascend from the lower strata to the higher, is found to be less colored by the oxides of iron, and to take into its composition particles of lime until finally it passes into well characterized, compact, magnesian limestone. * * * We apply the term magnesian to this belt to define its lithological characters, although the associated organic remains would seem to indicate the presence of several of the lower Silurian groups, which can not be recognized by lithological differences.[3]

A notice of the work by Foster and Whitney in the copper district was published in the American Journal of Science, 2d series, volume 12, 1851, pp. 222–239.

In a letter describing the Silurian terrane of Lake Superior, Messrs. Foster and Whitney reaffirm their opinion that the standstones of Lake Superior are of the age of the Potsdam of the New York series, and that the section exhibits the Azoic system at the base, upon which rests the conglomerate, formed of igneous rocks, and then in turn the Potsdam sandstone, the Calciferous sandstone, the Trenton limestone, etc.[4]

In commenting upon this statement of Messrs. Foster and Whitney, that the Lake Superior sandstones are of the same age as the Potsdam sandrock of New York, Prof. Jules Marcou disputes their correlation and considers the formation as equivalent to the New Red sandstone, as was stated by Prof. Jackson.[5]

---

[1] General observations upon the geology and topography of the district south of Lake Superior, subdivided in 1845 under Houghton, House of Reps., Ex. Doc. No. 5, part 3, 1849, p. 810.

[2] Report on the geology and topography of a portion of the Lake Superior land district in the State of Michigan. Washington, 1850. Stratified and sedimentary rocks. Vol. 1, 1850, p. 99.

[3] Op. cit., p. 117.

[4] (Aperçu de l'ensemble des Terrains Siluriens du lac Supérieur.) Bull. Soc. géol. France, 2e sér., vol. 8, 1850, p. 91.

[5] Response à lettre de MM. Foster et Whitney sur le lac Supérieur. Bull. Soc. géol. France, 2e sér., vol. 8, 1850, pp. 101–105.

In their report on the geology of the Lake Superior land district, Messrs. Foster and Whitney describe, under the heading of "Potsdam sandstone,"[1] a sandstone on the north shore, occurring in insulated patches on the isthmus between Thunder and Black Bays. This sandstone attains, according to Logan, a thickness of at least 200 feet.[2] On the south shore the sandstones of the northwestern side of Keweenaw Point are considered to be of the same age as those on the south side of the point, extending along the lake shore from Keweenaw Bay to St. Mary's River. The sandstone extending southward, subparallel to the bay, is also correlated with the sandstone mentioned; and all of these are correlated with the Potsdam sandstone of the New York series. They quote from the manuscript of Prof. James Hall in relation to the westward extension of the sandstone in Wisconsin, in the Upper Mississippi Valley.[3]

In some observations on the age of the sandstones of the United States Prof. C. T. Jackson concludes that the Lake Superior sandstone is of Upper Silurian age.[4]

Messrs. Foster and Whitney returned to the discussion of the age of the sandstone of Lake Superior in 1851 and conclude there can no longer be any doubt that this sandstone lies below the lowest fossiliferous members of the Silurian in the position of the Potsdam sandstone of New York.[5] They describe with considerable detail the mode of occurrence of the horizontally bedded sandstone at the southeastern end of the lake along the Sault Ste. Marie, with its extension westward along the coast to Keweenaw Bay. They show it to be one continuous formation around the great central granitic and azoic nucleus; that it is a granular, quartzose material, mostly friable, and containing little iron; that the thickness of the whole formation did not exceed 100 feet at Sault Ste. Marie, and that at the Pictured Rocks it was probably more than 300 or 350 feet, gradually increasing from the east toward the west.[6] They then describe a sandstone on the western side of the Keweenaw Point and Isle Royale which is now referred to the Algonkian. This is the best résumé of the information relating to the Lake Superior sandstone published up to its date.

In his tabulation of the lowest Protozoic sandstones Dr. D. D. Owen places the Lake Superior ferruginous and argillaceous sandstones, shales, and conglomerates at the base of the section, assigning it a thickness of 5,000 feet.[7] On the accompanying map the Lake Superior

[1] Lower Silurian System. Potsdam and Calciferous Sandstones. Rept. on Geol. of Lake Superior Land Distr., Pt. 2, 1851, pp. 113-134.

[2] Op. cit., p. 115.

[3] Op. cit., pp. 133, 134.

[4] [Some observations on the age of the sandstones of the United States.] Bost. Soc. Nat. Hist. Proc., vol. 3, 1851, pp. 335, 336.

[5] On the age of the sandstone of Lake Superior, with a description of the phenomena of igneous rocks. Am. Assoc. Proc., vol. 5, 1851, p. 25.

[6] Op. cit., p. 29.

[7] Geol. Surv. of Wis., Iowa, and Minn., and, incidentally, of a portion of Nebraska Territory. Philadelphia, 1852, p. 53.

sandstone west of the Montreal River is colored the same as the sandstones of the central portion of Wisconsin referred to the Potsdam. In the legend the Lake Superior sandstone is included with the lower sandstones of Wisconsin and Minnesota as the equivalent of the Potsdam sandstone of New York.

Mr. J. C. Norwood calls attention to the resemblance of the sandstone on the south shore of Lake Superior, west of Montreal River, to the sandstones of the Chippewa, St. Croix, and Kettle Rivers. A section is given that occurs above the mouth of Cranberry River.[1]

In some remarks connected with the geology of the north shore of Lake Superior Prof. J. D. Whitney states that from Sault Ste. Marie, following the south shore in its whole extent, and along the north side as far east as the northeastern extremity of Neepigon Bay, we find exposed on the lake shore only shales, sandstones, and conglomerates, the equivalent of the Potsdam sandstone and the accompanying trappean rocks.[2]

In speaking of the red sandstone of Lake Superior Mr. H. R. Schoolcraft states that in his expedition of 1820 he recognized a sandstone at the Sault of St. Mary's. He says:

> That this is the Old Red sandstone may be inferred simply from the fact that, although deposited originally in horizontal beds, its position has been disturbed in many localities.[3]

In his report as State geologist of Michigan Dr. A. Winchell describes the sandstone at the Falls of the St. Mary's River, where it has a measured thickness of at least 18 feet. On some of the surfaces he observed obscure traces of Algæ. On some specimens from the Montreal River not less than three species of fossil plants have been discovered. He favors the view that the sandstones of the south shore of Lake Superior are of the age of the Potsdam.[4]

When commenting upon the fact that Prof. Jules Marcou had referred the red sandstone of Lake Superior to the Trias Prof. J. S. Newberry states:

> No American geologist will need to be informed that the sandstones of Lake Superior are of the age of the Potsdam of New York and lie at the base of the Silurian series. It is true that there is considerable lithological resemblance between the Potsdam sandstones of Lake Superior and those overlying the Carboniferous series in New Mexico; but that fact serves simply to show how fallacious are the inferences derived alone from lithological characters.[5]

---

[1] Description of the geology of middle and western Minn., including the country adjacent to the northwest and part of the southwest shore of Lake Superior. Rep. Geol. Surv. of Wis., Iowa, and Minn., and, incidentally, of a portion of Nebraska Territory. Philadelphia, 1852, p. 269.

[2] Remarks on some points connected with the geology of the north shore of Lake Superior. Am. Assoc. Proc., vol. 9, 1855, p. 205.

[3] Observations on the geology and mineralogy of the region embracing the sources of the Mississippi River and the Great Lake basins during the expedition of 1820. Schoolcraft's Mississippi River. Phila., 1855, pp. 316, 317.

[4] Geology, general sketch. Geol. Surv. Michigan, 1st Biennial Rep. of Prog. Lansing, 1861, pp. 49–51.

[5] Geological report. Report upon the Colorado River of the West, expl. in 1857–'58 by Lieut. J. C. Ives. Part III, 1861, p. 75.

Of the sandstone at the base of the fossiliferous series Dr. T. S. Hunt says:

Along the northern rim of the great Paleozoic basin of North America the Potsdam sandstone of the New York geologists is unquestionably the lowest rock from below Quebec to the Island of Montreal, and thence passing up the valley of Lake Champlain and sweeping round the Adirondack Mountains until it reenters Canada and soon disappears to the north of Lake Ontario, where the Birdseye and Black River limestones repose directly upon the Laurentian rocks, and furthermore overlie the great Lake Superior group of slates and sandstones, which, reposing on the unconformable Huronian system, constitute the upper copper-bearing rocks of this region. This Lake Superior group, as Sir William Logan remarks, may then include the Potsdam, Calciferous, and Chazy, and thus be equivalent in part to the Quebec group, hereafter to be described.[1]

The section on the Montreal River, including 11,850 feet of strata, according to Mr. Charles Whittlesey, is referred by him to the Potsdam sandstone, with a statement that this is not the entire thickness of the Potsdam at the mouth of the Montreal.[2] He states that some foreign geologists have essayed to place this formation nearly at the summit of the geological system, not only without evidence but against the most conclusive proof. He correlates the sandstone at the Falls of the St. Croix, with its abundance of fossils, with the sandstone of the section mentioned, and states that it has been traced stratigraphically beneath the Trenton and Calciferous strata of the New York survey, on the St. Mary's River, at the Pictured Rocks, on the Escanawba, the Menominee, Oconto, Wolf, Wisconsin, and St. Croix Rivers.[3]

The view that the sandstones and superjacent rocks of the south shore of Lake Superior were deposited within the lake's basin when the lake stood at a higher level has been held only, as far as known to me, by Mr. Thomas Macfarlane. In a report on the geological formations of Lake Superior he says:

On the other hand, the Upper rocks and St. Mary sandstones are never found far inland, but occur close to the shore in comparatively low-lying land and rocks. They seem to have had, as the theater of their eruption and deposition, the bottom of the lake, at a time when its surface was at a higher level than it is at present, although not so high as the general surface of the surrounding Laurentian and Huronian hills.[4]

In a paper on the position of the sandstone of the southern slope of a portion of Keweenaw Point, Lake Superior, Prof. Alexander Agassiz states that the sandstone of the southern side of the mineral range in the vicinity of Torch Lake is plainly of a different age, lying, as it does, unconformably upon the former (i. e., the trap). This view agrees with that held by the geologists who refer the sandstone of the southern portion of Keweenaw Point to the Potsdam, and that of the northern coast to a pre-Potsdam formation.[5]

---

[1] On some points in American geology. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 31, 1861, p. 397.

[2] The Penokie Mineral Range, Wiscons'n. Bost. Soc. Nat. Hist. Proc., vol. 9, 1863, p. 238.

[3] Op. cit., p. 239.

[4] On the geological formation of Lake Superior. Canad. Naturalist, new ser., vol. 3, 1867, p. 178.

[5] On the position of the sandstone of the southern slope of a portion of Keweenaw Point, Lake Superior. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 11, 1868, p. 245.

In an article on the age of the copper-bearing rocks of Lake Superior, Messrs. Brooks and Pumpelly refer the sandstones of the south shore to the Silurian, and state that they were deposited unconformably upon the subjacent copper-bearing rocks.[1]

In his report upon the Paleozoic rocks of Michigan, Dr. C. Rominger concludes that the Lake Superior sandstone is the equivalent of the Potsdam sandstone. He states that there is no record of any instance in which recognizable fossils were found in situ in the Lake Superior sandstone.[2] The reference of the sandstones of the western side of Keweenaw Point is based upon their lithologic resemblance to those east of the trap range along the center of the point.

In a paper on some points in the geology of northern Wisconsin Prof. R. D. Irving drew the conclusions that—

> (1) The Copper-Bearing and Huronian series were once spread out horizontally one over the other and owe their present highly tilted position to one and the same disturbance. (2) That subsequently, after a long period of erosion, the horizontal Silurian sandstones were laid down over and against the upturned edges of the Copper-Bearing series, filling also the synclinal, in Ashland County, which lies between the northward and southward dipping sandstones. (3) That hence the Copper-Bearing series is more clearly allied to the Archean than to the Silurian rocks.[3]

He describes the series of horizontal sandstones and shales that form the basement rock of the Apostle Islands and the north coast line of Ashland, Bayfield, and Douglas Counties. These he considers in every way to be the equivalent, or, which is more probable, the downward continuation of light-colored Primordial sandstone of the Mississippi Valley. They reappear farther south, on the headwaters of the St. Croix, from whence they can be traced uninterruptedly until they disappear beneath the light-colored sandstones of the Mississippi Valley.[4] This paper of Prof. Irving's was reprinted in the American Journal of Science, under the title "On the age of the copper-bearing rocks of Lake Superior," etc.[5]

It is stated by Mr. E. T. Sweet that the term "Lake Superior sandstone" "is generally employed to designate the reddish aluminous sandstones which nearly everywhere border the south shore of Lake Superior. They also form the basement rock of the Apostle Islands. They have never been found in a tilted condition."[6] He considers that Dr. Rominger, of the Michigan Geological Survey, has definitely settled that these sandstones are the downward continuation of the light-colored sandstones of the Mississippi Valley;[7] and concludes that the western sandstone of Irving, or that of the Apostle Islands and vicin-

---

[1] On the age of the copper-bearing rocks of Lake Superior. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 3, 1872, pp. 431 432.

[2] Paleozoic rocks. Geol. Surv. Michigan, Upper Peninsula, 1869-1873, vol. 1, pt. 3, 1873, p. 88.

[3] On some points in the geology of northern Wisconsin. Wisconsin Acad. Sci. Trans., vol. 2, 1874, p. 117.

[4] Op. cit., pp. 114, 115.

[5] Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 8, 1874, pp. 46–58.

[6] Notes on the geology of northern Wisconsin. Wis. Acad. Sci. Trans., vol. 3, 1876, p. 68.

[7] Op. cit., p. 69.

ity, is of the same age as the eastern sandstone, along the shore of Lake Superior, east of Keweenaw Point.

A description of the Lake Superior sandstone is given by Dr. Irving in his account of the geological structure of northern Wisconsin that is very full and complete, and it will be referred to again in the summary of our present knowledge of that formation.[1] In the account of the geology of the eastern Lake Superior district in the same volume Dr. Irving described the Lake Superior or Potsdam sandstone of the Apostle Islands and adjoining shore.[2] An account of the sandstone as it occurs in the western Lake Superior district is given by Mr. E. T. Sweet in 1880.[3]

Dr. M. E. Wadsworth notes that the sandstone at Marquette rests upon the Azoic schists. That south of the Carp River, in the locality figured by Messrs. Foster and Whitney, the sandstone strata are seen to abut against and overlie the vertical edges of the quartzite.[4]

A general account of the Potsdam sandstone series is given by Dr. R. D. Irving in his article on the mineral resources of Wisconsin. Of the Lake Superior sandstone he says:

> The horizontal sandstone of the south shore of Lake Superior belongs unquestionably to this formation, though it is a matter of doubt whether the two sandstones do or ever did connect. The Lake Superior rock differs from its more southern equivalent in its red color.[5]

The sandstones at the eastern end of Lake Superior, on the St. Mary's River, were referred to the Chazy formation by Sir W. E. Logan. Dr. T. S. Hunt calls this view a speculation, which was shown to be untenable by the establishment of the Potsdam age of the sandstones overlying the quartzites of Wisconsin and in northern Michigan, where Rominger finds the upper sandstone to be overlaid by Calciferous-Chazy beds.[6]

Th · Eastern sandstone, or that between the Keweenaw Ridge and eastward along the south shore of Lake Superior, is well described by Dr. R. D. Irving in his account of the copper-bearing rocks of Lake Superior.[7] This is followed by a description of the western sandstone, or that occurring on the south shore of the lake, west of Keweenaw Point. An abstract of this report also appeared in the third annual report of the U. S. Geological Survey, 1883, pp. 89–188.

In an article on the age of the rocks of the northern shore of Lake Superior Dr. A. R. C. Selwyn states that he considers the trap and sandstone to be of Lower Cambrian age. He calls them all Lower Cambrian, which includes Potsdam and Primordial Silurian. He holds

---

[1] Geological structure of northern Wisconsin. Geol. Wisc. Surv. of 1873–'79, vol. 3, 1880, pp. 1–25.
[2] Op. cit., pp. 207–210.
[3] Lake Superior Sandstone. Geol. Wisc. Surv. of 1873–1879, vol. 3, 1880, pp. 356–352.
[4] Notes on the geology of the iron and copper districts of Lake Superior. Camb. Mus. Comp. Zoöl. Bull., vol. 7, 1880, p. 60.
[5] The mineral resources of Wisconsin. Am. Inst. Mining Eng. Trans., vol. 8, 1880, p. 489.
[6] The Geology of Lake Superior. Science, vol. 1, 1883, p. 219.
[7] U. S. Geol. Survey, Monograph, vol. 5, 1883, pp. 351–365.

that there is at present no evidence whatever on the north shore of Lake Superior of their holding any other place in the geological series.[1]

This view of Dr. Selwyn's was concurred in by Prof. J. D. Whitney, who stated it to be the opinion held by Messrs. Foster and Whitney thirty years previously.[2]

Dr. Irving took exception to the statement made by Dr. Selwyn that there is no evidence whatever of the rocks holding any other place in the geological series than that including the Potsdam and Primordial Silurian, and stated:

(1) That the copper-bearing rocks underlie unconformably, and with an immense unconformity, a series of sandstones holding Cambrian fossils. * * * (2) That the copper-bearing strata also underlie unconformably the "eastern sandstone" of the south shore of the eastern half of Lake Superior. * * * (3) That the time-gap between the copper-bearing series and the Huronian was too long to allow of our classing them together.[3]

The view of Messrs. Selwyn and Whitney was also opposed by Dr. T. S. Hunt, who referred the basal sandstone to a pre-Cambrian group.[4]

In a note on Dr. Selwyn's paper, Prof. N. H. Winchell concurs with him in the sweeping affirmation that there is at present no evidence whatever of their (i. e., the copper-bearing rocks) holding any other place in the geological series than that of the Potsdam or Primordial Silurian. "I would also add that there is incontestible evidence that they *can hold no other*."[5]

In opposition to the view of Prof. Winchell, Prof. Chamberlin stated the evidence upon which the pre-Cambrian age of the copper-bearing series of Lake Superior is based. It is (1) the general stratigraphical relation indicated. This he considers to be the weakest of all. (2) Differences in thickness; (3) differences in constitution; (4) unconformity; (5) the inherent inconsistency of the view; (6) the dynamic simplicity of the view; (7) the discovery of a like series in the Grand Cañon of the Colorado.[6]

Shortly after Prof. Chamberlin's paper, Dr. M. E. Wadsworth published an article on the relations of the Keweenawan series to the Eastern sandstones. His observations differ from those of Dr. Irving and he claims that the Keweenawan series has no existence distinct from or older than the sandstone of Potsdam age. In speaking of his observations he says, "These observations also prove at the birthplace of the Keweenawan series, that formation and the Eastern sandstone were one and the same."[7]

The paper of Dr. Wadsworth was followed shortly after by one of Messrs. Whitney and Wadsworth on the "Azoic system and its pro-

[1] Age of the rocks on the northern shore of Lake Superior. Science, vol. 1, 1883, pp. 11, 221.
[2] Geology of Lake Superior. Science, vol. 1, 1883, p. 39.
[3] The copper-bearing rocks of Lake Superior. Science, vol. 1, 1883, pp. 140, 141, 359, 360, 422.
[4] The Geology of Lake Superior. Science, vol. 1, 1883, pp. 218, 219.
[5] The Lake Superior Rocks. Science, vol. 1, 1883, p. 334.
[6] The copper-bearing series of Lake Superior. Science, vol. 1, 1883, pp. 453–455.
[7] On the relation of the "Keweenawan series" to the Eastern sandstone in the vicinity of Torch Lake, Michigan. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist. Proc., vol. 23, 1884, p. 174.

posed subdivisions." This contains a critical review of the published papers upon the age of the copper-bearing rocks of Michigan, Wisconsin, and Canada.[1]

In their observations on the junction between the Eastern sandstone and the Keweenaw series Messrs. Irving and Chamberlin published a map of Keweenaw Point, showing the distribution of the Eastern sandstone to be confined to the southeastern side of the point, the northern and northwestern sides being formed of the Keweenaw series.[2] They discuss the views held by Messrs. Jackson, Foster and Whitney, Agassiz, Rominger, and Credner upon the stratigraphic position in the geologic series of the Eastern sandstone and the sandstones of the Keweenawan series; and give also a detailed account of the contact between the sandstone and the Keweenaw rocks.

MISSOURI.

The first notice we have of a sandstone about the Ozark Mountains of southeastern Missouri is by Dr. Edwin James in 1822, who called attention to an inclined sandstone, like that of the Alleghany Mountains, between which and the granite there intervened a stratum of clay slate highly inclined and resembling the primitive clay slate of New England.[3]

This was followed twenty-nine years later by a sketch of the geology of the State of Missouri, in which Mr. H. King describes what he calls the second magnesian limestone. Beneath this is a sandstone which he was inclined to correlate with the Potsdam sandstone of New York. The presence, however, of Lituites, Euomphalus, Pleurotomaria, Natica? was opposed to this view, but the stratigraphic and lithologic evidence sustains the correlation. In order to explain the presence of the fossils he suggests that "this may be an independent formation not represented in New York or elsewhere, and yet nearly contemporary with the first evidences of organic existence there and to be associated with them in the same geological epoch."[4]

The work of the first Missouri survey proved the presence of four magnesian limestones with a belt of sandstone between the third and the fourth, the fourth limestone forming the base of the series. Prof. G. C. Swallow describes the third sandstone, above the fourth magnesian limestone, as a white saccharoidal sandstone, made up of slightly cohering transparent globular and angular particles of silex. It is assigned a thickness of 30 feet, and owing to its position below the third magnesian limestone is considered at least as old as the Calciferous sandrock, and there is great probability that it may prove to be beneath

[1] The Azoic system and its proposed subdivisions. Harvard Mus. Comp. Zool. Bull., vol. 7, 1881, pp. 482–498.

[2] Observations on the junction between the Eastern sandstone and the Keweenaw series on Keweenaw Point, Lake Superior. U. S. Geol. Surv. Bull., No. 23, 1885, pl. i.

[3] Geological sketches of the Mississippi Valley. Phil. Acad. Sci., Jour., vol. 2, 1822, p. 329.

[4] Some remarks on the geology of the State of Missouri. Am. Assoc. Proc., vol. 5 1851, pp. 190, 191.

the Potsdam sandstone.[1] In a foot-note on page 129 it is said that since the report was written Mr. Meek discovered a trilobite in the third magnesian limestone, which he and Dr. B. F. Shumard considered identical with one from the Potsdam sandstone of the Northwest. In the tabulation of the strata as determined in Missouri both the third sandstone, and the fourth magnesian limestone are included under Calciferous sandrock.[2]

When speaking of the geological map and the section of the rocks of Missouri, prepared prior to 1861, Prof. G. C. Swallow states that the Potsdam sandstone rests unconformably upon the Azoic stratified slates of Missouri.[3]

The presence of the third sandstone and the fourth magnesian limestone is noted by Mr. F. B. Meek in Morgan and Miller Counties. In Miller County the two formations have a thickness of 33 feet and in Morgan County the third sandstone varies from 15 to 30 feet. The fourth magnesian limestone is assigned a thickness of 150 feet.[4]

On the map of Madison County, prepared by Messrs. C. J. Norwood and G. C. Broadhead, the geographic distribution of the rocks referred to the Cambrian and pre-Cambrian is delineated.[5]

Below the third magnesian limestone in Madison, St. Francois, and Iron Counties, Prof. G. C. Broadhead found siliceous or gritstone beds with intercalated magnesian limestones and subjacent to these are marble beds, beneath which occur sandstones, conglomerates, and shales. These are numbered one, two, and three, respectively. In No. 3, beneath the third magnesian limestone, *Lingulella lamborni*, Meek occurs. On the St. Francois River, in Madison County, the lower unaltered sandstones rest directly on the granite.[6]

At a deep well at the St. Louis County Insane Asylum the following section is referred to as beneath the third magnesian limestone:

11. 98 feet of third sandstone.
12. 384 feet of fourth magnesian limestone.
13. 54 feet of Potsdam sandstone.
14. 245·4 feet, mostly granite, although a portion of the upper part may be sandstone.
15. 40 feet of granite.[7]

A more detailed account of the strata beneath the third magnesian limestone is given on pages 352–357. The fossiliferous bed is separated as a "Lingula grit." In this there were observed *Lingulella lamborni*,

[1] Geology of Missouri. Silurian System. Geol. Surv. Missouri; 1st and 2d ann. repts., part 1, 1855, pp. 128, 129.

[2] Op. cit., pls. between pp. 60 and 61.

[3] Remarks on the Geological Map and Section of the rocks of Missouri. Am. Nat., vol. 5, 1871, p. 541.

[4] Reports on the geological survey of the State of Missouri, 1855–1871, 1873, pp. 127, 149.

[5] Atlas accompanying Geological Survey of Missouri, Report, including field work of 1873–1874, vol. 1. Jefferson City, 1874.

[6] Op. cit., p. 31.

[7] Op. cit., p., 32.

Orthoceras, a gasteropod, and a form resembling a cross-section of a coral of the genus Zaphrentis.

In a description of the southeast Missouri lead district Prof. Broadhead gives a résumé of the geology, and suggests that if the *Lingula* (*Lingulella*) *lamborni* and Scolithus should be found in the Calciferous group he would prefer to assign all the rocks from the lower sandstone to No. 1, inclusive, as Calciferous.[1] The marble of southeastern Missouri was referred in 1882 by Prof. Broadhead to the older series or Potsdam, and the upper series to the Upper Silurian, with the statement that Potsdam quarries are found in Madison, Iron, and Reynolds counties. The marble beds will be spoken of in the summary of the Cambrian rocks of Missouri.[2]

In a paper upon "The Geological History of the Ozark Uplift" Prof. G. C. Broadhead describes, in 1889,[3] in a general way rocks referred to the Potsdam and the Calciferous formations. Of these he says:

> The evidence is that the sandstones and magnesian limestones (Potsdam and Calciferous) were deposited in Archean valleys of erosion, for they generally repose nearly horizontally, or with slight inclination, upon the Archean.[4]

EASTERN BORDER OR ADIRONDACK SUB-PROVINCE.

This includes the area about the Adirondack Mountains of New York and the adjoining portions of Canada to the north.

In a report of the geological structure of the county of Saratoga, Mr. J. H. Steele states that a conglomerated mass of rock is found in the town of Greenfield not far from its south line, on the southeast side of the Kayadarosseras Mountains, resting upon the primitive rocks. He says:

> It consists of rounded pebbles of quartz, from the size of a small shot to that of a man's head, united into one common mass by a kind of coarse ferruginous sand. It extends along the mountains to no great distance, but fragments of it lay scattered in all directions, and, indeed, are found along the whole extent of the south line of the town of Greenfield, and in various other places.[5]

Under the heading of "Coarse Siliceous sandstone" a description is given of an extended horizontal stratum along the west part of the north line of the town of Saratoga Springs, and some way into the town of Greenfield:

> It is a coarse, hard rock, resembling common quartz in its fracture, but it is more loose and granular in its structure. It is of a white color, and when heated and thrown into water, crumbles into a fine white sand. * * * I have been somewhat at a loss to know where to place this formation, but from several circumstances I am confident it should be placed among the oldest of the transition class.[6]

---

[1] The Southeastern Missouri lead district. Am. Inst. Mining, Eng., Trans., vol. 5, 1877, p. 102.

[2] Marble of southeast Missouri. Kansas City Review, vol. 5, 1882, pp. 524–526.

[3] Am. Geologist, vol. 3, 1889, pp. 6–13.

[4] Op. cit., p. 8.

[5] A report of the geological structure of the county of Saratoga. Memoirs of the Board of Agriculture of the State of New York, vol. 2, 1823, p. 53.

[6] Op. cit., p. 54.

A description is also given of a Calcareous sandstone as it occurs on the west side of the Kayadarosseras Mountains.[1] The sandstone referred to by Mr. Steele, and also the lower portion of the Calcareous sandstone, are now known to be of Upper Cambrian age.

Various references are made by Prof. Amos Eaton to the Calciferous sandrock (or Transition sandrock) as examined by him in the valley of the Mohawk. He also says: "Perhaps the Transition sandstone of the Green Mountain series may not be connected with that of the Macomb Mountain series."[2] Most of Prof. Eaton's references to this formation are very indefinite, and he included it with the Calciferous sandrock, as exposed at Little Falls in the valley of the Mohawk. That he was aware of its stratigraphic position is shown by the comparisons made between the Transition sandstone of the Green Mountains and that of the Macomb Mountains, the latter now being known as the Adirondacks.

The attention of Mr. J. H. Steele was called to the oolitic formation about 2 miles from the village of Saratoga Springs. He described the occurrence of great quantities of calcareous concretions of a most singular structure; they are mostly hemispherical, but many of them are globular and vary in size from half an inch to that of 2 feet in diameter; they are obviously composed of a series of successive layers, nearly parallel and perfectly concentric, etc.[3] This is the first notice of a fossil that was subsequently described by Prof. James Hall as *Cryptozoon proliferum*.[4] It occurs in layers in which the Upper Cambrian or Dikelocephalus fauna is found a few miles west of Saratoga Springs.

In the first annual report of the geological survey of New York Dr. Emmons mentions a sandstone resting on the primitive rocks both on the Lake Champlain side of the Adirondack Mountains, at Whitehall, and on the western side, in the vicinity of Theresa, on the Indian River.[5] In this preliminary paper the Calciferous sandrock of Prof. Eaton and the subjacent sandstone are not clearly differentiated. In the second report, however, he separated the sandstone as the "sandstone of Potsdam."[6] His description of the rock is as follows:

> I shall not enter upon its geological relations any further than to state that in Potsdam and other towns in which it appears it uniformly rests on the primary strata; and in no part of the county is there any rock which interposes itself between it and the Primary, so that it appears here as the oldest representative of the transition series. The identification of this rock with the sandstones along the southern border of Lake Ontario will be a matter of some difficulty. It is geologically below

[1] Op. cit., p. 56.

[2] A geological and agricultural survey of the district adjoining the Erie Canal, 1824, p. 78.

[3] A description of the oolitic formation lately discovered in the county of Saratoga and State of New York. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 9, 1825, p. 17.

[4] Cryptozoon, n. g., Cryptozoon proliferum, n. sp. Description of Pl. VI, 36th Ann. Rep. N. Y. State Mus. Nat. Hist., 1884.

[5] First annual report of the second geological district of New York. First annual report of the geological survey of New York. Albany, 1837, pp. 106, 107.

[6] Report of the geologist of the second geological district of New York. Second annual report of the geological survey of New York. Albany, 1838, p. 214.

the transition limestone and never in the northern district alternates with it, but always holds the relation of an inferior rock.[1]

This rock is a true sandstone, of red, yellowish red, gray, and grayish white colors. It is made up of grains of sand and held together without a cement. Intermixed with the siliceous grains are finer particles of a yellowish feldspar, which do not essentially change the character of the sandstone, but they show the probable source from which materials forming it were originally derived, viz, some of the varieties of granite. Unlike, however, most of the sandstones, it is destitute of scales of mica. The coloring matter of the rock is evidently oxide of iron, but unequally diffused through it, giving it intensity or deepness of color in proportion to its quantity. In some places it is almost wanting, which makes it, when pulverized, a good material for glass. The grains and particles in its composition are generally angular, but where it takes the character of a conglomerate, as it does in the inferior layers, they are frequently rounded. The thicker strata exhibit an obscurely striped appearance, owing to prevalence of certain colors in the different layers.[2]

In the description of the sandstone on the Lake Champlain side in Essex County it is said:

This I consider the same formation I have described under the name of the "Potsdam sandstone." Its position is evidently beneath the Transition limestone and Calciferous sandrock. It is very deficient in organic relics, though not entirely destitute of them. It is unnecessary to repeat what has already been said of this rock; it is purely quartzose or siliceous in its composition and finely stratified. It dips to the northeast at Port Kent, at an angle varying from 5° to 10°. The places where it occurs along Lake Champlain are indicated on the map of a part of this county, to which I refer the reader. This rock at Keeseville has been rent in the most remarkable manner; several fissures, the principal one of which extends nearly a mile, and through which the Au Sable flows, have been opened by some convulsion in nature to the depth in some places of 100 feet, and from 5 to 20 feet wide. Near the bottom of the fissure at the High Bridge, as it is called, I discovered numerous specimens of a small bivalve mollusca, a Lingula. I found also, on examination, that the same fossil occurred through an extent of seventy feet at least, and so far as I could discover it was the only fossil inclosed in the rock. It is extremely thin and delicate, yet the shell is perfectly preserved, and is probably one of the oldest inhabitants of the globe, as the rock in which they occur is the oldest of the transition series.[3]

In the second annual report of the paleontological department of the New York survey Prof. T. A. Conrad tabulated the formations to show the order of superposition and some characteristic fossils in the transition strata. On the primary occurs No. 1, formed of variegated sandstones (Potsdam sandstone of Emmons), and the olive sandstones and slates, characterized by *Fucoides serra*. These are classified under the Cambrian system of Prof. Sedgwick.

The base of the Lower Silurian is a gray calcareous sandstone, characterized by *Lingula acuminata*. This part of his table is as follows:[4]

LOWER SILURIAN STRATA.

Gray calcareous sandstone	*Lingula acuminata*

[1] Op. cit., p. 214.
[2] Op. cit., p. 215.
[3] Op. cit., p. 230.
[4] Second annual report of the paleontological department of the survey. Third annual report of the geological survey of New York. Albany, 1839, p. 63.

CAMBRIAN SYSTEM (SEDGWICK).

1. { Olive sandstone and slate.....*Fucoides serra* (Brong.)
{ Variegated sandstone (Potsdam sandstone of Emmons).....*Dictuolites radians*

A description of the geographic distribution of the Potsdam sandstone in Clinton County is given by Dr. Emmons in the third annual report of the New York State survey. He also describes its stratigraphic character and appearance, and states that at Flat Rock the sandstone is more or less a conglomerate and coarser than at Potsdam or Keeseville.[1]

A description of the Potsdam sandstone as it occurs on the western side of the Adirondacks, in Jefferson County, is given by Dr. Emmons in his fourth annual report, as follows:[2]

Lying unconformably upon the primary is the Potsdam sandstone. It is therefore next in the series. It is a firmer rock, more crystalline, and less porous than the same rock in St. Lawrence, and especially that belonging to Potsdam.

The only fossil found in it was a small linguloid shell called *Lingula ovata*.[3]

The presence of the Potsdam sandstone in Lewis County is noted by Mr. Lardner Vanuxem, who states that the sandstone appears in the northeastern part of the county in low ridges, with all the characteristics given by Prof. Emmons, in whose district it is an extensive rock.[4]

The Potsdam sandstone as it occurs in Washington County, upon the eastern side of the mountains, is described by Dr. W. W. Mather as

a hard, siliceous sandstone, white, red, gray, yellowish, and frequently striped. It is well developed at Whitehall, where it has a thickness of 150 to 200 feet. It extends up the valley of Wood Creek in a southerly direction by Comstock's Landing, 1 mile east of Fort Ann, and so on farther south, diminishing in thickness and becoming interlaminated with finer-grained strata of grits, slates, and shales. Some of the strata of this rock are covered with the most beautifully characterized ripple-marks, as perfect as if just formed on the sand of a sea beach, while the rock is of the most indurated kind of sandstone.[5]

The only fossils noticed were fucoidal impressions.

The geographic distribution of the Potsdam sandstone about the Adirondacks is shown on the map of 1841 that accompanies the final report of the State geologists of New York. On a geological map of the Middle and Western States by Prof. James Hall[6] the main geographic distribution is indicated and a small area on the southern side of the Wisconsin River in Wisconsin is the same tint as the Potsdam area of New York

[1] Third annual report of the second geological district. Third annual report of the geological survey of New York, 1839, pp. 231, 232.

[2] Fourth annual report of the survey of the second geological district of New York. Fourth annual report of the geological survey of New York. Albany, 1840, p. 322.

[3] Op. cit., p 323.

[4] Fourth annual report of the geological survey of the 3d district. Fourth Report of the Geological Survey of New York. Albany, 1840, pp. 363, 368.

[5] Fifth annual report on the geological survey of the 1st geological district. Fifth Annual Report of the Geological Survey of New York, 1841, p. 102.

[6] Geological map of the Middle and Western States. Geol. of New York. Report on the Fourth Geol. district, Albany, 1843.

In a tabulation of the Lower Silurian strata of the State of New York, published in 1842, Prof. T. A. Conrad states that the Cambrian system has proved to be the Lower Silurian, and he places the Potsdam sandstone at the base of the latter system, beneath the Calciferous sandstone.[1]

The final report of the geology of the second geological district contains a summary by Dr. Emmons of the characters of the Potsdam sandstone as found in the counties of Warren, Essex, Clinton, Franklin, St. Lawrence, and Jefferson, and also gives details of the formation as found in each county.[2] A description of the formation in detail and also a general descriptive summary of the formation is given by Mr. Lardner Vanuxem as it occurs in his district,[3] and Dr. W. W. Mather describes it as it occurs in Washington County and in Saratoga County.[4] Prof. James Hall describes it concisely in an account of the rocks of New York State. In its geographic distribution the rock is known in Canada, on Lake Superior, and, from its position, it is probably the same that appears on the Mississippi River mentioned by Dr. Owen in the report on the lead region of the northwest.[5] He also identifies it with No. 1 of the Pennsylvania survey, or a sandstone extending through New Jersey, Pennsylvania, and Virginia.[6]

In the account of his travels in North America Sir Charles Lyell describes the Potsdam sandstone as he saw it at Au Sable Chasm, near Keeseville, Essex County, New York. He speaks of it as a siliceous sandstone:

> In many places, this most ancient of the fossiliferous rocks of New York (the Potsdam sandstone) is divided into laminæ by the remains of innumerable shells of the genus *Lingula*. They are in such profusion as to form black seams like mica, for which they were at first mistaken. With the Lingula occurs another placunoid shell allied to, if not identical, according to Prof. E. Forbes, with a fossil which occurs in company with a small Lingula in the lowest beds of the English Silurian series at Builth, in Brecknockshire.[7]

A general account of the Potsdam sandstone is given by Dr. E. Emmons in the Agriculture of New York. It is an excellent summary of the general characters of the formation.[8]

The Potsdam sandstone of Lewis County is described by Mr. F. B. Hough in a general manner. He states that it thins out to an unimportant stratum as compared with the formation in St. Lawrence County; also that the superjacent Calciferous sandrock is represented by only a

[1] Observations on the Silurian and Devonian systems of the United States, with descriptions of new organic remains. Phila. Acad. Sci. Jour., vol. 8, 1842, pp. 229, 230.
[2] Geology of New York, part 2, second geological (northern) district, pp. 102–105, 177–179, etc.
[3] Geology of New York, part 3, third geological (central) district, Albany 1842, pp. 28, 29.
[4] Geology of New York; geology of the first (southeastern) district. Albany, 1843, p. 418.
[5] Geology of New York; geology of the fourth (western) geological district. Albany, 1843, p. 47
[6] Op. cit., p. 28.
[7] Travels in North America. New York, 1845, vol. 2, pp. 131, 132.
[8] Agriculture of New York, vol. 1, 1846, pp. 117, 118.

thin layer of the fucoidal sandstone.[1] In 1850 he called attention to cylindrical masses from 3 inches to 15 and 20 feet in diameter that occur in the Potsdam sandstone near Somerville, St. Lawrence County.[2]

The description and accompanying figure recall the *Cryptozoon proliferum* described by Prof. Hall from the Potsdam formation of Saratoga County. A year later attention was again called by Mr. Hough to the cylindrical masses.[3] They are described as vertical cylinders from 2 inches to 20 feet and upward in diameter, and show a concentric structure. Numerous smaller bodies, not larger than an orange, of a spheroidal structure are also met with in the vicinity. No traces of organic life were observed in the matrix. It is evident that these bodies are unlike the Saratoga Cryptozoon.

A more extended definition of the Potsdam sandstone was given by Dr. E. Emmons in 1856. He then included with it the lower sandstone of the upper Mississippi Valley, and No. 1 of the Pennsylvania survey.[4]

An excellent summary of the existing knowledge of the Potsdam sandstone was given by Dr. J. J. Bigsby in 1858 in a paper on the Paleozoic Basin of the State of New York. A description is given of the mineral characters, mode of transition, stratigraphic position, mode of occurrence, thickness, and paleontologic character.[5]

In a tabulation of the succession of sedimentary rocks Prof. Richard Owen states that the Potsdam sandstone of New York geologists is considered by some English writers as belonging to a separate system, the Cambrian.[6]

The presence of the peculiar cylindrical masses in the Potsdam sandstone mentioned by Mr. Hough is also noticed by Mr. T. G. B. Lloyd in Jefferson County,[7] but without any attempt to explain their origin or nature.

In a note on the geology of Port Henry, New York, Dr. T. S. Hunt states that the Potsdam sandstone and the basal member of the overlying Paleozoic series is well seen in a railway cut near Port Henry. The lower beds are massive and compact, dark bluish or iron gray, with lighter bands and thin, blackish, shaly layers. The only fossils observed were *Scolithus linearis* and *S. canadensis* of the Potsdam of the Ottawa Basin.[8]

---

[1] Observations on the geology of Lewis County, New York. Am. Jour. Sci. and Agric., vol. 5, 1847, p. 273.

[2] Catalogue of mineralogical and geological specimens received from F. B. Hough, 3d Annual Rep. of Regts. Univ. State Cab. Nat. Hist, 1850, pp. 32, 33.

[3] On the cylindrical structure observed in Potsdam sandstone. Am. Assoc. Proc., vol. 4, 1851, pp. 352–354.

[4] American Geology, containing a full statement of the principles of the science, with full illustrations of the characteristic American fossils. Albany, 1856, vol. 1, pt. 2, pp. 128–132.

[5] On the Paleozoic Basin of the State of New York. Part I. A synoptical view of the mineralogical and fossil characters of the Paleozoic strata of the State of New York. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 14, 1858, pp. 338, 339.

[6] Preliminary observations; general report and description by counties. (Lower and Upper Silurian). Geological reconnaissance of Indiana, made in 1859–'60. Indianapolis, 1862, p. 14.

[7] Geological notes from the State of New York. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 32, 1876, pp. 78, 79.

[8] The geology of Port Henry, New York. Canadian Nat., new ser., vol. 10, 1883, p. 421.

A short notice of the discovery of a massive limestone superjacent to the typical Potsdam sandstone containing species of the Potsdam fauna equivalent to the fauna of the upper horizon of the lower sandstone of the Mississippi Valley was made by Mr. C. D. Walcott in 1884. The limestone was originally referred to the Calciferous formation.[1]

Mention is made of the contact between the Potsdam sandstone and the subjacent pre-Cambrian rocks in the vicinity of Fort Ann, Washington County, New York, by Mr. C. E. Hall.[2]

A section of the Potsdam sandstone with the superjacent limestone, carrying the Upper Cambrian fauna was published by Mr. C. D. Walcott in 1886 accompanied by a list of the fossils found and a comparison of them with the Wisconsin fauna referred to the Potsdam by Prof. James Hall.[3]

In the fifth annual report of the State geologist of New York, in some field notes on the geology of the Mohawk Valley, with a map, Messrs. C. E. Beecher and C. E. Hall describe a section that occurs in a cut on the West Shore Railroad at "Little Nose, Randall, Montgomery County, New York."[4] In the woodcut illustrating the section, a breccia that occurs unconformably beneath the Calciferous sandrock is stated to contain Potsdam sandstone, crystalline limestone, quartzite, etc. The evidence upon which the fragments of sandstone were identified as of Potsdam age is not given.

In a paper on a great Primordial quartzite Prof. N. H. Winchell republishes a description of the Potsdam sandstone by Dr. Emmons and correlates the formation with the "granular quartz" of the western slope of the Green Mountains and the pre-Cambrian quartzites of Wisconsin and Minnesota.[5]

In a paper read before the Geological Society of America, at Washington, D. C., December 31, 1890, Messrs. N. S. Shaler and H. S. Williams described the presence of a thin bed of shale beneath the Calciferous sandrock and just above a thin bed of sandstone that rests unconformably upon the subjacent pre-Paleozoic rocks. The locality is a quarry at Little Falls. In the shale numerous specimens of *Lingulepis acuminata* were found.[6]

CANADIAN EXTENSION.

In a report of progress of the geological survey of Canada for 1845–'46 Sir W. E. Logan notes the presence of a sandstone in the Ottawa district, but is doubtful whether it represents the Potsdam sandstone, as

[1] Potsdam fauna at Saratoga, New York. Science, vol. 3, 1884, pp. 136, 137.

[2] Laurentian Magnetic iron ore deposits from northern New York, accompanied by a geological map of Essex County. Report of the State geologist for the year 1884. Albany, 1885, p. 32.

[3] Second contribution to the studies of the Cambrian faunas of North America. U. S. Geol. Survey, Bull. No. 30, 1886, pp. 21, 22.

[4] Fifth Ann. Rept. State Geologist of N. Y., for 1885. Albany, 1886, p. 10.

[5] A Great Primordial Quartzite. Am. Geol., vol. 1, 1888, pp. 173–178.

[6] Unpublished.

it may be in the lower beds of the Calciferous.[1] In a later report he noted the presence of the Potsdam sandstone on the north shore of the St. Lawrence at Murray's Bay, 90 miles below Montreal, describing it as a formation consisting of white, translucent, slaty quartz-rock having an exposed thickness of 45 feet and conformably subjacent to the Calciferous sandrock.[2]

A brief summary of the lithologic and paleontologic characters of the Potsdam sandstones in Canada was read by Dr. T. S. Hunt before the American Association for the Advancement of Science in 1851.[3]

In an extended paper on the foot-prints occurring in the Potsdam sandstone of Canada, Sir W. E. Logan describes the Potsdam sandstone as it occurs in Canada in the St. Lawrence Valley. He states that—

> The sandstone in Beauharnois County and the neighboring part of the State of New York is from 300 to 700 feet thick. In the lower part it contains many beds of conglomerate, with quartz pebbles, and it has some red layers; but towards the top it becomes a fine-grained, hard, white sandstone, and at the summit it is interstratified with calcareous layers, forming a passage to the rock which overlies it.[4]

The description of the extention of the Potsdam sandstone between the River of the North and Beauharnois was continued by Sir W. E. Logan in the report for 1851–'52.[5] In the same volume Dr. Alexander Murray describes the sandstone along the shores of the St. Lawrence in the vicinity of Brockville, and also in the outcrops exposed between the rivers Ottawa and St. Lawrence.[6]

This was followed in 1854 by the account of Dr. Murray's exploration between Kingston and Lake Simcoe. In this region the Potsdam is not largely developed, the greatest thickness of it observed in any one place being certainly not over 40 or 50 feet, while west of Knowlton Lake, in Loughborough, it appears gradually to decrease in thickness, and eventually to die out altogether.[7]

In the summary of the work of the Geological Survey of Canada from its commencement to 1863, there is given a very complete description of the stratigraphic, lithologic, and paleontologic characters of the Potsdam sandstone as known in Canada.[8] Since that time very little has been published upon the formation.

---

[1] Report on sequence and distribution of the formations (on the Ottawa). Geol. Surv. Canada: Report of progress for 1845–'46, Montreal, 1847, p. 51.

[2] Report on Bay St. Paul and Murray Bay. Geol. Surv. Canada: Report of progress for 1848–'49. Toronto, 1850, pp. 10, 11.

[3] Remarks on the lithological and paleontological characters of the Potsdam sandstone. Am. Assoc. Proc., vol. 6, 1852, pp. 271–273.

[4] On the foot-prints occurring in the Potsdam sandstone of Canada. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., Lond., vol. 8, 1852, p. 200.

[5] Report [on country between Rivière du Nord and Beauharnois] Geol. Surv. Canada, 1851–'52. 1852. pp. 8–14.

[6] Report [of country lying between rivers Ottawa and St. Lawrence] Geol. Survey of Canada for 1851–'52, 1852, pp. 64–67.

[7] [Exploration between Kingston and Lake Simcoe.] Geol. Surv. Canada: Report of progress for 1852–'53, 1854, p. 109.

[8] Geological Survey of Canada: Report of progress from its commencement to 1863. Montreal, 1863, pp. 87–109.

WESTERN BORDER OR ROCKY MOUNTAIN SUBPROVINCE.

This subprovince includes central Colorado, central and northern Wyoming, South Dakota and southern central Montana.

COLORADO.

The probable presence of the equivalent of the Potsdam sandstone of the Mississippi Valley in the Colorado range was noticed by Dr. F. V. Hayden in 1874. He says:

The lowest beds of sedimentary rocks are rather coarse sandstones, and conglomerate made up of water-worn quartz pebbles, with very irregular laminæ of deposition, the whole reminding one of the Potsdam group. * * * There is considerable variety in the aggregate of beds here, which may be regarded as Silurian, and we may conclude that the Potsdam group is quite well represented, and that it is possible that some of the higher divisions occur. These rocks require a still more careful study, yet it is an interesting fact to know of their existence in this locality. In the lower sandstones I found a species of Lingula, the present season, probably a Potsdam form.[1]

These observations were made along William's Cañon, 2 or 3 miles above Colorado Springs. Of the probable presence of the "Potsdam" in the South Park, on the north slope of Mount Lincoln, and on all of the surrounding high mountains he does not appear to have any doubt. He says:

Before going further I will state what I believe to be the age of all the limestones and quartzites which seem to cover the highest mountains, and in which most of the valuable mines are found. I think there is no doubt that they belong to the Potsdam group, though I was unable to discover any fossils. Dr. Peale found a few obscure forms which indicated that the group is of the same age as those next to the granites in Utah, which we now know are of that age.[2]

While studying the geology from Denver to Colorado Springs, Dr. A. C. Peale examined and measured a number of sections passing from various horizons in the superjacent rocks to the Archean. In one, extending from Glen Eyrie eastward to Camp Creek, there are 40 feet of coarse sandstone of a grayish white, dark green, gray and brick red color. This series rests upon the granite; is beneath limestones referred to the Quebec group, and is considered to represent the Potsdam group.[3]

On Trout Creek, in Bergen Park, 93 feet of sandstone is referred to the Potsdam.[4] In a reddish sandstone superjacent to the "Potsdam" a number of fossils were found that were referred to the Quebec group. As now known this fauna is of Lower Silurian (Ordovician) age, corresponding to the Calciferous zone of the New York section. Another section was measured on one of the eastern tributaries of Trout Creek,

[1] Report of F. V. Hayden, U. S. Geologist. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., 7th Ann. Rep., 1874, p. 35.
[2] Op. cit., p. 41.
[3] Report of A. C. Peale, M. D., geologist of the South Park Division. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., 7th Ann. Rep., 1874, p. 202.
[4] Op. cit., p. 208.

in which 67 feet of sandstone occur resting upon the granite. Of these sections Dr. Peale says:

A comparison of the sections given above shows that the Potsdam group is represented by sandstones having a thickness of from 60 to 80 feet, while the beds that represent the Quebec group are a little over 100 feet thick.[1]

References to the sandstone supposed to be Potsdam are also found on pages 226, 236, 242, and 255.

During the field season of 1874 Dr. A. C. Peale found on Eagle River a series of beds resting on the gneiss and schist. From their position and lithologic relations to corresponding beds seen in the Colorado Range in 1873 the lower layers are referred to the Potsdam group. It is represented by a bed of white quartzite.[2]

A reference to the probable occurrence of the Potsdam horizon upon the eastern side of the Colorado Range is made by Mr. Arnold Hague, in his general description of the geology of the range. From the fact that a sandstone occurs in the Black Hills, and contains fossils of a Primordial type, he thinks the sandstone occupying a similar stratigraphic position in the Colorado Range will be found to contain the same fauna.[3]

On the geological map of Colorado, published by Dr. Hayden in 1877, the quartzite and the limestone referred to the Potsdam series are included with the Silurian, and their geographic distribution is merged with the latter on the map.

In his synopsis of the geological formations found in Colorado Dr. F. M. Endlich tabulates the localities and formation of the "Potsdam group."[4]

When describing the Paleozoic rocks of the Mosquito Range in central Colorado, Mr. S. F. Emmons states that the Cambrian is represented by quartzites passing gradually upward into calcareous shales, with limestones of probably Silurian age above, the aggregate thickness of the two being about 400 feet.[5] In the tabulation of the Mosquito section the Cambrian white quartzite is given a thickness of from 150 to 200 feet before passing into calcareous and argillaceous shales above.[6] The only fossil remains found in this series occur in a bed of greenish chloritic slates on the east flank of Quandary Peak, about a mile above the Monte Cristo mine. They belong to the genus Dikelocephalus and resemble closely *Dikelocephalus minnesotensis* of the Potsdam formation. From analogy with other sections Mr. Emmons thinks it safe to assume that the fossiliferous shales occur above the main body of quartzite and near the base of the transition series.[7]

---

[1] Op. cit., p. 209.

[2] Report on Middle Division. (Stratigraphy-Paleozoic formations). U. S. Geol. and Geog. Survey of the Terr., Ann. Rep. for 1874, 1876, pp. 110, 111.

[3] Hague, Arnold, and S. F. Emmons. Descriptive geology U. S. Geol. Expl. of the Fortieth Par.; Clarence King, vol. 2, 1877, p. 29.

[4] Report of F. M. Endlich, geologist of the White River Division. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., 10th Ann. Rep., 1878, p. 130.

[5] Geology and mining industry of Leadville, Colorado. Mon. U. S. Geol. Survey, vol. 12, 1886, p. 55.

[6] Op. cit., p. 57.

[7] Op. cit., p. 60.

WYOMING.

As geologist to Capt. Reynold's expedition to the headwaters of the Missouri and Yellowstone Rivers, Dr. F. V. Hayden identified, in 1861, the fossiliferous "Potsdam" sandstone of the Black Hills, and considered a sandstone holding the same relative position and exhibiting the same lithologic characters on the slopes of the Big Horn Range as the same formation. It is further stated that "a few thin layers of fine calcareous sandstone were observed filled with fossils characteristic of this period."[1]

From the Big Horn Range he crossed to the Laramie Range. At the head of the La Bonté Creek he noticed a bed resting discordantly upon Azoic slates 50 to 100 feet in thickness, holding the same position and possessing the same lithologic characters it reveals at other localities.

I could discover no fossils in it at this point, but I am confident that this bed represents the Potsdam sandstone. This rock (the Potsdam) is more or less changed by heat from beneath, but I was able to trace it continuously from the source of the Chugwater Creek to the source of Cache la Poudre, a distance of over 100 miles. It was also seen along the eastern slope of the Wind River Mountains, but did not contain any organic remains.[2]

A more extended account of the character of the Primordial sandstone of the Rocky Mountains was published by Dr. Hayden in 1862.[3] It is accompanied by a description of the species of fossils found in the Black Hills and the Big Horn Mountains and further reference to it will be found in the account of the Cambrian rocks of Wyoming.

All of the essential part of Dr. Hayden's article of 1861 was reprinted in an article on the Geology and Natural History of the Upper Missouri, which appeared in 1863.[4] This essay is, as stated by the author, the substance of a geological report made by him to Capt. Raynolds on the exploration of the Yellowstone and Missouri Rivers. The latter report was issued in 1869, accompanied by a large map, dated 1859–'60, upon which the geographic distribution of the formations identified by Dr. Hayden are delineated. Within the present area of Wyoming a narrow belt of the "Potsdam" sandstone is represented as entirely surrounding the Big Horn Mountains, and as forming a continuous band with that along the eastern side of the Wind River Range and an interrupted belt on the western side of the latter range. The two mountains now known as the Wyoming Mountains also had a narrow band of "Potsdam" sandstone about them. To the north this band is represented as continuing westward across the Big Horn River, then north on the western side of the Yellowstone Lake region as far north as Beaver River, where it is interrupted. Several mountains directly north

[1] Sketch of the geology of the country about the headwaters of the Missouri and Yellowstone Rivers Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 31, 1861, p. 234.

[2] Op. cit., p. 234.

[3] The Primordial Sandstone of the Rocky Mountains in the Northwestern Territories of the United States. Am. Jour. Sci. 2d ser., vol. 33, 1862, pp. 68-79. Canadian Jour., new ser., vol. 7, 1862, pp. 149-151.

[4] On the Geology and Natural History of the Upper Missouri. Am. Philos. Soc. Trans., vol. 12, new ser., 1863, pp. 1-218.

of the Yellowstone Lake region are represented as surrounded by the same formation.[1]

At the South Pass of the Wind River Mountains Dr. Hayden found the granites occupying a very restricted area and extending from them a large thickness of "Potsdam" sandstone containing *Obolella nana* and a Lingula.[2]

Prof. F. H. Bradley in 1873 identified the "Quebec group" by the presence of Conocoryphe and Dikelocephalus in limestones upon the flanks of the Teton range of mountains. At one of the outcrops of these limestones "they are immediately underlaid by about 300 feet of partly compact, partly shaly, glauconitic sandstones, which are evidently equivalent to the so-called Knox sandstones of Safford, which form in Tennessee, the lower part of the Quebec group. No fossils were seen in these beds. They are apparently unequally distributed, since no corresponding beds appear along the cañon of West Teton Creek. Beneath them, and often present when they are absent, we generally find from 50 to 75 feet of a very compact ferruginous quartzite which must represent the Potsdam, though this also, is sometimes wanting."[3] In a diagram of a section extending from Henry's Fork through the Teton Mountains the so-called Quebec group and Potsdam quartzite are represented on each side of the range, the quartzite resting directly on the granite.[4]

The preliminary paleontological report of Mr. F. B. Meek refers the beds containing fragments of Conocoryphe and Dikelocephalus, found on the west base of Big Horn Mountains by the Hayden survey in 1872, to the Potsdam or Primordial zone.[5]

In speaking of the Paleozoic rocks of the Laramie Hills, Mr. Arnold Hague states that all paleontologic evidence obtained from these beds would tend to show that they belong to the Coal Measure limestone.[6]

The strata along the eastern slope of the Wind River Mountains referred to the Potsdam by Dr. Hayden were studied by Prof. T. B. Comstock while geologist of Capt. W. A. Jones's expedition to northwestern Wyoming. He found the sandstone closely resembled that described by Prof. J. D. Whitney in Wisconsin. The local peculiarities of this sandstone and its associated rocks as described in the Mississippi Valley and New York are strikingly repeated in the Rocky Mountain region. The greatest thickness of the sandstone in the region of the

[1] Geological report of the Exploration of the Yellowstone and Missouri Rivers. Under the direction of Capt. W. F. Raynolds, 1859–'60, Washington, 1869, p. 144, map.

[2] Report of F. V. Hayden (on the geological survey of Wyoming.) U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., 4th Ann. Rep., 1871, p. 33.

[3] Report of Frank H. Bradley, geologist of the Snake River division. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., 6th Ann. Rep., 1873, p. 216.

[4] Op. cit., p. 218.

[5] Preliminary paleontological report . . . with remarks on the ages of the rocks, etc. U. S. Geol. Survey of the Territories, embracing portions of Montana, Idaho, Wyoming and Utah; 6th Ann. Rep. 1873, p. 431.

[6] Descriptive geology, U. S. Geol. Expl. of the Fortieth Par.; Clarence King, vol. 2, p. 76. Washington, 1877.

Wind River Mountains is about 200 feet. All the beds bear evidence of deposition in shallow seas or upon beaches or sand flats.[1]

Under the head of Quebec group, Prof. Comstock describes some calciferous layers and dolomitic limestones that are conformably superjacent to the sandstone. In them he found a species of Theca?, a trilobite of the genus Dikelocephalus and *Orthis tritonia*? Fragments of other fossils too imperfectly preserved for identification were found.[2]

If the identifications by Prof. Comstock of the species found in the limestone are correct, that portion of the limestone containing them must be referred to the Upper Cambrian zone. On the map accompanying the report the "Potsdam" formation is represented along the entire eastern margin of the Wind River Mountains and along the western central portion of the range. A narrow belt of it surrounds Creek Mountain in the northeast of the Snake Indian Reservation, and the Wyoming Mountains to the northwest of the Wind River Range.

The southern portion of the Sweetwater district in the Wind River Range was visited by Dr. F. M. Endlich in 1877. He found a Lingula, probably *Lingula prima*, and estimated the thickness of the entire series as varying between 180 and 320 feet.[3] He refers to the Calciferous group a thin series of sharply bedded strata composed of blue limestones and blue and yellow dolomite and locally of oolitic dolomite, altogether having a thickness of about 250 feet.[4] These strata are correlated with those containing Dikelocephalus, etc., discovered by Prof. Comstock in 1874.

The Teton Mountain district was studied by Prof. Orestes St. John in 1877, and in his report he refers to the work of Prof. Bradley in 1872. Very little is added to the information given by Prof. Bradley of the lower quartzite series, but an important advance is made in the classification of the rocks of the district by the division of Prof. Bradley's Quebec group into the Upper and Lower Quebec limestone. The Lower Quebec limestone, carrying Conocoryphe and Dikelocephalus, is described in detail and separated from the upper limestone carrying Raphistoma, etc.[5]

The line of separation of these two limestones is the line between the Cambrian and Silurian (Ordovician) Systems, and reference will be made to it under the description of the Cambrian rocks of Wyoming.

Prof. St. John also studied the Buffalo Fork Mountain, east of the Teton Range, and found there the same succession of beds as in the Teton section. Numerous fossils were collected from the limestone overlying the quartzite.[6]

[1] Geological report. Report upon the reconnaissance of northwestern Wyoming, made in the summer of 1873, by William A. Jones. 1874, pp. 107, 108.

[2] Op. cit., p. 110.

[3] Report on the geology of the Sweetwater district. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., 11th Ann. Rep., 1879, p. 71.

[4] Op. cit., p. 72.

[5] Report of the geological field-work of the Teton Division. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., 11th Ann. Rep., 1879, pp. 481–483.

[6] Op. cit., p. 469.

In his report on the geology of the Wind River district, made in 1883, Prof. St. John describes the geology of the Gros Ventre Range, accompanying it with two plates of sections across the range at various points.[1] On the map accompanying the volume the geographic distribution of the strata referred to the Silurian is delineated. He also describes the out-crops of the strata on the northwestern and northeastern sides of the Wind River Range, that he refers to the Silurian.[2] Reference to Prof. St. John's sections will be made in describing the Cambrian rocks of the Wind River and Gros Ventre Ranges.

On the map accompanying the twelfth annual report of the Hayden survey, issued in 1883, the geographic distribution of the strata referred to the Silurian in the Sweetwater Range, the Wind River Range, the Gros Ventre Range, and the Teton Range is shown. The Silurian includes the quartzite referred to the Potsdam, the Cambrian limestone referred to the Lower Quebec by Prof. St. John, and the Calciferous referred by him to the Upper Quebec. This map was compiled from the work of Messrs. Peale, St. John, and Endlich. There is also a special map showing the district reported on by Prof. St. John in 1883.

DAKOTA.

The presence of evenly bedded sandstones about the Black Hills was noted as early as 1822 by Dr. Edwin James, who represented them upon a diagrammatic section, extending from the Alleghany to the Rocky Mountains. He undoubtedly confused the sandstones of the Trias with those of the Cambrian; but it is one of the earliest recorded illustrations of the mode of occurrence of the sandstone in this region. That he did not penetrate to the interior portion of the hills is evident, as his section represents the sandstone extending in level horizontal layers entirely across the area occupied by them.[3]

In 1856 Mr. H. Engelmann published a description of the rocks of the Black Hills. The strata next to the granitic nucleus are described as "more or less altered sandstones and limestones, dipping in various directions and degrees. Most of the sandstones are fine grained, light yellowish red, and do look much like metamorphic, but some show the transition into a siliceous rock."[4] Not far from camp 56 he found a friable sandstone made up of coarse square grains of granite, apparently deposited after the formation of the igneous rocks. Near camp 58 the sandstone is light yellowish red and fine grained. There is also a gray variety, above which is a layer of a dark red sandstone, coarse grained, soft, and highly micaceous.[5] This is the sandstone in which Dr. Hayden subsequently found the Upper Cambrian fauna.

[1] Report on the geology of the Wind River district. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., 12th Annual Report, 1883, p. 208.

[2] Op. cit., pp. 251–253.

[3] Geological sketches of the Mississippi Valley. Phil. Acad. Sci., Jour., vol. 2, pt. 2, 1822, pp. 326–329.

[4] Report of a geological exploration from Fort Leavenworth to Bryan's Pass, made in connection with the survey for a road from Fort Riley to Bridger's Pass, under Bryan. Rept. Sec. of War, Appendix H, 1856, p. 508.

[5] Op. cit., p. 510.

In notes explaining the second edition of a geological map of Nebraska and Kansas in 1858 Dr. F. V. Hayden[1] states that the existence of the Potsdam sandstone on the eastern slope of the Rocky Mountains was discovered during Lieut. G. K. Warren's expedition to the Black Hills in the summer of 1857.

In March, 1858, Messrs. Meek and Hayden presented a paper to the Academy of Natural Sciences, Philadelphia, containing "some remarks on the geology of the Black Hills and portions of the surrounding country." In this a section of the formations is given, in which the "Potsdam" sandstone is given a thickness of 30 to 50 feet and is said to contain Lingula, Obolus ?, and fragments of trilobites.[2] The sandstone is described as of a reddish and grayish color, composed of angular grains of quartz, cemented by siliceous and sometimes small portions of calcareous matter. The fossils then identified were *Lingula antiqua* Hall, great numbers of a small shell similar to *L. prima* Conrad and fragments of trilobites.[3] The information contained in this first paper by Messrs. Meek and Hayden was also published in the American Journal of Science,[4] the Canadian Naturalist (vol. 3, 1858, pp. 182–193), the report of the Chief of Engineers to the Secretary of War, 1858,[5] the American Journal of Science (vol. 25, 2d ser., p. 439, 1858), the Proceedings of Philadelphia Academy of Science (vol. 10, p. 139, 1859), and in a reprint of the Preliminary Report of the Exploration of Nebraska and Dakota, issued in 1875, which is the official account of Lieut. G. K. Warren's exploration transmitted to the Chief of Engineers.

In a paper on the Primordial sandstone of the Rocky Mountains and Northwestern Territories of the United States Dr. Hayden describes the sandstone he referred to the Potsdam in the Black Hills in considerable detail, as follows:[6]

> 3. Variegated sandstone, of gray and ferruginous red color, composed chiefly of grains of quartz and particles of mica, cemented with calcareous matter. Some portions of the bed are very hard, compact, siliceous; others a coarse friable grit, others a conglomerate. Fossils: *Lingula prima, L. antiqua, Obolella nana*, and fragments of a trilobite, *Arionellus? oweni*. . . 50 to 80 f.
> 4. Stratified azoic rocks standing in a vertical position for the most part.

The "Potsdam" sandstone is again described by Dr. Hayden in 1863,[7] and in the following year he published, in connection with Mr.

[1] Explorations under the War Department; explanations of a second edition of a geological map of Nebraska and Kansas, based upon information obtained in an expedition to the Black Hills under command of Lieut. G. K. Warren. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 26, 1858, pp. 276–278.

[2] [Some remarks on the geology of the Black Hills and portions of the surrounding country.] Phil. Acad. Sci., Proc., vol. 10, 1859, p. 44.

[3] Op. cit., p. 49.

[4] Explorations under the War Department; explanations of a second edition of a geological map of Nebraska and Kansas, based upon information obtained in an expedition to the Black Hills under command of Lieut. G. K. Warren, Top. Engr., U. S. A. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 26, 1858, p. 276.

[5] Catalogue of the collections in geology and natural history obtained by the expedition under command of Lieut. G. K. Warren. Appendix to Rept. Sec. of War in Rept. of Topog. Eng. for 1858. (Reprint edition of 1875, pp. 59–125. Map.)

[6] The Primordial sandstone of the Rocky Mountains in the Northwestern Territories of the United States. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 33, 1862, p. 70.

[7] On the geology and natural history of the Upper Missouri. Am. Phil. Soc. Trans., vol. 12, new ser., 1863, pp. 36–38.

Meek, the description of the fossils he found in the Black Hills during the expedition of 1858. They are *Lingulepis pinnaformis*, *L. prima*, *Obolella nana*, and *Agraulos* sp.[1]

A general description of the sandstone of the Black Hills is given by Prof. N. H. Winchell in his report to Capt. William Ludlow, and the geographic distribution of the outcrop in the southern portion of the Black Hills is shown on the accompanying map.[2] In the same report Prof. R. P. Whitfield[3] describes *Obolus pectenoides*, a new species of brachiopod, and also figures *Lingulepis pinnaformis*.

The report of Mr. Henry Newton on the geology of the Black Hills contains a detailed description and full discussion of the strata referred to the Potsdam sandstone. This will be again referred to in the summary of our knowledge of the Cambrian rocks of the Black Hills.[4] From the paleontologic portion of the report we learn that the entire fauna of the Black Hills below the Carboniferous is Primordial, and Prof. R. P. Whitfield states it closely resembles that from Wisconsin, and although the species are nearly all distinct the generic facies is the same throughout.[5]

In 1888 Prof. F. R. Carpenter published a series of notes on the geology of the Black Hills, in which he criticised some of Newton's views, and also advanced some theoretical considerations of interest in relation to the original deposition of the sediments forming the Potsdam group.[6]

SOUTHWESTERN SUBPROVINCE.

This includes the areas of Texas and Arizona.

TEXAS.

The presence of Silurian rocks in Texas, subsequently referred to the Primordial, was announced by Dr. F. Roemer in 1849.[7] In the same work he describes from the lower portion of the section *Lingula acutangula* (p. 420) and *Pterocephalia sancti-sabæ* (p. 421).

On the map accompanying this volume the entire Paleozoic series is included under one color, on the northern side of the granitic band, northwest of Austin.

---

[1] Paleontology of the Upper Missouri; a report upon collections made principally by the expedition under command of Lieut. G. K. Warren in 1855–'56. Invertebrates. Smithsonian Contributions No. 172, 1864, pp. 2–10.

[2] Geological report of a reconnaissance of the Black Hills of Dakota, made in the summer of 1874 by Captain William Ludlow. Report of the Chief of Engineers, Appendix PP, 1876, p. 1170.

[3] Description of new fossils. Report of Geological Reconnaissance of Black Hills. Appendix PP of Report of Chief of Engineers, 1876, pp. 1202, 1203.

[4] Geology. Section IV. The Silurian. The Potsdam sandstone. U. S. Geog. and Geol. Surv. of the Rocky Mountain region, J. W. Powell in charge; report on the Black Hills of Dakota. 1880, pp. 80–107.

[5] Paleontology of the Black Hills of Dakota. Report on the geology and resources of the Black Hills of Dakota. 1880, pp. 329, 330.

[6] Notes on the geology of the Black Hills. Preliminary Rept. Dakota School Mines on the Black Hills of Dakota, 1888, pp. 11–52.

[7] Texas. Mit besonderer Rücksicht auf deutsche Auswanderung und die physichen Verhältnisse des Landes nach eigener Beobachtung geschildert. Bonn, 1849.

A more extended account of the geology and the paleontology was published by him in 1852, in which he notes the occurrence of Silurian rocks in Llano County, on the San Saba River (p. 7); and describes and illustrates *Lingula acutangula* (p. 90), *Pterocephalia sancti sabæ* (p. 92), and the genus Pterocephalia. Attention is called by notes and figures to two undescribed species of trilobites.[1]

In a letter addressed to the Secretary of the St. Louis Academy of Sciences in 1859 Dr. B. F. Shumard states that he had discovered in Burnet County, Texas, an extensive development of Lower Silurian rocks, equivalent to the Potsdam sandstone and the Calciferous sandrock of the New York system. The Potsdam sandstone is filled with trilobites belonging to the old genus Arionellus, with Obolus and Lingula, and a small Orthis, and it rests directly upon the granite. Above the Potsdam we have beds which appear to represent the third magnesian limestone and second magnesian limestone of the Missouri survey.[2] Two years later Dr. Shumard published a more detailed account of the Primordial zone of Texas, accompanied by a number of sections measured in Burnet County, and a description of new species of fossils from limestones referred to the Primordial. Under the heading of "Potsdam sandstone" three sections are given; one, 5 miles northwest of the town of Burnet, has a thickness of 275 feet. In this fossils were abundant in the upper portion, just beneath the Cretaceous limestone, as well as in the lower beds. The base was not seen. This section is made up almost entirely of limestones, as are the other two sections mentioned.[3]

Dr. Shumard states that the Potsdam sandstone is also finely displayed in the southern part of San Saba County and around the margins of the granite districts of Llano. "The fauna of this division of the Primordial zone of Texas is very analogous to that of the Potsdam sandstone of Iowa, Wisconsin, and Minnesota." The genera identified are: "Dikelocephalus, Bathyurus, Arionellus, Conocephalites, Agnostus, Lingula, Discina, Orthis, Camerella, Obolus, and Capulus, all of which genera have been discovered in the Primordial sandstones of the northwest except Agnostus and Camerella."[4] In the latter part of the paper six new species were described, and a species of Camarella and one of Capulus mentioned. In a letter to M. Barrande, dated September, 1860, Dr. Shumard describes in a general way the Primordial rocks of Texas as seen along the Colorado River in Burnet County.[5]

Attention was called in 1874 to the presence of a sandstone in Organ Mountains, close to the city of El Paso, in southwestern Texas, by Mr.

[1] Die Kreidebildungen von Texas und ihre organischen Einschlusse. Bonn, 1852, pp. 92, 93.

[2] Letter touching the late discovery of Lower Silurian rocks, equivalent to the Potsdam sandstone and Calciferous sandrock of the New York system, in Burnet County, Texas. Trans. Acad. Sci. St. Louis, vol. 1, 1859, pp. 672, 673.

[3] The Primordial zone of Texas, with descriptions of new fossils. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 32, 1861, pp. 216, 217.

[4] Op. cit., pp. 217, 218.

[5] Letter on the Primordial of Texas. Soc. géol. France, Bull., 2e sér., vol. 18, 1861, pp. 218, 219.

W. P. Jenney. He states that the quartzite rests upon a coarse feldspathic granite, and passes upward into sandstone, filled with *Scolithus linearis*, which he identified as the Potsdam sandstone. The superjacent formation is a crystalline limestone identified as calciferous. It contains several species of fossils resembling Archæocyathus, and rarely a gasteropod, like Pleurotomaria.[1] In commenting upon the statements of Mr. Jenney, Prof. J. S. Newberry says:

> Now it appears there are found in the Rio Grande Valley the crystalline base-rocks overlaid in succession by the Potsdam and Primordial, the Trenton, Hudson, Upper Silurian (?), and Carboniferous, just as they occur in the Northern and Eastern States. * * * It would seem as though the Organ Mountains had formed one border, and the New York and Canadian highlands the other, of the great Paleozoic invasions of the sea.[2]

A section of the strata referred in 1874 to the Potsdam by Mr. S. B. Buckley, at Packsaddle Mountain, in Llano County, gave a thickness of 385 feet of alternating limestone and sandstone, beneath which occurs a massive bed of reddish brown sandstone 326 feet in thickness. Numerous genera of Primordial fossils were found, characteristic of this horizon.[3] Other references are made to the occurrence of the Potsdam sandstone at various localities in this county. In the report for the following year Mr. Buckley refers to the occurrence of sandstones of the Potsdam period in Mason and Menard Counties. He also calls attention to the probable presence of rocks of Silurian age at the base of the Organ Mountains at Fort Bliss, near the town of El Paso.[4]

A preliminary report of a reconnaissance of a portion of the Paleozoic area of central Texas was made by Mr. C. D. Walcott in 1884. A measured section of the strata referred to the Cambrian on the west side of Honey Creek Valley gives 245 feet of sandstone and 625 feet of limestone, all marked by the presence of an abundant Upper Cambrian (Potsdam) fauna. The upper beds of the limestone become compact, hard, and have a little included cherty matter. The Cambrian fauna terminates here, as far as observed, and it is not until over 1,000 feet of limestone are passed through that recognized fossils again occur. The fauna is then of the type of the Calciferous group.[5] The text is accompanied by a diagrammatic section of Packsaddle Mountain, that illustrates the unconformity between the Llano group and the strata referred to the Potsdam or Upper Cambrian. This gave a total thickness of 605 feet for the formation, with a massive sandstone 205 feet in thickness at the base.[6]

The latest addition to our knowledge of the Cambrian rocks of Texas

---

[1] [Recent explorations in the Geology of Texas.] New York Lyceum Nat. Hist. Proc., vol. 2, 1874, p. 69.

[2] Remarks on geology of Western Texas. New York Lyceum Nat. Hist.. Proc. vol. 2, 1874, p. 70.

[3] First annual report of the geological and agricultural survey of Texas. Houston, 1874, p. 73.

[4] Second annual report of the geological and agricultural survey of Texas. Houston, 1876, p. 10.

[5] Notes on Paleozoic rocks of Central Texas. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 28, 1884, p. 433.

[6] Op. cit., p. 432.

is by Prof. T. B. Comstock.[1] He divides the rocks referred to the Cambrian into the Hickory series (Lower Cambrian?), the Riley series (Middle Cambrian?), and the Katemcy (Potsdam) series (Upper Cambrian?). The supposition that the Lower Cambrian and Middle Cambrian are represented is based upon the presence of certain beds beneath the fossiliferous Upper Cambrian. He considers that the Hickory beds have altogether a thickness of 200 to 250 feet. The maximum thickness of the Riley series is probably 300 to 400 feet. The upper or Katemcy series is divided into, Division A, or the Potsdam sandstone, thickness 90 to 140 feet; Division B, the Potsdam flags, probable thickness 50 feet; Division C, the Potsdam limestone, 200 feet.

ARIZONA.

As geologist of Lieut. J. C. Ives's expedition to the Colorado River of the West, Prof. J. S. Newberry was the first one to recognize the presence of a sandstone resting upon the Archean granite in the "Big Cañon" of the Colorado. A diagrammatic cross-section of the cañon represents the "Potsdam" sandstone unconformably superjacent to the granite and conformably subjacent to strata doubtfully identified as Silurian.[2] In the text it is said "the Potsdam (?) sandstone which is largely developed in the Great Cañon is a coarse siliceous rock that must have been derived from the erosion of land at no great distance."[3]

A section at Diamond Creek, as described by the same author, includes a conglomerate 3 feet in thickness resting on the granite, above which occurs 820 feet of sandstone. Of the upper beds of the sandstone, No. 10 of the section, Prof. Newberry says:

> The foliated sandstones of No. 10 have an indescribable look of antiquity. They are usually fine grained and hard, the lighter ones drab or gray, speckled with dark red. The shales above and below these sandstones are very soft red or green mudstones, containing great numbers of cylindrical bodies, which resemble the casts of worm holes.
>
> Nos. 12 and 13 are coarse siliceous rocks, having the same appearance of extreme age as No. 10, but much coarser and more massive. The lithological characters of these strata are strikingly like those of much of the Potsdam sandstone of the exposures I have examined of that rock on Lake Superior and in Canada. * * * In the absence of fossils, whatever conclusions may be arrived at in regard to the age of these sandstones must be in some degree conjectural and liable to modification by the discovery of new facts; yet the evidence is in a good degree satisfactory that they are the equivalent of the Potsdam sandstone of the New York geologists. The indications of this identity are found in their great relative antiquity and in their lithological characters.[4]

Attention is called to the resemblance of these sandstones to those of the Black Hills which occupy the same relative stratigraphic posi-

[1] A preliminary report on the geology of the central mineral region of Texas. 1st Ann. Rep. Geol. Surv. of Texas for 1889, 1890, pp. 285–289.

[2] Geological report. Report upon the Colorado River of the West, expl. in 1857–'58 by Lieut. J. C. Ives. Part III, 1861, p. 42.

[3] Op. cit., p. 47.

[4] Op. cit., p. 56.

tion, and which contain the Potsdam fauna, as identified by Dr. Hayden.[1]

When describing the section of the Grand Cañon of the Colorado where it passes through the Kaibab plateau, Maj. J. W. Powell states that the summit of the section was formed by Carboniferous limestone. This extends from the edge of the plateau down 3,500 feet, and beneath it occurs 1,000 feet of conformable rocks of undetermined age. These in turn extend down to the unconformity between them and the subjacent 10,000 feet of strata that were subsequently referred to the Grand Cañon group. At the close of the same paragraph, in speaking of the latter series of rocks, he says:

> The beds themselves are not conformable to the overlying Carboniferous rocks; that is, the Carboniferous rocks are spread over their upturned edges.[2]

It thus appears that all of the strata down to the unconformity were referred to the Carboniferous. This includes the series of sandstones referred to the Potsdam by Dr. Newberry.

As the result of his studies of the lower strata of the Colorado Cañon region at Diamond Creek and at the mouth of the cañon, Mr. G. K. Gilbert in 1874 designated the series of sandstones referred to the Potsdam by Newberry, as the Tonto group, and considered it to belong to the Primordial division of the Silurian.[3] The data for this conclusion were published in the following year.[4]

The section at the mouth of the Colorado has 80 feet of vitreous sandstone resting unconformably upon the granite, and 605 feet of shales alternating with limestones between the sandstone and a superjacent massive limestone.[5] At the mouth of the Kanab Creek 100 feet of green arenaceous and micaceous shales occur between the superjacent massive gray limestone and the level of the river.[6] From the stratigraphic position of the Tonto sandstone and shales and the presence of a species of the genus Cruziana he was led to conclude that the Tonto group is certainly Lower Silurian in age, and probably Primordial.[7]

The section of the Tonto series at the mouth of the Grand Cañon was measured more in detail by Mr. A. R. Marvine in the same year. He traced[8] the formation to the south and southeast along the margin of

[1] Op. cit., p. 57.

[2] Exploration of the Colorado River of the West and its tributaries, explored in 1869, 1870, 1871, and 1872. Washington, 1875, p. 212.

[3] On the age of the Tonto sandstone. (Abstract.) Washington Phil. Soc. Bull., vol. 1, 1874, p. 109.

[4] Report on the geology of portions of Nevada, Utah, California, and Arizona examined in the years 1871 and 1872. Report on Geog. and Geol. Expl. and Survey west of the 100th merid., in charge of Lieut. Geo. M. Wheeler, vol. 3, Geology, 1875, pp. 184–186. Report on the geology of portions of New Mexico and Arizona, examined in 1873. Ibid., vol. 3, 1875, pp. 521, 522.

[5] Report on the geology of portions of Nevada, Utah, California, and Arizona examined in the years 1871 and 1872. Report on Geog. and Geol. Expl. and Survey west of the 100th merid., in charge of Lieut. Geo. M. Wheeler, vol. 3, Geology, 1875, p. 163.

[6] Op. cit., p. 162.

[7] Op. cit., pp. 185, 186.

[8] Report on the geology of route from St. George, Utah, to Gila River, Arizona, examined in 1871. Rept. on Geog. and Geol. Expl. and Surv. west of 100th merid., in charge of Lieut. Geo. M. Wheeler, vol. 3, Geology, 1875, p. 199.

the plateau that extends southward from the Grand Cañon. The geographic distribution of the formation is indicated on the atlas sheets published by the Wheeler survey in 1874.

When describing the sedimentary groups of the Plateau province Maj. Powell accepted the name Tonto group, proposed by Mr. Gilbert, but did not agree with him in considering the strata to be of Silurian age. From geological considerations he was inclined to consider the Tonto group as forming the base of the Carboniferous series. This opinion was strengthened by the fact that he found in the Grand Cañon 10,000 feet of sandstone, shales, and limestones underlying the Tonto series unconformably, and hence separated from them by long periods of erosion, and at the base of the latter series he reported finding Silurian fossils.[1]

The fossils mentioned by Maj. Powell were studied by Dr. C. A. White, who identified the genera Lingulella and Obolella and referred them to the Lower Silurian.[2]

The supposed Primordial age of the Tonto series was accepted by Capt. C. A. Dutton in his account of the physical geology of the Grand Cañon district.[3]

The section at the mouth of the Kanab Cañon was studied by Mr. C. D. Walcott in 1880. He found that 450 feet of a mottled limestone and 100 feet of arenaceous and micaceous shales at the base of the section were of Primordial age, as indicated by the presence of the genera Lingulepis, Conocephalites, and Bathyurus in the upper portion, and in addition to these *Hyolithes primordialis*, Lingulepis, and Crepicephalus in the lower beds.[4] Further evidence of the Cambrian age of the Tonto group was published by Mr. Walcott in 1883. Fossils representing the genera Cruziana, Lingulepis, Iphidea, Conocephalites, Crepicephalus, and Dikelocephalus were found in the upper 700 feet of the sandstones, shales, and limestones that form the upper part of the group in the cañon valleys entering on the left side of the Kaibab plateau.[5]

PALEONTOLOGY.

UPPER MISSISSIPPI AREA.

The first reference that we find to the fossils of the Cambrian fauna of the Upper Mississippi Valley is by Dr. D. D. Owen in his report of 1848 on a geological reconnaissance of the Chippewa land district of

[1] Report on the geology of the eastern portion of the Uinta Mountains and a region of country adjacent thereto. Washington, 1876, p. 56.

[2] Invertebrate paleontology of the Plateau province, together with notice of a few species from localities beyond its limits in Colorado. Rept. on the geology of the eastern portion of the Uinta Mountains, by J. W. Powell, Washington, 1876, p. 79.

[3] The physical geology of the Grand Cañon district. U. S. Geol. Surv., 2d Ann. Rep. 1880–'81. 1882, p. 114.

[4] The Permian and other Paleozoic groups of the Kanab Valley, Arizona. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 20, 1880, p. 225.

[5] Precarboniferous strata in the Grand Cañon of the Colorado, Arizona. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 26, 1883, p. 439.

Wisconsin.[1] The fossils discovered were referred to the genera Asaphus, Agnostus, Trinucleus, and Triarthrus, but on Pl. 7, accompanying the report, there is figured, but not named, the head and pygidium of *Dikelocephalus minnesotensis*, and a species of Ptychoparia as now known.

In a later paper in 1851 on the paleontology of the lowest sandstones of the Northwest he gives the name "Dikello-Cephalon" to a large genus of trilobites obtained in the lower sandstone formation.[2] He also notes the discovery of Lingulas and Orbiculas by himself in 1847 at the Falls of St. Croix, and the discovery of fossils on the Mississippi River between the Falls of St. Anthony and the Wisconsin River, the presence of trilobites in the sandstone 10 miles below Mountain Island, etc.

One of the first species described from the "Potsdam" sandstone of Wisconsin is *Graptolithus hallianus* Prout, 1851, from the middle portion of the formation at Osceola Mills, near the falls of St. Croix River.[3]

The occurrence of the Potsdam fauna in the sandstone of northeastern Wisconsin is noted by Prof. James Hall in his report to Messrs. Foster and Whitney.[4] He describes and illustrates *Lingula prima* Conrad (p. 204), *Lingula antiqua* Hall (p. 204), and an undetermined species of Dikelocephalus (p. 205).

We note that *Lingula prima* was subsequently described by Hall as *Obolella polita*, and that *Lingula antiqua* equals *Lingulepis acuminata* of Conrad and the *Lingulepis pinnaformis* of Owen.

From the material collected from the lower sandstones of Wisconsin (the Potsdam sandstone of New York) Dr. Owen described, in 1852, the following genera and species:[5]

Dikelocephalus (n. gen.), p. 573.
- minnesotensis, p. 574.
- pepinensis, p. 574.
- miniscaensis, p. 574.
- iowensis, p. 575.
- granulosus, p. 575.

Lonchocephalus (n. gen.), p. 575.
- chippewaensis, p. 576.
- hamulus, p. 576.

Crepicephalus (n. gen.), p. 576.

Menocephalus (n. gen.), p. 577.

In the description of Pl. 1 the species *Menocephalus minnesotensis* is named and figured (Fig. 11); also *Crepicephalus ? wisconsensis* (Fig. 13), and on Pl. 1*a*, *Crepicephalus* (?) *miniscaensis* is named and illustrated (Fig. 14). On Pl. 1*b*, the species *Lingula pinnaformis* is proposed and illustrated (Figs. 4, 6, 8); *Lingula ampla* is figured and named

[1] Report of a geological reconnaissance of the Chippewa land district of Wisconsin; and incidentally, of a part of Iowa and of the Minnesota Territory. Letter of the Secretary of the Treasury communicating a report of a geological reconnaissance of the Chippewa land district of Wisconsin (etc), by D. D. Owen. Thirtieth Congress, 1st Sess., Senate Ex. Doc. No. 57, 1848, pp. 13-15.

[2] Am. Assoc. Proc., vol. 5, 1851, p. 171.

[3] Description of a new Graptolite found in the Lower Silurian rocks near the falls of the St. Croix River. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 11, 1851, p. 189.

[4] Description of new or rare species of fossils from the Paleozoic series. Rept. on the geology of the Lake Superior land district, by Foster and Whitney, pt. 2, 1851, pp. 203-231.

[5] Geol. Surv. of Wisc., Iowa, and Minn., and, incidentally, of a portion of Nebraska Territory. Philadelphia, 1852.

(Figs. 5, 12), together with figures of *Lingula antiqua* and *L. prima*, and a number of others placed under Obolus and Orbicula.

Mr. Edward Daniels stated in 1859 that upon a small island in Black River he had found perfect impressions of crustaceans consisting of double rows of parallel tracks, precisely like those in Montreal.[1] (Protichnites of Logan.—C. D. W.)

In the report of the superintendent of the geological survey of Wisconsin, Prof. Hall describes, from the Potsdam sandstone:[2]

Lingula polita, p. 24.
Lingula aurora, p. 24.
Theca primordialis, p. 48.
Serpulites murchisonia, p. 48.

In the geological volume he illustrates:[3]

Graptolithus (Dendrograptus) hallianus, p. 21.
Lingula polita, p. 21.
pinnaformis, p. 21.
antiqua, p. 21.
aurora, p. 21.
Theca primordialis, p. 21.
Serpulites murchisonii, p. 21.
Dikelocephalus minnesotensis, p. 22.
D. pepinensis, p. 22.

In a letter to Principal J. W. Dawson, Prof. Hall describes a new crustacean from the Potsdam sandstone under the generic name of Aglaspis, stating it to be the same form mentioned in a communication to the Albany Institute.[4]

In 1862 Prof. C. H. Hitchcock published a list of the fossils of the Potsdam group in North America, including in it all the species known to him described from the Potsdam sandstone and also from the strata now referred to the Cambrian of other parts of North America. The list includes one hundred and thirty-four species.[5]

In 1862 Prof. B. F. Shumard describes from the Potsdam sandstone of Wisconsin and Missouri the following species:[6]

Dikelocephalus latifrons, p. 101.
Arionellus bipunctatus, p. 101.
Conocephalites minor, p. 105.

He also noticed under the name of *Conocephalites iowensis*, the *Dikelocephalus* (?) *iowensis* of Owen (p. 102), and *Crepicephalus* (?) *wisconsensis*, under the name of *Conocephalites wisconsensis* (p. 103). The *Lonchocephalus chippewaensis* Owen and *L. hamulus* are both referred to the genus Conocephalites (p. 104). A species of Agnostus was referred to *Agnostus orion* (?) of Billings (p. 105).

---

[1] Notes on geology of Wisconsin and adjacent States. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist. Proc., vol. 6, 1859, p. 310.

[2] Report of the superintendent of the geological survey (of Wisconsin), exhibiting the progress of the work. January 1, 1861. Madison, 1861, pp. 52.

[3] Physical geography and general geology. Geol. Surv. Wisconsin, Report, vol. 1, 1862, pp. 1-72.

[4] On a new crustacean from the Potsdam sandstone. Canadian Naturalist, vol. 7, 1862, p. 445.

[5] Fossils of the Potsdam group in North America. Portland Soc. Nat. Hist. Proc., vol. 1, 1862, pp. 87-90.

[6] Notice of some new and imperfectly known fossils from the Primordial zone (Potsdam sandstone and Calciferous Sand-group of Wisconsin and Missouri. St. Louis Acad. Sci. Trans., vol. 2, 1862, pp. 101-105.

In the same year Prof. James Hall read before the Albany Institute a preliminary notice of the fauna of the Potsdam sandstone, with remarks upon the previously known species and descriptions of some new ones from the sandstone of the Upper Mississippi Valley. This was first published in the Sixteenth Report of the State Cabinet of Natural History in 1863, and in 1867 in the Transactions of the Albany Institute. The new genera and species described are as follows:[1]

Lingula winona, p. 126.
mosia, p. 126.
aurora var., p. 127.
Discina (?) inutilis, p. 130.
Orthis pepina, p. 134.
Platyceras primordialis, p. 136.
Euomphalus (?) vaticinus, p. 136.
Dikelocephalus minnesotensis var. limbatus, p. 141.
Dikelocephalus minnesotensis var., p. 141.
Dikelocephalus spininger, p. 143.
misa, p. 144.
osceola, p. 146.
Conocephalites eos, p. 151.
perseus, p. 153.
shumardi, p. 154.
nasutus, p. 155.
oweni, p. 155.
eryon, p. 157.
anatinus, p. 158.
patersoni, p. 159.
? binodosus, p. 160.
winona, p. 161.
diadematus, p. 167.
Ptychaspis sp.?, p. 174.
Chariocephalus whitfieldi, p. 175.
Illænurus quadratus, p. 176.
Triarthrella auroralis, p. 177.
Agnostus josepha, p. 178.
parilis, p. 179.
disparilis, p. 179.
Aglaspis barrandi, p. 181.
Pemphigaspis bullata, p. 221.
Amphion ? matutina, p. 222.
Conocephalites ? (Arionellus ?) dorsalis, p. 222.
Conocephalites optatus, p. 222.

Of species previously described he redescribed and illustrated:

Graptolithus hallianus, Prout., as Dendrograptus hallianus, p. 124.
Lingula ampla, Owen, p. 125.
aurora, Hall, p. 126.
pinnaformis, Owen, as Lingulepis pinnaformis, p. 129.
Obolus apollinus Owen, as Obolella ? polita, p. 133.
Lingula ? polita Hall, as Obolella ? polita, p. 133.
Theca primordialis Hall, p. 135.*
Serpulites murchisoni, Hall, p. 136.*[2]
Dikelocephalus minnesotensis, Owen, p. 138.
pepinensis, Owen, p. 142.
Conocephalites minor, Shumard, p. 149.
minutus, Bradley, p. 150.
Dikelocephalus iowensis, Owen, as Conocephalites iowensis, p. 162.
Crepicephalus ? wisconsensis, Owen, as Conocephalites winconsensis, p. 164.
Lonchocephalus hamulus, Owen, as Conocephalites hamulus, p. 166.
Arionellus bipunctatus, Shumard, p. 169.
Dikelocephalus miniscaensis, Owen, as Ptychaspis miniscaensis, p. 171.
granulosus, Owen, as Ptychaspis granulosa, p. 173.

Agnostus orion (?) Billings, noted by Shumard, is described as *Agnostus josepha* (p. 178). The genus Dikelocephalus is redefined (p. 137),

[1] Preliminary notice of the fauna of the Potsdam sandstone, with remarks on the previously known species of fossils and descriptions of some new ones from the sandstone of the Upper Mississippi Valley. 16th Ann. Rep. Regents Univ. State Cab. Nat. Hist., 1863, pp. 119-220. Albany Inst. Trans., vol. 5. 1867, pp. 93-195.

[2] Pages 135, 136 each have an asterisk (*) placed after them to indicate interpolated pages.

and the genus Obolella of Billings is described with special reference to the species *Obolella polita* (pp. 131–134).

The new genera described are:

Lingulepis, p. 129.
Ptychaspis, p. 170.
Chariocephalus, p. 175.
Illænurus, p. 176.
Triarthrella (subgenus), p. 177.
Aglaspis, p. 181.
Pemphigaspis, p. 221.

The genus Conaspis is proposed in the event of a new generic group being formed of *Conocephalites perseus*, *C. shumardi*, *C. nasutus*, *C. oweni*, *C. eryon*, *C. anatinus*, and *C. patersoni* (p. 152).

Prof. Hall states that he was unable to recognize the six successive trilobite beds of the sandstone as indicated by Dr. Owen, but he nevertheless refers the species described to three different epochs of the Potsdam period, as follows:

In the lower beds of the formation I have found Conocephalites proper, together with Lingula, Lingulepis, Obolella? and Theca. In the middle stage, neither the limits of the beds, nor the range of species or genera, have been so well determined; but, grouping together all that I have found between the well-defined upper beds and the lower fossilferous beds known, we have Conocephalites, Dikelocephalus, Arionellus, Ptychaspis, Chariocephalus, Illænurus and Agnostus, in the trilobitic fauna, together with Orthis and Platyceras.

The Graptolitidæ apparently begin their existence somewhere in this central epoch, but their precise relations to the other beds have not been determined.

In the higher beds of the formation, and clearly separated from the great central mass, we have the genera Dikelocephalus, Triarthrella, and Aglaspis, together with Liugula, Serpulites, and Euomphalus.

We observe, therefore, that the earliest trilobites are referable to the genus Conocephalites; and the genus Dikelocephalus does not appear in the first stages of the formation, nor below the beds which I have referred to the second or middle stage of the period. There this genus appears in three species, smaller and less conspicuous than those in the higher beds. It is only in the later stages of the sandstone that the typical species of this genus of Dr. Owen appear, and those from the lower beds, thus referred by him, belong apparently to other genera.[1]

From a small collection of fossils from the Potsdam sandstone of Sauk County, Wisconsin, Dr. Alexander Winchell describes in 1864 four new species and mentions the presence of some others that have been described.[2] The new species are:

Orthis barabuensis, p. 228.
Straparollus (Ophileta) primordialis, p. 228.
Pleurotomaria? advena, p. 228.
Ptychaspis barabuensis, p. 230.

He mentions the occurrence of *Scolithus linearis* (p. 227) and *Dikelocephalus minnesotensis* and *Dikelocephalus pepinensis* (p. 229). From the Lake Superior sandstone he describes *Palæophycus articulatus* (p. 231) and *P. informis* (p. 232). The two latter species are doubtfully re-

[1] Op. cit., p. 183.

[2] Notice of a small collection of fossils from the Potsdam Sandstone of Wisconsin and Lake Superior Sandstone of Michigan. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 37, 1864, pp. 226-232.

ferred to the Cambrian fauna. In this paper, Dr. Winchell points out, or, rather, he claims, that Dikelocephalus and Ptychaspis occur at the recognized base of the Potsdam sandstone.[1]

The preliminary notice of the fauna of the Potsdam sandstone of the upper Mississippi Valley read before the Albany Institute in 1862, by Prof. J. Hall, was published with illustrations in 1863, as has been noticed. The original paper appeared in 1867 in the transactions of the Albany Institute. The descriptions are the same as those of the paper of 1863, with the exception of the omission of those of *Theca primordialis* and *Serpulites murchisoni*.

From the material collected by the Wisconsin Geological Survey Prof. R. P. Whitfield described in 1878 under the title of Potsdam sandstone species:[2]

Palæophycus plumosus, p. 50.
Triplesia primordialis, p. 51.
Palæacmæa irvingi, p. 51.
Bellerophon antiquatus, p. 52.
Conocephalites calymenoides, p. 52.
Crepicephalus onustus, p. 53.
Ptychaspis striatus, p. 55.
minuta, p. 55.
Agraulos (Bathyurus?) woosteri, p. 56.
Arionellus (Agraulos) convexus, p. 57.
Ellipsocephalus curta, p. 58.

Dikelocephalus granulosus, Owen, is redefined under *Ptychaspis granulosa*, but not the *Ptychaspis granulosa* of Hall (p. 54). *Ptychaspis granulosa*, Hall, is redescribed as *P. striata* (p. 55).

In 1879 Prof. T. C. Chamberlin referred to some tracks found on the Potsdam sandstone by Rev. A. A. Young, of New Lisbon, Wisconsin. He named *Climactichnites youngi* and *C. fosteri*. The material was subsequently studied by Mr. J. E. Todd, who published an illustration and description of the species. These tracks or trails are congeneric with *Climactichnites wilsoni*, described by Logan in 1863, from Perth, Canada.[3]

In 1882 in his final report on the paleontology of Wisconsin, Prof. R. P. Whitfield described from the Potsdam sandstone the following new species:[4]

Holopea sweeti, p. 174.
Conocephalites? quadratus, p. 180.
(Ptychaspis?) explanatus, p. 181.
Dikelocephalus lodensis, p. 188.
Aglaspis eatoni, p. 192.
Arenicolites woodi, p. 177.

He also describes and illustrates:

Paleophycus plumosus Whitf., p. 169.
Lingulepis pinnaformis, Owen, p. 169.
Orthis pepina, Hall, p. 170.
barabuensis, Winchell, as Leptæna barabuensis, p. 171.
Triplesia primordialis Whitf., p. 172.

[1] Op. cit., p. 226.

[2] Preliminary descriptions of new species of fossils from the lower geological formations of Wisconsin. Geol. Surv. of Wisconsin, Ann. Rep. for 1877, 1878, pp. 50–58.

[3] A description of some fossil tracks from the Potsdam sandstone. Wisconsin Acad. Sci., Trans., vol. 5, 1882, pp. 276–281.

[4] Paleontology (of Wisconsin). Geology of Wisconsin, vol. 4, 1882, pp. 169–193.

Palæacmæa irvingi, p. 173.
Straparollus (Ophileta) primordialis, Winchell, as Ophileta (Raphistoma) primordialis, p. 173.
Theca primordialis, Hall, as Hyolithes primordialis, p. 175.
Bellerophon antiquatus, Whitf., p. 176.
Conocephalites calymenoides, Whitf., p. 179.
Crepicephalus onustus, Whitf., p. 182.
Conocephalites gibbsi, Whitf., as Crepicephalus? gibbsi, p. 184.
Dikelocephalus granulosus, Owen, as Ptychaspis granulosa, p. 185.
Ptychaspis granulosa, Hall, as P. striata, p. 186.
minuta, Whitf., p. 186.
Dikelocephalus minnesotensis Owen, p. 187.
Agraulos (Bathyurus?) woosteri, Whitf., p. 189.
Arionellus (Agraulos) convexus, Whitf., as Arionellus convexus, Whitf., p. 190.
Ellipsocephalus curtus, Whitf., p. 191.

In the preliminary remarks on the fauna he says:

It is a matter of considerable interest that, in different localities of the Potsdam formation, the forms of trilobites found are generally specifically distinct; and notwithstanding the large number of species already described from this formation, both in this State and other parts of the country, other new forms, readily detected by those familiar with the several details of structure peculiar to these animals, are met with at almost every new locality examined. This change in species between different localities is usually accompanied also by some slight difference in the material or composition of the rock, which not only shows that the species were of short duration in time, or that they were restricted to limited geographical areas, but that a change in the conditions of life and circumstances under which the animals existed, and with which they had to contend, was constantly taking place. How much these circumstances or conditions had to do with the production of forms, or modification of types among them, it would be difficult to determine; but one thing is certain, that where the same character of rock and apparent conditions of deposition prevail over a limited geographical area, or are repeated within a slight vertical range, we are pretty sure to find the same, or closely allied forms represented, showing that under like conditions similar forms prevail.[1]

In 1883, when describing the life of the Potsdam epoch, in the General Geology of Wisconsin, Prof. T. C. Chamberlin illustrates the following species:[2]

Palæophycus plumosus, p. 125, Fig. 11.
Bellerophon antiquatus, Whitfield, p. 126, Fig. 12, a, b.
Ophileta primordialis, Winchell, p. 126, Fig. 12, c, d.
Holopea sweeti, Whitfield, p. 126, Fig. 12, e.
Palæacmæa irvingi, Whitfield, p. 126, Fig. 12, f.
Platyceras primordialis, Hall, p. 126, Fig. 12, g.
Serpulites murchisoni, Hall, p. 126, Fig. 12, h.
Theca primordialis, Hall, p. 126, Fig. 12, i.
Dendrograptus hallianus, Prout, p. 126, Fig. 12, j.
Lingula antiqua, Conrad, p. 127, Fig. 13, b.
Lingulella stoneana, Whitfield, p. 127, Fig. 13, a.
aurora, Hall, p. 127, Fig. 13, c.
ampla, Hall, p. 127, Fig. 13, d.
mosia, Hall, p. 127, Fig. 13, e.

[1] Op. cit., pp. 163, 164.
[2] General Geology. Historical Geology. Paleozoic Era. Geol. Wis. Survey of 1873–1879, vol. 1, 1883.

Lingulepis pinnaformis, Owen, p. 127, Fig. 13, f, g.
Obolella polita, Hall, p. 127, Fig. 13, h.
Orthis pepina, Hall, p. 127, Fig. 13, i, j, k, l.
Triplesia primordialis, Whitfield, p. 127, Fig. 13, m.
Leptæna barabuensis, Winchell, p. 127, Fig. 13, n, o.
Arenicolites woodi, Whitfield, p. 128, Fig. 14, a, b.
Dikelocephalus sp. ?, p. 129, Fig. 15.
lodensis, Whitfield, p. 130, Fig. 16, a, b.
pepinensis, Hall, p. 130, Fig. 16, c, d, e, f.
Aglaspis eatoni, Whitfield, p. 130, Fig. 16, g.
Chariocephalus whitfieldi, Hall, p. 130, Fig. 16, h.
Arionellus convexus, Whitfield, p. 130, Fig. 16, i.
Ptychaspis minuta, Whitfield, p. 130. Fig. 16, j, k.
Illænurus quadratus, Hall, p. 130, Fig. 16, l, m, n, o, p.
Crepicephalus gibbsi, Whitfield, p. 130, Fig. 16, q.
Conocephalites wisconsensis, Owen, p. 131, Fig. 17, a, b, c.
calymenoides, Whitfield, p. 131, Fig. 17, d.
Agnostus josepha, Hall, p. 131, Fig. 17, e, f.
Ellipsocephalus curtus, Whitfield, p. 131, Fig. 17, g.
Agraulos woosteri, Whitfield, p. 131, Fig. 17, h, i.
Pemphigaspis bullata Hall, p. 131, Fig. 17, j.
Climactichnites youngi, Chamberlin, p. 132, Fig. 18.
fosteri Chamberlin, p. 132, Fig. 18.

The species *Orthis remnichia* and *O. sandbergi* are described in 1886 by Prof. N. H. Winchell from the St. Croix sandstone.[1]

In 1890, Mr. C D. Walcott described the following species from the Upper Cambrian of Wisconsin and Minnesota:[2]

Metoptoma? minneiskensis, p. 267.
? peracuta, p. 267.
Conularia cambria, p. 270.
Spirodentalium, n. gen., p. 271.
Spirodentalium osceola, p. 271.
Ptychoparia connata, p. 272.
pero, p. 274.
Agraulos? thea, p. 277.

RED SANDSTONE OF LAKE SUPERIOR.

On Pl. I C and II, Figs. 1 and 2 of the illustrations in the Geological Report of Wisconsin, Iowa, and Minnesota, 1852, Dr. D. D. Owen figures certain markings he observed on sandstones from the northwest shore of Lake Superior. He considered they probably indicated the remains of fossil sea-weeds or fucoids.

There is a specimen in the collections of the National Museum, labeled "Plants of Lake Superior, D. D. Owen." The specimen looks very much like the sandstones of the interior of Wisconsin, and is covered with casts of annelid trails, more or less crushed and matted down, which gives a resemblance to fucoids. Of traces of life other than that of annelid trails and borings nothing has to my knowledge been made known to the scientific world.

[1] New species of fossils. 14th Ann. Rep. Minn. Geol. Nat. Hist. Surv., 1886, pp. 317-318.
[2] Description of new forms of Upper Cambrian fossils. U. S. Nat. Mus. Proc., vol. 13, 1890, pp. 267-279.

MISSOURI.

The only description of a fossil referred to the Cambrian of Missouri is that of *Lingulella lamborni* by Meek.[1]

EASTERN BORDER OR ADIRONDACK SUB-PROVINCE.

The first notice of anything of an organic nature in the strata now referred to the Potsdam or Upper Cambrian zone, about the Adirondacks, was by Mr. J. H. Steele in 1825, who described certain large calcareous concretions.[2] These were subsequently described in detail by Prof. J. Hall and named *Cryptozoon proliferum*.[3]

The second notice is by Dr. E. Emmons, who states that near Keeseville, in the bottom of the fissure at the high bridge, he found numerous specimens of small bivalve mollusca, a lingula.[4]

Lingula acuminata was described by Mr. T. A. Conrad as occurring in the Calciferous sandrock, and in the table of classification he places it as occurring in the gray Calcareous sandstone at the base of the Lower Silurian above the Cambrian system.[5] It is now known to occur in abundance in association with Dikelocephalus and Upper Cambrian fossils in a calcareous sandrock and limestone, both at Whitehall and in Saratoga County, and in the Potsdam sandstone on Marble River, Franklin County, New York.

In his description of the Potsdam sandstone at Au Sable Chasm, Jefferson County, New York, Dr. Emmons figures and names *Lingula antiqua*.[6] The same woodcut is used by Prof. Hall to illustrate *Lingula acuminata* of Conrad.[7]

In volume I of the Paleontology of New York, Prof. J. Hall defines the genus Scolithus of Haldeman (p. 2), and describes *S. linearis* Haldeman (p. 2); *Lingula prima* of Conrad is described and illustrated; and *Lingula antiqua* is proposed as a new species for the specimen figured by Emmons as *Lingula antiqua* (p. 3). These species are illustrated on Plate I.[8]

Attention was called to the presence of a track and footprint of an animal in the Potsdam sandstone of Lower Canada by Sir W. E. Logan

[1] Notice of a new brachiopod from the lead-bearing rocks at Mine la Motte, Missouri. Phila. Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 23, 1871, p. 185.

[2] A description of the Oolitic formation lately discovered in the county of Saratoga, and State of New York. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 9, 1825, pp. 16–19.

[3] Cryptozoon, n. gen., Cryptozoon proliferum, n. sp. Description of Pl. VI. 36th Ann. Rep. State Mus. Nat. Hist., 1884.

[4] Report of the geologist of the 2d geological district of New York. Second annual report of the Geological Survey of N. Y. Albany, 1838, p. 230.

[5] Second annual report of the paleontological department of the survey, Third annual report of the Geological Survey of New York. Albany, 1839, pp. 63, 64.

[6] Geology of New York, Part 2, comprising the survey of the 2d geological (northern) district. 1842, p. 268, fig. 68.

[7] Geological survey of New York; its influence on the productive pursuits of the community. N. Y. State Agric. Soc. Trans., for 1843, 1844, p. 252.

[8] Paleontology of New York, vol. I, containing descriptions of the organic remains of the lower division of the New York System. Albany, 1847.

in 1851. He described its mode of occurrence and stratigraphic position.[1] This paper was followed by one by Prof. Owen, who refers the tracks to a species of tortoise.[2]

At a meeting of the British Association for the Advancement of Science, held at Ipswich in 1851, Sir W. E. Logan exhibited a slab of sandstone and a cast from a larger one, showing what Prof. Owen had, in a communication to the Geological Society, pronounced to be a track and footsteps of a species of tortoise, thus proving the existence of reptiles at the very earliest period of known animal life.[3]

In describing in 1852 the sandstone occurring in Beauharnois County, Canada, Sir W. E. Logan makes the following observation upon *Scolithus linearis*:[4]

> In this part it [the sandstone] is abundantly marked over considerable surfaces by what the geologists of New York have called *Scolithus linearis*, which consists, where the rock is weathered, of straight, vertical cylindrical holes, of about an eighth of an inch in diameter, descending several inches, and where the rock is unweathered of corresponding solid cylinders, composed apparently of grains of sand, cemented by a slightly calcareous matrix, more or less tinged with peroxide of iron. Mr. Hall and other American geologists include them among the Fucoids of the rock, but they appear to me more like worm holes. In one or two instances I have perceived that the tubes are interrupted in their upward course by a thin layer of sand, of a portion which descends into them and stops them up; and from this it would appear that the cylinders were hollow when the superincumbent sand was spread over them. Whatever may be the origin of the tubes, they strongly mark many beds in the upper part of the sandstone throughout the Canadian portions of its distribution already mentioned; and it is stated by Mr. Hall that the same characteristic accompanies the Potsdam sandstone in New York and Pennsylvania and as far as Tennessee.

He also speaks of the presence of Fucoides and of *Lingula antiqua*. This is followed by a detailed account of the strata containing the footprints described in the same volume by Prof. Owen.

This paper by Mr. Logan was followed by one by Prof. Owen, who described the various footprints and impressions under the following names:[5]

Protichnites septem-notatus, p. 214.
Protichnites octo-notatus, p. 217.
latus, p. 218.
multinotatus, p. 219.
lineatus, p. 220.
alternans, p. 221.

The descriptions are accompanied by admirable illustrations of the varieties designated. He concludes that the impressions appear to have been made by animals allied to Limulus.[6]

---

[1] On the occurrence of a track and footprints of an animal in the Potsdam sandstone of Lower Canada. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 7, 1851, pp. 247–250.

[2] Ibid., p. 250–252.

[3] On the age of the copper-bearing rocks of Lake Superior and Huron, etc. British Assoc. Rep. Trans., of sections for 1851–'52, p. 62.

[4] On the footprints occurring in the Potsdam sandstone of Canada. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc. Lond., Proc., vol. 8, 1852, pp. 200, 201.

[5] Description of the impressions and footprints of the Protichnites from the Potsdam sandstone of Canada. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc. London, vol. 8, 1852, pp. 214–225.

[6] Op. cit., p. 224.

In 1856 Dr. Emmons published a description of *Lingula prima* Emmons, *Lingula antiquata* Emmons, and *L. acuminata* Conrad. The two latter species are illustrated on Pl. IV, but in the description of the plate the figure of *Lingula antiquata* is called *L. prima* by error.[1]

In 1860, Prof. F. H. Bradley described and illustrated *Conocephalites minutus* from the Potsdam sandstone at Au Sable Chasm, near Keeseville, New York.[2]

The announcement of the discovery of another type of track in the Potsdam sandstone was made by Sir W. E. Logan, in 1860. For this he proposed the name *Climactichnites wilsoni*.[3]

In 1869 Prof. O. C. Marsh described a new species of Protichnites from the Potsdam sandstone of Essex County, New York, naming it *Protichnites logananus*.[4]

As the result of comparative study of different tracks, Dr. J. W. Dawson concluded that Protichnites of Owen was possibly made by some Limuloid crustacean.[5]

From collections made at Keeseville, New York, Messrs. Hall and Whitfield described the genus Palæacmæa, the type species being *Palæacmæa typica* and *Hyolithes gibbosa*.[6]

In 1877 Mr. E. J. Chapman says that the fossil tracks known as Protichnites and Climactichnites are of such a nature that he does not consider them to be of animal origin; and he suggests that they are nothing more than impressions of large fucoids. If this idea be accepted he proposes to change the names to Protichnides and Climactichnides.[7]

From the limestone in Saratoga County, New York, in which Mr. J. H. Steele noticed the large concentric concretions, Mr. C. D. Walcott described in 1879 the following species:[8]

Platyceras minutissimum, p. 129.
Metoptoma cornutiforme, p. 129.
Conocephalites calciferus, p. 129.
Conocephalites harttii, p. 130.
Ptychaspis speciosus, p. 131.

The presence of a species closely allied to *Bathyurus armatus* of Billings was noticed; also Stromatopora sp. ?, *Lingula acuminata*, *Metop-*

[1] American Geology, containing a full statement of the principles of the science, with full illustrations of the characteristic American fossils. Albany, 1856, vol. 1, pt. 2, pp. 202, 203.

[2] Description of a new trilobite from the Potsdam sandstone. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 30, 1860, p. 241.

[3] On the track of an animal lately found in the Potsdam formation. Canadian Nat., vol. 5, 1860, pp. 282–285.

[4] Description of a new species of Protichnites from the Potsdam sandstone of New York. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 48, 1869, pp. 46–49.

[5] Impressions and footprints of aquatic animals and imitative markings on Carboniferous rocks. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 5, 1873, p. 17.

[6] Notice of two new species of fossil shells from the Potsdam sandstone of New York. 23d Rep. New York State Mus. Nat. Hist., 1873, p. 242.

[7] On the probable nature of the supposed fossil tracks known as Protichnites and Climactichnites. Canadian Jour. Sci., Lit. and Hist., new series, vol. 15, 1877, p 490.

[8] Descriptions of new species of fossils from the Calciferous formation. 32d Rep. N. Y. State Mus. Nat. Hist., 1879, pp. 129–131.

toma simplex, Murchisonia sp. ?, and a Lamellibranchiate shell. The fauna was correlated with that of the Potsdam sandstone of Iowa and Wisconsin, although the rocks were referred to the Calciferous formation. This reference was corrected in 1884.[1]

In 1883, Mr. W. F. Ferrier called attention to the presence of tracks on the Potsdam sandstone at the head of Au Sable Chasm in Essex County, New York. They were referred to the genus Gyrichnites of Whiteaves.[2] Later the tracks discovered by Mr. Ferrier were made the subject of a note by Sir J. W. Dawson, who proposed the generic name of Clydichnites for them.[3]

In a note on some obscure organisms in the roofing slates of Washington County, New York, Prof. James Hall redescribes *Buthotrephis ? asteroides* Fitch as *Dactyloidites bulbosus*.[4]

A revision of the fauna occurring in the limestone beds of Saratoga County was made by Mr. C. D. Walcott in 1886, and the following list was published:[5]

NEW YORK.	WISCONSIN.
Cryptozoa proliferum	
Lingulepis acuminata	Lingulepis pinnæformis.
Platyceras minutissimum	Platyceras minutissimum.
Platyceras hoyti	
Metoptoma cornutiforme	Metoptoma cornutiforme.
simplex	
Billingsia saratogensis	
Matthevia variabilis	
Dicellocephalus hartti	Dikelocephalus pepinensis.
speciosus	lodensis.
Ptychoparia calcifera	Ptychoparia wisconsensis.
(A.) saratogensis	oweni (of Hall).

As the result of the comparison of an extended series of specimens from the Potsdam sandstone of Buckingham, Quebec, Messrs. Ami and Sowter concluded that *Scolithus linearis* and *S. canadensis* were identical species; the main differences existing between the two being principally in the preservation, *S. canadensis* occurring in hollow tubes or burrows, while *S. linearis* occurs as casts of the interiors of burrows or holes.[6]

In 1890 Mr. C. D. Walcott described[7] the following species from the limestone in the vicinity of Saratoga Springs, New York:

Platyceras hoyti, p. 268.
Trochus ? saratogensis, p. 268.
Agraulos saratogensis, p. 276.

---

[1] Potsdam fauna at Saratoga, New York. Science, vol. 3, 1884, pp. 136, 137.

[2] Notes on a fossil track from the Potsdam sandstone of northern New York State. Canadian Nat. new ser., vol. 10, 1883, pp. 466, 467.

[3] Impressions on Potsdam sandstone. Science, vol. 1, 1883, p. 177.

[4] Note on some obscure organisms in the roofing slates of Washington County, New York. 39th Rep. N. Y. State Mus. Nat. Hist., 1886, p. 160, pl. 11, fig. 1, 2.

[5] Second contribution to the studies of the Cambrian faunas of North America. U. S. Geol. Survey, Bull. No. 30, 1886, p. 21.

[6] Report of the geological branch [of Ottawa Field Naturalists' Club]. Ottawa Naturalist, vol. 1, 1887, pp. 96, 97.

[7] Description of new forms of Upper Cambrian fossils. U. S. Nat. Mus., Proc., vol. 13, 1890, pp. 276–279.

WESTERN BORDER OR ROCKY MOUNTAIN SUBPROVINCE.

In a letter from Messrs. Meek and Hayden to Lieut. G. K. Warren, dated February 8, 1858, attention is called to the identification of fossils from a sandstone in the Black Hills equivalent to the Potsdam sandstone of the New York series. They recognized Lingula, Obolus?, and fragments of trilobites, belonging to species known to occur in the Potsdam formation in Wisconsin and Minnesota.[1] This notice was followed in 1861 by the publication of the first description of the Cambrian fauna of the Rocky Mountains. The new species described but not illustrated include *Obolella nana*, *Theca* (*Pugiunculus*) *gregaria*, and *Arionellus* (*Crepicephalus*) *oweni*.[2] The descriptions of the species were republished in 1862, in the American Journal of Science, in connection with figures illustrating them. The last species is described as *Arionellus? oweni*. There were also identified from the same horizon *Lingula prima* Conrad and *Lingula antiqua* Hall.[3]

The Black Hills fauna was again described by Messrs. Meek and Hayden in 1864, in their account of the paleontology of the Upper Missouri. *Lingula antiqua*, mentioned in their letter of 1858, is identified as *Lingulepis pinnaformis* Owen (p. 2), and the name *L. dakotensis* proposed in the event of the shell being subsequently determined to be a new species (p. 3). A description and illustration is also given of *Lingulepis prima* Conrad (p. 3), *Obolella nana*, M. & H. (p. 4), *Theca gregaria*, M. & H. (p. 5), *Agraulos oweni*, M. & H. (p. 9), (*Arionellus* (*Crepicephalus*) *oweni*, of the paper of 1861), and an undetermined species of Agraulos (p. 10). All of the species are referred to the Potsdam or Primordial sandstone.[4]

In 1876, when reporting upon the fossils collected by Captain Ludlow's expedition to the Yellowstone National Park, Prof. R. P. Whitfield described two species that are now referred to the Upper Cambrian zone, *Crepicephalus* (*Loganellus*) *montanensis* and *Arionellus tripunctatus*, referring them to the limestone of the Potsdam group overlying the quartzite near Camp Baker.[5]

A preliminary report on the paleontology of the Black Hills by Prof. R. P. Whitfield contains a description of *Palæochorda prima*, *Palæophycus occidentalis*, *Lingulepis cuneolus*, *L. perattenuatus Crepicephalus* (*Loganellus*) *centralis*, and *C.* (*L.*) *planus*. All of these species are referred

[1] Fossils of Nebraska. Letter from F. B. Meek and F. V. Hayden. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 25, 1858, p. 439.

[2] Descriptions of new Lower Silurian (Primordial), Jurassic, Cretaceous, and Tertiary fossils, collected in Nebraska, with some remarks on the rocks from which they were obtained. Phil. Acad. Sci., Proc., vol. 13, 1861, pp. 435, 436.

[3] The Primordial Sandstone of the Rocky Mountains in the Northwestern Territories of the United States. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 33, 1862, pp. 73, 74.

[4] Paleontology of the Upper Missouri; a report upon collections made principally by the expeditions under command of Lieut. G. K. Warren in 1855–'56. Invertebrates. Smithsonian Contributions No. 172, 1864, pp. 1–10.

[5] Descriptions of new species of fossils. Report of a reconnaissance from Carroll, Montana Terr., on the Upper Missouri, to the Yellowstone Park and return, made in the summer of 1875 by Wm. Ludlow, 1876, p. 141.

to the Potsdam formation of the Black Hills of Dakota.[1] In the final report, which appeared in 1880, the species described in the preliminary report are illustrated, and descriptions and illustrations given of *Palæophycus* sp. undet., *Arenocolites* sp. undet. (p. 333), *Lingulepis pinnæformis* (p. 331), *Lingulepis dakotentis* (p. 337), *Obolus? pectenoides* (p. 338), *Obolella polita* (p. 339), *Obolella nana* (p. 340). In the preliminary remarks to the paper it is stated that the horizon of the Potsdam formation of the Black Hills appears to be, so far as the fossils will serve to determine, about the same as that of Wisconsin and the neighboring States.[2]

The only fossils of the Cambrian fauna identified in Colorado are a species of Dikelocephalus from Quandary Peak of the Mosquito Range,[3] and the Lingulepis found in the Trout Creek section (p. 62).

In 1890 Mr. C. D. Walcott[4] described three species from the Upper Cambrian of the Black Hills of Dakota. They were *Hyolithes newtoni* (p. 270), *Ptychoparia vacuna* (p. 275), and *P.* (*Liostracus*) *panope* (p. 275).

TEXAS.

The first notice of the presence of a fauna in Texas subsequently assigned to the Cambrian is by Dr. Roemer in 1849. A description of *Lingula acutangula* (p. 420) and *Pterocephalia sancti-sabæ* (p. 421) is given by him in that year without illustrations.[5]

In his more extended work on the geology of central Texas he describes and illustrates *Lingula acutangula* (p. 90), *Pterocephalia sancti-sabæ* (pp. 92, 93), and the genus *Pterocephalia* (p. 93). He also illustrates the head of a trilobite, allied to Arionellus, and the pygidium of another species, on Table XI.[6]

The primordial character of the fauna referred to the Silurian by Dr. Roemer was announced by M. J. Barrande the following year. He compared it with the fauna of the Potsdam sandstone of New York and Wisconsin.[7]

As geologist of the State of Texas, Dr. B. F. Shumard described in 1861, the strata referred to the Potsdam sandstone. Of the fossils collected he describes as new;

Agnostus coloradoensis, p. 218.
Arionellus (Bathyurus) texanus, p. 218.
planus, p. 219.

[1] Preliminary report on the Paleontology of the Black Hills. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Rocky Mountain region, 1877, pp. 7–11.

[2] Paleontology of the Black Hills of Dakota. Report on the geology and resources of the Black Hills of Dakota, 1880, pp. 329–344.

[3] Geology and Mining Industry of Leadville, Colorado. U. S. Geol. Surv., Monograph vol. 12, pt. 1, 1886, p. 60.

[4] Description of new forms of Upper Cambrian fossils. U. S. Nat. Mus. Proc., vol, 13, 1890, pp. 267–279.

[5] Texas. Mit besonderer Rücksicht auf deutsche Auswanderung und die physischen Verhältnisse des Landes nach eigener Beobachtung geschildert. Bonn, 1849, pp. 420–421.

[6] Die Kreidebildungen von Texas und ihre organischen Einschlusse. Bonn, 1852.

[7] (Silur-Gebilde in Texas und am Oberen See.) Neues Jahrbuch für Miner, 1853, pp. 446, 447.

Conocephalites depressus, p. 219.
billingsi, p. 220.
Dikelocephalus roemeri, p. 220.
Discina microscopica, p. 221.

and he mentions Camerella sp. ?, and Capulus sp. ? (p. 221).[1] He correlates this fauna with that provisionally designated as "being very analogous to the Potsdam of Iowa, Wisconsin, and Minnesota,"[2] and refers it to the Potsdam sandstone.

In the collections obtained by Mr. C. D. Walcott in his reconnaissance of the central area of Texas the following species have been identified:

Eocystites sp. ?
Lingula acuminata, Conrad.
perattenuata, Whitf.
Obolella polita, Hall.
Triplesia primordialis, Whitf.
Orthis coloradoensis, Shumard.
remnichia, Winchell.
Platyceras texanum, Walcott.
Bellerophon antiquatus, Whitf.
Dikelocephalus minnesotensis, Owen (?).
belli, Billings.
Ptychaspis granulosa, Owen.
Chariocephalus tumifrons, H. & W.
Ptychoparia occidens, Walcott.
affinis, Walcott.
burnetensis, Walcott.
llanoensis, Walcott.
? metra, Walcott.
pero, Walcott.
? urania, Walcott.
similis, Walcott.
patersoni, Hall.
perseus var., Hall.
wisconsensis, Owen.
Agraulos convexus, Whitf.
Agraulos ? sp. ?
Illænurus dia, Walcott.

This fauna will be illustrated in connection with a review of the Upper Cambrian fauna of North America now in course of preparation.

In 1890 Mr. Walcott[3] described the following new species from Upper Cambrian strata of Burnet and Llano Counties:

Platyceras texanum, p. 268.
Ptychoparia burnetensis, p. 272.
llanoensis, p. 272.
? metra, p. 273.
pero, p. 274.
? urania, p. 274.
Illænurus ? dia., p. 277.

ARIZONA.

The paleontologic work on the Cambrian fauna found in Arizona has, thus far, been confined to the identification of the species discovered in the Tonto formation of the Grand Cañon. A preliminary study of the fauna has been made and drawings prepared of the species, but up to the present time nothing has been published in relation to them.

[1] The Primordial zone of Texas, with descriptions of new fossils. Am. Jour. Sci. 2d ser., vol. 32, 1861, pp. 213–221.
[2] Op. cit., pp. 217, 218.
[3] Description of new forms of Upper Cambrian fossils. U. S. Nat. Mus. Proc., vol. 13, 1890, pp. 267–279.

CHAPTER III.

NOMENCLATURE EMPLOYED IN THE DESCRIPTION OF THE FORMATIONS.

Several considerations are to be borne in mind relative to geologic nomenclature:

(*a*) The name in itself is nothing unless it conveys to the mind a clear impression of what it refers to and enables the student to make a correlation between its entity and some other entity that has another terminology.

(*b*) Priority of discovery and naming should be sustained by the proof of the accuracy of the original observations, the latter to be judged by the testimony of the formations in the areas where they were first made. If the original proposer of a name bases it upon such errors of observation and interpretation that subsequent observers can not verify his work, and the name can be used only by dropping a name proposed as the result of accurate observation and definition, the latter should be retained and the law of priority should not be used to bolster up an indefinite term.

(*c*) Long use of, and the general acceptance of, a well defined term by the scientific world gives that term a standing that even the claims of a half understood, badly defined term supported by priority should not displace. This may be called the law of usage.

(*d*) From the fact that all the strata of the geologic series do not exist in any one geologic province and that unconformities between different portions of them are not contemporaneous in all provinces, it necessarily follows that the rock series of any one geologic province can not possibly be the chronological equivalent of the rock series of other provinces. Overlappings of series of different chronologic age must occur, and it is therefore impossible for any one geologic province to afford a nomenclature that is applicable to the geologic provinces of the entire world or to the entire geologic series.

(*e*) Each geologic province should have a nomenclature denoting by name each formation contained in it and, if necessary, the names to be applied to the groupings of the formations; but, if practicable, the formations and the grouping of formations should be referred to some position within the larger composite groups. For instance, the Potsdam standstone of New York, the Saratoga County limestone, and the Dutchess County limestone are lithologically distinct formations, but they are grouped under the Upper Cambrian terrane as a portion of the Cambrian group.

This method necessitates the multiplication of names, but if it insures accuracy of statement and meaning it is much better than the use of a few old names that have been established in some one geologic province and extended over other upper Cambrian formations in other geologic provinces that can not be proved to be identical or synchronous.

(*f*) The study of the serial relations among rocks by the modern method is of as much importance as that of the specific relations of distinct horizons or of particular formations. The serial relations of one series of rocks in one province can be compared with the serial relations of another group in another province; but the two should receive separate names and be grouped under the greater series to which they belong. For instance, the Trenton series of New York may be compared with the Lebanon series of Tennessee and united as a portion of the Lower Silurian (Ordovician) and respectively compared with the same portion of the Lower Silurian (Ordovician).

(*g*) If it is found that the strata included in a named formation, terrane, or group embraces portions of other formations, terranes, or groups it is allowable to remove portions of such formations, terranes, or groups and still apply the original name, if the portion remaining is distinct or was first described and included under the name.

(*h*) Geologic nomenclature should, in all its parts, be the natural expression of the inter-relationships and mutual subordination of the facts it is the especial aim to associate and systematize.[1]

CAMBRIAN.

The term Cambrian was first introduced to the attention of geologists at the Dublin meeting of the British Association for the Advancement of Science in August, 1835. A joint paper was read by Prof. Adam Sedgwick and R. I. Murchison, entitled "On the Silurian and Cambrian Systems, exhibiting the order in which the older sedimentary strata succeed each other in England and Wales." An abstract of this paper appeared in the account of the proceedings of the British Association published in the Edinburgh New Philosophical Journal for April–October, 1835, page 390. In this the name Cambrian is spelled Cumbrian, probably by a typographical error. The paper appeared in 1836, in volume 5 of the Reports of the Association. In the account of the Transactions of the Sections it says:[2]

> Prof. Sedgwick commenced by pointing out the imperfection of the sections exhibited in the north of England and some portions of north Wales, in consequence of the entire want of continuity between the Carboniferous series and the interior schistose group. * * * Prof. Sedgwick then described in descending order the group of slate rocks as they are seen in Wales and Cumberland. To the highest he gave the name of *Upper Cambrian* group. It occupies the greatest part of the chain of the Berwyns, where it is connected with the Llandeilo flags of the Silurian system, and

[1] On the tripartite classification of the Lower Paleozoic rocks; Charles Lapworth, Geol. Mag., new series, dec. II, vol. 6, 1879, p. 11.

[2] Brit. Assoc. Report for 1835, part 2, Trans. of Sections, 1836, p. 60.

is thence expanded through a considerable portion of south Wales. In one part of its course it is based on beds of limestone and calcareous slate, but on the whole it contains less calcareous matter than the Silurian system and has fewer organic remains. Beds of good roofing slate occur, and a perfect slaty cleavage is often observed in it transverse to the stratification, but other parts of it are of a coarse mechanical texture. To the next inferior group he gave the name of *Middle Cambrian*. It composes all the higher mountains of Caernarvonshire and Merionethshire, and abounds in fine roofing slate, alternating with and apparently passing into irregularly interstratified masses of porphyry. Some portions of it are coarse and mechanical, and it contains (for example at the top of Snowdon) a few organic remains and a few samples of highly calcareous slates, but no continuous beds of limestone. The same group, with the same mineral structure, and in the same position, but without organic remains, is greatly developed in Cumberland. The *Lower Cambrian* group occupies the southwest coast of Caernarvonshire and a considerable portion of Anglesea; it consists chiefly of chlorite schist, passing here and there into mica schist and slaty quartz rock and contains subordinate masses of serpentine and white granular limestone. It contains no organic remains.

In this first description, Archean rocks are included in the lower division; the Middle Cambrian embraces the roofing slates, and the Cambrian group as now generally accepted; while the Upper Cambrian included much of the Lower Silurian of Sir R. I. Murchison, or the Ordovician of Prof. Charles Lapworth.

At a meeting of the Geological Society of London in the spring of 1838, Prof. Sedgwick read a paper entitled "A Synopsis of the English series of stratified rocks inferior to the Old Red sandstone, with an attempt to determine the successive natural groups and formations."[1] When describing the sections of North Wales, etc., the chlorite slates, quartz rock, and mica slates of Anglesea and Caernarvonshire are not included in the Cambrian as was done in 1835.[2] The Lower Cambrian system includes the old slate series of Caernarvonshire and Merionethshire, and ends with the calcareous beds, which range from Bala to the neighborhood of Dinas Mowddy.

The next group, the Upper Cambrian series, commences with the fossiliferous beds of Bala. It includes all the higher portion of the Berwyns, and all the slate rocks of South Wales, which are below the Silurian system. * * * Many of the fossils are identical in species with those of the lower division of the *Silurian system*, nor have the true distinctive zoological characters of the group been well ascertained.

In this arrangement, the Lower Cambrian of 1835 is referred to the primary stratified group, to which he gave the provisional name of Protozoic.[3]

It is further stated that at the north end of the Berwyn chain the Upper Cambrian appears to pass by insensible gradations into the lower division of the upper system, the Caradoc sandstone. Prof. Sedgwick does not appear to have been aware at this time that his Bala series was a portion of Murchison's Lower Silurian, as described by the latter in 1835.

Many geologists have insisted upon restricting the Cambrian to the Lower Cambrian of the scheme of 1835, which Prof. Sedgwick cut off

[1] Proc. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 2, 1838, pp. 675–685. [2] Op. cit., p. 685. [3] Op. cit., p. 684.

in the revision of 1838. It is also well to notice that the Cambrian of 1838 includes exactly the same representative formations as Emmons's Taconic System of 1842–1860, or the Cambrian and Lower Silurian (Ordovician) as now known.

In 1852 we find the Lower Cambrian divided into the Festiniog group above and the Bangor below. The Bangor group is composed of the Llanberris slates and Harlech grits; and the Festiniog group of the Lingula flags, Tremadoc slates, and Arenig slates and porphyry, the whole having a thickness of 10,000 feet. The Upper Cambrian includes the Bala group, which was divided into the Lower and Upper Bala, with a thickness of 8,000 feet. Above this the Caradoc sandstone, limestone, and shale of the Silurian occur with a thickness of 1,500 feet.[1]

In the paper on the Caradoc sandstone of Shropshire, by Messrs. J. W. Salter and W. T. Aveline, it is stated that the fossils of the supposed typical Caradoc sandstone are identical in species, and in association and proportionate numbers of the prevailing species, with those of the Bala group; and there is no admixture of other or new forms, or of those characteristic of higher parts of the system.[2] By priority of definition and description, the Llandeilo and Caradoc beds belong to Murchison's Silurian system; and the Bala series of Sedgwick are stratigraphically and paleontologically the equivalents of the Llandeilo and Caradoc series. They were fairly removed from the Cambrian system by the work of Messrs. Murchison, Sedgwick, and Salter; and in 1854 the Cambrian system included of the original Cambrian the middle member only, the lower division having been removed by Prof. Sedgwick in 1838. The distinguished founder of the Cambrian system did not admit the exclusion of the Bala series from the Cambrian, but with all the facts assembled, as in a recent paper by Prof. J. D. Dana,[3] I think we are compelled to restrict the Cambrian to the original middle division.

The last tabulation given by Prof. Sedgwick of his Cambrian system appeared in the preface of Mr. J. W. Salter's Catalogue of Cambrian and Silurian Fossils in 1873, as follows:[4]

- Cambrian:
  - Upper
    - Upper Bala.
    - Middle Bala.
    - Lower Bala.
  - Middle
    - Arenig or Skiddaw.
    - Tremadoc.
    - Ffestiniog.
    - Menevian.
  - Lower
    - Harlech.
    - Bangor.
    - Longmynd.
    - Llanberris.

[1] On the classification and nomenclature of the Lower Paleozoic rocks of England and Wales. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 8, 1852, p. 147.

[2] On the "Caradoc Sandstone" of Shropshire. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 10, 1853, p. 63.

[3] Sedgwick and Murchison; Cambrian and Silurian; Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 39, 1890, pp. 167–180.

[4] (On the classification of the Cambrian rocks). "Preface to a Catalogue of the Collection of Cambrian and Silurian fossils contained in the Geological Museum of the University of Cambridge," by J. W. Salter, 1873, p. xv.

With the exception of the Bala and Arenig series the system is essentially the same as that generally accepted by the English geologists at the present day.

As geologist of Tennessee, Dr. Gerard Troost read Sir R. I. Murchison's Siluria, and also the observations of Prof. Sedgwick on the Cambrian rocks of Wales. Discussing the changes in nomenclature made necessary in expressing the views of Messrs. Murchison and Sedgwick, he says in 1841:[1]

> After having pointed out, in my last report, the line of junction of the primordial or crystalline rocks in East Tennessee, I mentioned that the country west of the line which separates Tennessee from the State of North Carolina is composed of graywacke, slate, limestone, etc. All this country, according to the views of Murchison and Sedgwick, belongs to a new division, which they call the *Cambrian system*.

He then proceeds to describe the geographic distribution of the rocks that he referred to the Cambrian system, identifying the series in Tennessee with that of Wales entirely upon its lithologic characters and the absence of organic remains, and from the fact of its being succeeded by a series of limestones from which he obtained and identified Silurian fossils.

The presence of the equivalent of the Cambrian system in America was clearly recognized by Dr. E. Emmons, who, in 1844, wrote:

> There are, however, if I understand Mr. Sedgwick and Mr. Murchison, rocks still lower; those which are now considered by them as metamorphic. They are the lower masses which I considered as equivalent to the Taconic rocks; the Lower Cambrian of Sedgwick, and not the Upper, which latter I proved to belong to the New York system. That the Taconic slate is precisely that in which the *Nereites* in Wales occur, there is not the slightest doubt in my own mind, and this is that part of the Taconic system which we can see lying unconformably beneath the oldest member of the New York system, and hence of the Silurian also. I know not, however, whether in Wales the same limestones, slates, and quartz rocks are to be found which we have here, and which are the oldest parts of the Taconic system. These are facts to be determined. Their non-existence in Wales, however, does not destroy the system. Very important members are known there, and should the lower slates and quartz be found wanting, it only proves the absence of that development which is so well known here in New York, Massachusetts, Vermont, and Maine, and I may add, in Michigan also.[2]

Under the influence of the publications of Sir R. I. Murchison, American geologists, other than Drs. Troost and Emmons and the latter's followers, classified all the Lower Paleozoic rocks under Lower Silurian, entirely ignoring Cambrian except to state that it was equivalent to the Lower Silurian. In 1872, however, Dr. T. S. Hunt published his history of the names Cambrian and Silurian in geology, advocating the recognition of the term "Cambrian."[3]

---

[1] Sixth annual report of the geological survey of Tennessee by the State geologist. Nashville, 1841, p. 171, doc. ed., p. 4 of special ed.

[2] The Taconic System, 1844, p. v.

[3] Canadian Naturalist, new ser., vol. 6, 1872, pp. 281–312, 417–448. Geological Magazine, vol. 10, pp. 385–395, 453–461, 504–510, 561–566, 1873.

The view of Dr. Hunt was concurred in by Sir J. W. Dawson, who in 1872 wrote as follows:

I concur in the view that it may well have the name *Siluro-Cambrian*, while the name Cambrian or Primordial will remain for those great and important fossiliferous deposits extending downward from the Potsdam in America and the Tremadoc in England, and constituting an imperishable monument to the labors of Sedgwick and Barrande.[1]

A notice of the proposed change from "Potsdam or Primordial" of the first edition of Dana's Manual of Geology to "Primordial or Cambrian" in the second edition, was published in 1874;[2] and the term was used in a subordinate sense in another edition of the Manual of Geology (1876) as a subdivision of the Lower Silurian (p. 163).

The term "Cambrian" came into general use in the Canadian and Fortieth Parallel Surveys and in the U. S. Geological Survey in 1882. With the exception of a few that prefer to use Taconic, the term is generally employed by geologists of all countries.

Most of the English geologists of the present time draw the line between the Cambrian and Silurian at the summit of the Tremadoc and the base of the Arenig terranes. From a study of the list of genera and species of the fauna of the Lower and Upper Tremadoc slates, I think that the line of demarkation between the two systems would naturally fall between these two subdivisions of the Tremadoc. The fauna of the Lower Tremadoc, in its general facies, is essentially the type of the Cambrian fauna, and there are only a few genera and species more characteristic of the Silurian. The large fauna of the Upper Tremadoc slate is characteristic of the Lower Silurian and the presence of a few genera and species of essentially Cambrian type are not sufficient to include it in the Cambrian. The fact that there is a slight unconformity at the summit of the Tremadoc and the base of the Arenig is not of sufficient general importance to warrant the placing of the line of demarkation between the groups at this horizon.

In a table showing the classification of the British sedimentary rocks, by Prof. A. J. Jukes Brown,[3] the Tremadoc slates are placed in a stage between the Cambrian and Ordovician.

This view of the Tremadoc slates was held by Mr. J. W. Salter,[4] who wrote:

But a few words must be said about this band of slate, which so intimately connects the Lingula flags below with the rocks above, and which is nevertheless so distinct in fossil characters from either.

[1] Canad. Nat., new ser., vol. 7, 1873, p. 7.

[2] Dana, J. D. Reasons for some of the changes in the subdivisions of geological time in the new edition of Dana's Manual of Geology. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 8, 1874, p. 213.

[3] The classification of stratified rocks. Geol. Mag., new ser., dec. III, vol. 2, 1885, p. 297.

[4] Memoirs of the Geological Surveys of Great Britain. Geology of North Wales, second edition, 1881, p. 355.

Dr. Henry Hicks[1] says of it:

The Tremadoc group, therefore, may be said through many of its types of fossils to link the Cambrian and the overlying Ordovician (Lower Silurian) formations together, while it yet marks very distinctly the horizon in which all the truly characteristic types in the Primordial faunas are lost.

TACONIC.

The first proposition to apply the name Taconic to a system or series of rocks is found in a gazetteer of the State of New York, published in 1842.[2] The article is unsigned, but it bears internal evidence of having been written by Dr. Ebenezer Emmons as his first presentation of the views which were more fully elaborated and published later in the same year. He describes the Taghkanic range, and states that the rocks composing the same are situated between the gneiss of Hoosic Mountain on the east and the slates of the transition on the west; that they bear a very close resemblance to the primary on the east, and, on the other hand, a great similarity to the transition slates on the west.[3]

He says:

It is not proposed in this plan to separate these rocks from the primary, but to consider them as belonging to the upper portion and to speak of them as the Taghkanic rocks, or perhaps as the Taghkanic system. * * * Considering them for the present as belonging to the upper portion of the primary, the Taghkanic rocks will be composed, first, of a peculiar talcose slate, or a magnesian slate in part; in other parts it is plumbaginous, which strongly soils the fingers. * * * Second, of white, gray, and clouded limestone varying in texture from fine to coarse granular, often interlaminated with slate, the latter often merely coloring the limestone so as to impart the clouded appearance. * * * Third, of granular quartz, or a sandstone generally siliceous and of a brown color.[4]

In the concluding remarks on the Taghkanic system, we read:

On the whole, in regard to those rocks we have denominated "Taghkanic," we believe they ought to be separated from those on the east, being, as a whole, clearly distinct from them.[5]

A second memoir appeared in 1842, in which the term "Taghkanic" is changed to Taconic, and a detailed description given of the geographic distribution and character of the rocks forming the Taconic system. A typical section is presented with the following comment:[6]

The following section, extending from Petersburgh, Rensselaer County, to Adams, Massachusetts, embraces all the rocks in this system. Its direction is nearly east and west, or perpendicular to the strike of the system over which it passes.

---

[1] On some recent researches among Lower Paleozoic rocks in the British Islands. Proc. of the Geologists' Association, vol. 7, p. 9.

[2] Topography, geology, and mineral resources of the State of New York. Gazetteer of the State of New York, by James Disturnell. Albany, 1842, pp. 5–25.

[3] Op. cit., p. 11.

[4] Op. cit., p. 11.

[5] Op. cit., p. 12.

[6] Geology of New York, part 2, comprising the survey of the 2d geological (northern) district, 1842, p. 145.

In 1844, a separate memoir[1] was published in which a great addition, was made to the Taconic system west of the Petersburg end of the section of 1842. This addition was in 1856[2] separated as the Upper Taconic.

TACONIAN.

This name was proposed by Dr. T. S. Hunt, in 1877, to include the Lower Taconic of Dr. Emmons,[3] or the Granular Quartz, Berkshire limestone, and Taconic slates of the latter's typical Taconic section of 1842. At the time of the proposal of the name the author was uncertain whether the strata included under it should be referred to the basal beds of the Cambrian or to a pre-Cambrian system of rocks.

In a later paper he refers the Taconian system of the Appalachians to a pre-Cambrian horizon as compared with the Cambrian rocks from that region. This is stated by him as follows: "This Appalachian-Cambrian series is wholly uncrystalline, and is separated from the Taconian by a stratigraphical break, and by a great interval of time, which includes the Keweenian period."[4] As we now know that the Granular Quartz is characterized by the Lower Cambrian or Olenellus fauna, the Berkshire or Stockbridge limestone by the Chazy-Trenton and perhaps at its base by an Upper Cambrian fauna, and the original Taconic slate of the Lower Taconic of Dr. Emmons is correlated by its stratigraphic position with the Hudson shales, the term Taconian ceases to be of value in geologic nomenclature.

PRIMORDIAL.

This name was used by M. J. Barrande to designate the First fauna, in contradistinction to the Second and Third.[5]

The name was applied at first to the fauna, but, in 1854, in the first edition of "Siluria," Sir Roderick Murchison designated the formation containing the Primordial fauna as the Primordial Silurian, dividing the Silurian into the Upper Silurian, the Lower Silurian, and the Primordial Silurian. The use of the latter term has been advocated more or less by those who oppose the use of the term Cambrian; but the name Primordial is now rarely used except when mentioning the First fauna of Barrande.

---

[1] The Taconic System; based on observations in New York, Massachusetts, Vermont, and Rhode Island. Albany, 1844, pp. i–vii, 67.

[2] Emmons, Ebenezer. American Geology, containing a full statement of the principles of the science, with full illustrations of the characteristic American fossils. Albany, 1856, vol. 1, pt 2, pp. 49–66.

[3] On the geology of the Eozoic rocks of North America. (Abstract). Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., vol. 19 1878, p. 278.

[4] Hunt, T. Sterry. The Taconic Question in Geology. Mineral Physiology and Physiography. A second series of chemical and geological essays. With general introduction. 1886, p. 677.

[5] Système Silurien du centre de la Bohème, vol. 1, 1852, p. 88.

POTSDAM.

There are several early references to a sandstone occurring at the base of the section in the Upper Mississippi Valley and about the Adirondack Mountains in New York; but it was not until 1838 that it was well defined and given a distinct name. This was done by Dr. E. Emmons. In describing this sandstone, Dr. Emmons says:[1]

> I shall not enter upon its geological relations any farther than to state that, in Potsdam and other towns in which it appears, it uniformly rests on the primary strata; and in no part of the county is there any rock which interposes itself between it and the primary, so that it appears here as the oldest representative of the transition series. The identification of this rock with the sandstones along the southern border of Lake Ontario will be a matter of some difficulty. It is geologically below the transition limestone, and never in the northern district alternates with it, but always holds the relation of an inferior rock. * * *
>
> This rock is a true sandstone, of a red, yellowish red, gray, and grayish white colors. It is made up of grains of sand, and held together without a cement. Intermixed with the siliceous grains are finer particles of yellowish feldspar, which do not essentially change the character of the sandstone, but they show the probable source from which the materials forming it were originally derived, viz, some of the varieties of granite.

On the Lake Champlain side of the Adirondacks it is described as follows:

> Its position is evidently beneath the transition limestone and calciferous sandrock. It is very deficient in organic relics, though not entirely destitute of them. It is unnecessary to repeat what has already been said of this rock; it is purely quartzose or siliceous in its composition and finely stratified. It dips to the northeast at Port Kent at an angle varying from 5° to 10°. The places where it occurs along Lake Champlain are indicated on a map of a part of this [Clinton County], to which I refer the reader. This rock at Keeseville has been rent in the most remarkable manner; several fissures, the principal one of which extends nearly a mile, and through which the Au Sable flows, have been opened by some convulsion in nature to the depth, in some places, of a hundred feet and from five to twenty wide. Near the bottom of the fissure at High Bridge, as it is called, I discovered numerous specimens of a small bivalve mollusca, a lingula. I found, also, on examination, that the same fossil occurred through an extent of 70 feet at least, and so far as I could discover, it was the only fossil inclosed in the rock. It is extremely thin and delicate, yet the shell is perfectly preserved, and is probably one of the oldest inhabitants of the globe, as the rock in which they occur is the oldest of the transition series.[2]

The name "Potsdam sandstone" was quickly accepted by the New York State geologists, incorporated in their annual reports, and used in the final report on the geology of the State. The extension, by correlation, of the name to the Southern Appalachians, through Pennsylvania, Virginia, North Carolina, Tennessee, and Alabama; westward through the Mississippi Valley and the Rocky Mountains, and north into Canada, and down the St. Lawrence Valley, rapidly followed, until the name Potsdam is now used to typify the Upper Cambrian zone in all parts of America.

---

[1] Report of the geologist of the 2d geological district of New York. Second annual report of the Geological Survey of N. Y. Albany, 1838, pp. 214, 215.

[2] Op. cit., p. 230.

ST. CROIX.

The name St. Croix was proposed by Prof N. H. Winchell in 1873 for the fossiliferous sandstone beneath the Lower Magnesian limestone of the Mississippi Valley. The reason given is that the sandstone identified by Dr. D. D. Owen as the Potsdam sandstone is unconformably superjacent to a series of quartzites in Wisconsin and Minnesota that are the true equivalents of the Potsdam sandstone of New York.[1]

The presence of the same fauna in the typical Potsdam sandstone on the northern side of the Adirondack Mountains as that found in the upper sandstone of St. Croix Falls negatives this view and correlates the sandstones that are unconformably superjacent to the lower quartzites with the typical Potsdam, and refers the lower quartzites to the Algonkian. The name St. Croix, however, is retained for the fossiliferous Cambrian sandstones of the upper Mississippi Valley in Wisconsin, Iowa, and Minnesota.

MADISON.

The name Madison sandstone was proposed by Prof. R. D. Irving,[2] in 1877, for a band of sandstone consisting, in large part, of nearly pure white quartz sand, with a thickness of 35 to 50 feet, and lying between the base of the Magnesian limestone of the Lower Silurian (Ordovician) and the Mendota limestone in Wisconsin.

MENDOTA.

This name was proposed by Prof. R. D. Irving, in 1877, for a calcareous stratum near the upper portion of the "Potsdam" formation of Wisconsin. It is formed of alternating sandy and calcareous material that, in the upper portion, is almost a well marked and very persistent yellow limestone layer, with a thickness of 30 feet.[3]

TONTO.

This name was applied by Mr. G. K. Gilbert, in 1874,[4] to a series of sandstone and shale between the subjacent granite and the superjacent massive limestones that occur in the section at the mouth of the Grand Cañon of the Colorado River, Arizona. He considered the formation of Primordial age, and it has since been found to contain an Upper Cambrian fauna. It was more fully described by him in the following year.[5]

---

[1] General sketch of the geology of Minnesota. Geol. and Nat. Hist. Survey, Minnesota, 1st Ann. Rep. for 1872, 1873, pp. 70–72.

[2] The Lower Silurian rocks. (Geology of central Wisconsin.) Geol. Wisconsin, survey of 1873–1879, vol. 2, 1877, p. 525.

[3] Ibid., 525.

[4] On the age of the Tonto sandstone. (Abstract.) Washington Phil. Soc. Bull., vol. 1, 1874, p. 109.

[5] Explorations and surveys west of the 100th Merid., vol. 3, 1875, p. 163; pp. 521–522.

HAMBURG.

The Hamburg limestone and the Hamburg shale are names used by Mr. Arnold Hague, in 1881, to designate the Upper Cambrian limestone and shale of the Cambrian section of the Eureka district, Nevada. The limestone is superjacent to the Secret Cañon shale and subjacent to the Hamburg shale. The latter is characterized by a well developed Upper Cambrian fauna.[1]

SECRET CAÑON.

This name was applied by Mr. Arnold Hague, in 1881, to a band of shale in the Cambrian section of the Eureka district, superjacent to the Prospect Mountain limestone and subjacent to the Hamburg limestone, characterized by a fauna that may be referred to the upper portion of the Middle Cambrian.[2]

KATEMCY.

Prof. Theodore B. Comstock, in describing the Upper Cambrian rocks of the central area of Texas, proposed the name "Katemcy" for the "Potsdam series," or Upper Cambrian.(?)[3] This terrane is named from the beds exposed in the valley of Katemcy Creek, Mason County.

RILEY.

This name was proposed by Prof. Theodore B. Comstock, for a series of sandstones which he considered to be superjacent to the Hickory series of the Central Texas, Cambrian section, and subjacent to the Katemcy or Potsdam series. He referred it provisionally to the Middle Cambrian zone.[4]

HICKORY.

This name was proposed by Prof. Theodore B. Comstock, for a series of strata that he considered to underlie the typical Potsdam Sandstone of the central Texas section. He referred the series provisionally to the Lower Cambrian.[5]

CONNASAUGA.

This name was proposed by Mr. C. Willard Hayes, for the Cambrian shales at the summit of the Cambrian section in northwestern Georgia. He correlated it with the Knox shale of Safford's Tennessee section, assigning to it a thickness of 1,600 to 2,000 feet.[6]

---

[1] Report (on work in Eureka District). U. S. Geol. Surv., 2d Ann. Rep., 1880-'81, 1881, p. 27; 3d Ann. Rep., 1882, p. 255.

[2] Ibid., pp. 27, 253.

[3] Comstock, T. B.: A preliminary report on the geology of the central mineral region of Texas. First Ann. Rept. Geol. Surv. Texas, 1889, p. 289.

[4] Ibid., p. 286.

[5] Ibid., p. 285.

[6] The overthrust faults of the southern Appalachians. Bull. Geol. Soc. America, vol. 2, Feb. 1891, p. 143, pl. 3.

This name seems to be a synonym of Montevallo shales proposed by Prof Eugene A. Smith.

MONTEVALLO.

The name Montevallo, or Choccolocco, shales was proposed by Prof. Eugene Smith, for a series of sandy shales of a great variety of colors, such as olive, green, brown, chocolate, yellowish, etc., that occur above the Coosa shales in northeastern Alabama.[1]

This name appears to be equivalent to Connasauga shales proposed by Mr. C. Willard Hayes.

CHOCCOLOCCO.

This is apparently a synonym of Montevallo.

COOSA.

The name Coosa shales was proposed by Prof. Eugene A. Smith for the shales in the Coosa Valley at the base of the Cambrian section. They are described as thin-bedded limestones with clay seams between.[2]

This name is also used by Mr. C. Willard Hayes in a paper read before the Geological Society of America, December 29, 1890, and published February 9, 1891. It was applied to the series of shales, some 3,000 feet in thickness, occurring at the base of the Cambrian section in northwestern Georgia.[3]

ROME SANDSTONE.

This name was proposed by Mr. C. Willard Hayes for a sandstone of Cambrian age occurring at Rome, Georgia. In connection with the Weisner quartzite it is given a thickness of from 2,000 to 3,500 feet. The correlation is with the Knox sandstones of Tennessee.[4]

BRETONIAN.

This name is applied by Mr. G. F. Matthew to the upper series of Cambrian rocks as found in the vicinity of St. John, New Brunswick, and on the island of Cape Breton, where the fauna of the division is well developed. It will be arranged as an Upper Cambrian formation.[5]

---

[1] Geological structure and description of the valley region adjacent to the Cahaba Coal Field. Geol. Surv. Alabama. Report on the Cahaba Coal Field, pt. II, 1890, p. 148. (Issued January, 1891.)

[2] Ibid., p. 148.

[3] The overthrust faults of the Southern Appalacians. Bull. Geol. Soc. America, vol. 2, Feb., 1891, p. 143, pl. 8.

[4] Ibid., p, 143.

[5] Illustrations of the fauna of the St. John group, No. 5. Trans. Roy. Soc. of Canada, vol. 8, 1890, p. 129.

ACADIAN.

The name Acadian was proposed by Sir J. W. Dawson in 1867 for the series of rocks represented in New Brunswick by the St. John slate of Mr. G. F. Matthew.[1] In 1868 these observations were reprinted, with the statement that the discovery adds a new formation to the Paleozoic period in America. He says:

> This formation has as yet been known as the "St. John group," but I think this name unsuitable, both on account of the number of places known as St. John and on account of the variety of formations occurring near St. John, in New Brunswick, and would propose for the group now under consideration, characterized by *Paradoxides*, *Conocephalites*, etc., and the oldest known member of the Paleozoic of America, the name Acadian group, by which I hope it will be known to geologists in whatever part of America it may be recognized.[2]

In a recent paper on the fauna of the St. John group, Mr. G. F. Matthew limits the term Acadian to his Division 1 of the New Brunswick Cambrian section. This includes the fauna of the Paradoxides zone.[3]

ST. JOHN'S.

Prof. J. Beete Jukes in 1843[4] used the name St. John's slate for the slate as seen near St. John's, Newfoundland, beneath the Signal Hill sandstone. When referring, in 1862, to this work[5] he states he did not find any fossils in the lower slate formation, but that Mr. C. B nnett, subsequently found trilobites of the genus Paradoxides in the slates on the west side of St. Mary's Bay. These were named *P. bennetti* by Mr. J. W. Salter. On the map accompanying the report of 1843, the slates of St. John's extend southward from St. John's and around the southern point of the Avalon Peninsula to and about the Bay of St. Mary's.

The investigation of Dr. Alexander Murray and Mr. J. P. Howley in connection with the geological survey of Newfoundland, have shown that the slate carrying Paradoxides about St. Mary's Bay is a later formation than the slate at St. John's; and that the Paradoxides slates are unconformably superjacent to the slates to which Prof. Jukes gave the name of St. John's in 1843. This restricts the name as given by Prof. Jukes to the slate series of St. John's, described as from 2,000 to 3,000 feet thick. It was in this series of slates that the Rev. Moses Harvey discovered the fossil which Mr. Billings described as *Aspidella terranovica*. The entire series, along with the Signal Hill sandstone of Prof. Jukes, was referred to the intermediate or Huronian

---

[1] On recent geological discoveries in the Acadian provinces of British America. Proc. Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., vol. 16, 1867, pp. 117-119.

[2] Acadian geology. The geological structure, organic remains, and mineral resources of Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and Prince Edward Islands. 2d ed., London, 1868. p. 638.

[3] Illustrations of the fauna of the St. John Group No. 5. Trans. Roy. Soc. of Canada, vol. 8, 1891, p. 129.

[4] General report of the geological survey of Newfoundland in 1839 and 1840. London, 1843, p. 59.

[5] The Student's Manual of Geology. 2d edition, Edinburgh, 1862, p. 457.

system by Dr. Murray; and in the classification used in this memoir it is included under the Algonkian, as a pre-Cambrian formation.

In proposing a classification for the formations in the vicinity of St. John, New Brunswick, Mr. F. G. Matthew proposed the term, "St. John group" for several zones of soft black and dark gray, finely laminated shales alternating with zones of coarser grained slates, containing numerous thin beds of fine-grained sandstone.[1] The fossils were Lingula, a Conchifer, Annelids, and Coprolites. This was republished in 1865, and is used in all the latest publications by Mr. Matthew.

In view of the fact that the term "St. John's" was used for a distinct formation by Prof. Jukes in 1843, it appears best to continue to apply it to these slates of the Algonkian; and to use the later name "Acadian" for the slates at St. John, New Brunswick.

JOHANNIAN.

This name is proposed by Mr. G. F. Matthew for a local series of strata in the St. John basin of New Brunswick that occur between the Paradoxides zone, or Division No. 1, and the Upper Cambrian Zone, or Division No. 3, which he calls Bretonian.[2]

GEORGIA.

The name Georgia was incidentally used by Prof. Jules Marcou in 1860, when stating that "Prof. Emmons has always regarded the black slates of Georgia as a part of his Taconic system."[3] In the following year the name was used in volume 1 of the Geology of Vermont, in the systematic description of a group of formations, the typical one of which is a series of slates and shales above the "Red sandrock" in the town of Georgia, Vermont. There was also included in the group the roofing slate belt of Rutland County, Vermont, that passes into Washington County, New York. A provisional reference was made of a series of clay slates that occur in the central part of the State.[4] A full description of the formations referred to the group is given in the text, and their geographic distribution is delineated on an accompanying map.

Prof. Jules Marcou advanced the claim that he first used the name Georgia in October, 1860, which was followed in December, 1861, with a full definition of the group.[5] Prof. Hitchcock in reply to this, states

[1] Matthew, G. F.: Observations on the geology of St. John County, New Brunswick. Canadian Nat. vol. 8, 1863, p. 244.

[2] Illustrations of the fauna of the St. John Group No. 5. Trans. Roy. Soc. of Canada, vol. 8, 1891, p. 129.

[3] On the Primordial Fauna and the Taconic System, by Joachim Barrande, with additional notes by Jules Marcou, Proc. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., vol. 7, 1860, p. 375.

[4] Hitchcock, C. H. Geology of Vermont, vol. 1, p. 357.

[5] The Taconic of Georgia and the Report on the Geology of Vermont. Memoirs Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., vol. 4, 1868, pp. 123, 124.

that excerpts from volume 1 of the Geology of Vermont were distributed prior to December, 1861, and that it was in print by July, 1861.[1]

On a map, in the atlas accompanying the Geology of Canada for 1863, published in 1865, the Georgia group of Prof. Hitchcock is included with the "Red Sandrock" in a common color, and is so referred to in the legend. This includes the "Red Sandrock" series and the Georgia series of Prof. C. H. Hitchcock as one formation under the name of Potsdam.

In 1886 the "Red Sandrock" was included by Mr. C. D. Walcott with the shales of the Georgia series, in the Middle Cambrian or Georgia group.[2] The reference to the Middle Cambrian was changed to Lower Cambrian three years later.[3]

GRANULAR QUARTZ.

This is one of the first formations differentiated and named by Prof. Amos Eaton.[4] He referred it to the Primitive class and indicated its stratigraphic position on a section accompanying the index. The name was accepted by Dr. E. Emmons[5] in 1842 and placed as the second member of his Taconic system, between the second bed of Stockbridge limestone and the third bed of limestone. This section was corrected in 1844, so as to place the "Granular Quartz" at the base of the Taconic system.[6]

In 1887 the Olenellus fauna was discovered by Mr. C. D. Walcott in the "Granular Quartz" near Bennington, Vermont, thus determining its pre-Potsdam age.[7]

RED SANDROCK.

The occurrence of a red sandstone at Burlington Falls, Vermont, was mentioned by Prof. C. T. Jackson in 1844.[8]

In the scheme of Dr. C. B. Adams, illustrating the rocks of Vermont, as expressed in the nomenclature of the New York system, the Red Sandrock occurs above the Hudson River shales.[9]

The correlation thus indicated is that of the reddish brown Medina sandstone of the New York series with the reddish colored "sandstone" of Vermont, and the name Red Sandrock was applied to the latter, thus originating a term that has continued in geologic literature, not-

[1] Date of the publication of the report upon the Geology of Vermont. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist. Proc., vol. 24, 1888, p. 34.

[2] U. S. Geol. Survey, Bull. No. 30, 1886, p. 44.

[3] Stratigraphic position of the Olenellus Fauna in North America and Europe. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 37, 1889, p. 383.

[4] An index to the Geology of the Northern States, with a transverse section from Catskill Mountain to the Atlantic. Leicester, 1818, p. 21.

[5] Geol. of N. Y., Part 2, comprising the survey of the 2d Geol. (Northern) District, 1842, p. 144.

[6] The Taconic System; based on observations in New York, Massachusetts, Vermont and Rhode Island. Albany, 1844, p. 18.

[7] Discovery of fossils in the Lower Taconic of Emmons. Am. Assoc. Proc., vol. 36, 1888, p. 212.

[8] Final report on the Geology and Mineralogy of the State of New Hampshire, 1844, p. 161.

[9] First Ann. Rep. on the Geology of Vermont. Burlington, 1845, p. 61.

withstanding the fact that the rock itself is a magnesian limestone, with more or less siliceous and sandy beds alternating with the limestone.

In the second annual report of Vermont by Dr. Adams, in the description of a section of Snake Mountain, Addison County, the strata capping the mountains are designated by the name of Red Sandrock.[1]

PRIMAL.

The term Primal was proposed by the brothers Rogers in 1844 and defined as follows:

> Our Primal series embraces the four great rocks between the base of the Paleozoic strata and the base of the first limestone, the Calciferous sandstone of New York.[2]

The equivalent expression was Formation No. 1, and both terms have been used in the geologic work of Pennsylvania, Maryland, and Virginia, but they have not come into general use.

CHILHOWEE.

The name Chilhowee was proposed by Prof. J. M. Safford in 1856 for a series of sandstones and shales superjacent to the Ocoee conglomerates and shales and subjacent to the Magnesian limestone and Shale group, or what was subsequently called the Knox shale and the Knox limestone.[3]

By the discovery of the Olenellus fauna in the shale resting upon the quartzite of Chilhowee Mountain, the Chilhowee Mountain quartzite is referred to the Lower Cambrian and correlated with the Granular quartzite upon the western slope of the Green Mountains of Vermont.

WEISNER.

This name is proposed by Prof. Eugene A. Smith for the lenticular masses of quartzite that occur in the Montevallo shale of northeastern Alabama. He correlates the quartzite with the Chilhowee Mountain quartzite of Tennessee. This correlation is probably incorrect, as the latter quartzite is of Lower Cambrian age.[4]

This name is also used by Mr. C. Willard Hayes for a series of quartzites that occur between the Coosa shales and the Connasauga shales of the Cambrian section of northwestern Georgia. In connection with the Rome sandstone he mentions the correlation of it with the Knox sandstone, Potsdam or Chilhowee, Prof. Safford's Tennessee section, by Profs. Smith and Safford.[5]

---

[1] Second Ann. Rep. of Geol. Surv. of Vermont, 1846, p. 163.

[2] On American geology and present condition of geological research in the United States. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 47, 1844, p. 155.

[3] A geological reconnaissance of Tennessee; first biennial report. Nashville, 1856, p. 152.

[4] Geological structure and description of the valley region adjacent to the Cahaba Coal Field. Geol. Surv. Alabama. Rept. on the Cahaba Coal Field. Pt. II, 1890, p. 149.

[5] The overthrust faults of the southern Appalachians. Bull. Geol. Soc. America, vol. 2, Feb., 1891, p. 142.

OCOEE.

This name was proposed by Prof. J. M. Safford in 1856 for a series of conglomerates and slates that he considered to be superjacent to the Mica-slate group and subjacent to the Chilhowee sandstone.[1]

PROSPECT.

For the lower members of the Cambrian section, in the Eureka district, Nevada, Mr. Arnold Hague proposed, in 1881, Prospect Mountain quartzite and Prospect Mountain limestone.[2] As now known the upper portion of the Prospect Mountain quartzite is characterized by the Olenellus or Lower Cambrian fauna, and the Prospect Mountain limestone by the Middle Cambrian fauna of the Rocky Mountain section.

EASTERN AND WESTERN SANDSTONE.

These names were applied to the horizontal, evenly bedded sandstones of the south shore of Lake Superior, east and west of Keweenaw Point, by Dr. R. D. Irving in 1883 as convenient terms under which to describe the character of the sandstone and its geographic distribution.[3]

LAKE SUPERIOR SANDSTONE.

Dr. J. J. Bigsby described the red and white sandstone along the south shore of Lake Superior as early as 1825, and in the account of the geology of Lake Superior by Capt. H. W. Bayfield, he speaks of the sandstones of Lake Superior.[4] As used by Capt. Bayfield, the Lake Superior sandstone included both the Cambrian sandstones of the south shore, and the pre-Cambrian sandstones of Keweenaw Point and the north shore of the Lake. It has been used by various authors in the same general manner, and has little value as a term in stratigraphic geology.

POTSDAMIC.

Prof. C. H. Hitchcock proposed in 1888 for the rocks[5] containing the Cambrian fauna, the name Potsdamic or Taconic.

---

[1] A geological reconnaissance of Tennessee; first biennial report. Nashville, 1856, p. 151.
[2] U. S. Geol. Survey, Second Ann. Rep., 1880–'81, 1882, p. 27; 3d Ann. Rep., p. 254.
[3] The copper-bearing rocks of Lake Superior. U. S. Geol. Survey, Monograph, vol. 5; 1883, pp. 351, 365.
[4] Outlines of the Geology of Lake Superior. Quebec Lit. and Hist. Soc. Trans., vol. 1, 1829, pp. 15–22.
[5] Date of the publication of the report upon the Geology of Vermont. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist. Proc. vol. 24, 1888, p. 37.

CHAPTER IV.

SUMMARY OF THE PRESENT KNOWLEDGE OF THE FORMATIONS.

The data under this heading is assembled for each of the following Geologic Provinces:

Atlantic Coast Province.
Appalachian Province.
Rocky Mountain Province.
Interior Continental Province.

A brief résumé is given at the end of the description of the formations of each province and a general résumé of the Cambrian Group at the end of the chapter.

ATLANTIC COAST PROVINCE.

This includes the rocks referred to the Cambrian group on the Island of Newfoundland and the adjoining coast of Labrador, the provinces of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick, and Cape Breton, and the States of Maine, New Hampshire, and eastern Massachusetts.

NEWFOUNDLAND AND THE ADJOINING COAST OF LABRADOR.

The detailed knowledge we have of the Cambrian rocks of Newfoundland is obtained largely from the publications of the Geological Survey of Canada for the northwest and west coast and the Labrador coast, and from the descriptions by the Newfoundland Survey of the eastern and southeastern coast. To the latter there is added the results of a season's work on the Avalon peninsula, by the writer.

NORTHWESTERN NEWFOUNDLAND.

The Cambrian strata on the adjoining coast of Labrador are included with those of the Cambrian area of northwestern Newfoundland, as the two are considered to belong to one geologic province.

The section at L'Anse au Loup, on the north side of the straits of Belle Isle[1] shows 231 feet of arenaceous beds at the base, overlain by

[1]Logan, W. E.: Geological Survey of Canada; report of progress from its commencement to 1863. Montreal, 1863, p. 288.

143 feet of gray, reddish and greenish limestones. The section is, in detail, as follows:

	Feet.
1. Red and gray sandstones, sometimes of a reddish gray; consisting, in the lower part, of a conglomerate composed of rounded pebbles of white quartz from an eighth of an inch to 3 inches in diameter, in a matrix of fine-grained sandstone, made up of whitish and reddish quartz, and white and red feldspar. A similar fine-grained mixture constitutes the great mass of rock in the upper part. The beds vary in thickness from 3 inches to 3 feet, and many of them are penetrated vertically by *Scolithus linearis*, about a quarter of an inch in diameter, and always of a lighter color than the surrounding mass. Four feet below the summit there is a bed 3½ feet thick, of a mammillated or concretionary character; the concretions, which are from 1 to 10 feet in horizontal diameter, being composed of concentric layers from a quarter to half an inch thick	231
2. Gray, reddish, and greenish limestones, presenting on the strike great diversities of character. They sometimes consist of yellow-weathering, massive, nodular, argillaceous limestones, probably magnesian, holding lenticular patches of pure limestone, as well as of red and green shale from 3 to 6 feet in horizontal diameter. On the strike these yellow-weathering limestones pass in some parts into gray, compact, pure limestone, in thick, massive beds, while in others they are evenly divided into layers of only 2 or 3 inches thick. In Forteau Bay the whole mass appears to be more or less fossiliferous	143
	374

I examined the collections from these limestones now in the Canadian Geological Survey collections, and found the following species, most of which had been recognized and described by Mr. Billings:

Palæophycus incipiens.
Archæocyathus profundus.
Spirocyathes atlanticus.
Coscinocyathus billingsi.
Iphidea bella.
Kutorgina cingulata.
  labradorica.
Obolella chromatica.
Orthis 2 sp.
Stenotheca elongata.
  rugosa.
Hyolithes billingsi.
Salterella pulchella.
  rugosa.
Olenellus thompsoni?
Ptychoparia miser.
Protypus senectus.
Solenopleura (like S. nana).

In describing the extension of the rocks along the north shore of the Straits of Belle Isle, Sir William E. Logan states that they rest on the Laurentian gneiss, and extend along the coast for nearly 80 miles, with a probable breadth of 10 or 12 miles, and slope towards the water at an average of about 60 feet to the mile. In this stretch along the coast they are divided into five or six tabular masses, separted from one another by narrow denuded portions of the gneiss.[1]

On the Newfoundland shore sandstones occur that were referred to the Potsdam sandstone from their stratigraphic relations to superjacent limestones containing *Lingulepis acuminata*.[2] The data, however, does not fully sustain this reference. Following south along the west

[1] Op. cit., p. 287.
[2] Op. cit., p. 289.

coast nearly 200 miles, to Bonne Bay, a more extended section of Cambrian strata is met with that is described in detail, as follows:[1]

Between 1 and 2 miles inland from the northeast side of the east arm of Bonne Bay there arises a range of hills of Laurentian gneiss, 2,000 or 3,000 feet in height, on the flank of which is exposed the following measured section:

A.

	Feet.
1. Blackish blue, fine-grained slate, with a cleavage independent of the bedding. Of this slate only 105 feet of the upper part are seen; the lower part is concealed in the space between the upper portion and the gneiss, and may comprise a thickness of about 230 feet	335
2. Blackish blue slate interstratified with gray quartzites, in beds of from 6 inches to 3 and 4 feet. In the 80 feet at the bottom the quartzites greatly predominate, and they constitute 15 feet at the top, while the intermediate 175 feet consist chiefly of slate	270
	605

B.

1. Light gray, yellow-weathering limestone, in beds of from 1 to 3 inches thick, interstratified with blackish-blue, slightly calcareous slate, both containing small specks of silver-white mica, which are more abundant in the limestone than in the slate. The limestones hold in abundance fragments of trilobites, chiefly belonging to three or four species. Among them is *Paradoxides* (*Olenellus*) *vermontana*, a new species of Bathyurus, and the pygidium of a species so closely resembling *B. extans* of the Birdseye and Black River formation, that it can scarcely be distinguished from it and may possibly be the same	80
2. Grayish green, micaceo-arenaceous shale, interstratified with a few beds of grayish quartzite weathering slightly yellow	80
3. Strata concealed	30
4. Reddish granular quartzite in thick beds, with numerous parallel joints in two directions, dividing the beds into rhomboids	105
5. Gray and grayish green, micaceo-arenaceous shale in beds from a quarter of an inch to an inch thick, interstratified with a few beds of gray, very ferruginous, sandy dolomite, and fewer of gray quartzite	127
6. Reddish quartzite, in beds of from 1 to 2 feet thick	34
7. Gray arenaceous dolomite, weathering yellowish brown, interstratified with reddish quartzite in beds of from 1 inch to 1 foot thick, and with reddish and grayish micaceo-arenaceous shale predominating toward the top. The beds of dolomite and shale contain fossils, among which are *Obolella chromatica?*, *Obolus labradoricus*, *Paradoxides vermontana*, *Concephalites*, a new species of Bathyurus, and one or more undetermined species of Salterella.	27
	483

C.

1. Whitish quartzite in beds of from 6 inches to 2 feet, interstratified with light gray, micaceo-arenaceous shale, in layers of from 6 inches to 1 foot, which occur at intervals of from 5 to 10 feet	150

[1] Op. cit., pp. 865–867.

	Feet.
2. White and reddish quartzite, in beds of from 1 to 3 feet thick, interstratified toward the bottom with a gray arenaceous dolomite, weathering yellowish brown	160
3. White and reddish quartzite, in beds of from 1 to 3 feet thick, interstratified with greenish micaceo-arenaceous shale, constituting about one-half the amount	90
4. Gray, pure limestone, in beds of from 1 to 3 feet thick, marked with a few reticulating strings of yellowish-weathering dolomite. The rock is a mass of comminuted organic remains, among which are *Paradoxides vermontana*, and undetermined species of Bathyurus and Salterella, as before	20
5. Blackish blue, soft shale, interstratified with gray yellow-weathering limestone, probably magnesian, in beds of 1 or 2 inches thick. The quantities of shale and limestone are about equal, and the whole is intersected by reticulating strings of calc-spar	35
6. Gray, pure limestone, composed of comminuted organic remains, belonging to Paradoxides, Bathyurus, and Salterella, as before	27
7. Bluish black, soft shale, interstratified with gray yellow-weathering dolomitic bands, as before	60
8. Gray, pure limestone, probably composed of comminuted organic remains as before; underlaid by bluish black shale, inclosing nodules of blue compact limestone, some of which weather yellowish-brown, and are probably magnesian	13
9. Bluish black, soft shale of the same character as before, interstratified with a few beds of quartzite	68
	623
Total	1,711

I examined the species of Bathyurus referred to in No. 1 of Division B, and also some other fossils labeled as coming from Bonne Bay, and there can be no doubt that some mistake was made in labeling the specimens, for they certainly belong to the Trenton fauna and could not have been associated with the Lower Cambrian fauna of the section. All the Paradoxides referred to belong to the genus Olenellus or Mesonacis and several of the specimens of Bathyurus to the genus Protypus. If the section was correctly measured and the Cambrian fossils occur as mentioned all the strata belong to the Lower Cambrian, and the fauna is a part of the Georgian fauna of the Cambrian. From the accessible data I am not able to discover that the Upper Cambrian or Potsdam fauna has been found on the northwest coast of Newfoundland or on the Labrador shore.

SOUTHWESTERN NEWFOUNDLAND.

On the "Map showing the distribution of the Silurian and Carboniferous Formations (etc.) in St. George's and Port au Port Bays, Newfoundland," by Dr. Alexander Murray, 1873–'74, a considerable area is designated as Potsdam that is continued north into the valley of the Humber. The reason given for the identification of the Potsdam Terrane, in the Reports of the Geological Survey of Newfoundland for 1873–'74, '75, is that the strata placed within it are subjacent to the beds containing fossils of the Calciferous formation of the Lower Silurian,

This is not sufficient in the absence of Upper Cambrian fossils to establish the presence of the Potsdam horizon on the southwestern side of the island. It is quite probable that strata of Cambrian age occur, but as yet the proof of their presence is very defective.

EASTERN AND SOUTHEASTERN NEWFOUNDLAND.

The section at Canada Bay is as follows, according to Dr. Alexander Murray:[1]

	Feet.
A. Clouds Mountain bluish gray slates, conglomerates, and diorite	2,500
B. Salt Water Pond bluish gray, black, blue, reddish, and white limestones, yellowish gray and black slates, and gray and white sandstones, in some parts holding *Olenellus vermontanus*, Lingula, Scolithus and fucoids	2,000
C. Light and dark blue limestones and brown slates, with cherty limestone at the top	900
	5,400

The strata referred to the Cambrian system in southeastern Newfoundland are well exposed on the peninsula of Avalon and westward along the coast to the northern shore of Fortune Bay, and northward, on the western shores of Trinity Bay. Dr. Murray has given a general description of the terrane in the reports of the Geological Survey of Newfoundland for 1868 and 1870; and a fine geological map of the Peninsula of Avalon, by Dr. Murray and Mr. James P. Howley, 1881, shows the distribution of the Cambrian rocks. The correlated section is described as superjacent to pre-Cambrian "Huronian" rocks and as having a thickness of nearly 6,000 feet, of which 138 feet are limestone and the remaining portion argillaceous and arenaceous deposits.

The section in descending order is as follows:[2]

	Feet.
(*s*) Brown and black micaceous shales, with gray micaceous sandstones of Bell Island, Conception Bay. Organic contents are: two species of Lingula, four species of Palæophycus, *Eophyton linnæanum* (Torrell), and another Eophyton, *Crusiana semiplicata* (Salter) and some others	476
(*r*) Red and green sandstones and slates, with some calcareous beds at the base. Estimated thickness	1,426
(*q*) Kelly's Island sandstones and shales. A few fucoids were the only fossils observed in this division	720
(*p*) Black slate or shale. At Fortune Harbor this division was found to contain *Paradoxides bennettii*	150
(*o*) A bed of dark gray limestone. Fossils consist of broken fragments of trilobites and shells, among which latter a Lingula was observed	5
(*n*) Red, green, and black slates, or shales, which occasionally pass into a finely laminated argillaceous shale, as at Topsail Head. The fossils are *Paradoxides bennettii*, *Conocephalites gregarius*, and probably some other species not yet recognized	1,045

[1] Sequence and distribution of the rocks of the great Northern Peninsula. Geol. Survey Newfoundland, Report of progress for 1864. Revised edition, London, 1881, p. 15.

[2] Murray, Alexander: Of Primordial Silurian and Related formations. Rep. Geol. Surv. Newfoundland for 1870, St. John's, 1871, pp. 36-39. Geology of Newfoundland, 1881, London, pp. 237-239.

	Feet.
(*m*) Hard, thick beds of gray and sometimes reddish limestone. Two species of Conocephalites have been recognized by Mr. Billings, and a small fragment supposed of Paradoxides from a loose stone at Topsail Head; also Salterella and *Crania labradorica*. Thickness at Topsail Head	100
(*l*) Red, green, and blackish argillaceous slates. A few remains of trilobites were found at Random Island, one of which resembles *Bathyurus gregarius* (Billings)	250
(*k*) Conglomerate of Manuel's Brook, not recognized elsewhere	50
(*j*) Red and green argillaceous shales or slates. Thickness at Brigus South Head	150
(*i*) Red and flesh-colored limestones, in which some obscure fossils have been found, and an Archæocyathus detected by Mr. Billings	20
(*h*) Red slate	30
(*g*) Thin bed of impure red limestone	10
(*f*) Red slate	40
(*e*) Red, green, and gray sandstones, with occasional beds of conglomerate. The upper beds flaggy	750
(*d*) Green and reddish brown or purple slates, with smooth and regularly parallel cleavage, independent of the bedding, splitting into slabs under half an inch thick. This is the position of the workable slates of Smith's Sound and Random Island	137
(*c*) A bed of impure flesh-colored limestone	3
(*b*) Green slate, same character as *d*	10
	150
(*a*) Hard, dark green-gray sandstones with slaty divisions, the sandstone beds varying in thickness from 4 inches to 1 foot	600
Total	5,972

On page 160 of the reprint of the report of the Geological Survey of Newfoundland for 1868[1] a section is given of the strata of Great Bell Isle, as follows:

ASCENDING.

	Feet.
(1) Black or dark brown shales, with thin beds of sandstone from 2 to 6 inches thick, of a gray color on fracture, mica being thickly disseminated in both shales and sandstones, and especially at the division of the harder members	20
(2) Thin bands of sandstone like the preceding, weathering a rusty brown color, and divided by layers of black shale	6
(3) A hard, strong bed of gray sandstone, with conchoidal fracture, irregularly bedded, average thickness about	4
(4) Alternations of black shale and sandstone towards the top of the vertical cliff	60
(5) A heavy mass of strata, mostly sandstone, forms the crest of the cliff	10
(6) Alternations of very micaceous gray sandstone and shale, the former mostly thin-bedded, varying from 1 to 6 or 8 inches, with Cruziana in great profusion on many surfaces. Nodular concretions, holding Linguleæ among the shales	100
(7) The upper strata are a good deal concealed, but beds of sandstone occasionally crop out on the bed and banks of a small brook near the line of section, some of which is of a pale yellowish color, in some cases nearly a foot thick, estimated	196

[1] Murray, Alex.: Of the sequence and distribution of the formations. Report upon the geological survey of Newfoundland for 1868. St. John's, 1868. Revised edition, 1881.

	Feet.
(8) The upper stratum is also in great part concealed, but large, angular-jointed fragments of it are abundant on the surface all along the summit level, which are clearly in place, or only slightly removed. Some of these beds appear to be from 1 to 2 feet thick, are rather coarsely granular, of a grayish or greenish color on fracture, and contain crowds of organic remains, chiefly a species of Lingula. Estimated	80
Total	476

In No. 2 of this section I found, in 1888, a small species of Lingula (?), abundant remains of Cruziana, and an entire specimen of Olenus. Numerous trails of annelids occur on the surfaces of the sandstones, from one to six, inclusive.

Mr. E. Billings described the fossils obtained by the Newfoundland survey from Great Bell Island and named *Eophyton jukesi*, *Arthraria antiquata*, *Lingula murrayi*, *Lingulella? affinis*, *L.? spissa*, and *Cruziana similis*.[1]

In the upper portion of No. 6 *Lingula murrayi* occurs in considerable abundance, and from No. 8 a large number of specimens of *Lingula spissa* were collected; *Eophyton linnæanum* Torrell and *Arthraria antiquata* occur in Nos. 2 and 4.

There is no detailed section given of the strata of Little Bell Island. The section, as determined by the writer in 1888, is made up of dark argillaceous and sandy shale, with beds of gray and dark sandstone, both thin-bedded and in massive layers. In the argillaceous shales *Lingula billingsiana* is very abundant and ranges through about 150 feet of strata. Toward the summit of the section on the west shore of the island a species of Hyolithes, and a long, slender shell, that may be provisionally referred to Lingulella, occurs in a light gray sandstone. A few feet below this horizon a new species of Lingula was found in a micaceous sandstone associated with the Lingula? occurring below in the shales.

All the strata of Little Bell Island have a dip of about 7° westward toward Great Bell Island. If this dip be retained and the section be unbroken, the higher beds would pass beneath the strata on Great Bell Island, at a depth of about 1,200 feet. Dr. Murray in the generalized section mentioned, has given a thickness of 1,426 feet for the strata of Little Bell Island and that concealed beneath the waters of Conception Bay before reaching Great Bell Island.

A detailed section of the strata of Kelly's Island of what appears to be the same series as on Little Bell Island is published by Dr. Murray.[2] A small Lingula (*L. billingsonia*) was found midway of the 713 feet of strata. I found the same species to be very abundant in the shales of the lower portion of the Little Bell Island section.

[1] On some fossils from the Primordial rocks of Newfoundland. Canadian Naturalist, new ser., vol. 6, 1872, pp. 465–479.

[2] Of the sequence and distribution of the formations. Report upon the geological survey of Newfoundland for 1868. St. John's, 1868; revised edition, 1881, pp. 157–159.

The section on the mainland beneath Topsail Head, Conception Bay, was found to be as described by Dr. Murray.[1] The limestone at the base is separated from the "Huronian" rocks by a fault line. Over the limestone 100 feet or more of greenish shale completes the section. In the limestones were found :[2]

Obolella atlantica.	Microdiscus speciosus.
Kutorgina labradorica.	Microdiscus, sp. undet.
Scenella reticulata.	Olenellus (H.)bröggeri.
Hyolithellus micans.	Avalonia manuelensis.
H. micans var. rugosa.	Solenopleura bombifrons.
Hyolithes princeps.	Agraulos (S.) strenuus.
impar.	Agraulos (S.) sp. ?

In the superjacent green shales a few fragments of a trilobite were observed that indicated by a portion of the glabella and eye-lobe a large species of Paradoxides. The evidence here obtained of the relation of the Olenellus and Paradoxides faunas being somewhat inconclusive, the section at Brigus Head, on the west side of Conception Bay, was next examined and found to be essentially the same as that at Topsail Head, with the addition of a greater thickness of green and red shales above the limestone, and a sandy deposit beneath the limestone which rested unconformably against the "Huronian." The limestone series is divided into three bands. In the lowest, a specimen of *Hyolithes impar* was found, similar to that in the limestone at Topsail Head, associated with fragments of *Olenellus* (*H.*) *bröggeri*, *Microdiscus helena* and *Ptychoparia?* sp. (?). In the second bed of limestone, fragments of trilobites were seen; and in the upper bed *Olenellus* (*H.*) *bröggeri* and *Agraulos strenuus* were observed, the latter in great abundance. No fossils were discovered in the superjacent slates.

The stratigraphic succession on Manuel's Brook, as measured by me in August, 1888, is as follows :[3]

MANUEL'S BROOK SECTION.

	Feet.
(1) Coarse conglomerate, in massive layers. The material next to the gneiss varies in size from bowlders of quartz and gneiss 6 feet in diameter down to small pebbles, and in the upper beds from pebbles to fine sand. Strike N. 80° E. (Magnetic); dip 12° to 13° N.	35
(2) Irregular beds of calcareous sandstone, siliceous limestone, and greenish-colored argillaceous shale, covering the irregular upper surface of the conglomerate ..... Fossils: *Obolella atlantica, Hyolithellus micans, Helenia bella, Hyolithes princeps, H. impar, H. quadricostatus, H. similis, H. terranovicus, Scenella reticulata, Stenotheca rugosa*, varieties *acuta-costa, erecta, lævis* and *pauper, Platyceras primævum, Microdiscus helena, M. speciosus, Olenellus* (*H.*) *bröggeri, Avalonia manuelensis, Agraulos* (*S.*) *strenuus* and var. *nasutus, Solenopleura bombifrons, S. harveyi* and *S. howleyi.*	0 to 25

[1] Op. cit., p. 154.

[2] Walcott, C. D: Stratigraphic position of the Olenellus fauna in North America and Europe. Am. Jour. Sci, 3d ser., vol. 37, 1889, p. 378.

[3] Op. cit., pp. 380, 381.

	Feet.
(3) Greenish argillaceous shale, conformably subjacent to 2	40
(4) Reddish-colored argillaceous shale	4
(5) Calcareous sandstone, with pinkish limestone in irregular masses	2
(6) Green argillaceous shale with thin layers of hard, dark, ferruginous sandstone, interbedded at several horizons	270

Strike N. 80° E.; dip 12° N.

Fossils: Near the base the head of an Olenellus was found; also fragments of an Agraulos or Ptychoparia. At 218 feet from the base a layer of pinkish limestone contained the head of an Agraulos, like *A. strenuus*, and many fragments of trilobites. Fifty-two feet higher up quite an abundant fauna was found, and the following species were collected: *Lingulella* sp. *a.*, *Acrothele matthewi*, *Agnostus* sp. *a.*, *Agnostus* sp. *d.*, *Paradoxides hicksi*, *Conocoryphe matthewi*, and *Liostracus* sp. *a.*

(7) Dark argillaceous shales with thin layers of limestone and sandstone at various horizons	295

Fossils: Zone A: From 10 to 20 feet from the base the following species were collected: *Lingulella* sp. *a*, *Linnarssonia misera*, *Acrothele matthewi*, *Hyolithes* sp. *a*, *Agnostus* 3 sp. *a*, *b*, *c*, *Microdiscus punctatus*, *Paradoxides hicksi*, *Conocoryphe* (*C.*) *matthewi*, *C. elegans*, *Agraulos socialis*, and *Liostracus tener*.

Zone B: Forty-five feet higher the fauna is much larger and includes: *Linnarssonia misera*, *Lingulella* sp. *a*, *Orthis* sp. ?, *Stenotheca* sp. ?, *Agnostus punctuosus*, *Agnostus* 5 sp. *b*, *e*, *f*, *g*, *h*, *Microdiscus punctatus*, *Paradoxides davidis*, *P. hicksi*, *Paradoxides*, sp., *Anopolenus venustus*, *Conocoryphe elegans*, *Clenocephalus matthewi*, *Erinnys venulosa*, *Ptychoparia robbi*, *P. variolaris*, *Holocephalina inflata* and *Agraulos socialis*.

From 235 to 250 feet from the base a belt occurs in which a small species of Aristozoa occurs in large numbers, associated with *Lingulella* sp. *a*, *Agnostus* sp. ?, and the heads of a small *Ptychoparia?* sp. undet.

(8) Alternating bands of dark shale and dark, compact sandstone that carry a small species of Orthis in large numbers	400

The section is here cut off by the shore of Conception Bay.

The fauna of No. 2 is essentially the same as that of the limestones of the Topsail Head and Brigus sections, and proved conclusively that the Olenellus fauna is subjacent to the Paradoxides fauna.

Beneath the conglomerate beds of Manuel's Brook and between them and the subjacent Archean gneiss, there is, according to Messrs. Murray and Howley, a series of red and green sandstones, conglomerates and massive sandstone strata, which, according to their tabulated section, have a thickness of 1,800 feet. They are exposed on the north side of Trinity Bay and partially on St. Mary's Bay. I think we should have more data before deciding that this series of 1,800 feet is really subjacent to the Manuel's Brook conglomerate; although it is extremely probable that such is the case, judging from the character of the Trinity Bay and Conception Bay sections.

On the islands in the bay the Upper Cambrian horizon is well developed. In the lower arenaceous shales at Lance Cove, on Great Bell Island, were found *Eophyton* sp. ?, *Cruziana semiplicata*, *Arthraria antiquata*, *Olenus* sp. undet., and at a higher horizon, near the center of the island, *Lingulepis affinis* and *Lingula ? murrayi*, with fragments of Cru-

ziana. In the sandstone at the summit of Little Bell Island, 20 feet above a band of sandstone carrying *Lingula ? billingsiana* and an elongate, narrow species of Lingulella, a long slender Hyolithes ? and a broad species of Hyolithes occur. In the dark argillaceous shales beneath *L. ? billingsiana* occurs in great numbers.

The conglomerate (No. 1 of the section) was traced, just north of the outcrop of the gneiss, a mile to the west of Manuel's Brook, and the shales and limestone of No. 2 were seen in a number of sections, resting directly upon it. On the brook the stratigraphic succession is unbroken up to the summit of No. 8, and the strata are conformable and undisturbed with the exception of the dip of 12° to the north.

The Manuel's Brook section is the only one known to me on the North American continent where the typical Olenellus and Paradoxides faunas occur in an unbroken stratigraphic section. The Olenellus fauna is well developed and typical, and the same is true of the Paradoxides fauna.

As shown on the Avalon Peninsula the early Cambrian Sea transgressed across all the pre-Cambrian rocks, including the Aspidella slates and Signal Hill sandstone and the great series of altered slates and sandstones and, subjacent to them, the Laurentian gneisses. This unconformity is of a similar type to that between the Algonkian formations of the Lake Superior and Adirondack regions and the Upper Cambrian sandstone. In each, three groups of rocks have been deposited and subsequently elevated by an orographic movement and eroded before the deposition of the Cambrian sediments. The relations of the Cambrian and pre-Cambrian rocks are all well shown upon the geological map of the peninsula of Avalon, Newfoundland, 1881, prepared by Mr. James P. Howley.

NOVA SCOTIA.

It is very probable that the Cambrian group is represented in the gold-bearing slates of the Nova Scotia section, but as yet the only means of correlation is the supposed stratigraphic position. The principal details and arguments for including this series in the Cambrian have already been given under the historical review. (Ante, pp. 56–59.) It may be that they represent in large part a pre-Cambrian, Algonkian group equivalent to the St. John slates of Newfoundland.

NEW BRUNSWICK AND CAPE BRETON.

Our present knowledge of the Cambrian geology of the area under consideration is obtained from the reports of the Geological Survey of Canada, and the numerous papers on the geology and paleontology of southern New Brunswick by Mr. G. F. Matthew.

In the report of the Geological Survey of Canada for 1870–'71, a detailed description is given of the geographic distribution of the St. John group (pp. 134–143); and other details are added in the report for 1878–'79 (pp. 6D–8D). From these reports and the map accompany-

ing the latter, Mr. G. F. Matthew has compiled a summary of the information relating to the St. John terrane. He says:[1]

The strata of the St. John group fill a number of narrow, trough-like basins, lying between the Bay of Fundy and the central carboniferous area of New Brunswick. Of these basins, that on which the city of St. John is situated is the most important, and it is here also that the life of the period can be studied to the best advantage. The St. John basin lies diagonally across the ridges of Huronian rock that are found in the eastern part of St. John County and touches the ridge of Laurentian rocks that divides this county from King's. As might naturally be expected, the coarser sediments found at the base of the St. John group are largely derived from those older rocks, chiefly the Huronian; and the line of division between it (the St. John group) and the Huronian formation is marked by conglomerates of mechanical origin which show no trace of the hardening process by which the Huronian conglomerates and breccias have been so firmly cemented.

The Conglomerates of the St. John group are most fully developed in the eastern part of the St. John Basin, under the lee of the high ranges of Huronian hills which exist in that direction. In Portland and the city of St. John, at the western end of the basin, the following section represents the succession of members in this group in ascending order:

	Feet.
Division 0:	
(*a*) Red Conglomerate—wanting at that part of the basin where this section was made	
(*b*) Red and green sandy slates	150
Division 1:	
(*a*) Coarse gray sandstone or quartzite	50
(*b*) Coarse gray sandy slate (Linguloid shells)	50
(*c*) Fine gray and dark gray slaty shales (Trilobites, etc.)	25
(*d*) Fine black carbonaceous slaty shales (Trilobites, etc.)	75
Division 2:	
(*a*) Dark gray slates with thin seams of gray sandstone	220
(*b*) Coarse gray slates and gray flagstones	200
(*c*) Gray sandstones and coarse slates (Linguloid shells)	130
Division 3:	
(*a*) Dark gray finely laminated slates	450
(*b*) Black carbonaceous and dark gray slates, less fissile than the last	300
Division 4:	
Slates and flags, resembling 2*a* and 2*b* (Linguloid shells)	800
Division 5:	
Black carbonaceous slate like, 3*b* (Orthids, Trilobites, etc.)	450
	2,900

Beyond Division 5 the beds are supposed to be repeated by an overturn, and have a width across nearly vertical measures of 3,000 feet. Owing to this folding of the measures there is some uncertainty as to where the summit of the formation is, and the section given may not include the whole series of deposits. The faunæ of Divisions 2 and 5 are very imperfectly known, but there are much larger species of Linguloid shells in these divisions than in Division 1, and the orthids of Division 5 are different from *Orthis billingsi* of Division 1.

The Conglomerate at the base of the St. John group marks the time when the sea of the Acadian epoch invaded the valleys of the Huronian formation near St. John. No trace of life has yet been found in these coarse sediments, nor in the red and green

[1] Illustrations of the fauna of the St. John group. Royal Soc. Canada, Proc. and Trans., vol. 1, section 4, 1883, pp. 87-103. Supplementary section, pp. 271-279.

slates into which they pass. After the colored mud of which these slates are composed was deposited, an abrupt change took place in the character of the deposit, and white sands were evenly spread over the whole basin. It is in the upper part of these sands that one meets with the earliest traces of primordial life. These first forms are linguloid shells of several genera. Such shells become more abundant in the upper part of the white and gray sandy beds, and were evidently littoral species, as on tracing the sandstones westward for half a mile they are found to change into a gray slaty and pebbly deposit—evidently an old beach line—and finally disappear.

Probably the physical condition of the St. John Basin at this early period was unfavorable to the growth of the trilobites; but the land was sinking, and an additional depth of water in this sheltered area soon encouraged the growth and multiplication of the crustacean fauna. As the sediment which settled from the sea water in this deepening bay became finer, the remains of marine animals were preserved in greater numbers and variety, so that in the layers of fine slate in Group *c* of Division 1, many genera chacteristic of the early Cambrian age are found.

In Group *d* the slaty mass becomes quite fine and dark colored, but near St. John is much affected by slaty cleavage, and the fossils are so much distorted, especially in the upper part, as to be unrecognizable.

In the beds of Division 2, a return of littoral conditions, and the influx of sand, interfered with the prosperity of the crustacean fauna, and as in the lower sand beds of Division 1, linguloid shells become the prevailing fossils. The Paradoxides which I will describe in this article are those of the intermediate mud beds, now converted into a mass of slaty rock (Division 1, *c*).[1]

On the evidence of the contained fauna, Mr. Matthew correlated the fauna of the Paradoxides zone of the St. John group with that of the Solva group of Wales, as defined by Dr. Hicks.[2]

In addition to the section as found at St. John there is to be added a series described by Mr. Matthew, occurring below Division 1, on Hanford Brook, in the eastern part of St. John County. In the report upon the geology of southern New Brunswick, by L. W. Bailey, in 1865, this mass of sediments was spoken of as the upper member of the Coldbrook group and distinct from the St. John group; it was subsequently joined to the St. John group by Messrs. Bailey and Matthew in a report of progress of the geological survey of Canada, 1870–'71, p. 59, because the want of conformity existing between the two formations could not then be established; but it is now found that this series is unconformable not only to the St. John group, but also, as had been previously discovered, to the underlying Coldbrook group.[3] The section is as follows:[4]

	Thickness in feet.
1 (*a*) Coarse purplish red Conglomerate, resting on an amygdaloidal greenstone (toadstone) of the Coldbrook group	60
(*b*) Gray and purplish flags and sandstones with worm-casts, seaweeds (Palæochorda and Buthotrephis), and numerous spicules of sponges	70
(*c*) Purplish red sandstones, with greenish layers. Remains of seaweeds (Phycoidella), animal tracks (Psammnichnites and Helminthites), worm-burrows (Arenicolites) etc	240

[1] Op. cit., pp. 87–89.

[2] The geologic age of the Acadian fauna. The Primitive Conocoryphean. British Assoc. Rep., 54th meeting, 1884, pp. 742–744.

[3] On a basal series of Cambrian rocks in Acadia. Canadian Record Science, vol. 3, 1888, p. 22.

[4] On Cambrian Organisms in Acadia. Royal Soc. Canada, Trans., vol. 7, Proc., sec. 4, 1890, p. 138.

	Thickness in feet.
2 (*a*) Purplish red Conglomerate, more friable than 1 *a*	35
(*b*) Soft purplish red shales, with green glauconite grains, the upper part firmer and more sandy, greenish gray layers interspersed especially towards the base. Platysolenites, Obolus, Volborthella, etc	175
(*c*) Purplish sandy shales, with a few bands of greenish shale. Worm-casts (Scolites)	300
Measures concealed, probably of this series	320
	1,200

In this series of 1,000 or more feet of beds, the very oldest layers which are fine enough to preserve organic markings, have trails and casts of marine worms, and also contain seaweeds, one a Palæochorda or allied genus, the other a weed with a flat frond similar to Buthotrephis. That these beds are marine is clearly shown by the great numbers of spicules of hexactinellid sponges which they contain.

About 350 feet above the base, where the measures are flaggy, tracks of annelids are again abundant. Besides the smaller trails and burrows, there are frequent tracks of a marine animal, possibly a worm, similar to the markings on the Fucoidal sandstone of Sweden, which, by Prof. O. Torrell, have been referred to the genus Psammichnites. A very similar track, with corresponding casts, occurs on the surfaces of the purple streaked sandstones (Assise 3) of Band *b* in Division 1, of the St. John group, and a similar trail occurs as high up as the lower band of Division 2 of that group. Above this point, such markings have not been found, though the kind of rock—flags and slates—is favorable to their occurrence. The flags of the middle of Division 2, of the St. John group, seem to be the horizon of *Cruziana semiplicata* (Salter) and *C. similis* (Billings); but I have not found them here.

About 100 feet or more above the horizon where Psammichnites appears, separated from it by a Conglomerate, indications of the Olenellus fauna show themselves. These consist of Volborthella (a chambered cell resembling an Orthoceras), the cystidean genus Platysolenites, Pander, and a large Obolus, allied to *Michwitzia* (formerly *Obolus?* or *Lingula?*) *monilifera*, Linrs., of the Eophyton sandstone of Sweden and the upper part of the "Blue Clay" of Russia. Some of the layers in this part of the series abound in soft green grains similar to the glauconite grains of the Cambrian rocks in Russia. The paste enveloping them is red.

A number of beds between this point and the top of the Basal series contain worm-casts and burrows, and some have remains of small strap-like seaweeds.

In summing up the facts bearing on the comparative age of this part of the Cambrian rocks in Acadia we get no aid from the typical genera of this horizon, Olenellus and Mesonacis, but the Acadian rocks contain other genera of this fauna which serve to fix their age with a certain degree of accuracy. Some of these genera, however, are such as may have a wider range of existence in time than the trilobites, and therefore are not of the same homotaxial value. The trilobites that do occur are not so definitive as some others.[1]

In his latest table of classification Mr. Matthew arranges the Cambrian System as it occurs in Acadia as follows:[2]

	Localities.
D.—Upper Cambrian (Potsdam series)	Unknown.
C.—Middle and Lower Cambrian, Acadian series	St. John, etc.
B.—Lower Cambrian, Georgian series	C. Breton.
A.—Basal Cambrian, Etcheminian series	St. John, etc.

[1] Op. cit., p. 143.

[2] On the classification of the Cambrian rocks in Acadia. No. 2. Canadian Record of Science, vol. 3, 1889, [illegible].

In describing in 1888 (at that time called series B) the Paradoxides zone, or C of the preceding tabulation, the term "stage" replaces the word "division" as heretofore used by Mr. Matthew, and the divisions of the series are given as follows:[1]

Stage 1.—This includes the lower part of the series as high up as Paradoxides are found. The divisions of this stage are as follows:—

Band (assise) *a*. Hard gray sandstone or quartzite. Fossils, none known.

Band (or assise) *b*. Dark-gray sandstones and gray sandy shales. Fossils: Ellipsocephalus, Agraulos, Hipponicharion, Beyrichona, etc.

Band (or assise) *c*. Gray shales. Fossils: Paradoxides, Conocoryphe, Liostracus, Microdiscus, Agnostus, etc.

Band (or assise) *d*. Dark gray shales. Fossils: Paradoxides, Ptychoparia, Solenopleura, Microdiscus, Agnostus, etc., of different species from those in assise *c*.

Stage 2.—This consists of gray flags and sandy shales. The subdivisions have not been worked out, but the stage corresponds to the lower half of the Olenus zone in Europe. No species of the genus Olenus have been found in it.

Stage 3.—Dark-gray and black shales. Fossils: Ctenopyge, Kutorgina, Orthis, etc. This corresponds to the upper half of the Olenus zone of Europe. The shales in Cape Breton, which contain Peltura and Sphæropthalmus, belong here. There are in the St. John Basin gray flags, which overlie the Ctenopyge beds, but no higher stage than the Olenus zone has been established by fossils.[2]

In a series of sections of Cambrian rocks in Acadia,[3] the upper Cambrian or Olenus beds are shown to be present in St. John County in the Portland section.

Just as this report is going to press (May 1, 1891) I received the fifth contribution of Mr. G. F. Matthew upon the fauna of the St. John Group. In the introduction he gives a description of the structure of the St. John basin and sections of the measures at St. John. He finds that all three of his divisions of the Cambrian are present. Division 1 he names Acadian, Division 2 Johannian, and Division 3 Bretonian.[4]

The Cambrian rocks of Cape Breton Island are described with many details by Mr. Hugh Fletcher in 1877 and 1878, but the various outcrops do not appear to have been well correlated. The section in McLean Brook, on Little Bras d'Or Lake, is as follows:[5]

	Feet.
(1) *Carboniferous conglomerate* and related rocks	
(2) Feldspathic sandstone and impure limestone, of white, green, amber, red, and other colors, mixed, and in distinct beds of different thickness; sometimes associated with greenish, soft, soapy rocks, probably decomposed felsites; films of hematite in the joints	254

[1] On the classification of the Cambrian rocks of Acadia. Canadian Rec. Sci., vol. 3, 1888, p. 73.

[2] Mr. Matthew writes me under date of October 25, 1890, that he has found the Arenig graptolitic fauna in the St. John series, thus establishing the presence of the Lower Silurian (Ordovician) fauna above the Olenus zone.

[3] Matthew, G. F. On the classification of the Cambrian rocks in Acadia. No. 2. Canadian Rec. Sci., vol. 3, 1889, p. 308.

[4] Illustrations of the fauna of the St. John Group, No. 5. Royal Soc. of Canada, Trans., vol. 8, 1891, p. 129.

[5] Report on the geology of part of the counties of Victoria, Cape Breton, and Richmond, Nova Scotia. Geol. Sur. Canad. Rept. Prog. for 1876–'77. Montreal, 1878, p. 431.

	Feet.
(3) Blackish and gray slate, fine sandstone, and argillaceous limestone; also, compact, feldspathic rock, mixed with limestone of different colors. Not well seen	84
(4) Dark and pale gray slates, with thin layers of quartz, spotted with iron pyrites and mined for gold	66
(5) Greenish gray, fine-grained, pyritous rock, resembling sandstone and yielding easily to the knife	19
(6) Black and gray argillite, full of small twisted layers of quartz, which are sometimes so numerous as to constitute an impure quartzite, spotted with pyrites. Associated with and overlie dark-blue, plumbaginous argillite, also full of pyritous quartz layers	65
(7) Bluish-gray, pearly, papery slates, cleft in every direction and traversed in the bedding and across it by streaks of calcspar and quartz	30
(8) Bluish felsite, crystalline limestone and quartz, confusedly mixed in contorted beds	37
(9) Bluish-gray coherent argillite	60
(10) Greenish, decomposed, feldspathic rock, of uncertain thickness	110
(11) *Red syenite* in steeply rising hills	
	725

The Cambrian rocks occur as long narrow areas resting on the subjacent Laurentian rocks, as shown on the map accompanying Mr. Fletcher's report of 1876–'77; and on the map accompanying the report for 1875–'76. In the text of the latter report the rocks are described as they occur on St. Andrew's Channel, and the geographic distribution is given on the map. From a small outcrop on the Mira River a collection of trilobites was obtained that indicate the upper Cambrian fauna. They include, as identified by Mr. Matthew, *Peltura scarabeoides*, *Sphærophthalmus alatus*, and *Agnostus pisiformis*.[1] It is not certain that all the rocks referred to the Lower Silurian by Mr. Fletcher belong to the Cambrian group, but as far as known all the fossils that have been found indicate the upper Cambrian series.

MAINE.

The presence of typical rocks of the Cambrian group in the State of Maine is not yet proved. It is quite probable, as in the case of Nova Scotia, that the series of slates referred to the Cambrian actually belong at that horizon. But until paleontologic evidence is obtained, the question will be an open one. The stratigraphic position of the slates and their lithologic character enable us to speak of them tentatively as belonging to the Cambrian group. That they were deposited in the same basin as the Cambrian series of New Brunswick and Massachusetts is not probable.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.

All the references of strata to the Cambrian group in New Hampshire are of a provisional character. They are based upon more or less im-

[1] On the Cambrian faunas of Cape Breton and Newfoundland. Royal Soc. Canada, Proc. and Trans. vol. 4, sec. 4, 1887, p. 147.

perfectly determined stratigraphic horizons and the fact that there is a thick mass of sediments, usually without fossils and largely argillaceous in character, that appear to be pre-Silurian in age. By their lithologic character they are correlated with formations referred to the Cambrian group, as found in Maine and Nova Scotia, that have similar lithologic characters and occur in a similar stratigraphic position. All these doubtful formations are in turn correlated by their lithologic characters and supposed stratigraphic position with the Cambrian beds of Newfoundland and New Brunswick.

In speaking of the Mica-schist series of New Hampshire, Prof. C. H. Hitchcock says[1] that there unquestionably exists an enormous thickness of mica-schists in southern New Hampshire above the Huronian series. "No author who has devoted any attention to these groups has suggested an inferior position for them. They may be called Silurian, Cambrian, or pre-Cambrian, according as each author is inclined to regard New England, very ancient, or on the verge of the Paleozoic."

It is doubtful if these exposures should be referred to the Atlantic Coast Province. It is done at present as a matter of convenience.

EASTERN MASSACHUSETTS.

The description of the Cambrian rocks of the Boston Basin, by Prof. W. O. Crosby, is the most recent and the most thorough of any we have, and the summary of our present knowledge of them is taken mainly from his paper. He says:[2]

> The oldest rocks which we have found are the Primordial slates and quartzites, and the age of these is certainly and definitely known only at the Paradoxides quarry, in Braintree. We appear to be justified, however, in regarding them, provisionally at least as all of about the same age, partly on account of a general lithologic resemblance, but mainly because their relations to the different classes of eruptive rocks are everywhere the same. In Weymouth and Braintree, where we first met these rocks, they are either typical clay slates or slightly calcareous; but along the northern base of the Blue Hills occasional layers are distinctly siliceous. They probably underlie a large part of the Boston Basin, being covered by the conglomerate and the newer slate; and north of the basin, as shown in the ninth lecture, they occur in isolated areas among the eruptive rocks. In some of these areas, especially in the Middlesex Fells and Melrose, and in Woburn, clay slate similar to that in Quincy and Braintree is repeatedly interstratified with quartzite, while toward the southwest, in Natick, and also in Reading and Lynnfield, there are extensive developments of quartzite with little or no slate. It is very clear that the quartzite north and west of the Boston Basin is the source of the quartzite pebbles which play such a prominent part in the composition of the conglomerate, especially in the central and northwestern sections of the basin. In general, the quartzite is more and the slate less abundant northwestward, indicating that the ancient shore line along which these strata were deposited lay in that direction, and originally the Primordial strata were probably spread continuously over all the region to the southeast of that line.

[1] Geological sections across Vermont and New Hampshire. Am. Mus. Nat. Hist. Bull., vol. 1, 1884, p. 168.

[2] Physical History of the Boston Basin. Lowell free lectures, 1889–1890. Boston, 1889, pp. 19, 20.

The deposition of the Primordial strata was followed by a period of disturbance of this part of the earth's crust, during which they were strongly compressed, being thrown into sharp folds having, in general, a northeast and southwest direction. This appears, also, to have been a period of intense volcanic activity. The quartzite and slate were shattered and isolated by great volumes of basic lava, which we now call diorite; and, as indicated by the compact and scoriaceous diorite of the Middlesex Fells and other localities, immense floods of lava were also poured out on the surface, concealing the sedimentary rocks. In breaking through the quartzite and slate, the diorite has often followed the planes of stratification in those rocks, and thus appears in many cases to be regularly interstratified with them; and this bedded appearance of the diorite is greatly increased by the very perfect flow-structure which was developed in large masses of it, as well as by the distinctly schistose or foliated structure sometimes resulting from the subsequent action of both mechanical and chemical forces. We are thus able to explain the fact that the diorite has been frequently mistaken for a stratified or sedimentary rock.

The eruption of the diorite was probably followed by a prolonged period of quiet erosion, which was finally terminated by the advent of a second period of intense and long continued igneous action, during which only acid rocks—the granites and felsites—were formed. All over this region the granite has broken through the Primordial strata and the diorite in the most irregular and intimate manner.

Prof. Crosby considers that after the deposition of the argillites and the eruption of the rocks occurring as dikes the series was raised above the sea level and subjected to long-continued erosion, prior to a downward movement or subsidence. As the surface passed slowly below the level of the sea a thick bed of conglomerate was spread over the earlier series of rocks and a fine silt or clay carried out into the deep water of the ocean. At the same time eruptive rocks were repeatedly poured out over the sea floor, where the beds of gravel and sand were accumulating, thus forming alternating beds of conglomerate and sandstone with beds of melaphyr and porphyrite.[1]

Of the subsequent depositions of sediment, he says:

Alternations of the conglomerate with beds of both sandstone and slate are also of common occurrence, indicating oscillations of level during this period. But the downward movement prevailed, until finally the water became too deep and quiet and too remote from the shore, in this vicinity, to permit the formation of conglomerate and sandstone; but these coarse sediments were gradually replaced by slate during the dying out of the volcanic activity. These tranquil, deep-sea conditions must have continued for a very long time, for the argillaceous sediments accumulate very slowly and yet the slate series has a thickness of from 500 feet to fully 1,000 feet or more. The slates are probably somewhat thicker than the conglomerates, and were doubtless several if not many times longer in forming. Of the life existing in the sea at this time we unfortunately know but little, as the slate is very generally destitute of fossils; and the full chronologic significance of the few organic remains that have been obtained from the layers of limestone in the slate at Nahant is still undetermined.[2]

There is evidently an error in Prof. Crosby's interpretation of the stratigraphic succession of the formations he describes, as the fauna at Nahant is of an older date than that found in the argillites at Braintree. If, however, the conglomerates, with their contemporaneous eruptive

[1] Op. cit., p. 20. [2] Op. cit., p. 21.

rocks, belong to the same series as the East Point slate and limestone the entire series must be referred to the Cambrian.[1]

In his report of 1880 Prof. Crosby considers that the strata of the Boston Basin were deposited in a depression excavated in the crystalline formations and that there are several formations belonging to the Cambrian. First, a conglomerate, represented by the Roxbury puddingstone. Second, a slate series which incloses the Paradoxides zone in South Braintree. He assigns to the conglomerate a maximum volume not exceeding 1,000 feet, and considers that the greatest thickness of the slate can not be much less than that of the conglomerate, although in some cases certainly falling below 500 feet.[2] At the trilobite quarry in Braintree, the known locality of Primordial fossils, the slate is described as of a greenish gray color, "somewhat siliceous, fine-grained, and remarkably uniform. Minute grains of pyrite are pretty generally diffused. In the quarry the rock is apparently only very coarsely jointed; but the weathered surface reveals much finer division by this means. The stratification is very massive and can hardly be detected, except by means of the trilobite remains; these may be supposed to lie in the plane of the bedding, and according to this indication the strike is E.–W., and the dip S. 80°–85°. Across the strike, southerly, the slate, still apparently maintaining a high dip in that direction, is met at a distance of perhaps 300 feet by fine-grained grayish and reddish Huronian granite, while on the west the same granite cuts off the slate at about twice the above distance from the trilobite quarry; that is, the contact of the two formations, as shown on the map, is oblique to the strike of the slate."[3] On the map the slate series throughout the Boston Basin is correlated with the slates at Braintree, and represented by a common color.

[1] In a letter received from Prof. Crosby, dated January 27, 1891, he says: "The Nahant slate is entirely isolated, and concerning its relations to the conglomerate we *know* nothing. I have supposed, however, that it should be referred to the newer series, above the conglomerate." Of the general geology of the Boston Basin he says:

"Assuming that the slates of the Boston Basin now *known* to be Cambrian are overlain in succession by the conglomerates and a newer slate series (my present working hypothesis), it is still possible, I suppose, that all these rocks, in the Boston Basin, may be Cambrian; notwithstanding the marked uniformity between the conglomerate and lower slates.

"The weak points in the stratigraphy are (1) the general (not entire) absence of slate pebbles in the conglomerate; (2) the absence of clear sections showing the conglomerate resting upon a lower slate series. Wherever the base of the conglomerate is seen, it reposes *upon* the *granite* or *felsite*. Some of the sections are *very clear* and unmistakable in this respect; and apparently the same granite and felsite are eruptive through the Braintree slates. It would, of course, be difficult to *prove* that the granites and felsites are all of the same age; but it seems best to assume that until the contrary clearly appears.

"The best general statement of the stratigraphy of this region appears therefore to be this: A lower slate, known to be Cambrian; cut in succession by diorite, granite and felsite; all these rocks overlain unconformably by the conglomerate of unknown age; and the conglomerate in turn overlain conformably by a newer slate of unknown age.

"The chief problems are, then, to determine which are older and which are newer slates, and to determine the age of the conglomerate and upper slate.

"As an indication of progress, we have the discovery by Mr. Woodworth, just reported, of fossils in the slate of both Somerville and Newton."

[2] Contributions to the geology of Eastern Massachusetts. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist. Occasional papers, No. 3, 1880, p. 266.

[3] Op. cit., p. 192.

According to Dr. M. E. Wadsworth[1] the strata at the trilobite quarry dip a little west of south at an angle of 55°. This is nearly as given by Mr. Isaac Lea in 1858.[2] It is quite probable that the variation in angle of dip mentioned by different observers is owing to the position of the exposures in the quarry, at the time of their respective visits, and by their mistaking the cleavage for the plane of bedding.

Dr. Crosby[3] describes the rocks at East Point, Nahant, as composed of a very dark gray, almost black, compact slate, with a strike N. 60° E.; and nearly uniform northerly dip of about 40°. The slate is inclosed in, and extensively cut by, the coarsely crystalline pyroxenic rock of the Naugus Head series. The slate, except where it is vesicular, is of a uniform grayish black color and holds thin beds of limestone aggregating, perhaps, 20 feet of calcareous matter. The character of the limestone and its mode of occurrence are precisely like those of Mill Cove, in Weymouth, 13 miles distant. The limestones are interstratified with the slate and not always distinguishable from it. The color is light gray and its texture varies from compact to finely crystalline or saccharoidal. Thin seams and veins of siliceous material become evident on the weathered surface.

In the interbedded limestones Mr. A. F. Foerste discovered in 1889 traces of a species of Hyolithes which he identified as specifically the same as a species found in the decomposed limestones of North Attleborough[4] He proposed the name *Hyolithes inæquilateralis*, but I think it is identical with *Hyolithes communis*, var. *emmonsi*, of the Lower Cambrian horizon at Troy, New York. He states that the Nahant limestones are the equivalent of the red slates in North Weymouth; and that it is very probable the red slates and included limestones are stratigraphically beneath the Braintree Paradoxides beds. Also that the red slates of Mill Cove, in North Weymouth, are of Olenellus age and beneath the Paradoxides strata.

The district embracing the Cambrian rocks of Bristol County, Massachusetts, is well described by Prof. N. S. Shaler. He says:

> Several geologists have observed the fact that between Providence, Rhode Island, and Wrentham, Massachusetts, we have an extensive development of interbedded conglomerates, shaly slates, and sandstones, the whole separated from the other detrital deposits of this region by peculiarities of color. * * * Various conjectures have been made as to the age of these deposits. They have been thought by one observer to resemble the Trias, while others, owing partly to their position, have assigned them to the Devonian age.[5]

Prof. Shaler discovered fossils of the Lower Cambrian or Olenellus zone in this series of rocks in 1883, which for the first time gave data

[1] On the relation of the Quincy granite to the primordial argillite of Braintree, Massachusetts. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist. Proc., vol. 21, 1883, pp. 274-277.

[2] [On the trilobite formation at Braintree, Massachusetts]. Phil. Acad. Sci. Proc., vol. 9, 1858, p. 205.

[3] Contributions to the geology of Eastern Massachusetts. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist. Occasional papers, No. 3, 1880, pp. 195, 261, 262.

[4] The Paleontological horizon of the limestone at Nahant, Massachusetts. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist. Proc., vol. 24, 1889, pp. 261-263.

[5] On the geology of the Cambrian district of Bristol County, Massachusetts. Bull. Mus. Comp. Zool., Harv. Col., vol. 10, 1888, pp. 13, 14.

for determining the geologic age of the deposit. On the east the Coal Measures of the Narragansett Basin occur. On the west side he considers the rocks to be of pre-Cambrian age, as they consist mainly of gneissoid rocks of various composition, and a great area of dark greenish chloritic deposits which appear in part at least to be metamorphosed conglomorates and shales. Owing to the large amount of drift material covering the country, no absolute contact with the pre-Cambrian rocks was observed, nor is the overlap of the Carboniferous upon the Cambrian shown in any section.

Of the rocks he says:

The Cambrian rocks exhibit very little sign of metamorphic action. The shales indicate a slight amount of infiltration, and in the conglomerates the pebbles all retain essentially their original character, save that they are sometimes slightly indented one into the other. The cement of the mass is not more altered than is usual with our unchanged conglomerates. Its general characters, save for its reddish color, is undistinguishable from the deposits of Millstone grit age in the neighboring coal fields.[1]

So far fossils have been found in rocks of this section which probably do not in the aggregate include more than 100 feet or so of the total section of the Cambrian series. However, as these deposits are of the same aspect, as all the red slates and conglomerates of the area, it appears at present reasonable to include all rocks of this description with the above-mentioned series. The total thickness of the section which I have termed Cambrian is not accurately determinable. It probably amounts to not far from 2,000 feet. In the main it consists of thin bedded shaly layers which occasionally pass into moderately thick, fine grained, greenish and reddish slates. Intermingled with these in several levels we have a number of layers of conglomerate, perhaps as many as half a dozen distinct beds, varying in thickness from 200 to 300 feet. In all cases these conglomerates are frequently interrupted by thin layers of shale or sandstone. * * * The rocks from which the pebbles were taken are mainly identifiable in the western portion of the field before described.[2]

The sediments composing this Cambrian section appear to have been derived from rocks substantially the same as those which now lie in the field west of the area. Although fossils have been found in a small part of the section, close study makes it plain that by far the greater portion of the strata are clearly azoic. The frequent return of conglomerate layers and the coarseness of the pebbles show that during most of the time when the beds were accumulating the region was near shore; so, too, the large amount of sandy matter even in the slates affords a presumption that the region was not remote from the coast line. About 100 feet of shale beds have been subjected to a very careful search for organic remains. The total thickness of the deposits in which any trace of life has been found probably does not exceed 100 feet, and even in this section only a small part of the rocks actually contain fossils.[3]

Prof. Shaler suggests that the conglomerates were accumulated during an ice epoch; and he presents several arguments for this view. He states that the relations of the beds carrying the fauna at North Attleborough with those of the Paradoxides zone of Braintree are not discoverable by comparison with the Massachusetts Bay and Narragansett deposits. At the time he wrote the stratigraphic relation of the Olenellus fauna as found at North Attleborough with the Paradoxides fauna was not known, except that the Scandinavian geologists state

[1] Op. cit., pp. 16, 17. [2] Op. cit., p. 18. [3] Op. cit., p. 20.

that in their country, the Paradoxides zone occupied a superior position to the Olenellus zone. With the knowledge we now have of the stratigraphic succession of the Cambrian faunas, the Paradoxides beds of Braintree are considered to be superior to the Lower Cambrian rocks of Attleborough.

RÉSUMÉ.

The physical characters and condition of the rocks constituting the formations referred to the Cambrian in this province indicate that they were accumulated not far from the shore line, and that several fluctuations in the level of the sea bed occurred during Cambrian time. On the coast of Labrador the accumulation of sand was followed by a deepening of the sea and the deposition of calcareous mud. That the depth was not profound, is shown by the character of the limestone and its fauna, and the presence of lenticular masses of red and green shale. The 231 feet of sandstone, and 140 feet of limestone in the section represent only a portion of the Lower Cambrian or Olenellus zone. Two hundred miles to the south, on the west coast of Newfoundland the presence of 605 feet of slate beneath the alternating series of limestone and quartzite, over 1,000 feet in thickness, tell the same story of relatively shallow water accumulation.

On the Atlantic coast side, at Canada Bay, there are 2,500 feet of slate, conglomerate and eruptive rock, subjacent to a series of limestones and slates nearly 3,000 feet in thickness. There is here a greater development of limestone than anywhere to the south along the Atlantic coast line. It appears to have accumulated upon the bed of a protected sea not far distant from the shore and to have been frequently interrupted in deposition by the throwing down of a considerable thickness of argillaceous mud.

In southeastern Newfoundland the assembled sections have, according to Messrs. Murray and Howley, a thickness of nearly 6,000 feet, of which 128 feet are limestone, and the remaining portion argillaceous and arenaceous deposits. In the section on Manuel's Brook a conglomerate rests upon the pre-Cambrian gneiss, and upon the upper bed an irregular, arenaceous limestone in which layers of more or less pure limestone occur. This limestone-forming epoch was of very short duration, and was succeeded by an accumulation of clay that now forms a series of shales nearly 1,000 feet in thickness before sandy layers appear. When once the sandstones begin to alternate with the shales, they continue on up to the summit of the group and are very abundant in the Upper Cambrian. The sediments of southeastern Newfoundland were accumulated in bays of the pre-Cambrian sea and derived almost entirely from the adjacent shore, either as sand and silt, worn from the rocks by the sea, or brought down to it by tributary streams.

The 4,000 feet or more of rocks in the New Brunswick section are almost entirely shales with a few sandstones and basal conglomerates,

It is the record of the accumulation of sediments in a gradually deepening sea.

The eastern Massachusetts section is largely formed of shale, except in the lower part, where a small proportion of limestone occurs in the Olenellus zone, much as in the southeastern Newfoundland section.

The great thickness of shales referred to the Cambrian in Nova Scotia, Maine, and New Hampshire probably represents much more than the Cambrian group, or it may be entirely a pre-Cambrian formation or a post-Cambrian formation. It is only *probable* that they are of Cambrian age. They may represent deep-water accumulations in which no organic remains were buried.

As a whole, we may regard the Atlantic Coast Province, during Cambrian time, as including bays and the adjacent shores of the Algonkian land, in and along which sediments, mostly of an argillaceous and arenaceous character, accumulated. The relative level of the sea bed varied, but in the main the depression greatly exceeded the elevation. The depth of water in which the sediments forming the limestones and shales accumulated was probably considerable, but not a deep sea in the present sense of the term. A few hundred or a thousand feet on a gradually sinking sea bed (in relation to the coast line) would give the required conditions. From the character of the sediments and the faunas it is probable that land barriers existed to the eastward of the present coast, and that none of the deposits were accumulated off the shore facing the open ocean.

As left by erosion the Lower Cambrian now occurs on the Labrador coast, on the western and eastern sides of Newfoundland, in New Brunswick, and eastern Massachusetts. The Middle Cambrian has been recognized on the eastern coast of Newfoundland, in New Brunswick, and eastern Massachusetts. The Upper Cambrian is known in southeastern Newfoundland, Cape Breton Island, New Brunswick and doubtfully on the southwestern coast of Newfoundland. (See Pl. II.)

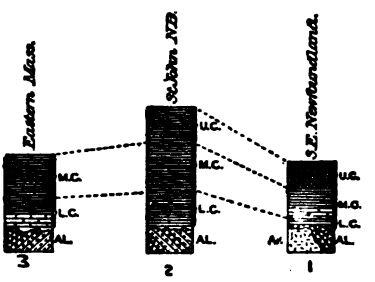


FIG. 1.—Typical sections of the Atlantic Coast Province. Vertical scale, 6,400 feet to the inch.

APPALACHIAN PROVINCE.

The Appalachian Province includes the outcrops of Cambrian strata on the line of the Appalachian System of Mountains, from the Gulf of St. Lawrence on the north to Georgia and Alabama on the south.

For convenience in presenting geologic data the Appalachian Province is divided into:

A.—Northern Appalachian District.
B.—Southern Appalachian District.

NORTHERN APPALACHIAN DISTRICT.

The Northern Appalachian District includes the Hudson River and Lake Champlain area, east of the river and lake, and an extension northeastward into Canada as far as the vicinity of Cape Rosier on the Gulf of St. Lawrence.

The geographic distribution of the Cambrian strata of the Northern Appalachian District, south of the Canadian extension, is delineated on a geologic map of eastern New York and western Vermont published in 1888 by Mr. C. D. Walcott.[1] On this map the "Granular Quartz," "Red sandrock," "Georgia slate," and Potsdam sandstone are differentiated as far as the known data would permit. The stratigraphic relations of the various divisions in Vermont are shown in a series of sections by Prof. C. H. Hitchcock,[2] and for New York by a section on the above-mentioned map.

The "Granular Quartz" is found on the western side of the Archean rocks, from southeastern New York and western Connecticut northward to Massachusetts, and into Vermont nearly to the Canadian border. The exposed outcrop is more or less interrupted because of the removal of the rock by erosion or its concealment by superjacent deposits.

In Vermont the "Granular Quartz" is a very compact, hard rock that passes into a number of varieties. It is described in the Geology of Vermont[3] as granular, gray, or reddish quartz rock; fine granular or arenaceous quartz rock: granular porous quartz, or pseudo-buhrstone; quartzose aggregate; quartzose breccia; quartzose and micaceous conglomerate. There are also associated with it talcose and mica schists and limestone. The quartzite is remarkably compact and enduring, and it occurs in bowlders all over the southern part of Vermont, in Massachusetts, New York, and Connecticut, many miles from the parent ledges. Along the range of the rocks the bowlders cover the surface, and in some instances this is the only way in which the line of outcrop of the formation is indicated. Details of the geographic distribution in Vermont are given in volume 1 of the Geological Survey. A section of 973 feet was measured in East Dorset by Prof. C. H. Hitchcock, and the thickness of the formation in Vermont is estimated at 1,000 feet. It retains its essential characters in passing southward into Massachusetts, New York, and Connecticut.

On the western summit of Clarksburg Mountain, northeast of Williamstown, the basal bed of the quartz series is a conglomerate, resting unconformably upon pre-Cambrian gneiss. The conglomerate is succeeded by beds of quartzite, usually compact, hard, fine grained, and

[1] The Taconic system of Emmons and the use of the name Taconic in geologic nomenclature. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 35, 1888, pp. 229–242, 307–327, 394–401.

[2] Geological sections across Vermont and New Hampshire, Am. Mus. Nat. Hist. Bull., vol. 1, 1884, pp. 155–179, pl. xvi, xvii.

[3] Hitchcock, C. H. Hypozoic and Paleozoic rocks. Report on the geology of Vermont, vol. 1, 1861, p. 342.

of a light gray color, in layers varying from a few inches to 2 or 3 feet and even up to 6 feet in thickness, on the spurs to the north of Clarksburgh Mountain. In the town of Bennington, a few miles further north, the writer measured a section of the quartzite 400 feet in thickness. It is formed largely of light gray, nearly white, compact, fine grained, and massive bedded quartzite, with alternating beds of hyaline quartz. At this locality fossils other than the Scolithus borings, which were known to occur at a number of localities in Vermont, were found in 1887 for the first time in situ in the quartzite. The species belong to the genera Nothozoe, Hyolithes, and Olenellus. Traces of a trilobite, apparently of the genus Olenellus, were also found 100 feet above the gneiss on the western summit of Clarksburg Mountain. In the bowlders on the line of the outcrop of quartz, to the north of Bennington, traces of fossils have long been known, among which are *Nothozoe vermontana*, *Hyolithes communis*, and *Olenellus thompsoni*.

Prof. J. D. Dana describes the quartzite in its extension into western Massachusetts, western Connecticut, and eastern New York. It varies very little from the characteristic features shown at the north, and from its disturbed condition no sections were obtained of its entire thickness. At Stissing Mountain, in Dutchess County, New York, it rests upon the Archean, and is a massive bedded, compact quartzite, in which the genus Olenellus and *Camerella minor* have been found. It here passes above into a limestone in which *Hyolithellus micans*, a characteristic Lower Cambrian species, occurs.[1]

In a paper read before the Geological Society of America at its second annual meeting, December 30, 1890, Dr. J. E. Wolff gave an account of the discovery, by Mr. A. F. Foerste and himself, of fossils of Lower Cambrian age in the limestones of the East Rutland Valley. The limestones rest conformably upon the quartzite which carries Olenellus in Bennington County. Dr. Wolff identified the species as *Kutorgina* sp.? and Salterella.[2] The evidence of the Lower Cambrian age of the limestones is not fully proved, as the two genera may range up into the Middle Cambrian.

He mentioned that in the West Rutland Valley, and in the valley between the West Rutland and East Rutland Valleys, the limestones contain fossils of Calciferous Chazy-Trenton age, or those which will be found above the Cambrian horizon. From his section it is probable that the Middle and Upper Cambrian faunas will be found to range up into the limestones beneath the Calciferous horizon, as has been discovered by Prof. W. B. Dwight in Dutchess County, New York, and Prof. Frank Nason, in Sussex County, New Jersey.

As a whole, the "Granular Quartz" may be said to consist of a shore deposit accumulated along the western shore of the Green Mountains

[1] The Taconic system of Emmons and the use of the name Taconic in Geologic nomenclature. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 35, 1888, p. 236.

[2] Bull. Geol. Soc. Am., vol. 2, 1891, pp. 334, 335.

during early Cambrian times; the sediments vary from pure quartz sand to mixtures of sand and argillaceous and calcareous mud.

The "Red Sandrock" series is confined almost entirely to northern Vermont, not appearing south of Addison County. In the northern part of Addison County it comes into contact with and merges into the "Granular Quartz" series. It has not been recognized in contact with the Archean rocks of the Green Mountains. From this, and its having less of the character of a shore deposit and from its occurring west of the line of outcrop of the "Granular Quartz," it is quite probable it is a deeper water accumulation, though contemporaneous with the "Granular Quartz." The Georgia slates, in the town of Georgia and in northern Vermont, are conformably superjacent to the "Red Sandrock." As the formation is traced to the south, the "Red Sandrock" series disappears, and the Georgia slates and shales, with their interbedded limestones and sandstones, represent the entire Cambrian section; so it is very probable that the Georgia series as found in southern Vermont and eastern New York represents or is equivalent to the "Granular Quartz" and the "Red Sandrock." The "Granular Quartz" has been described separately, but it is more convenient to unite the "Red Sandrock" and the Georgia slates, because the sections usually show the latter resting conformably upon the "Red Sandrock" series throughout northern Vermont. The geographic distribution of the Canadian extension of the "Red Sandrock" and the Georgia slates is shown on a map by Sir Wm. E. Logan, entitled "The distribution of the rocks belonging to the Potsdam, Quebec, and Trenton groups of the east side of Lake Champlain," accompanying an Atlas of maps and sections of the Report of Progress of the Geological Survey of Canada for 1863, published in 1865. The formations extend north of the boundary line about 5 miles, where they appear to have been cut out by faults that bring the superjacent formations into contact with them.

The "Red Sandrock" series consists of white and red dolomites and sandy layers. Some of the strata are mottled red and white, and a few are brick red or Indian red. Some beds contain a considerable amount of siliceous sand, and all weather a yellowish or reddish brown. They are also interbedded with gray argillaceous limestones and buff sandy dolomites weathering brown. This description is taken from Logan's notes on the formation near the Canadian boundary. To the south, in the town of Georgia, Franklin County, Vermont, they form a bluish gray dolomitic limestone, followed by a steel-gray dolomitic limestone that passes into a mottled limestone or the Winooski marble. This in turn is subjacent to gray dolomitic limestones in massive layers, some of which are mottled reddish and white, though the larger part are gray and yellow. Still higher up the reddish pink dolomitic limestones appear. There are many variations in the color and composition of this series between the Canadian border and its point of disappearance 40 miles to the south.

The Georgia slate series, according to Prof. C. H. Hitchcock, consist in Vermont of several varieties of rock.[1] They are (1) clay slate; (2) roofing slate; (3) clay slate approximating to micaceous sandstone; (4) various kinds of limestone; (5) brecciated limestone; (6) conglomerate formed of pebbles of limestone.

A carefully measured section extending up through the "Red Sandrock" and Georgia series, beginning at the base of the western face of the cliff overlooking the level that reaches to the shore of Lake Champlain, in the town of Georgia, Franklin County, Vermont, and extending southeastward to Parker's quarry, a little south of the Georgia post-office, gives the following:[2]

	Feet
(1) Massive bedded, bluish gray dolomitic limestone, with many inosculating threads and bunches of a yellowish-drab sandy limestone that weathers in relief[3]	35
(2) No. 1 passes into a steel-gray dolomitic limestone that weathers to a dark buff and bluish black, with angular fragments of bluish gray limestone appearing irregularly at the surface. At 160 feet from the base the first band of mottled limestone, "Calico" or Winooski marble, is met with. The latter grades into a reddish dolomite, free from mottling, and then in a gray limestone. (Fossils, Hyolithellus ?)	200
(3) Gray dolomitic limestone in massive layers, some of which are mottled, reddish and white, but the larger part are gray and yellow. Many of the gray layers break up into a columnar structure, the columns being at right angles to the bedding. In a reddish-colored limestone, 200 feet from the base, a slender elongate tube occurs, probably *Hyolithellus micans*	475
(4) Reddish pink, dolomitic limestone, weathering to a reddish brown and decomposing on the exposed edges to an arenaceous, dark, brownish-red rock that shows numerous fragments of fossils: *Kutorgina labradorica, Obolella* (?) sp., *Salterella pulchella* (?), *Ptychoparia adamsi, Olenellus thompsoni*	100
(5) Gray arenaceous limestone in rough, massive layers, passing into more evenly bedded, light gray, arenaceous limestone. Fossils similar to those in 4 occur in the lower portion	190
Total thickness of limestone	1,000
(6) Georgia shales.—Argillaceo-micaceous and arenaceous shales, containing numerous fossils, at Parker's ledge, and showing deposition contact on No. 5	200

Strike at Parker's Quarry, N. 30° E., dip 8° to 12° E.

The fossiliferous shales at Parker's Quarry contain: *Palæophycus incipiens, P. congregatus, Diplograptus simplex* [now, 1891, *Phyllograptus* (?) *cambrensis*], *Climacograptus* (?) *emmonsi, Kutorgina cingulata, Orthisina orientalis, O. festinata, O. transversa, O. sp.* (?), *Microdiscus parkeri, Mesonacis vermontana, Olenellus thompsoni, Olenoides marcoui, Bathynotus holopyga, Ptychoparia adamsi, P. vulcanus, Protypus hitchcocki, P. senectus,* and *P. senectus* var. *parvulus.*

[1] Hypozoic and Paleozoic rocks. Report on the geology of Vermont, vol. 1, 1861, p. 358.

[2] Walcott, C. D. Second contribution to the studies of the Cambrian faunas of North America. U. S. Geol. Survey, Bull. No. 30, 1886, pp. 15, 17.

[3] A mile south of the line of the section about 75 feet of arenaceous limestone occurs beneath this bed. Fifty feet from the base I found during the summer of 1890 *Obolella crassa* ?, *Salterella sp.* ? *Hyolithes* 2 sp., and fragments of a species of Olenellus. A few feet higher in the section the heads of Protypus sp. ? and of Olenellus sp. ? were found. Traces of the Olenellus fauna were also found at points 85, 153, and 193 feet above the lowest horizon.

Feet.

(7) East of the Parker quarry the rocks are argillaceous shales, with occasional layers of hard gray limestone one-half of an inch to 2 inches thick, that carry numerous fragments of a linguloid shell 3,500

Strike of shales near top of 7, N. 40° to 60° E., dip 60° SE.

(8) Light gray quartzite 50

(9) Gray limestone in massive layers, with occasional intercalated bands of hard argillaceous shale similar to that beneath the limestone. Many of the beds of limestone appear to have been broken up into fragments and recemented in situ 1,700

Average strike of limestone beds N. 50° E., dip 50° to 90°; average dip 60° SE.

In this limestone belt, 1 mile north of where the section crossed, a few fossils were found; *Lingula*, n. sp., *Orthisina* undt. (fragment), *Camerella* undt. (probably new), *Agnostus* like *A. orion*, and *Ptychoparia* like *P. adamsi*.

(10) Argillaceous shales, very similar to those in the Parker ledge, continue on up to the opposite side of the line of the Vermont Central Railroad track. At the base the shales rest conformably against the limestone of 9, and above appear to be cut off by a fault.

Strike N. 50° E., dip 60° to 80° SE., for a distance beyond the limestone; the dip then decreases and does not exceed 20° for a long distance, until within 1,000 feet of the railroad track, where the shales become coarser and changed by addition of arenaceous material, and the dip increases.

Total thickness to fault line of No. 10, 3,500 to 4,500 feet.

No. 8 of the section when traced on its strike to the southwest increases in force very rapidly to the thickness of 500 feet or more, and also changes from a quartzite to a more or less calcareous sandstone, containing irregular fragments of argillaceous shale. Followed to the northeast, it soon disappears and the limestones rest directly on the shales. Continuing northeast on the limestone (9), it is found to decrease rapidly, and a mile northeast of where it is over 1,500 feet in thickness the width across the outcrop is not over 150 feet, and soon the shales above it and those below it come together, the limestone having disappeared. Southwest of the line of the section the width of the outcrop narrows, and north of Georgia Plains post-office the entire section is covered by beds of sand.

No. 9 appears to be a great lenticular mass of limestone (lentile of Marcou) with intercalated beds of argillaceous shale, and more rarely with arenaceous beds imbedded in the argillaceous shales. The fauna is Cambrian in character, and, in the absence of Olenellus and other typical Middle [now Lower] Cambrian fossils approaches that of the Upper Cambrian or Potsdam sandstone.

A section taken east of Highgate Springs beginning on the east side of the same fault as the Georgia section, gives a slightly greater thickness, and more arenaceous matter in the limestone series beneath the Georgia shales. The limestones are here 1,170 feet in thickness and the Georgia shales 1,000 feet, above which there is apparently a conformable series of calcareous sandstones, with a thickness of 850 feet, to where they are cut off by a fault line. A section measured east of the village of Swanton, does not show as great a thickness of the limestone beneath the Georgia shale, and a fault line cuts obliquely across the shale. On the east side of the fault 200 or 300 feet of shales occur, and many layers of conglomerate limestone, the fragments of limestone varying in size from small pebbles to masses 6 feet in diameter. The

fossils in the limestone conglomerate have an Upper Cambrian aspect, and include *Lingula sp. ?*, *Agnostus sp.?*, *Amphion sp.?*, *Bathyurus sp. ?* Below the horizon of the conglomerate and in situ in the shales, there were found the genera Lingulella, Agnostus, Ptychoparia and Solenopleura. With the exception of the Solenopleura the species appear to be identical with those of the limestone lentile (9) of the Georgia section. A section measured east of Swanton by Sir William E. Logan gave but 520 feet of the limestone (Red Sandrock) series.[1] But farther to the north, nearly on the line of the Canadian boundary, he found 1,410 feet of limestone in the section, proving that this portion of Cambrian terrane thickens rapidly to the north.

The section measured in the town of Georgia is the most complete yet taken in Vermont (ante., pp. 278, 279). At the base a great belt of dolomitic limestone 1,000 feet in thickness rests against, and, by an overthrust fault, overlaps the Trenton limestone of the Lower Silurian (Ordovician). What was originally beneath the Cambrian limestone is yet undetermined. In the Highgate section the limestone belt is nearly 1,200 feet thick. The base is unknown, and it does not appear, so far as I know, in the section between the boundary of the United States and Canada and the outcrop in the town of Georgia. I have suggested that the great mass of shaly argillite east of the Vermont Central Railway track in the Georgia section may be older than the limestone at the base of the section, but until further evidence is obtained this is merely conjectural.[2]

During the field season of 1890 I studied the "Red Sandrock" series of the Georgia section, and found a little to the south and at the base of the original section that there was a band of buff-colored calcareous sandstone some 50 feet in thickness. In the upper beds of this, Obolella, like *Obolella crassa*, *Hyolithes americanus*, *H. communis*, *H.* sp. undt., *Hyolithellus micans*, and fragments of Olenellus occur. In a lead-colored magnesian limestone, passing into a buff-colored limestone 15 feet above the sandstone, fragments of Olenellus and the head of Ptychoparia, apparently identical with *P. trilineata*, were found, and in the superjacent pinkish magnesian limestone with interbedded drab-colored limestone, at horizons of 85 feet, 113 feet, and 198 feet above the sandstone, fragments of fossils that I recognized as portions of Olenellus and very perfect specimens of Salterella sp.? occur in the decomposed silicious limestones.

The discovery of the Olenellus fauna in the lower portion of this magnesian limestone series gives the fauna a range through 1,000 feet of limestone and the 250 feet of superjacent Georgia shale.

The fragments and heads of the genus Olenellus that were found in the lower beds were not sufficient to determine whether it was the equivalent of the *Olenellus asaphoides* of the Washington County section or not.

[1] Geological Survey of Canada: Report of progress from its commencement to 1863. Montreal, 1863, p. 281.

[2] Walcott, C. D.: Second contribution to the studies of the Cambrian faunas of North America. U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. No. 30, 1886, p. 19.

It is quite probable that it is, from the character of the associated fossils. As the vertical distribution of the fauna in the Olenellus zone will be treated of in a future paper, further reference will not be made to it at present.

The shales and slates superjacent to the Olenellus-bearing beds of the Georgia slate, at Parker's quarry, do not apparently belong to the Lower Cambrian, but are the representative of the middle portion of the Cambrian section. This view was advanced by Prof. Jules Marcou, in 1885,[1] except that he placed the same series of shales which occurs at St. Albans beneath the Georgia slates or Olenellus zone. The stratigraphy was erroneous, but the suggestion that the St. Albans slates correspond to the Paradoxides belt of the Atlantic Coast area will probably be found to be correct. In such an event Professor Marcou's name St. Albans will be a useful addition to the nomenclature of the Cambrian group in northern Vermont. It will, however, be difficult to differentiate between the St. Albans group and the superjacent beds carrying the Upper Cambrian fauna.

In the group of sections taken across New Hampshire and Vermont by Prof. C. H. Hitchcock[2] the Georgia series is called Potsdam and Cambrian; and in section XI, on Pl. 17, the Georgia shales (Cambrian of section) are represented as resting conformably on the magnesian limestone (Potsdam of section) in the town of Milton. This is the same as in the Georgia section a few miles to the north. The great mass of argillites, east of the railroad track in the Georgia section, are placed under the term Cambrian by Prof. Hitchcock, and the reference may possibly be correct; but as yet there have not been any recognized Cambrian fossils obtained in it, either at this point or to the north or south.

In southern Vermont the Georgia slate series widens out, and includes the great roofing-slate belt that extends through Rutland County and into Washington County, New York. The outcrop of this series is narrow in the south part of Washington County, but it widens rapidly in Rensselaer County, occupying nearly the entire width of the county at its southern boundary. At its greatest point of development in Washington County it consists of the following strata, as shown in a section crossing the county in the towns of Greenwich and Salem, with its base 1½ miles west of North Greenwich post-office:

	Feet.
(1) Massive layers of impure, shaly limestone embedded in irregular argillaceo-arenaceous shale, with numerous fossils of the Olenellus fauna in the limestone	340
(2) Massive layers of fine-grained, bluish gray, arenaceous limestone, that become almost a pure limestone in places	670
About halfway of the mass *Lingulella cælata, Hyolithellus micans*, and *Leperditia dermatoides* occur.	

[1] The Taconic System and its position in stratigraphic geology. Am. Acad. Proc., vol. 20, 1885, table on p. 224.

[2] Geological sections across Vermont and New Hampshire. Am. Mus. Nat. Hist., Bull., vol. 1, 1884, pls. 16, 17.

Feet.

(3) Shaly limestone in massive layers; argillaceous shales interbedded in the layers 380

(4) Calcareous, argillaceous shales, in massive layers, with interbedded arenaceous limestones below, and passing into an argillaceous shale above... 240

(5) Dark, argillaceous, and arenaceous shales becoming fissile in places; occasional layers of a hard, gritty limestone 1 or 2 inches thick occur at various horizons. Near the summit of this section *Hyolithes americanus*, *Microdiscus pulchellus*, *Olenellus asaphoides*, and *Conocoryphe trilineata* occur near the roadside. This is the trilobite bed from which the original specimens described by Dr. Emmons were obtained 370

The section to this point gives a total of 2,600 feet, and is considered Division A of the section.

(6) Compact, steel-gray, massive-bedded argillaceo-argillaceous shale, breaking into irregular fragments, and weathering a rust-brown color..... 2,200

At a point 1,300 feet up in this I found *Stenotheca rugosa*, *Hyolithes americanus*, and fragments of *Olenellus asaphoides*. At 2,100 feet up fragments of Olenellus occur in a stratum of calciferous shale.

(7) Massive beds of a thinly banded, cherty, and argillaceous rock, capped by a band of calciferous sandrock 400

(8) Argillaceous shale, more or less arenaceous and calcareous throughout its extent 2,400

(9) Calciferous sandrock, light colored, weathering to a reddish brown, crumbling sandy rock. This is embedded in a calcareo-argillaceous rock, that breaks into angular fragments of a shaly character. The only fossils observed were *Obolella crassa*, Hyolithes, fragments of Olenellus, on the decomposed surfaces of the more calciferous layers..... 900

(10) Argillaceous and arenaceous shales, much like those of Nos. 8 and 9, with bands of bluish gray, evenly bedded, and conglomerate limestone carrying fossils. As shown in the section, this division appears to have a thickness of 4,500 feet; but it is assumed that there is much repetition by faulting, so that it is given a thickness of 2,250 feet..... 2,250

The combined thickness of the section to this point is 10,750 feet. Its continuity is here broken by a fault, that brings the rocks of the Hudson (?) terrane against it and between it and the purple and green slates that form a large portion of the Cambrian section east of the rocks of the Hudson (?) terrane. The section is again taken up on the east side of Salem Village, at the base of the green and purple slates and interbedded limestones, carrying characteristic Lower Cambrian fossils of the Olenellus fauna.

Feet.

(11) Green, purple, and higher up, gray and dark shales and slates and interbedded limestones, in very thin layers 2,500

(12) Nonfossiliferous green and purple slates 2,150

In the township of Hampton to the north, the green and purple slates appear to have a thickness of 4,300 feet; and 2 miles north of that point there are over 5,000 feet of these beds, if no repetition occurs.

The lower portion of this division is characterized by the Olenellus fauna in association with some other species that indicate the Middle Cambrian zone. The entire thickness of the lower and upper divisions, according to the section, is 15,350 feet.

(13) Above the green and purple slate belt is a series of greenish, schistose, hydro-mica slates, estimated to have a thickness of 3,700 feet. They are not fossiliferous, and appear to pass beneath the limestones characterized

by the Chazy-Trenton fauna. I have referred them to the Potsdam zone provisionally.[1] If this reference be correct and the rocks in the section are not duplicated by faulting, the Cambrian system has a thickness of 19,000 feet in Washington County.

This section may be greater than the actual thickness of the sediments deposited in this region during Cambrian time. The upper 3,700 feet of greenish, hydro-mica shales probably do not belong to the Cambrian, and there may be some reduplication in the section as measured. Eliminating the probable sources of error, I think there is at the least from 10,000 to 12,000 feet of strata that may be referred to the Cambrian group.

A section 35 miles to the south, across the extension of this series, exhibits a great development of the shaly portion similar to that in the lower part of the Washington County section, that passes above into the red and purple slate belt. In this section the upper member of the Washington County section is apparently represented by a coarse, greenish sandstone, and in places a fine conglomerate. At the base of this formation the red and green shales are interbedded with the sandstone, the passage from the slates to the sandstone being by intercalation of sand and slate for a distance of several hundred feet, the slate gradually diminishing in volume as the intercalation of the sandstone increases. The sandstone is estimated to have a thickness of 2,000 feet or more, and it corresponds in stratigraphic position, and is on the strike of the 3,700 feet of greenish hydro-mica schistose shales of the Washington County section. The recent work of Mr. T. Nelson Dale proves this series (Berlin grit) to be of Lower Silurian (Ordovician) age, and indicates that the series of green and purple slates beneath may represent the base of the Lower Silurian (Ordovician) and the summit of the Cambrian.

Our knowledge of the rocks of the Cambrian group in their southern extension into Dutchess County, New York, is obtained from the observations of Prof. Wm. B. Dwight. The base of the series is the "Granular Quartz" of Stissing Mountain, that had been referred to the Potsdam zone by Profs. W. W. Mather, J. D. Dana, and others. Occurring between the gneiss of Stissing Mountain and the superjacent limestone carrying the Calciferous fauna, it was natural that this should be correlated with the Potsdam sandstone about the Adirondacks; and it was not until the fall of 1886 that fossils of the Lower Cambrian or Olenellus zone were found in the quartzite, and in the limestone resting upon the quartzite.[2] Prior to this Prof. Dwight had discovered in the more or less arenaceous limestone and argillaceous shaly limestone near Poughkeepsie the presence of the Potsdam or Upper Cambrian

[1] Walcott, C. D.: The Taconic System of Emmons and the use of the name Taconic in geologic nomenclature. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 35, 1888, p. 241.

[2] Dwight, W. B.: Primordial rocks of the Wappinger Valley limestones and associate strata. Vassar Brothers Inst. Trans., vol. 4, 1887, pp. 206-214. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 34, 1887, pp. 27-32.

fauna.[1] It includes *Lingulepis acuminata, Obelella prima, Ptychoparia calcifera,* and *P. saratogensis,* species identical with those found at the upper horizon of the Potsdam in association with Dikelocephalus of Saratoga County, New York. Subsequently he discovered in the limestone above the quartzite, at the south end of Stissing Mountain, fossils that indicated the Middle Cambrian or Paradoxides zone. The species are *Hyolithes billingsi?, Leperditia ebenina, Kutorgina stissingensis,* and *Olenoides stissingensis.*

The stratigraphic succession is more or less interrupted by faults and the rocks are masked by the drift deposits. The succession as determined by the known stratigraphy, and the fauna is, first, at the base a massive bedded quartzite, resting upon the gneiss below, and subjacent to a bed of hard, compact limestone. In the quartzite the Olenellus fauna has been found, and in the bed of limestone immediately superjacent to it one of the characteristic fossils of the Lower Cambrian fauna, *Hyolithellus micans* occurs. In the superjacent limestone, the thickness of which could not well be determined but which appears to be considerable, the Middle Cambrian fauna was found in an arenaceous limestone, passing frequently into a calcareous shale; and in the vicinity of Poughkeepsie the Upper Cambrian fauna occurs in a somewhat similar limestone.

The contrast of the sedimentation of this section with that of Washington County is very striking. In the latter, the quartzite of Stissing Mountain is represented by the great thickness of shales, and interbedded limestones, slates, and sandstones; and the limestone of the Middle and Upper Cambrian of the Dutchess County section are entirely replaced by slates, schists, and sandstones, both in Rensselaer and Washington Counties. This difference in sedimentation is shown all along the northern Appalachian Province from Dutchess County to the Canadian border, and on to Quebec and down the St. Lawrence River to Cape Rosier. It represents the accumulation of sediments in a gradually sinking area and in a relatively shallow sea. It is a curious fact that near the old shore line the basal sandstone, "Granular Quartz" of the Lower Cambrian is almost directly succeeded by the massive limestones of the "Marble" belt. Unless there is here an area of nondeposition, the lower portion of the limestones of Berkshire County, Massachusetts, Rutland and Addison Counties, Vermont, represent the sedimentation of Middle and Lower Cambrian time.

The preceding paragraph was written several months prior to the discovery of Cambrian fossils in the limestones of the East Rutland Valley by Dr. Wolff, in 1890.

---

[1] Discovery of fossiliferous Potsdam strata at Poughkeepsie, N. Y. Am. Assoc. Proc., vol. 34, 1886, pp. 204–209.

[2] Recent explorations on the Wappinger Valley limestone of Dutchess County, New York., No. 5 discovery of fossiliferous Potsdam strata at Poughkeepsie, N. Y. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 31, 1886, pp. 125–133. Vassar Bro. Inst., Trans., vol. 4, 1887, pp. 130–141.

CANADIAN EXTENSION.

The Canadian extension of the northern Appalachian district is from the United States boundary northeast to the vicinity of Point Levis, Quebec, on the western side of the extension of the Green Mountains, or Sutton Mountain anticlinal, and from Quebec down the south shore of the St. Lawrence River to Cape Rosier, Gaspé. On the eastern side of the anticlinal the supposed Cambrian rocks of New Hampshire, crossing the southeastern portion of the Province of Quebec to the Maine boundary, are also included.

The stratigraphic succession of the rocks referred to the Cambrian in the eastern Province of Quebec and down the St. Lawrence River to Cape Rosier is not yet clearly determined, owing to the faulting, plication, and absence of clearly defined Cambrian faunas in situ in the strata. In the vicinity of Quebec, on the authority of Dr. R. W. Ells, the stratigraphic succession is as follows:[1]

(1) Black, green, and gray shales, with hard and heavy bands of grayish, sometimes yellowish white, quartzose sandstone, which are thickest in the lower portion, and with occasional thin bands of limestone conglomerate, the pebbles being generally small and the paste highly quartzose. The quartzites have occasional scattered pebbles of grayish limestone.

(2) Greenish, grayish, and blackish, with occasionally dark-reddish or purplish-tinted shales, with bands of hard grayish sandstone, generally fine-grained, and in thickness from 1 inch to 1 foot, the massive quartzites being absent and many of the greenish layers being covered with fucoidal markings, well seen on the shore above Cape Rouge and in the cutting along the road above that village.

(3) Bright red shales, often with thin greenish or grayish bands, which in places are calcareous. The rocks on a smoothed surface have a striped red and green aspect; in the upper part occasional beds of a foot or more of hard green-gray sandstone occur.

(4) Red, greenish gray and black shales, with interstratified masses, often lenticular, of greenish and grayish Sillery sandstone, ranging in thickness from 2 feet upward, in which the Sillery quarries are located. This is the typical Sillery sandstone, which ranges from a fine-grained homogeneous rock to a fine quartz conglomerate, much of the rock being characterized by the presence of small flaky pieces of shale and scattered small pebbles or large grains of clear quartz, the bands of sandstone being separated by partings of various colored shale. The local and lenticular character of the sandstone is well seen in the Sillery section, some of the heaviest beds inland thinning out before reaching the shore in either direction. In the upper part, at Sillery church, *Obolella pretiosa* occurs, from which point an anticlinal crosses the river to Point Levis, and appears in the cliffs at the Victoria hotel, where the same Obolella is found.

Above the Upper Sillery Dr. Ells places the Levis shales and conglomerates of Levis City, the shore extension below South Quebec and St. Joseph and the west end of Orleans Island. In the Levis shales, the conglomerate limestone, embedded in a calcareous matrix, carries numerous bowlders in which the Upper Cambrian fauna is found; and in what is supposed to be the equivalent of No. 2, a conglomerate lime-

[1] Second report on the geology of a portion of the Province of Quebec. Geol. Surv. Canada, new ser., vol. 3, part 2, 1889, pp. 63 K, 64 K.

stone occurs in which the Olenellus or Lower Cambrian fauna is present. The thickness of the strata referred to the Cambrian is not given by Dr. Ells in his publication, but he told me that the measurements given by Mr. Logan were as nearly correct as could be determined. These were 5,000 to 6,000 feet for the Sillery and Lauzon series.

The little shell *Obolella pretiosa* ranges through from 1,500 to 2,000 feet of the Upper Sillery; and the lower or Olenellus fauna conglomerate occurs in the lower portion of this range.

Dr. Ells refers the entire Sillery series to the Cambrian, and in this I mainly agree with him, except that the upper portion is evidently a passage formation between the Cambrian and Silurian (Ordovician). On lithologic and stratigraphic evidence the line would be drawn at the summit of the red shale; on paleontologic evidence, as furnished by the Graptolites, I would include the upper portion of the Sillery red and green shales in the Silurian (Ordovician), as I think they are above the typical Potsdam zone of America.[1]

The strata doubtfully referred to the Cambrian group between Quebec and Cape Rosier, on the south shore of the St. Lawrence River, have already been described in the notice of the work of Mr. James Richardson, reported upon by him in 1870. (Ante., pp. 118, 119.) As they may or may not be of Cambrian age, no further description will be given.

The strata referred to the Cambrian on the western side of the Sutton Mountain anticlinal, or the belt extending southeasterly from Quebec to the Vermont boundary, are described by Drs. Selwyn and Ells as consisting for the most part of hard quartzites interstratified with mica-schists and black slates. All of this series, as described by them is unconformably overlapped by the Sillery red slates, conglomerates, and sandstones. Limited outcrops of grayish subcrystalline limestones are found occasionally in association with the black slates and quartzites.

The volcanic portion of the Cambrian, or group No. 2 of Dr. Selwyn,[2] presents a great variety of crystalline, subcrystalline, and altered rocks, including "coarse, thick-bedded, feldspathic, chloritic, epidotic, and quartzose sandstones, red, gray, and greenish siliceous slates and argillites, great masses of dioritic, epidotic and serpentinous breccias, and agglomerates, diorites, dolorites, and amygdaloides, holding copper ore; serpentines, felsites, and some fine-grained granitic and gneissic rocks, also crystalline dolomites and calcites. Much of the division, especially on the southeastern side of the axis, is locally made up of altered volcanic products, both intrusive and interstratified, the latter being clearly of contemporaneous origin with the associated sandstones and slates."

As far as known this zone has not afforded any fossils. Dr. Selwyn

[1] Walcott, C. D.: A review of Dr. R. W. Ells's second report on the geology of a portion of the Province of Quebec, with additional notes on the "Quebec group." Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 39, 1890, p. 113.

[2] Report of observations on the stratigraphy of the Quebec group and the older crystalline rocks of Canada. Geol. Surv. Canada: Report of progress, 1877-1878, 1879, pp. 5A, 6A.

thinks that if found they would indicate a lower horizon than the Levis formation, probably not far removed from the St. John group and Atlantic Coast series of Nova Scotia, or Lower Cambrian. Details of the lithologic and stratigraphic features of the strata referred to the Cambrian and their geographic distribution may be found in the reports by Dr. Ells on the Eastern Townships of the Province of Quebec.[1]

SOUTHERN APPALACHIAN DISTRICT.

The Southern Appalachian District includes the outcrops of strata referred to formations of the Cambrian group in northern and central New Jersey, southeastern and southern central Pennsylvania, western Maryland, Virginia, and North Carolina, eastern Tennessee, northwestern Georgia, and northeastern Alabama.

NEW JERSEY.

As far as known the rocks of New Jersey referred to the Cambrian are found in the northern central portion as outcrops of a nonfossiliferous sandstone resting upon Archean gneiss and subjacent to a Magnesian limestone that has been referred to the Calciferous zone of the New York section. The greatest thickness assigned to it is 20 feet.

The correlation with the Potsdam sandstone of New York is based entirely upon the lithologic characters of the sandstone and its stratigraphic position. There is no positive evidence of its being the equivalent of the Potsdam sandstone of New York. It may be Lower, Middle, or Upper Cambrian, and possibly of Calciferous age. From the stratigraphic conditions to the north and south it will probably be found to be of Lower Cambrian age, or the equivalent of the "Granular Quartz" of New York and Vermont. The lower portion of the limestone series may be of Cambrian age, as in Dutchess County, New York.

Among the papers presented to the Geological Society of America at its second annual meeting, December 31, 1890, was one by Prof. Frank L. Nason on "The post-Archean Age of the White limestones of Sussex County, New Jersey," in which he describes the discovery of the Olenellus fauna in the lower Primal sandstone of Rogers that rests unconformably upon the pre-Cambrian rocks. He said also that fossils (Obolella or Lingulella) extended up into the superjacent limestone.

In Prof. Nason's collection I recognized *Olenellus thompsoni*, Obolella or Lingulella sp.?, and the cast of a coral-like organism that is probably a species of Ethmophyllum. These were found at Hardistonville and Franklin Furnace, Sussex County, New Jersey.

---

[1] Second report on the geology of a portion of the Province of Quebec. Geol. Surv. Canada, new series, vol. 3, 1889, pp. 1K–120K.

Report on the geology of a portion of the Eastern Townships of Quebec. Geol. Surv. Canada, 1886, new ser., vol. 2, 1887, pp. 1J–70J.

DELAWARE.

The outcrop of the sandstone referred to the "Potsdam" in northwestern Delaware is very limited, and is noted only to indicate its occurrence within the limits of the State.[1]

PENNSYLVANIA.

The rocks referred to the Cambrian System in Pennsylvania by the latest authorities include the Primal quartzite of Prof. Rogers; and Prof. Lesley is inclined to consider the sandstone and slate of the South Mountain proper as of Cambrian age. The line of outcrop of the quartzite extends along the boundaries of the various Archean areas from the Delaware River on the northeast, in Bucks, Lehigh, and Northampton Counties, southwesterly, with more or less interruption, across Berks, Montgomery, Chester, Lancaster, York, and Adams Counties, to the Maryland line. Prof. J. P. Lesley's summary is as follows:

> The lowest Paleozoic formation in Pennsylvania, No. 1, logically identified with the Potsdam sandstone of northern New York, makes its appearance along the edges of the limestone No. 2 at the north foot of the Azoic Mountain Range between Bethlehem and Reading in Lehigh and Berks Counties; in Mulbaugh Hill, on the Lebanon County line; in Chicques ["Chickis" of Frazer] Ridge, on the Susquehanna, above Columbia; in the Welsh Mountain in northern Chester, and in the North Valley Hill, which stretches for 60 miles from the heart of Lancaster to the Bucks-Montgomery county line north of the city of Philadelphia. Its only fossil as yet discovered is a *Scolithus*, but its position next beneath the Calciferous limestone is too well marked to admit of doubt. Formerly it entirely covered the mountain districts north and south of the Schuylkill River, because it still spreads in sheets upon their sides, and in many places makes their summits, lying unconformably upon the gneiss.
>
> The South Mountains proper, which separate Cumberland from York and Franklin from Adams County, do not thus exhibit the fundamental gneiss covered by a coating of Potsdam, but are composed of peculiar sandstone and slate strata several thousand feet thick, which occupy the place of the Potsdam in the series, but can not certainly be identified with it. They may be considered the equivalents of the Ocoee and Sewanee strata of east Tennessee. * * * We may consider our South Mountain rocks, therefore, those lying north of the turnpike fault, as of Cambrian age.[2]

The sandstone referred to the Potsdam in Lehigh and Northampton Counties is described by Mr. Frederick Prime, jr., as "a hard, compact quartzite, of a yellowish color where weathered, and when freshly quarried of a grayish tint. * * * The thickness, where it could be measured, was 21 feet.[3]"

The quartzite varies in thickness from 20 to 300 feet, the greater thickness being in the "Chickis" section of Lancaster County, where, according to Dr. Persifor Frazer, it reaches 300 feet. Southwest of the

[1] Chester, Frederick D.: Preliminary notes on the geology of Delaware—Laurentian, Paleozoic, and Cretaceous areas. Phil. Acad. Sci. Proc., vol. 36, for 1884, pp. 237–259.

[2] A geological hand atlas of the sixty-seven counties of Pennsylvania, embodying the results of the field work of the survey from 1874 to 1884. Second Geol. Surv. Pa., X, 1885, pp. xvi, xvii.

[3] Geology of Lehigh and Northampton Counties. Second Geol. Surv. Pa., D^2, vol. 1, 1883, p. 205.

Susquehanna River it is difficult to measure its exact thickness, owing to its disturbed condition. The characters of the sandstone appear to be very much alike throughout the State, and the only traces of organic remains found are the straight, vertical tubes of Scolithus.

Prof. H. D. Rogers referred a series of slates, between the sandstone, called Potsdam, and the base of the superjacent limestone to the Primal period, but the geologists of the Second Geological Survey consider them as belonging to the limestone series. If a comparison be made with the Tennessee sections, where the schists and shales between the quartzite and the limestone are characterized by Cambrian fossils, this series of schists will certainly be referred to the Cambrian, as it is subjacent to the great limestone series and superjacent to the quartzite. According to Prof. Rogers, the highest or Primal newer slate is a greenish and bluish talcose argillaceous slate, sometimes very soft and shaly, and has a thickness of about 700 feet. Dr. Frazer refers about 1,600 feet of "Hydromica schist" to the interval between the quartzite and limestone in York County.[1]

The upper part of the Primal slates does not appear to be developed to the northeastward in Lehigh, Northampton, Bucks, Montgomery, Berks, and Chester Counties. It first appears with any considerable thickness in Lancaster County, near the Susquehanna River, and south of the quartzites of the Chickis Hills. From thence it extends southwesterly, across York and Adams Counties, to the Maryland line, increasing in thickness in Maryland and Virginia.

As a whole, the Cambrian System in Pennsylvania appears to be represented by the lower quartzite and the superjacent shales and schists as originally defined by Prof. Rogers, and it may be that the lower portion of the superjacent limestone will be included.

In a letter received from Prof. Lesley, dated May 8, 1890, he says:

Reading Ells's paper and Brainerd & Seely's paper in Bull. Geol. Soc. America, just published, with your remarks at the meeting, I naturally reverted to my South Mountain surveys (20 years ago) east of Chambersburgh, Pennsylvania (Fulton and Adams counties), and the strange and powerful impression made on me then by the outcrop of a low ridge of *purple shales*, running *from the pike southward, just back* (east) *of the western mountain ridge*. I never saw anything like them, and feel strongly inclined to consider them the Sillery *purple shales* (Cambrian) of the North. I can't find or remember any description of this outcrop by Frazer. It lies in Fulton County, outside the Adams County line.

MARYLAND.

I have been unable to find any detailed account of the rocks referred to the Primal series of Prof. Rogers, and have depended upon the general account given by Prof. P. T. Tyson in 1860, in his report as State agricultural chemist. His description is short and will be quoted in full:

(*Primal of Pennsylvania survey.*)—*Potsdam of New York.*—This division includes:

(1) A hard sandstone made up of grains of quartz, with occasionally grains of

[1] General notes.—Sketch on the geology of York County, Pennsylvania. Am. Phil. Soc. Proc., vol 23, 1886, p. 401.

feldspar and kaolin. The siliceous cement seems to have completely filled up the interstices between the grains so as to give a firm compact structure to the rock. Portions of this rock seem to have been subjected to such changes as to render it doubtful whether it should not be considered a granular quartz and be classed among the metamorphic rocks. Vegetable life seems to have commenced at the period of the formation of this rock, because it contains fossilized stems of plants.

(2) A slate varying in color from gray to brownish and greenish. It is ranked as an argillite, but portions of it assume a marked talcose appearance, especially in the Catoctin Mountain and in parts of Middletown Valley, where it has been much disturbed and altered by proximity to intrusive rocks. These last consist of amphibolites (trap), porphyries, amygdaloid, serpentine, and epidote. This last-named rock is extensively developed both in large masses and intercalated between the slates, and has largely contributed to produce the highly fertile soils of Middletown Valley.

Approximate measurements of the thickness of these strata have been made in New York and Pennsylvania, but I have not as yet been able to obtain reliable information upon this point in our State.[1]

From this description and the geographic distribution of the Primal series as indicated on the accompanying map, it is evident that the quartzite of South Mountain, Pennsylvania, extends nearly north and south, across Maryland, and that the slates and associated eruptive rocks which form the main mass of South Mountain are included by Prof. Tyson in the Primal series. In the sections of these slates and accompanying rocks in Virginia they are recognized as pre-Cambrian, and it is very probable that those of Maryland and north into South Mountain of Pennsylvania are also of pre-Cambrian age. The presence of the upper Primal slate of Rogers between the quartzite and the Auroral limestone is not noted by Prof. Tyson. The fossilized stems of plants referred to are probably the Scolithus borings found so abundantly in the sandrock of Pennsylvania and Virginia. If the lower portion of the limestone series of Pennsylvania is of Cambrian age it is probable that the extension into Maryland is the same.

VIRGINIA.

Prof. William B. Rogers's description of the geographic distribution, stratigraphic position, and character of the strata that he referred to the Primal series, has been proved to be in a large measure essentially correct by the observations of geologists who have more recently studied the formations referred to the Cambrian group. He described formation No. 1 as consisting in the most part of a close-grained white or light gray sandstone, in some places containing beds of a rather coarse conglomerate of white siliceous pebbles. Near the bottom, in many instances, a brownish slaty sandstone occurs, alternating with the former, whilst toward the top or approaching the next formation the sandstone passes into reddish and brownish and olive-colored argillaceous slates. As far as known to him in his earlier work the formation in Virginia was exclusively confined to the western slope of the Blue Ridge and the narrow belt of rugged hills and mountains extending

[1] Tyson, Phillip T.: First report of the State agricultural chemist of Maryland. Annapolis, 1860, pp. 34, 35.

thence to the commencement of the Valley limestone.[1] At some later date, however, he discovered a small outcrop of the Primal series on the eastern slope of the Blue Ridge, in Rockbridge County, and drew it in on section 9 of the plates of sections published in connection with "The Virginias" in 1881. The Primal sandstones and shales are represented as occupying a narrow, deep basin on the eastern slope of the Archean rocks of the Blue Ridge. In this beautiful series of illustrations the twenty sections crossing the Primal series at subequal distances from the Potomac River to the Tennessee line illustrate very fully Prof. Rogers's interpretation of the geological structure, character, and thickness of strata forming the Primal series.

Prof. W. M. Fontaine in 1875 supplemented the work of Prof. Rogers by a detailed description of the sections of the "Primordial" strata at Balcony Falls in Rockbridge County, Rockfish Gap in Augusta County, and at Harper's Ferry on the Potomac. He concludes that the entire thickness of the Primordial strata at Harper's Ferry can not be much over 1,000 feet, and that they are composed of slaty rocks, similar to the variety of the lowest slate seen at Rockfish Gap, and a sandstone which much resembles some of the quartzites of the lower strata of the same locality. The section differs from that of Rockfish Gap and Balcony Falls in the absence of the coarser materials and the succession of shales and sandstones, with the subjacent conglomerate that rest on the Archean. The lower argillites, forming the main portion of the ridge and which Prof. Rogers included in his Primal series in section No. 2 accompanying "The Virginias," Prof. Fontaine refers to the Archean; whether of Laurentian or Huronian age, he does not undertake to decide.[2]

At the second annual meeting of the Geological Society of America, at Washington, D. C., December 31, 1890, a paper was read by Messrs. H. R. Geiger and Arthur Keith on the structure of the Blue Ridge near Harper's Ferry.

Several sections, taken on both the north and south sides of the Potomac River, show that the geologic succession at the base is a limestone upon which rests a series of shales, subjacent to a quartzite which corresponds to the Medina sandstone of the sections farther to the north and south. This section is the one described by Prof. Rogers as an *overturned section*, the quartzite corresponding to the primal quartzite of the Pennsylvania section, its present position being accounted for by the complete overturning, thus reversing the section. The authors of the paper mentioned conclude that the succession is a normal one from the pre-Paleozoic rocks through the limestone and

[1] Second report of the progress of the gelogical survey of the State of Virginia for the year 1837. Richmond, 1838, pp. 14, 15.

Geology of the Virginias, 1884, pp. 167–169.

Report of the progress of the geological survey of Virginia for 1838 (Richmond, 1839) pp. 6, 9–12.

Geology of the Virginias, N. Y., 1884, pp. 197, 198, 203–209.

[2] On the Primordial strata of Virginia. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 9, 1875, p. 425.

shale to the sandstone. The basal limestone is of Calciferous—Chazy-Trenton age; the shales then would correspond to the Lorraine series, and the sandstone to the Medina series of the New York section. As as far known this is the only break in the continuity of the outcrops of the "Granular Quartz," where a quartzite is present, from central Vermont to Alabama.[1]

At Rockfish Gap the massive chloritic argillites, that form the mass of the Blue Ridge, are shown in unconformable contact with the lowest Primordial strata. The Archean argillites are firm and hard, of a dark greenish color, and present a strong contrast to the first stratum of the Primordial rocks, the line of junction being strongly defined. Summarized, Prof. Fontaine's description of the section is as follows, beginning at the base:[2]

	Feet.
(1) Very thinly laminated slates or shales	300
(2) On the side next to (1), the layers of this rock in color, do not differ much from (1), but are thicker than the preceding slates, and more sandy. The bedding thickens, and the amount of siliceous matter increases to the west, until a fine-grained white kaolin sandstone is the result	75
(3) Conglomerate of brownish-red color, in massive layers from 5 to 6 feet thick, with thin seams of shaly matter between several of the layers. The coarser materials are rounded grains of quartz of the size of a garden pea and under; inclosures of angular fragments of the slates of the Blue Ridge are not rare	60
(4) This is a partially concealed interval of 200 feet in which the rocks are, when seen, kaolin shales and kaolin sandstone, principally the former. To the west of this is a band of kaolin sandstone, with layers of cellular, much indurated quartzite, and some subordinate beds of an indurated, gray, coarse sandstone. This series contains one bed of the gray sandstone 20 feet thick. Thickness 420 feet or including the partly concealed band	620
(5) The first rock in this series is a highly indurated gray sandstone, the type of the beds above mentioned as forming occasional layers in No. (4). It is of a dark gray color, and composed of coarse grains which by metamorphic action are changed to a nearly compact texture. The thickness of the sandstone is 50 feet. A band of diorite 20 feet thick interrupts the section, next to which is a band of bluish gray, coarse shales, 75 feet wide; a partially concealed interval of 300 feet, occupied by similar rocks; then for 200 feet, several alternations of the same shales with bluish argillaceous sandstones. In these a layer 6 feet wide of red argillaceous hematite is found. Then a second band of diorite 12 feet wide, resembling in all respects the first.	
(6) The beds of No. (5) which are mostly sandy shales, and are rather thickly-bedded in layers of from 1 to several feet, are succeeded by a band of very thinly-laminated, firm olive slates or shales, having a total thickness of	300
Indurated brown sandstone, with some chlorite	30
Interval of concealed rock	100
Alternations of brownish argillaceous sandstones with greenish shaly beds.	150
Very finely fissile, pink-colored slaty shales, which weather purplish-red..	200
Then for 100 feet a bluish shale is found	100
	880

[1] Bull. Geol. Soc. Am., vol. 2, 1891, pp. 155–163. [2] Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 9, 1875, pp. 416–421.

Feet.

The two last series of beds, 5 and 6, appear to be the equivalent of No. (9) of the Balcony Falls section. Their combined thickness is about 1,450 feet, that is, provided no reduplication from folding occurs. This is possible, though not probable, I think.

(7) "The strata now to be described are the equivalent of the Potsdam sandstone, and resemble No. (10) at Balcony Falls in their almost total freedom from iron and other coloring matters. * * * The system here consists of a vast number of thin layers, in which we may distinguish three classes of rock: (*a*) A shale pale gray to bluish gray when fresh, composed almost entirely of kaolin, and occurring in thin plates. (*b*) This is associated with a very fine grained kaolin sandstone, the quartz grains being now perceptible to the naked eye. * * * (*c*) A kaolin sandstone of moderately fine grain, often with a thickness of several feet in the individual layers. The quartz grains are mixed with an equal amount of kaolin 300

"The beds last described have a thickness of 300 feet, and are succeeded by a partially concealed interval, in which 50 feet of a similar rock are shown." The strata between this point and the Auroral limestone are largely concealed.

The section as studied at Balcony Falls by Prof. Fontaine is as follows:[1]

Feet.

(1) Unbedded quartzite, with crystals of feldspar 120
(2) Brown, crumbling, argillaceous rocks or sandy shale, conglomerate in its upper portion 40
(3) Brown, decomposing, thinly laminated and contorted shale 10
(4) Conglomerate, like the upper portion of (2) 20
(5) Shales, like (3) 12
(6) Conglomerate, like (4) 15
(7) Crumbling, brownish shales, passing in the upper portion into argillaceous sandstones of the same hue and texture 200
(8) Massively bedded, coarse white quartzite (apparently Rogers's typical No. 1) 500

Up to this point the rocks are well exposed in the cliffs which closely border the canal. Proceeding west across the strike, we next encounter a series that forms No. (9).

(9) Thinly laminated, gray and reddish shales. Probable thickness 600
(10) Alternating beds of quartzite and kaolin shales. Probable thickness 700
(11) The first rock seen next to the mountain is thinly laminated, fragile shale, of yellowish and reddish hues not fully exposed. Next, to the west, we have bluish calcareous slate, and slaty limestone, 50 feet. Then very thinly laminated, firm, deep red slates, 60 feet. Next a similar slate of blue color, 15 feet. Then a bed of dark blue, hard, and dense limestone, used for cement, 13 feet. Then thinly laminated red slates, 20 feet. Then coarser and thicker bedded blue slates, 40 feet. Lastly, a coarse, rough, massive, siliceous limestone, 40 feet 238

2,455

He compares the Balcony Falls section with that of Rockfish Gap, stating that the thickness of Nos. 5 and 6 in the latter section is much greater than that estimated for their equivalent, No. 9 in the Balcony

[1] Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 9, 1875, pp. 363–365.

Falls section, showing that the proportion of shaly matter in the entire group at Rockfish Gap has greatly increased.[1]

In summing up the physical characters of the sections as described, he says:

It will be seen from the above notes that in Virginia we have below the calciferous limestones a great development of sandstones, shales, and conglomerates, which attain in the middle portion of the State a thickness of over 2,000 feet, and increase in the proportion of coarse materials to the southwest. They probably attain greater thickness in that quarter, while to the northeast the amount of sediment diminishes, and the proportion of fine matter increases. This change is plainly due to the increasing development to the southwest of the syenitic rocks which formed the shores of the ancient seas and to the greater violence in that direction of disturbing forces. The Potsdam sandstone forms one of the upper members of this group. Much further study of these strata is required to settle the question whether the entire series is a great expansion of the Potsdam or whether divisions may be made corresponding to other epochs. The fact that at Rockfish Gap, and to the southwest, a great body of ferruginous slaty shales separates the lower highly siliceous and altered, sandstones from the upper Kaolin sandstones of probable Potsdam age, seems to indicate a change in the conditions of sedimentation sufficient to justify such a division, in which the Acadian strata may be found.[2]

With the single exception of a Scolithus, no fossils have been found in these rocks which would indicate their age.

In 1883 Prof. Fontaine supplemented his detailed description of the sections by a synoptic description, embracing the general character of all the formations that he considered belonging to the Primordial series.[3] Beginning with the base of the Primordial he recognized six divisions as follows:

	Feet.
1. Lower Primordial conglomerate	0 to 30
2. Lower gray shales and flags	500
3. Red shales and flags	400
4. Upper gray shales and flags	600
5. Potsdam quartzite	350
6. Ferriferous shales	500
	2.380

The description of the various formations is so clear and full that I quote them:

(1) *Lower Primordial conglomerate.*—I would confine this appellation to the lowest conglomerate that forms the base of the Primordial where it is present, excluding the conglomerate bands that follow higher up, but are separated from the basal conglomerate by shale and slate. * * * This member, thus limited, I have not seen at all the places where the junction of the Primordial with the Azoic is exposed. * * *

The conglomerate now in question is of special importance, since, when it is found, we may be sure that we have the true base of the Primordial. I have never seen it without finding the Azoic rocks immediately under it. It consists of a finer matrix that is shaly or slaty in texture, in which particles, angular or rounded in shape, of the Azoic strata are imbedded. The lithological character of the pebbles varies

[1] Op. cit., p. 421.
[2] Op. cit., p. 424.
[3] Notes on the mineral deposits at certain localities on the western part of the Blue Ridge. The Virginias, vol. 4, 1883, pp. 22, 42–44.

with the nature of the adjoining Azoic. To the south they are more commonly composed of gneissoid rock, but to the north the Huronian schists furnish the material. * * *

In the more southerly portions of the belt a good deal of partly decayed feldspar may be detected in the finer matrix, but to the north argillaceous material forms the cementing matter (p. 22).

(2) *Lower Gray Shales and Flags.*—The lower portion of this member of the Primordial frequently contains bands of conglomerate, composed of quartz pebbles, often purplish in color, imbedded in a fine-grained matrix of shale or slate * * * (p. 42).

The lower gray shales and flags vary in character more than any other member of the Primordial. The predominant rocks are shales, that sometimes become slaty in firmness and thinness of lamination, or various more siliceous flaggy rocks that range from purely argillaceous shales, through argillaceous sandstones, into massive and highly siliceous quartzites. These latter have the character described above. The predominant color is gray, but reddish, yellowish, or purplish and greenish colors sometimes occur.

Some of the grayish white, argillaceous strata form a species of claystone that weathers to a sort of kaolin. For the sake of distinction these may be called kaolin flags. This kind of rock is much more common in the member next under the Potsdam quartzite. The conglomerates occurring in the lower part of this member have been already described.

The general features of the quartzite members of this group have been already sufficiently discussed. Towards the southern portion of the belt, they attain great dimensions. This is especially true of the space between the southern border of Augusta County and Balcony Falls. At this latter place a quartzite formation occurs about 150 feet above the base of the Primordial, forming the Balcony Rock. It lies in huge beds of a highly siliceous character, and is not less than 250 feet thick. Here the massive character of the beds has prevented the cracking and smashing, accompanied with the infiltration of silica, so often seen in the smaller beds of quartzite at this horizon in other places; otherwise the character is as given above for the lower quartzites. I have never seen any casts of Scolithus borings in these quartzites. The great quartzite at Balcony Falls disappears almost entirely in the northern portion of the belt, its place being taken by minor beds of quartzite, and by shales and flags. The subdivision of the Primordial beds now being described forms the lower portion of the Primal older slates of the brothers Rogers.

(3) *Red Shales and Flags.*—This also is quite a variable group, and it changes its character very materially as we go south. In the northern portion of the belt, as far as Mount Torrey, the greater portion of this group is composed of a fine-grained, very thinly laminated, and tender slate. When fresh this rock has a steel gray color and pearly or nacreous luster, but on weathering many portions become deep blood red in color. Some of the lower and upper portions become yellow, but red is the predominant color from weathering. Some bands have small pebbles of the size of bird shot graduating into sand. Some of the red and yellow colors may be original and not due to weathering. This can not be decided, as all the exposures seen were much weathered. This member, in its northern exposures, is often affected by faults that cause it to extend over greater breadths than it could occupy in virtue of its thickness. Quartz veins occur in it, having the nature of fissure veins. Bands of this slate are impregnated with more or less specular iron, and this is the highest member of the Primordial that shows iron in the specular form. Some greenish, much indurated quartzite occurs in this member. This group to the south becomes more siliceous and the amount of red coloring matter diminished.

At Big Mary Creek the slaty character is nearly lost and the amount of red matter is much less. The strata are now chiefly rather siliceous gray flags, and this character is maintained to Balcony Falls; there the rocks at this horizon are nearly all

flaggy and gray in color; some reddish and brownish beds, however, are found. This change to a more siliceous nature is accompanied by a great increase in the accompanying quartzites. These strata everywhere, owing to their comparatively greater capacity for yielding to strains, have suffered much from contortions and minor faults.

(4) *Upper Gray Shales and Flags.*—This group, as the name implies, is somewhat like No. 2, but in it the conglomerates and specular ledges are wanting and the amount of quartzite is usually much less. Owing to the brittleness of the material of the beds and the ease with which many of them yield to crushing, portions of the strata are often found crushed to loose fragments. In the fractured and crushed portions important deposits of limonite are sometimes found that are evidently produced by the concentrating action of percolating waters. The reddish and brownish rocks found in No. 2 are also wanting here. The predominant rocks are shales and flags, usually all highly argillaceous, and when fresh of a gray or greenish gray color, but on weathering apt to assume a grayish white color. Towards the top quartzite ledges are interstratified with these and cause a gradual passage into the Potsdam quartzite. In some places the amount of quartzite here is very large and should properly be counted as a portion of the Potsdam member of the Primordial. Perhaps the predominant rock is a gray shale that resembles a hardened mudstone and which graduates into a sandy shale. This rock often decays to a pure white clay, and no doubt furnishes the material for the pure potter's clay sometimes found immediately west of the Blue Ridge. These strata for the sake of distinction may be called kaolin shales or flags.

(5) *Potsdam Quartzite.*—The members of the Primordial below this, so far as observed by us, show no indications of the former existence of life. This portion of the formation, however, shows in some beds numerous casts of Scolithus borings, some of which are remarkably long, being visible for at least 3 feet. The brothers Rogers considered this member as identical with the Potsdam sandstone of New York. This portion of the Primordial is more constant in lithological character than the subdivisions that underlie it. Quartzite is always the predominant rock in it, the remaining portions being mostly composed of the kaolin shales and flags. To the south, and especially in the interval from Mount Torrey to Buena Vista furnace, the quartzite is very massive and siliceous, composing nearly all of the rock at this horizon. The material is more properly called a quartzite than a sandstone. The upper and lower portions are often flaggy, and cause a passage into the underlying and overlying shales and flags. So far as observed, these quartzites are never conglomeratic, and they are free from the infiltrations of silica, the diffused chlorite, and other characters that mark the lower quartzites. Near the junction of this member with No. 4, the strata are often crushed, the crushed band holding important deposits of a dark limonite. The Quartzite members of this subdivision are sometimes broken up and crushed, forming a curious band of breccia, cemented by iron or manganese. Sometimes workable deposits of limonite are found in these disturbed portions.

(6) *Ferriferous shales.*—It might be a question whether these shales ought not rather to be counted with the Calciferous group. It is certain that there seems to be a gradual passage from the shales into the pure Magnesian and Siliceous limestones, that correspond to the Calciferous sandstones of New York. No fossils are found to settle the matter, and it seems best to draw the dividing line at the first marked change in the lithological character of the strata. This change occurs with the lowest limestone beds, that usually occur interstratified with reddish and yellowish shales.

The Ferriferous shale group is noteworthy for containing throughout it deposits of limonite which are often suited for the manufacture of a neutral iron. These deposits seem to be of concretionary origin, formed by the decay of the shales which contain the iron in a diffused form, probably, for the most part, as a carbonate, but sometimes as pyrite. These ores are consequently usually imbedded in clay. They

assume the form of lenticular masses, usually built up of concretionary forms. These ores are unlike those found in and under the Potsdam sandstone, and not rarely are mingled with oxide of manganese or associated with it, forming ferro-manganese. In the same shales, occurring under conditions similar to the iron and formed in like manner, we find, not rarely, deposits of quite pure manganese oxide. This is always in the form of Psilomelane or hard manganese.

The lowest of the strata of this group have the character of kaolin shales and flags. They graduate insensibly into the Potsdam quartzite member. In ascending they become purely argillaceous shales, generally of lead, or bluish gray color, when fresh. With these, moreover, occur strata yellowish-reddish in color, the red often assuming a pinkish shade. Towards the top, ledges of pretty firm pure purplish shales and flags are found that are sometimes of the nature of fine-grained sandstone. The shales towards the top are often calcareous, and graduate into the impure limestone with which the Calciferous group may be assumed to begin.

We thus have in the Primordial formation, in the belt now being described, at least three horizons of iron ore. The lower strata contain specular iron ore usually of low grade, the middle portions, extending as far as the Potsdam quartzite, containing limonites, either impregnating definite strata, or filling what were once fissured and crushed bands. Hence all of these usually appear in massive or rocky outcrops. Finally, in the Ferriferous shales, we have interrupted deposits of limonite, inclosed in clay and often mixed with manganese. (No. 12885, U. S. G. S. Library.)[1]

The Balcony Falls section has also been studied by J. L. and H. D. Campbell with a slightly varying result. As measured by Prof. J. L. Campbell the section is as follows:

	Feet.
1. Conglomerates	50
2. Sandstones	350
3. Slates	600
4. Sandstones (thickness not given).	
5. Slates	180
6. Scolithus sandstone	340
7. Shales	600
Total	2,120

A comparison of this with the sections measured by Prof. Fontaine, in 1879, shows essentially the same succession of strata, although differing materially in the thickness of the various divisions based on the character of the rocks. Subsequently, Prof. Campbell added to the preexistent information of the section at Balcony Falls, by showing that the primal series is present upon the southeastern slope of the Blue Ridge, a short distance north of the James river. This was followed by a paper on the Snowdon slate quarries, by himself and his son, in which it is said that the sandstones are penetrated with Scolithus and dip beneath the Snowdon roofing-slate quarries.[2] An accompanying ideal section, crossing the Blue Ridge 3 miles north of James River Gap, represents the Primal series at the summit dipping to the westward and on the eastern slope dipping at a high angle to the eastward and resting unconformably upon the Archean gneiss.[3]

[1] Op. cit., p. 43.
[2] The Snowdon slate quarries. The Virginias, vol. 5, 1884, pp. 162, 163.
[3] Op. cit., p. 170.

Prof. J. L. Campbell concludes, from the structure, that this portion of the Blue Ridge has been formerly spanned by a grand arch or series of arches of Cambrian strata, upturned, perhaps, at the time of their upheaval.[1]

In 1885 Mr. H. D. Campbell published a more detailed section of the Blue Ridge at Balcony Falls, to illustrate the view that the Blue Ridge at this point is a portion of an anticlinal fold, over which the Cambrian strata formerly extended from the west to the east, forming a synclinal basin on the western side of the Blue Ridge. He described the Cambrian section at Balcony Falls as follows:

	Feet.
1. Conglomerate	120
2. Sandstone	360
3. Slates	500
4. Hard sandstone	150
5. Slates	700
6. Sandstone	90
7. Slates	120
8. Scolithus sandstone	350
Total	2,390

He further states that, away from the river some distance, there is about 600 feet more of sandstone and friable slate before reaching the limit of the Potsdam formation.[2] This gives a greater thickness to the Cambrian section of Balcony Falls than that measured by either Prof. J. L. Campbell or Prof. Fontaine.

The next complete description of the Cambrian in the southwestern portion of the State is that of Prof. J. J. Stevenson, in his account of a reconnaisance of Bland, Gyles, Wythe, and portions of Pulaski and Montgomery Counties. On the map accompanying the paper, the geographic distribution of the Cambrian rocks is shown for Montgomery, Pulaski, and Wythe Counties. He includes in the Cambrian the lower Knox shales and the Potsdam, stating that the former are probably equivalent to the hydromica schists of Pennsylvania and the lower part of the Calciferous of New York; the latter is the Potsdam of New York vastly increased in thickness.[3] The Knox shales are described as bein[g] reddish, sometimes streaked with white color, usually more or le[ss] greasy, often talcose-looking on the slipped surfaces. The shales a[re] hard enough to form bluffs. The thickness could not well be asce[r]tained, but it can not be less than 600 feet.

The Potsdam forms the great mass of Lick Mountain, is the sandstone of Drap[er] Mountain, and is found along the southern border of Wythe, Pulaski and Montgo[m]ery Counties. The upper beds are alternations of sandstones and shales.

[1] Geology of the Blue Ridge near Balcony Falls, Virginia; a modified view. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d s[er]., 1884, vol. 28, p. 223.

[2] The Potsdam group, east of the Blue Ridge, at Balcony Falls, Virginia. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d s[er]., vol. 29, 1885, p. 472.

[3] A geological reconnaissance of Bland, Giles, Wythe, and portions of Pulaski and Montgo[m]ery Counties of Virginia. Am. Phil. Soc. Proc., vol. 24, 1887, pp. 86, 87.

The base of the series was not observed by Prof. Stevenson, but he thinks that the sandstone of Draper Mountain is not less than 2,000 feet in thickness. The only fossils observed were *Scolithus linearis*, on Lick Mountain.

In Dutchess County, New York, on the north, and in Tennessee on the South, the lower portions of the limestones are of Cambrian age. Whether the same is true of the arenaceous limestones above the Cambrian shales is one of the problems to be studied in Virginia.

NORTH CAROLINA.

The Cambrian rocks in North Carolina are the extension across the border from Tennessee of the Chilhowee series with, perhaps, some of the Knox shales. The best section is that along the line of the French Broad from Paint Rock on the State line eastward up the river to the vicinity of Warm Springs. The Paint Rock sandstone apparently is the representative of the Chilhowee sandstone, and the shales the Knox shales, or Upper Cambrian. The relation of the other portions of the section on the French Broad to these formations is, as yet, undetermined.

TENNESSEE.

Ocoee conglomerate.—The descriptive details of the Cambrian rocks of Tennessee are almost entirely derived from the work of Prof. J. M. Safford as published in the "Geology of Tennessee" in 1869. A large amount of additional data has been obtained by the geologists of the U. S. Geological Survey. At my request Mr. Bailey Willis, chief of Appalachian Division of Geology, prepared the following notes upon the geologic position of Prof. Safford's Ocoee formation:

The Appalachian Paleozoic area is bordered on the eastern side by a belt of clastics of very great thickness, which forms conspicuous ridges between the Archean granites and the calcareous Paleozoic strata. The slates, sandstones, and conglomerates of this belt, characterized by lithologic similarities among themselves and distinguished by marked lithologic contrasts from other rocks, fall into a natural group. Semimetamorphic, they occupy mineralogically a position between the crystallines and the unaltered sediments. Resting in many localities directly on the Archean and containing fragmental granitic minerals, their apparent stratigraphic position is also intermediate between the Archean and the unaltered sediments. For these reasons, and in the absence of fossils, they have been placed by all the older geologists at the base of the stratigraphic column. Structural facts sometimes fall in with this stratigraphic arrangement, and where they do not faults have been assumed to account for the superposition of the supposed older on younger strata.

In Tennessee the type localities of these clastics are Chilhowee Mountain and the Ocoee gorge, and quartzites of the Chilhowee type, but not in Chilhowee Mountain, have been correctly placed above slates of the Ocoee type by Safford. Your own discovery of fossils in the upper shales of Chilhowee Mountain appears to determine the age of all these sediments as Lower Cambrian or pre-Cambrian. But there is an assumption which must be sustained, or the conclusion fails in its broad application. That is, that the natural grouping of these strata by physical characters into a single series proves them to be of one period; this may be the result of similar conditions which existed at different periods, and the natural group may include strata of widely

separated horizons. The latter is the fact. The Chilhowee formation in Chilhowee Mountain has been proved by fossils to be Lower Cambrian, but it is a synclinal mass isolated by faults, and the definite determination does not apply beyond its limits. It is not connected with the Ocoee area, and the Ocoee rocks in the type locality are so separated from strata of known age, that nothing definite can now be asserted as to their correlations. Starrs Mountain, a "Chilhowee" outlier 24 miles southwest of Chilhowee Mountain, contains a fossiliferous limestone apparently conformably underlying the quartzite; if further study confirms this apparent relation, the quartzite is near or above the top of the Lower Silurian. Meadow Creek Mountain and the Big Butt range, extending from 25 to 70 miles east by north from Chilhowee Mountain and assigned by Safford to the Chilhowee and Ocoee formations, are determined on stratigraphic and structural evidence to belong to the Nashville period, the last of the Lower Silurian deposits. "Ocoee" strata of Safford, occurring southeast of Chilhowee Mountain about Cades, Tuckaleechee, and Weirs Coves, are known to belong to the Nashville on evidence of strict structural conformity to the Knox dolomite over three extensive quaquaversals and through transition beds from the dolomite to the slates. The Nashville "Ocoee" strata in this locality and in the Big Butt exceed 12,000 in thickness and form some of the highest ranges along the North Carolina boundary.

If, as these facts prove, the great natural group of clastics along the eastern Paleozoic border is the result of conditions repeated in different periods, we should seek an explanation for recurrence of like conditions, and this is found in the relative extent of subsidence in the Cambrian and Silurian times.

The Cambrian sea transgressed over the granitic continent under such conditions that the constituent minerals entered into shore deposits, without complete decomposition; these conditions probably existed in the deep disintegration of the granite, as suggested by Pumpelly. The subsidence ceased during Knox time and the deposition of the Knox was followed by uplift which exposed the dolomite to the waves of the Nashville sea. The evidence of this and of subsequent subsidence is found in conglomerates of Knox dolomite at the base of and interstratified with the strata of the Nashville-Ocoee in many localities. The beds associated with these conglomerates are arenaceous shales and sandstones, but higher in the Nashville series conformably stratified with these, and extending to basal conglomerates resting on the Archean, are deposits containing granitic fragments like those of the Cambrian-Ocoee. The stratigraphic and geographic relations leave no doubt that the Nashville was a period of great transgressions beyond the limits of any previous subsidence, and the deposits derived from the granites in the later time were identical with those earlier accumulated from the same source.

The semi-metamorphic character of both Cambrian and Nashville-Ocoee strata demands explanation which may possibly be found in their original composition and in their common relations to thrust and resistence during Appalachian formation. Both series of rocks are thin bedded piles, both rest against the unyielding Archean masses. Whatever pressure they received they were forced to conform to and they appear to have suffered changes of form, which were both mechanical and chemical and which were induced by dynamic conditions.

The generalizations herewith submitted are derived from the detailed work of Messrs. Arthur Keith and C. Willard Hayes as well as from my own studies and the conclusions as to the age of formations have been reached through mutual cooperation.

Chilhowee sandstone.—The lithologic character of the Chilhowee sandstone is given as follows by Prof. Safford:

It is a great group of heavy-bedded sandstones, often dark, but generally weathering to a grayish white, and containing great beds of whitish quartzose sandstone, or quartzite. Interstratified with the heavy-bedded rocks are, at some points, sandy shales, and thin flags, often containing scales of mica. Some of the sandstones are coarse

and approach fine conglomerate. It may be mentioned, too, that not unfrequently the strata have green grains (glauconite) disseminated through them.

The sandstones of this group very often show the worm-holes, and the sandy rods within them, belonging to Hall's species *Scolithus linearis*. It is the exception not to meet with them. In addition to these, the surfaces of the strata sometimes show impressions of fucoids. No other fossils, that I know of, have been found in this horizon of Tennessee.

This formation is by no means as thick as the Ocoee series; yet it has volume enough to form conspicuous mountain ridges. It is not easy to determine its thickness; its maximum is not less, however, than 2,000 feet, and it may be considerably more.[1]

This general description is followed by the detailed description of a number of sections. The lithologic features of this formation are much the same in all of its presentations, from Virginia to Georgia.[2]

Knox sandstone and shale.—In the table of geological formations the Knox group is next in order above the Chilhowee sandstone, and its basal member is formed by the Knox sandstone.[3] The principal rocks of the Knox sandstone are hard shales and thin sandstones, heavier sandstones being interstratified with these. The heavier sandstones are fine or coarse grained, sometimes quartzose. They occasionally abound in green grains. In the section of Webb's Ridge, near Knoxville, the hard, dark, gray sandstone referred to occurs six times in beds from three to ten feet thick, and weathers into a buff, softer material. In general, the included layers vary much in appearance. As before stated, beds of dolomite are met with in the division.[4]

The thickness of these rocks can not be much less than 800 or 1,000 feet. In Webb's Ridge, where they are in less force than at many other points, the thickness is 540 feet.

The strata are often ripple-marked, and sometimes covered with fucoidal impressions and ridges. Aside from fucoids, I have not met with any fossils in these rocks.

* * *

It may be mentioned as a prominent feature of this division and of the Knox shale overlying it that they present shales and sandstones of many different colors. The rocks are pale green, brown, and red, chestnut-colored, buff, gray, and other colors. Brownish red, greenish, and buff are, perhaps, the prevailing tints. The colors are often bright, and notably agreeable.

In reading the description of the Knox sandstone by Prof. Safford, I have failed to find any general or detailed section or description that connects the Chilhowee sandstone and the Knox sandstone. Apparently there is not any section known in which the two are seen in stratigraphic relation to each other. From the character of the section and the sedimentation, it may be that the Knox sandstone is the representative of a portion of the Chilhowee series, the former being the off-shore deposit, while the Chilhowee sandstone accumulated near the shore.

The Knox shale is largely a variegated shale, with interstratified beds of thin layers of blue limestone, which is often oolitic.

---

[1] Geology of Tennessee, pp. 198, 199.
[2] Op. cit., 1869, p. 203.
[3] Op cit., p. 158.
[4] Op. cit., p. 209.

The calcareous bands in the lower part of the division are not numerous; toward the top, they generally become more abundant, increasing as we ascend, until finally the shales disappear, and the blue oolitic lime stone, and dolomites are the only rocks. In this way the shale division runs into the uppermost one.

In the northeastern part of the State the shales, as a division, are not well characterized. As already stated they are much mixed with beds of limestone and dolomites, and lose, in good part, their distinctive features. Moreover, in this region there is little oolite rock. A portion of the shale appears to be replaced by a blue limestone containing thin clayey seams, which give the surface, especially when weathered, a striped appearance. This striped rock occurs, too, further south, its place being at the top of the shale.

The thickness of the Knox shale is not easily determined. What is said in reference to the thickness of the strata in Poor Valley * * * applies generally. We may place it as an approximation at 1,500 or 2,000 feet.[1]

Prof. Safford states that fossils occur in a blue limestone intercalated with shales, sometimes quite abundantly, both in the compact and oolitic layers. Toward the top of the division and in the blue rocks of the succeeding division they are seen at many points. The shales themselves are occasionally fossiliferous. It was his intention to describe the species in the appendix of the volume, but we find only a list of names, as follows:[2]

Crepicephalus similis, Safford.
roanensis, Safford.
tennesseensis, Safford.
Lonchocephalus fecundus, Safford.
Agnostus arcanus, Safford.
Lingula prima?, Conrad.

A large collection has been made within the last few years at the localities from which he obtained his specimens, and from many others in Tennessee, that indicate this fauna to be a portion of the Upper Cambrian or Potsdam fauna. The same fauna extends up into the base of the limestone for a short distance. The entire dolomitic series is referred to the Knox group by Prof. Safford, but I think that the line of demarcation must be drawn near the base of the dolomite.

As a whole, the Cambrian group in Tennessee is represented by a great series of sandstones at the base, succeeded by a series of shales that become more and more calcareous toward the top, where they pass into the dolomitic series, forming the base of the Silurian (Ordovician) system. During the progress of the resurvey of eastern Tennessee by the geologists of the U. S. Geological Survey Dr. Cooper Curtice found a few fossils in the shales interbedded in the quartzite of Chilhowee Mountain, and in 1889 I found a few specimens in the shale about 20 feet above the quartzite in the upper shale bed. The study of the fossils collected by Dr. Curtice and myself proves that the Olenellus or Lower Cambrian fauna occurs in the shales of the quartzite series of Chilhowee Mountain. This fauna, with that found in the upper portion of the Knox shales and the base of the dolomite, gives two distinct

[1] Op. cit., p. 211. [2] Op. cit., p. 212.

horizons in the Cambrian of Tennessee—the Lower Cambrian and the Upper Cambrian. Between the two there is an unknown thickness of shale, in which fossils have been found sparingly, but not in sufficient numbers to determine the presence of the Middle Cambrian fauna. If the definition that the base of the Cambrian is to be drawn at the lowest horizon in which the Olenellus fauna is found is applied in Tennessee, the Chilhowee sandstone will be referred to the Cambrian.

GEORGIA.

The published information relative to the Cambrian rocks of Georgia is largely contained in the work of Mr. George Little. It is summed up in the compilation prepared for the Department of Agriculture, under the direction of Mr. Henderson, as follows:

Acadian.—Along the western escarpment of the Cohuttas exist beds of semimetamorphic slates, and conglomerates, apparently of very great thickness. To this formation, in Tennessee, has been given the name of Ocoee group, from the Ocoee River, along which, near the line of Tennessee and Georgia, the rocks appear to have their greatest development, or at least are most prominently displayed.

The group as yet is not known to contain fossils, but has been referred on the ground of its supposed stratigraphic relations to the Acadian epoch. A sandstone of several hundred feet in thickness is conspicuously displayed in steep ridges or mountains skirting the western base of the Cohutta, Pine Log and Allatoona Mountains. This is the Chilhowee sandstone of Tennessee, and is believed to be the equivalent of the Potsdam sandstones. In Tennessee, *Scolithus* impressions—worm holes filled with sandy rods, somewhat softer than the body of the rock—are mentioned as a common characteristic of the sandstone by Prof. Safford, and indicate a probable identity in age with the Potsdam sandstone of New York. These markings have not yet, so far as known, been observed in this State, but the sandstones are often filled with small rounded concretions, that disappear from the weathered surface, and give much the appearance presented by a cross-section of the Scolithus rods in sandstone.

This is succeeded by hard glauconitic shales and glauconitic sandstones, associated with siliceous limestones, found in a broad belt of country along the Coosa River, and give rise here to what is known as the Flatwoods. Some portion of the same group is found in a belt of country in the eastern portions of Gordon and Bartow and the southern part of Murray, and also come to the surface again for a few miles in sterile ridges on the western side of Whitfield County, between Dick's Ridge and Chattoogata Mountain. Trilobites are found in some of the shales and limestones, and are abundant in the Flatwoods, near Livingston, in Floyd County.

A prominent mineral characteristic is the common appearance of green sand or glauconite in the shales and sandstones, and sometimes in the limestones. This green sand may be found, on close examination, in most of the shales and sandstones, and is sufficiently abundant in some to give them a decided green color. * * *

Knox shale.—Shales and limestone of an estimated thickness of 3,500 feet. The shales are more or less calcareous, and are generally of a light green shade of color, below the water surface, but weather into a great variety of shades from buff to red, blue, green, brown and black, but is most generally some shade of brown. These shales exist in all the counties in northwest Georgia except Dade, and are found in a number of long valleys, varying from half a mile to 1 or 2 miles in width, constituting a large part of the area of cultivated lands in this section of the State. Among these are the Oothkalooga Valley of Bartow and Gordon, the Cooehulle and Dogwood Valleys of Whitfield, and the Chattooga Valley of Walker and Chattooga.[1]

[1] Henderson, J. T.: Geology (of Georgia). The Commonwealth of Georgia; the country, the people, the productions. Atlanta, 1885, pp. 83, 84.

As noticed in the historical review, Mr. McCutchen's estimates of the thickness of the formations referred to the Primordial is 8,000 feet, and to the Knox shale series 2,400 feet, making a total thickness of 10,400 feet. The estimates of the author we have just quoted assign to the Knox shale a thickness of 3,500 feet, which will give a still greater thickness for the total Cambrian section. I think, however, that all such estimates must be carefully revised, as the rocks of the Knox shale series are very much disturbed by plications and faulting.

An unpublished section, by C. Willard Hayes, of the Appalachian Division of the U. S. Geological Survey, extending from Rome, Georgia, to Gadsden, Alabama, gives the following series, extending from the top downward:

			Feet.
Silurian.		Knox dolomite	4,000–5,000.
Cambrian.	Connasauga shale.	Thin bedded seamy limestone, sometimes blue and massive.	
		Yellow shales, calcareous, grading into seamy limestone.	
		Earthy limestone interbedded with shales, often wanting; locally carries nodules of chert.	
		Yellow shales.	
		Oolitic limestone; thin beds in light green or yellow shales.	
		Variegated sandy shales, purple, green, brown, etc	1,600–2,000
	Rome Sandstone and Weisner Quartzite.	Thin beds of highly colored sandstone; red, purple, and green; show ripple marks and sun cracks. Beds 1 to 12 inches thick with interbedded shales. Maximum thickness shown between Rome, Georgia, and Big Cedar Creek	1,300–1,800
		Green shales, with thin, hard, siliceous beds, ¼ to 2 inches thick, or layers of flat nodules. Maximum thickness at Georgia-Alabama line	700–1,500
	Coosa shales.	Fine yellow or brown shales, containing some beds of blue limestone	1,000±
		Heavy beds blue, seamy limestone	600±
		Yellow or green clay shales, with thin beds of blue limestone contorted and filled with calcite veins. Sometimes the shales contain siliceous nodules. Always highly contorted. Cover a large area between Rome and Gadsden, and form the "Flatwoods" of Coosa Valley. Thickness not known; probably not less than	3,500

In a recent paper on the valley rocks of northwestern Georgia, Mr. Hayes assigns a thickness of 1,600 to 2,000 feet to the Connasauga (=Montevallo of Smith) shales; 2,000 to 3,500 feet to the Rome sandstone and Weisner quartzite, and 3,000 feet plus to the Coosa shales.[1]

In a section at Mount Weisner, Alabama, Mr. Hayes found a quartzite that he considers to correspond to the Rome sandstone. It has a thickness of about 800 feet, and is in the form of lenticular masses of white quartzite; sandstone and conglomerate occur at the base and

[1] The Overthrust faults of the southern Appalachians. Bull. Geol. Soc. America, vol. 2, Feb., 1891, p. 143, pl. 8.

replace a portion of the Rome sandstone. In Indian Mountain it is much thicker than in Mount Weisner, and consists of several beds of quartzite, with intervening masses of yellow sandy shales.

The fossils collected from the Coosa shales by Dr. Cooper Curtice indicate, as studied by me, the Middle Cambrian fauna of the northern Appalachian section. The Connasauga shale is correlated by its stratigraphic position with the Knox or Upper Cambrian shales of the Tennessee section. In Mr. Hayes' table the Rome sandstone and Weisner quartzite are placed on the same horizon with the Knox sandstone, Potsdam or Chilhowee of Smith and Safford. That the correlation by Messrs. Smith and Safford of the Weisner quartzite with the Chilhowee is probably incorrect is supported by the fact that the fauna of the Coosa shales belongs above the Chilhowee sandstone in sections where the succession is undisturbed. The Chilhowee sandstone fauna is the type of the Lower Cambrian, and the Coosa shale fauna is that of the Middle Cambrian.

When the maps of the Paleozoic region of Georgia and Alabama are published geologists will have the data for the geographic distribution of the Cambrian rocks, and also sections showing the relative position, thickness, and the variations in the character of sedimentation from the south to the north as the formations pass to the north into Tennessee.

ALABAMA.

Our knowledge of the Cambrian rocks of Alabama is largely obtained from the Report of Progress for 1875. The nomenclature adopted for the fossiliferous sedimentary rocks up to the base of the Knox dolomite, by Prof. Safford, in Tennessee, is followed by Prof. E. A. Smith in this report. To the Primordial or Cambrian series he assigns the Acadian epoch, or the conglomerates and slates corresponding to the typical Ocoee section in Tennessee. To the Potsdam epoch he confines the Chilhowee sandstone of the Tennessee section. The Knox sandstone and Knox shales are referred to the Canadian period. The term "Calciferous sandstone" is used as the equivalent of Knox sandstone, and "Quebec shales" of the Knox shales. The section of the Acadian slates and conglomerates in Talladega County is considered by Prof. Smith typical of this series in Alabama.[1] The description is as follows:

> The western border of the Metamorphic rocks in Alabama is formed by a belt of slates and conglomerates, semi-metamorphic in aspect, and of varying width, but perhaps of an average width of six miles. These rocks, which in every respect seem to be the exact equivalents of Prof. Safford's Ocoee Slates and Conglomerates, are referred like them to the Acadian epoch.[2]

The stratigraphic succession of the beds is not well determined. There is a belt of greenish talcoid, or hydro-mica slate, and a series of conglomerates which are sometimes a slaty, arenaceous rock, but often

[1] Report of Progress of the Geological Survey of Alabama for 1875. Montgomery, 1876, pp. 13–17.
[2] Op. cit., p. 127.

quite massive, and made up of lumps of pebbles of opalescent quartz and opaque white feldspar, held in a matrix of greenish talcoid matter.

Of the second division, or the Potsdam, it is said:

Next in ascending order, to the slates and conglomerates of the preceding group, comes a series of sandstones which form the most conspicuous mountains outside the Metamorphic and Acadian areas. The direct superposition of this sandstone upon the slates of the Acadian age, I have not seen in Alabama, unless on the eastern edge of that belt, the prominent sandstone or quartzite ridge be, as seems quite probable, metamorphosed Potsdam sandstone. In the disturbed region of the Kahatchee Hills, also, half metamorphosed slates are seen, some of which may belong to the Acadian epoch, whilst others are evidently altered Knox shales.

Fine-grained conglomerates, heavy-bedded sandstones, and sandy shales make up the great mass of the rocks of this formation. I have noticed, also, occasionally, masses of a brownish porous chert, which, from its association with the sandstones, seems to be of the same age.

In general, the rocks of this formation are heavy bedded, almost massive, and the higher crests of the Potsdam Mountains are usually covered with huge blocks of sandstone and fine-grained conglomerate. In the lower parts of these ranges, sandy shales are the prevailing rocks. * * * The most characteristic markings of the rocks of this formation are the sandy rods, caused by the filling in with sand of the burrows of a marine worm, *Scolithus linearis*. Upon the bedding planes of the sandstones, small rounded depressions or dots mark the cross-sections of these Scolithus burrows. As yet I have found no other marks of organic origin in strata of this horizon. * * *

The nature of the rocks of this group, conglomerates, sandstones, and sandy shales, the fossil markings, principally the burrows of marine worms, etc., all point to a seashore origin.[1]

From the preceding descriptions, the equivalency of the Chilhowee sandstone and quartzite with that of Alabama is extremely probable, if not certain.

Of the succeeding formation, the Knox sandstone, the following description is given:

The rocks of this group succeed next, in ascending order, the Potsdam sandstone, and they are often, no doubt, found resting directly upon that rock. I have not, however, often seen them in this position; but much oftener just on the southeast side of a fault by which they have been raised to the level of a much higher formation. This sandstone is more generally associated with the shales of the next higher group, and these with dolomite, so that three groups are usually closely associated *geographically* as well as *lithologically*.

A calcareous sandstone, sometimes thick, sometimes thin bedded, is the characteristic Knox sandstone.

It is associated with hard calcareous shales much like the shales of the next higher division. The bedding planes of the sandstone commonly show ripple marks and irregular raised markings, which are commonly supposed to be fucoidal impressions. The bedding planes are also frequently smooth and shining as if polished. Green grains of glauconitic mineral are usually to be seen upon a fresh fracture of the sandstone; upon weathered surfaces the brown color of hydrated ferric oxide is often the result of the decomposition of this mineral. The colors of the Knox sandstone are pleasing to the eye, and are gray, greenish brown, buff, chestnut colored, etc. Beds of dolomite, impure and cherty, are found in the upper part of this formation; two such calcareous beds were noticed in the exposure of Knox sandstone at the Jackson shoals and also at Helena. * * *

[1] Op. cit., p. 13–15.

It [Knox sandstone] would naturally be looked for overlying directly the Potsdam sandstone of the mountains enumerated in a previous section; but it is not always easy to distinguish it; since, however, these ridges of Potsdam sandstone have a well defined belt of Knox shales on their eastern and southeastern flanks, the Knox sandstone, probably in most cases, intervenes between the two.[1]

It will be noticed in the description given of the Knox sandstone that its direct superposition upon the massive "Potsdam" sandstone has not been observed. I think that as in Tennessee the Knox sandstone may be, in part, the equivalent of the sandstone referred to the Potsdam or the Chilhowee sandstone. It is probably the accumulation of sand and shale deposited while the sediments of the more massive sandstones were accumulating nearer the coast line.

The Knox shales rest conformably upon the Knox sandstone series and correspond in their description closely with the Knox shales of Tennessee. Of these beds Prof. Smith says:

The characteristic rocks of this subdivision of the Knox group are calcareous shales of bright and agreeable colors, usually gray, buff, greenish, brown, chestnut colored, and red. The shales are tolerably soft, and in some portions in weathering, break up into small angular pieces resembling shoe pegs. Strata of dark blue limestone, sometimes banded with argillaceous layers, are found, especially in the upper part of this division. The weathering of such limestones brings into relief the bands or stripes of argillaceous matter, and the limestone appears very distinctly banded. Where these impurities are not so regularly disposed in layers, but in patches, the prominence given to them by the weathering away of the limestone gives them a striking resemblance to half-exposed fossils.

In some places layers of dark colored oolitic limestone have been observed, one of the best localities of this peculiar rock being at the foot of the mountain at Alpine Station in Talladega County.

In the upper part of the division blue limestone layers become more frequent, and the transition into the overlying Dolomite is so gradual that a line between them lithologically is hard to draw.[2]

The only instance mentioned to indicate the relations of the so-called Potsdam sandstone to the Knox shales is in the following paragraph:

Between the Ladiga Mountain and the hills of Acadian slate in Calhoun County, there are numerous small ridges of Potsdam sandstone, on the flanks of which the Knox shales seem never to be wanting.[3]

No fossiliferous strata were observed in this division.

The distribution of the Cambrian rocks of Alabama is shown on a map accompanying Prof. E. A. Smith's outline of the geology, published in 1878. On this map the geographic distribution of both the Cambrian and Lower Ordovician rocks is delineated under one color called the Silurian. It includes all the formations from the Clinton down to the Acadian. Of these formations the Cambrian includes, at the summit, the Quebec or Knox shale and Knox dolomite, or at least the lower portion of it, and subjacent to this the Calciferous or Knox sandstone, beneath which the Potsdam and Acadian are placed, the latter forming the base of the Paleozoic series.[4]

---

[1] Op. cit., pp. 17, 18. [2] Op. cit., p. 19. [3] Op. cit., p. 20.
[4] Outline of the geology of Alabama. Berney's Handbook of Alabama, 1878, p. 139.

In a report on the geology of the Cahaba Coal Field Prof. Eugene A. Smith describes the Cambrian rocks as they occur in the Coosa Valley of northeastern Alabama. The maximum thickness given is 10,000 feet in the eastern part of the Coosa Valley. The subdivisions of the Cambrian recognized are, in ascending order, as follows: "The Coosa shales, the Choccolocco or Montevallo shales, and, interbedded with the last named, the Weisner quartzite."[1]

The Coosa shales are described as thin-bedded limestones with clay seams at the base, and pass above into the Montevallo shales, which form a considerable thickness of sandy shales of a great variety of colors, such as olive, green, brown, chocolate, yellowish, etc. In the upper part of the Montevallo shales beds of blue limestone and gray dolomite occur which are difficult to distinguish from similar rocks occurring in the superjacent dolomite series. Lenticular masses of quartzite many hundreds of feet in thickness occur in the Montevallo shales. This quartzite is named the Weisner quartzite from its typical locality at Weisner Mountain, east of Jacksonville, and is correlated with the Chilhowee formation of Prof. Safford in Tennessee.[2]

From our present knowledge of the formations referred to the Cambrian in Alabama it appears that they are the continuation of those referred to the same group in Georgia and Tennessee, though varying somewhat in the local details of sedimentation, thickness of beds, and lithologic characters.

The section of Mr. C. Willard Hayes, described under Georgia, embraces much of the Cambrian strata that passes into Alabama, and should be referred to in this connection. (Ante, p. 304.)

RÉSUMÉ.

For a distance of over 1,200 miles the pre-Cambrian lands formed the eastern boundary of this province during the deposition of the sediments of Cambrian time. From below Montreal to the foot of Lake Champlain and thence southward to the crossing of the Hudson, below Poughkeepsie, New York, and on across New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Virginia, Tennessee, and into Georgia and Alabama, the rocks of this pre-Cambrian land form an almost continuous outcrop at the present day. The Cambrian rocks extend 400 miles farther to the northeast from Quebec to the northern portion of the peninsula of Gaspé; but there is now an interval of over 200 miles between the Archean ridges of eastern Quebec and the long, narrow Archean axis of the Gaspé peninsula. The exposures of the Cambrian on the coast of Labrador, opposite the Straits of Belle Isle, and those of the west shore of Newfoundland, have been included in the Atlantic Coast Province, but they are quite as much a

[1] Geological structure and description of the valley region adjacent to the Cahaba Coal Field. Geol. Survey of Alabama. Report on the Cahaba Coal Field, pt. II, 1890, p. 148, (issued January, 1891).

[2] Op. cit., pp. 148, 149.

part of the Appalachian Province by fauna and physical character and are considered as a connecting link between the two provinces. The Labrador deposits are on the north shore of the Cambrian sea, but those of the west shore of Newfoundland are, in physical character and organic remains, the practical continuation of the sediments of the eastern side of the Appalachian Province. If this correlation be made, the pre-Cambrian shore line is carried 400 miles farther to the northeast and thence to the Straits of Belle Isle, giving a nearly direct line of over 2,000 miles that may be included in the Appalachian Province with its Canadian extension. Along such a great extent of coast line one expects to find evidences of varying sedimentation, both in character and amount; and an examination of the various geological sections of Newfoundland, the river St. Lawrence, Vermont, New York, and south along the Appalachian range to Alabama, shows the most marked variation, both on the strike of the strata and in proceeding westward from the ancient shore line.

On the Labrador coast the rocks are sandstones followed by more or less impure limestone. On the western shore of Newfoundland, over 1,000 feet of alternating limestones, shales, and quartzites rest conformably upon 600 feet or more of slates. For 375 miles along the south shore of the St. Lawrence, from Cape Rosier of Gaspé to the vicinity of Quebec, the strata referred to the Cambrian consist, according to Mr. James Richardson, of quartzite, with intercalated beds of conglomerate holding limestone pebbles, the whole forming a series 600 feet in thickness. This is superjacent to 700 feet of gray sandstone, also carrying conglomerate, while beneath this a limestone, with conglomerates and bedded sandstones towards the lower portion of the section, extends down some 700 feet more, giving over 2,000 feet as the entire thickness of the section. Owing to the absence of paleontologic data there is some uncertainty in referring all of this series to the Cambrian. In some of the pebbles in the conglomerates of the upper portion a number of species of the Olenellus fauna were found; but no one of the three great divisions of the Cambrian has been distinctly recognized.

In the vicinity of Quebec the stratigraphic succession from below upward consists of a succession of black, green, and gray shales, with hard and heavy bands of green, sometimes yellowish white, quartzose sandstones. This is succeeded by greenish, grayish, and blackish, with occasionally dark reddish or purplish tinted shales, with a band of hard grayish sandstone. Above the latter bright red shales, with thin greenish or grayish bands, which in places are often calcareous, extend up through red, greenish gray, and black shales with interstratified masses, often lenticular, of greenish and grayish Sillery sandstone. In the upper part of this last series *Obolella pretiosa* occurs. A thickness of from 5,000 to 6,000 feet is estimated for the Cambrian series, beneath the graptolitic shales of Point Levis.

It will be noted of this section that the limestones of western New-

foundland and the lower portion of the south shore of the St. Lawrence are absent, and that the section is composed almost entirely of arenaceous and argillaceous sediments. A limestone conglomerate, near the upper portion of the Sillery, contains bo wlders carrying the Olenellus fauna, and the Upper Cambrian fauna occurs in the basal conglomerates of the Point Levis, graptolitic,Lower Silurian (Ordovician) shales. These bowlders appear to have been derived from a limestone series similar to that now found in Labrador and Newfoundland.

The strata referred to the Cambrian, on the western side of the Sutton Mountain anticlinal or the belt extending southwesterly from Quebec to the Vermont boundary, consist of more or less of the Silkry series, as found in the vicinity of Quebec; and, according to Drs. Selwyn and Ells, of a subjacent series of hard quartzite rocks interstratified with mica schist and black slate. The volcanic series, referred to the Cambrian in this region, indicates that during earlier Cambrian time the volcanic products were deposited contemporaneously with the included sandstones and slates, thus giving a phase of sedimentation not known elsewhere in the Cambrian of the Appalachian province. For this reason and from the fact that there is not any paleontologic evidence of the age of this volcanic series I am inclined to think that it may belong to some pre-Cambrian terrane.

Entering the northern end of the valley, between the Green Mountains and the Adirondacks, a sudden change occurs in the sedimentation. At the base, the Olenellus fauna ranges through 1,000 feet of magnesian limestone, and for 250 feet higher up in arenaceo-argillaceous shales. More or less arenaceous matter is associated with the limestones, and, about 2,000 feet above, a great lenticular mass of limestone occurs in the argillaceous shales, in which a fauna of Upper Cambrian aspect is found. At other localities this fauna occurs in the shales themselves and in a brecciated limestone at the same relative horizon. As far as known the upper portion of the Cambrian is formed of the shales. Proceeding southward and nearer the old coast line in Addison County, Vermont, the limestone series is found to graduate into the Granular Quartzite or the beach sand. From this point this shore deposit is traced without interruption to the Massachusetts boundary; and then, with more or less interruption, to the Hudson River below Poughkeepsie, New York. It is taken up again in New Jersey, and thence may be followed, with some interruption, across Pennsylvania to Maryland, whence it extends as an almost continuous formation across Virginia into Eastern Tennessee, and thence, with some interruption, into Georgia andAlabama. On all this long line it forms the basal member of the Cambrian; and wherever fossils have been found in it they belong to the Olenellus or Lower Cambrian fauna.

The offshore, or deeper water deposits, are represented by finer-grained sandstones, shales, slates, and limestones. In southern Ver-

mont they form the roofing-slate belt that passes into New York, where the section comprises some 12,000 feet of shales, slates, and inter-

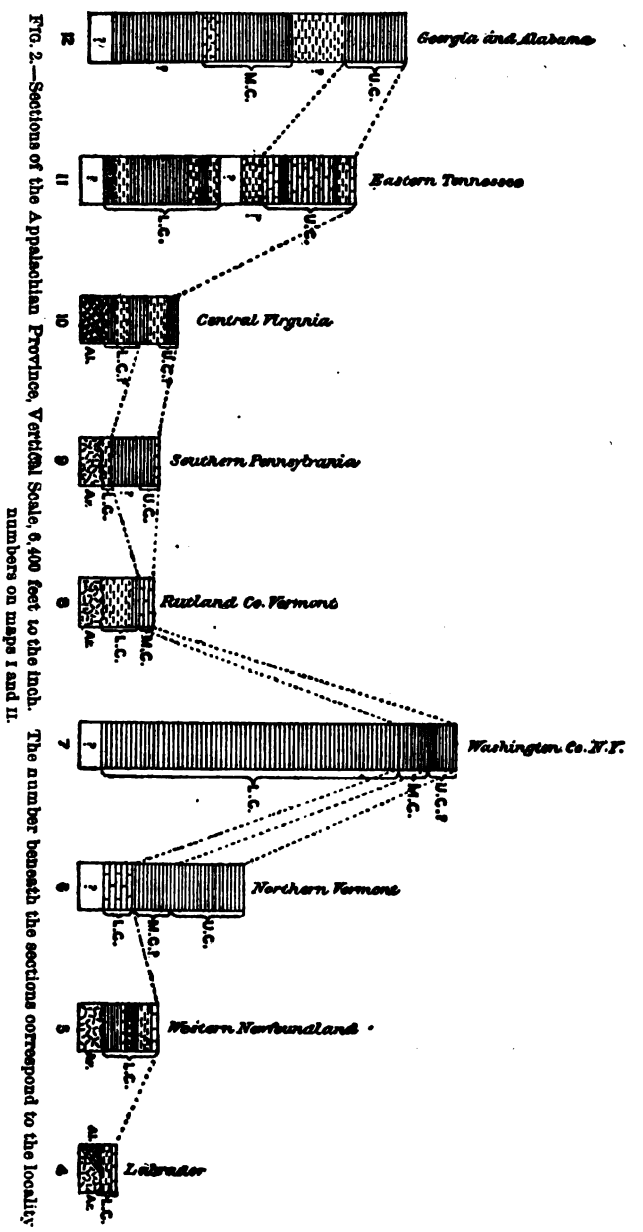


FIG. 2.—Sections of the Appalachian Province, Vertical Scale, 6,400 feet to the inch. The number beneath the sections correspond to the locality numbers on maps I and II.

bedded sandstones, with more or less calcareous matter, either as brecciated conglomerate or as thin-bedded, intercalated limestones. These extend, with some change in their character and regularity of exposure, to the Hudson River in Dutchess County. Near Stissingville, in this

county, the basal sandstone rests upon the pre-Cambrian and contains the Olenellus fauna. A few remains of the latter have also been found in the immediate superjacent limestone. The Middle Cambrian and Upper Cambrian faunas occur in bedded limestones As the quartzite exposed on the eastern side of the limestones of the "Marble Belt" represents but a very small portion of the great series of shales, slates, etc., of the Cambrian on the western side of the "Marble Belt," it is probable that the lower portion of the limestone is of Cambrian age, the same as in Dutchess County. This observation also applies to the basal limestone in New Jersey and Pennsylvania, where there is very little thickness of shales between the basal quartzites and the limestone.[1]

In central Virginia the lower 1,000 feet of the section is composed of an alternation of shales and sandstones, while the upper 1,400 feet is nearly all shales and slates, capped at the top by a rough siliceous limestone.

In Tennessee the quartzite is developed to a great thickness. The quartzite is of Lower Cambrian age, and the Knox series of shales are characterized in their upper portion by the Upper Cambrian fauna, which passes above into the base of the great limestone series. As far as known, the conditions in the sedimentation of the Alabama and Georgia sections are very much like those of Tennessee.

Briefly summarized, the sediments along the southern portion of the coast line are sandstones followed by shales and limestones. More or less variation occurs, but, as a whole, the change is gradual as we follow the coast line to the north. In central Virginia, 300 miles to the northeast, the argillaceous deposits are more abundant in the lower portion, and they form the greater part of the upper series to the base of the limestone.

From Virginia northward across Maryland, Pennsylvania, and New Jersey, and into New York, the argillaceous material accumulated in relatively small proportion to the arenaceous beneath and the calcareous above. How much of the latter is to be referred to the Cambrian, is yet undetermined. Our knowledge of the series in Pennsylvania and New Jersey is too limited to make an accurate comparison with other sections.

In western Massachusetts and Vermont and eastern New York there are immediate coast-line deposits and also those of deeper water. Along the coast line there was a great accumulation of sand, followed by some argillaceous and then calcareous mud. Farther to the west the argillaceous material predominates and the arenaceous and calcareous forms but a slight proportion of the great thickness of sediment. To the north these conditions remain until, in northern Vermont, the calcareous matter predominates in the lower portion of the

[1] The announcement was made at the December meeting of the Geological Society of America at Washington that the Olenellus fauna had been found in the quartzite in New Jersey, and Cambrian fossils in the limestones above the quartzite in New Jersey and at Rutland, Vermont.

section, and the upper portion is almost entirely argillaceous. In the vicinity of Quebec, sandstones and shales make up the section, and along the Lower St. Lawrence, shales, sandstones, and limestones.

As a whole, the Appalachian Province is one of varied sedimentation, and, from the character of the sediments and determined fossils now found in them, they were largely accumulated along a gradually sinking coast line. The northern and western shore line exhibits only the contact of the sandstones of the Upper Cambrian that overlap upon the pre-Cambrian rocks. Erosion has removed them to a large extent, and south of the Adirondacks the western coast line is unknown. (Fig. 2.)

ROCKY MOUNTAIN PROVINCE.

For the purpose of description the area of Cambrian rocks in the Rocky Mountain Province includes the Cambrian outcrops of northern and western Utah, Nevada, eastern Idaho, the Gallatin River district of Montana, and the Canadian extension.

UTAH AND NEVADA.

The Cambrian rocks of Utah and Nevada are considered together, owing to their having a common base in the presence of the Olenellus zone, the strata of which rests conformably upon a great series of siliceous and arenaceous shales and sandstones, and massive quartzites. In Nevada the section is much more complete and reaches a far greater development both in amount of sedimentation and the presence of organic remains. The section studied by Messrs. Hague and Walcott in the Eureka district may be considered typical of the Cambrian rocks of central Nevada. It embraces five formations, all of which are described by Mr. Arnold Hague in the abstract of his report on the Geology of the Eureka district.[1]

The Prospect Mountain quartzite that lies at the base of the series has a thickness of 1,500 feet on Prospect Peak. It is distinctly bedded and comformably subjacent to a band of arenaceous shale, in which the Olenellus fauna occurs. It is referred to the Cambrian by Mr. Hague, and I am now of the opinion that this should be done, although I have held the view that the Olenellus zone should be considered the base of the Cambrian, and the Prospect Mountain quartzite I tentatively referred to an Algonkian formation. The subjacent band of arenaceous shale is mentioned by Mr. Hague in his report of 1881,[2] but not in the more complete description of 1882. In the review of the Eureka section by Mr. C. D. Walcott in 1886 this formation is spoken of as follows:

> At the summit of 1 the quartzite becomes more thinly bedded and passes into an arenaceous shale which is more or less calcareous and, in its extension northward, is replaced by limestone. This belt of shale and limestone is from 100 to 200 feet in thickness and carries numerous fragments of fossils, among which we have determined

[1] U. S. Geol. Surv., 3d annual report, 1881-'82, 1883, pp. 254-259.

[2] Report (on work in Eureka District). U. S. Geol. Surv., 2d Ann. Rep., 1880-'81, p. 29, 1882.

six species, viz, *Kutorgina prospectensis, Scenella conula, Olenoides quadriceps, Olenellus gilberti, O. iddingsi, Anomocare parvum,* and *Ptychoparia* sp.?[1]

The second formation is the Prospect Mountain limestone. This is a massive limestone crystalline and granular in texture.

Interstratified in the limestone are irregular beds of shale, lenticular or wedge-shaped bodies, varying greatly in width. Indeed they form a characteristic feature in the limestone, which passes readily from massive to shaly beds. Two of the shale bands are quite prominent to the north, but are lost to the southward. The thickness of the beds may be taken at 3,050 feet.[2]

Formation No. 1, the arenaceous shale, between the quartzite and the limestone on Prospect Peak, is more or less a local formation, but it is apparently the zone of Olenellus, and the limestones above are not known to be characterized either by Olenellus or the typical forms of that fauna. Five hundred feet above the base of the Prospect Mountain limestone there occurs in a band of shale *Scenella conula, Agnostus interstrictus? Olenoides quadriceps, Ptychoparia prospectensis.* All but the last are closely related to species from the upper beds of the Georgia horizon, in either Vermont or Canada. One other species, *Stenotheca elongata,* which is found associated with *Olenellus thompsoni, Protypus senectus,* etc., at L'Anse au Loup, is found 2,000 feet higher up in the limestone. Another species, *Olenoides spinosus,* is found in association with species characteristic of a lower horizon than the typical Potsdam of Eureka, at Pioche, Nevada."[3]

Within a short distance of the summit of this limestone the fauna has the general facies of that of the upper Cambrian or Potsdam horizon; still as a whole it occupies the position of the middle Cambrian fauna as the faunas are now classified. That it sustains this view was pointed out by Dr. W. C. Brögger, in his admirable paper on the "Age of the Olenellus zone in North America."[4] He compares the fauna of the Prospect Mountain limestone with that of the Paradoxides zone of Europe and concludes that with the exception of the lowest part of the Olenellus zone it must correspond most nearly to the middle and upper part of the Paradoxides deposits of Scandinavia. His conclusions are based almost entirely upon the presence of the various species of the genus Agnostus. From the results of my studies since 1886, I am prepared to accept this view of Dr Brögger's and to consider the Prospect Mountain limestone as representing the Middle Cambrian or Paradoxides zone of the Atlantic Coast Province. A list of species published in 1886 is as follows:[5]

[1] Second contribution to the studies of the Cambrian faunas of North America. U. S. Geol. Survey, Bull. No. 30, 1886, pp. 30, 32.

[2] Hague, Arnold. Abstract of Report on Geology of the Eureka District, Nevada. U. S. Geol. Surv., 3d annual report, 1881-'82, 1883, p. 255.

[3] Second Contribution to the studies of the Cambrian faunas of North America. U. S. Geol. Survey, Bull. No. 30, 1886, p. 32.

[4] Om alderen af Olenellus zonen i Nordamerica. (On the age of the Olenellus zone in North America.) Aftryk ur Geol. Fören. i Stockh. Förhan, No. 101, Bd. 8, 1886, pp. 182-213.

[5] U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. No. 30, p. 32.

Obolella (like O. pretiosa).
Lingula manticula.
Kutorgina whitfieldi.
Orthis eurekensis.
Stenotheca elongata.
Agnostus communis.
bidens.
neon.
richmondensis.
Protypus senectus.
expansus.
Dicellocephalus ? nasutus.
Ptychoparia oweni.
haguei.
occidentalis.
dissimilis.
Olenoides spinosus.

Of the succeeding formation, or the Secret Cañon shale, Mr. Hague says:

The Prospect Mountain limestone passes, by gradual transition, from shaly limestone into brown and yellow argillaceous shales. * * * In their broadest development they measure 1,600 feet, although in places where they are encroached upon by the Hamburg limestone they occur considerably thinner.[1]

Only a few scattering fossils are found in the lower portion of the Secret Cañon shale, but near the summit of the fauna is large and characteristic. It includes, according to Mr. C. D. Walcott, the following:[2]

Protospongia fenestrata.
Lingulepis maera.
minuta.
Lingula ? manticula.
Iphidea depressa.
Acrotreta gemma.
Kutorgina minutissima.
Hyolithes primordialis.
Agnostus communis.
bidens.
neon.
seclusus.
Dicellocephalus ? nasutus.
Dicellocephalus richmondensis.
Ptychoparia pernasuta.
laticeps.
bella.
linnarssoni.
oweni.
haguei.
similis.
unisulcata.
læviceps.
Chariocephalus tumifrons.
Ogygia ? problematica.

Of the species in this list *Dikelocephalus ? nasutus*, and *D. richmondensis* do not belong to the genus Dikelocephalus and the form referred to *Ogygia ? problematica* represents an undefined genus. As a whole, as suggested by Dr. Brögger, this horizon may possibly be referred to the Paradoxides zone.

Number 4 of the section, or the Hamburg limestone, is a dark gray and granular limestone; surface, weathering rough and ragged; only slight traces of bedding. Very few traces of fossils were found in the entire 1,200 feet of rocks referred to this formation.

No. 5, or the Hamburg shale, resembles the Secret Cañon shale except that it is by no means as uniform in composition, showing very rapid changes in conditions of deposition and becoming more or less arenaceous and calcareous throughout its development as well as in its lateral extension. Throughout its entire thickness of 350 feet fossils are more

[1] Abstract of Report on Geology of the Eureka District, Nevada. U. S. Geol. Surv., 3d Annual Report, 1881–1882, 1883, p. 255.
[2] Ibid., p. 32.

or less abundant, but especially so near the summit where there were obtained the following:

Lingulepis mæra.
minuta.
Lingula? manticula.
Obolella discoidea.
Acrotreta gemma.
Kutorgina minutissima.
Agnostus communis.
bidens.
neon.
prolongus.
tumidosus.
tumifrons.
Dicellocephalus? nasutus.
Dicellocephalus angustifrons.
marica.
bilobus.
osceola.
Ptychoparia affinis.
oweni.
haguei.
granulosa.
simulator.
unisulcata.
breviceps.
Arethusina americana.
Ptychaspis minuta.

"Three of these species, *Hyolithes primordialis*, *Dikelocephalus osceola* and *Ptychaspis minuta*, are identical with forms from the Potsdam sandstone of Wisconsin."[1] As a whole the fauna is of the general facies of that of the Potsdam zone of New York and the Mississippi Valley. This is found in the Hamburg shale, but in the overlying Pogonip limestone there is an assemblage of species that combine both Cambrian and Lower Silurian (Ordovician) types. A short distance above, the fauna is comparable to that of the Calciferous and Chazy groups of the New York section.

The transition from the Cambrian to the Silurian [Ordovician] fauna is very gradual, and such as would occur where there was no marked physical disturbance to influence the faunal change resulting from the natural dying out and development of species or the influx of new species from other areas.

Of the species occurring below the passage beds three are identical with species occurring in the Potsdam sandstone of Wisconsin, viz: *Hyolithes primordialis*, *Dicellocephalus osceola*, and *Ptychaspis minuta;* one, with *Acrotreta gemma* of the Calciferous formation of Newfoundland; and *Ptychoparia oweni* is a common species of the Potsdam horizon in Montana and Dakota. These specific identifications and the great development of species of the genera Agnostus, Dicellocephalus, and Ptychoparia in the middle and upper portion of the Cambrian section, furnish abundant evidence upon which to correlate the fauna and the geologic horizon at which it occurs with the Potsdam fauna and formation, as was done by Messrs. Hall and Whitfield (Geol. Expl. Fortieth Par., vol. 4, 1877, p. 199). Of the Potsdam fauna eleven genera and fifteen species continue on into the passage fauna, viz: (species of the Potsdam fauna are printed in italics); *Lingulepis mæra*, *L. minuta*, *Lingula? manticula*, Discina (sp. undt.), *Acrotreta gemma*, Schizambon typicalis, Obolella ambigua, *O. discoidea*, *Leptæna melita*, Orthis hamburgensis, O. testudinaria, Triplesia calcifera, Tellinomya? hamburgensis, *Agnostus communis*, *A. bidens*, *A. neon*, Dicellocephalus finalis, D. inexpectans, Ptychoparia? annectans, *Ptychoparia affinis*, *P. granulosus*, *P. haguei*, *P. oweni*, *P. unisulcatus*, *Arethusina americana*, Amphion (sp. undt.) Barrandia maccoyi, Illænurus eurekensis, Asaphus caribouensis.

In the next superior grouping, about midway of the Pogonip group, all the middle Cambrian genera, with the exception of Orthis and Illænurus, have disappeared, and higher up the genera Receptaculites, Chætetes, Pleurotomaria, Maclurea, Cyphasis, Bathyurus, and Asaphus carry the fauna up to the summit of the formation where the genera Receptaculites, Ptilodictya, Chætetes, Strophomena, Orthis, Tellinomya,

[1] Op. cit., p. 33.

Modiolopsis, Maclurea, Crytolites, Orthoceras, Endoceras, Coleoprion, Leperditia, Beyrichia, Amphion, Ceraurus, and Asaphus give it a facies approaching that of the Lower Trenton and indicating a horizon that is considered to be in a measure the equivalent of that of the Chazy formation of New York and Canada. The fauna of the lower portion of the Pogonip group corresponds in the same manner to that of the Calciferous sand-rock of the same region. The large number of individuals of the species of Receptaculites, *R. mammillaris* especially, gives the fauna of the upper beds a character that this horizon has not hitherto had. This, united with several of the Trenton species, viz, *Orthis testudinaria*, *O. tricenaria*, *O. perveta*, *Tellinomya contracta*, two species of Modiolopsis allied to Trenton forms, and *Raphistoma nasoni*, strongly foreshadows the opening of the Trenton period.[1]

The section of the Highland Range, 125 miles south of the Eureka section, gives a greater variation of sedimentation in the lower portion and less in the upper as compared with the Eureka section. The Highland Range has a more abundant and more varied fauna in the lower 1,500 feet above the quartzite, while in the Eureka section the upper or Potsdam fauna is much larger than in the Highland section. In each instance a massive limestone has replaced a succession of limestones and shales. The Highland Range section measuring from the base is as follows:[2]

	Feet.
(1) Dark reddish brown quartzite, evenly bedded, and ripple-marked in some places	350
(2) Bluish gray limestone	35
Fossils: *Olenellus gilberti*.	
(3) Buff argillaceous and arenaceous shales, more or less solid near the base and laminated in the upper portions	80
Fossils: Annelid trails and fragments of Olenellus in the lower part. Higher up the heads of *Olenellus gilberti* and *O. iddingsi* occur in abundance.	
(4) Light-colored gray limestone and bluish black limestone	16
(5) Sandy, buff-colored shale	40
Fossils: Annelid trails, Cruziana sp.?	
(6) Dark bluish black limestone	46
(7) Finely laminated buff argillaceous shale	80
Fossils: *Hyolithes billingsi* and *Ptychoparia piochensis*.	
(8) Gray to bluish black compact limestone	18
(9) Buff arenaceous shales	64
(10) Compact cherty limestone	50
(11) Compact shaly sandstone in massive layers	40
(12) Hard siliceous gray limestone, almost quartz at base	12
(13) Yellow to buff, sandy shale	70
(14) Bluish black limestone	16
(15) Yellow to buff sandy shales	40
(16) Bluish black, hard, compact limestone	12
Fragments of fossils.	
(17) Shaly sandstone in massive layers	52
(18) Gray arenaceous limestone	2

[1] Walcott, C. D.: Paleontology of the Eureka District. U. S. Geol. Surv., Monograph, vol. 8, 1884, pp. 3, 4.

[2] Walcott, C. D.: Second contribution to the studies of the Cambrian faunas of North America. U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. No. 30, 1886, pp. 33, 34.

		Feet.	
(19)	(*a*) Buff, sandy shale	40	
	(*b*) Gray arenaceous limestone	30	
	(*c*) Sandy, calcareous shale	3	
			73
(20)	(*a*) Massive-bedded, bluish gray limestone. Fragments of fossils.	200	
	(*b*) Compact gray siliceous limestone, almost quartzite in some places	400	
	(*c*) Bluish black, evenly bedded limestone	6	
			606
	Strike N. 30° W., dip. 10° E.		
(21)	Buff to pinkish argillaceous shale, with fossils, and a few interbedded layers of limestone from 3 to 15 inches thick		125
	Fossils: *Eocystites ?? longidactylus, Lingulella ella, Kutorgina pannula, Hyolithes billingsi, Ptychoparia piochensis, Olenoides typicalis Bathyuriscus howelli*, and *B. producta*,		
(22)	Massive-bedded, siliceous limestone; weathering rough and broken into great belts, 200 to 300 feet thick, by bands of color in light-gray, dark-lead to bluish black; on some of the cliff faces the weathered surface is reddish		1,570
(23)	Bluish black limestone in massive strata, that break up into shaly layers on exposure to the weather. The latter feature is less distinct 850 feet up, and the limestone becomes more siliceous, with occasional shaly beds		1,430
	Fossils; near the summit specimens were found that are referred to *Ptychoparia minor*.		

Quite a fauna occurs in 23, as found one mile farther south an the line of the section.

Summary of section.

	Feet.
1. Quartzite	350
2. Limestone and shales (argillaceous and arenaceous)	1,450
3. Massive limestones	3,000
Total	4,800

As in the Eureka section, the species of Olenellus have a very narrow range near the base of the limestone series above the quartzite.

The fauna found in No. 21 of the section materially strengthens the correlation of the fauna of the Prospect Mountain limestone and the Secret Cañon shale with that of the Paradoxides zone of the Atlantic Basin.

The fauna of the great limestone belt above 23 of the section is represented by only a few specimens on the line of the section. A mile south, however, on the strike of the strata a strongly marked Upper Cambrian (Potsdam) fauna occurs. The species identified are as follows:

Bellerophon antiquatus.	Dicellocephalus sp.?
Pleurotomaria, 3 undt. sp.	Ptychoparia (Euloma?) dissimilis
Hyolithes, 3 n. sp.	P. sp.?
Dicellocephalus pepinensis.	Arethusina americana.
D. (type of D. minnesotensis).	Illænurus sp.?

Of this fauna two species are identical with those from the higher Potsdam fauna at Eureka, viz: *Ptychoparia (E.?) dissimilis* and *Arethusina americana;* and *Bellerophon antiquatus*, and *Dicellocephalus pepinensis* occur in the upper Potsdam of Wisconsin.

The presence of the Pleurotomaria-like shells and the species just mentioned correlates the fauna with that of the upper horizon of the Potsdam faunas of Wisconsin and Nevada.[1]

We have no details of the section of Silver Peak, Nevada, to which attention was called by Prof. J. D. Whitney. The fossils are from a limestone and silico-argillaceous shale and identical with species found elsewhere. The most noteworthy occurrence is that of *Archæocyathus* = *Spirocyathus atlanticus* and a large brachiopod like *Kutorgina cingulata*, both of which occur on the Labrador coast over 3,000 miles to the northeast on the opposite side of the continent. The abundant and peculiar type of sponge *Archæocyathus profundus* of the L'Anse au Loup locality is represented by the nearly identical species *Ethmophyllum whitneyi* of Silver Peak, and the tribolite *Olenellus gilberti* is scarcely distinguishable from *O. thompsoni*, as it occurs in L'Anse au Loup. The species now known from Silver Peak are:[2]

Spirocyathus atlanticus.	Kutorgina (like K. cingulata).
Archæocyathus undt. sp.	Hyolithes princeps.
Ethmophyllum whitneyi.	Olenellus gilberti.
Strephochetus ? sp. ?	

The Cambrian rocks of Utah, as determined by the presence of the Cambrian fauna, form a narrow horizon in the vast series of sediments of which they are a conformable portion. Messrs. Emmons and King refer the 12,000 feet of siliceous slates and quartzites of the Big Cottonwood section to the Cambrian. If we provisionally drew the basal line of the Cambrian at the base of the strata known to contain the Olenellus fauna, all but 250 feet of this section would be referred to the Algonkian, but from the known range of Olenellus in the stratigraphically equivalent series to the north in British Columbia, the view is no longer tenable. The upper portion of the section consists of 250 feet of hard silico-argillaceous shale, a little sandy in places. At the base a species of Cruziana was found, associated with *Olenellus gilberti*, and 100 feet higher in the section a band of shale afforded *Lingulella ella*, *Kutorgina pannula*, *Hyolithes billingsi*, *Leperditia argenta*, *Ptychoparia quadrans*, and *Bathyuriscus producta*. This list was published in 1886, along with Cruziana and *Olenellus gilberti*, as characterizing the shales at the summit of the great series of quartzites and slates. As in the Eureka and Highland Range sections, the Olenellus zone is confined to a very narrow belt just above the quartzite. The silico-argillaceous shales above occupy the position of the 4,650 feet of Prospect Mountain limestone and Secret Cañon shale of the Eureka section. The Hamburg limestone and Hamburg shale of the latter are absent in the Big Cottonwood section, causing an unconformity by nondeposition.[3] The section in the Oquirrh Range above Ophir City has a quartzite at the base with shales above it carrying *Lingulella ella*, *Olenellus gilberti*, and *Bathyuriscus producta*, as determined by the collections brought in

[1] Op. cit., pp. 35, 36. [2] Op. cit., p. 38. [3] Op. cit., p. 39.

by the Wheeler survey. It is probable, however, that as in the case of the Big Cottonwood section, *Olenellus gilberti* occurs at the base of the shale, and the other two species at a higher horizon. At Antelope Spring, in western Utah, there is a considerable development of the Middle Cambrian zone corresponding to No. 21 of the Highland Range section and a portion of the Prospect Mountain limestone of the Eureka section. The section at this locality as measured by Mr. G. K. Gilbert is as follows:[1]

	Feet.
1. Gray, massive limestone	200
2. Blue gray, calcareous shale; fossils (as corrected by C. D. W.); *Acrothele subsidua, Agnostus interstrictus, Olenoides nevadensis, Plychoparia kingi, P. housensis, and Asaphiscus wheeleri*	200
3. Gray limestone, light and dark, chiefly massive	900
4. Vitreous sandstone, umber-brown on weathered face; base not seen	1,000
Total	2,300

No. 4 of this section corresponds to the basal quartzite of the Eureka and Highland Range section, and No. 3 with the Prospect Mountain limestone. No. 2 may correspond to the upper portion of the latter limestone or to the lower portion of the Secret Cañon shale of the Eureka district. There is not enough known of the Antelope Spring section to enable us to make any closer correlation.

A comparison of the sections of Utah with those of Nevada shows that in the former the earlier conditions of sedimentation were apparently the same from the base of the Wasatch Mountains westward into central Nevada. But during the deposition of the Middle and Upper Cambrian rocks the immediate vicinity of the Wasatch was an area of minimum deposition, while that of central Nevada was one of maximum deposition of sediments. What the conditions were during the deposition of late Middle and Upper Cambrian time in the Wasatch area are unknown. The appearance of the rocks indicate a shallow sea with very little deposition of sediment.

IDAHO.

What is known of the Cambrian rocks of Idaho is obtained from the writings of Messrs. Bradley and Peale. The report of the former is more that of an explorer who, passing over the ground, made such geologic notes as time permitted. In the vicinity of Malade City, in southeastern Idaho, he discovered in a limestone resting on a quartzite, fifteen species of trilobites of the genera Conocoryphe, Bathyurus, Dikelocephalus, Agnostus, etc., five brachiopods, two gasteropods, and one pteropod. He referred this fauna to the Quebec group, and the

[1] Report on the geology of portions of Nevada, Utah, California, and Arizona examined in the years 1871 and 1872. Report on Geog. and Geol. Expl. and Survey west of the 100th merid., in charge of Lieut. Geo. M. Wheeler, vol. 3, Geology, 1875, p. 167.

quartzitic sandstone beneath is spoken of as occupying the relative position of the Potsdam, although he subsequently refers to it as a part of the true Quebec.[1] Mr. F. B. Meek agreed with Prof. Bradley that the fauna belonged to the Quebec horizon; and he[2] described *Bathyurellus* (*Asaphiscus*) *bradleyi* and *Asaphus* (*Megalaspis?*) *goniocercus*. The latter species probably comes from the upper portion of the limestone referred to the Quebec group by Prof. Bradley.

From the data obtained by Dr. A. C. Peale of the Gallatin River Cambrian, and our more accurate knowledge of the fauna of the Quebec group, the faunas occurring in the lower portion of the limestone at Malade City are referred to the Upper Cambrian, and those from the upper portion of the limestone to a portion of the Lower Silurian (Ordovician). In this connection reference should be made by the reader to Prof. Orestes St. John's work upon the same beds in Wyoming.

Near the south end of Portneuf Range, north of Malade City, Dr. A. C. Peale measured the following section:[3]

Top.

	Feet.
1. Blue limestone	130
2. Laminated blue limestones, with Conocoryphe, Dikellocephalus, Obolella, and two species of Bathyurus	315
3. Bluish gray limestones	
4. Laminated limestones, with bands of greenish shales in the upper portion. The limestones are separated by shaly layers. The limestones are fossiliferous at the base, containing quantities of a trilobite like Conocoryphe. The limestone resembles an oolite, but the structure is probably due to the presence of some peculiar organic remains. Fragments of Discina were seen	120
5. Rather massive limestones	
6. Laminated blue limestones, in bands of from 1 to 2 inches thickness, the surfaces of which are yellow-stained.	
7. Rather massive limestones	118
8. Green shales or slates, 15 feet	
9. Bluish gray limestone	
10. Bluish limestones, with bands of shales	155
11. Massive blue limestones. The dip here appears to be about 40°	100
12. Laminated limestones with interlaminated green shales	70
13. Greenish sandstones and shales, passing below into silvery gray slates	210
14. Slates and shales with a band of limestone about the middle	185
15. Blue limestones with irregular structure. The strike is about south 5° east, and beyond the station it appears to curve to the south; dip is 60°	70
16. Rusty yellow quartzite	150
17. Gray and yellowish quartzites	450
18. Greenish gray slates	180
19. Rusty yellow quartzite, somewhat conglomeritic and containing a considerable percentage of iron	130
20. Rusty quartzites, about	600
21. White quartzites	500 to 600
22. Pink and white quartzites	
23. Red slates, thickness not taken	
Total	3,483 to 3,583

[1] Report of Frank H. Bradley, geologist of the Snake River division. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., 6th Ann. Rep., 1873, p. 201.

[2] Preliminary paleontological report; with remarks on the ages of the rocks, etc. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., embracing portions of Montana, Idaho, Wyoming, and Utah, 6th Ann. Rep., Ibid. 1873, pp. 480–485.

[3] Report on the geology of the Green River District. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., 11th Ann. Rep., 1879, p. 568.

Below this last layer there are probably the limestones of the Red Rock Pass.

This section is one of considerable interest, from the fact of its having the Upper Cambrian fauna in the upper portion and an alternating series of limestones, shales, and quartzites below, which, from a comparison with the sections of western Utah and central Nevada, occupy the stratigraphic position of the Middle Cambrian. In their downward continuation, they may also include the Lower Cambrian zone. This is a question which is to be settled by future investigation.

In the adjoining Bannock range to the west, Dr. Peale studied a section of the series of quartzites and slates that apparently correspond to those of Nevada and Utah, occurring beneath the Lower Cambrian (Olenellus) zone. The section figured by Dr. Peale includes 5,710 feet of quartzites and slates, with a little interbedded limestone. He compares it with the section on the western side of the Wasatch range, referred to the Cambrian by Messrs. Emmons and Hague.[1] In his résumé of the formations, the Cambrian or Primordial is made to include the quartzites and slates that may be tentatively assigned to the Algonkian, or to the Cambrian, but preferably to the latter. To the Canadian Period there are referred 1,300 feet of interlaminated limestones and quartzites that occur above the quartzite and slate series now referred to the Cambrian. Dr. Peale states that west of Malade City the section gives 2,000 feet of strata placed in the Quebec series by Prof. Bradley.[2]

The northern end of the Port Neuf range was studied by Prof. Orestes St. John, in the vicinity of Mount Putnam. He there found the section to be formed of quartzites, chloritic schists, slates, and micaceous shales at the base, above which comes the dark red, finely laminated sandstone in thick beds. These he referred to the Potsdam with a query. In speaking of this section, Dr. Peale says he thinks Prof. St. John is inclined to refer the base of the section to the Huronian.[3]

With the information afforded by his own survey and that of Prof. St. John, Dr. Peale constructed the following table as embodying their knowledge of the Lower Paleozoic section of Idaho:[4]

[1] Op. cit., p. 570. [2] Op. cit., p. 614. [3] Op. cit., p. 615. [4] Op. cit., p. 615.

Silurian section.

Canadian.	Quebec.		Blue and gray limestones, with characteristic Quebec fossils.	1,000 + ft.	1,500 + ft.	Section No. 21, station 133.
	Calciferous?		Blue limestones, generally laminated, with alternations of greenish sandstones and shales and siliceous slates.	500 ft.		
Cambrian or Primordial.	Potsdam.	Cambrian quartzites.	Pink and white quartzites, conglomeritic at top, with thin layer of limestone at the base.	2,000 + ft.	7,060 + ft.	Section No. 22, station 77.
	Acadian?	Cambrian slates.	Olive-green and gray chloritic slates and indurated clay slates.	1,560 ft.		
			Silvery and steel-gray micaceous slates.	1,900 ft.		
			Dark quartzites with interlaminated slates.	1,600 ft.		
	Possibly Huronian?		Red quartzites and quartzitic sandstones, with conglomeritic and shaly layers.	350 ft.	1,250 ft.	Section No. 32, station 132.
			Limestones.			
			Very dark green chloritic schists, containing quartz and serpentine seams and interlaminated bands of metamorphosed argillaceous slates, and a band of pink quartzite 200 feet thick.	900 ft.		

In copying the table it has been reversed, so as to follow the natural order. As interpreted in the light of our present knowledge of the Cambrian rocks in the Rocky Mountains, the Quebec and Calciferous of this section are referred to the Upper Cambrian. Whether the rocks referred to the Potsdam and Acadian are of Cambrian age or not will remain undetermined until some paleontologic proof is obtained.

MONTANA.

As far as known, the Cambrian rocks of Montana are restricted to the southern portion of the State. Two areas are well defined, one about the northern end of the Big Horn range and the other within the area drained by the Gallatin and the Yellowstone Rivers.

The character of the strata forming the Cambrian about the Big Horn Mountains will be spoken of in connection with the extension of that range in Wyoming. The Gallatin section of the Cambrian includes 1,250 feet of strata, of which 835 feet are limestone, resting upon 415 feet of sandstone. Conformably subjacent to the latter, there are 5,000 feet of alternations of conglomeritic, micaceous sandstones, with bands of siliceous limestones and indurated clay shales, referred to the Algonkian by Dr. A. C. Peale.[1]

A more detailed manuscript section, that Dr. Peale kindly prepared at my request, is as follows:

Gallatin limestones 835 feet...	Pebbly limestones 145 feet. (fossils, *Leptæna melita*, *Ophileta sp.?* *Tripleeia calcifera*, *Ptychoparia* sp.? *Ptychoparia* (*E.*) *affinis*). Dry Creek shales 30 feet. Mottled limestones 160 feet. (fossils, *Ptychoparia* sp.? *Hyolithes* sp.?) Obolella shales 280 feet. (fossils, *Obolella* sp.?) Trilobite limestones 120 feet. (fossils, *Lingulella* sp., *Acrotreta gemma*. *Kutorgina sculptilis*, *Agnostus bidens*. *Hyolithes gregaria*, *Olenoides serratus*. *Ptychoparia gallatinenses*. *Bathyuriscus? haydeni*).
Gallatin sandstones 415 feet...	Gallatin shales 290 feet. (fossils, *Lingulella* sp.? *Hyolithes* sp.? *Ptychoparia* sp.?) Gallatin quartzite 125 feet.

It is probable that the 5,000 feet of strata referred to the Algonkian in the published section will ultimately be referred to the Lower Cambrian as they occupy the stratigraphic position of the Bow River series to the north in British Columbia through the upper 3,000 feet of which the Olenellus fauna has been found to range.

The section near the mouth of the East Gallatin River was studied in detail by Dr. Peale in 1884, and two lithologically well defined groups determined and characterized as follows:

To the lower one, which was carefully searched, without success, for organic remains, the name of East Gallatin group has been provisionally applied. It is composed of a series of alternations of green and greenish gray micaceous sandstones and clay slates (almost argillites), with thin bands of laminated limestones; 2,300 feet of these beds were sectionalized in detail without any traces of fossils being found.

The sandstones are in heavy beds and present a somber appearance, weathering on exposed surfaces to steel-gray and almost black colors and frequently breaking into cubical blocks. The slates are blue, yellowish, olive-green, and at some places red. In the limestone a concretionary structure is frequently noticed. For the upper group, lying above a well defined pink quartzitic sandstone, we have retained the name Potsdam. Green and dark purplish red micaceous shales, mostly arenaceous, with occasional thin bands of limestone, make up this group, and many of the beds are highly fossiliferous. The collections have not been carefully studied yet, and we therefore simply refer to them in this general way at this time.[2]

[1] Report of Dr. A. C. Peale (on the Montana division of geology). U. S. Geol. Surv., 10th Ann. Rep., 1890, p. 131.

[2] Hayden, F. V.: Report Montana Division. U. S. Geol. Surv., 6th Ann. Rep., 1884–'85, 1885, p. 50.

The fauna collected in the Gallatin River section by Dr. Hayden in 1872 was studied by Mr. Meek, who recognized eighteen species. From the lowest division he identified the genera Cruziana, Lingulepis, or Lingula, Conocoryphe, Bathyurus, or Asaphus. From the third division he described *Bathyurus serratus*, *B.? haydeni*, *Conocoryphe* (*Conocephalites*) *gallatinensis*, *Iphidea subtilis*, and *Agnostus bidens*; and identified a species of *Conocoryphe*, *Hyolithes gregaria*, and *Acrotreta subconica*. From the second division the genera Acrotreta and Lingula are identified, and from the upper or first division Asaphus?, Bathyurus? Conocoryphe, and Lingulepis.[1] This fauna has the facies of the Upper Cambrian zone, although that of the fourth or lowest division may prove to belong to the Middle Cambrian. As a whole the Cambrian of the Gallatin region is formed of a sandstone at the base, above which occur limestones carrying a fauna characteristic of the upper portion of the group.

The presence of the Upper Cambrian on the southwestern side of the Little Belt Mountains and on the southern side of the Elk Range was proved by Messrs. Dana and Grinnell when they discovered fossils of this age. The section near Camp Baker, southwest of the Little Belt Mountains, is estimated as follows:[2]

Quartzite, 20 feet; variegated shales, mostly bright red, also green and blue, 150 feet; limestone in a double series of ledges, 80 feet; quartzite, reddish, slightly micaceous, then a series of colored slates, mostly green, followed by shales and thin beds of sandstones and limestones, in all probability 1,500 feet; still further conformable shales, 1,000 feet. These extend toward the north farther than we could follow them. It is enough to say that the total thickness of the conformable strata underlying the fossil-bearing limestone can not be less than 3,000 feet, and is probably much more.

The same authors state that they identified similar rocks at Moss Agate Springs, at the south extremity of the Elk Range of mountains. The strata there are red shales, quartzites, and limestones like those at Camp Baker, the limestones containing many fragments of trilobites. The fossils collected were studied by Prof. R. P. Whitfield, who described *Crepicephalus* (*Loganellus*) *montanensis* and *Arionellus tripunctatus*,[3] species that occur in the Upper Cambrian horizon, the former in the Black Hills and Big Horn Range, and the latter in central Texas.

From his observations at numerous points Dr. F. V. Hayden concluded that the outcrop of the sandstone referred by him to the Potsdam extended entirely around the Big Horn Mountain Range. Near the sources of Powder River he found a series of sandstones underlying the Carboniferous limestone, resting unconformably upon the schistose and clay slates of the Azoic series in very nearly the same manner as

[1] Preliminary paleontological report . . . with remarks on the ages of the rocks, etc. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., 6th Ann. Rep., 1873, pp. 463, 464.

[2] Geological report. Report of a geological reconnoissance from Carroll, Montana Terr., on the Upper Missouri to the Yellowstone Park and return, made in the summer of 1875, by Wm. Ludlow, 1876, p. 133.

[3] Descriptions of new species of fossils. Ibid. p. 141.

in the Black Hills. The Potsdam sandstone in this region is quite well developed, attaining a thickness of 200 feet, and exhibiting, as usual, various lithologic characters. Near the base, the rock is of a reddish flesh color, very compact, composed of an aggregation of quartz pebbles, varying in size from a minute grain of quartz to masses half an inch in diameter, cemented by siliceous matter. Above, the rock is in thin ferruginous layers, slightly calcareous but mostly siliceous, and with many small particles of mica. These thin layers are also charged with fossils, such as *Lingula antiqua*, *Obolella nana*, *Theca gregaria*, and *Arionellus? oweni*. Many of the slabs are covered with fucoidal markings and what appear to be tracks and trails of worms.[1]

CANADIAN EXTENSION.

Our knowledge of the Cambrian rocks of this region is mainly limited to the vicinity of the line of exploration across the Rocky Mountains in the vicinity of the Canadian Pacific Railway. They occur in western Alberta and eastern British Columbia, as is shown in the plates and sections accompanying Mr. R. G. McConnell's paper.[2] The geographic distribution and the localities mentioned by Mr. McConnell are represented on the map accompanying the report of the Geological Survey of Canada for 1882.

The Cambrian section, identified by fossils, includes the upper portion of the Bow River group and the lower part of the Castle Mountain group. The Bow River group forms the basal member of the section in the Bow River Valley and Cathedral Mountains. It consists mainly of a series of dark colored argillites, associated with some sandstone, quartzites, and conglomerates. The argillites are usually dark gray in color, but become greenish and purplish in places; are very impure and frequently grade into flaggy sandstones that are often slightly calcareous. The conglomerates of this series are characterized by pebbles of milky or semitransparent quartz, and by pieces, similar in size and fresh looking, of whitish feldspar, and the matrix contains an abundance of pale mica. These constituents have evidently been derived from some not far distant exposures of coarse granite or gneissic rock. The conglomerates characterize more especially the top of the formation, and occur in thick, massive looking bands, alternating with quartzites and shales. The quartzites, like the conglomerates, are mostly found in the upper part of the formation, and sometimes, as in Cathedral Mountains, replace the latter altogether. The only fossils detected in the Bow River series are specimens of *Olenellus gilberti*, found about 2,000 feet below the top of the formation and at the summit of Vermilion Pass.

[1] The Primordial Sandstone of the Rocky Mountains in the Northwestern Territories of the United States. Am. Jour'. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 33, 1862, pp. 71, 72.

[2] Report on the Geological Structure of a portion of the Rocky Mountains, with a section. Geol. Surv. Canada, new ser., vol. 2, 1886–'87, pp. 24D–30D.

Attention was called to the resemblance of the strata of the Bow River series to those of the Big Cottonwood Cañon section of the Wasatch Mountains of Utah, by Dr. G. M. Dawson, in 1885. A comparison of the two leads to their correlation as equivalent formations, on the evidence of their lithologic characters and stratigraphic position and the fact that the Olenellus fauna occurs in the upper portion of each section. In his paper of 1889 Mr. R. G. McConnell[1] states that specimens of Paradoxides and other fossils were found at the junction of the Bow River and the superjacent Castle Mountain group. A collection made at this horizon was sent to me for examination, and I identified Olenellus sp. undt., *Protypus senectus*, and a species of Ptychoparia undistinguishable from *P. adamsi* of the Olenellus zone of Vermont. The occurrence of the Olenellus fauna at this horizon and of *Olenellus gilberti*, 3,000 feet lower in the section, corresponds to the great range of the fauna in the New York and Vermont sections.

The Castle Mountain group, in the Castle Mountain section, commences with a thin band of shaly limestone, above which come 1,500 feet of massive dolomites. These are subjacent to some yellowish, compact, impure dolomites, above which 300 feet of reddish shales occur subjacent to several hundred feet of shaly magnesian limestones. The Mount Stephen section shows about 5,000 feet of beds, consisting mainly of heavy dolomites, with shaly bands at intervals. One of these, occurring at the base of the formation and another about 2,000 feet higher up, are rich in trilobites.[2]

Reference has already been made to the fauna occurring at the base of Castle Mountain. From the next fossiliferous zone, 2,000 feet up in the section, the following species have been obtained:

Lingulella macconnelli.
Crania? columbiana.
Kutorgina prospectensis.
Acrotreta gemma, var. depressa.
Linnarsounia sagittalis.
Orthisina alberta.
Platyceras romingeri.
Hyolithellus micans.
Agnostus interstrictus.
Olenoides nevadensis.
Zacanthoides spinosus.
Ptychoparia cordilleræ.
Bathyuriscus howelli.
(K.) dawsoni.
Karlia stephenensis.
Ogygopsis klotzi.

Where the line between the Cambrian and the Lower Silurian (Ordovician) is to be drawn in the Castle Mountain group is still undetermined. The discovery of a specimen of *Ptychoparia oweni* in the débris washed down by the Cascade River from the Cascade Mountains indicates the presence of the Upper Cambrian fauna in this region, and it is not improbable that it will be found in the Castle Mountain or Mount Stephen section.

[1] Notes on the geology of Mount Stephen, British Columbia. American Geologist, vol. 3, 1889, pp. 22–25.

[2] Report on the Geological Structure of a portion of the Rocky Mountains, with a section. Geol. Surv. Canada, new ser. 1886–87, 1887, pp. 24–29D.

RÉSUMÉ.

The sedimentation of the western area is much more varied and larger than that of the eastern side of the Rocky Mountains. The southern portion, represented by the Eureka District section, extending from the basal quartzite to the base of the Lower Silurian (Ordovician), is a continuous conformable succession of limestones and calcareous shales, with the exception of a narrow belt of arenaceous shales resting directly upon the lower quartzite. The calcareous sediments are 6,200 feet in thickness and include the faunas of the Middle and Upper Cambrian. The Lower Cambrian fauna is well developed in the shales between the limestone and the quartzite. The Highland Range section, 125 miles to the south, has a thickness of 4,800 feet of limestone, between the quartzite and the Lower Silurian (Ordovician). Proceeding eastward from central Nevada to northern central Utah, the Cambrian formations thin out, and on the flanks of the Wasatch Mountains are represented by 250 feet of argillaceous and siliceous shales above the basal quartzite. In this section only the Lower and Middle Cambrian faunas are found. The three thousand or more feet of limestone, with an abundant Upper Cambrian fauna, found in central Nevada, is unrepresented.

A comparison of the section in the Wasatch Mountains with that of Nevada shows that in both the earlier conditions of sedimentation were apparently the same. But during the deposition of the Upper and Middle Cambrian rocks, in the immediate vicinity of the Wasatch Range, it was an area of minimum deposition of argillaceous sediment, while that of Central Nevada was one of a great accumulation of calcareous sediment.

What the conditions were in the vicinity of the Wasatch Range during the deposition of the great calcareous deposits of central Nevada of Upper and Middle Cambrian times is largely conjectural. The physical appearance of the rocks indicates a shallow sea with very little deposition of sediment during the earlier portion of Cambrian time, and either a very shallow sea without deposition of sediment or a very deep sea without deposition of sediment, during the latter part of Cambrian time. It may be that some sediment was deposited and subsequently was removed by erosion, but this is exceedingly doubtful. The pure limestones of the Lower Silurian (Ordovician) rest directly upon the shales of the Cambrian, without any apparent unconformity.

To the north, near Malade City, Idaho, there are 1,200 to 1,400 feet of limestones that occur above the series of quartzites and slates. The sedimentation is essentially the same as that of central Nevada with the exception of a less amount of calcareous sediment above the basal quartzite. The Upper Cambrian fauna has been found, but not the Middle or Lower fauna. Still farther to the north, in western Alberta, and eastern British Columbia, the same series is represented in the Bow

River quartzites and slates. The Cambrian section at this point also agrees closely with that of Nevada. The Olenellus fauna occurs at the base of a thick series of limestone, and in calcareous shales, 2,000 feet higher up, the Middle Cambrian fauna is well developed. Where the line between the Cambrian and Lower Silurian (Ordovician) is to be drawn in this great series of limestone and calcareous shales is still undetermined.

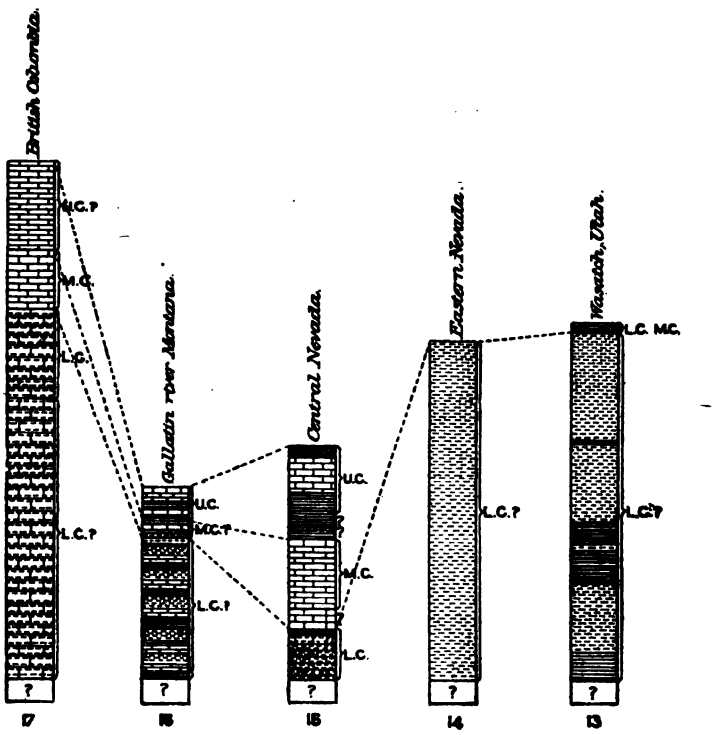


FIG. 3.—Sections of the Rocky Mountain province, vertical scale 6,400 feet to the inch. The number beneath each section corresponds to the locality number on Pls. I and II.

The presence of *Olenellus gilberti* 3,000 feet down in the Bow River quartzite and shales gives strong reason for referring the entire Bow River, Idaho, Wasatch, and Nevada quartzite and shales series to the Lower Cambrian. We know that the vertical range of the fauna is great in the Appalachian sections and also in British Columbia.

As a whole the sedimentation in the vicinity of the shore line of Utah was limited in amount in later Cambrian time, and consisted mainly of siliceous and argillaceous muds. In the deeper sea to the westward a great accumulation of calcareous sediment rests upon the basal quartzite, and this continues to southern central Nevada. To the northward there is a decrease in thickness of the limestones across Idaho. In British Columbia the section is more like that of central Nevada.

A comparison of the sections of the area on the eastern side of the Rocky Mountains with that of the western sustains the view that during late Algonkian ?, Lower Cambrian, and Middle Cambrian time the eastern Rocky Mountains and the plains to the eastward were above the sea level, whilst to the west the sediments of the later Algonkian ?, Lower Cambrian, and Middle Cambrian were accumulating west of the line of the Wasatch Mountains and the extension of this line nearly due north into British Columbia. Over all this region the coast line and sea bed appear to have undergone a gradual depression during early Cambrian time, and a relatively rapid depression at the beginning of Middle Cambrian time. (Fig. 3.)

THE INTERIOR CONTINENTAL PROVINCE.

This province includes the Upper Mississippi area; the eastern border or Adirondack sub-Province, the western border or Rocky Mountain sub-Province, and the Llano County area of central Texas and the Grand Cañon of Arizona as a minor southwestern sub-Province.

The Lake Superior sandstones and the controversy in relation to them will be noticed under a separate heading, after the description of the recognized Upper Cambrian rocks of Wisconsin, Iowa, and Minnesota and their Canadian extension.

UPPER MISSISSIPPI VALLEY.

In the historical review the literature pertaining to these rocks has been considered under the headings of "Wisconsin," "Minnesota," and "Iowa," but as the strata all belong to one geologic basin it is considered best to speak of them collectively.

The formations that have been correlated with the Potsdam sandstone of New York will be treated of under two headings: (1) The St. Croix or "Potsdam" sandstone proper, and (2) the sandstone of the south shore of Lake Superior.

The St. Croix ("Potsdam") sandstone.—The greater portion of the exposures of the St. Croix or Lower sandstone occurs in Wisconsin, and it here also presents many variations in sedimentation and fauna. Its lower beds rest on the great pre-Cambrian nucleus of the center of the State, extending about it from the Michigan line on the northeast to where it passes into Minnesota on the northwest. Its line of contact with the superjacent Magnesian limestone is also very extended owing to the numerous streams that have cut through the limestone down into the sandstone throughout its line of outcrop. The epoch was one of accumulation of sand. The rocks are mainly light-colored sandstones in central and southern Wisconsin, but embrace some beds of limestone and shale. The maximum known thickness is about 1,000 feet. The fauna is large and varied, and contains trilobites, gasteropods, ptero-

pods, and brachiopods. The succession of beds is, according to Prof. T. C. Chamberlin, as follows:[1]

On the southern side of the Archean Island the lower part of the formation usually consists of coarse quartzose sand, of an exceedingly open, porous nature, with but little aluminous or ferruginous and almost no calcareous matter. Higher in the series the sandstone becomes finer grained and the accessory substances named more abundant. Somewhat above the middle of the series a stratum of shale occurs, attaining a known thickness of 80 feet. This is not everywhere present and seems to be mainly developed at some distance from the ancient shore line. It appears to indicate that for a time there was a deepening of the waters, admitting of the accumulation of fine sediment, except near the shore, where the deposit of sand continued. Above the shale the sandstone, reaching a thickness of 150 feet, is again found. This is medium or coarse grained and slightly calcareous. It, in turn, is overlain by a deposit of associated shale and limestone (the *Mendota limestone*), which attains a thickness of 35 feet in the vicinity of the lake from which it derives its name. These beds indicate a modification of the conditions of deposition, such as to permit not only the settling of fine sediment, but the accumulation of calcareous mud as well. The latter was doubtless derived from the calcareous remains of life, since the sea then swarmed with living organisms whose shells and skeletons are found entombed in the strata. The frequency of broken and worn fragments implies that the greater portion were ground to powder, forming the calcareous flour that subsequently hardened into limestone. These beds appear to point quite surely to a moderate deepening of the waters.

Overlying this impure limestone is a third and thinner bed of sandstone (the *Madison*) with which the Potsdam series closes. This, on the whole, is finer grained than that below, and is bound more firmly together by cementing material, which is mainly a calcareous and ferruginous infiltration. The thickness of this bed is about 30 feet.

In eastern Wisconsin the formation is divided by Prof. Chamberlain into six parts, as follows, beginning at the top:

	Feet.
Sandstone (Madison)	35
Limestone, shale, and sandstone (Mendota)	60
Sandstone, calcareous	155
Bluish shale, calcareous	80
Sandstone, slightly calcareous	160
Very coarse sandstone, noncalcareous	280

The thicknesses given are subject to considerable variation. As a general rule they grow less toward the northeast. Where the total thickness of the formation is reduced by the inequalities of its Archean bottom it is by the loss of the lower members of the group and not by the thinning of all.[2]

The Upper or Madison sandstone is described as a rather coarse-grained, thick-bedded, compact, but soft, slightly calcareous, light colored sandstone. In its upper portion, immediately beneath the lower Magnesian limestone, it is at most localities coarse, and the topmost layer is often broken up and mixed with calcareous material, giving it a coarsely brecciated structure. The subjacent limestone (Mendota) consists of a group of alternating strata of arenaceous magnesian limestone, sandy calcareous shales, and shaly and calcareous sandstones.[1]

[1] General Geology. Historical Geology. Paleozoic Era. Geology of Wisconsin. Survey of 1873-'79, vol. 1, 1883, pp. 121, 122.

[Geology of eastern Wisconsin.] Chapters 7 and 8. Lower and Upper Silurian. Geology of Wisconsin, Survey of 1873-'79, vol. 2, 1877, pp. 259, 260.

[2] Op. cit., p. 260.

The upper and lower limits of the Mendota group are scarcely definable. It graduates above into Madison sandstone, so as to make it difficult to draw a line between the two, and below the alteration of calcareous and arenaceous rock make it equally difficult to say where the series ends. The Mendota beds are regarded as the eastern equivalents of Dr. Owen's Fifth Trilobite bed, the common horizon being characterized by the presence of *Dikelocephalus minnesotensis*, *D. pepinensis*, *Lingula aurora*, *L. mosia*, and a few other species of limited horizontal distribution. The lower divisions constitute the main body of the Potsdam sandstone and present but very few exposures in this region. They are divided into four parts.[1]

The strata referred to the Potsdam sandstone by Prof. R. D. Irving in central Wisconsin have a surface distribution of over 6,000 square miles.[2] In the vicinity of Madison the following succession of layers between the Mendota base and the Archean occurs:[3]

	Feet.
1. Greensand layer	1
2. Calcareous and dolomitic, friable, fine-grained, greenish sandstone	31
3. Not known	31
4. Light colored sandstone, for the most part purely siliceous, being made of rolled quartz grains; but no specimens obtained from the uppermost layers	704
5. Red shale	10
Total	777

The generalized section given above for the Potsdam series, below the Mendota base, holds true for a large part of the central Wisconsin district, and would be satisfactory for all of it but for the facts next to be stated.[4]

Prof. Irving then proceeds to describe layers of sandstone and bowlder-conglomerate occurring near the pre-Cambrian quartzite, which apparently occupy a higher position and extend downward across the upper portion of the eastern Madison section. He explains this occurrence on the theory of the accumulation of these conglomerates and sandstones near the shore line at a higher level than the sandstones that accumulated offshore.

The beds of passage between the Potsdam and Lower Magnesian series include, as already said, two well marked beds, 60 to 90 feet in combined thickness—the Mendota limestone and the Madison sandstone.[5]

Of the fauna in the rocks he says:

To the list of fossils of the lower sandstone series given by Prof. Hall but little has been added by the present survey, as far as central Wisconsin is concerned. * * * The general grouping of upper, middle, and lower species appears to hold true as regards the order, but his lower species must really be assigned to the middle of the series, since its thickness is about twice as great as Mr. Hall supposed.[6]

[1] Op. cit., pp. 261, 262.

[2] The Lower Silurian rocks. (Geology of central Wisconsin.) Geology of Wisconsin, survey of 1873–1879, vol. 2, 1877, p. 529.

[3] Op. cit., p. 534. [4] Op. cit., p. 536. [5] Op. cit., p. 542. [6] Op. cit., p. 545.

In the Mississippi Valley, in southwestern Wisconsin, Mr. Moses Strong estimated the total thickness of the Potsdam at 800 to 1,000 feet, the inequalities in the surface of the underlying Archean rocks being the principal source of its variation.[1] The formation is composed almost entirely of sandstone. The only exception to this is the stratum of magnesian limestone and shale found in the upper part of the formation.

The strata of the formation are usually composed of fine siliceous sand, generally in small, rounded, water-worn grains of almost every color, the most frequent being the various shades of yellow and red, sometimes green, and often snow white. The strata vary greatly in consistency, and in different localities the same stratum may present different degrees of hardness. Some of the layers, and especially the white ones, are frequently almost as compact as quartzite, and from this all degrees are found, to a loose, friable sand that crumbles in the hand. * * * The stratification of the Potsdam is very regular and even, and the beds usually lie in a nearly horizontal position over large tracts of country. Indeed, so little do they deviate from an apparent level that the dip can not be distinguished by the eye, but only by a careful measurement. The dip is usually to the northwest, and seldom exceeds 8 or 10 feet to the mile, but more frequently it is less.[2]

The most highly fossiliferous portion of the formation occurs in western Wisconsin. The formation is divided in the lower St. Croix district, by Mr. L. C. Wooster, into four horizons, as follows:[3] (1) "Eau Claire grit; (2) Eau Claire trilobite beds; (3) Hudson trilobite beds, and (4) line of junction with the Lower Magnesian limestone." In this region it borders upon the metamorphic and igneous rocks to the north and east, and touches the Lower Magnesian limestone on the south and west.

The four horizons mentioned are described as follows:

The Eau Claire grit, exposed at the mouth of Eau Claire River, is a very coarse sandstone, with Scolithus tubes in one or two of the layers. The rock is so coarse that it has been termed a conglomerate, not without reason.

The Eau Claire trilobite beds are characterized by several species of trilobites not found at any other horizon, and also by being the lower limit at which brachiopods were found in the sandstone. These beds likewise mark the lower limit of calcareous matter in the formation.

The Hudson trilobite beds lie at the best defined horizon in the sandstone. These beds lie in close relationship to and between the *Lower Calcareous band* and the layers which are richest in green sand, and thus can not well be mistaken. * * * The shaly layers below the trilobite beds are intensely green from the presence of green sand (a variety of glauconite), which, so far as known, is true of no other horizon.

The line of junction with the Lower Magnesian limestone may, in nearly every instance, be recognized by the heavy brecciated beds of limestone just above. But this character may fail in the extreme southeastern border of the district, where it is possible that beds of sandstone are interstratified with the lower layers of the Lower Magnesian limestone, as in eastern Wisconsin.[4]

---

[1] Geological formations. (Geology of the Mississippi regions north of the Wisconsin River.) Geology of Wisconsin, survey of 1873–1879, vol. 4, 1882, p. 45.

[2] Op. cit., pp. 39, 40.

[3] Detailed geology: [Geology of the lower St. Croix district.] Geology of Wisconsin, survey of 1873–1879, vol. 4, 1882, p. 109.

[4] Op. cit., p. 110.

Another horizon is mentioned in which lies the Upper Calcareous band, possibly marking the horizon of the Mendota limestone of central Wisconsin.

At no one point in the district is the entire formation exposed, and so, to obtain the entire thickness from the Lower Magnesian limestone to the granite below, the sum of the thicknesses of the subdivisions is taken:

	Feet.
From the Lower Magnesian to the Hudson trilobite bed	200
From the Hudson trilobite bed to the Eau Claire Trilobite bed	200
From the Eau Claire Trilobite bed to the Eau Claire grit	240
From the Eau Claire grit to the granite (at Eau Claire), estimated	100
Total	740

The last division is probably much thicker to the south and west, making the thickness of the formation range to 800 and 1,000 feet.[1]

The report of Prof. Wooster contains details of numerous local sections that show the lithologic and paleontologic characters of the formation.

The outcrops in Iowa are the continuation of those of southwestern Wisconsin; and very little is added to the knowledge of the formation in Minnesota, where it is called the St. Croix sandstone by Prof. N. H. Winchell. At Winona and Stockton there are about 303 feet of the formation exposed.[2]

A generalized section in Minnesota, as given by Prof. Winchell,[3] is as follows:

		Feet.	
St. Croix	Jordan sandstone	75–100	= Madison of Wisconsin.
	St. Lawrence limestone	0– 30	= Mendota of Wisconsin.
	Dresbach sandstone and shales	200.	
Shales		(?)	

CANADIAN EXTENSION.

In the account of a deep boring at Rosenfeld Station, on the Canadian Pacific Railway, Dr. G. M. Dawson correlates the upper portion of the section with the Maquoketa shales, beneath which occurs the Galena limestone, passing below into Trenton and then to the St. Peters sandstone. Below this, before reaching the granite, there are 110 feet of dark red, reddish and greenish, bluish and grayish shales, passing below into red shales, which are referred with doubt to the Lower Magnesian limestone.[4] Whether the St. Croix sandstone is represented in this section can not be determined in the absence of paleontologic evidence, but it is not improbable that the horizon of the St. Croix and the Lower Magnesian limestone of the Minnesota section may both be included between the limestone and the granite at the bottom of the well.

[1] Op. cit., p. 112.

[2] The Geology of Minnesota, vol. 1 of the final report. 1884, p. 258.

[3] Winchell, N. H.: 14th Ann. Rep. Minn. Geol. and Nat. Hist. Survey, 1886, pp. 325–337.

[4] On certain borings in Manitoba and the Northwest Territory. Royal Soc. Canada, Proc. and Trans., vol. 4, section 4, 1887, p. 86.

LAKE SUPERIOR SANDSTONE.

The earlier geologists speak of the Keweenawan series and the horizontal Lake Superior sandstones as forming part of the same terrane, and this view has been sustained by some more recent writers. Many others, however, have held the view that the horizontal sandstones were the equivalents of the fossiliferous sandstones beneath the Magnesian limestone of central Wisconsin, and that the sandstones of the Keweenawan series were unconformably subjacent to the horizontal sandstones. Prof. R. D. Irving, taking the latter view, says:

> The constant horizontality of the sandstone series, its restriction to low levels, the actual unconformity visible in Douglas County, the proximity of the horizontal sandstones to the enormously thick perpendicular fragmental beds of the Montreal River, and the relations of the two series on the St. Louis appear to amount to demonstration. In the Thunder Bay region the Canada geologists have proved a similar nonconformity, and Sir William Logan's arguments would seem to show that the same is true for the southeastern shore of the lake. That it may at times be difficult to tell whether we have to do with the Keweenawan or the newer sandstones is undoubtedly true in some of those cases where the Keweenawan beds have a low inclination, but such cases of difficulty are rare.[1]

Of the relation of the horizontal sandstones on the north side of the Wisconsin pre-Cambrian area and the fossiliferous sandstone on the southern side he says:[2]

> An absolute proof of their exact relations is wanting, because nowhere as yet have the two been traced into each other. Judging from the low altitude above the lake to which the Lake Superior sandstone has been seen reaching, it appears improbable that any connection ever existed between the two formations in the Wisconsin-Minnesota region. * * * It appears, on the whole, that the evidence is all in favor of an approximate equivalency of the Lake Superior and Mississippi Valley Potsdam sandstones. It seems probable to me, with my present knowledge of the facts, that they were deposited in always disconnected basins, and that their sharply contrasted lithological peculiarities are to be explained by corresponding differences in the ancient rocks from whose ruins they are built.

Under the designations of the "Eastern sandstone" and "Western sandstone" Prof. Irving describes the horizontal sandstones of the south shore of Lake Superior. By the "Eastern sandstone" he means sandstone that fills the valley between the Keweenaw or main trap range of Michigan and the so-called south range. The eastern end of this depression is occupied by the waters of Keweenaw Bay. The sandstones skirt the shores in a band varying in breadth from a few rods to 1 or 2 miles, the older crystalline rocks occasionally reaching down to the lake. These conditions prevail as far eastward as Marquette, beyond which point to the eastward sandstone forms all of the shore cliffs as far as the Sault.[3]

---

[1] Geological Structure of Northern Wisconsin. [2] General geology of the Lake Superior Region. Geology of Wis., Survey of 1873–'79, vol. 3, 1880, p. 23.

[2] Op. cit., pp. 24, 25.

[3] The Copper-bearing Rocks of Lake Superior, U. S. Geol. Surv., Monograph, vol. 5, 1883, p. 351.

The characters of the sandstone and its relation to the superjacent rock are stated as follows:

The sandstones of the Keweenaw Bay and its vicinity, and eastward thence to White Fish River, are reddish and often highly argillaceous. At White Fish River the red sandstone is overlain by a light-colored sandstone, which is in turn succeeded by a magnesian limestone, in which are casts of Pleurotomaria. This limestone is the Lower Magnesian of the Wisconsin reports and the Calciferous sandrock of the Eastern States. That it is succeeded in regular order by the fossiliferous limestones of the Trenton, Cincinnati, and Niagara groups was long since shown, and has been demonstrated anew of late years by the labors of the geological surveyors of Wisconsin and Michigan. There thus seems little room for doubt as to the correctness of the view held for years by a succession of geological workers in the Lake Superior region from Owen to Rominger, viz, that in the Eastern sandstone we have to do with the same formation, or with its downward continuation, as the fossiliferous Cambrian sandstone which, in the Mississippi Valley, forms the base of the Paleozoic column.[1]

The Western sandstones, or those of the Apostle Islands and the adjoining coast of Bayfield, Douglas, and Pine Counties, are composed of a horizontally placed sandstone, closely resembling in character the Eastern sandstone of Keweenaw Point. The exposures of the sandstone are almost entirely restricted to the vicinity of the shores of the lake, on the mainland, and the Apostle Islands, and have never been seen reaching more than 50 feet above the lake level. Farther west, however, in Douglas County, the horizontal sandstone reaches to 360 feet above the lake.[2] Prof. Irving states that the prevailing color of this rock is some shade of red, from bright brick red to a brownish red or purplish red. Pinkish, straw-colored, and even nearly pure white varieties occur, either blotching the ordinary red rock in small patches, or occurring in layers from an inch to 2 or 3 feet in thickness. A section typical of many of the cliff exposures of the lake shore is as follows:

	Ft.	In.
Red marly clay (Quaternary)	5	0
Shaly sandstone, in layers from one-fourth to one-half inch thick; light reddish to brown, medium-grained, chiefly made up of subangular quartz grains	4	9
Compact sandstone	2	0
Shaly sandstone	0	3
Compact sandstone; pinkish and moderately coarse-grained, chiefly made up of quartz grains, but many white clay spots, indicating the decomposed feldspar	2	0
	14	0

The shaly and massive layers are, however, not constant, and either will grade into the other in a short distance, the shaly kinds being often merely a result of weathering. Often the massive layers have a thickness of 5 feet and upwards, and lie together in considerable thicknesses without intervening thin-laminated seams. In many places round bunches of red clay, from an inch to several feet in diameter, are seen imbedded in the massive sandstone. In other cases the clay lies in limited and

[1] Op. cit., pp. 351, 352.

[2] The Lake Superior Sandstone. [Geology of the Eastern Lake Superior District.] Geol. Wisconsin, vol. 3, 1880, p. 207.

very irregular seams, from a fraction of an inch to several inches thick. Some of the round clay patches appear as if formed by the decomposition of granite or gneiss bowlders imbedded in the sandstone at the time of its formation.[1]

In speaking of these same sandstones Mr. E. T. Sweet says:

In regard to the *age of the Lake Superior sandstones*, but very little in deed can be learned in the western Lake Superior district. So far as my observations have extended, the sandstones are absolutely devoid of organic remains. They are removed many miles and are separated by intervening older formations from the unmistakable Lower Silurian strata.

He considers it has been conclusively shown that the sandstones are of more recent age than the Keweenawan strata.[2]

Dr. C. Rominger concluded from his studies of the Lake Superior sandstone that its Lower Silurian age was unequivocally proved by its stratigraphic position. In its whole extent it is visibly overlaid by calcareous ledges containing fossils peculiar to the Calciferous formation, or, in other cases, by the Trenton limestone. He describes the sandstone east of the Copper Range of the Keweenaw Point and divides it into two sections, an upper and a lower one. He says:

The upper section is composed of light-colored, almost white, sandstones of generally soft, friable nature. The lower section is intensely red colored by iron pigment, and contains various hard, compact ledges, which are valuable building stones. West of Marquette only the lower section of the group is developed; east of it the heights are formed by the upper division; the lower has exclusive possession of the shore as far as Grand Island Bay. East of Grand Island Bay the upper division sinks down to the level of the water, and only in limited spots the lower red-colored strata come to the surface.[3]

On Laughing Whitefish River a section as determined by Dr. Rominger is as follows in ascending order:

	Feet.
No. 1.—Alternations of thin-bedded, hard, often micaceous sandstone slabs, with arenaceous shales (as exposed)	25
No. 2.—A fine-grained, more or less argillaceous red sandstone in layers of 1 to 3 feet in thickness with seams of red shales	12
No. 3.—A hard, coarser-grained, red, or speckled sandstone in heavy ledges up to 4 and 5 feet in thickness, amounting in the aggregate to 15 or 20 feet	15–20
No. 4.—Light-colored, middling soft sandstone in thick layers with seams of quartz pebbles, followed by a few feet of a dark and coarse conglomerate; thickness not accurately ascertained	00
No. 5.—A series of thin-bedded, soft, whitish sandstones, each layer separated from the other by a narrow seam of blnish shale	75–100
No. 6.—Massive soft white sandrock, projecting in vertical walls	50

Directly above this, strata of the Calciferous sandrock occur with casts of Pleurotomaria.[4]

This section of Dr. Rominger's is not altogether complete, but it shows conclusively that the Lake Superior sandstone in the vicinity of Mar-

[1] Lake Superior sandstone [Geology of the Western Lake Superior district]. Geology of Wisconsin, Survey of 1873–'79, vol. 3, 1880, pp. 208, 209.
[2] Op. cit., pp. 351, 352.
[3] Paleozoic Rocks. Geol. Survey Michigan, Upper Peninsula, 1869–1873, vol. 1, pt. 3, 1873, pp. 80–83.
[4] Op. cit., pp. 88–90.

quette, or east of Marquette, occupies the exact stratigraphic position of the fossiliferous St. Croix or "Potsdam" sandstone of Wisconsin. The description of the character and geologic equivalency of the sandstones of the south shore of Lake Superior as given by Prof. Chamberlin accords with the view I had formed from the study of the literature pertaining to the subject. Although not considering it proved that the two sandstones are exactly contemporaneous, I think that for all practical geological classification they may be considered equivalent deposits. This view is so well expressed by Prof. Chamberlin that it is here quoted:

Lake Superior sandstone.—The sandstones on the southern side of the Archean Island are light-colored, being mainly yellow or white, varying locally to pink, brown, and green. They are nowhere bodily dark. An easy explanation of this is found in the fact that they were derived from the light-colored quartzose and granitic rocks of the southern face of the land. But passing around to the Lake Superior Basin on the northern side of the island, where erosion preyed upon the iron-bearing members of the Huronian series, and more especially upon the traps, sandstones, and shales of the copper-bearing series, the resulting beds are not only reddish brown in color, but contain a notable ingredient of iron and of shaly material derived from those formations. Indeed the deposit bears a very close external resemblance to the sandstones of the Keweenawan series, and the two have been considered as identical by able geologists.

Concerning the distinctness of the two formations we entertain no doubtful opinion. The Potsdam sandstone is habitually horizontal, while the Keweenawan is tilted, indicating that the latter partook of a general stratigrapical movement which did not affect the former, which, considering the attendant circumstances, is equivalent to saying that the horizontal sandstones were not then in existence. The observations of Mr. Sweet in Douglas County are further proof of this.[1] The Potsdam sandstone there abuts unconformably against the Keweenawan traps and contains pebbles derived from them, showing not only that they were earlier formed but that they were tilted and extensively eroded at the time the horizontal sandstones were formed. The local disturbance of the latter does not vitiate the force of the evidence when critically considered. Similar phenomena are presented along the southeastern face of the promontory of Keweenaw Point.[2]

Besides these stratigraphical evidences of distinctness, the microscopical observations of Prof. Irving and the chemical analyses of Mr. Sweet show an important constitutional distinction between them.[3] Whereas the Keweenawan sandstones are largely nonquartzose, the horizontal beds are highly quartziferous.

As the latter are traced eastward along the south shore of Lake Superior they are found, according to Dr. Rominger, to be interstratified with and graduated into the light-colored sandstones which prevail in the eastern portion of the upper peninsula of Michigan, and which are traceable into direct continuity with the light-colored sandstones of Wisconsin. The same geologist (as also Foster and Whitney) is authority for the statement that in the Keweenaw Valley Silurian limestone overlies this sandstone.

The southern light-colored sandstones, like their northern equivalents, abut un-

[1] Geol. Surv. Wis., vol. 3, pp. 340-347; also 350-352.

[2] This has recently been denied by Dr. M. E. Wadsworth, but more recent examination by experienced observers shows his discussion of the subject to be more pronunciative than trustworthy. Bulletin of the Museum of Comparative Zoology, at Harvard College, Geol. Series, vol. 1. The facts in detail as determined by the later observations will be found in Prof. Irving's forthcoming report on the copper-bearing series.

[3] Geol. Wis., vol. 3, pp. 15 and 350, and microscopical Pl. XIX A.

conformably against eroded cliffs of Keweenawan rock. At St. Croix Falls light-colored Potsdam sandstone containing characteristic fossils reposes unconformably upon and against Keweenawan cliffs and occupies depressions and valleys formed through its erosion. Conglomerates derived from it mark the junction of the two formations and contain Potsdam fossils. Hand specimens may be obtained, having Keweenawan rock for one side and Potsdam sandstone containing shells of *Lingulepis pinnaformis* for the other. The phenomena absolutely forbid any explanation based on faulting or intrusion

North of St. Croix Falls the same strata, sustaining a like stratigraphical relationship (though not seen in actual unconformable contact) may be traced more than half way across the Keweenawan series. Passing the remainder of the interval to Lake Superior the horizontal red sandstones are found abutting, in similar unconformable contact, against the eroded Keweenawan series as above stated. The accompanying section illustrates the general relationship, but only a careful study of the details can make clear the full force of the evidence.

When to these considerations there are added others less susceptible of brief statement, to which we are here confined, it appears that the distinctness of the horizontal Lake Superior sandstone from that of the Keweenawan system and the correctness of its reference to the Potsdam series is sustained by a weight of evidence that would not be seriously questioned but for complications with what we deem the misinterpretations of other geological features of the Lake Superior region. The modifications which the formation assumes in that region are precisely those which its method of derivation demands.[1]

CANADIAN EXTENSION.

On the geological map of the Dominion of Canada, published in 1882, the Nepigon series of rocks is colored Cambrian, both on the shores of Lake Superior and about Lake Nepigon. This is in accordance with the views of Dr. A. R. C. Selwyn.

MISSOURI.

The Cambrian rocks in Missouri occur in the southwestern portion of the State, about the Ozark Uplift. As far as known they are of Upper Cambrian age and consist of a sandstone that occurs beneath the third magnesian limestone, or Calciferous, and the fourth magnesian limestone of the Missouri survey, beneath which, according to Prof. G. C. Broadhead, there are other arenaceous and calcareous beds.

The third sandstone is doubtfully identified by Mr. F. B. Meek, in Miller County, as 6 feet of white sandstone, composed of rounded grains of quartz cemented in part by calcareous matter. Subjacent to this there are 27 feet of hard gray and light flesh-colored magnesian limestones in rugged, irregular beds from 5 to 8 feet in thickness.[2] In Morgan County the third sandstone is known to occur at a few localities, where it varies from 25 to 30 feet in thickness. The subjacent fourth magnesian limestone forms a bluff 150 feet high above the Osage River in the southwestern part of the county.[3]

[1] General geology. Historical geology. Paleozoic era. Geology of Wisconsin, survey of 1873–1879, vol. 1, 1883, pp. 122–124.

[2] Reports on the Geological Survey of the State of Missouri, 1855–1871, 1873, p. 127.

[3] Op. cit., p. 143.

In Madison, St. Francois, and Iron Counties, Prof. G. C. Broadhead found beneath the third magnesian limestone the following downward succession:

(3) Siliceous or grit-stone bed, with intercalated magnesian limestone.
(2) Marble beds.
(1) Sandstones, conglomerates, and shales.

In No. 3 *Lingulella lamborni* Meek has been found. The marble beds or No. 2 appear to be confined to the southwest quarter of Madison and the central and northern parts of Iron and extend into Reynolds County. The greatest thickness is not over 30 feet, and they are not always present.

No. 1 is confined chiefly to the northern part of Iron and Madison, extending to St. Francois. The entire thickness of this as well as the regular order of its various beds is rather difficult to arrive at. But we find both in Iron and Madison Counties coarse conglomerates resting on granite and porphyry. We also find sandstones, which are sometimes very coarse, and at other times fine grained, resting on conglomerates. We also find shale or slate beds reposing on granite and underlying sandstone. Similar shale beds are also intercalated with the sandstone. In the neighborhood of Mine La Motte this sandstone reaches to over 100 feet in thickness, and is also found to be the lowest rock directly resting on the granite. Borings with diamond drill on the Mine La Motte property indicate magnesian limestone, with some siliceous beds, 80 feet; sandstone, 63 feet; granite.

On St. Francois River, in Madison County, these lower sandstones rest directly on the granite and are unaltered; on Twelve-Mile Creek, Madison County, the marble beds and sandstones rest unaltered on the porphyry, and on Big Creek, Iron County, heavy beds of unaltered magnesian limestone rest directly on the porphyry.[1]

At the deep well of the St. Louis County insane asylum, beneath the third magnesian limestone, the drill passed through, going down—

98 feet of third sandstone.
384 feet of fourth magnesian limestone.
54 feet of Potsdam sandstone.

At the base of the sandstone it entered what was supposed to be granite, although the line of demarkation between the sandstone and the granite was not well defined.[2]

In the descriptive geology of Madison County Prof. Broadhead states that the sedimentary rocks were deposited across the valleys between the mountains and the hills (that is, of the old pre-Cambrian land surface). The order of deposition, commencing at the oldest, is—

(1) Sandstones, conglomerates, and shales.
(2) Marble beds.
(3) Grit-stone beds and rough beds of magnesian limestone.

Above this comes the magnesian limestone referred to the Calciferous.

In the vicinity of Fredericktown there is a series of grits between the grit-stone beds and the superjacent magnesian limestone in which *Lingulella lamborni* has been found. It is stated that in the lower portion

[1] Geological Survey Missouri, including field work of 1873–1874, vol. 1, 1874, pp. 31, 32.
[2] Op. cit., p. 32.

of the magnesian limestone *Lingula lamborni*, Orthoceras, a turbinated Gasteropod, and a coral, resembling in cross-section a Zaphrentis, were observed. He states that probably this magnesian limestone can also be included in the Potsdam zone.[1] This includes all the limestones up to the base of the recognized third magnesian limestone.

A more detailed account of this lower marble belt is given by the same writer in a description of the marbles of southeastern Missouri. The most typical section is that of the northern part of Madison County, which is summed up as follows:

(1) Magnesian limestone.
(2) Eighteen feet of thick beds of siliceous dolomite and thin shaly limestone, with *Lingula lamborni*.
(3) Twenty-three feet of gritty dolomite.
(4) Five to thirty feet of marble.
(5) Five to forty feet (as much as 90 feet near Mine La Motte) of sandstone.
(6) A few feet of slaty sandstone resting on granite.

The presence of *Lingula lamborni* in beds a little above the marble will certainly assign the marble beds to the Potsdam group.[2]

EASTERN BORDER OR ADIRONDACK SUB-PROVINCE AND ITS CANADIAN EXTENSION.

The geographic distribution of the Potsdam terrane about the Adirondacks is delineated on the geological map of New York accompanying the final report in 1842, and that of the Canadian extension on the small map accompanying the 1863 report of Sir W. E. Logan and the large map of Messrs. Logan and Hall, published in 1866.[3]

On the western side of the Adirondacks the outcropping of the sandstone is first seen in the northern part of Lewis County, where it rests unconformably upon the subjacent Archean rocks and passes above into the calcareous layers of the Calciferous formation. The outcrop broadens to the north in Jefferson and St. Lawrence Counties and extends around the northern side of the Adirondack area through Franklin and Clinton Counties to Lake Champlain. The exposures on the eastern side are more or less interrupted, and rarely occur upon the eastern side of the lake in Vermont, except in Addison and Rutland Counties. On the southwestern side outcrops occur in Washington, Warren, and Saratoga Counties.

The Franklin and Clinton County area extends across the boundary into Canada, forming quite an extended exposure within the triangle formed by the St. Lawrence and the St. John's Rivers and the boundary, and at one point it crosses to the north of the St. Lawrence River. From St. Lawrence County the sandstone crosses the river and extends along the western side of the Ottawa Basin.

[1] Geological Survey Missouri, including field work of 1873–1874, vol. 1, 1874, pp. 357, 358.
[2] Marble of Southeast Missouri. Kansas City Review, vol. 5, 1882, pp. 525, 526.
[3] Geological map of Canada and part of the United States from Hudson's Bay to Virginia and from the Missouri River to Newfoundland. Montreal, 1866.

The typical sections are those of Potsdam, in St. Lawrence County; Chateaugay Chasm, in Franklin County; Au Sable Chasm, in Essex County, and Greenfield, in Saratoga County, in the State of New York, and Hemmingford, in Canada.

Section at Potsdam.—At the type locality of the terrane at Potsdam, in St. Lawrence County, there are but 60 or 70 feet of the rock exposed. It occurs in layers from an inch or two in thickness up to 2 feet, and the general color of the mass is yellowish brown to reddish brown, particularly the latter color in the thicker layers.

Section at Chateaugay Chasm.—At Chateaugay Chasm, Franklin County, one of the best sections of the formation upon the northern slopes of the Adirondacks is exposed. I studied it in 1888 and found that 5 miles south of the Ogdensburg and Lake Champlain Railway the pre-Cambrian rocks are to be seen on the hills west of the river and in a few small outcrops about one-half a mile to the north. It is a bedded, reddish gneissoid and hornblendic rock, probably of Algonkian age. Nearly one mile south of these outcrops the Potsdam sandstone appears in the bed of the river, with a northwest dip of about 3°. The exposures increase rapidly in thickness, and bluffs from 50 to 75 feet in height, formed of evenly-bedded layers, rise above the water. The river has worn a cañon through these beds for three-quarters of a mile down to a mill and pond, where the cliffs break away, and the strata, losing their dip, continue to the south, in nearly horizontal beds, to the crossing of the railroad embankment.

The fall in the river bed is rapid, and at the High Falls of the Chateaugay Chasm a bluff of 125 feet rises from the foot of the fall. The lower 35 feet of the section is formed of coarse reddish and gray sandstone in massive layers. At the Narrows, three fourths of a mile farther down the stream, the lower beds are 75 feet in thickness and pass into massive bedded grayish and buff-colored sandstones that break up into thinner layers on exposure to the action of the weather. Many of the massive beds are made up of irregular cross-bedded layers; this is best seen about a mile below the falls. The strata below assume a southwesterly dip of 2° to 3°, which carries the entire sandstone formation beneath a hard light gray sandstone a little north of the mouth of the chasm. One hundred and fifty feet of sandstone, not included in the section above the railroad embankment, is exposed in the chasm and 25 feet of the upper beds occur below the mouth of the chasm. This gives a total thickness of 250 feet of sandstone as the known thickness of the Chateaugay section. To this there is to be added an unknown amount at the base and 25 feet of passage beds between the upper sandstone and Calciferous sandrock, to be seen just above the entrance of Marble River into the Chateaugay.

SECTION.

(From the base upward.)

	Feet.
(1) Coarse sandstone with occasional layers of conglomerate near the base..... Color reddish brown near the base, buff, gray, and buff and gray, spotted with grains of reddish brown sand. Texture compact and hard, with bands of a soft friable nature.	75
(2) Massive bedded, grayish and buff, rather coarse sandstone, many of the layers cross-bedded	150
(3) Compact, fine-grained white sandstone, some of the layers of which are discolored and broken by small reddish brown cavities. *Lingulepis acuminata* occurs in the upper portion, and 10 feet higher up *Ophileta compacta*, *Dikelocephalus* sp. ?, *Ptychaspis* sp. ?	25

The stratigraphic exposures are not continuous, the section being broken in places by concealment under the drift. Nos. 1 and 2 are fairly well connected by lithologic features and No. 3 rests on typical strata of No. 2, only a short distance intervening between the outcrops. No. 3 is well shown on Marble River one mile southeast of the Chateaugay Chasm, and the Calciferous sandrock is shown a little farther down the stream. The species found in the upper part of No. 3 are identical with those found in the limestones of the Upper Cambrian in Saratoga County, New York and fully prove that the fauna of the Potsdam sandstone is the same as that of the St. Croix sandstones of Wisconsin.

Section in Hemmingford.—To the northeast of Chateaugay, across the boundary, in Hemmingford, Canada, a section of the sandstone according to Sir W. E. Logan, is 540 feet in thickness. On the south side of Hemmingford Mountain about 180 feet of a coarse gray sandstone are visible, in some parts constituting a conglomerate, with rounded pebbles of white quartz, varying in diameter from an eighth to three-quarters of an inch, while in some parts of the rock there are thinly disseminated flat pieces of black or green shale 1 or 2 inches in diameter by an eighth of an inch thick. The general color of the rock is gray, but greenish and reddish beds occur, and the three colors sometimes follow one another in thin stripes with various alternations. Above the strata of the ravine the hill contains about 120 feet of gray sandstone, the lower half of which is rather coarse grained, and below the same strata 240 feet. Neither the base nor the summit of the sandstone was observed.[1] Farther to the north along the shore of the St. Lawrence occur the celebrated fossil track localities described by Logan.

Section at Keeseville and in Au Sable Chasm.—About one-quarter of a mile above the village of Keeseville, on the Au Sable River, a rounded boss of granite shows on the south bank. Nearly 400 feet lower down the stream, on the opposite side, an evenly bedded and cross-bedded

[1] Geological Survey of Canada: Report of Progress from its commencement to 1863. Montreal, 1863, p. 88.

compact gray sandstone occurs, lying in nearly horizontal beds. Lower down they dip 3° to 5° to the northeast. This dip increases to 7° to 8° at the iron bridge. Following across the strike down the stream to where the beds are horizontal, above the entrance to the Chasm, the measured section shows 333 feet in thickness from near the granite to the highest beds observed.

The section as measured from the mouth of the Au Sable Chasm to the summit beds above the fault is as follows:

SECTION.

	Feet.
(1) Compact, fine-grained, steel-gray, buff, and light gray sandstone, in layers from 6 inches to 5 feet in thickness (20 layers). Strike N. 30° E. Dip. 5° E.	45
(2) Massive layers, light gray, fine-grained sandstone, very hard, breaking up into thin layers, ½ to 3 inches thick	6
(3) Compact, gray sandstone in three layers; 1 foot 5 inches, 1 foot 6 inches, 2 feet 1 inch	5
(4) Light gray and buff sandstone, three layers	4·6
(5) Light gray compact sandstone, with *Lingulepis acuminata*, Conrad. Strike N 30° E. Dip 5° E., at foot of rapids.	1
(6) Light gray, fine-grained, compact sandstone, in layers varying from 6 inches to 18 inches in thickness	6
(7) Of the same general character as 6, in massive layers, breaking up into thin layers on exposure. Occasional layers contain many small, flat concretions of clay shale and also fragments of Lingulepis. At 34 feet from the base *Hyolithes primordialis?* and *Lingulepis acuminata* occur near the boat-landing in the Chasm. Thirty-five feet higher up in the same light gray compact sandstone *L. antiqua* occurs in association with *Ptychoparia minuta*	117

At this line a fault breaks the section with a down-throw to the northeast. The river and Chasm follow the fault from the Elbow to the Devil's Oven, where the section is taken up again.

(1) Massive layers of light gray, hard, compact sandstone. Prof R. P. Whitfield found at this horizon *Palæacmæa typica, Ptychoparia minuta*	30
(2) Evenly bedded gray, buff, and yellowish sandstone, hard, compact and in layers 1 to 4 feet in thickness	165
(3) Thinner bedded gray and buff sandstone, with Protichnites tracks above the mill-dam and above the bridge at Birmingham. Strike NE.; dip 5° SE.	45

Ripple marks are very numerous and *Lingulepis acuminata* is abundant 15 feet above the Protichnites bed, and extends about 25 feet to the top of the section. Some of the layers are a little calcareous and full of annelid trails and borings.

Estimating the amount of repetition of strata in the two sections there remains a lower series of 210 feet, and an upper of 140 feet, or a total thickness of 350 feet with the summit and base of the formation unseen.

Section at Whitehall.—There is a fine section exposed at Whitehall, New York, that serves to correlate the sections of Chateaugay and Au Sable Chasm. At the former the upper fauna is present and at Au Sable Chasm the *Ptychoparia minuta* subfauna. At Whitehall the

upper fauna occurs in the upper portion of No. 17 of the following section and the lower in the lower part of No. 15. This is the relative position of the same subfaunas in the Wisconsin section.

Section beginning below lower lock of canal at Whitehall:

	Ft.	In.
(1) Massive bedded, compact, dark steel gray sandstone, almost a quartzite.	25	0
(2) Dark clay shale	0	6
(3) Bluish gray, brecciated limestone	0	6
(4) Fine grained, compact, steel gray limestone	1	0
(5) Compact, arenaceous limestone	3	0
(6) Compact, fine grained, steel gray sandstone in layers of 6 inches to 3 feet. Partings of coarser sandstone and small, flattened clay concretions occur, also streaks of light-colored sandstone in the layers, and cross-bedding is of common occurrence	14	5
Annelid trails on the surface of the layers. Strike N. 20° E.; dip 6° to 8° E.		
(7) Calciferous sandstone in one layer	2	7
(8) Fine grained, compact, steel gray sandstone	20	0
(9) Thin bedded sandstone and clay shale	1	3
(10) Compact, gray and purplish, fine grained sandstone, streaked with dark sandstone and shaly matter; slightly calcareous in places	16	6
(11) Dark gray calciferous layers, weathering to a reddish brown sandstone.. Annelid trails and borings.	2	0
(12) Gray, compact sandstone	1	3
(13) Dark gray, calciferous layers, weathering to a reddish brown sandstone. Annelid trails and borings.	1	4
(14) Hard, compact, gray sandstone, in evenly bedded layers 6 inches to 3 feet in thickness of the division of the typical Potsdam sandstone. Summit near crossing of private roadway	59	8
(15) Sandstones similar to 14, but with few alternating calcareous layers; the calcareous matter decomposing and leaving streaks of reddish and brown rocks in the layers	113	0
Ripple marks occur on the surface of many layers and annelid trails on the calcareous strata, About 30 feet up found *Palæacmæa typica*, H. and W. Strike 25° E.; dip 10° E. The light gray compact limestone, with the little flattened concretions of clay and the cross-bedding, give this portion of the section a striking resemblance to that of the upper 150 feet of the Keeseville section.		
(16) Lead colored calciferous sandstone, weathering rough	0	5
(17) Alternating, gray, compact, fine grained sandstone, reddish coarse sandstone and finer calcareous sandy layers. *Lingulepis acuminata* and *Ptychoparia* sp ? occur in the upper layers, about 40 feet up	70	0
	332	5

Calciferous.

(18) Calciferous sandstone with a massive bedded light gray compact sandstone; at top 10 feet thick	40	
The upper 30 feet of 17 and all of 18 may be considered as the passage beds to the calciferous sandstone above.		
(1) Lead colored, massive bedded, calciferous sandstone	230	
(2) Lead colored, brecciated limestone overlain by a compact light gray limestone	20	
	290	

Section at Saratoga.—The section, as determined north and west of Saratoga Springs, and north as far as Corinth, New York, has, at the base, about 200 feet of evenly bedded, compact, grayish to yellowish colored sandstone, that rests unconformably against or upon spurs or ridges of pre-Cambrian gneiss. Including the upper beds of sandstone, the section 3 miles north of Saratoga village gives in ascending order:

	Feet.
(1) Sandstone	40
(2) Oolitic limestone	30
(3) Dark gray, evenly bedded limestone	50
(4) Unfossiliferous, impure, compact, more or less siliceous limestone	95
(5) Massive-bedded, slightly magnesian, gray and dove colored limestones with numerous small, narrow-chambered cephalopods near the summit	35
(6) Massive layers of steel-gray, more or less arenaceous limestone	125
(7) Bird's-eye limestone	6
(8) Black River limestone	4
(9) Trenton limestone	40

The limestone (2, 3) capping the sandstone (1) of the section is also found at Whitehall and at Comstock's Landing, Washington County, New York, where it has been, as was the limestone (2, 3), referred to the Calciferous. The limestone 2 and 3 appears to have been, on the southwestern side of the Adirondack Mountains, the closing deposit of the Cambrian; and there is but little doubt that if we could find a fauna in the limestone (4) of the section it would serve to connect the Cambrian and Lower Silurian (Ordovician) faunas.[1]

The following fauna was found in No. 3 of the section:

Cryptozoa proliferum.
Lingulepis acuminata.
Platyceras minutissimum.
hoyti.
Metoptoma cornutiforme.
simplex.
Billingsia saratogensis.
Matthevia variabilis.
Dikelocephalus hartti.
speciosus.
Ptychoparia calcifera.
(A.) saratogensis.

The comparison of the Chateaugay Chasm section with that of Saratoga County proves very clearly by the included faunas that the Potsdam epoch closed on the south side of the Adirondacks with a deposit of limestone carrying the Dikelocephalus fauna. It is found in the upper beds of the quartzite on Marble River in the township of Chateaugay, and in each section the Calciferous formation is superjacent to the closing epoch of the Potsdam.

The greatest depth reached in the formation is that of the section of Hemmingford Mountain. Unfortunately this section has not been studied so as to determine whether there is any fauna present in the sandstones. The section at Au Sable Chasm, however, shows that a second horizon of the Upper Cambrian fauna occurs about the Adirondacks. This is the zone of *Ptychoparia minuta*, corresponding to the zone of *Ptychoparia minor* of the Wisconsin section.

[1] Second contribution to the studies of the Cambrian faunas of North America. U. S. Geol. Survey Bull. No. 30, 1886, p. 22.

The presence of the Potsdam terrane on the south side of the Adirondacks, along the valley of the Mohawk, has not been positively proved. At Little Falls a thin layer of sandstone, resting unconformably upon the pre-Paleozoic rocks and beneath the Calciferous sandrock, has been referred to the Potsdam. The discovery by Profs. Shaler and Williams of a thin layer of shale, resting upon this layer of sandstone, on the north side of the river at Little Falls, in which specimens of *Lingulepis acuminata* occur, lends more authority for the statement that the Potsdam is present; but as the species *Lingulepis acuminata* ranges up into the Calciferous sandrock, both at Whitehall, New York, and on the north side of the Adirondack Mountains in St. Lawrence County, it is doubtful if we can claim the presence of the Potsdam at any point in the Mohawk Valley. There is not, however, any definite reason why a thin bed of it, with the typical Potsdam fauna, should not be found beneath the Calciferous, if it is not concealed by the overlap of the superjacent Calciferous and Trenton terranes.

The sediments of the Adirondack sub-Province and its Canadian extension, with a single exception, were accumulated in a shallow sea not far removed from the shore-line. Ripple-marked sandstones and trails of marine invertebrates occur. The sandstone is relatively fine-grained with the exception of a small deposit of conglomerate in St. Lawrence County, New York. The formation belongs to the Upper Cambrian, and overlaps upon the sloping shores of the pre Cambrian land. The one exception to the arenaceous deposit are the limestones in Saratoga County, New York, which were deposited on sandstone and overlap on to the pre Cambrian rocks. The fauna of the limestone is the same as that of the quartzite at Marble River, near Chateaugay Chasm, on the northern side of the Adirondacks.

WESTERN BORDER OR ROCKY MOUNTAIN SUB-PROVINCE.

This includes the Cambrian rocks of South Dakota, southern central Montana, central and northwestern Wyoming, and Colorado.

SOUTH DAKOTA.

The chief summary of our knowledge of the Cambrian rocks of the Black Hills of Dakota is taken from the reports of Messrs. Newton and Carpenter. The sandstone identified as the "Potsdam" is the lowest member of the fossiliferous series, and in numerous and excellent exposures its character and relations are easily determined and studied. It everywhere rests unconformably upon the upturned edges of the underlying Algonkian slates and schists, filling up irregularities in their surfaces, and its basal member is generally formed of coarse materials derived from the erosion of the subjacent rocks. Consisting mainly of coarse and friable sandstones, with conglomerates easily eroded, it covers superficially very limited areas.

By a reference to the geological map accompanying the report of Mr. Henry Newton the exposures of the "Potsdam" sandstone will be seen

to form a very narrow band surrounding the "Archean" area. Though essentially a sandstone formation it has some variety of composition. Usually it carries a conglomerate at the base, but this is sometimes exchanged for a dense quartzite, and in many places there are interstratified beds of quartzite. In a few localities the formation is quite calcareous and in a great number it contains peculiar greensand deposits. Its thickness is quite uniform, ranging generally from 200 to 250 feet, but attaining to 300 feet on the north branch of Redwater Creek. Complete sections from the "Archean" to the Carboniferous are rarely met with, but one measured in the eastern cañon of Spring Creek by Mr. Jenney is as follows:[1]

Archean.

	Feet.
(1) Argillaceous slates, dipping 60° west	

Potsdam.

(2) Brownish yellow conglomerate, with quartz pebbles, resting unconformably on 1 and dipping 25° northeast	25
(3) Reddish brown sandstone, thinly bedded at base and alternating with soft, shaly sandstones, containing large fucoids, Lingulepis, and fragments of trilobites	200

Carboniferous.

(4) Reddish brown, or pinkish calcareous sandstone, thinly bedded, containing *Spirifera camerata*, cyathophylloid corals, and crinoid columns	20
(5) Limestone: *Spirifera camerata*, Productus, etc	335

Many details are given of the local phenomena presented by the sedimentation and mode of occurrence of this formation; extended comparisons are made between it and the correlated sandstones about the Big Horn and Wind River Mountains of Wyoming, the sandstones of the Mississippi Valley, and the typical Potsdam sandstone about the Adirondacks of New York.

The following is a list of the fossils found in the sandstone and identified or described by Prof. R. P. Whitfield:[2]

Palæochorda prima.
Palæophycus occidentalis.
Palæophycus.
Scolithus.
Lingulepis pinnaformis.
cuneolus.
perattenuatus.
Lingulepis dakotensis.
Obolus? pectenoides.
Obolella polita.
nana.
Crepicephalus centralis.
planus.

Prof. F. R. Carpenter describes the "Potsdam" in the Black Hills as follows:

The present site of the uplift existed as a slowly sinking island in the Potsdam ocean, probably the last surviving land of a vast area eroded and submerged by

[1] Newton, Henry: Geology. Report on the Black Hills of Dakota. U. S. Geog. and Geol. Survey of the Rocky Mountain region, J. W. Powell in charge, 1880, p. 88.
[2] Op. cit., p. 107.

the advancing waters. The base of the Potsdam entirely around its outcrop is a conglomerate. The ocean advanced upon the land with an action that has been aptly termed that of a horizontal saw. The cliffs were undermined by its action, the débris thus formed worn to bowlders, to gravel, and to sand. As the shore-line advanced and a given point became farther from land, it received finer and finer sediments, until sedimentation, in this area at least, entirely ceased.[1]

He calls attention to the fact that the sandstone thins out towards the central portion of the Black Hills uplift. Near Harney Peak the last outliers are about 50 feet thick between the unconformable subjacent "Archean" rocks and the undisturbed conformable superjacent Carboniferous limestone.

WYOMING.

There has been comparatively little detailed information published relating to the Cambrian rocks of the Big Horn Mountains. Dr. F. V. Hayden visited the range in 1861 and found the nucleus composed of red feldspathic granite and a series of stratified Azoic rocks. Resting on these occur the sandstones which are referred to the "Potsdam." He found a few thin layers of fine calcareous sandstone filled with fossils characteristic of the period.[2] These were studied by F. B. Meek, who identified Conocoryphe and perhaps Dikelocephalus.[3]

According to Prof. T. B. Comstock, the sandstone referred to the Potsdam attains a thickness of about 200 feet in the region of the Wind River Mountains, and above the sandstone on the eastern side, along the central portion of the range is a series of limestones resting on the sandstone, having a thickness of about 200 feet. From specimens collected in the limestone he identified a trilobite of the genus Dikelocephalus, several specimens of what was supposed to be *Orthis tritonia*, and a quantity of a species of Theca.[4] As far as Prof. Comstock's observations extended the sandstone rested unconformably upon the subjacent metamorphic rocks.[5] On the map accompanying the report the "Potsdam" formation is represented as occurring all along the eastern side of the Wind River range, and also along the central portion of the western side. The latter occurrence, however, is denied by Dr. A. C. Peale.[6] Dr. Hayden noted in 1862 the presence of a sandstone resting upon the vertical edges of the Azoic clay slate series in the Laramie Mountains, which he referred to the age of the Potsdam sandstone,

[1] Notes on the geology of the Black Hills. Preliminary Rep. Dakota School Mines, on the Black Hills of Dakota, 1888, p. 31.

[2] Hayden, F. V.: Sketch of the geology of the country about the headwaters of the Missouri and Yellowstone Rivers. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 31, 1861, p. 234.

[3] Meek, F. B.: Preliminary paleontological report with remarks on the ages of the rocks, etc. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., Sixth Ann. Rep., 1873, p. 465.

[4] Geological Report. Report upon the reconnoissance of northwestern Wyoming, made in the summer of 1873, by William A. Jones. 1874, pp. 108–110.

[5] Op. cit., p. 106.

[6] Report on the geology of the Green River district. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., 11th Ann. Rep., 1879, p. 524.

although no organic remains were found. In the vicinity of the headwaters of the Niobrara River he measured a section as follows:

	Feet.
(1) Quartzose sandstone, some parts filled with pebbles	22
(2) Red argillaceous slate	5
(3) Sandstone, dull reddish ferruginous, like bed 1, above	37
(4) A series of strata more or less inclined, composed of gneiss with silvery mica in large plates, micaceous and talcose slates, white quartz, etc.	

He states further that he has no doubt the Potsdam sandstone occurs in the form of an outcropping belt all along the Laramie range of mountains, although he was unable to discover any organic remains. He correlated it with the Potsdam on the evidence afforded by the Black Hills section of Dakota. The occurrence of the sandstone at this horizon is noted by him at numerous localities on the flanks of the Laramie Mountains.[1] In opposition to the view of Dr. Hayden may be cited that of Mr. Arnold Hague, who states that all paleontological evidence obtained from the beds associated with the quartzite and above them tend to show that they belong to the Coal-Measure limestone.[2]

In 1871 Dr. Hayden found Obolella and a Lingula in a considerable thickness of Potsdam sandstone on the south side of the Sweetwater River, near the southeastern termination of the Wind River Mountains, thus establishing by paleontologic evidence the Upper Cambrian or Potsdam age of the sandstone referred to that horizon in 1861.[3]

A small area of paleozoic rocks on the northwestern end of the Wind River range has, according to Prof. Orestes St. John, a sandstone at the base that rests on the Archean. It is coarse grained, grayish, buff, reddish stained, thin bedded, with oblique laminated layers and locally quartzitic. The greatest exposed thickness of this bed probably does not exceed 50 feet. Its exact relation to the underlying Archean rocks and to the superjacent strata referred to the Quebec was not determined.[4] On the diagrammatic section accompanying the report formation No. 2, or the Potsdam, is represented as resting unconformably upon the Archean and conformably subjacent to limestones referred to the Quebec.

The Cambrian strata of northwestern Wyoming are contained within the district of the Teton range, Gros Ventre range, and the Buffalo Fork Mountains, all of which are reported upon by Prof. St. John. He quotes Prof. Bradley in relation to the lower quartzite, stating it to be a very compact ferruginous quartzite, with a thickness of from 50 to 75 feet. Above this occurs about 300 feet of sandstone strata on the

[1] Hayden, F. V.: The Primordial Sandstone of the Rocky Mountains in the Northwestern Territories of the United States. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d series, vol. 33, 1862, pp. 70, 71.

[2] Descriptive Geology. U. S. Geol. Expl. of the Fortieth Par.; vol. 2. Washington, 1877, p. 76.

[3] Report of F. V. Hayden (on the geological survey of Wyoming). U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., 4th Ann. Rep., 1871, p. 33.

[4] Report on the geology of the Wind River district. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., 12th Ann. Rep., 1883, p. 253.

higher slopes of the mountains, according to Prof. Bradley, in the Teton range. The same series of deposits evidently occurs in the Gros Ventre range, and in the Buffalo Fork Peak uplift. In the Gros Ventre range the quartzites were seen in immediate contact with the unconformable Archean schists.[1]

The superjacent limestone, called the "Lower Quebec limestone" by Prof. St. John, occurs in the Teton range and the Gros Ventre. But it is in Buffalo Fork Peak that the best section was obtained. Here there is an exposed thickness of from 50 to 75 feet of bluish and dark drab, brecciated, thin bedded, rough weathering limestone, above which occurs what he calls the passage beds to the "Upper Quebec limestone." These beds are yellowish, arenaceous, micaceous clay, with indurated layers charged with a small orbiculoid shell and thin layers of dirty drab limestone, the weathered surfaces of which are crowded with the fragmentary remains of trilobites and other fossils. Among others there have been identified the genera Conocoryphe and Dikelocephalus. The upper portion of the deposit is here composed of bluish drab shales and brownish gray shaly sandstones. It reaches a probable thickness between 100 and 200 feet.

The superjacent limestone called the "Upper Quebec limestone" shows almost the same development in the Teton and Gros Ventre ranges and the Mount Putnam area of Idaho. The rock consists of generally thin bedded, fragmentary, sometimes brecciated limestones, color gray, grayish buff, and pinkish, carrying small sized trilobites and a gasteropod resembling Raphistoma. In the Teton range the series of rocks has a thickness of 100 feet or more, and forms mural exposures on the cañon walls.

A review of the reports of Messrs. Bradley and St. John shows that the Upper Cambrian horizon is to be recognized in the Teton, Gros Ventre, and Buffalo Peak Mountains, and that it is composed of a basal zone of varying thickness, upon which rests a limestone carrying Upper Cambrian fossils. This limestone is the equivalent of the "Lower Quebec" of Prof. St. John's section. His "Upper Quebec" is to be referred to the base of the Lower Silurian (Ordovician) or corresponding to the Calciferous zone of the New York section.

COLORADO.

The identification of rocks of Cambrian age in Colorado has been made, with one exception, upon stratigraphic and lithologic evidence. The exceptional instance is that mentioned by Mr. S. F. Emmons, who found a distinctly Upper Cambrian genus, Dikelocephalus, in a bed of greenish chloritic shale that he assumed to occur above the main body of the quartzite and near the base of the transition series that passes

[1] Report of the geological field work of the Teton division. U. S. Geol. Sur. of the Terr., 11th Ann. Rep., 1879, p. 481.

into the Silurian limestone.[1] He describes the strata in the Mosquito range referred provisionally to the Cambrian as follows:

The beds assigned provisorily to this horizon * * * are prevailingly of quartzite. To them, therefore, the local name of Lower Quartzite has been given. There average thickness is about 150 feet to 200 feet, of which the lower 100 feet are composed of finely and rather thinly bedded white saccharoidal quartzites, while the upper 50 feet are shaly in character and more or less argillaceous and calcareous, passing by almost imperceptible transition into the siliceous limestone of the Silurian formation above.

At the very base of the series, at the contact with the underlying Archean, wherever this could be observed, is found a persistent bed of fine grained conglomerate, from a few inches to a foot in thickness, made up of rounded and finely polished grains of bluish translucent quartz, generally not larger than a pea in size. Above this is a white quartzite of remarkably uniform and persistent character, always very readily distinguishable as a white band in the numerous sections offered by the cañon walls of the range. Its thickness, when measured on the west side of the range or near the Sawatch Island, is, as mentioned above, 100 feet of purely siliceous beds. On the east side of the range the thickness seems somewhat to diminish, and in places was found to be only 40 feet. * * *

Owing to their similar lithological character and to the general absence of fossil evidence it is difficult to establish a hard and fast line between this and the succeeding formation above. In practice the line has been drawn at the top of the shaly beds, and the commencement of the beds of more massive limestone. The transition beds consist essentially of alternating bands of calcareous quartzite and shales. The name sandy limestones is often applied to them for the reason that on weathered surfaces of the cliff faces they appear like sandstones, the carbonate of lime having been entirely washed out, and only the fine quartz grains left on the thin surface crust.[2]

As already stated, the only fossil remains found in this series occur in a bed of greenish chloritic shales on the east flank of Quandary Peak, about a mile above the Monte Cristo mine. They belong to the genus Dikelocephalus, and closely resemble *Dikelocephalus minnesotensis* of the Potsdam formation of Wisconsin. This band of shales was not found in stratigraphic relation to the quartzite of the limestone of the sections already mentioned, but it occurs above a heavy white quartzite and beneath a bed of white marbleized limestone; and, from analogy with other sections, Mr. Emmons thinks it safe to assume that it occurs above the main body of quartzite and near the base of the transition series.[3]

For the purpose of comparison, a section was measured by Mr. Whitman Cross, in William's Cañon, near Manitou Springs. Of this section Mr. Emmons says:

The purely siliceous beds at the base are much thinner than in the Mosquito Range, the greatest thickness found being 50 feet. They are succeeded by calcareous sandstones and shales of variegated colors, red prevailing, which pass up into white or drab limestones, sometimes containing chert secretions and alternating with shaly beds, with an aggregate thickness of about 200 feet. These beds may be considered as the equivalents of the lower quartzite and white limestone of the Mosquito Range.[4]

[1] Geology and mining industry of Leadville, Colorado. U. S. Geol. Surv., Monograph, vol. 12, 1886, p. 60.

[2] Op. cit., pp. 58, 59. [3] Op. cit., p, 60. [4] Op. cit., p. 62.

From the east bank of Trout Creek, in Manitou Park, Mr. Cross obtained fossils from a reddish brown sandstone, 45 feet above the Archean, among which an elongate form of Lingulepis, allied to *L. pinaformis* of the Potsdam sandstone of Wisconsin, occurs. From the red calcareous sandstones, alternating with white limestone, 105 to 122 feet above the Archean, the fauna is the type of that of the lower portion of the Lower Silurian (Ordovician).

Two sections measured on Trout Creek by Dr. A. C. Peale gave the following results:[1]

	No. 4.	No. 5.
	Feet.	*Feet.*
1. Granitic	.....	.....
2. Yellow sandstone	73	65
3. Pinkish sandstone		
4. Dark, purplish brown sandstone	16	13
5. Green sandstone	4	3
6. Blood-red calcareous sandstone	54	60
7. Pink limestones		

"Beds No. 6 and 7 are fossiliferous and belong in all probability to the Quebec group, while the sandstones below are Potsdam." A list of fossils is given as coming from No. 7 which indicates a grouping of Cambrian and Silurian (Ordovician) genera unknown elsewhere.

Dr. F. M. Endlich's synopsis of the rocks of the Potsdam group found in Colorado sums up all that was known to him of the principal localities and the character and thickness of the strata. Seven localities are mentioned, as follows:[2]

			Feet.
Potsdam Group.	Lime Creek	White sandstone and quartzite	250
	Eagle River	White quartzites	300 to 400
	Four-mile Creek	Red and pink sandstones and quartzites	160
	Trout Creek	Yellow and pink sandstones	80
	North of Mount Ouray	White and pink quartzites	200
	Near Canyon City	Variegated micaceous and calcareous sandstones.	.....
	Glen Eyrie	Red sandstones and quartzites	40
	Average thickness of strata		180

That the Upper Cambrian zone is represented is fairly well proved by the Mosquito Range section and that of Trout Creek of the Colorado Range, and it is very probable that the sandstones correlated with the

[1] Report of A. C. Peale, M. D., Geologist of the South Park Division. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., 7th Ann. Rep., 1874, p. 208.

[2] Report of F. M. Endlich, Geologist of the White River Division. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Terr., 10th Ann. Rep., 1878, p. 130.

Potsdam really belong within the Upper Cambrian horizon. From our present knowledge the Upper Cambrian zone is the only portion of the group represented in Colorado.

The Cambrian rocks included within the States of Colorado, Wyoming, Montana, and South Dakota are of the type of those of the southern Interior Continental, Upper Cambrian series, and consist usually of a bed of quartzite or conglomerate, resting unconformably upon the Algonkian or Archean, and passing above into calcareous beds that frequently carry the Upper Cambrian or Potsdam fauna. This is the case with the formation about the Big Horn Mountains, Wind River Mountains, and the Teton and Gros Ventre ranges of Wyoming. In some instances, however, as about the Black Hills, a fauna occurs in the basal sandstone similar in character to that of the St. Croix sandstone of the upper Mississippi Valley. Traces of a fauna were found in Colorado, at Quandary Peak, in a schistose rock that is supposed to occur just above the quartzite.

SOUTHWESTERN SUB-PROVINCE.

The widely separated areas of Cambrian rocks in Central Texas and northwestern Arizona are united in one sub-province on account of their similarity in stratigraphic position, general sedimentation, and faunas.

TEXAS.

With the exception of the doubtful occurrence of the Upper Cambrian zone as a sandstone in the Organ Mountains of southwestern Texas, as mentioned by Mr. W. P. Jenney, the Cambrian formation is, as far as known, confined to the Paleozoic uplift in the central part of the State that includes Llano County within its central portion.

A section of the formation measured by Dr. B. F. Shumard in Burnet County, 5 miles northwest of the town of Burnet, is as follows:[1]

	Feet.
No. 1.—Soft, chalky limestone with well marked cretaceous fossils	50
No. 2.—Gray and bluish gray hard limestone, of a sandy texture, in beds from a few inches to a foot thick, and containing *Arionellus* (*Bathyurus?*) *planus*, *Bathyurus depressus*, *Camerella* sp., *Orthis coloradoensis*, *Orthis* sp.?, *Discina microscopica*, and *Lingula* sp.?	81
No. 3.—Mottled gray, purple, and greenish, earthy and subcrystalline limestone, with alternating bands of siliceous limestone—contains the same fossils as No. 2	45
No. 4.—Slope with projecting ledges of No. 3	55
No. 5.—Slope	24
No. 6.—Schistose coarse textured limestone, made up of crystalline particles and abounding with fragments of trilobites, chiefly Arionellus	20
Total	275

[1] The Primordial zone of Texas, with descriptions of new fossils. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 32 1861, p. 216.

A second section, taken about 1 mile south of the preceding, is also quoted, as it carries the series down to the granite: [1]

	Feet.
No. 1.—Cretaceous strata in horizontal beds	110
No. 2.—Slope, covered with conglomerate, composed of pebbles of sandstone and calciferous sandrock, rather firmly cemented	12
No. 3.—Potsdam sandstone, consisting of thin layers of variegated green, gray, and purplish sandy limestone, with bands of dolomite and silico-calcareous rock interstratified. Some of the beds are highly charged with trilobites, of which the most common are *Arionellus texanus*, *Dikelocephalus roemeri*, and *Conocephalites billingsi*	40
No. 4.—Highly ferruginous siliceous sandstone, composed of fine grains, loosely cemented, passing downwards into coarse gritstone and conglomerate. The upper beds contain Lingula and Obolus (?)	60
No. 5.—Flesh colored granite, interstratified with veins of milky quartz	6

From the sections it will be observed that the strata consist largely of limestone, with a bed of sandstone at the base.

The section of Packsaddle Mountain, in Llano County, in the valley of Honey Creek, is given as follows by Mr. C. D. Walcott in 1884:[2]

	Feet.
5 = Potsdam limestone	60
4 = Potsdam sandstone	30
3 = Potsdam limestone	310
2 = Massive Potsdam sandstone	205
1 = Llano group.	
	605

The fauna collected included 12 genera and 25 species, all characteristic of the Upper Cambrian zone.

A comparison of the Texas section with that of the Grand Cañon of the Colorado, in northern Arizona, leads to the conclusion that they belong to the same area of sedimentation. In each a massive sandstone at the base is subjacent to alternating sandstones and limestones that carry essentially the same fauna. The sections of the lower sandstones of the eastern slopes of the Rocky Mountains partake somewhat of this character, especially those of the Big Horn range in Wyoming. In Wisconsin, etc., the calcareous beds of the Texas section are absent, but the presence of the Dikelocephalus fauna at the summit of each series above a zone carrying what may be called the *Ptychoparia minor* fauna, proves that the life of the two areas continued on in the same succession despite the change in sedimentation and environment.

In a report on the Cambrian system Prof. T. B. Comstock concludes that at least two and probably three series of Cambrian strata are represented in central Texas.[3] To the basal beds he gives the name Hickory series (Lower Cambrian?). For the second horizon the name Riley series (Middle Cambrian?), and for the upper series the name

[1] Op. cit p. 217.

[2] Note on Paleozoic rocks of central Texas. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 28, 1884, p. 432.

[3] A preliminary report on the geology of the central mineral region of Texas. 1st Ann. Rep. Geol. Surv. of Texas for 1889–'90, pp. 285–291.

Katemcy (Potsdam) series (Upper Cambrian?). This upper series is divided into Division A, the Potsdam sandstone; Division B, the Potsdam flags; Division C, the Potsdam limestone.

ARIZONA.

As far as known the Cambrian rocks of Arizona are confined to the sections exposed by the Grand Cañon of the Colorado and along the southwestern margin of the great Colorado Cañon plateau.

A section measured near the head of the Grand Cañon has 300 feet of sandstone at the base that rests unconformably upon the subjacent Algonkian (Chuar) formation. Above the sandstone there are 700 feet of alternating sandstones, shales, and limestones throughout which fossils of the Upper Cambrian zone have been found. These include the genera Cruziana, Lingulepis, Iphidea, and Ptychoparia. At the summit of the lower sandstone a small group of fossils was found which includes the genera Olenoides, Ptychoparia, Lingulepis, and Leperditia. The upper part shows close relation to that of the Potsdam sandstone horizon of central Nevada, the Mississippi Valley, and New York, while that of the lower zone or the summit of the sandstone is more nearly related to that of the Middle Cambrian zone of the Southern Appalachians. There is a large quantity of material in the laboratory of the U. S. Geological Survey yet remaining to be studied, but I think these conclusions will not be materially changed.

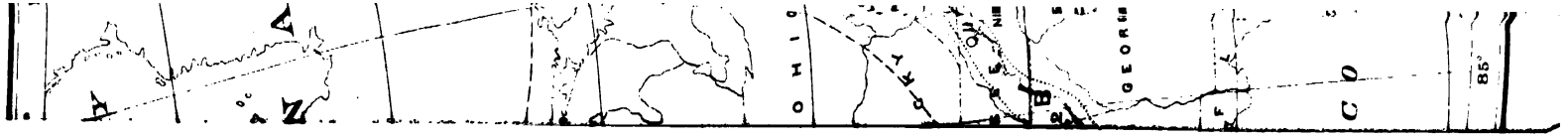
At the mouth of Kanab Creek, west of the Kaibab Plateau, there are 100 feet of arenaceous and micaceous shales, subjacent to a massive stratum of mottled limestone. In the lower 450 feet of the latter and in the arenaceous shale fossils were found similar in character to those of the upper portion of the section, as seen near the head of the cañon. They include Lingulepis, Hyolithes, and Ptychoparia.

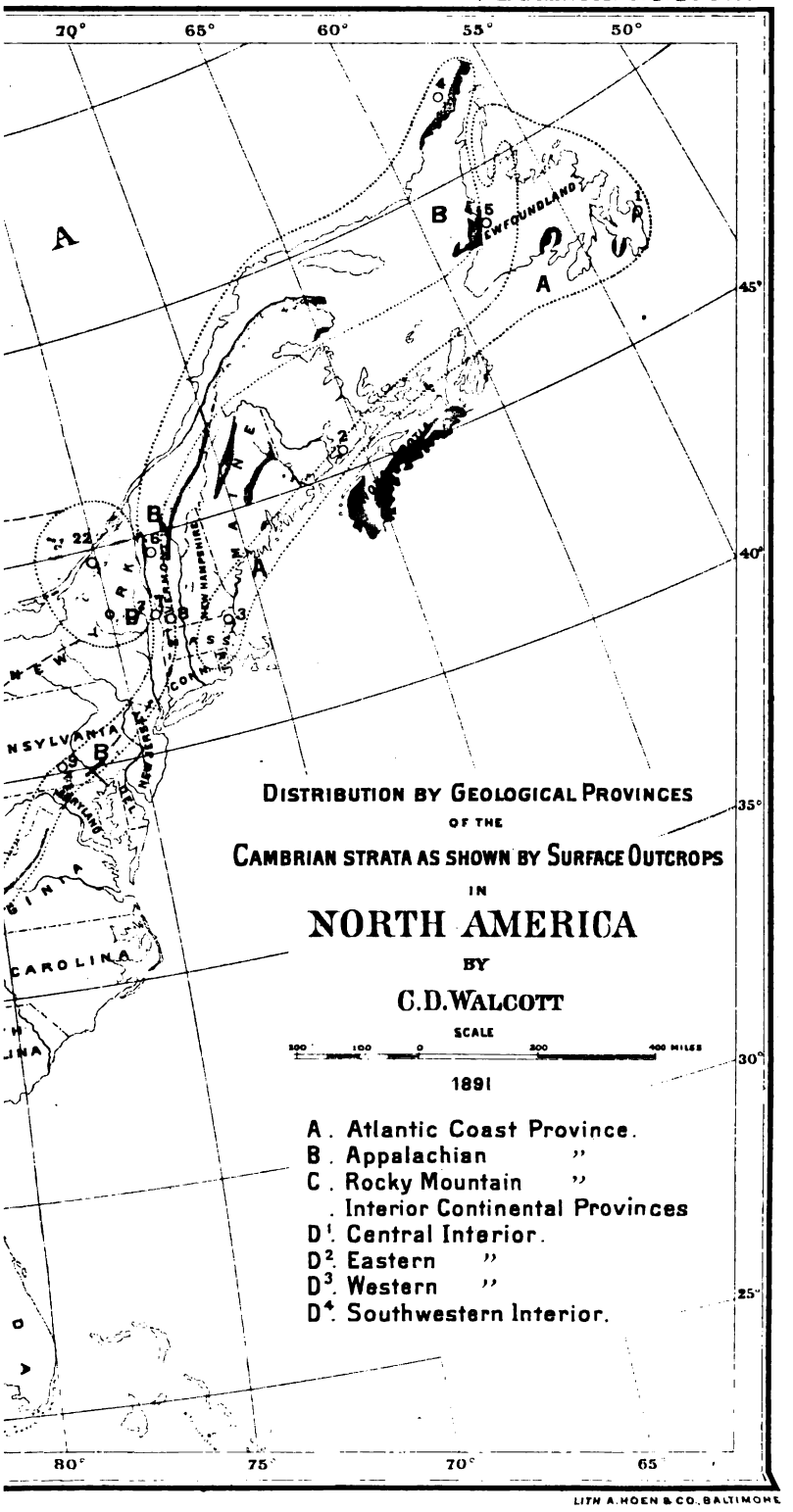
The section at the mouth of the Grand Cañon, as given by Mr. A. R. Marvine, is as follows:[1]

		Feet.
Red wall limestones.		
Tonto marble limestones.		
Tonto shales	Green	25 to 75
	Snuff-colored	90
	Green	415
Tonto sandstone		80
Granite		90

Mr. Marvine says that in going southward from the mouth of the cañon the Tonto shales seem to diminish in thickness, and at Tinnakah Springs they are estimated at less than 400 feet. A few miles south of this point they were still thinner, being estimated at less than 100 feet. The Tonto sandstone, however, has increased much in thickness and forms the greater portion of the section.

[1] Report on the geology of route from St. George, Utah, to Gila River, Arizona, examined in 1871. Rep. on Geog. and Geol. Expl. and Surv. west of 100th merid., in charge of Lieut. Geo. M. Wheeler, vol. 3, Geology, 1875, p. 199.


A
B
C
D
OHIO
GEORGIA
85°



LITH. A. HOEN & CO., BALTIMORE

On the atlas sheet issued by the Wheeler Survey in 1874 the Silurian (which also included the Tonto formation) is represented as extending from the head of the Grand Cañon along the entire course of the cañon to its mouth, and thence southward along the western margin of the Colorado plateau to Music Mountain, where the outcrop broadens out and extends southwest along the southwestern margin of the plateau. The most southeastern outcrop is on the Rio Verde River near the lower end of Williamtown Valley.

In all the sections on the line of the Grand Cañon and the western and southwestern margins of the Colorado Plateau the Tonto sandstone rests uncomformably upon either Algonkian or Archean rocks. In its greatest development the formation attains a thickness of 1,000 feet and represents the Upper Cambrian zone, and possibly in the lower portion, the Middle Cambrian.

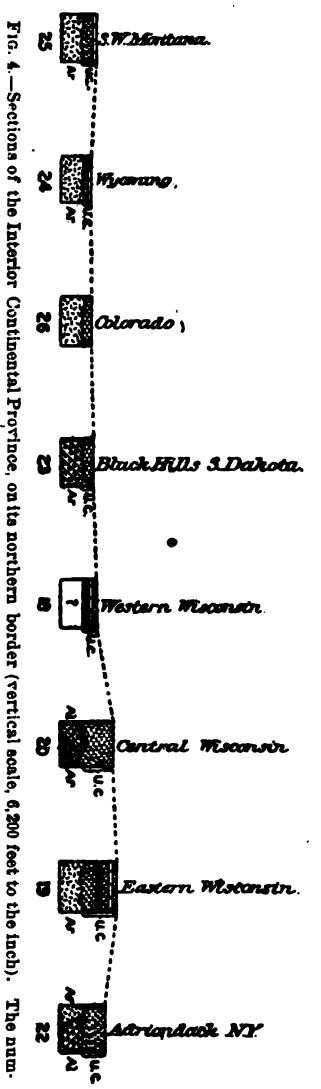


FIG. 4.—Sections of the Interior Continental Province, on its northern border (vertical scale, 6,200 feet to the inch). The numbers beneath the sections correspond to the locality numbers beneath the sections on Pls. I and II.

RÉSUMÉ.

The sediments of this province are those deposited as the sea advanced slowly upon the land and distributed the débris worn from it or brought in by tributary streams as layers of sand along the coast line and in an adjoining shallow sea. From Arizona to Texas, to Missouri, the Black Hills, and the eastern margin of the Rocky Mountains, and all along the northern line in Minnesota, Wisconsin, Michigan, Canada, and the Adirondacks of New York, the record is the same—sandstones resting upon pre-Cambrian rocks and carrying essentially the same fauna. In some regions the depth of water increased more rapidly and calcareous deposits accumulated upon the sand, as in Arizona, Texas, the Black Hills, and in some localities along the eastern base of the Rocky Mountains. That the sea was shallow, wide spread, and advancing along a great extent of coast line is shown by the sediments and the presence of a similar fauna in New York, the Upper Mississippi Valley, the Black Hills, the eastern front of the Rocky Mountains, and far to the south in Texas and Arizona. All over this broad area the rela-

tive stratigraphic succession of the sub-divisions of the Upper Cambrian fauna is the same; and nowhere do we know of the existence of formations characterized by the Lower and Middle Cambrian faunas of the Atlantic coast, Appalachian and Rocky Mountain provinces, except, perhaps, the Middle Cambrian fauna in the southwestern Interior Continental sub-Province.

In the Atlantic Coast Province the basal beds of the Olenellus zone rest unconformably upon Archean and Algonkian rocks. The sea deposited the Cambrian sediments across the upturned edges of the Laurentian and those of the superjacent bedded sandstones, quartzites, argillites, and slates forming the Algonkian series, which Dr. Murray referred to the Huronian. The upper St. John's slates carrying the Aspidella were also planed away by the Cambrian Sea. In the Interior Continental Province in Wisconsin and Minnesota the Upper Cambrian sandstones are unconformably superjacent to the corresponding series of rocks, or the Laurentian, Huronian, and Keweenawan series of the Lake Superior region. In the first instance the earlier Cambrian sea transgressed upon the pre-Cambrian rocks, and in the latter case the later or closing epoch of the Cambrian was the one in which the deposits were accumulated upon the Archean and Algonkian rocks. A misapprehension of these facts has led several geologists to refer the Keweenawan and other pre-Cambrian rocks to the Cambrian.

FIG. 5.—Sections of the Interior Continental Province, in the south central and southwestern portions.

DESCRIPTION OF PLATE I.

Geographic distribution of the Cambrian strata shown by surface outcrops in North America.

The geologic provinces are indicated by the dotted lines. The Interior Continental Province is broken up into sub-provinces and these are united by a lighter dotted line. The provinces are:

A.—Atlantic or Eastern Border Province.
- *a.* Eastern or Nova Scotia Basin.
- *b.* Southeastern Newfoundland, eastern New Brunswick, and Massachusetts Basin.
- *c.* Interior deposits of Gaspé, Quebec, Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, and Massachusetts.

B.—Appalachian or Interior Eastern Border Province.

C.—Rocky Mountain or Western Border Province.

D.—Interior Continental Province.
- D^1. Central Interior or Upper Mississippi and Missouri.
- D^2. Eastern Interior or Adirondack of New York, and Canada.
- D^3. Western Interior or Dakota, Wyoming, etc.
- D^4. Southwestern Interior or Arizona and Texas.

The outlines of the provinces are drawn so as to include the outcrops known at present. They are arbitrarily assumed, as we do not know the exact limits of the original Cambrian sedimentation.

Owing to the uncertainty as to the Cambrian age of the outcrops of Nova Scotia, Maine, New Hampshire, and north into Canada, the indicated areas upon the map have horizontal black lines to distinguish them from the known Cambrian rocks.

SYNOPSIS OF THE CAMBRIAN GROUP.

The coordination of the Cambrian group in America, with the primary subdivisions of the Paleozoic—Silurian, Devonian, and Carboniferous—is largely a development of the past decade. Although strongly advocated by Dr. T. S. Hunt and used by Sir J. W. Dawson in 1872, and the Fortieth Parallel Survey in 1878, Le Conte's Elements of Geology of 1878 mentions, but does not use the name in classification, and Dana's Manual of 1876 classes the "Primordial or Cambrian" as the lowest formation of the Silurian.

To-day the group is firmly established by (*a*) the presence in the Rocky Mountain province of 6,000 feet of limestone with 10,000 feet or more of quartzite beneath; (*b*) in the Appalachian Province by over 12,000 feet of quartzite, shales, slates, and limestones; (*c*) a continental distribution; (*d*) a characteristic, highly differentiated fauna.

The various formations referred to the group are mentioned in the following table. In some instances it is not practicable clearly to define by name the exact limitations of the formation through which a certain division of the fauna ranges. In such cases reference will have to be made to the text for further description.

Classification of the formations.

		Lower Calciferous.	Lower portion of the Calciferous sandrock of New York and Canada; Lower Magnesian limestone of Wisconsin, Missouri, etc.
Cambrian.	Upper Cambrian.	Potsdam.	*Type.* Sandstones of the north and east sides of the Adirondacks Mountains of New York and adjoining parts of Canada. *Correlated.* Limestones of the south side of the Adirondacks and Dutchess County, New York, and an unknown portion of the limestones of the "Marble Belt" of western Vermont. Shales of Tennessee (Knox), Georgia, and Alabama (Connasauga). Sandstones of the Upper Mississippi Valley (St. Croix), South Dakota, Wyoming, Montana, and Colorado. Sandstones and calcareous beds of northern Arizona (Tonto) and central Texas (Katemcy). Limestones and shales of Nevada (Hamburg), Idaho, and Montana (Gallatin). Black shales of the upper portion of the New Brunswick and Cape Breton Island sections. Shales and sandstones of Conception Bay, Newfoundland (Belle Isle).
	Middle Cambrian.	Acadian.	*Type.* Shales and slates of eastern Massachusetts (Braintree), New Brunswick (St. John), and eastern Newfoundland (Avalon). *Correlated.* Limestones of Dutchess County, New York (Stissing), and central portions of Tennessee and Alabama sections (Coosa). Limestones of central Nevada and British Columbia (Mount Stephen).
	Lower Cambrian.	Georgian.	*Type.* Shales and limestones of western Vermont (Georgia) and Red Sandrock. *Correlated.* Quartzite of western slope of Green Mountains ("Granular Quartz") and Appalachian Range of Pennsylvania, Virginia, Tennessee (Chilhowee), Georgia, and Alabama. Shales with interbedded limestones and roofing slates of southern Vermont, New York, and south to Alabama. Limestone, sandstone, and shales of Straits of Belle Isle (Labrador), northwest coast of Newfoundland, and peninsula of Avalon (Placentia). Basal series of Hanford Brook Section, Caton's Island, etc., New Brunswick (Hanford). Shales and limestones of eastern and southeastern Massachusetts (Attleborough). Lower portion of Eureka and Highland Ranges, Nevada (Prospect). Portion of Wasatch Cambrian section (Cottonwood). Base of Castle Mountain limestone, British Columbia (Castle Mountain).

Table showing the order of succession of the Cambrian faunas in typical areas in America.

Cambrian Group.									
	Upper Cambrian.	Middle Cambrian.	Lower Cambrian.						
	Newfoundland.	Massachusetts.	New York.	Tennessee.	Nevada and Utah.	British Columbia.	Upper Mississippi Valley.	Texas and Arizona.	
	Olenus zone.	Unknown.	Dikelocephalus zones.	Present.	Dikelocephalus zones.	Not recognized, but probably present.	Dikelocephalus zones.	Dikelocephalus zones.	
	Paradoxides zones.	Paradoxides zones.	Indicated by other genera than Paradoxides.	Represented by other genera than Paradoxides.	Represented by other genera than Paradoxides.	Represented by other genera than Paradoxides.	Unknown.	Not determined.	
	Olenellus zones.	Olenellus zones.	Olenellus zones.	Olenellus zones.	Olenellus zones.	Olenellus zones.	Unknown.	Unknown.	

BASE OF CAMBRIAN.

The statements made in the preceding paragraphs foreshadow the conclusion that over the Interior Continental area the basal beds of the upper division of the group rest unconformably upon pre-Cambrian rocks. This is true also of the lower division of the Atlantic Coast Province, but in the Lake Champlain Valley and the Southern Appalachian Province there is no positive assurance that the conformable series of strata beneath the Olenellus zone do not pass down into some pre-Cambrian group. In Nevada, Utah, Montana, and British Columbia the same conditions exist to a more marked degree, and I have, in the absence of paleontologic proof, referred the conformable pre-Olenellus strata to an Algonkian group. That a considerable portion if not all of the series will be ultimately referred to the Cambrian is probable from the fact that the Olenellus fauna has been traced downward through 1,000 feet of limestone in the Champlain Valley of Vermont and 3,000 feet downward in the Bow River series of British Columbia. The great vertical distribution of the fauna in the limestone leads to the expectation that it will be found to range through a considerable portion of the conformable strata beneath the narrow Olenellus zone of the Southern Appalachian and southern portion of the Rocky Mountain Province. On the map of sections the lower strata are provisionally and doubtfully referred to the Cambrian. This is in opposition to the view advanced in the Tenth Annual Report of the U. S. Geological Survey.

SUMMIT OF CAMBRIAN.

The determination of the top of the Cambrian is beset with more difficulties than its delimitation at the base. At the base there are marked unconformities, and in their absence the presence of a distinctly marked fauna beneath which no other fauna has yet been found. At the summit, however, we meet with a transition both in sedimentation and fauna to the characteristic type of the Silurian (Ordovician). One of the best illustrations of this is in the Eureka district of Central Nevada, where, in the Pogonip limestone, the passage from the Cambrian to the Silurian (Ordovician) is so gradual that it is only by the predominance of the fauna of one or the other of the two great groups that a line of demarkation can be drawn. The transition is such as might be expected where there was no marked physical disturbance to influence the change of faunas resulting from the natural dying out and development of species or the influx of new species from other areas. The sedimentation was very uniform, and no essential change of character occurs between the limestones of the Upper Cambrian and those of the Silurian (Ordovician). On the other hand, the delimitation between the two groups on the northern side of the Adirondacks is clearly and definitely marked by the occurrence of a light-colored, calciferous sandrock, with its distinctive fauna, resting upon a compact, hard quartzite, characterized by the

Dikelocephalus fauna of the Upper Cambrian. Various grades of transition occur between these two extremes, but frequently it is necessary to draw an arbitrary line and define the upper limit of the Cambrian, as terminating where, in any continuous section, the Upper Cambrian fauna gives way, and is superseded by the types of the Silurian (Ordovician) fauna. In Nevada this line would be drawn near the base of the Pogonip limestone; in Tennessee, near the base of the Knox dolomite; in northern New York, north of the Adirondacks, between the Potsdam sandstone and the Calciferous sandrock; on the south side of the Adirondacks, in the limestone between the Potsdam and Calciferous faunas; in the Upper Mississippi Valley, between the upper beds of the St. Croix sandstone and the Lower Magnesian limestone, or in some instances in the lower portion of the Lower Magnesian limestone; in the series of shales opposite Quebec, at Point Levis, beneath the graptolitic-bearing shales and the conglomerate carrying the Dikelocephalus fauna of the Upper Cambrian; and in western Newfoundland, in the limestones between the Upper Cambrian fauna and the base of the Ordovician fauna.

The paleontologic break between the Cambrian and Silurian groups is practically complete where the stratigraphic break is marked. About the Adirondacks the only species I know of that cross the break are the *Lingulepis acuminata* and a species of Ophileta, at Chateaugay Chasm. In Wisconsin some of the species of the Upper Cambrian fauna apparently rise into the lower portion of the Lower Magnesian limestone, and are there associated with forms which are considered to be more typical of the Silurian (Ordovician) fauna. In Nevada, where the sedimentation is of the same character in the Upper Cambrian and the lower portion of the Silurian (Ordovician), there is a slight blending of the faunas, as shown by the occurrence of the genera Asaphus, Dikelocephalus, and Ptychoparia upon the same surface of rock. With our present knowledge, however, the occurrence of the same species in strata that are referred to the Cambrian and the Lower Silurian is so rare that they are the exceptions to the general rule.

It is not, however, by the specific break in the fauna that the two groups are separated; it is the general facies of the fauna referred to the Cambrian and that referred to the Silurian (Ordovician). The distinctness of the Upper Cambrian fauna from the Lower Silurian fauna 100 feet beneath the line of contact of the two groups is such that I think there will be no confusion between the two faunas in America. In England the range of the genus Agnostus has complicated the separateness of the two faunas, but this is not sufficient to combine them as a whole.

SEDIMENTATION OF THE CAMBRIAN GROUP.

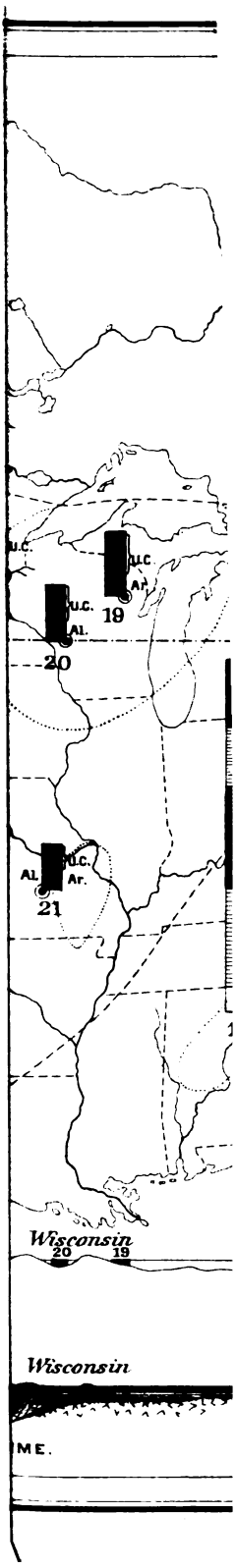
The physical and lithologic characters of the strata lead to the conclusion that the sediments were accumulated in relatively shallow seas in the immediate vicinity of the shores of land areas that were being slowly depressed in relation to the surrounding waters. There are

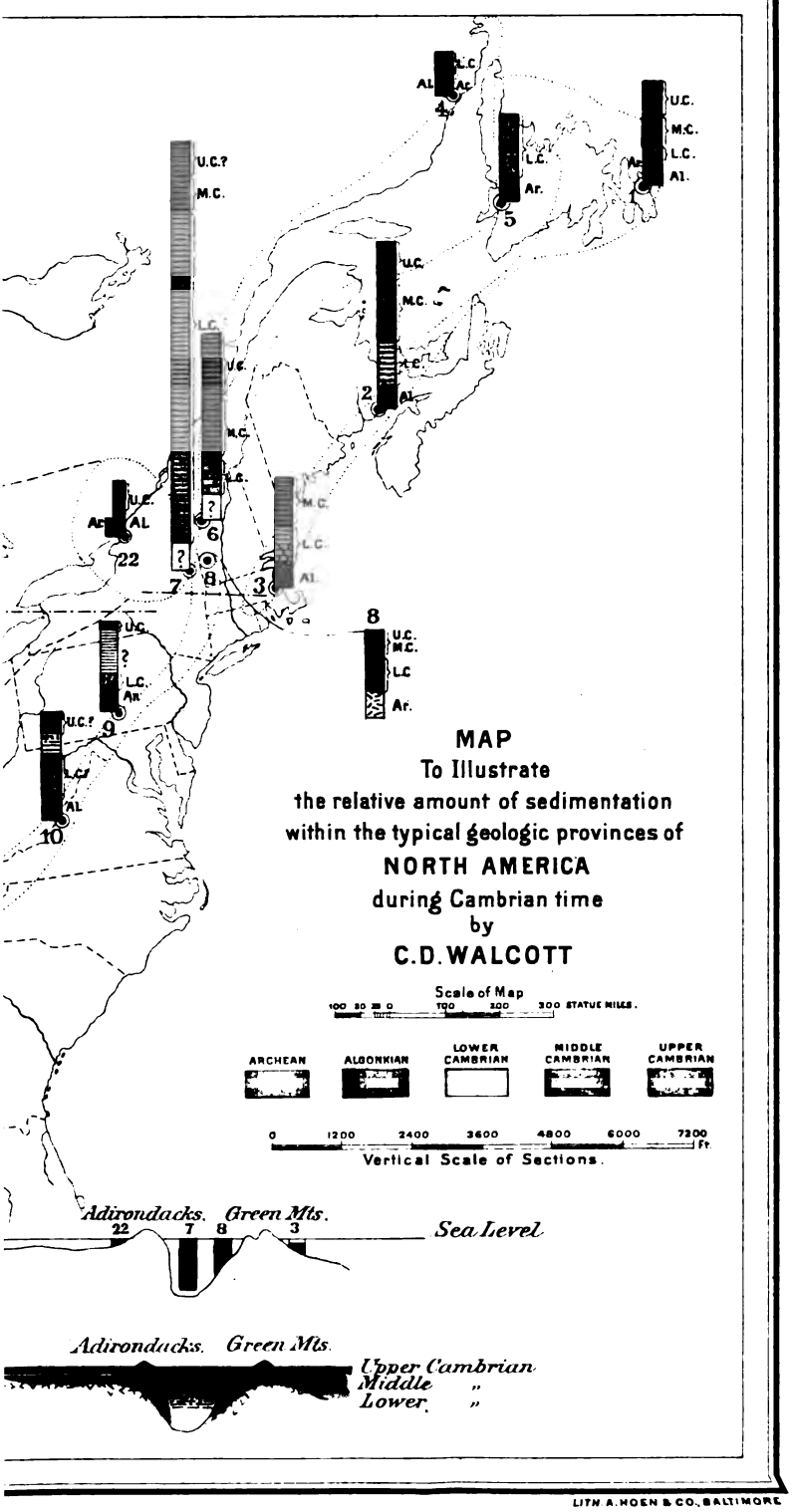
some exceptions, as, for instance, the deeper water limestone series of central Nevada, British Columbia, and western Vermont, and perhaps the black shales of the Atlantic Coast Province. The assembled evidence sustains the view that at the beginning of Lower Cambrian time the area of the great Interior Province formed part of a continent, to the eastward and westward of which long ridges of pre-Cambrian rock separated interior seas and straits from the continental area and protected their contained life and sediments from the ravages of the open ocean. As the continent was slowly depressed and the waters advanced upon the land the sediments now forming the rocks of the Lower and Middle Cambrian series were accumulated in the various interior bodies of water to the eastward and westward of the main land area and between it and the outlying ridges. What the contour of the south and southeastern side of the continent was and to what extent the sea advanced upon it from the south during this time is unknown and may never be known, as only the formations that were deposited around the pre-Cambrian islands of Texas and Missouri are now accessible for study. From the evidence afforded by these two localities and that along the eastern front of the Rocky Mountains, and the exposures of Cambrian strata in Wisconsin, Canada, etc., it is very probable that the main portion of the continent north of the thirtieth and south of the fiftieth meridian did not disappear beneath the advancing sea until near the beginning of Upper Cambrian time. The unconformable position of the Upper Cambrian rocks of the Interior Continental Province upon the subjacent Algonkian and Archean rocks sustains this conclusion.

As the sea was transgressing over the surface of the continent on its way northward across the broad interior in late Middle or early Upper Cambrian time it was also working along the base of the border ridges and depositing the sediments derived from them conformably upon those deposited, while the main mass of the continent was above the water. That these deposits were practically contemporaneous with those of the Interior Province is proved by the presence of the same types of animal life, and to a considerable extent of identical species.

Toward the close of Cambrian time a large portion of the continent had disappeared beneath the surface of the sea, and the great limestone-forming period of the Silurian (Ordovician) began. In some areas, as about the Adirondack Mountains of New York, argillaceous and arenaceous sediments were derived from the adjoining coast line, but as a whole mechanical sediments are absent.[1]

[1] In speaking of the conditions of sedimentation Messrs. Campbell and Ruffner state that "Changes such as these occurred, during a series of geological ages of unknown length, in a great inland sea which was once connected with what is now the Gulf of Mexico, on the south, limited probably by the highlands of Canada on the northeast, having the Archean ledges of the Blue Ridge for its southeastern border, and in all probability separated, in part at least, from the Pacific Ocean by the Rocky Mountain Range. This extensive sea, with Archean rocks for its bottom and shores, was the receptacle of the various materials that now constitute the surface rocks and soils of the Mississippi Valley." (A physical survey extending from Atlanta, Georgia, across Alabama and Mississippi to the Mississippi River, along the line of the Georgia Pacific Railway. New York, 1883, pp. 9, 10.)


U.C.
Ar.
19
U.C.
Al.
20
Al.
U.C.
Ar.
21
Wisconsin
20
19
Wisconsin
ME.



LITH. A. HOEN & CO., BALTIMORE

Secular disintegration had prepared an immense amount of material for the advancing sea to assort and rearrange in early Cambrian time. This, with that worn from the solid rocks by the attack upon the coast line, was largely disposed of prior to the opening of the limestone-forming period—an epoch varying in relative time in the various provinces.

I do not think it probable that any considerable amount of sediment accumulated in the southern portion of the Interior Continental area during early Cambrian time. The sections of the Champlain Valley, eastern Tennessee, Utah and Nevada, and of British Columbia prove the accumulation of from 10,000 to 12,000 feet of sediment along the eastern and western flanks of the pre-Cambrian continent before the sea deposited the formations about the Llano Hills of Texas, the Ozark Mountains of Missouri, and other portions of the Interior Continental Province. This evidence leads to the belief that the continent stood at a considerable elevation, and that the great accumulation of sediment during late Algonkian and early Cambrian time resulted from the distribution of material worn from the shore by the waves and brought into the sea by the rivers of the Interior Continental region and the outlying ridges.[1]

DESCRIPTION OF PLATE II.

Map of the central portion of the North American continent, to illustrate the relative thickness of the strata composing the Cambrian group in the various geologic provinces. (The small ring with the dot in the center indicates the geographic location of the base of the section.)

The sections are grouped into the following geologic provinces:

Atlantic Coast Province.
Appalachian Province.
Rocky Mountain Province.
Interior Continental Province.

The latter consists of the Central Interior or Upper Mississippi, the Western or Rocky Mountain, the Southwestern or Arizona and Texas, and the Eastern or Adirondack sub-provinces.

ATLANTIC COAST PROVINCE:

SECTION 1. *Conception Bay, Avalon Peninsula, Newfoundland.*—The Cambrian rocks of the Avalon Peninsula rest unconformably upon strata of Archean and Algonkian age. The section represented is formed by the union of portions of those of Manuel's Brook, Kelly's, Great Bell, and Little Bell Islands.

SECTION 2. *Vicinity of St. John, New Brunswick.*—This section is unconformably superjacent to the Archean, and unites the section at the city of St. John and that of Hanford's Brook.

[1] It is not improbable that the area of the great coastal plain of the Atlantic slope was then an elevated portion of the continent and that much of the sediment deposited during Cambrian and later Paleozoic time was washed from it into the seas immediately to the west. If this be true the source of much of the sediment of the Appalachian series of rocks is accounted for and the absence of the deposits of the eastern coast line is explained by the sinking of the coastal region during, or at the close of Paleozoic time. This view is strengthened by the presence, in the Middle Cambrian fauna of Alabama, of a number of species that are closely allied to if not identical with species of the Middle Cambrian fauna of Newfoundland and Sweden. This fauna is unknown in the Appalachian Province north of Alabama. This leads to the inference that it was distributed along the shore of the Atlantic Coast Province, and that the line of deposits, uniting the Newfoundland and Alabama areas, south of the Massachusetts area, are now buried deep beneath later deposits.

SECTION 3. *Vicinity of North Attleborough and Braintree, Massachusetts.*—In this section the Lower Cambrian series of North Attleborough and the Middle Cambrian of Braintree are united in one generalized section. The basal series is unconformably superjacent to the Archean.

APPALACHIAN PROVINCE:

SECTION 4. *North side of the Straits of Belle Isle, Labrador.*—The base rests unconformably upon the Archean.

SECTION 5. *Central western Newfoundland.*—The base rests unconformably upon the Archean, but the summit of this section is not clearly defined owing to lack of data to determine the range of the fauna.

SECTION 6. *Franklin County, Vermont.*—This represents the "Red sandrock" series, with its superjacent Georgia shales, in the township of Georgia. The base is cut off by a fault line, and the exact limitation at the summit is unknown.

SECTION 7. This represents the great shale and slate section of Washington County, New York. It is cut off at the base by a fault line and the summit is not well defined.

SECTION 8. The shore-line deposits of the Green Mountains or the "Granular Quartz," above which come limestones in which Cambrian fossils have been found. At the base it rests unconformably upon the crystalline pre-Cambrian rocks.

SECTION 9. Typical section in southern Pennsylvania, showing the "Granular Quartz" resting unconformably upon the subjacent crystalline rocks and extending above into the shale series beneath the limestones.

SECTION 10. This section is that of central Virginia, not far away from the shore line. The base rests unconformably upon the pre-Cambrian rocks, and above it passes into the base of the "valley" limestones.

SECTION 11. *Rogersville, East Tennessee.*—The base of this section is cut off by a fault line and above it passes into the Knox dolomite, the lower beds of which carry the Upper Cambrian fauna. The Chilhowee Mountain section comes beneath the Rogersville, and it is so represented in this section. An interrogation point marks the hiatus between the two sections. The data for this section are given by Mr. Bailey Willis, chief of the Appalachian division of geology, U. S. Geological Survey.

SECTION 12. The line of this section extends from Rome, Georgia, westward into Alabama. At the base it is cut off by a fault and above is delimited by the Knox dolomite. The data for it are given by Mr. C. Willard Hayes, of the Appalachian division of the U. S. Geological Survey.

SECTION 13. *Western slope of the Wasatch mountains, Utah.*—In this section the 12,000 feet of quartzite and siliceous slates are tentatively referred to the Cambrian. The fossiliferous zone is confined to the upper 250 feet.

SECTION 14 *Central eastern Nevada.*—This section represents the great quartzite series beneath the fossiliferous Cambrian limestone. The base has been concealed, and the summit has been removed by erosion.

SECTION 15. *Eureka District, Nevada.*—In this section the fossiliferous Lower Cambrian strata rests conformably upon the quartzites, which pass down some 1,500 feet before being concealed. The quartzites may correspond to the upper beds of section 14. The summit of the section passes into the superjacent Pogonip limestone of the Silurian (Ordovician).

SECTION 16. *Gallatin River near Gallatin City, Montana.*—This is essentially the same as the Mount Stephen section of British Columbia (section 17). The subjacent series of quartzites and siliceous slates are tentatively included in the Cambrian.

SECTION 17. Mount Stephen section of British Columbia, in connection with the subjacent Bow River quartzite and siliceous slates. The relations of the section are the same as those of the Eureka section (15) of central Nevada, with the addition of the Bow River quartzite and slates.

ROCKY MOUNTAIN PROVINCE:

Central Interior Continental subprovince:

SECTION 18. The western section of the central Interior Continental Province as it occurs in Minnesota.

SECTION 19. Section of the Upper Cambrian sandstones of eastern Wisconsin.

SECTION 20. Section of southern central Wisconsin, showing the unconformity between the Upper Cambrian and the subjacent Algonkian and Archean rocks. Sections 18, 19, and 20 are all of Upper Cambrian age, and pass conformably above into the superjacent Lower Silurian (Ordovician) or magnesian limestones.

SECTION 21, *Ozark Mountains, southeastern Missouri.*—The relations of the Cambrian and the Archean are the same as those in the Black Hills section (section 23).

Eastern or Adirondack subprovince:

SECTION 22. *The eastern and northern slopes of the Adirondack Mountains of New York.*—In this section the Potsdam sandstone of the Upper Cambrian rests unconformably upon and against the Archean and Algonkian rocks.

Western Interior Continental or Rocky Mountain sub-province:

SECTION 23. *Black Hills, Dakota.*—The Upper Cambrian rests unconformably upon the Archean.

SECTION 24. *Eastern section of Big Horn Mountains of Wyoming.*—It is essentially the same as that of the Black Hills (section 23).

SECTION 25. *Southern Montana.*—This section is very much like that of Wyoming and of the Black Hills.

SECTION 26. *Central Colorado.*—A section representing the sandstones that lie between the subjacent unconformable Archean or Algonkian rocks and the superjacent Lower Silurian (Ordovician).

Southwestern Interior Continental sub-province:

SECTION 27. *Grand Cañon of the Colorado, northern Arizona.*—In this section the Cambrian strata are unconformably superjacent to rocks of Algonkian age.

SECTION 28. *Llano County, Texas.*—This section is similar to that of the Grand Cañon in having an unconformity between the Algonkian and the Cambrian and in representing nearly the same geologic horizon.

Theoretic sections at close of Cambrian time.—The data for these sections are obtained from the associated map. The enormous accumulation of sediment in the Rocky Mountain Basin on the west and the Appalachian Basin or trough on the east are shown, as well as the thin mantle of sediment over the great interior. It serves to illustrate the sedimentation indicated by the vertical columns on the map.

Our knowledge of the sediments of the eastern and western sides of the pre-Cambrian continent is considerable, but of that deposited along the southward-facing front we know nothing. From the fact, however, that the same species of fossils occur in the Lower Cambrian fauna of Labrador, Massachusetts, New York, Vermont, probably Tennessee, Nevada, and British Columbia, I think we may hypothetically assume the continuance of the Lower Cambrian beneath the deposits of the Gulf States and westward through Texas, New Mexico, and Arizona. There is no known line of Lower and Middle Cambrian sedimentation across the continent to the north of this which indicates that the fauna might have been distributed along a more northern shore.

The pre-Cambrian ridges, or protaxis of the present ranges of the northeastern side of the continent, have been outlined by Prof. J. D. Dana from the known exposures of pre-Cambrian rocks.[1] The Paradoxides fauna lived in the depression between two of the eastern ridges of the Atlantic Province in the New Brunswick area, and in the bays

[1] Areas of continental progress in North America and the influence of the condition of these areas on the work carried forward within them. Bull. Geol. Soc. Am., vol. 1, 1890, pp. 36-39

and protected shores of the seaward slope of the western ridge, where the outer or eastern ridge was absent, as in Massachusetts and Newfoundland. The sediments that accumulated to the eastward of the New Brunswick sea form the supposed Cambrian shales and slates of Nova Scotia. The inner ridges of Maine, New Hampshire, and Massachusetts bounded long, narrow seas, in which the Cambrian faunas are not known to have penetrated. The Lower Cambrian fauna probably passed from the Atlantic along the ancient Labrador shore into the interior Appalachian sea. A few types of the Middle Cambrian fauna followed, and then the passage appears to have been closed, as none of the Upper Cambrian types of the Atlantic fauna have been found in the deposits of the interior seas.

The various views, both theoretical and hypothetical, relating to the pre-Cambrian continent are embodied on the map, Pl. III, and the section at the base of Pl. II.

DESCRIPTION OF PLATE III.

Hypothetical map of the North American Continent at the beginning of and during Lower Cambrian time.

This map is based upon the sections shown on Pl. II, and the theoretic section at the base. The position of the sections on the two maps is indicated by a circle with a corresponding number on each map.

The shaded portions indicate the relative areas that are supposed to have been above the ocean during later Algonkian and Lower Cambrian time. A comparison with Pl. II shows that in the Rocky Mountain and Appalachian areas there was an enormous accumulation of sediment prior to the Upper Cambrian; while over the broad interior there is only the Upper Cambrian which corresponds to the upper portion of the great sections of the Rocky Mountain and Appalachian areas. In the region of the Atlantic Coast Province the continental movement seems to have been less, as the sediments of the Lower and Middle Cambrian are much thinner than those of the corresponding horizon in the Appalachian and Rocky Mountain areas. The conclusion is that the shaded portions and perhaps other unknown areas formed the land during late Algonkian and early Cambrian time, and that about the close of the Middle Cambrian or the beginning of Upper Cambrian time the continental surface was largely depressed beneath the waters of the ocean and the Upper Cambrian sediment accumulated over the entire area where Cambrian rocks are now known to occur. (See distribution on Pl. I.)

On Pl. III, A., Archean; K., Keweenawan; B. H., Black Hills of Dakota; T., Llano area of Texas; M., Ozark uplift of Missouri; C., Grand Cañon area of Arizona. The area marked X, X, X indicates an hypothetical land area of the existence of which we have not at present any absolute proof, as it is now covered by sediments of later age than the Cambrian.

The present shore outlines of the continent are indicated by the dotted line, and the outlines of the continental plateau on the division between the deep sea and the continent by a continuous line.

The descriptive notes of the Cambrian rocks of the various provinces and the résumé following each establishes the fact that in Cambrian time there were geographic areas in which different types of sedimenta-

tion prevailed, and that great variation existed in what are considered the same geographic provinces. The sediments of the northeastern Atlantic Coast Province are almost entirely shales with a small proportion of sandstone and a trace of limestone. Tracing the long Appalachian Province from the Gulf of St. Lawrence to the southwest and south, we find an immense accumulation of shale with some interbedded sandstone and limestone. This extends to the Lake Champlain region of New York and Vermont, where a great limestone of Lower Cambrian age is subjacent to several thousand feet of shale in which lenticular masses of sandstone and limestone occur at irregular intervals. Farther to the southwest, in southern Vermont and eastern New York, great thicknesses of argillaceous sediment were deposited. These now form the series of shales in which beds of finely laminated roofing slates occur in massive strata. Toward the east, near the pre-Cambrian shore line, the Lower Cambrian sandstones are followed by arenaceous, dolomitic, and purely calcareous limestones of later Cambrian time. This condition of sedimentation continues far to the south, varied more or less by the presence of great thicknesses of shale above the lower quartzite. In the latter case the limestone of the Cambrian forms only a thin belt at the summit.

In the Rocky Mountain Province the siliceous sediments, sandstones, and quartzites are followed by limestone, and nearer the shore line, the sandstones are subjacent to shale. Over the Interior Province the record is sandstone, followed on the west and southwest by alternating limestones and sandstones.

On the map (Pl. II) the thickness and character of the sediment is shown in a general manner for each of the provinces.

The study of the fauna has shown that, while there is a general resemblance in the faunas of the Lower Cambrian in the Atlantic Coast, Appalachian, and Rocky Mountain Provinces, there is sufficient differentiation to mark off distinct faunal areas in the early Cambrian sea.

The fauna of the Upper Cambrian is less specialized over great areas than that of the Lower and Middle zones. The opportunities for communication between the provinces were greater and it is only in the Northeastern or the Atlantic Coast Province that a marked difference is shown.

The Middle Cambrian fauna of the Atlantic Coast Province is so strongly differentiated from that of the Appalachian and Western Rocky Mountain Provinces that it was not until they were found to occupy the same relative stratigraphic position that it was suspected they lived in approximately the same epoch.

The evidence of sedimentation and the evidence of organic remains unite to prove that in Cambrian time the geographic and faunal provinces were differentiated and established over the area of the present North American continent. In fact, the sedimentation of the Cambrian was as varied as that of many of later geologic periods and more so than that of the immediately succeeding Silurian (Ordovician).

SUBDIVISION OF THE CAMBRIAN.

In his admirable report upon the Devonian of North America Prof. H. S. Williams expresses this opinion:

> The subdivision of any great geological system must depend in great measure upon the differences in the faunas or floras contained, and, as I believe, this depends in no small degree upon the geological changes which modified and shifted the geographical conditions under which the animals lived. A sandstone will not contain the same species as a following limestone, and even in arenaceous shales a slight change in the fineness or coarseness or in the amount of argillaceous mud mixed with the sand modifies the composition of the fauna contained in it.[1]

There are not at present sufficient available data from the Cambrian upon which to base comparisons with the same degree of refinement as those made by Prof. Williams. It has been discovered, however, that the predominant types of life of the Cambrian group are to be found in shales, limestones, and sandstones. For instance, the genus Olenellus, characteristic of the Lower Cambrian, is found in the shales, limestones, slates, and sandy shales of the typical section in Northern Vermont. I have found in the quartzites and in the pure limestones of the Potsdam epoch of the Adirondack subprovince the same species of Dikelocephalus, Hyolithes, and Lingulepis. In the dark argillaceous shales of the Middle Cambrian terrane of Newfoundland I found the same species of Paradoxides that occurs in the interbedded limestones of the same series a few miles distant. That Prof. Williams is correct in relation to the great mass of organisms that existed during Paleozoic time there can be very little if any question. As an example the corals of the limestones of the north shore of the Strait of Belle Isle, on the Labrador coast, are unknown, except in an almost identical limestone at Silver Peak, Nevada, in the Rocky Mountain Province. It is in the clearer limestones that the great bulk of the brachiopods, pteropods, and other forms of life are found in the Cambrian; but it is a fact, nevertheless, that the predominant types of the Trilobita, characterizing its three divisions, flourished upon and were imbedded in sediments of widely different character. It is owing to this that they become of so much importance as criteria in the correlation of the three primary divisions of the group.

In the Atlantic Coast Province the fauna of the Lower Cambrian, or Olenellus zone, occurs in arenaceous limestones, pure limestones, and shales. All of these are of a different character from those of the black shales 200 feet above, in which the Paradoxides or Middle Cambrian fauna occurs. The Upper Cambrian fauna is found in dark shales and sandstones several hundred feet, if not a thousand feet, above the Paradoxides zone. The three primary subdivisions of the Cambrian are strongly defined by the sedimentation and faunas. In the St. Lawrence

[1] International Congress of Geologists, American Committee. Report of the subcommittee to the session of the Congress held in London, September 17, 1888. Philadelphia, 1888. Report of the subcommittee on the Upper Paleozoic (Devonic), H. S. Williams, Reporter, p. C 20.

Valley area of the Northern Appalachian Province the Lower Cambrian and Upper Cambrian faunas are found in separate bands of conglomerate limestones and not in situ, the great thickness of shales and sandstones referred to the Cambrian not being characterized by any known fauna. In Vermont the Lower Cambrian fauna occurs throughout the classical "Red sandrock" series and the lower portion of the superjacent Georgia shales, while about 2,000 feet above, the Upper Cambrian fauna is well determined. The Middle Cambrian fauna has not been recognized. In the eastern New York section the Lower Cambrian fauna is strongly differentiated and the base of the Middle Cambrian fauna indicated; but the Upper Cambrian fauna is unknown. Only a few miles distant to the west, however, at the base of the Adirondacks, the Upper Cambrian fauna characterizes sandstones and limestones that occur beneath the base of the Silurian (Ordovician). Farther to the south, in Dutchess County, in the valley of the Hudson, the Lower Cambrian fauna is recognized in the basal quartzite and the superjacent limestone, and also the Middle Cambrian of the Appalachian and Rocky Mountain Provinces, and the Upper Cambrian of all but the Atlantic Coast Province. In Tennessee, in the Southern Appalachian Province, the Lower Cambrian fauna is found in shales, within the quartzite series, and at the summit of the shales the Upper Cambrian fauna occurs. This extends up and into the base of the limestone. In Alabama, in shales apparently occupying the same serial relation, the Middle Cambrian fauna is well developed.

In the Nevada section the Lower Cambrian or Olenellus zone is distinctly defined, and between it and the Upper Cambrian fauna 1,000 feet of limestone is marked by types of the Middle Cambrian fauna. These distinctions of faunas are readily determined wherever two or more of them are present in the same section in the Rocky Mountain Province. In British Columbia the Lower Cambrian and Middle Cambrian faunas have alone been recognized.

I have spoken of the Middle Cambrian fauna of the Atlantic Coast Province and that of the Middle Cambrian of the Appalachian and Rocky Mountain Provinces. This distinction is made because the characteristic types of the Atlantic Coast Middle Cambrian fauna are not found in the Middle Cambrian fauna of the other two provinces. This indicates that a nearly impassable barrier existed during Middle Cambrian time between the sea of the Atlantic Coast Province and those of the interior. This prevented nearly all the species of the former from migrating into the Appalachian and Rocky Mountain Provinces. Within the two latter there is a fauna characterized by similar types in New York, Alabama, Nevada, and British Columbia, and in each section where their stratigraphic position is determined they occupy the same relations to the Lower and Upper Cambrian faunas as does the Middle Cambrian or Paradoxides fauna of the Atlantic Coast Province.*

The Lower Cambrian fauna is much more persistent in its character than that of the Middle Cambrian; for all the strata referred to the former horizon have been found to be characterized by essentially the same fauna. This is also true of the much more widely spread Upper Cambrian with the single exception of the Atlantic Coast Province, where the fauna is more of the European or Atlantic Basin type. There is, however, too little known of it at present in Newfoundland to base any final conclusions upon it.

The minor or formation subdivisions of the Cambrian are based largely upon lithologic characters and are relatively of local value only. One exception to this is found in the "Granular Quartz" of New York and Vermont, and the equivalent Chilhowee quartzite series of Tennessee, Alabama, Virginia, Pennsylvania, etc. Another is in the widely spread shore-line deposits, called the Potsdam sandstone in New York, the St. Croix sandstone in the Upper Mississippi Valley, the supposed equivalent deposits of the Black Hills of Dakota, the sandstones of the eastern flanks of the Rocky Mountains and of the Llano area of Texas. These two formations furnish illustrations of the accumulation of similar sediments over very extended areas. Their minor value in classification, when not supported by paleontologic evidence, is shown by the fact that the Lower Cambrian "Granular Quartz" or Chilhowee sandstone has been correlated by nearly all geologists who have referred to it with the Potsdam sandstone about the Adirondacks of New York and the St. Croix sandstone of the Upper Mississippi Valley, thus bringing together formations separated in the stratigraphic column by a long time interval and several thousand feet of sediment. Other sandstones of pre-Cambrian and post-Cambrian age have also been correlated with the Potsdam sandstone of New York.

With our present knowledge of the faunas and sediments it is impossible in all instances to differentiate the primary divisions of Upper, Middle, and Lower Cambrian in America.

Extending our views across to the eastern side of the Atlantic Ocean, we find an extensive development of Cambrian rocks in North and South Wales, where the three great divisions of the North American Cambrian are to be recognized. The Lower, in the roofing-slate series of North Wales and the Cærfai group of South Wales; the Middle, in the Solva and Menevian formations, and the Upper, in the Lingula flags series. These divisions are also recognized in Sweden and North Wales, although in greatly diminished force. The Lower division has been recognized in western Russia, and the central belt of the celebrated "Zone Primordiale" of Bohemia represents the Middle Cambrian series.

In lithologic, stratigraphic, and paleontologic characters the Cambrian series on the opposite sides of the Atlantic are such that there is no hesitancy in considering them as belonging to one geologic group and as part of one geologic basin.

There is a great variation in the sedimentation and faunas of the

various formations referred to the Cambrian in North America and Europe; they all fall within the limits of the group and, united, constitute a great geologic division of equal taxonomic value with Silurian (Ordovician), Silurian, Devonian, etc.

COMPARISON WITH THE CAMBRIAN ROCKS OF OTHER COUNTRIES.

EUROPE.

Dr. Henry Hicks expresses the view that the sediments of the Cambrian and Silurian were largely deposited on the western side of the European continent.[1] In Spain and Wales the sediments accumulated to a great thickness, while to the eastward, in Bohemia, Scandinavia, and Russia, the sections show less than one-fifth of the thickness of those in Wales. In central Russia the Cambrian strata entirely disappear and the Silurian (Ordovician) rests unconformably and directly upon the Archean. These observations lead to the conclusions (*a*) that the Cambrian sediments were deposited upon a gradually sinking coast line; (*b*) that the greatest depression was on the western margin of the continent; (*c*) that the movement which depressed the North American continent during pre-Cambrian time also affected the western side of the European continent, with a gradually diminishing force, from the Atlantic coast to the Ural Mountains.[2]

A comparison of the Atlantic Coast Cambrian series of America with the Atlantic Coast series of Europe, as exhibited in Wales, shows a marked similarity between the sedimentation of the opposite sides of the Atlantic. The basal Cambrian in South Wales, named the Caerfai group, by Dr. Henry Hicks, consists of 1,570 feet of strata, as follows: 520 feet of conglomerates and greenish sandstones subjacent to a bed of red shales and schists, 50 feet in thickness, above which 1,000 feet of purple sandstones occur. Dr. Hicks correlates the roofing slates of North Wales as found at Llanberris, Bethesda, and Penrhyn with this lower division of the Cambrian, on stratigraphic evidence, as the few fossils found are not sufficiently characteristic to correlate the two series with each other or with the American Lower Cambrian. A comparison of the sections with that of the southeastern coast of Newfoundland shows in each the presence of a basal conglomerate subjacent to a series of purple and green shales or slates. It is also to be noted that the Lower Cambrian of New Brunswick and eastern Massachusetts is made up of shales of a somewhat similar character to those of the Caerfai group. It is a curious coincidence that the section of the Lower Cambrian of North Wales is almost identical in the physical character of its slates, including color and texture, to the Lower Cambrian roofing slate belt of southern Vermont and eastern New York.

[1] On the deposition of the Cambrian and Lower Silurian rocks. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 31, 1875, Pl. 27, op. p. 558.

[2] Walcott, C. D.: The fauna of the Lower Cambrian or Olenellus zone. 10th Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Surv., 1890, pp. 563, 564.

The Solva group of South Wales consists of 150 feet of yellowish grits beneath 1,500 feet of gray, purple, and red rocks, above which 150 feet of gray rocks occur. All three divisions are characterized by the presence of the genus Paradoxides. The superior division of the Menevian group consists of 750 feet of slates and sandstones, and, with the Solva formation, constitutes the Paradoxides zone corresponding to the Middle Cambrian of the American section. This division is represented in Massachusetts by the Paradoxides beds of Braintree, in New Brunswick by the Paradoxides shales of the St. John Basin, and in Newfoundland by the Paradoxides shales of the Avalon Peninsula. The faunas of this division are largely identical on the opposite sides of the Atlantic, and form the great connecting link that binds the sections together and permits of almost positive correlation between them.

The North American Upper Cambrian is represented in Wales by the Lingula flags and Lower Tremadoc series, formed of over 5,500 feet of bluish and black slates and flags with bands of gray flags and sandstones. The faunal and stratigraphic equivalent of this series has been distinctly recognized in New Brunswick, on Cape Breton Island, and on the Avalon Peninsula of Newfoundland.

Most English geologists have included the Tremadoc slates in the Cambrian; but from an examination of the list of their contained fauna it appears to me that the line of demarcation between the Cambrian and Silurian, if based upon the general facies of the fauna, should be drawn in the Tremadoc series between the upper and lower divisions. The fauna of the lower division is essentially that of the Cambrian, with a few genera and species more characteristic of the Lower Silurian (Ordovician), while the fauna of the upper division is largely of the Lower Silurian (Ordovician) type, with a few forms of the Cambrian intermingled with it.

The problem of the line of demarcation between the two groups in England is essentially of the same character as that presented in Nevada, where there is no clearly drawn stratigraphic or faunal break in the Pogonip series of limestones.

That there is a strongly marked resemblance between the Cambrian series of the Atlantic Coast Province of America and that of the western Atlantic Coast Province of Wales there is no question. We are able to compare the three main subdivisions and assume that they belong practically to one province. In fact, there is no more difference between the faunas and sediments on the opposite side of the Atlantic than there is in different portions of the Appalachian Province, and not as much as between different provinces on the North American Continent.

In explaining the strong similarity of the faunas and sediments of the Cambrian rocks of the opposite side of the Atlantic, Dr. Henry Hicks says:

The home of the earliest forms of life seems to have been somewhere towards the southwest, and possibly not far from the equator; and it is from here that the various forms seem to have migrated to the areas in which they were subsequently entombed. The migrations seem to have taken place towards the North American continent very much about the same time as towards the European; and the sea encroachments along that continent seem to have been in a direction from southeast to northwest, so that the line indicating the two depressions would meet in mid-Atlantic. This accounts for the great similarity in the two faunas and for the general resemblance offered by the order of succession of these early rocks in the two continents. The higher lands in America would be to the west and northwest, and the higher lands in Europe to the east and northeast, so that the last lands submerged would approach each other and occupy the same region of the globe.[1]

The Scandinavian Cambrian series is not over 200 feet in thickness, and represents the entire British series.[2] It is divisible into the Lower Cambrian or Olenellus zone, the Middle Cambrian or Paradoxides zone, and the Upper Cambrian or Olenus zone.

On the opposite side of the Baltic, in eastern Estoria, the Lower Cambrian zone alone is recognized by the presence of its characteristic fauna. The Middle and Upper Cambrian faunas probably existed in this region, but they have not as yet been discovered.

Beneath the Paradoxides zone of central Bohemia there is a considerable thickness of shales, grits, schists, conglomerates, and quartzites that may represent the Lower Cambrian. The Upper Cambrian, if it has not been removed by pre-Silurian erosion, does not appear to have been clearly differentiated from the Middle Cambrian or Paradoxides zone.[3]

The Cambrian rocks of the north of France are correlated with the Cambrian of St. David's, Wales, by authors, but they are not sufficiently well defined by faunas to compare them with American formations. In the province of Hérault, in the south of France, the presence of Paradoxides correlates the rocks with the Cambrian of Bohemia.[4]

On the island of Sardinia there is a mixture of Middle and Lower Cambrian faunas, which may arise from the confused state of the strata, or it is not impossible that the faunas are really mingled in the same beds. In the absence of more definite data it is not practicable to compare them with the American sections.

The contrast between the American and European Cambrian, with the exception of the sections of Bohemia and Sardinia, are not as great as those between the Atlantic Coast Province and the Appalachian Province, or as between the Atlantic Coast and Rocky Mountain Prov-

[1] On the deposition of the Cambrian and Lower Silurian rocks. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 31, 1875, p. 555.

[2] See Prof. Charles Lapworth's comparative table of the Cambrian rocks of Britain and Scandinavia. "Materials for the Correlation of the Lower Paleozoic Rocks of Britain and Scandinavia." Geol. Mag., new series, dec. II, vol. 8, 1881, pp. 320, 321.

[3] Mr. J. E. Marr correlates the basal beds of Barrande's Étage D (d 1a) in which *Lingula feistmanteli* occurs in abundance, with the Lingula flags of Britain. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 36, 1880, p. 602.

[4] Bergeron, Jules: Note sur la présence de la Faune primordiale (Paradoxidien) dans les environs de Ferrals-les-Montagnes. Bull. Soc. géol. France, 3e sér., vol. 16, 1888, pp. 282–285.

inces. In point of fact the Atlantic Coast Province of America is practically a portion of the Atlantic Province of which the sections of western Europe are on the eastern side. The Bohemian area and that represented by the deposits on the island of Sardinia partake, in part, of the character of the Atlantic Basin deposits, in the presence of the Paradoxides fauna, but not in other details.

The essential difference between the English and the American classification is in drawing the line between the Cambrian and Silurian (Ordovician). The English geologists have included the Upper Tremadoc slates, with their strongly marked Ordovician fauna, in the Cambrian, because a local stratigraphic break occurs at their summit and between it and the subjacent Arenig series. By the definition adopted in this paper for distinguishing the great geologic groups, the Upper Tremadoc slates, with their fauna, would be included in the Silurian (Ordovician), and the line of delimitation between the Cambrian and the Silurian (Ordovician) be drawn at the base of the upper Tremadoc slates, thus referring the Lower Tremadoc and the Lingula flag series to the Upper Cambrian, and the Upper Tremadoc to the base of Silurian (Ordovician).

In conclusion: (*a*) The relations between the Cambrian rocks of the eastern or Atlantic coast of North America and those of Wales are of a genetic character, and point to their having been deposited in the same time interval; (*b*) the Scandinavian Cambrian represents the same interval, but with a greatly diminished bulk of sediments; (*c*) the French and Spanish sections are too incomplete for close comparison, although representing the coast of Wales series; (*d*) the Bohemian and Sardinian areas point to local conditions that may have affected their connection with the typical Atlantic Basin sediments and faunas.

SCOTLAND.

The occurrence of Cambrian rocks in Scotland has not yet been fully proved, but it is quite probable that the Torridon sandstones of northwestern Scotland may be referred to the Lower Cambrian. Prof. Archibald Geikie, in summing up the notice of the Cambrian rocks in Scotland in his Text Book of Geology, says:

> In the northwest of Scotland a mass of reddish brown and chocolate-colored sandstone and conglomerate (at least 4,000 feet thick in the Loch Torridon district) lies unconformably upon the Archean gneiss in nearly horizontal or gently inclined beds. * * * The denudation must have been considerable even in early Silurian times, for the sandstones are unconformably overlaid by quartzites and limestones containing Lower Silurian fossils, and these younger strata even in the same district rest directly on the Archean gneiss. * * * No trace of organic remains of any kind has been found in the red sandstones themselves, unless certain track-like impressions, observed on the west side of Loch Maree, can be regarded as having been imprinted by crustacea or other organisms.[1]

[1] Text Book of Geology, 1885, p. 653.

IRELAND.

The supposed representative of the Welch Cambrian series in the southeast of Ireland is described by Prof. Geikie as follows:

In the southeast of Ireland, masses of purplish, red, and green shales, slates, grits, quartzites, and schists occupy a considerable area and attain a depth of 14,000 feet without revealing their base, while their top is covered by unconformable formations (Lower Silurian and Lower Carboniferous). They have yielded *Oldhamia*, also numerous burrows and trails of annelides (*Histioderma hibernicum, Arenicolites didymus, A. sparsus, Haughtonia pœcila.*) No Upper Cambrian forms have been met with in the Irish rocks, which are therefore placed with the Lower Cambrian, the unconformability at their top being regarded as equivalent to the interval required for the deposition of the intervening formations up to the time of the Llandeilo rocks, as in the northwest of Scotland.[1]

A very full description of the Cambrian rocks of Ireland, especially as they occur at Bray Head, Wicklow, is given by Prof. William Hellier Baily in 1865. A diagrammatic section accompanies the paper, and the author also describes the supposed organic remains that have been found in the rocks.[2]

CHINA.

Our knowledge of the Cambrian rocks of China results from the investigations of Baron Richthofen in the province of Liau-tung in northeastern China, near the Corean frontier. He found a series of limestone containing the "Primordial" fauna in the sections of Sai-maki and Tai-tsze ho.[3] The limestones are superjacent to a series of sandstones and quartzites that correspond in stratigraphic position to the Lower Cambrian of North America.

The collections of fossils were studied by Dr. Wilhelm Dames, who came to the conclusion that two horizons were represented—the Andrarum limestone or Paradoxides horizon of Sweden, and the Quebec horizon of North America.[4] At the time Dr. Dames wrote *Dikelocephalus gothicus* and *D. quadriceps*, which he referred to the genus Doropyge, were cited as from the Quebec group; and it was on the comparison between the *Doropyge richthofeni* and these two species that he considered that the Quebec horizon was represented. The two species mentioned are now referred to the genus Olenoides of the Middle Cambrian fauna, which is not known to occur in the Upper Cambrian or in the Calciferous-Chazy fauna corresponding to the Quebec. A study of the species illustrated by Dr. Dames leads me to think that the Middle Cambrian fauna only is present, although it is not impossible that some Upper Cambrian species may have been collected. The sections of Baron Richthofen, however, indicate a considerable thickness of con-

[1] Text Book of Geology, 1885, p. 654.

[2] The Cambrian rocks of the British Islands, with especial reference to the occurrence of this formation and its fossils in Ireland. Geological Magazine, vol. 2, 1865, pp. 385–400.

[3] Richthofen, F. F. von: China. Ergebnisse eigener Reisen und darauf gegründeter Studien. Vol. 2 (das nördliche China) fig. 21, p. 94; fig. 29, p. 101, 1882.

[4] Cambrische Trilobiten von Liau-tung. China; by F. F. von Richthofen, vol. 4, 1883, p. 33.

formable strata beneath the Middle Cambrian zone in which the Lower Cambrian or Olenellus fauna should be sought for, and there are beds above in which the Upper Cambrian fauna may possibly be discovered. The geologic section is to be compared to that of the Rocky Mountain Province, and the presence of the same peculiar Middle Cambrian fauna, unmarked by the genus Paradoxides, also strengthens the comparison.

INDIA.

In a note on the discovery of trilobites by Dr. H. Warth in the Neobolus beds of the Salt Range, by Mr. Will King, director of the Geological Survey of India,[1] it is stated that the trilobites were discovered in the Neobolus beds of the Salt Range. The stratigraphic succession, from the summit downward, beneath the Carboniferous limestone, is as follows:[2]

Magnesian sandstone group.
7. Red shaly zone (Salt-pseudomorph zone).
6. Magnesian sandstone.
5. Dark shaly zone (Neobolus beds).

Purple sandstone group.
4. Upper purple sandstone (purple sandstone).
3. Rock salt and red gypsum group.
2. Gray gypsum group.
1. Lower purple sandstone.

There had been previously discovered in the Neobolus beds by Dr. Warth and Dr. Waagen a number of brachiopods, which were described by Dr. Waagen as follows: *Discinolepis granulata* (p. 750), *Schizopholis rugosa* (p. 753), *Neobolus warthi* (p. 758), *N. wynnei* (p. 759), *Davidsonella linguloides* (p. 764), *D. squama* (p. 766), *Lingula kiurensis* (p. 768) and *L. warthi* (p. 769).[3]

It is stated that the trilobites were sent to Dr. Waagen, who identified one of the two determinable species as a Conocephalites, very nearly related to *Conocephalites formosus* Hartt, from the St. John group, and the other as probably an Olenus.

The beds in which such forms occur can not be anything but Cambrian, and they must probably be classed as referable to the upper region of the Lower Cambrian.[4]

In the table the probable equivalent elsewhere of this formation is the Sinic formation of Richthofen, in China.[5]

AUSTRALIA.

The Cambrian rocks of Australia appear to be confined to the southeastern portion of South Australia and the northern portion of Tasmania. In the "Papers and Proceedings of the Royal Society of Tasmania for 1882," Mr. R. Etheridge, jr., described a species of Conocephalites which he named *Conocephalites? stephensi* (p. 153), and the tail of a trilobite which is named *Dikelocephalus tasmanicus* (p. 155).

[1] Records of the Geological Survey of India, vol. 22, 1889, pp. 153-157.
[2] Op. cit., p. 157.
[3] Memoirs of Geol. Surv., India. Palæontologia Indica, ser. xiii, vol. 1, 1887, pp. 750-770.
[4] Records of the Geological Survey of India, vol. 22, 1889, p. 154.
[5] Op. cit., p. 157.

Another pygidium is identified as belonging to the genus Asaphus, and small univalves which have the appearance of the genus Ophileta, of Vanuxem.[1]

The trilobites and the gasteropods are correlated with the Upper Cambrian fauna of America and Great Britain, to the Potsdam sandstone in America and the Lingula flags of Wales.

In 1884 Dr. Henry Woodward described some trilobites from the Parara limestone of the Yorke Peninsula, South Australia, *Conocephalites australis* and *Dolichometopus tatei*.[2] He concludes that the trilobites are clearly of Lower Silurian age, being equivalent to the Swedish, Bohemian, Tasmanian, and North American beds with similar fossils.

A recent paper by Mr. R. Etheridge, jr., on some Australian species of the family Archæocyathinæ describes the presence of several species of that family in association with trilobitic remains at Ardrassan, Yorke Peninsula, South Australia. The species described are *Ethmophyllum hindei*, *Protopharetra ? scoulari* and *Coscinocyathus tatei*.[3]

The strata containing the fossils are correlated with the Potsdam horizon sandstone of America or the Lingula flags of Wales. From the stratigraphic position of the American forms of Ethmophyllum and Coscinocyathus it is quite probable that the Australian species belong to the Lower Cambrian fauna and not to the Upper, as identified by Mr. Etheridge.

SOUTH AMERICA.

In 1876 Dr. Emanuel Kayser described a small collection of Primordial fossils made in the northern portion of the Argentine Republic, in the provinces of Salta and Jujuy, by Prof. Lorentz and Dr. Hyeronimus, of Cordova. The fossils occur in a micaceous sandstone, and include the genera Lingula, Obolus, Orthis, Hyolithes, Arionellus, Agnostus and Olenus.[4] Dr. Kayser compares the fauna with that of the north of Europe and North America, and concludes that it belongs to the upper zone of the Primordial. He calls attention to the fact that the genus Paradoxides is wanting and that Olenus appears in great numbers. "This fact seems to indicate that our fauna belongs to the upper Primordial zone or the Olenus stage."[5]

A glance at Pl. I, of Dr. Kayser's memoir proves that he is correct in the reference and that the fauna is of the type of the Upper Cambrian. From the geographical position and character of the fauna it is quite probable that Cambrian formations will be found on the eastern slope of the Andes, as well as the Cordillera of Central America and Mexico, if not concealed by later deposits.

---

[1] Papers and Proc. Royal Soc. Tasmania for 1882, 1883, pp. 151–158.

[2] Note on the remains of trilobites from South Australia. Geol. Mag., new series, dec. III, vol. 1, 1884, pp. 342–344.

[3] On some Australian species of the family Archæocyathinæ. Trans. Roy. Soc. South Australia, vol. 13, 1890, pp. 10–22, Pls. II and III.

[4] Beiträge zur Geologie und Palaeontologie der Argentinischen Republik; II. Palaeontologische Theil.; von Dr. Emanuel Kayser, Cassel, 1876, pp. 28.

[5] Op. cit., p. 29.

CHAPTER V.

PROBLEMS FOR INVESTIGATION AND SETTLEMENT.

I.—Local problems within the subdivision of each province.
II.—Problems affecting our knowledge of the Cambrian group as a whole or in large parts.
III.—Problems of nomenclature and classification.

LOCAL PROBLEMS.

There are many local problems that are not mentioned in the following notes. With the settlement of the more important questions they will assume prominence, and some of them may prove to be equal to if not of more import than those now suggested for investigation.

Newfoundland.—The prominent questions are:

(1) The determination of the relation of the Cambrian rocks of St. Mary's and Trinity Bays to the basal conglomerate in the Mannel's Brook section, to ascertain if a series of Cambrian strata occurs between the lowest recognized Cambrian on Conception Bay and Manuel's Brook and the pre-Cambrian rocks of Trinity and St. Mary's Bay, as thought by the Newfoundland geologists. If such a series be found its fauna should be carefully collected and studied with reference to its being basal Cambrian or pre-Cambrian.

(2) The discovery of an unbroken stratigraphic section to prove the assumed relations of the Paradoxides fauna to the Upper Cambrian fauna. This will probably be found in the vicinity of or on the shores of the peninsula west of St. Mary's Bay and the shores of Placentia Bay.

(3) The determination on the west and northwest sides of the island of the relations of the Olenellus bearing strata to the subjacent and superjacent beds and the character of the section from its base to the limestone carrying the Calciferous fauna of the Silurian (Ordovician).

(4) The study of the geographic distribution and detailed sections of the strata on the southwestern and northeastern coasts.

(5) The relations of the Cambrian strata to the superjacent beds of the Silurian (Ordovician) wherever they can be found in the same section.

Nova Scotia.—The important question in Nova Scotia, as in Maine and New Hampshire, is the determination of the geological age of the slates referred provisionally to the Cambrian. After this come the local details of the sedimentation and paleontology of the Cambrian terrane. Until the first is decided very little except conjecture can be used in the correlation of the slates with the Cambrian or other groups.

New Brunswick.—Through the efforts of Mr. G. F. Matthew many of the problems relating to the Cambrian system in New Brunswick have been successfully solved. More information is needed for—

(1) The clearer identification of the Lower Cambrian or Olenellus zone and its exact stratigraphic relations to the Paradoxides zone.

(2) A clearer determination of the Upper Cambrian fauna and its relations to the Paradoxides zone.

(3) It is desirable that more data should be obtained upon the zoologic relations of the different faunas to each other.

Maine and New Hampshire.—The problem presented in Maine and New Hampshire is essentially of the same character as that presented in Nova Scotia. It is the determination of the presence of rocks of Cambrian age by paleontologic evidence. Until this is done the other problems of stratigraphic succession and geographic distribution of the strata and faunas can not be considered.

Eastern Massachusetts.—In eastern Massachusetts it is desirable to ascertain—

(1) The stratigraphic relations of the strata carrying the Olenellus fauna and Paradoxides fauna and decide whether the Upper Cambrian is represented in the region.

(2) To obtain more paleontologic data in order to correlate the various outcrops that have been referred to the Lower and Middle Cambrian in different portions of the Boston Basin and to the south-southwest toward the Rhode Island line.

(3) To identify and map the Cambrian rocks in detail.

New York.—In New York it is desirable to ascertain—

(1) The exact relation of the strata carrying the Olenellus fauna to those carrying the Upper Cambrian or Potsdam fauna about the Adirondacks.

(2) The stratigraphic succession and thickness of the strata carrying the Olenellus fauna in Rensselaer and Washington Counties, and whether the Middle and Upper Cambrian can be recognized either by the faunal or lithologic characters.

(3) The geographic distribution of the Cambrian rocks in the Hudson Valley south of Rensselaer County.

Adirondack subprovince.—The most important problem in connection with this subprovince is the tracing of the transition from the sandstone of the Potsdam about the Adirondacks to the off shore deposit represented by the shales and slates now found beneath the limestone of the marble belt of western Vermont and eastern New York. More extensive collections of fossils are also desirable for the purpose of instituting closer correlations between the faunal zones of the typical Potsdam section of the Adirondacks with that of the correlated sandstone of the Mississippi Valley and elsewhere.

Vermont.—In Vermont the problems presented for study in connection with the Cambrian rocks are somewhat of the same type as those

of New York. They differ in the northern portion, owing to the varying character of the sediment. Some of the questions are—

(1) The relation of the lower band of limestone ("Red sandrock"), bearing the Olenellus fauna, to subjacent rocks.

(2) The relation of the shore deposits, forming the "Granular Quartz" on the western slope of the Green Mountains, to the off-shore deposits, forming the limestones ("Red Sandrock") and shales (Georgia, etc.) carrying the Lower and Upper Cambrian faunas, in northern Vermont.

(3) The change in character of the sedimentation of the Cambrian rocks from the northern to the southern part of the State and their transition into the shale and slate series of New York.

(4) The determination of the extent of the range of the Cambrian fauna in the limestones of the "marble belt" in southern Vermont and the relations of these beds to the subjacent Cambrian strata on the western side of the "marble belt." The latter involves the question of the relation of the slates and shales carrying the Olenellus fauna and, in part, the base of what may be a portion of the Middle Cambrian fauna to the limestones. The working out of the complicated structural geology and the identification and mapping of all the formations will be required in the solution of these problems.

(5) The determination of the absence or presence of paleontologic data sufficient to differentiate the three primary divisions of the Cambrian group.

(6) The detailed geographic distribution of the formations referred to the Cambrian throughout the State.

Canadian extension.—The Cambrian group on the line of the Canadian extension north of Vermont, in the vicinity of Quebec and down the St. Lawrence River, requires detailed study in all its parts, both to determine the stratigraphic succession and character of the beds and the relation of the strata to the subjacent and superjacent series. One of the important problems presented is the determination of the origin of the limestone bowlders in the Point Levis conglomerate that carry the Upper Cambrian fauna, and those of the Sillery shale that carry the Lower Cambrian or Olenellus fauna. In fact, the entire Cambrian group of this portion of Canada requires full investigation.

New Jersey.—In New Jersey it is desirable to ascertain:

(1) The relation of the quartzite that has been referred to the Potsdam, to the subjacent Green Pond Mountain rocks.

(2) The representatives in New Jersey of the Pennsylvania Primal slates of Prof. Rogers.

Pennsylvania.—In the State of Pennsylvania attention should be given:

(1) To determining, by paleontological evidence, the exact age of the quartzite which has been referred to the Potsdam sandstone by all authors.

(2) To a careful study of the upper Primal slate, for the purpose of determining the line of demarcation between the Cambrian and Silu-

rian (Ordovician) rocks. This, apparently, will have to be based upon the paleontological evidence, as the stratigraphic series is unbroken and there is a gradual gradation between the schists or slates and the limestone by the intercalation of calcareous beds in the shales until the latter predominate and form the limestone series. This investigation can probably be best carried on in York and Adams Counties and the western portion of Lancaster County.

(3) The relation of the quartzite to the subjacent rocks also requires careful investigation all along the line of contact of the two terranes.

(4) Another problem that requires investigation is whether the Primal slates and schists graduate into limestones to the east and northeast of Lancaster County, or whether there is a line of unconformity, by non-deposition, between the quartzite and limestone in Chester, Berks, Bucks, Lehigh, and Northampton Counties. In other words, whether the portion of the Cambrian section as found in York and Adams Counties is absent in the counties to the northeast, or if it be represented by the lower portion of the limestone series.

Virginia.—The knowledge of the stratigraphic position of the rocks referred to the Cambrian, in Virginia, is in a much more satisfactory condition than that of Pennsylvania. It is desirable, however, that attention be given to:

(1) The changes in the character of the sedimentation from the Tennessee line north to the Potomac, and also the changes in the character of the sediment between the shore deposits of sand and conglomerate and the off-shore deposits of shale and calcareous matter.

(2) The paleontologic evidence of the geologic age of the strata referred to the Cambrian, is very defective, and investigation in this line should be made throughout the State.

North Carolina.—The problems to be considered in North Carolina are:

(1) The section along the French Broad, so as to determine the age of the strata and, if Cambrian, ascertain the stratigraphic position of the limestones, shales, sandstones, and quartzite to each other and to the sections of eastern Tennessee.

(2) About the same problem is presented in the rocks on the line of the Hiwassee section, in the southwestern portion of the State.

Tennessee.—The questions requiring investigation in Tennessee are:

(1) The stratigraphic relations of the Chilhowee formation to the Knox sandstone and Shale series.

(2) The relations of the eastern shore deposits to the off-shore deposits westward of the pre-Cambrian rocks.

(3) The collection and the study of the faunas of the Chilhowee and Knox shale formations.

(4) The geographic distribution of the strata and the vertical range of the faunas.

Georgia and Alabama.—The entire Cambrian section of Georgia and Alabama *needs to be worked out* stratigraphically, especially the rela-

tion of the Coosa Valley shales to the quartzites referred to the Chilhowee formation of Tennessee. The fauna of the shales is large and varied, and should be studied in connection with that of the Cambrian section of Tennessee and New York.

Utah and Nevada.—The problems awaiting solution in the study of the Cambrian rocks of Nevada and Utah are of an unusually interesting character. Those that suggest themselves are:

(1) The study of the basal beds of the Cambrian, and the possible extension of the Olenellus fauna down into the quartzite series beneath what is now recognized as the Olenellus zone. From all that is known to me of the rocks in Nevada and Utah, I think that in western central Nevada the best opportunity will be found for the discovery of the faunas preceding the present recognized base of the Cambrian. During later Algonkian time there appears to have been a great accumulation of arenaceous and siliceous sediments along the line of the Wasatch and extending westward into central Nevada. In western Nevada they are more shaly and calcareous, and it is possible that the conditions under which they were deposited were more favorable for the presence and preservation of the life of that period.

(2) The careful and detailed study of the great Cambrian section of central Nevada for the purpose of determining the full sequence of life throughout. Our present knowledge of it is very incomplete, and there are many gaps that can probably be filled in by detailed work and the careful collection of the fauna in connection with the study of stratigraphy and sedimentation.

(3) The study of the sections from the Wasatch westward to western Nevada for the purpose of determining the change of sedimentation and life from east to west.

(4) Another important subject of investigation is the transition between the Upper Cambrian and Ordovician faunas. This has been partially worked out in the Eureka district section, but there still remains much to be learned by careful detailed study of the sediments and faunas in the field.

(5) One of the unsolved problems of Utah is the question of the geological age of the quartzite beneath the Carboniferous limestone surrounding the main quartzite series of the Uinta Mountains. It is probable that there is a series of Cambrian rocks beneath the limestone and above the quartzite as in the Big Cottonwood Cañon section of the Wasatch Range; but it will remain an open question until paleontologic evidence is obtained.

Colorado.—Investigation in Colorado should be directed toward discovering fossils in the strata referred to the Upper Cambrian zone, and to verifying the exact stratigraphic position of the beds carrying Dikelocephalus at Quandary Peak.

Rocky Mountains.—In the eastern district of the Rocky Mountain Province it is desirable that close study should be made of the various

sections of the eastern ranges of Colorado, Wyoming, and Montana, for the purpose of detecting the presence and character of the fauna as a means of correlating the strata with those of the Black Hills and the upper Mississippi Valley. On the western side, in southeastern Idaho, the Gallatin River section needs special investigation in order to correlate it with the sections of Nevada. Reference to what is required in Utah, Nevada, and Colorado has already been made.

Arizona.—It is desirable that larger collections should be made from the lower sandstone of the Cambrian section in the Grand Cañon area, and that the geographic distribution of the Cambrian in western Arizona be determined.

Upper Mississippi Valley.—Through the work of the Wisconsin and Minnesota surveys our knowledge of the Upper Cambrian sandstone is unusually complete. It is desirable that more information should be obtained in relation to the distribution of the fauna in the section and to ascertain whether the Middle Cambrian fauna accompanied the invasion of the sea that deposited the lowest beds of the terrane.

To determine the age of the sandstones on the south shore of Lake Superior it is still necessary to obtain paleontologic evidence to enable the geologist to state positively that the sandstones are the geologic equivalent of the fossiliferous sandstone of the central area of Wisconsin. It is also desirable to trace the continuation of the recognized fossiliferous Upper Cambrian sandstone directly west of Green Bay, Wisconsin, with that occurring on the south shore of Lake Superior. The definite settlement of these two problems will remove what has long been the source of contention among geologists.

Missouri.—It is desirable that the exact line of demarcation between the Upper Cambrian and Silurian (Ordovician) zones should be determined and more positive paleontologic data be obtained of the relative stratigraphic position of the beds with those of other areas that are now referred to the Cambrian.

Texas.—The information in relation to the Cambrian area of central Texas, in Llano County, is sufficient for most geologic purposes, although more detailed information as to the horizontal distribution of the fauna and the presence or absence of the Middle Cambrian fauna is desirable. The principal question, however, is the investigation of the supposed Cambrian in the vicinity of El Paso and the southwestern portion of the State.

PROBLEMS AFFECTING OUR KNOWLEDGE OF THE CAMBRIAN GROUP AS A WHOLE OR IN LARGE PARTS.

A glance at the map delineating the distribution of the Cambrian strata as shown by outcrops in North America, Pl. I, reveals at once the fact that we are dealing almost entirely with a marginal or coast series of sediments that are largely covered, over great areas, by later

deposits. It is only here and there that a deep-seated disturbance has brought up the sediment that accumulated at some distance from the shore line. In Vermont and Nevada, especially in the latter, the calcareous sediments forming the limestone have been brought to the surface. In the great interior area of Wisconsin, Missouri, Texas, and the eastern front of the Rocky Mountains and the northern line between Canada and New York nothing is known of the deeper water deposits, if any such existed.

We know something of the sediments that accumulated along the western shore line of the Appalachian protaxis; but what was deposited over the area of which Ohio, Indiana, Kentucky, Tennessee, northwestern Alabama, Mississippi, northern Texas, Indian Territory, Kansas, and Nebraska forms a part we know nothing.

From the fact that in Texas, Missouri, the Upper Mississippi Valley, along the eastern front of the Rocky Mountains, and in New York and Canada west of the Adirondacks the deposits are such as would accumulate in a shallow sea not far distant from the shore line it has been assumed that the Cambrian ocean of this great area was relatively shallow. I think that during Lower and Middle Cambrian times the entire interior continental area was above the sea level. These opinions are based on the character of the deposits and the absence of the sediments of the Lower and Middle Cambrian. The great problem in this connection, however, is to determine how far the pre Cambrian continent extended to the south and east and what its relations were to the offshore ridges of the eastern and western margins, along which we now find deposits of Lower and Middle Cambrian age.

A careful study of the sections in Pennsylvania, Virginia, Tennessee, Georgia, and Alabama may throw some light upon the question on the southeastern side. Over the remaining portions of the great central area no natural outcrops are known, and there seems to be no way of obtaining information except by very deep borings.

The question of the relations of the Middle Cambrian fauna of the Atlantic Coast Province to that of the Appalachian and Rocky Mountain Provinces is one that can be settled only by a close and careful study of the faunas, based on large collections methodically made throughout the entire areas of the three provinces. That the Middle Cambrian or Paradoxides fauna of the Atlantic Coast Province is represented by a very different fauna in the Rocky Mountain Province there is not, I think, any question. It is also well proved that the latter fauna is present to a less extent in the Appalachian Province.

Throughout the Rocky Mountain Province, except in British Columbia, the Olenellus or Lower Cambrian fauna is confined to a very narrow zone, while in Vermont it ranges through 1,000 feet of limestone and up into the superjacent shales. In New York it has a range through a great thickness of shales, slates, interbedded limestones, and sandstones; and one of the problems requiring investigation is the downward

extension of this fauna in the series of shales, slates, and sandstones beneath the now known Olenellus horizon of the western Rocky Mountain Province. The lower series of slates and quartzites have been tentatively referred to the Algonkian, but it is quite probable that they will be found to carry the Olenellus fauna to a considerable depth, and a pre-Olenellus fauna may yet be discovered.

The problem of the downward extension of the Cambrian faunas also requires investigation in the Appalachian Province, especially in the southern portion—in Tennessee, Georgia, and Alabama. The basal limit of the Cambrian is now drawn at the Olenellus zone, but in the absence of any subjacent fauna there still remain the problems of the downward extension of the Cambrian fauna and of the existence of a pre-Cambrian fauna that may have lived in the Appalachian seas.

A local question of interest may be here introduced, as it affects a considerable area and involves conditions of sedimentation unknown elsewhere in the Cambrian. It is the question of the place of derivation and mode of transportation of the bowlders of the limestone conglomerates that carry in the lower zone, the Lower Cambrian, and in the upper zone the Upper Cambrian fauna found along the southern shore of the St. Lawrence River from Quebec to Gaspé.

One of the problems partially solved, and one that still requires investigation, is the relation of the pre-Cambrian topography to the sediments deposited upon it, to determine the source of sediments and the habitat of the faunas.

Along the Atlantic coast the presence of the pre-Cambrian shore line with a varied coast topography is clearly distinguishable, and it is evident that the Cambrian strata now occupy the same relative position to the pre-Cambrian as the sediments did when they were deposited. The same is true of the shore-line deposits along the western margin of the Appalachian, pre-Cambrian protaxis, and the sediments about the Adirondack area. Between the Adirondacks and the Green Mountains a great thickness of Cambrian rocks appears to have been deposited in a deep, relatively narrow sea; but what the conditions were to the westward of the long line of the eastern boundary of the Appalachian Province is one of the questions requiring solution. The same is true of the western limits of the sediments now exposed in the great uplifts of central Nevada and British Columbia.

The questions arising from the study and comparison of the various provinces all require a more thorough investigation of the sections of the western Rocky Mountain, Appalachian and Atlantic Coast Provinces. They bear upon the nomenclature and classification to be adopted for the Cambrian group; and not until we have a more thorough knowledge of the sections of northern Vermont, New York, Tennesse, British Columbia, and Nevada can the classification be considered more than a provisional one.

PROBLEMS OF NOMENCLATURE AND CLASSIFICATION.

The name.—It is still a debatable question with a few geologists, whether we shall follow the present general usage and use the name Cambrian group, with the area of Cambrian in Wales as its type and the descriptions of Prof. Adam Sedgwick as the classical description of the group, or, in opposition to this, adopt the name Taconic, proposed by Dr. Ebenezer Emmons, with the area of Berkshire, Rensselaer, and Washington Counties, east of the Hudson River, in New York, as the type, and the papers of 1842 and 1844 of Dr. Emmons as the classical description of the group.

While recognizing the fact that the name Taconic has certain claims upon the sentiment of Americans, I have stated elsewhere that I think the interests of geology are best served by adopting the term Cambrian, as has been done by the great majority of geologists.

The limit of the group.—The delimitation of the upper limit of the group by geologists who recognize it as distinct from the superjacent Silurian (Ordovician) has varied to the extent of placing the arenaceous deposits of the shore line, or the strata referred to the Potsdam sandstone, in the Silurian, or including the superjacent Calciferous formation in the Cambrian. To a large extent this difference of opinion is based upon the evidence of the local physical conditions of sedimentation, and not upon the included faunas. If we adopt as the principle of classification that the delimitation of the great geological groups must rest upon the broad zoological characters of their included faunas and not on local stratigraphic breaks between certain series of rocks, or on local differences of sedimentation, the line of demarkation between the Cambrian and Silurian (Ordovician) is to be drawn where the marked characters of the Cambrian fauna give way to those of the Ordovician. That this principle is the only sound one upon which to base the delimitation of a group is proved by the fact that there is no other relatively constant character upon which to rely in geologic classification. That it is often arbitrary is known to all working geologists.

The line of demarcation along the northern and eastern sides of the Adirondacks is between the upper beds of the Potsdam sandstone and the calcareous layers of the Calciferous formation. On the south side, in Saratoga County, it is drawn in a series of limestones, where the characteristic Upper Cambrian fauna disappears and the types of the Silurian (Ordovician) fauna appear. In western Vermont, 20 miles from where the division is made between the Potsdam and Calciferous formations, the line is drawn in a series of black argillaceous shales, somewhere between a horizon carrying characteristic Upper Cambrian fossils and another horizon some distance above, in which characteristic Calciferous fossils are found. In the Southern Appalachian Province, in East Tennessee, the line of demarcation is not at the base of the limestone series, but at a point in the lower portion of it,

where the characteristic Upper Cambrian fauna disappears and the Silurian (Ordovician) fauna begins to predominate. This same principle of demarcation is followed in the limestone series of central Nevada, while over the interior continental area it is largely drawn at the summit of the sandstone carrying the Upper Cambrian fauna and at the base of the limestone in which the Calciferous fauna occurs. In some instances, however, the Upper Cambrian fauna extends up into the Calciferous beds, and in such the line of demarcation occurs in the Calciferous zone.

It is not always possible to delineate on the map such close lines of demarcation within a formation, and for the sake of convenience it may be well to map the formation by their lithologic characteristics and describe in the text the line of delimitation between the groups. When, however, the line between two groups occurs in a limestone, as in the Pogonip limestone of the Eureka district, Nevada, and there is sufficient paleontologic evidence to demonstrate it, the line should be drawn on the map at the point indicated by the faunas.

The problems in connection with the delimitation of the summit of the Cambrian group remain to be studied in nearly all portions of the various provinces. In some they are fairly well settled, but there still remains much to be done in the way of collecting the faunas and studying their vertical distribution in the strata.

Is the basal line of the Cambrian group at the lowest limit at which the Olenellus fauna is found? Where this lowest limit occurs at the base of a conformable series resting unconformably upon pre-Cambrian rocks there is no difficulty in answering the question. But where it occurs in the midst of a conformable series and there remain thousands of feet of sediments beneath the Olenellus zone, as in Nevada and Utah, it still remains a problem for consideration. On the general proposition that I would not refer to the Cambrian any rocks beneath the Olenellus zone, the subjacent strata of the western Rocky Mountain area were referred to the Algonkian in the paper reviewing the Lower Cambrian or Olenellus fauna published in the tenth annual report of the U. S. Geological Survey. I think, however, it is a question for discussion and research, as the Olenellus fauna has a great vertical and time range in the Northern Appalachian Province, while in the Southern Rocky Mountain Province it is limited to the very narrow band of strata at the summit of the siliceous series of slates and quartzites.

That the question of how the Cambrian shall be divided in America still requires investigation, with special relation to the classification to be applied in the various provinces, is well known. The three primary divisions of the Cambrian (Lower, Middle, and Upper) are readily recognized in Newfoundland, and that one or the other of these divisions can be distinctly recognized in the other provinces has been proved.

In the Interior Continental Province only the Upper Cambrian, with

its distinct sedimentation and fauna, is known, and no other appears to have been deposited. In the Appalachian Province, in Vermont, the Lower Cambrian is readily separated by organic remains and sedimentation; but with our present knowledge it is impossible clearly to distinguish between the Middle and Upper Cambrian. The same is true throughout the Appalachian region, except in the Adirondack subprovince, where the Upper Cambrian is well developed. In the Rocky Mountain Province the Lower Cambrian is distinctly developed, but the Middle and Upper merge more or less into each other. The problems in this connection requiring investigation are clearer delimitations of the Middle and Upper Cambrian in the Appalachian and Rocky Mountain Provinces, both by the careful study and comparison of the sections and the collecting and differentiation of the faunas.

It is not anticipated that uniformity will be found to exist in each of the primary subdivisions; the sedimentation of the various provinces is too unlike. The three divisions will have to be used, if at all, in a somewhat arbitrary manner in some of the areas, just as the greater division of the Cambrian is arbitrarily separated from the Silurian (Ordovician) where no physical line of division is apparent. We recognize the Cambrian group as a convenient means of classification, but its subdivisions must be controlled by the needs of the local geologist and not used unless distinctly recognized.

CHAPTER VI.

THE CRITERIA AND PRINCIPLES USED BY AUTHORS IN THE CORRELATION OF THE VARIOUS PARTS COMPOSING THE GROUP, WITH OBSERVATIONS ON SOME METHODS OF CORRELATION.

HISTORICAL NOTES.

The earlier American geologists took their first views of classification and principles of correlation mainly from European authors. Among the latter Dr. John Woodward said early in the eighteenth century in his "Natural History of the Earth":

> That the stone and other terrestrial matter in France, Flanders, Holland, Spain, Italy, Germany, Russia, and Sweden were distinguished in *strata* or *layers* as it is in England; that these strata were divided by parallel layers; that there were inclosed in the stone and all the other denser kinds of terrestrial matter great numbers of the shells and other productions of the sea in the same manner as in that of this island.[1]

This is one of the earliest correlations of stratified and fossiliferous rocks. It is crude and indefinite as compared with modern correlation, but the general method of comparing stratified fossiliferous rocks because they are stratified and fossiliferous was inaugurated.

Dr. Abraham Werner, in Germany, gave systematic form to descriptive geology in the latter part of the eighteenth century; while about the same time Prof. William Smith, in England, applied organic remains in geologic investigation, and correlated formations in various parts of the British islands by their contained fossils. A little later Baron George Cuvier was establishing in France the great principles of the succession of varying organic remains in the strata and their differentiation from living forms.

AMERICA.

Maclure.—In America Mr. William Maclure was among the first to take advantage of the principles of classification enunciated by Dr. Werner, and we find the correlations made by him in preparing his geological maps were based entirely upon lithologic and stratigraphic evidence. This is stated in the first paragraph of the introduction to his paper:[2]

> Necessity dictates the adoption of some system. So far as respects the classification and arrangement of names the Wernerian appears to be the most suitable, first, because it is the most perfect and extensive in its general outlines, and secondly,

[1] An Essay towards a Natural History of the Earth and Terrestrial Bodies. London, 3d ed., 1723.

[2] Observations on the Geology of the United States explanatory of a geological map. Am. Phil. Soc. Trans., vol. 6, 1809, pp. 411, 412.

the nature and relative situation of the minerals in the United States, while they are certainly the most extensive of any field yet examined, may perhaps be found to be the most correct elucidation of the general exactitude of that theory as respects the relative position of the different series of rocks.

On the map four great classes of rocks are recognized: Class I, Primitive rocks; II, Transition rocks; III, Secondary rocks; IV, Alluvial rocks. The presence of rock salt in the southern Appalachian is recognized by a separate color.

In the text[1] the Primitive rocks are divided into fourteen varieties, the Transition into five varieties, the Secondary into twelve, and the Alluvial into seven. In traversing the country Mr. Maclure noticed the presence of any one of these rocks at their various outcrops, and thus correlated the geological formations that presented similar characters. In the second edition of his work[2] two methods of examining and correlating the rocks are given:

The first, the accurate investigation of a small portion of the surface, describing exactly the different rocks with their immense variety of arrangement and position of their component parts, detailing the changes, accidental or natural, constantly occurring in their relative situation, and endeavoring to reduce the whole to some regular series of arrangement. This method necessitates the reunion of a great number of those portions before any correct general idea can be formed.

The second, beginning with the great outline, traces the limits which divide the principal classes of rocks and their relative situation and extent. Mr. Maclure favors the second, stating:

In tracing the outlines of the different formations in most countries there is less confusion and embarrassing description necessary; the limits once ascertained, a few pages define the boundaries and explain the relative situations to the comprehension of every reader.[3]

Eaton.—After Mr. Maclure, Prof. Amos Eaton was the most important factor in the shaping of the methods of geologic work in America. By his various publications and his influence as a teacher he outlined the methods and formulated the general principles upon which geologic investigation was carried forward for nearly two decades. The correlations made in his earlier works were based entirely upon the lithologic characters of the rocks. Believing in the Mosaic cosmogony, he explained the phenomena he observed in the structural relations of the rocks by the giving way of the foundation of the Old World prior to the flood. He says:[4]

While this tremendous crash of nature was going on, scales of various thicknesses from the various strata were shot up, detached, and broken, which gave formation to our surrounding hills, the ragged cliffs of the Catskill, and the bleak brow of the

[1] Op cit., p. 412.

[2] Observations on the Geology of the United States; with remarks on the probable effects that may be produced by the decomposition of the different classes of rocks on the nature and fertility of soils. Am. Phil. Soc. Trans., vol. 1, new ser., 1817, pp. 1–91.

[3] Op. cit., p. 9.

[4] An index to the Geology of the Northern States, with a transverse section from Catskill Mountain to the Atlantic. Leicester, 1818, pp. 48, 49.

Andes. Some were formed at the bottom of the sea by volcanic fires, others have arisen from various causes since the great deep retired.

During the deluged state of the earth many species of animals were probably destroyed. For we continually find the petrified remains of species of animals now totally extinct.

From the latter observation it is quite evident that at that time he did not consider fossils to be of any value in the correlation of the rocks. In the next edition of the Index [1] his theories of the origin and first condition of the surface and position of the rocks are omitted, and a more thorough description is given of the various rock masses, the classification of which was lithologic and based on the views of Dr. Werner. His more extensive work of 1824[2] shows that the correlations made between the rocks of the Hudson and those west of the Hudson, along the line of the Erie Canal, were based mainly upon their lithologic characters. For instance, the Calciferous sandrock of the Mohawk Valley, in the vicinity of Little Falls, New York, was traced westward in the vicinity of Utica and eastward down the Mohawk Valley to the vicinity of Schenectady, and then correlated with a Calciferous sandrock on the east side of the Hudson. This correlation was made upon the lithologic character and the stratigraphic succession of the rock masses. Its defective character is shown by the fact that the Calciferous sandrock east of the Hudson is of Lower Cambrian age and that west of the Hudson is of Silurian (Ordovician) age.

Classification and correlation on the basis of lithologic character and stratigraphic succession was continued by Prof. Eaton in his work of 1828[3] and again in his text-book of 1830.[4] On the map accompanying the latter all the quartzose formations are colored yellow, all the calcareous formations blue, the variegated sandstones red, and the subordinate rocks green. By this the primitive limestones of the Adirondacks (Algonkian), the Lower Cambrian limestones of Washington County, the Calciferous-Chazy-Trenton limestones of the central portions of the State, and the Lower Devonian limestones of the Upper Helderberg are all placed under one color.

In 1832[5] he introduced a new heading into his Text Book, as follows: "Organized remains as auxiliaries in the determination of rock strata." Under this he says:

The remains of similar species of animals and plants are found embraced in similar series of rocks; and these occurrences are so uniform that rocky and earthy strata may be determined by them.[6]

---

[1] An Index to the Geology of the Northern States, 2d ed., 1820, pp. 286.

[2] A geological and agricultural survey of the district adjoining the Erie Canal, 1824, pp. 163.

[3] Geological nomenclature, exhibited in a synopsis of North American rocks and detritus. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 14, 1828, oppo. p. 144, pp. 145-149, 359-368.

[4] Geological text-book, prepared for popular lectures on North American geology; with applications to agriculture and the arts. Albany, 1830, pp. 64.

[5] Geological text-book for aiding the study of North American Geology; being a systematic arrangement of facts, collected by the author and his pupils, under the patronage of the Hon. Stephen Van Rensselaer. 2d ed. Albany, 1832.

[6] Op. cit., p. 25.

In connection with the discussion of the presence of organic remains in the rocks the following passage occurs:

The geological deposits of this country (and probably those of the eastern continent) exhibit grounds for conjecture if not absolute demonstration that the surface of the earth has undergone five general modifications, which no animals survived. Four of these modifications were followed by as many new creations of animals. Also that two new creations of animals succeeded the final depositions of all regular strata. In the whole, there appears to have been five creations of animals at least (perhaps ten) since the primitive mass of the earth was formed, and a long interval succeeded each creation.[1]

It is also said that the "remains or impressions of plants are limited to coal and coal formations whose relative position is indicated by their rocky associates; the determination of rocks by their animal relics serves as an index to the position of coal measures or beds. In this concise selection of the most essential relics animals alone will be noted which have no backbone nor brains" [invertebrates].[2]

Under the title of "Geological Equivalents" Prof. Eaton mentions that relative position and mineral constituents were deemed sufficient by Werner for determining geological equivalents. As relative position is the basis of the science, all other circumstances have always been received as auxiliaries only so far as classification is concerned.[3] He reasoned that as rocks can be traced more or less continuously throughout New York and Pennsylvania the data used by Werner are of value; but—

From a consideration of the cases here referred to, intrinsic characters more definite than any left us by Werner seem to be essential to the progress of the science. The enumeration of mineral constituents of rocks can never be satisfactorily applied. Unorganized matter presents but few characteristics. Naturalists find it a more difficult task to describe by external characters about two hundred and seventy species of minerals than fifty thousand species of plants and a still larger number of animals.

It is a subject of high congratulation to students in geology of our day that the illustrious Cuvier, aided by the Brongniarts and their coadjutors, have extended the science of organic nature to the science of geology. We are no longer limited to the enumeration of mineral constituents. We find the same organized remains associated with equivalent strata in every part of the earth, though they often extend into several adjoining strata, which are probably contemporaneous or nearly so.[4]

He then proceeds to classify the strata as known to geologists of both continents by means of some of their organic associations in North America.[5]

A few months later he published a paper on "Four cardinal points in stratigraphical geology established by organic remains," saying:

If the identity of the *Granular*, the *Metalliferous*, and the *Oolitic calcareous rocks*, and of the *Tertiary marls* are established on both continents all intervening strata may be ascertained with great facility. I think that a reference to the following facts will be sufficient to establish their equivalent characters at least.[6]

---

[1] Op. cit., p. 48.

[2] Op cit., p. 25.

[3] Geological equivalents. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 21, 1832, pp. 132–138.

[4] *Op. cit., p.* 134.

[5] Op. cit., pp. 136–138.

[6] Four cardinal points in stratigraphical geology established by organic remains. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 21, 1832, p. 199.

The first cardinal point is the Granular limerock "the only limerock which is always destitute of organic remains." The second cardinal point is the Metalliferous, Mountain or Carboniferous limerock. Under this heading he correlates the limestone at Trenton Falls and most of the limestones of New York. The third cardinal point embraces the Oolitic series or Calcareous rocks, and the fourth the Tertiary marls. These correlations of Eaton were crude, but when refined by the geologists of the New York State survey the first three formed the basis for the correlation of the lower and middle Paleozoic rocks of the continent.

Bigsby.—The earlier work of Dr. J. J. Bigsby was apparently unknown to Eaton. The former used organic remains in a very general manner to correlate the strata of England and America, but also depended upon the lithologic characters and stratigraphic succession. In an article entitled "A list of minerals and organic remains occurring in the Canadas" he remarks upon the extent and relations of the limestones and sandstones of the eastern and western parts of Canada. Of the limestones he says:

Their relation to the subjacent rocks and uniform similarity in structure and contents, mineral as well as organic, seem to indicate that the beds of limestone, extending with few or no interruptions from Cape Tourment, below Quebec, to near the Falls of St. Mary, are the effects of a contemporaneous deposition; and further, that they are the representatives of the Mountain or Carboniferous limestone of England.

I make these statements with extreme diffidence, being in some degree aware of the difficulties of the discussion, of the existence of contradictory facts, few but weighty, and of the defective state of our information respecting the vast calcareous formations of North America.[1]

The reference to the secondary limestone of the St. Lawrence and the lake region is as follows:

The limestone now described abuts on one of the older rocks directly, or with the interposition of another horizontal stratum, and by far the most commonly on gneiss, which I have strong grounds for believing to be of the same age and general characters throughout the whole of the districts under consideration. It is incumbent directly on gneiss in the bed of the river St. Anne, near its upper falls, in the seigniory of St. Feriole, Lower Canada; at Montmorenci, not far from "the natural steps," but only seen in time of low water; at and near Point Henry, close to Kingston, Upper Canada; and in many places on the north coast of Lake Huron. In the last-named locality it rests directly, in several instances, on a beautiful snow-white transition quartz, which occupies the main shore in steep hills, 400 and 500 feet high, from near the French River to the River Le Serpent (70–80 miles). The immediately subjacent rock at La Cloche and on the isles north of the Manitoulines, in the same lake, is sometimes a highly inclined greenstone. Near Montreal it overlies directly crystalline trap, containing augite, zeolite, mica, feldspar, etc.

But ordinarily a sandstone, graywacke, or a conglomerate of quartzose or calcareous materials is interposed; also in horizontal layers. It is to be remarked (en passant) that much the greater part of the graywacke of Lower Canada does not belong to this deposition, but is conformable to the mica-slate, gneiss, etc., ranging along the north shore of the St. Lawrence, between Quebec and the river Saguenay. * * *

[1] A list of mineral and organic remains occurring in the Canadas. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 8, 1824, pp. 76, 77.

The sandstone, which is beneath the limestone from near Kingston, Upper Canada, to St. Anne's, 26 miles northwest of Montreal (174 miles), is white, but with ferruginous spots and clouds, hard, fine grained, without cement, and contains thick layers of large and small nodules of crystalline quartz, disposed in horizonal lines. It forms cliffs an hundred feet high in the Lake of the Thousand Islands, which rest on the very small-grained gneiss (often a granite) which abounds so in the north and northeast and passes largely and frequently into primitive white quartz rock, thus disclosing a possible source of the sandstone and quartz nodules. Where clay is the cement an argillaceous sandstone or graywacke is furnished. The former of these I have never seen in contact with the inclined rocks. It occurs very distinctly in the chasm of the Niagara, the lower strata of which (and particularly those on which Queenston stands) are almost ferruginous clay. The nearest primitive is on the north shore of Lake Simcoe, 90 miles off. From the nature of the organic remains and other contents of the limestones covering this sandstone, I am inclined to believe the latter to be the old red, which is often thus intermixed with argillaceous matters. At Dunkirk, on the south side of Lake Erie, Mr. Hulbert has bored through these rocks to the depth of 682 feet (117 feet below the surface of the Atlantic) and without meeting with salt. The above observations apply to the fine sections in the bed of the Genesee River; but I have not sufficiently examined the fossils in the limestone of that locality. Its sandstone has large but indistinct casts of what I suppose to be encrinites, but which may be vegetable, but in either case resembling the Old Red sandstone. It may be added that it is on the same level with and not very far from the sandstone of the vicinity of Kingston; but similarity in level taken by itself is not an unerring test of similarity in age. In one part of a district or lake granite, gneiss, etc., may attain a given elevation and be there covered with graywacke only; while in another and not very distant place these rocks may not rise to within some thousand feet of that height, and be buried under all the succeeding strata up to the Crag above the London clay.[1]

A conglomerate wholly calcareous occurs in situ near the foot of the Long Sault of the river Ottawa, and at the Coteau du lac, 3 miles below Lake St. Francis, composed of angular and rolled masses, sometimes very large, of fine granular limestone light brown and blue, imbedded in a dark brown paste. A similar rock occurs with the limestone about Poughkeepsie, in the State of New York, and at Aubigny, opposite Quebec, interleaved with clay slate and graywacke, highly inclined, and having a southwest direction.[2]

The elements of correlation suggested in the preceding quotations include lithologic resemblance, similarity of level in a given area, stratigraphic succession, and the presence of organic remains.

At a later date Dr. Bigsby noticed in the conglomerates on the south side of the St. Lawrence, opposite Quebec, the presence of trilobites, encrinites, corrallites, and other fossils, and, on this account, considers the formation the equivalent of the Carboniferous limestone of the English geologists.[3]

James.—One of the earliest extended correlations in America is that of Dr. Edwin James.[4] In his remarks on the sandstone of the western part of the valley of the Mississippi he first describes in detail the red sandstone.[5] He states that this rock is the lowest of the horizontal or

[1] Op. cit., pp. 78–80.

[2] Op. cit., p. 81.

[3] On the geology of Quebec and vicinity. Proc. Geol. Soc. London, vol. 1, 1827, p. 38.

[4] Remarks on the sandstone and Floetz trap formations of the western part of the valley of the Mississippi. Am. Phil. Soc. Trans., vol. 2, new ser., 1821, pp. 191–215.

[5] Op. cit., p. 204.

secondary rocks met with and is very abundant in all that part of the plain immediately adjacent to the Rocky Mountains which he had examined. A similar rock is met with in the eastern part of the State of New York. Specimens from many parts of the strata on the Canadian River are entirely similar to those quarried in New Jersey and used in great quantities in the cities of New York, Albany, etc., for building.

"Whether this sandstone is in all respects similar to the 'Old Red sandstone' of Werner, which makes so conspicuous a figure in the systems of certain geologists, we are not able to say. It, however, certainly occupies a place similar to the one which has been assigned to that rock." In a foot-note referring to this statement it is said that—

> This red sandstone is first found on the waters of the lakes on the strait between Lake Huron and Lake Superior, and forms the fall called the Sault de Ste. Maria.[1]
>
> It also occurs in the Catskill Mountains and in the Salt District in the western part of the State of New York, having a similar relation to the secondary rocks in that quarter. * * * The red sandrock now under consideration appears at one place with every character requisite to place it among the rocks of transition, at another it is manifestly secondary; yet its continuity may be traced through minute shades of gradation or by a sudden transition from one of these points to the other.[2]

A review of the preceding remarks indicates that Dr. James supposed the Jura-Trias sandstone of the eastern foothills of the Rocky Mountains, the red sandstone of the Lake Superior region (Algonkian), the eastern New York sandstone (Upper Cambrian), and the New Jersey Triassic sandstone were of the same relative geologic age as shown by their lithologic characters and supposed stratigraphic position.

Bakewell.—The publication of the American edition of Mr. Robert Bakewell's Geology in 1829 was an important contribution to American geologic literature. It presents an account of the geological distribution of organic remains as then understood and the general principles of geology as known to English geologists.

In regard to correlation by fossils Mr. Bakewell says:

> With respect to fossil conchology he is inclined to believe that the attempt to identify the strata of distant countries by the isolated occurrence of any particular species of shell has been carried further than a sound induction from facts or analogy would warrant. His opinion on this subject, given in the second edition of this work, he will here insert: "It may be doubted whether the occurrence of similar organic remains is sufficient to identify strata in distant parts of the globe; for could we admit that strata are universal formations and extended from the frozen to the torrid zone, it seems more than probable that the animals that lived on any one particular stratum would be of very different species in different latitudes." * * *
>
> In strata belonging to one formation and in adjacent districts, the existence of certain shells, whether we regard them as distinct species or as varieties, may be of use in identifying any particular bed; and in distant countries where we find the same remarkable species of shell associated with any other remarkable species in considerable numbers it may serve to identify a particular rock formation, where the mineral character of the rock may be very different from that in which the observer has

[1] Op. cit., p. 205. [2] Op. cit., p. 206.

been accustomed to meet with them. The occurrence of a considerable number of gryphæ, the *Gryphea arcuata* in a bed of blue clay in the mountains around the Lake of Annecy in Savoy, served the author as a key to discover to what formation the calcareous strata belonged, when their mineral characters would have indicated a more ancient series.[1]

De la Beche.—In 1832 an edition of the Geological Manual[2] of De la Beche was published in Philadelphia. In the section upon the classification of rocks we find the following remarks upon classifiation by organic remains:

To propose in the present state of geological science any classification of rocks which should pretend to more than temporary utility would be to assume a more intimate acquaintance with the earth's crust than we possess. Our knowledge of this structure is far from extensive, and principally confined to certain portions of Europe. Still, however, a mass of information has gradually been collected, particularly as respects this quarter of the world, tending to certain general and important conclusions, among which the principal are, that rocks may be divided into two great classes, the stratified and the unstratified; that of the former some contain organic remains and others do not; and that the nonfossiliferous stratified rocks, as a mass, occupy an inferior place to the fossiliferous[3] strata, also taken as a mass. The next important conclusion is, that among the stratified fossiliferous rocks there is a certain order of superposition, apparently marked by peculiar general accumulations of organic remains, though the mineralogical character varies materially. It has even been supposed that in the divisions termed formations there are found certain species of shells, etc., characteristic of each. Of this supposition extended observation can alone prove the truth; but it must not be supposed, as some now do, that in any accumulation of ten or twenty beds, characterized by the presence of distinct fossils in a given district, the organic remains will be found equally characteristic of the same part of the series at remote distances.

To suppose that all the formations into which it has been thought advisable to divide European rocks can be detected by the same organic remains in various distant points of the globe is to assume that the vegetables and animals distributed over the surface of the world were always the same at the same time, and that they were all destroyed at the same moment, to be replaced by a new creation, differing specifically, if not generically, from that which immediately preceded it. From this theory it would also be inferred that the whole surface of the world possessed an uniform temperature at the same given epoch.

It has been considered, but has not yet been sufficiently proved, that the lowest rocks in which organic remains are found entombed show a general uniformity in their organic contents at points on the surface considerably distant from each other, and that this general uniformity gradually disappeared, until animal and vegetable life became as different in different latitudes, and even under various meridians, as it now is. How far this opinion may or may not be correct can only be seen when geological facts shall have been sufficiently multiplied; but it is one which demands considerable attention, as the classification of fossiliferous rocks greatly depends upon it. Should it eventually be found to a certain degree correct it would not be at variance with the theory of a central heat, which having diminished permitted solar heat and light gradually to acquire an influence on the earth's surface.[4]

Numerous other European works soon came into the hands of the American geologists, among them the earlier editions of Bakewell,

[1] Introduction to Geology, Robt. Bakewell, 1st American edition, New Haven, 1829, pp. 32, 33.
[2] Geological Manual, Philadelphia, 1832.
[3] The term *fossiliferous* is here confined to organic remains.
[4] *Op. cit., pp.* 33, 34.

Lyell, Mantell, and various French and German authors. Their influence is shown by the rapid development of stratigraphic geology based upon the principles established in Europe. Of the means of correlation available to Prof. Amos Eaton in his earlier work he says, in 1839:

Eaton.—When I commenced my geological surveys the application of organized remains for demonstrating strata was not studied in America. I had become acquainted with no method for determining the character of such strata but that of tracing them separately through a vast extent of country and then comparing their general characters. For this purpose I traveled some thousand miles at my own expense and with the liberal aid of students of Williams College, with Prof. Dewey at their head, where I was employed more than a score of years since by the authorities of the college to introduce the natural sciences. Afterwards I traveled more than 17,000 miles on geologizing tours at the expense of the Hon. Stephen Van Rensslaer, and I was always aided by several assistants and competent students. Had the application of paleontology been then as well understood as it now is I could have settled the characters of most rocks as well in my closet by the aid of specimens. But it is a true remark in your last journal that strata must have been first settled according to the method to which I was compelled by ignorance to submit, before the service of organized remains could be successfully employed. In this country no material progress had then been made in the study of organized relics, and even now we have very few good paleontologists.[1]

NEW YORK SURVEY.

The geologists of the New York State survey systematized the work of the geologists who preceded them and established a standard section of the lower and middle Paleozoic formations of New York. On this account it is desirable to examine the principles of correlation mentioned by Messrs. Conrad, Hall, and Emmons and to notice the extension of the nomenclature of the formations of the New York section to various portions of the continent.

Conrad.—As paleontologist of the survey Mr. T. A. Conrad made the following comments upon the use of fossils in the correlation of strata:[2]

There is a strange misunderstanding of the method of applying organic remains in the division of series of strata into formations and the identification of widely separated rocks by the zoological characters of each. In the January number of the New York Review the opinion is advanced that the "Calymene blumenbachii ought to be carefully sought for in the rocks which are said to correspond to the Dudley period. Unless it is found, or some other consideration is introduced, can it be believed that fossils are a satisfactory evidence of the age and place of rocks?" The line of demarcation between rocks of different age has never yet been drawn with any accuracy by the aid of paleontology, except by the consideration of groups of species, one or even a few species having no weight whatever in the determination. Thus the shell termed *Terebratula Schlotheimii* dates its existence with the Trenton limestone, and reappears in three of the latter formations of the Silurian system. *Orthis testudinaria*, Dalm., is peculiarly characteristic of the Trenton limestone, by its almost invariable presence and extreme abundance, and yet it is also found in the limestone of the Helderberg, a formation of a far more recent origin. But, although a few species may have been continued through a succession of geological eras, the

[1] Chorty limerock or Corniferous limerock, proposed as the line of reference for State geologists of New York and Pennsylvania. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 36, 1839, p. 67.

[2] Second annual report of the paleontological department of the survey. Third annual report of the geological survey of New York, 1839, p. 58. Albany.

groups are widely distinct, and their value in determining the comparative age and identity of formations can never again be called in question by a geologist who deserves the name.

Attention is called to the fact that no observer has yet drawn the line of distinction between the Trenton and the newer limestone superimposed upon it in Ohio and Kentucky, because the similarity in mineral character and color is so perfect, and both formations thin out into mere seams and layers. It is also stated that the catalogues of organic remains of the Silurian system hitherto published in Europe are calculated only to mislead and confound the geological inquirer, as they are far too vague.[1]

In 1840 Mr. Conrad instituted a series of comparisons of formations of the New York section with those of England, based upon the fossils contained in their respectative formations. He compares the Caradoc sandstone with the limestone of Trenton Falls, and the Wenlock shale with the Rochester shale, and the Wenlock limestone with a limestone developed in the Helderberg Mountains.[2]

In the fifth annual report on the paleontology of New York we find the following remarks applied to correlation of the rocks of the State:[3]

> The horizontally and undisturbed condition of the strata have enabled us to trace their sequence or order of superposition with comparative ease and greater accuracy than can always be obtained in regions where the formations have been much inclined or distorted. These divisions or series are usually composed of various layers, as compact limestone associated with friable shale, sandstone alternating with argillaceous shale, etc., and these modifications of their mineral constituents are generally accompanied by some variation of the organic contents; new species have been introduced, or more ancient ones have disappeared. But it is only at the junction of two formations that each *group* of organic remains is not perfectly distinct and characteristic, a mixture of species sometimes occurring which proves a gradual transition from one era to another, and gives rise to some uncertainty where the exact line of demarcation should be drawn. This fact opposes the idea sometimes indulged by speculative geologists, that sudden convulsions of the earth's surface have been the cause of exterminating forms of life, and the introduction of others to supply their place. The change seems rather due to alteration of temperature in the water, whatever new physical conditions of the earth resulted at the same time. Such phenomena, however, do not interfere with the general distinctive characters of the stratigraphical divisions adopted in this work. It is now, I believe, an undisputed point in geology that certain groups of organic remains belong exclusively to certain formations, and that these strata, in a general way, may be known and compared by the same groups of genera, if not species, in every region of the earth. It is also established, that whilst some genera and many species are restricted to a single formation, others have originated at an early period and continued to exist throughout a large portion of the time occupied in the deposition of a system or series of formations. * * *
>
> The color and even mineral character of a formation usually varies greatly over an extended region, but it may be recognized by its fossil contents; for example, the black slate of the Mohawk, characterized by a peculiar trilobite, Triarthrus, which

[1] Op. cit., p. 50.

[2] On the Silurian System, with a table of the strata and characteristic fossils. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 38 1840 pp. 87-91.

[3] Fifth annual report on the paleontology of New York. Fifth Annual Report of the Geological Survey of New York, 1841, pp. 25-27. Albany.

has never been known to occur in any other geological position, is represented by a drab colored shale in the vicinity of Cincinnati, Ohio. There also the equivalent or continuation of the black limestone of Trenton Falls is of a gray or pale hue, and could be known as the same rock only by its organic reliquiæ. The Caradoc sandstone series of Wales is represented in New York by limestone and slate in proportion equal to the arenaceous strata.

Hall.—The desirability of naming formations from typical exposures to serve as standards of comparison for the purpose of correlation was enunciated by Prof. James Hall very clearly in 1839, as follows:

Everyone who has studied rocks even partially is aware of the insufficiency of mineral or lithological characters for giving nomenclature, and the many errors into which he may be led, whether in his own researches or by the mistakes of others. So likewise in the present state of our knowledge we are unable in all cases to give names from fossil characters; for, though without doubt every group embraces its peculiar fossils, yet in all localities these may not be so marked as to excite attention, and in some may possibly be absent. It thus becomes a desideratum to distinguish rocks by names which can not be traduced, and which, when the attendant circumstances are fully understood, will never prove fallacious. The basis of this nomenclature is derived from localities, and the rock or group will receive its name from the place where it is best developed.[1]

He then proceeds to name the "Rochester shale" from Rochester, New York, and the Lockport limestone from Lockport, New York.

In 1843, after stating the general results of an examination of a section southwest from Cleveland to the Mississippi River, he wrote:[2]

From the facts here stated the conclusion seems unavoidable, that the character of fossils is, or may be, as variable as lithological characters; in fact, that the species depend in some degree upon the nature of the material among which they lived. Fossil characters therefore become of parallel importance to the lithological; and, in order to arrive at just conclusions, both must be studied in connection, and localities of proximity examined. In the case of the Hudson River group of shales and sandstones, in passing from New York to Ohio, the lithological character is almost entirely changed; and at the same time also the most prominent and abundant fossils are unlike those of the group in New York. More careful examination, however, reveals the fossils which characterize this group at the East, and also at the same time some obscurely similar lithological characters. Similar lithological changes, accompanied by like changes in fossils, occur in more limited districts within the State of New York.

The most marked and important changes, however, appear to be in the higher rocks of the New York system. The Hamilton group and Marcellus shale, which in New York have a thickness of 1,000 feet, have diminished to 100 where last examined; and from being the group most prolific in fossils, as it is in New York, it has become entirely barren of them. The rocks forming the Portage and Chemung groups, which in their greatest development in New York are scarcely less than 3,000 feet in thickness, and in Pennsylvania much more, have in Indiana diminished to as many hundred. The upper of these groups, from being extremely fossiliferous, has become almost destitute of these characters, so that, at the farthest extreme examined, they furnish but an equivocal guide. In these groups lithological character is more persistent than fossils, and it requires a knowledge of the superposition to identify them satisfactorily. The greater thickness of these sedimentary deposits, and the greater

[1] Third Annual Report of the 4th Geological district of New York. Third Annual Report of the Geological Survey of New York. Albany, 1839. pp. 288, 289.

[2] Notes explanatory of a section from Cleveland, Ohio, to the Mississippi River, in a southwest direction; with remarks upon the identity of the western formations with those of New York. Assoc. Am. Geol. Trans., 1843, pp. 289–291.

development of fossils occurring at the same point, proves the organic forms to have flourished in a littoral position; and beyond these points, where the thinning of the strata indicates a greater distance from the shore the fossils diminish, and at the more distant and deeper points are not found at all. There is no evidence of denudation in these instances, and if there had been the parts left would have retained the same fossils, had it ever contained them, as they do farther east.

Throughout that part of the ancient ocean now occupied by Ohio, Indiana, Michigan, Illinois, and even to the west of the Mississippi, there appears to have been comparatively a small number of living forms existing from the period of the final deposition of the Helderberg limestones to the commencement of the Carboniferous period; while in New York, during the same period, there were a greater number of forms and individuals than in all the preceding periods. Without desiring to diminish the value of fossil characters as means of identifying strata, it must still be acknowledged that similar conditions in the bed of the ocean, and apparently similar depth of water, are required to give existence or continuation to a uniform fauna; and when we pass beyond the points where these conditions existed in the ancient ocean, we lose in the same degree the evidences of identity founded upon fossils. Some species, it is true, have lived onward through successive depositions, often of very different nature; yet, at the same time, these may not have had a very wide geographical range. In the case before us, some species have lived during the deposition of all the rocks from the Hamilton through the Chemung groups, and yet they have never extended themselves as far westward as Ohio and Indiana, although the nature of the deposits there was as favorable to their existence as in New York.

For the distance of 100 or 200 miles from the shores of the present continents the forms may be similar—we know not but they are—still who can say what changes may occur, or whether any exist in the depths 1,000 miles from land? From the nature of sedimentary deposits it can be only the finer parts that ever reach to great distances from their origin; and, reasoning thus, the fauna of the deep and distant parts of the ocean, if any exist, would be uniform, not being liable to destruction or change of condition from the rapid invasion of variable deposits like those near the shore. The deposition of a coarse sandstone or conglomerate succeeding to a shaly mass would in all probability destroy the greater number of living forms as far as it extended. But at the same time, the finer materials produced by the same cause would extend far beyond the limits of the coarser, and thus approximating in some degree to the lower mass, the fossils might be continued long after they were destroyed at another point.

One of the most interesting changes in the products on going westward is the great increase of carbonate of lime and the diminution of shaly and sandy matter, indicating a deeper ocean or greater distance from land. The source of the calcareous deposits is thus shown to have been in that direction, or in the southwest, while the sands and clays had their origin in the east, southeast, and northeast, producing a turbid condition in the waters of these parts during long intervals, which was unfavorable to the production of calcareous matter and the formation of chemical deposits. In New York we are evidently upon the margin of this primeval ocean, as indicated in the character of the deposits as well as organic remains; the southwest unfolds to us that portion where greater depth and more quiet condition prevailed.

At a later date he said:

I have met with no essay upon the geographical distribution of fossils in the older rocks; and the few facts here and there gleaned serve rather to stimulate than to satisfy curiosity. It has been a favorite opinion of many, and frequently advanced, that the condition of this ancient ocean was uniform and its depth *moderate*, and that the uniformity of organic products affords proof of the same. Without pretending to refute any theories or to establish general conclusions for the whole continent or for the whole globe, I shall merely offer a few facts which have fallen under my own *observation, and this* with the hope of calling the attention of other observers to the

subject and aid in deciding the true cause and amount of variation in paleozoic characters when examined over wide districts. We shall doubtless be led eventually to see in all these changes the influences of *depths of water, distance from or proximity to land*, and *the influence of the nature of that deposit* which formed the bed of the ocean, on which the animals lived. Every one of these causes, and perhaps other minor ones, have influenced the present character and condition of our older fossiliferous deposits. All these circumstances influence the organic productions of our present ocean, whatever may be the climate; and we have every proof that the same causes operated in this ancient sea, where, although depth and temperature may have been more uniform, yet these could not have been paramount to all other influences.[1]

He then proceeds to correlate the strata of the Mississippi Basin with those of the New York section by means of the contained fossils, and where possible the order of stratigraphic succession.

Emmons.—In a geological report of the midland counties of North Carolina, Dr. E. Emmons, in 1856, speaks of the classification of the sediments and says in this connection:

Superposition is, however, the highest proof of age, the oldest occupying the inferior position.

The bearing which fossils have to any scheme of classification which has been proposed can be understood only by a knowledge of the following laws: (1) *That species or kinds have had a limited duration;* (2) *that there has been a succession of species;* and (3) *that the species of one period, and which have become extinct, have never lived in any future period.* The utility of the knowledge of fossils is based on these three laws. This knowledge is particularly useful in comparing rocks which are widely separated from each other, or in those cases where direct superposition can not be observed. If, for example, certain rocks in Canada furnish a group of fossils similar to those of a given series in Tennessee, the inference would be that they belonged to the same period and hence occupy the same geological position; or, if we compare the fossils of the coal formation of England and America it will be found that they are almost identical; and it is proved also that the position relatively is the same in both countries, though separated from each other 3,000 miles.[2]

The extension of the New York section to the south along the line of the Appalachian Mountains was principally the work of the Rogers Brothers and Prof. Safford.

Rogers.—As geologists Messrs. H. D. and W. B. Rogers traced the the formations by stratigraphic continuity, lithologic characters, serial relation, and the presence of similar fossils as in the Trenton limestone, etc. I have not met with a statement of their views of geologic correlation except in incidental remarks. In a reply made to Prof. James Hall, who had congratulated the Profs. Rogers that they had borne such able evidence to the value of organic remains in determining the age of rock, Prof. W. B. Rogers said:[3]

That they had not been understood on this point; they had followed out the intricate structural geology of Pennsylvania and Virginia, relying chiefly on lithological characters, and had found to their great gratification that they had been working in parallel planes to the New York geologists, whose labors among the regular and

[1] Nature of the strata and geographical distribution of the organic remains in the older formations of the United States. Boston Jour. Nat. Hist., vol. 5, 1845, pp. 2, 3.

[2] Geological report of the midland counties of North Carolina. New York and Raleigh, 1856, p. 24.

[3] A system of classification and nomenclature of the paleozoic rocks of the United States, with an account of their distribution, more particularly in the Appalachian Mountain Chain. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 47, 1844, p. 112.

horizontal strata of that State, relying on the evidence of fossil remains, had brought out results in the main quite consistent with the determinations of the Virginia and Pennsylvania strata.

In an address before the Association of American Geologists and Naturalists, Prof. Henry D. Rogers, in speaking of the tracks in the sandstone of the Connecticut Valley, says:

> Of the organic remains, through an investigation of which alone we can hope to establish the position of these strata in the scale of time, or reach definite conclusions respecting the physical conditions under which they were produced, the most instructive are the remarkable bird-tracks, brought to light by Prof. Hitchcock, in Connecticut and Massachusetts.
>
> Guided by mere lithological resemblance, Maclure imagined this stratum to be the equivalent of the Old Red Sandstone of England.[1]

These passages imply that Prof. Henry D. Rogers considered paleontological evidence of the highest value in correlation, although in his work in Virginia he relied largely upon stratigraphic relations and lithology for the correlation of the Virginia with the Pennsylvania formations.

The correlation of the sandstone beneath the Trenton and Magnesian limestones of Pennsylvania, by Prof. H. D. Rogers and those that succeeded him, was based upon the stratigraphic position of the sandstone and the presence of *Scolithus linearis*, a fossil believed to be common to the Potsdam sandstone of New York and the lower sandstone of Pennsylvania.

The evidence of the identity of the sandstone with that of the Potsdam sandstone of New York, on the stratigraphic succession and position, is as follows:

(1) The formation is beneath a series of limestones, a portion of which is identified with the Trenton limestone by the contained fossils.

(2) The sandstone rests unconformably upon the crystalline gneisses forming the basal rocks of the Paleozoic period of Pennsylvania.

(3) The lithologic characters of the sandstone formation corresponded to that of the Potsdam sandstone of New York.

The paleontologic evidence is the presence of the annelid borings called *Scolithus linearis* in the sandstone of New York and Pennsylvania.

When once established this correlation was adopted and used by the first survey of Pennsylvania and also the second, but not altogether without protest by some of the workers in the latter. Mr. d'Invilliers[2] calls attention to this correlation of the Potsdam in the following words:

> It would be safer to name this formation the *Reading sandstone*, but in the descriptions of its outcrops along the Little Lehigh, the Lehigh, and the Delaware Rivers, in Vol. I of this report, it has been called *Potsdam sandstone*, taking for granted that any sand formation underneath the Magnesian limestones of the Great Valley must be the same sand formation which in northern New York underlies the Corniferous [Calciferous?], Chazy, and other limestones of the Mohawk Valley.

[1] On American geology and present condition of geological research in the United States. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 47, 1844, p. 248.

[2] The geology of the South Mountain Belt of Berks County. Second Geol. Surv. of Penn., D3, vol. 2, 1883, p. 99.

On the map of Adams County, based upon the results of geological work of Dr. Persifor Frazer, the quartzite resting upon Azoic is identified as Potsdam, with a question mark.

Safford.—In his first report upon the geology of Tennessee, Prof. J. M. Safford describes the method of the grouping of the strata into formations. He says:[1]

We often meet with a series of adjacent strata similar in many respects, so much so that they can conveniently be thrown together in a single *group* or *formation*, as such a series is often termed.

He says further:

For example, the *sandstone, slates,* and *coal* which form the upper part of the Cumberland Table-land, are grouped in a *formation*, called the *Coal Measures*, with the following among other common characters: *First*, coal is found at intervals throughout the series; *secondly*, there is very little limestone or calcareous matter in the series; *thirdly*, the strata are parallel, and appear to have been formed in succession, under similar circumstances; *fourthly*, the same *fossils*, such as different species of petrified shells, leaves, branches, and trunks of trees, etc., occur imbedded in the rocks throughout the length and breadth of the series. *Characters* similar to these unite the strata of all the formations.

The character last mentioned we must refer to more particularly, on account of its great importance in designating with precision the group to which local and isolated beds of rock belong.

In defining the use of fossils it is stated that each formation has, in great part, its own fossils.

Most of those found in one do not occur in any other. Upon this fact depends their great utility. They furnish, when known well enough to be recognized, unmistakable evidence of the geological position, and hence the general character of the formation in which they are found.

From these observations of Prof. Safford we postulate the principles of correlation which he used, as follows:

I. Stratigraphic position.
II. The occurrence of similar fossils.
III. Lithologic characters.

CANADA.

The New York series was traced into Canada by Sir Wm. E. Logan and his associates and correlations made by direct stratigraphic connection, and in the absence of that, paleontologic data, stratigraphic relations, and lithologic characters.

Logan.—In speaking of the stratigraphic succession of the New York and Canadian sections Sir W. E. Logan makes the following reference to the fossiliferous limestone above the Calciferous sandrock, or the Trenton limestone:

The lowest of the fossiliferous strata is a sandstone of variable quality, more purely siliceous towards the bottom, and calciferous towards the top, which gives support to a thick and remarkably persistent deposit of limestone, strongly distinguished by its organic remains. This limestone thus becomes an admirable means of tracing

[1] A geological reconnaissance of Tennessee; first biennial report, Nashville, 1856, pp. 130, 131.

out the perimeter of the great western area under consideration. From the northwest border of North Carolina it sweeps in a broad belt across Virginia to the junction of the Shenandoah and Potomac. Thence traversing Maryland, it passes through Pennsylvania by Harrisburg, on the Susquehanna, and Belvidere, on the Delaware, accompanied up to this point by the underlying sandstone. Diminished in its thickness, it thence crosses New Jersey, and reaching Poughkeepsie it passes up the valley of the Hudson and Champlain, keeping to the east of the river and the lake, and attains the neighborhood of Missisquoi Bay. Entering Canada, it proceeds towards Quebec, and it reaches the vicinity of that fortress; but I am not yet aware of the precise spots at which it is visible in its course thither, farther than that I have been informed a stratified limestone answering its condition is quarried and burned in the Seignory of St. Hyacinthe, east of the Yamaska River.[1]

He states that the city of Quebec does not stand on this limestone, but it is found below the city on the north shore of Beauport and farther down the river to Cape Tourment. Following up the valley of the St. Lawrence, it is found to run along the foot of a range of syenitic hills, and it leaves the river in the vicinity of Montreal and again appears in the Ottawa Basin. He then describes its extension south along the valley of Lake Champlain, and west through the valley of the Mohawk and Black River and north of Lakes Ontario, Huron, and Michigan, to Wisconsin, following thus the correlation made by Hall.

NEWFOUNDLAND.

The extension of the Canadian nomenclature to Newfoundland was the work of Messrs. Logan and Billings. In tracing the Paleozoic formations down the St. Lawrence River from Montreal, Logan found that a series of sandstones occurs beneath the Calciferous sandrock, which was well recognized beneath the Trenton limestone. The sandstones rested unconformably upon the subjacent Archean. A long interval exists between these exposures and those on the north side of the Straits of Belle Isle, where sandstones and limestones are superjacent to the Archean. In his first expression of opinion he calls the sandstones the Potsdam, from their stratigraphic position and lithologic character. When the fossils which were obtained from the associated limestones were examined by Mr. Billings and found to be identical with those that he had referred to the Lower Potsdam in Vermont, the strata on the north side of the Straits of Belle Isle were referred without reserve to the Potsdam horizon, and those occupying a similiar position on the west of Newfoundland were also similarly referred.[2]

When correlating the Lower Cambrian sandstones and slates of northern Vermont with the limestones and sandstones of the north shore of the Straits of Belle Isle, upon the lithologic and paleontologic similarities between the two deposits, Mr. E. Billings states that although 860 miles distant from each other there can be little doubt that they are of the same age.

---

[1] [Account of general structure of an extended area in North America.] Geol. Survey Canada, Report of Progress for 1843, 1845, p. 8.

[2] Geological Survey of Canada; Report of Progress from its commencement to 1863, pp. 97, 288, *289, 864, 865.* Montreal, 1863.

The occurrence of *Scolithus linearis* and the general aspect of the fossils also show that these rocks must be very nearly, if not exactly, in the same geological horizon with the Upper Primal sandstones and slates of Pennsylvania.[1]

The Lower Paleozoic rocks of Newfoundland were correlated with those of Canada by Sir W. E. Logan upon the evidence of the fossils and their stratigraphic position. The fossils were identified by Mr. Billings, and the stratigraphic geology was studied by Messrs. Richardson, Murray, and Howley.

Dana.—Prof. J. D. Dana availed himself of the correlations made by the New York, Canadian, and other surveys in the preparation of the earlier editions of his Manual of Geology. The Manual is a masterly compilation of the available data upon broad principles of correlation, and as it went at once into the hands of all American geologists and students its influence has been widespread. The principles of correlation mentioned are outlined in the following paragraphs:

But the question may arise whether a geological age is not, after all, strongly marked off in the rocks. Rocks are but the moving sands or the accumulations of dead relics of the age they represent, and are local phenomena, as already explained. Each continent has its special history as regards rock-making, and it is only through the fossils in the rocks that the special histories are combined into a general system. Movements have in all ages disturbed one hemisphere without affecting the other, causing breaks in the succession of rocks in one continent or part of a continent that have no representatives in another.

When an age can be proved, through careful study, to have been closed by a catastrophe or a transition which was universal in its effects, the event is accepted as a grand and striking one in geological history. But the proof should be obtained before the universality is assumed. Hence the conclusion:

Fourthly. The grander subdivisions or ages in geological history based on organic progress should be laid down independently of the rocks. They are universal ideas for the globe. The rocks are to be divided off as nearly as practicable in accordance with them.

Each continent, under these ages, then becomes a special study, and its history has its periods and epochs which may or may not correspond in their limits with those of the other continents. Every transition in the strata, as from limestone to sandstone, clay beds or conglomerate, or from either one to the other, and especially where there is also a striking change in the organic remains, indicates a transition in the era from one set of circumstances to another; it may be a change from one level to another in the continents, a submergence or emergence or some other kind of catastrophe. All such transitions mark great events in the history of the continent, and thus divide the era into periods, and periods into epochs, and epochs, it may be, into subepochs. Hence—

Fifthly. Through the ages each continent had its special history; and the periods and epochs in that history are indicated by changes or transitions in the rock formations and their fossils.

It is greatly to the assistance of research that some of the revolutions of the globe have probably been nearly or quite universal. The one preceding the Mammalian age appears to be an example; although, even with regard to this, further investigation is required before its actual universality can be regarded as established. But the periods and epochs of America and Europe are not in general the same in their

[1] Paleozoic fossils. Containing descriptions and figures of new or little known species of organic remains from the Silurian rocks. Vol. 1, 1860–1865, p. 2. Montreal, 1865. First printed in 1861 in a bulletin issued by the Geological Survey of Canada.

limits. A near contemporaneity in rocks may be proved, but not in the transitions from one rock to another. For example, the Devonian age has a very different series of periods and epochs in North America from what it has in Europe, and there is even considerable diversity between the epochs of New York and the Atlantic slope and those of the Mississippi Valley. The Carboniferous, Reptilian, and Mammalian ages also have their American epochs and their European, differing from one another; and the differences between the continents increase as we come down to more modern times. There are Tertiary and Cretaceous rocks in America as well as Europe, but there is little reason for the assumption that the transitions from one set of Tertiary or Cretaceous strata to another were, in the two, contemporaneous. The point should be proved, not assumed. We add, therefore,

Sixthly. It is an important object in geology to ascertain as nearly as possible the parallelism between the periods and epochs marked off on each continent, and study out the precise *equivalents* of the rocks, each for each, that all the special histories may read as parts of one general history, and thus contribute to the perfection of one geological system.[1]

MISSISSIPPI VALLEY.

The Lower Paleozoic rocks of this region were correlated with those of New York by Messrs. Owen, Locke, Hall, and others, usually without stating the data except by implication (e. g., speaking of the Trenton limestone of New York as a limestone carrying certain fossils and superjacent to a marked formation, the Calciferous sandrock of New York or the Lower Magnesian limestone of Wisconsin, etc.). Thus the correlation is based upon stratigraphic position, presence of similar fossils, and lithologic characters.

Hall.—The following observations by Prof. Hall are a good illustration of the method by which the Potsdam sandstone of New York was correlated with the lower sandstone of the Mississippi Valley section:[2]

In comparing the older rocks of New York and of the East generally with those of the West it should not be forgotten that there is a long interval on the line of the northern outcrop of these ancient strata between the St. Lawrence and the western limit of Michigan on the Menomonee River, where we can expect little aid from paleontology. The fossiliferous beds of these ancient formations in Wisconsin lie to the west of what appears to have been a great promontory at the time of their deposition, stretching southward from the region of Lake Superior far into the ancient sea. The disconnection caused by this promontory between the East and the West would of itself prepare us to expect a fauna differing in a great degree from beds of corresponding age on the opposite sides.

It has been shown by the investigations of the Canadian Survey that not only the Potsdam sandstone but all the fossiliferous beds below the Birdseye and Black River limestones are absent from Kingston, on Lake Ontario, to Lacloche, on lake Huron. From Lacloche to Lake Superior there is a sandstone coming in below the Birdseye limestone, which, from its position, may be considered as of the age of the Chazy[3] for-

[1] Manual of Geology, 1st ed., New Haven, 1863, pp. 126–128.

[2] Preliminary notice of the fauna of the Potsdam sandstone, with remarks on the previously known species of fossils and descriptions of some new ones from the sandstone of the Upper Mississippi Valley. 16th Ann. Rep. Reg. State Cab., Nat. Hist. N. Y., 1863, pp. 211–213.

[3] The 'Chazy formation' of the Canadian Geological Survey, in its eastern localities includes a sandstone which comes in below the greater part of the limestone, leaving from 10 to 20 feet of shale and limestone beneath (Geology of Canada, 1863, p. 123). It is apparently this sandstone of the Chazy formation, having in Canada a thickness of 50 feet, which has become augmented in its western extension while the calcareous part of the formation has partially or entirely disappeared.

mation and equivalent to the St. Peters sandstone of Wisconsin and Minnesota, and it is this sandstone, doubtless, which has been taken for the Potsdam sandstone in some localities along that line.

The succeeding Birdseye and Black River formation from Lacloche to Lake Superior has become a buff-colored magnesian limestone, or weathering externally to this color, but still holding the characteristic fossils.

In New York a sandstone (the Potsdam) lies immediately beneath a magnesian limestone (the "Calciferous sandrock"); this deposit is succeeded by a calcareous formation (the Chazy), including a sandstone and surmounted by the Birdseye, Black River, and Trenton limestones.

In Wisconsin, Iowa, and Minnesota we have undoubted Trenton limestone, and below it a buff-colored magnesian limestone containing so many of the characteristic fossils of the Birdseye and Black River limestones as to leave no doubt of the parallelism of these beds with those of New York. Below this magnesian limestone we have the St. Peters sandstone, corresponding, as already shown, with the Chazy formation, and beneath this a magnesian limestone, which, in its position and lithological character, corresponds in all respects with the "*Calciferous sandrock*" of New York.

It is from all these facts that the lower sandstone of the Upper Mississippi Valley has been placed in parallelism with the sandstone of New York known as the "Potsdam."

Notwithstanding, however, that this sequence is precisely like that observed in New York it may not yet be regarded as proved that the sandstone from which I have described these fossils is in all respects the equivalent of the Potsdam sandstone of New York, Vermont, and Canada. It may represent more or it may represent less than that formation. The *lower* accessible beds of the Mississippi Valley may represent the Potsdam of 150 or 200 feet in thickness in the typical localities in New York, while the middle and upper beds of the West may be of epochs not represented in that part of the series studied in New York; and in some other places, as in the regions just mentioned, the same epochs may be represented by a shaly or semi-calcareous deposition, or may be included in the commencement of the Calciferous epoch. It should not therefore be regarded as decided that the Potsdam sandstone, as developed in New York, occupies the entire interval from the base of the oldest sedimentary formation of the Paleozoic era to the Calciferous sandstone. From what we know of the Primordial fauna in other localities we are prepared to find beds above or below, or both above and below, the epoch represented (so far as now known) by the Potsdam sandstone of New York, and which may still be of the same period.

Winchell.—It is stated by Prof. N. H. Winchell that—

It has been abundantly proved that the red sandstones of Lake Superior, however disturbed and changed locally, or however much increased in thickness by the agency of volcanic outbursts, are the exact equivalents of the New York *Potsdam*. They occupy the first position over the metamorphic slates of the *Huronian* rocks on which they lie unconformably, and from which they differ in being but slightly and only locally metamorphosed. They retain usually their evidently sedimentary characters, and have not well preserved fossil remains.[1]

He also publishes a table showing the number of species common to various Silurian formations of the Lake Superior district and New York State, and calls attention to the fact that three species only are found in the Lake Superior sandstone and the typical Potsdam sandstone of New York.

[1] General sketch of the geology of Minnesota. Geol. and Nat. Hist. Survey, Minnesota, 1st Ann. Rep. for 1872, 1873, p. 68.

The correlation by Prof. N. H. Winchell of the "Granular Quartz" and the "Red sandrock" of Vermont with the "Potsdam" sandstone of the Upper Mississippi Valley and the "Primordial" quartzite of the Northwest appears to be based upon the fact that the "Granular Quartz" of Vermont and Massachusetts rests unconformably upon the Archean, and that a similar quartzite is superjacent to Archean rocks in the Mississippi Valley. This same principle of correlation appears in his statement that the stratigraphic relations of the "Granular Quartz" and the Potsdam of New York are the same. He says: "In the first place, they are seen to lie unconformably upon the older granite."[1]

Messrs. N. H. Winchell and H. V. Winchell correlated the Winooski marble series of Vermont with the Stockbridge limestone or marble belt of the southwestern portions of the State.[2]

This correlation is based upon (*a*) the assumed Primordial age of the iron-bearing limestones and shales of the Penokee-Gogebic range of Wisconsin and the Mesabi range of Minnesota, and their assumed stratigraphic identity with the limestones and shales of western Vermont, which correspond to the Stockbridge limestones and iron ores of western New England; (*b*) the known Cambrian age of the Winooski marble series.

Meek.—As paleontologist of the Hayden and other surveys of the interior and western continental area, Mr. F. B. Meek's influence upon the correlation of fossiliferous strata was important. His views upon correlation by paleontologic evidence are given in a report on the Paleontology of eastern Nebraska, as follows:[3]

> There are probably few well informed geologists who will at the present time maintain that the occurrence of a very similar or even the same group of fossils at widely separated localities necessarily proves the rocks in which they are found to be of exactly contemporaneous origin. The most that is now generally maintained in this regard is that such identity or correspondence of types at very distantly separated parts of the world indicates that the strata in which they are imbedded were formed during the prevalence of identical or similar physical conditions at some time during the same great geological epoch, and that they hold the same or nearly the same *relative* position in the geological column of their respective districts. For instance, although a stratum in the Rocky Mountains, containing the remains of very nearly the same fauna as some particular subdivision of the Devonian system of Europe, might, for aught we know, be hundreds of years older or newer than that particular division, we would have little or no room for doubting that it belonged to the great Devonian series, or possibly even to some definite, known horizon in that series. We could moreover very positively assert in such a case that it would be, according to all past experience, useless to seek there at any lower geological horizon for workable beds of coal, or to expect to find Silurian rocks or any of their pe-

[1] The crystalline rocks of Minnesota. General report of progress made in the study of their field relations. Statement of problems yet to be solved. Geol. and Nat. Hist. Survey of Minn., 17th Ann. Rep. for 1888, 1889, p. 40.

[2] The Taconic Iron Ores of Minnesota and Western New England. Am. Geologist, vol. 6, 1890, pp. 263–274.

[3] Report on the Paleontology of eastern Nebraska, in Final Rep. of U. S. Geol. Surv. of Nebraska, Washington, 1872, p. 83.

cular products above, supposing there had been no overturning of the strata at the particular localities.

Hence, although paleontology does not enable us to ascertain the exact *actual* ages of rocks, when applied with due caution and skill in connection with a careful observance of their stratigraphical arrangement and lithological and other physical characters, it does afford the means of fixing their *relative* ages, as well as of identifying the same beds at different localities, within given fields of observation, with very considerable precision. It is therefore not merely *one* of the more important aids to the geologist in his investigations, but in the present state of geological science it is the only sure guide in classifying and determining the order of succession of rocks where this can not be done by their actual continuity or obvious superposition. For these reasons it is now the universal practice in all geological surveys conducted upon sound scientific principles to devote especial attention to this department.

ROCKY MOUNTAINS.

Whitney.—In speaking of the occurrence of the Primordial fauna in Nevada Prof. J. D. Whitney calls attention to the fact that the fossils are of Potsdam age, and that similar trilobites and brachiopods occur in Bohemia in argillaceous shales; throughout the United States, from New York to the Rocky Mountains, in the "Potsdam sandstone, or in the shales or slates;" in Texas and in Nevada, in limestone. He says:

This discovery will also indicate the necessity of caution in theorizing on the geological structure and age of regions which have only been hastily examined. It will not do to put down every red-sandstone group below the Trias in the far west as "Potsdam," for that subdivision may be much lower down, hiding itself as a modest limestone of a very neutral tint of color.[1]

Although not stated, it is evident that the principle of correlation used is purely biologic, or the occurrence of similar fossil remains.

Bradley.—When describing the strata upon the western base of the Wasatch range, near Ogden, Utah, Prof. F. H. Bradley refers the quartzite, some 1,500 feet in thickness, to the Potsdam, and the gray and calcareous shales and limestones above to the Upper and Lower Silurian.[2] A reference to the Upper Silurian was on the assumption that the limestone was the same limestone as that found 25 miles to the north, in which the characteristic Niagara coral *Halysites catenulata* was obtained by Dr. Hayden in 1871. The data upon which the other correlations are made are not given. It is probable and almost certain that the presence of a quartzite beneath the limestone, supposed to be of Silurian age, was considered to be sufficient for the reference to the Potsdam sandstone. He correlates the glauconite sandstone beneath the limestone of the Teton range section, which carries Conocoryphe and Dikelocephalus, with the Knox sandstone of Safford, in Tennessee. Beneath them, and often present when they are absent, he found from 50 to 75 feet of a very compact ferruginous quartzite "which must represent the Potsdam."[3]

[1] Note on the occurrence of the "Primordial Fauna" in Nevada. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 3, 1872, p. 85.

[2] Report of Frank H. Bradley, geologist of the Snake River Division. U. S. Geol. Sur. of the Terr., 6th Ann. Rep. 1873, p. 194.

[3] Op. cit., p. 216.

It is evident that Prof. Bradley had in mind the Tennessee section, with which he was familiar, and on finding a quartzite, corresponding to the Chilhowee quartzite, and then a sandstone and shale corresponding in position to those of the Knox section, he correlated the two upon the evidence of serial relation of similar deposits and the presence of certain fossils in the limestone superjacent to the sandstone.

Fortieth parallel survey.—The correlations made by the fortieth parallel survey of the Paleozoic rocks of Utah and Nevada with those of the eastern part of the continent, especially the New York section, are based almost entirely upon the paleontologic evidence as determined by Messrs. Hall and Whitfield. Within the area of the survey correlations were made both on the stratigraphic succession of beds of different lithologic character, and the presence of similar organic remains. A correlation based on the "likeness of two great masses of rock to each other that occur beneath a known horizon" is made by Mr. Clarence King as follows:

> Comparing the quartzites and argillites with those of the Cambrian section in Wales, the likeness is too great to pass unnoticed, and in view of the enormous developments of these low-lying rocks as compared with the Silurian lying above the Primordial horizon, I have determined to draw a line at the upper limits of the Primordial period to include the uppermost members of the Potsdam epoch, and to consider the whole underlying conformable series as Cambrian down to the point of their nonconformity with the Archean.[1]

Explorations and surveys west of the one hundredth meridian.—The correlations made in the publications of this survey on the Lower Paleozoic rocks are mainly by Mr. G. K. Gilbert in his report on the geology of portions of Nevada, Utah, California, and Arizona.[2] The data used for correlation are, the stratigraphic position, lithologic characters, and the presence of fossils of previously determined range. No attempt is made to correlate by a study of the minor details of the faunas and strata except in the correlation of the Tonto of the Grand Cañon district with the Primordial formations of the East. From the known position of the genus Cruziana he argues that the beds containing it are Lower Silurian or Primordial. Mr. F. B. Meek compares the species of Olenellus found in central Nevada with *O. thompsoni* and *O. vermontana* of Vermont and thus indirectly correlates the faunas.[3]

Geological surveys of the Territories.—The correlations made by the various writers of the Powell and Hayden surveys were principally based upon the paleontologic determinations of Mr. F. B. Meek and Dr. C. A. White outside the territory of the survey, and within its territory on stratigraphic positions, lithologic character, and fossils when present. In most instances the data for correlation are not given, the identification of the formations following that of previous workers in the same territory. An example of this is found in the "Geology of the

[1] Paleozoic subdivisions on the 40th Parallel. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 11, 1876, p. 476.
[2] Expl. and Surv. West of 100th Merid., vol. 3, 1875, pp. 156–171.
[3] Op. cit., pp. 182, 183.

Black Hills of Dakota," where a sandstone characterized by Upper Cambrian fossils is identified without comment as the Potsdam sandstone.

U. S. Geological Survey.—In the consolidation of the various Government surveys and their reorganization under one head in 1879 the opportunity for broad comparisons and studies was increased, and the opportunities were still further increased in 1881, when the survey was extended to include the entire area of the United States. In the Rocky Mountain Province the correlations of the fortieth parallel survey were accepted, and extended in the abstract of the report on the geology of the Eureka district of Nevada.[1] In the report on the paleontology of the district the paleontologic data upon which the correlations were made are assembled and described.[2] In this it is shown that while correlations between the great groups may be extended between the Appalachian Province and the Rocky Mountain area, it is impossible to correlate the minor divisions of the groups.

In 1886 an extended correlation of the rocks and fossils from the Lower Cambrian, then called Middle Cambrian, was published in Bulletin No. 30 of the U. S. Geological Survey.[3] Typical sections are given of the Cambrian rocks of the Atlantic Coast, Appalachian, and Rocky Mountain Provinces, with the names of the species of fossils occurring in the various zones, and on page 44 the various sections are correlated and grouped in a table to show their relative range. The principles of correlation are not enunciated, but those used, as shown by the text, are the stratigraphic position of the faunas in relation to each other in the same province and a comparison of the faunas in one area with those of another.

In a more recent work[4] the correlations are made between the various horizons of the Cambrian of the United States on the stratigraphic position of the strata and the occurrence of similar groupings of organic remains. It is observed that the presence of the Olenellus fauna is regarded as the strongest factor in the correlation of the Lower Cambrian, and it is assumed that the presence of this fauna indicates the same geologic horizon. It is not implied that the formations characterized by the Olenellus fauna are strictly contemporaneous wherever it has been found. On the contrary, its presence in such widely separated localities as England, France, Spain, Nevada, and British Columbia is considered as prima facie evidence that the deposits are not strictly contemporaneous. That they were contemporaneous in a geologic sense or that they occupy the same relative position in the geologic series is accepted throughout the paper.

[1] Third Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Survey, 1883, pp. 248–272.

[2] Mong. U. S. Geol. Survey, vol. 8, 1884.

[3] Walcott, C. D.: Second contribution to the studies of the Cambrian faunas of North America. 1886.

[4] Walcott, C. D.: The fauna of the Lower Cambrian or Olenellus zone. Tenth Ann. Rept. U. S. Geol. Survey, 1890, pp. 509–763.

In his extended and valuable essays upon the history of the names Cambrian and Silurian in geology and the Taconic question in geology, and numerous other minor papers, Dr. T. S. Hunt[1] clearly sets forth the description of the various strata referred to the Cambrian and Silurian in America and Europe, and shows by testimony of different writers the relations the various formations sustain to each other, both stratigraphically and in their geographic distribution. Nearly all, if not all, the original correlations made by him are based upon lithologic data, as he believes in a uniform development and sequence of lithologic forms from earlier Archean time to the deposition of the fossiliferous sedimentary rocks. The correlations within the latter are largely made upon their stratigraphic, lithologic, and paleontologic characters as mentioned by authors.

CORRELATIONS WITH EUROPEAN FORMATIONS.

Numerous correlations were made between the strata of the formations of America and those of Europe by Messrs. Conrad, Owen, Rogers, Troost, Jackson, and others; but it was not until the investigation of M. Edward de Verneuil, in 1847, that correlations were made by one who had personally investigated the formations and fossils, both in Europe and America.[2]

De Verneuil.—He began his comparisons with the view that superposition was the foundation of paleontology; that the only comparisons that could be made between continents separated by a sea was by a study, in each of them, of a series of beds confined between two zones at well determined points; that their fossils must be compared, and the identical species picked out to see if the species are distributed according to the same laws. He concluded that, if it happens in the two countries that a certain number of systems, characterized by the same fossils, are superimposed in the same order, whatever may be otherwise their thickness and the number of physical groups of which they are composed, it is philosophical to consider these systems as parallel and synchronous. Comparisons were made between the strata in the two countries that occur beneath the coal-bearing or Carboniferous rocks. He noted that the Potsdam sandstone with Lingula is probably analogous to the sandstone with Obolus, of Russia, and the lower sandstones of Scandinavia. "These are in the two continents the most ancient pre-Carboniferous rocks."

The *siliceous* limestones, those of Black River and of Trenton, are the equivalents of a great part of the Lower Silurian stage of Europe, and they occupy the same posi-

[1] History of the names Cambrian and Silurian in Geology. Canadian Nat., new ser., vol. 6, 1872, pp. 281–312, 417–448. The Taconic Question in Geology. Mineral Physiology and Physiography. A second series of Chemical and Geological Essays. 1886, pp. 517–686.

[2] Note sur le parallélisme des roches des dépôts paléozoïques de l'Amérique Septentrionale avec ceux de l'Europe, suivie d'un tableau des espèces fossiles communes aux deux continents, avec l'indication des étages où elles se rencontrent, et terminée par un examen critique de chacune de ces espèces. Soc. géol. France, Bull., 2e sér., vol. 4, pp. 646–709. 1847. Translated and condensed by Prof. James Hall. *Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser.*, vol. 5, 1848, pp. 176–183, 359–370; vol. 7, 1849, pp. 45–51, 218–231.

tion as the bituminous schists and the Orthoceratite limestones of Sweden and Russia. The Utica slate and the Hudson River group, with the Graptolites at their base, represent the Graptolite slates which in Sweden succeed to the red Orthoceratite limestone. They are also the same as those of Bain in France.[1]

Of the Upper Silurian rocks the Niagara group is considered the exact equivalent of the limestones and slates of Wenlock and of Gothland. The Clinton group, with *Pentamerus oblongus*, represents the extreme upper part of the Caradoc sandstone, or a stage intermediate between the Wenlock and Caradoc beds; while the five inferior groups of the Helderberg division represent the rocks of Ludlow. The correlation is then extended to the Devonian, and lists are given of identical species of fossils on the two continents.

Hall.—The essay of M. de Verneuil was followed in 1851 by a paper on the "Parallelism of the Paleozoic deposit of the United States and Europe," by Prof. James Hall. In discussing the criteria of correlation he says:[2]

The simplest principles of elementary geology teach us that sedimentary beds, having the same thickness and the same lithological characters, can not have spread over an area so wide as that now included between the European and American continents. All sedimentary deposits must vary in character at remote points, as the physical conditions of the ocean can not be presumed to have remained the same over a wide extent of surface. Under such circumstances absolute parallelism is not to be sought for or expected. Calcareous deposits, as would naturally be supposed, have been found to be more persistent and more uniform in the character of their fossil contents; but these, over some portion of their extent, have often been invaded by argillaceous and arenaceous sediments, and the fauna is found to be in a greater or less degree influenced by such circumstances. In distant and disconnected localities we are compelled to base our opinions of the equivalency of beds upon the organic remains which they contain; and when we reflect that the nature of the sediment may in a great degree influence the character of the fossils we shall not fail to recognize the necessity of keeping the character of these lithological changes in view. * * *

Besides the changes which take place in the nature of the sediment deposited upon the bed of the ocean, we are to look to other important conditions which may affect the fauna, and consequently our conclusions regarding the equivalency of formations. Among the most important of these is the depth of the ocean in which the animals lived, since we know that certain species are confined within certain zones, depending on the depth of the water.

There are other conditions which sensibly affect the distribution of organic life, such as temperature, pressure, and light. * * * In investigating the fauna of past ages we see nothing to lead us to believe that the same great laws which regulate the distribution of species did not then operate with as great effect as at the present time.

In speaking of the attempted correlation between the European and American rocks Prof. Hall remarks:

All the attempts to show that the parallelism of American and European paleozoic deposits have been with a view to find a correspondence with the European standard where the series is confessedly incomplete, and where it has suffered during its deposition, or subsequent to it, many disturbances.[3]

[1] Op. cit., p. 361.

[2] Report on the Geology of the Lake Superior Land District, by J. W. Foster and J. D. Whitney, Part II, 1851, pp. 286, 287.

[3] Op. cit., p. 294.

The author agrees with M. de Verneuil that the Potsdam sandstone is represented in Russia by the beds containing Obolus and Lingula, and in Scandinavia by the sandstones which rest unconformably upon the gneissoid and schistose rocks composing the Azoic system. Of the Chazy, Birdseye and Black River limestones of New York he says:

They are not very clearly recognized in Europe. It is probable that some part of the Orthoceratite limestone of Sweden is the equivalent of the Black River mass; but we have no evidence, from fossils or otherwise, that there are any representatives of the two lower rocks. * * *

The Trenton limestone, the Utica slate, and the Hudson River group are represented in northern Europe by the Orthoceratite limestone of Sweden and Russia and by the shales with Graptolites, which succeed to that limestone. In Great Britain the Llandeilo flags and Caradoc sandstone are clearly the equivalent of these groups. It is here that we first find a number of species identical with European ones, and which enable us to institute a comparison. It will be found, however, that the species in the Hudson River group correspond most nearly with the European forms, and that it may be doubtful if the base of the Trenton limestone has been reached in Great Britain.[1]

The Clinton group, with its beds of *Pentamerus oblongus*, represents what in England is regarded as the upper part of the Caradoc sandstone; but we find it not only above this well marked horizon, which we have already indicated, but associated with numerous species of fossils, some of which are known as upper Silurian forms in Europe, and others pass into forms characteristic of the Niagara group in this country.

The Niagara group, with its shale and limestone, would seem, at first view, to be the exact equivalent of the shale and limestone of Wenlock and Dudley in England, and of Gothland in Sweden, so numerous are the identical species in these groups; but on examination we find that there are numerous species included in these rocks in Europe which occur only in the lower Helderberg limestones, and which are separated from the Niagara by the enormous deposit of the Onondaga salt group. It is clear, therefore, that in the Wenlock formation of England and its representatives in northern Europe are included parts at least of two distinct groups in the order of time—distinct both in their physical and zoological features; and we can not institute a proper comparison between the rocks of our own country and those of Europe while we regard that as one group. The condition, both in England and on the continent, is doubtless similar to what we find in Tennessee and Virginia, where, from the absence of the intermediate groups not only the Niagara and lower Helderberg are united together, but even the upper Helderberg limestones are superadded.[2]

Barrande.—A correlation based upon paleontologic data was made by Mons J. Barrande, in 1853, between the formations characterized by the first, second, and third faunas of Europe and those included in the Silurian of America. In commenting upon the identification of the Russian *Obolus apollinis* Eichwald, by Owen, with the Potsdam sandstone species of the Upper Mississippi Valley, he says:

In fact I am inclined to think that science has passed out of the epoch when it was thought necessary to have identical species in order to recognize equivalence of geologic horizons, even at great distances on the earth's surface. The distribution of our present fauna teaches us that this means can not be altogether relied on to prove strata contemporaneous.[3]

---

[1] Op. cit., pp. 295, 296. [2] Op. cit., p. 299.

[3] *Barrande, J.*: (Silur-fauna in Wisconsin und in New York.) Neues Jahrbuch für Miner., 1853, p. 838.

The fact that the Paleozoic formations of America during the appearance and disappearance of three successive faunas, which despite some common species are on the whole well distinct, teaches us that the extinction and appearance of beings on the earth's surface are by no means determined exclusively by the physical revolutions of the crust, but are ordered and regulated by the laws of animal creation itself. Still, it is not my intention to follow out this consideration, as it would lead me too far. I merely wished to mention this, in passing, as a subject for further study, and to point out to investigators that paleontology leads to the establishment of a geologic chronology, independently of the more or less local revolutions which the fossiliferous strata have undergone since their deposition.[1]

From a study of the faunas of the two countries he considered that the first, second, and third faunas of Bohemia are to be identified in America; that there exist manifold relations in all classes of animals of the Upper Silurian division of the United States and Bohemia; that, in the first volume of Hall's Paleontology of New York, on the Lower Silurian division, from the Potsdam sandstone to the Hudson River group inclusive, he recognizes the First Silurian fauna of Bohemia, Sweden, and England; that the presence of the long-missed first fauna of Bohemia in America has been demonstrated in a very satisfactory manner by Owen in his discoveries in the northwestern United States; and that the occurrence of this fauna in the State of Georgia is indicated by a Conocephalus brought to England. In conclusion, he says:

Hence I am now perfectly convinced that the Silurian formations of North America, as well as those of the old continent, contain a succession of three different faunas, which, on being separately compared with the latter, are seen to consist of the same geologic elements and to follow each other in the same order. When I say that they consist of the same geologic elements you know already that I am far from wishing to maintain identity of species. I rely on other more general analogies which to me are not less convincing. This is not the place to explain this more in detail, as that would lead me too far; but you will find here and there in my work some passages which express my view of the matter. In admitting and recognizing in all Silurian regions of the two continents three general faunas corresponding and equivalent to each other, I am induced by the facts to pronounce a further result of my investigations, namely, that the local divisions of strata containing these great faunas, though greatly differing from each other in each region of a certain extent, are not equal to each other in the various countries, especially when the countries are far apart, geographically. This truth seems to me solidly established by a multitude of facts which are tabulated and compared in my geologic sketch, and is confirmed in a very satisfactory manner by the facts mentioned in volume 2 of J. Hall's Paleontology of New York.[2]

Rogers.—In a paper read before the British Association for the Advancement of Science in 1856, on the correlation of the North American and British Paleozoic strata, Prof. Henry D. Rogers described the Paleozoic section of the Appalachian region and that of England, and instituted comparisons between them, to show the parallelism of the North American and European Paleozoic rocks.[3] He says:

In attempting this correlation it should be remembered that nature represents no true or literal equivalency of strata, nor anything closer than a mere approximate

[1] Op. cit., p. 339. [2] Op. cit., p. 345.

[3] On the correlation of the North American and British Paleozoic strata. British Assoc. Adv. Sci., vol. 26, 1857. Trans. Sec., p. 184.

relationship where the deposits compared belong to independent basins, or even to the remote sides of the same great receptacle. The most we can hope to establish is a general agreement in time, with possibly a stricter synchronism of the few chief paroxysmal movements which agitated the bed of the ancient ocean. Partially *representative* formations are discoverable, but *equivalent* ones are not to be looked for upon any philosophical view, since the distribution of organic beings is essentially partial or geographical. The life horizons of the globe are no more universal than are its horizons of sedimentation. With these reservations we turn to the degrees of affinity, linking the American and European Paleozoic groups of fossils.

As the result of his correlation he concludes:

(*a*) The Appalachian Primal series is obviously nearly on the horizon of Barrande's Primordial zone and the lowest rocks of Russia and Scandinavia.

(*b*) The Appalachian Auroral strata may possibly be approximately contemporaneous with the Swedish Orthoceratite limestone. The Auroral series includes the Calciferous, Chazy, and Black River groups.

(*c*) The Matinal series of the Trenton and Hudson River groups, from the testimony of the fossils, are represented in Britain by the Llandeilo flags and Caradoc sandstone, or more generally by Sedgwick's Bala or Upper Cambrian group. He also finds a near equivalent in the Orthoceratite limestone of Sweden and Russia and in the Graptolite shales. The authority of Prof. Hall is cited to show the paleontologic similarity of the English and American formations.

(*d*) The Levant or Medina group does not appear to be represented in Europe.

(*e*) The Surgent and Scalent series, or Clinton and Niagara, are compared with the British Wenlock strata.

(*f*) The Pre-meridian series or Lower Helderberg. He quotes Mr. Hall as saying that he agrees with Mr. Sharpe and regards the Lower Helderberg strata as representing the Wenlock formation of England, while M. de Verneuil considers them as equivalent to the Ludlow. He then proceeds to correlate the Devonian formations with those of Europe.

His final conclusion is:

> From all the foregoing facts and statements we arrive at this general inference, that upon both paleontological and physical evidence there is no well marked Silurian-Devonian break discernible in the North American basin, no proof of an epoch or general interruption in the life-stream, with wide crust disturbance in the middle Paleozoic ages, such as that which in earlier times, in the morning of the Paleozoic day, at the Cambro-Silurian transition, revolutionized alike the entire extent of the American and European areas, both in their inhabitants and in their physical geography.[1]

Bigsby.—A most elaborate comparison and correlation between the Paleozoic section of New York and that of Wales was made by Dr. J. J. Bigsby in 1859. He observes that "both these geological areas appear to have been constructed on the same great comprehensive principles and nearly of the same material, two most important considera-

[1] Op. cit., p. 186.

tions. One very great distinction between them, however, is that they have received different dynamic treatment, in the frequency of plutonic disturbance in Wales and its comparative absence in New York, such dynamic treatment involving, it must be kept in mind, both gradual and sudden changes of population. While the strata of these areas are formed of much the same mineral substances, the conditions of these, their order, and quantities are very varied."[1]

He sums up the points of zoological similarity under the following heads:

(1) The organic remains of both basins belong to the same orders and genera, unmixed with those of other sedimentary systems, as Permian, Jurassic, etc.

(2) Vertebrate animals were introduced at nearly the same date.

(3) The organic remains approximate closely in general facies.

(4) They affect strata of the same mineral character in both, the majority preferring the calcareous, the others the arenaceous form of deposit.

(5) The great majority exhibit the same order in their introduction and distribution. This is seen in Orthis, Pentamerus, Spirifer, and other Brachiopoda, and in Endoceras, Graptolites, Trilobites, etc., the more highly organized being often prominent in the early stages.

(6) The law of divergency into several matrices is the same, or nearly so, in the two basins, the number of instances being fewer in New York.

(7) The great majority of animals typical or recurrent in one basin are so in the other.

(8) The great majority of the recurrent fossils in both occupy the same number of epochs, many or few.

(9) The great majority observe the same process or law of increment and decrement. This takes place in nineteen out of twenty-four orders and genera.

(10) The two basins have 108 organic forms in common, including most of the genera.

(11) The same orders and genera are rich and poor in species.

(12) There is the same limited admission of Silurian forms into the Devonian system in New York and in Europe.

(13) The plants of both are typical, with one or two exceptions.

Such are some of the great points of similarity. Now as to dissimilarity. Those which arise out of the mineral character are partly owing to physical disturbances and to a certain amount of metamorphism undergone by the Welsh strata. The paleontological differences are many, but small, often merely individual, and they seldom affect principles. They are due to the varying sea depths and other well known conditions.

The facts just recorded certainly indicate a close connection in nature and mode of formation between the basins of New York and Wales. They seem to be quasi-equivalents—the same, but other, to use a short, but convenient phrase in common use.[2]

Agassiz.—When commenting upon correlations made between the Paradoxides zone of Newfoundland, Massachusetts, and Scandinavia, Prof. Louis Agassiz said:

That there may be synchronism of deposit without identity of fossils must be evident if we glance at the present distribution of animals. If at the present epoch the fauna of America and Australia should become fossilized there would not be the slightest resemblance between the representative species of the two continents. The

[1] Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 15, 1859, p. 292. [2] Op. cit., pp. 292, 293.

paleontologist must be ready to admit that very different fossil faunæ may be contemporaneous, and that their difference does not necessarily imply a distinct zoological age.[1]

When discussing the typical forms and the distribution of the rocks of the Cambrian, Mr. J. J. Bigsby presents a table showing the order of succession of the Cambrian rocks in various countries.[2] In this he includes the Upper Cambrian sandstones of Texas and Nebraska, and they are referred to the upper or Primordial division of the Cambrian.

Matthew.—During the progress of his extended researches in the faunas and rocks of the Cambrian system in New Brunswick, Mr. G. F. Matthew has had frequent occasion to compare the stratigraphic succession and the faunas of the Cambrian of New Brunswick with that of Europe.

In a paper read before the British Association for the Advancement of Science in 1884, he correlates the fauna of the St. John group of New Brunswick with that of the Cambrian of Wales, and concludes that it shows closer relations with the Solva group than with the Menevian.[3]

Near the close of the same year he stated in a paper read before the Natural History Society of New Brunswick that the discovery of a higher fauna enabled him to correlate the beds containing it with the Menevian group of Wales.[4]

In an essay on the classification of the Cambrian rocks in Acadia,[5] Mr. Matthew considers that the Potsdam sandstone is equivalent to the Ceratopyge limestone, or the Tremadoc group, and represents the upper part of the Tremadoc, as the Georgian series probably does the lower. This correlation is made upon the interpretation of the characters of the genera of trilobites in the American and European rocks.

A second paper on the classification of the Cambrian rocks in Acadia appeared in 1889, in which a comparison of sections in Sweden and New Brunswick with the characteristic sections of Cambrian rocks in Europe and in North America is made.[6] In the comparison of sections of Sweden and New Brunswick the base of the Paradoxides beds is taken as the datum point and it is shown that the pre-Paradoxides horizon is present both in Sweden and New Brunswick, and that the Upper Cambrian or Olenus horizon is represented in New Brunswick by Stage 2 of the St. John County section and by the same stage in Sweden. In the second table of the sections of the Cambrian rocks in Europe and in North America, the correlations made between the sections of Sweden and New Brunswick are accurate and valuable; but those between the

[1] On the difference between faunas of zoological and geological periods. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 8, 1862, p. 58.

[2] On the Cambrian and Huronian formations. Geol. Soc. Quart. Jour., London, vol. 19, 1863, p. 44.

[3] The geological age of the Acadian fauna. Brit. Ass. Adv. Sci., Rep. 54th meeting, 1884, pp. 742, 743.

[4] An outline of recent discoveries in the St. John group. Nat. Hist. Soc. N. B., Bull., No. 4, 1885, p. 101.

[5] Canad. Rec. Sci., vol. 3, 1888, pp. 79, 80.

[6] *Canad.* Rec. Sci., vol. 3, 1889, pp. 308–311.

western North American sections of the Wasatch, Nevada, Highland Range, and Eureka are more or less defective, owing to the imperfect interpretation of the paleontologic data.

The next essay upon the correlation and comparison of the European formations with those of America by Mr. Matthew is entitled: "How is the Cambrian divided?—A plea for the classification of Salter and Hicks."[1] He institutes comparisons of the strata in Wales, Newfoundland, and Norway, and of the characteristic trilobitic genera of each horizon. From the results obtained by these comparisons he considers that the Cambrian is to be divided into the Upper and Lower, and that the method proposed by Mr. C. D. Walcott, of separating the Olenellus or Lower Cambrian from the Paradoxides or Upper Cambrian, is not justified by the evidence afforded by the American and European sections.

METHODS OF CORRELATION.

I. Superposition.
II. Organic Remains.
III. Lithologic Characters.
IV. Unconformity.
V. Miscellaneous.

I. SUPERPOSITION.

(*a*) The order of superposition of strata is the foundation of geologic chronology. By its aid the stratigraphic succession and serial relations of the fossil faunas are first determined. Undisturbed superposition within a section is an absolute test of relative age of the parts of that section; it is not positive evidence of the age of the various beds in relation to beds sustaining the same serial relations in some disconnected section without other tests to support it, even though they occur in the same geologic province: e. g., a band of sandstone beneath a limestone and above a shale may be identified in one portion of a geologic province; but the occurrence of a band of sandstone beneath a limestone and above a shale, in a distant portion of the same province, is not positive evidence that the two bands of sandstone are synchronous or portions of one continuous formation, unless their continuity can be traced.

(*b*) Superposition is not a test of identity of formation except in a limited basin, where the geologist has evidence to show that the formation is practically continuous in its stratigraphic relations. In widely separated portions of the same basin, or of different basins, the order of superposition must be sustained by other tests before it can be asserted positively that the formations thus correlated are identical.

(*c*) In the same geographic or geologic province, fresh-water and marine deposits are not to be correlated with each other, even if they

[1] Am. Geologist, vol. 4, 1889, pp. 139-148.

have the same order of superposition, as the conditions under which they were accumulated are entirely dissimilar, and the proof of the contemporaneity of deposition is not available. An exception to this may occur where a stream passes through a lake and carries the fauna and flora to the sea, where it is mingled with the marine fauna.

II. ORGANIC REMAINS.

There are several considerations always to be borne in mind in correlating a formation on the evidence of its contained organic remains:

(*a*) There can be no scientific or systematic paleontology without a stratigraphical basis.[1]

(*b*) The method of correlation by the comparison of fossils; or, as it has been called, "matching," is the one that affords the best results. It includes the comparison of species, genera, families, and the general facies of a fauna. It is the basis of paleontologic correlation and geologic classification of the sedimentary rocks, with the exception of the stratigraphic and lithologic correlation of local formations.

(*c*) In nearly every section of strata there are considerable thicknesses of beds, in which, no fossils are to be found. These beds occur in nearly every formation. The record of life, during these nonfossiliferous periods of sedimentation, is broken.

(*d*) Many fossils have a great vertical range; and the occurrence of a few species of this character without the presence of species of known limited range can not be taken for the identification of any particular formation. If the laws of constancy and variation of the wide-ranging and long-enduring species are known, it may be possible to use them in the correlation of minor formations, and thus create an exception to the general rule.

(*e*) All paleontologic reasoning is based upon known data. By the discovery of a new grouping of fossils, or a different range of known species, the identification of horizons may be materially modified.

(*f*) In correlating a formation it is necessary to exercise caution before deciding that the contained fossils belong to any specified zone of the fauna characterizing a terrane or group of formations, and thus locating the exact stratigraphic horizon of the formation. A fauna may vary in its constituent parts and afford different groupings of species in localities not far distant.

(*g*) All correlations between widely separated provinces are based upon the general and not upon the specific character of the fauna; i. e., it is the general assemblage of a fauna in one basin that is compared with that in another basin.

Within limited areas the comparison of species and the grouping of species suffice to determine some particular horizon or formation. In widely separated parts of the same area or province there will

[1] Hall, James. On the Primordial fauna and Point Levi fossils. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 31, 1861, p. 224.

be a greater difference in the species, and the general or the specific grouping of the genera will have to be taken as the data for comparison. In separate provinces the species may be the same in some instances; but it is by the comparison of representative species and genera that the correlations are to be made. In provinces separated by great distances, or upon two continents, the general assemblage of the characters of the two faunas are to be compared. It may be accepted as a general rule that the more detailed the comparisons are the more restricted is the area in which specific results are of value. The results, however, may be of the highest value in strengthening a correlation based upon representative types. The exception to this is the occurrence of similar life zones in widely separated regions.

(*h*) Zoologic provinces have been more or less limited in area from the beginning of Paleozoic time. This is shown by the character and distribution of the earlier Cambrian fauna. The provinces were as distinctly marked then as at any time during the deposition of the Paleozoic.

(*i*) Many of the earlier zoologists and paleontologists prior to the period of Darwin studied the strata and the contained fauna with the view that each group of species had a greater or less distribution and were then suddenly exterminated, a newly created fauna taking its place. This enabled them to correlate their formations with great accuracy, and to differentiate them upon the evidence offered by the occurence of a very few species.

(*j*) The environment or condition under which the faunas lived and were deposited is also to be noted. Whether they were littoral or pelagic, whether they lived in cold or warm water, upon a sandy or a muddy bottom, in salt or in fresh water, are all considerations which must be taken into account in discussing their value as factors in correlation.

(*k*) The presence of recurrent faunas in strata lithologically similar may give rise to imperfect and erroneous correlations. This is not liable to occur except in a limited geologic basin, where the conditions of sedimentation were uniform over large areas, and the environment of the fauna such that it continued, under favorable conditions, in some portions of the basin, and occupied other portions intermittently, as the varying phases of sedimentation were favorable or inimical to its distribution.

(*l*) The relative age, serial relation, or homotaxis of sedimentary formations is best determined by the marine faunas, as the conditions under which they lived and were deposited were much more uniform than those surrounding the terrestrial fauna and flora.

The evidence furnished by paleobotany is fragmentary, and its sequence is so interrupted by nondeposition and nonpreservation that no comparisons of great value have been established by its aid. What is true of paleobotany is also true, to a less extent, of terrestrial faunas.

It is only by accident and through peculiarly favorable conditions that land faunas have been preserved. With the marine faunas on the contrary the opportunities for the preservation of the fauna of each epoch were far greater, and the conditions of environment were more favorable for the uniform advancement and evolution of life over extended areas.

Life-zones.—The proof of the presence of life-zones in the geologic series is one of great importance in correlation. The subject has been so ably presented by Prof. H. A. Nicholson that I will quote it in full in preference to giving a synopsis of it or to presenting my own views, which accord essentially with those of the author. He says:

While each geological rock-system is characterized by a general assemblage of distinctive types of animals and plants, the minor subdivisions of each system are likewise distinguished by the prevalence of particular forms of life. There are no doubt cases in which an extensive series of successive strata may appear to be characterized throughout by essentially the same organic types, there being apparently no restriction of special fossils to special horizons in the series. In so far as such cases have any real existence, they may be explained as instances in which a great series of sediments has been accumulated with such rapidity that there has been no time for marked biological changes, resulting in the dying out of old species and the introduction of new forms. In many cases, however, the apparent diffusion of the same kinds of fossils from the base to the summit of a series of beds perhaps two or three thousand feet in thickness is due simply to the fact that the organic remains met with in the formation have not been sufficiently investigated and that the exact horizon at which each occurs in the series has not been accurately determined. The determination of the horizons of particular life-forms is a work of time and demands both great stratigraphical knowledge and also a wide and accurate acquaintance with the characters of the fossils themselves, two requirements rarely fulfilled in the same individual.

In a considerable number of cases, however, it has now been shown that the fossils of a given formation may be divided into two principal groups. In the one group is comprised a series of common forms of life, which may be regarded as characterizing the formation *as a whole*. In the other group are included certain special fossils confined to particular parts of the formation and characteristic of certain definite *horizons* or *zones*, within the limits of the formation. All the great formations are to some extent capable of being broken up into minor rock-groups, characterized by special life-forms. Some of the differences in the kinds of fossils found in different parts of the same formation must, of course, be simply set down to the fact that different kinds of sediment imply changed conditions in the sea, and hence changes in the marine fauna. If, for example, part of a formation consisted of limestone and part of sandstone, we should expect, beforehand, to find that each of these rock-groups would have some fossils not found in the other, since the two would have been formed under different conditions. Apart, however, from differences arising from causes of this nature, we meet with cases in which a formation, even if essentially homogeneous in its mineral nature, can be divided into *zones*, each of which is characterized by the possession of special groups of fossils. Organisms belonging to any class of animals may serve in this way as test forms ("Leit-Fossilien") for special horizons in a series of stratified formations, but there are particular groups of fossils which have been found to be preeminently available for this purpose. Among the older rocks of the earth's crust, the forms which have proved specially valuable for the determination of particular "zones" are the Graptolites, the Trilobites, and the Brachiopods, while the Cephalopods have been found to afford the most satisfactory tests in the case of the Secondary rocks. A well known instance of this subdivision of a system of strata by means of special types of fossils is that afforded by the Ordovician and Silurian

rocks of Europe, in which paleontologists, following Professor Lapworth, have recognized numerous well marked "life-zones," characterized for the most part by the possession of particular types of Graptolites, though, in some cases, the distinctive fossils belong to other groups Another well known example of the same phenomenon is afforded by the Jurassic deposits. These have been shown to contain a number of well marked zones, each of which is characterized by the possession of some special fossils, and particularly by some special Ammonite. These zones are extremely constant in any particular region, and they enable the observer to effect a division of the formation into special horizons, which have no stratigraphical existence and are not separated by any physical break, but are of the utmost paleontological importance and can be rendered readily available in working out the stratigraphy of any given area.

Certain life-zones appear to have nothing more than a local development and importance, but in other cases they have proved to be astonishingly constant even over very large areas. Perhaps the most remarkable known instance of the extension of particular life-forms over a vast area is that afforded by the Arenig rocks (a subdivision of the Ordovician system), which have been recognized as occurring in Europe, in Canada, and in Australia, and contain in all these widely remote areas the same peculiar types of Graptolites.

The principal difficulty that we have to confront in dealing with these "zones" is to produce any plausible explanation accounting for the destruction of the special life-forms of the one zone and the appearance of those of the next zone. For the most part, these zones are of very limited vertical extent, and they succeed each other in such a manner as totally to preclude the idea that the dying out of the old forms can have been in any way caused by a physical disturbance of the area. Perhaps the most probable view to adopt in the meanwhile is that the formations in which distinct and limited life-zones can be recognized were deposited with extreme slowness, whereas those which show an essentially compact and homogeneous fauna from base to summit were deposited with comparative rapidity. Upon this view, a formation like the Lias is one formed by a process of very slow and intermittent sedimentation, the life-zones being separated by intervals during which sedimentation must have been at a standstill, but which were long enough to allow more or less considerable biological changes, some forms dying out or becoming modified while other new ones came in. Upon this view, further, a formation like the Lias, though of comparatively small vertical extent, may represent as long a period of time as the whole of such a great formation as the Lower Carboniferous, which appears to have been formed under conditions of comparatively rapid sedimentation.[1]

Life-zones have been determined in the Middle Cambrian or Paradoxides terrane of Sweden, Wales, New Brunswick, and Newfoundland or the Atlantic Basin Province. In a broader range the genera Olenellus, Paradoxides, and Dikelocephalus are considered typical of the three primary zones or divisions of the Cambrian group. They are of unequal value and decrease in precision from the older to the later faunas. The genus Olenellus has a wide distribution in western Europe and North America, while Paradoxides is more limited in America, and the true Dikelocephalus probably has a still smaller geographic range.

Stage of evolution.—The evolution of organic life is a factor in correlation that has been assuming some importance within the last few years. To be of practical use the paleontologist must have a thorough,

[1] General Introduction, Manual of Paleontology, by H. A. Nicholson and R. Lydekker, vol. 1, 1889, pp. 58–60.

accurate knowledge of the species and their life history, including that of the genus and family to which they belong. Types of restricted range and short duration are of little importance, except as expressing the stage of development of their genus. The persistent, long-enduring types, that range from formation to formation and even from group to group, may be of service if their study and analysis have revealed characters by which their relative stratigraphic position, in a given area, may be determined. The evolution of genera is of greater value, and the analyses of the development of specific types within them may be used in the identification of horizons.

Extended to groups of genera, families, or orders, correlation by the known evolution of the faunas may be used in a general way. In the presence of other reliable data it is of relatively small value. Only in instances where there are no other data that can be made available will it be really of practical service to the geologist.

Even under the best conditions and circumstances great care must be used, owing to the varying conditions caused by environment and the unequal evolution of organisms in different geographic areas or basins. I do not wish to imply that this method of correlation should be entirely overlooked or dismissed in the presence of more reliable data. It can be used in connection with other methods in correlating any formation or group of formations, but only in extreme cases should it be considered the only factor. When used, the result obtained can be considered as little more than provisional.

Life history.—A careful study of the life history of the various elements of the faunas promises to yield data that may be important in correlation. An illustration of this is afforded by Prof. H. S. Williams's study of *Spirifera lævis*.[1] This is a type that is represented by various forms from the Niagara limestone of the Silurian to the summit of the Devonian, that are evidently descended one from the other, although they have been described under several specific names. At each horizon the variation from the initial form serves to locate its stratigraphic horizon and thus its relative age and position in space and time. The tracing of the migration of forms from one area to another and the changes produced upon them during this migration are to be taken into consideration. The theory of Prof. Alpheus Hyatt,[2] that there is a cycle of forms in the geologic series and a corresponding cycle of variation in the species of that series and in the individuals of any one species, may lead to practical results. He finds it to prevail very extensively in the Cephalopoda, and it will undoubtedly be found to apply to all the other zoologic groups. The conclusions obtained will be more or less marred by the imperfections of the geologic and life record, but I look forward to the time in the future when minute biologic studies

[1] The Life History of Spirifer lævis, Hall. Ann. N. Y. Acad. Sciences, vol. 2, 1881, pp. 140–160, pl. xiv.

[2] Genera of Fossil Cephalopods. Proc. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., vol. 22, 1883, pp. 253–265. Also, many other papers by Professor Hyatt, referring to and describing the Cephalopoda.

of the faunas, in connection with a careful study of the sedimentation and stratigraphy, will make our present methods appear to have been lacking in scientific precision.

Contemporaneity and Homotaxis.—When it was once established that a certain order of succession of fossils occurred in Europe, it was concluded that identical or similar assemblages of organisms would be found to prevail elsewhere over the earth; and that the geographic distribution of each successive fauna was world-wide, each fauna being a new creation. The present view is, that the chronologic succession of the fauna is local, as proved by the existence of zoologic provinces, and that each fauna is descendant from some preexisting fauna. This result is modified for each province by the migration of faunas and portions of faunas from province to province. Notwithstanding the various elements that influenced the evolution of the faunas, it is found that the general succession of species and faunas is in the aggregate the same all over the world, however much it may have been broken, advanced, or retarded in certain areas in ancient or relatively recent geologic time.

Prof. Huxley, when introducing the term "Homotaxis," said:

> Edward Forbes was in the habit of asserting that the similarity of the organic contents of distant formations was prima facie evidence, not of their similarity, but of their difference of age; and holding as he did the doctrine of single specific centers, the conclusion was as legitimate as any other; for the two districts must have been occupied by migration from one of the two, or from an intermediate spot, and the chances against exact coincidence of migration and of imbedding are infinite.
>
> In point of fact, however, whether the hypothesis of single or of multiple specific centers be adopted, similarity of organic contents can not possibly afford any proof of the synchrony of the deposits which contain them; on the contrary, it is demonstrably compatible with the lapse of the most prodigious intervals of time, and with interposition of vast changes in the organic and inorganic worlds, between the epochs in which such deposits were formed.[1] * * *
>
> There seems, then, no escape from the admission that neither physical geology nor paleontology possesses any method by which the absolute synchronism of two strata can be demonstrated. All that geology can prove is local order of succession. It is mathematically certain that, in any given vertical linear section of an undisturbed series of sedimentary deposits, the bed which lies lowest is the oldest. In any other vertical linear section of the same series, of course, corresponding beds will occur in a a similar order; but however great may be the probability, no man can say with absolute certainty that the beds in the two sections were synchronously deposited. For areas of moderate extent, it is doubtless true that no practical evil is likely to result from assuming the corresponding beds to be synchronous or strictly contemporaneous; and there are multitudes of accessory circumstances which may fully justify the assumption of such synchrony. But the moment the geologist has to deal with large areas or with completely separated deposits, then the mischief of confounding that "Homotaxis" or "similarity of arrangement," which *can* be demonstrated, with "synchrony" or "identity of date," for which there is not a shadow of proof, under the one common term of "contemporaneity" becomes incalculable, and proves the constant source of gratuitous speculations.[2]

[1] Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 18, 1862, p. xlv.
[2] Op. cit., p. xlvi.

In this connection the student should read Mr. J. E. Marr's paper on Homotaxis.[1]

Percentage of species.—This method of paleontologic correlation was employed by Sir Charles Lyell. He found a certain percentage of species identical with living forms in one horizon, the Eocene; a larger percentage in the Miocene, and a still larger one in the Pliocene. He then concluded the Eocene represented the oldest and the Pliocene the latest deposit. He thus classified the formations and gave an indirect method for their correlation in different areas. It is not capable of application where all the members of a fauna are extinct.

III. LITHOLOGIC CHARACTER.

Lithologic character has very little value in establishing correlations, when comparing formations outside of limited areas. The constituents of a rock may differ in their chemical and mechanical condition in a stratum that is proved by other evidences to be continuous. In some instances lithologic characters may be of value, especially in areas where the stratigraphic sequence of the beds is known and paleontologic evidence is lacking. Dr. R. D. Irving used the method successfully among the pre-Cambrian rocks of the Lake Superior region, and says of it:

> Its value in tracing formations from point to point can hardly be overestimated, being as great as that of paleontological evidence and, in my judgment, of much the same nature. As we trace formations and their minor subdivisions from place to place we must of course constantly check lithological evidence by stratigraphy. As we pass from one extremity of the field to the other, changes in lithological characters of course come in, and these changes might lead to unsafe conclusions were we to compare stratal successions too distantly removed from one another; but when we work from point to point such changes are detected as they gradually appear, and are provided for.[2]

An illustration of the value of the method is shown by the correlations made by the brothers Roger's[3] in Virginia and Pennsylvania, where they correlated the quartzites, shales, and limestones by their lithologic characters along an extent of several hundred miles. When, however, they came to carry this correlation without that area of sedimentation, the inadequacy of the method is shown by the fact they correlated the Lower Cambrian quartzite with the Upper Cambrian quartzite about the Adirondacks of New York. A still more striking illustration of erroneous correlation by this method is that made by Prof. N. H. Winchell[4] in correlating, as members of one formation, the

[1] Proc. Cambridge Phil. Soc., vol. 6, 1887, pp. 74-82.

[2] Seventh Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Survey, 1885-'86, 1888, pp. 378, 379.

[3] A system of classification and nomenclature of the Paleozoic rocks of the United States, with an account of their distribution, more particularly in the Appalachian mountain chain. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 47, 1844, p. 112.

[4] The crystalline rocks of Minnesota. General report of progress made in the study of their field relations. Statement of problems yet to be solved. Geol. and Nat. Hist. Survey of Minn., 17th Ann. Rep. for 1888, 1889, p. 49.

Lower Cambrian quartzite of the western slopes of the Green Mountains, the Upper Cambrian Potsdam sandstone of New York, the pre-Cambrian Sioux quartzites of Minnesota, the pre-Cambrian Baraboo quartzite of Wisconsin, and the pre-Cambrian quartzite of the Keweenawan series of Lake Superior.

Lithologic character is often of great value within limited areas and where the formation can be practically traced from place to place. As this can rarely be done, it is best to seek other data and to combine with the lithologic, the stratigraphic and paleontologic evidence, if it is possible to obtain any.

IV. UNCONFORMITY.

Of all the data of correlation that of unconformity of the formation correlated, with its superjacent or subjacent formation, would appear at first sight to be the most unreliable. In most instances it is, but where combined with other data it has a certain value. We find it used in the earliest correlations made of the Potsdam sandstone of New York, with the basal sandstone all along the Appalachian Range south through New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Maryland, Virginia, Tennessee, Georgia, and Alabama. It is also used in the correlations made between the Potsdam sandstone of New York and the sandstone of the south shore of Lake Superior, and the fossiliferous sandstones of Wisconsin, Iowa, and Minnesota, that were correlated with the Potsdam sandstone by Messrs. Owen, Hall, and later observers. In fact, it is implied in nearly all the references of strata to the Potsdam horizon in other localties than that of the typical area about the Adirondack Mountains of New York. It was not, however, until the appearance of Prof. R. D. Irving's essay on the classification of the earlier Cambrian and pre-Cambrian formations[1] that full significance was given to the value of unconformities in correlation.

The problem is presented by Dr. Irving as follows:

> (1) To determine upon the grander divisions (groups) to be ma de in classifying the rocks independently of their relations to the general geological column; (2) to extend these divisions to other portions of the same geological basins; and (3) to correlate these divisions with those of different and distant geological regions. This is the problem which presents itself in the Lake Superior region, at the base of the Grand Cañon of the Colorado, in central Texas, Newfoundland, and in other portions of North America.
>
> In any attempt to solve such a problem we can make use of one or more of three kinds of characteristics in the formations involved, viz: (1) their paleontological characteristics, (2) their lithological characteristics, and (3) their mutual structural relations.[2]

Under the third title, "their mutual structural relations," he considers unconformity as a basis for classification[3] discussing the general nature and significance of conformities and the distinguishing characters of true unconformities. A description is given of the Potsdam-

[1] Seventh Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Surv., 1885–'86, 1888.
[2] *Op. cit., p. 371.* [3] *Op. cit., p. 390.*

Huronian unconformity on the north shore of Lake Huron, the Potsdam-Keweenaw unconformity, the Laurentian-Huronian unconformity and others of the Lake Superior region. This is followed by a section on the use of unconformities in classification.[1] In this the use of unconformities in defining the grander groups of strata and in correlating the formations of a single geologic basin are discussed. Under the first, he says:

> Returning to our problem as originally stated, we have next to consider how far unconformities may be made use of in defining the grander groups of strata in a region in which the succession of these strata has been determined. Further argument than that already given in discussing the nature and kinds of unconformity is hardly necessary to show that genuine unconformities, indicative of great lapses of time between the periods in which the strata on either side of the break in each case were respectively made, are of prime value and importance in determining the limits of the grander groups of the geological formations, whatever use we may make of paleontological and lithological characters in determining subordinate divisions. Such structures as the greater ones of the true unconformities, above considered, indicate lapses of time great enough to cover extended periods of mountain-making, always a slow process, and also great periods of denudation or exposure to the atmospheric agencies. It is hardly possible for us to compare such time gaps with the time necessary for the formation of definite thicknesses of strata, but the thicknesses of strata corresponding to such breaks must surely always be very great.
>
> If we take for instance the gap indicated by the relations of the Potsdam sandstone to the ancient gneissic formation of the northwest, as above illustrated by a number of examples, we find that it was long enough to cover not merely one period of rock alteration, orographic movement, and land surface exposure, but three such periods, between which were times long enough for the accumulation of thicknesses of strata aggregating over 60,000 feet, a thickness exceeding that of the entire Paleozoic series in its greatest development in the Appalachian region. It is true that a portion of this 60,000 feet is made up of volcanic materials, chiefly lava flows. The accumulation of such materials may, it is true, have been more rapid than is the case with ordinary fragmental deposits; but the accumulation of such a mass of eruptive material must have occupied at least a considerable lapse of time; while more than one-half of the 60,000 feet, or an amount approximating the maximum Paleozoic accumulations in the Appalachian region, is made up of genuine detrital deposits. When we consider that in addition to the time necessary for the accumulation of this mass of sediment there intervened between the Potsdam and the gneisses three periods of rock alteration, mountain-making, and complete mountain removal, it becomes plain that the time gap indicated by this unconformity must have exceeded the entire Paleozoic era. More probably, indeed, it equalled all later geological time. Each one of the three unconformities mentioned must of course have required a shorter period than this greater gap, but in each case the relations of the several formations are such as to indicate periods of time only comparable to the periods necessary for the accumulation of one of the great geological groups.[2]

The use of unconformities in correlating the formations of a single geologic basin, where the exposures of the formations are not continuous, is illustrated by a tabulation showing the general succession of formations in various districts from the northern end of Lake Huron to Dakota and from central Wisconsin to the north shore of Lake Superior. This table shows that in various localities there is a great unconformity

[1] Op. cit., p. 438. [2] Op. cit., pp. 438, 439.

between the Laurentian and the Huronian, between the Huronian and the Keweenawan, where the two series of rocks are present, and between the Keweenawan and the Cambrian if these two occur in the same area.

He next takes up the use of unconformities in establishing general relations. Under this heading we quote as follows:

Having established the general order of succession and the grander groups of the strata for a given geological province, the question which arises next in order is how to correlate these divisions with those of other geological provinces, and more particularly with the established divisions of the general geological column.

It will take but little consideration of the causes which have been at work in the production of such unconformities as have been above cited to make us realize that such breaks as these must be widespread in their influence. Great unconformities, in which the strata below the unconformity have been subjected to folding, mark periods of orographic movements which will, in general, have been extensive somewhat in proportion to the intensity of the folding process.[1]

It is well known, indeed, that some of the greater physical breaks in the strata of one continent may have their parallels among the strata of another continent. The interruption between the Paleozoic and the Mesozoic is intercontinental, if not world wide. Equally extensive is the great break between the Mesozoic and the Cenozoic. Each of these physical breaks corresponds to an immense change in life conditions. But, if we may judge from structural relations, from the amount of intervening denudation, and from the rank already attained by the life of the lowest of the fossiliferous Cambrian formations, neither of these great breaks corresponds in length of time interval to the break between the lowest of the distinctly fossiliferous formations and the youngest of those beneath it.[2]

The great structural breaks furnish, at times at least, a more trustworthy guide. If, for instance, we make a comparison of the succession of Cambrian and pre-Cambrian strata in the Lake Superior region with the succession revealed in the depths of the Grand Cañon of the Colorado, we find some singular correspondences between the structural breaks of the two successions. In each one of these regions the Potsdam sandstone is strongly characterized by its well known fauna. In each region the sandstone traverses the edges of a gently bowed but deeply denuded formation composed of a great thickness of detrital and eruptive materials. Below these formations in each region, and separated from them in each case by one of the strongest of unconformities, is a great quartzitic series, while below this series again in the Lake Superior region, and separated from it by still another of the most notable of unconformities, is the great Laurentian gneissic series. That this series also exists in the base of the Grand Cañon we have good reason to believe.

Such a striking similarity in succession as this certainly most strongly suggests the conclusions that the physical breaks of the two regions were coincident in point of time (that is, that the mountain-making movement which preceded the deposition of the Potsdam sandstone of the Lake Superior country corresponded with that which preceded the Tonto sandstone of the Grand Cañon region); that the mountain-making periods preceding the deposition of the Grand Cañon series of the Grand Cañon district and of the Keweenaw series of the Lake Superior region were equally synchronous; and, finally, that the Grand Cañon series is, in general, the equivalent of the Keweenaw series, while the pre-Grand Cañon rocks are the equivalent of the Lake Superior Huronian.

Of course such correlations as these should be made, for the present at least, somewhat provisionally; but, on the other hand, they must be taken as of much greater value than correlations between distant formations established on feeble fossil evidence.[3]

[1] Op. cit., p. 443. [2] Op. cit., p. 444. [3] Op. cit., p. 445.

The question is asked, is the term Cambrian to stop at the first unconformity below the Potsdam sandstone? Is it to extend to the second of those unconformities, or to the third? Or is it to include, finally, the lowest of the formations of the region?

He makes the following reply to these questions:

All these usages of the term have been made. In taxonomical value the term Cambrian is designed, of course, to correspond to the terms Upper Silurian, Lower Silurian, Devonian, Carboniferous, etc., which terms are based primarily upon the general continuity for each one of the periods to which they correspond of similar life conditions. In no case, however, has one of these terms been allowed to span any such unconformable break as the least of those beneath the Potsdam sandstone of the Lake Superior region. Minor breaks in the succession have been included within a single one of these geological groups because—although in every case of a physical break, even the smallest, a corresponding break in life-succession is found—there have been found on both sides of the break fully developed faunas of general similarity in characters; but no great break in the succession such as those with which we are now concerned has ever yet been found to be spanned by a continuity of forms. The conclusion, therefore, seems inevitable that we should not extend the term Cambrian over any such break, at least until there shall have been found closely corresponding faunas on opposite sides of the interval. Were such faunas to be discovered the greatness of the unrecorded interval would still remain, and we should have indicated only a singularly long continuance of similar life-conditions. Even then the question might arise as to whether continuity of life-conditions should outweigh the great lapse of time indicated by the physical hiatus.[1]

Finally Dr. Irving states that

The structural breaks called unconformities are properly used in classification—

(1) *To mark the boundaries of the rock groups of a given region.*

(2) *To aid in establishing correlations between the formations of different parts of a single geological basin.*

(3) *To aid in the establishment of correlations between the groups of regions distantly removed from one another; but* caution is needed in attempting such correlations in proportion as the distances between the regions compared grow greater.

They are improperly ignored:

(1) *When the evidence they offer as to separateness is allowed to be overborne by anything but* the most complete and weighty of paleontological evidence.[2]

V. MISCELLANEOUS.

Homogeny.—A method of correlation that has frequently been used has recently been named by Mr. W J McGee "Homogeny" or correlation by community of genesis.[3] Mr. McGee defines it as follows:

The method of correlation devised to systematize the structure of the Coastal Plain combines the desirable features of the older methods, and adds thereto the interpretation of the products of the several physical processes operating upon the earth's exterior.[4]

The older methods mentioned are those of stratigraphic continuity, lithologic correlation or correlation by petrography, and paleontologic

[1] Op. cit., p. 446.
[2] Op. cit., p. 448.
[3] Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 40, 1890, pp. 36–41.
[4] Op. cit., p. 36.

correlation. He considers that "the method involves a yet broader conspectus of phenomena and principles than the paleontologic method; for in its application it is necessary mentally to restore the various physical and biotic conditions of the past, just as paleontology vivifies the fossils of past ages." Again:[4]

In discriminating the general and local genetic conditions it is necessary to ascertain the relations between each formation and its newer and older neighbors, and to interpret the record of each unconformity in terms of continent growth. By this means the different parts of a formation may be found to represent not only general community of genesis but community of beginning and ending; in short, entire community of structural relation. Each part of the formation then records in similar terms the same episode in continent building and world growth.

So, when a coastal plain formation is found to represent general community of genesis and structural relation in its various parts it is considered homogenic, and accepted as a record of an episode in geologic history. The parts may or may not be homotaxial; one part may be slightly older than another part; but in a general way it is contemporaneous throughout. Homogeny implies not only equivalence but synchrony.

The principles of homogenic correlation have long been used in the correlations of formations by geologists. An illustration of this is the correlations that have been made of the Potsdam sandstones of New York with those of the Mississippi Valley, the eastern slope of the Rocky Mountains, the islands of Texas and Missouri, and the valley of the St. Lawrence. In these correlations to subjacent and superjacent formations, stratigraphic continuity, lithologic or petrographic resemblance, and similarity of organic remains have all been used.

Under the definition of homogeny, that is, correlation by community of genesis, decided errors must necessarily occur unless checked by paleontologic data. An illustration of this is the correlation of the Potsdam sandstone of the Adirondack Mountains of New York with the "Granular Quartz" of western New England and southeastern Pennsylvania, and the Chilhowee sandstone of Tennessee. These sandstones are lithologically alike, they were accumulated along a coast line, their petrographic characters are the same, and the action of the waves upon and the distribution by tidal currents of the sediments originating from similar crystalline rocks all point to a community of origin; in fact, they did originate in the same manner. They have been correlated upon the characters mentioned for upwards of 40 years, but the study of the fossil remains shows they are not equivalent or synchronous. One represents the basal beds of the Cambrian system and the other the Potsdam sandstone or the closing deposits of Cambrian time in the same area. I think that after we have fully proven to our satisfaction the similarity of origin or the community of genesis we must still rely upon paleontologic data for the final determination of geologic equivalence. For the determination of synchrony, except in a limited area, there is little hope for satisfactory conclusions by any method yet devised.

[4] Op. cit., pp. 38, 39.

Topographic features in correlation.—Topographic features may indicate relative geologic age in the discussion of the later formations; but in dealing with the Lower Paleozoic it has thus far been found to be impossible to obtain the evidence of newer or older topographic features that are of value. Mr. G. K. Gilbert has used it successfully in discussing the age of the Equus fauna of Lakes Mono and Lahonton of California and Nevada.[1]

[1] U. S. Geol. Survey, Monograph, vol. 1, 1890, pp. 393–402.

INDEX.

A.

Page.

Acadian series, J. W. Dawson on..... 62
definition of..... 248
Georgia..... 303
formations correlated with..... 360
Acadian slates of Alabama 305-306
Adams, C. B., on quartz rock of Vermont. 95
on red sandrock 97, 250-251
on Taconic slate 99
fossils of red sandrock 150
Adirondack subprovince, paleontology of 229-232
Cambrian rocks of 341-347
sediments of 347
problems for investigation in 381
Agassiz, A., on Lake Superior sandstone. 195
Agassiz, L., on rocks of Braintree, Massachusetts 74
on correlation by fossils..... 419-420
Ami and Sowter, fossils from Quebec.... 232
Alabama, M. Toumey, on rocks of..... 146
E. A. Smith, on rocks of..... 146-148
Cambrian rocks of 146-148, 305-308
Antelope Spring, Utah, section..... 320
compared with other sections..... 320
Anse au Loup, l', Newfoundland, section. 253-254
Appalachian province, definition of..... 91-274
Cambrian rocks of 91-148, 274-312
Archæocyathus, remarks on..... 319
Argentine Republic, Cambrian rocks of. 379
Arizona, Cambrian rocks of.....219-221, 356, 357
J. S. Newberry on rocks of..... 219-220
J. W. Powell, on rocks of..... 220-231
G. K. Gilbert, on rocks of 220
A. R. Marvine, on rocks of..... 220-221
C. A. White, on fossils of..... 221
C. D. Walcott, on rocks of..... 221
paleontology of 235
problems for investigation in 385
Atlantic Coast province, definition of.... 50, 253
Cambrian rocks of 50-78
paleontology of 78-90
summary of knowledge of Cambrian rocks of 253-274
sediments of 358
fauna of..... 370
physical characters of strata 272-274
Atlantic Coast and Rocky Mountain province 386-387
Atlantic Coast series, J. W. Dawson on.. 56
Atlantic Coast series of America and Wales 373, 374-375

Page.

Attleborough, Massachusetts, E. Hitchcock on limestone in..... 73
T. S. Hunt on rocks at 73
Auroral limestone, T. S. Hunt on..... 127-128
Au Sable Chasm, New York, section..... 343-344
Australia, Cambrian rocks of 378-379
Avalon and Fortune Bay, Newfoundland, section..... 257-258

B.

Bailey, L. W., on rocks of New Brunswick 61, 64
Bakewell, R., on use of fossils in correlation..... 397-398
Balcony Falls, Virginia, rocks of..... 136
section at.....293-294, 297, 298
Bannock Range, Idaho, section..... 322
Bar Harbor, Maine, rocks at..... 68
Barrande, J., on fossils from Braintree, Massachusetts..... 75, 88
on fossils from Georgia slate..... 99
primordial fauna of Texas 234
definition of primordial..... 243
use of fossils in correlation..... 416-417
Bayfield, H. W., on rocks of Straits of Belle Isle 50
on Lake Superior sandstone..... 188, 252
Beecher & Hall, on Mohawk Valley..... 207
Belle Isle shale 50, 51
Belle Isle Straits, rocks of..... 102, 104
Bell, Robert, on rocks of Hudson Bay.... 122
Bennington, Vermont, section..... 276
Big Cottonwood Cañon, Utah, section....157-158, 159-160
Big Horn Mountain range, Montana, section 325-326
Bigsby, J. J., on rocks near Quebec 114
on Montmorenci Falls 116
on rocks of the St. Lawrence 116
on Lake Superior sandstone 188, 252
on Potsdam, of New York 206
correlations of 395-396
comparison of rocks of New York and Wales 418-419
Billings, E., on red sandrock 97
on Georgia slate 102
on Winooski marble..... 103-104
on Point Levis fossils.....116-117, 150, 151
on correlation of faunas 150
on fossils from Potsdam group of Vermont..... 150

Page.

Billings, E.—Continued.
on fossils from red sandrock 150
on fossils in correlation 406–407
Black Hills, Dakota, E. James on rocks of 214
H. Engelmann on rocks of 214
Meek & Hayden, on rocks of 215
F. V. Hayden, on rocks of 215–216
N. H. Winchell, on rocks of 216
R. P. Whitfield, on fossils of 216
H. Newton, on rocks of 216
F. R. Carpenter on 216
fossils of 233, 234, 348
rocks of 347–349
Bohemia, Cambrian rocks of 275
Bonne Bay, Newfoundland, section 51, 255–256
fossils from 256
Boston and vicinity, J. W. Webster on rocks of 72
E. Hitchcock, on rocks of 73–75
Bow River series 164, 326–327
Bradley F. H., on rocks of North Carolina 138–139
classification of 143–144
on rocks of Utah 156, 157
on rocks of Idaho 161
on rocks of Wyoming 212
on fossils from the Adirondacks 231
correlations by 411–412
Braintree, Massachusetts, L. Agassiz on rocks at 74
W. B. Rogers, on rocks at 73, 74
I. Lea, on rocks at 74
C. T. Jackson, on rocks at 74
J. Barrande, on fossils from 75, 88–89
N. S. Shaler, on rocks at 75
T. S. Hunt, on rocks at 75–76
W. W. Dodge, on rocks at, cited 75
W. O. Crosby, on rocks at 76, 77–78
J. Green, on fossils from 88
W. B. Rogers, on fossils from 88
C. T. Jackson, on fossils from 89
A. Ordway, on fossils from 89
W. W. Dodge, on fossils from 89
R. P. Whitfield, on fossils from 89
C. D. Walcott, on fossils from 89
Braintree quarry, Massachusetts, M. E. Wadsworth, on 271
Bretonian, definition of 247
Brigus, Newfoundland, fossils of 55
Brigus Head, Newfoundland, section 260
British Columbia, G. M. Dawson on rocks of 163, 164, 165
R. G. McConnell on rocks of 164
Broadhead, G. C., on rocks of Missouri 200–201, 340–341
Brögger, W. C., on Prospect Mountain fauna 314
Brooks and Pumpelly, on Lake Superior sandstone 196
Buckley, S. B., on rocks of Texas 218
Burnet County, Texas, section 354–355

C.

Calciferous sandrock in Wisconsin 172, 177
Calvin, S., on well at Washington, Iowa 188
Page.

Cambrian continent 364–365, 386
Cambrian faunas, order of succession of, in America 361
Cambrian, base of 362
sedimentation of 362–363, 363–369
summit of 362–363
faunas of 369
subdivision of 370–373
sediments of 385–386
limits of 388–389
Cambrian time, geographic areas in 49, 368–369
Cambrian group, delimitation of 17
divisions of 49, 389–390
A. R. C. Selwyn on 119
definition of, by Sedgwick and Murchison 237–239
divisions of, by A. Sedgwick 239
use of in America 241
where separated from Silurian 241, 363
sediments of in eastern Massachusetts 272
synopsis of 359
formations of 359–360
Cambrian and Taconic, T. S. Hunt on 106
use of 388
Cambric, used by P. Frazer 131
Camp Baker, Little Belt Mountains (Montana) section 325
Campbell, J., Nova Scotia gold field 57
Campbell, H. D., on rocks in Virginia 137
Campbell, J. L., on rocks of Virginia 135, 136
Campbell, J. L. and H. D., on rocks of Virginia 136
Canada, geologic map of 59, 119–120
W. E. Logan, on rocks of 207–208
Alexander Murray, on rocks of 208
problems for investigation in 382
Canada Bay, Newfoundland, section 257, 273
Canadian extension of the northern Appalachian district, Cambrian rocks of 114–122, 285–287
Canadian extension of Adirondack subprovince, Cambrian rocks of 207–208
Canadian extension of Rocky Mountain province, Cambrian rocks of 326–327
Canadian extension of upper Mississippi province, Cambrian rocks of 334
Cape Breton, G. F. Matthew, on rocks of 55
H. Fletcher on rocks of 63, 266–267
G. F. Matthew, on fauna of 65, 84
Caradoc sandstone, position of 239
Carpenter, F. R., on Black Hills 216, 348–349
Castle Mountain group 164, 326, 327
Chamberlin, T. C., on Potsdam sandstone of Wisconsin 179
work of, in Wisconsin 179, 180
on Lake Superior sandstone 198, 338, 339
on fossils from Wisconsin 226, 227–228
Chapman, E. J., on Climactichnites 231
Chateaugay Chasm, New York, section 342–343
Cherokee slates described 138
Chester, F. D., on Potsdam of Delaware 123
Chikis quartzite, P. Frazer on 129
description of 288, 289
Chilhowee, definition of 251

Page.

Chilhowee sandstone, J. M. Safford on... 300–301
China, Cambrian rocks of..... 377–378
Cambrian fauna of..... 377–378
Choccolocco..... 247
Clarksburg Mountain, Massachusetts, section..... 275–276
Classification, geologic..... 17
Clemson, T. G., sections in Virginia..... 133
Colorado, Cambrian rocks of.... 209–210, 351–354
F. V. Hayden on rocks of..... 209
A. C. Peale on rocks of..... 209–210
Arnold Hague on rocks of..... 210
S. F. Emmons on rocks of 210
fossils from Quandary Creek, in..... 210, 234
synopsis of Potsdam rocks of..... 353
problems for investigations in..... 384
Colorado River section..... 220
Comstock, T. B., on rocks of Wyoming... 212–213
division of Cambrian of Texas ... 219, 355–356
definition of Katemcy..... 246
of Riley..... 246
of Hickory..... 246
on rocks of Wind Mountains..... 349
Connasauga, definition of..... 246
Conrad, T. A., formations of New York.....203, 204, 205
on fossils of Adirondacks 229
on use of fossils in correlations..... 399–401
Cook, G. H., on Potsdam in New Jersey.. 122–123
on Green Pond Mountain rocks..... 123
Coosa, definition of..... 247
Coosa shales, fossils from..... 305
E. A. Smith on..... 308
Coosa Valley, Alabama, rocks of..... 308
Cornwall iron mines, T. S. Hunt on..... 127
Correlation of North American and British strata 417–418
Correlation, methods of..... 421–434
superposition in..... 421–422
use of organic remains in 422–428
life zones in..... 424–425
stage of evolution in..... 425–426
life history in 426–427
contemporaneity and homotaxis in... 427
percentage of species in 428
lithologic character in 428–429
unconformity in..... 429–432
homogeny in..... 432–433
topographic features in 434
Crosby, W. O., on rocks at Frenchman's Bay, Maine 68–69
on rocks at Braintree, Massachusetts. 76, 77–78
on Cambrian rocks of eastern Massachusetts 268–270
on rocks of Nahant..... 271

D.

Dakota, Cambrian rocks of..... 214–216, 347–349
Dale, T. Nelson, work of, in Vermont..... 283
Dames, W., on fauna of Cambrian of China..... 377
Dana, J. D., on granular quartz of Massachusetts 106–107
on red sandrock 107

Page.

Dana, J. D.—Continued.
on A. Wing's discoveries in Vermont 107
quartzites of eastern New York 109
principles of correlations 407–408
Dana, J. F. and S. L., on rocks of eastern Massachusetts..... 72
Dana and Grinnell on rocks of Little Belt Mountains, Montana 162
Daniels, Edward, fossils from Black River, Wisconsin 223
Dawson, G. M., classification of the Cambrian in Canada..... 67, 128
on rocks of British Columbia.....163–164, 165
on Selkirk range, British Columbia... 165
Dawson, J. W., on Atlantic coast series.. 56, 59
Nova Scotia metamorphic slate 57
on rocks of New Brunswick 60
on strata at St. John, New Brunswick 61
on Acadian series 62
on fossil tracks from Canada..... 231
on Cambrian..... 241
definition of Acadian 248
Delaware, F. D. Chester on Potsdam of... 123, 288
De la Beche, on use of organic remains... 398
Devine, T., trilobites of Point Levi 151
Dewey, Chester, work of, in Massachusetts..... 92–93
Diamond Creek, Arizona, section 219
Dikellocephalon 222
Dodge, W. W., on fossils from Braintree. 89
on rocks at Braintree, cited 75
Dutchess County, New York, Mather, Smock, and Dwight on rocks of.. 111–112
granular quartz in 276
rocks of..... 283–284
Dutton, C. A., on Tonto of Arizona..... 221
Dwight, W. B., on the rocks of Dutchess County, New York 111
fossils from Poughkeepsie, New York 153
on rocks of New York..... 283–284

E.

Eastern border or Adirondack sub-province, definition of..... 201
Cambrian rocks of 201–208
Eastern sandstone, description of 197, 335–336
definition of..... 253
Eaton, Amos, nomenclature of..... 92–93
on rocks of Vermont..... 98
definition of granular quartz..... 250
correlations of..... 392–395, 399
on use of organic remains 394
East Rutland, Vermont, limestones of ... 276
Elliott, J. B., on rocks of Tennessee..... 144
Ells, R. W., on Cambrian rocks of province of Quebec..... 120 121
on rocks near Quebec..... 285–286
Emmetsburg, Iowa, section 187
Emmons, E., classification of 94, 403
on granular quartz 94–95
on Red Sandrock 96
on Taconic system 98
on Montmorenci Falls 114
fossils of Taconic system 148–149
on Potsdam sandstone....202–203, 204, 205, 208

Page.

Emmons, E.—Continued.
on fossils of Adirondacks 229, 231
on Cambrian in America 240
definition of Taconic 242-243
definition of Potsdam 244
Emmons, S. F., Big Cottonwood Cañon section 157-158
tabulation of rocks of Colorado 210
on rocks of Colorado 351-352
Endlich, F. M., on rocks of Wyoming 213
Engelmann, H., on rocks of Black Hills 214
English and American classifications compared 376
Estoria, Cambrian rocks of 375
Etheridge, R., on Cambrian of Australia 378-379
Eureka District, Nevada, fossils from 167-169
section 313

F.

Fall River, Massachusetts, W. B. Rogers, on rocks at 75
Ferrier, W. F., on fossil track from Adirondacks 232
Fitch, Asa, on Taconic slate and sandstone 98-99
on fossils of New York 148, 149-150
Fletcher, H., on rocks of Cape Breton 63, 266-267
Foerste, A. F., on rocks of Nahant, Massachusetts 78
on fossils from Nahant, Massachusetts 90
on rocks of eastern Massachusetts 271
Fontaine, W. M., on rocks of Virginia 135-137, 291-292-297
Ford, S. W., on rocks at Troy, New York 106
fossils from Troy, New York 152
Foster and Whitney, on Lake Superior sandstone 191-192, 193
table of rocks 192
France, Cambrian rocks of 375
Frazer, P., on South Mountain rocks 128
on Chikis quartzite 129
primal quartzites 129
on Hellam quartzite or Potsdam sandstone 131
on rocks of Pennsylvania 289
Frenchman's Bay, Maine, W. O. Crosby on rocks of 68-69

G.

Gallatin City, Montana, section 162
Gallatin River, Montana, section 162-163, 324
fauna of 325
Gaspé peninsula, A. P. Low on rocks of 120
Geiger and Keith on rocks at Harper's Ferry 137, 138, 291-292
Geikie, A., on Cambrian rocks of Scotland 376
on Cambrian rocks of Ireland 377
Geographic areas in Cambrian time 49, 368-369
Geologic classification 17
Geologic nomenclature, general considerations on 236-237
Georgia, G. White on rocks of 144, 145

Page.

Georgia—Continued.
Cambrian rocks of 144-146, 302-305
G. Little on rocks of 145
J. T. Henderson on rocks of 145
A. R. McCutchen on rocks in 145-146
paleontology of 156
Georgia and Alabama, problems for investigation in 283-284
Georgia, Vermont, C. D. Walcott on the Cambrian of 110
section at 277, 278, 279, 280, 281
Georgia formation, definition of 249, 250
J. Barrande on fossils of 99
Georgia group, C. H. Hitchcock on 101
Georgian, formations correlated with 360
Georgia slates, description of 98-113
E. Billings on 102
J. Marcou on 103
C. H. Hitchcock on 106
character of 278
Gesner, A., on rocks of New Brunswick 59
on rocks of Nova Scotia 56
Gilbert, G. K., work of in Nevada 156
on rocks of Arizona 220
definition of Tonto 245
correlations by 412
on topographic features in correlation 434
Grand Cañon, Arizona, section 563
Granular quarts, description of 91-96
E. Emmons on 94, 95
J. Hall on 100
C. H. Hitchcock on 106
J. D. Dana on 106, 107
C. D. Walcott on 112
N. H. Winchell on 186, 187
definition of 250
age of 250
distribution of 275, 276, 372
characters of 275-277
Great Bell Isle, Newfoundland, fossils of 153, 259, 261
section 258, 259
Green, Jacob, on Paradoxides 88
Green Pond Mountain rocks, G. H. Cook on 123

H.

Hague, Arnold, on rocks of Nevada 158, 159, 160
on rocks of Colorado 210
on the age of rocks of Laramie Hill, Wyoming 212, 350
definition of Hamburg 246
definition of Secret Cañon 246
definition of Prospect 252
Hall, C. E., on hydromica slates 129
on Potsdam of New York 207
Hall, James, on fossils near Troy 99
on granular quarts 100
on fossils of Vermont 100, 102
on fossils of New York 149
on fossils from red sandrock 149
on fossils of Hudson River group 149
on fossils of Quebec group 149

Page.

Hall, James—Continued.
Olenellus proposed by ... 491
on rocks of Wisconsin ... 173, 175–178
on age of sandstone of Wisconsin and Lake Superior ... 178
on Potsdam of Iowa ... 187
on Potsdam sandstone of New York ... 205
on fossils of Wisconsin ... 222, 223, 224, 225, 226
fossils of Adirondacks ... 229, 232
on names of formations ... 401
on use of fossils in correlation ... 401–403
methods of correlation ... 408, 409
principles of correlation ... 415, 416
North America and European formations compared by ... 416
Hall and Whitfield on fossils of Nevada ... 159, 166, 167
on fossils from Adirondacks ... 231
Hamburg, definition of ... 246
Hamburg limestone and shale, description of ... 315–317
fauna of ... 316, 317
Harper's Ferry, Virginia, Geiger and Keith on rocks of ... 137, 138
section ... 291, 292
Hartt, C. F., on St. John group ... 62
Hayden, F. V., on rocks of Montana ... 162
on rocks of Colorado ... 209
on rocks of Wyoming ... 211, 212
on rocks of Black Hills ... 215, 216
Hayes, C. W., definition of Connasauga ... 246
definition of Rome sandstone ... 247
definition of Weisner ... 251
section in Georgia ... 304, 305
Hellam quartzite ... 131
Hemmingford, Canada, section ... 343
Henderson, J. T., on rocks of Georgia ... 145, 303
Hickory, definition of ... 246
Hicks, H., on Tremadoc group ... 242
on sediments of the Cambrian ... 373
on Cambrian of America and Wales ... 375
Highgate Springs, Vermont, section ... 279
Highland range, Nevada, fossils from ... 171
section ... 317, 318
fauna of ... 318, 319
Hind, H. Y., on Waverly gold district ... 57
on gold-bearing rocks of Nova Scotia ... 58
on gneissoid series of Nova Scotia ... 58
Hitchcock, C. H., on Mount Desert, Maine ... 68
on rocks about Portland, Maine ... 68
on rocks of Maine ... 69
classification of rocks in New Hampshire ... 70, 71
on classification of rocks in New England ... 72
on Georgia group ... 101, 249, 250
on the name Georgia ... 106
on rocks of Waterville, Maine ... 101
on quartz rock of Vermont ... 96
on fossils from Vermont ... 99
on formations of Vermont ... 104
on Potsdam in Vermont ... 105
on Winooski marble ... 105
on granular quartz ... 106

Page.

Hitchcock, C. H.—Continued.
on red sandrock ... 106
on Cambrian of Vermont ... 107
on sections in Vermont and New Hampshire ... 108
fossils of Potsdam group ... 223
proposes Potsdamic ... 252
on mica-schist series of New Hampshire ... 268
Hitchcock, E., on rocks at Attleborough, Massachusetts ... 73
on rocks of Boston and vicinity ... 73, 75
Hiawassee River, rocks of ... 141
Homogeny, W. J. McGee on ... 432, 433
Homotaxis, T. H. Huxley on ... 427
Hough, F. B., on Potsdam of New York ... 205, 206
Houghton, Douglass, on Lake Superior sandstone ... 188–190
table of rocks of Michigan ... 189
Howell, E. E., on rocks of Nevada ... 156
Howley, J., on rocks of Newfoundland ... 53
Hudson's Bay, Cambrian rocks on ... 121, 122
Hunt, T. S., on rocks at Attleborough, Massachusetts ... 73
on rocks at Braintree, Massachusetts ... 75–76
on geology of Vermont ... 104
on Cambrian and Taconic ... 108
classification in Canada ... 120
on Cornwall iron mines, Pennsylvania ... 127
on Auroral limestone ... 127, 128
correlations of ... 132, 414
on Potsdam of Pennsylvania ... 132
on Scolithus linearis ... 132
on Lake Superior sandstone ... 195, 197, 198
on Potsdam of New York ... 206
on Cambrian, cited ... 240
on Taconian ... 243
Huxley, T. H., on homotaxis ... 427
Hyatt, A., on fossils of Straits of Belle Isle ... 54
on life history in correlation ... 426
Hydromica slates, C. E. Hall on ... 129

I.

Idaho, O. St. John on rocks of ... 161
F. H. Bradley on rocks of ... 161
A. C. Peale on rocks of ... 161
Cambrian rocks of ... 161, 162, 320–323
Lower Paleozoic section ... 323
sedimentation of ... 328, 329
India, Cambrian rocks of ... 378
d'Invilliers, on Potsdam sandstone of Pennsylvania ... 130
on correlation of the Potsdam ... 404
Interior Continental Province, definition of ... 171, 330
Cambrian rocks of ... 171–221, 330–347
sediments of ... 358
fauna of ... 371
Iowa, Cambrian rocks of ... 187–188
Ireland, Cambrian rocks of ... 377
Irving, R. D., on rocks of Wisconsin ... 173–179
on Cambrian and pre Cambrian formations cited ... 181

Page.

Irving, R. D.—Continued.
on Lake Superior sandstone.....196-197, 198, 199, 335-336
definition of Madison..... 245
of Mendota..... 245
of Eastern and Western sandstone..... 252
on lithologic character in correlation. 428
on unconformities in correlation 429-432
Irving and Chamberlin on Lake Superior sandstone..... 199

J.

Jackson, C. T., on trilobite from Newfoundland..... 50
on rocks of New Hampshire..... 70
on rocks at Braintree, Massachusetts. 74
on fossils from Braintree, Massachusetts..... 89
on red sandrock..... 96
on Lake Superior sandstone..... 191-193
James, Edwin, on Ozark Mountains, Missouri..... 199
on Black Hills, Dakota..... 214
correlations of..... 396-397
Jenney, W. P., on rocks of Texas..... 218
Johannian, definition of..... 249
Johnston, J. F. W., on rocks of New Brunswick..... 60
Jukes, J. B., on rocks of Newfoundland.. 50, 51
definition of St. John's..... 248
Jukes-Brown, A. J., cited on Tremadoc slates..... 241

K.

Kanab Creek, Arizona, section..... 356
Katemcy, definition of..... 246
Kayser, E., on primordial fossils of South America..... 379
Kelly's Island, Newfoundland, section.... 259
Kerr, W. C., on rocks of North Carolina. 138-139
Kicking Horse Pass, fossils from..... 163, 170
King, Clarence, on rocks of Utah..... 157
comparison of Utah and Welsh rocks. 157
on rocks of Nevada and Utah..... 159-160
correlation by..... 412
King, H., on rocks of Missouri..... 199
correlations by..... 199
Knox sandstone and shale, description of. 301-302
fossils of..... 302-303
Knox sandstone of Alabama..... 306-307
Knox shale of Georgia..... 303
Knox shales of Alabama..... 307
Kootanie Pass, section..... 163

L.

Labrador, Lower Cambrian in..... 274
Lake Superior sandstone, description of. 188-199, 335-339
J. J. Bigsby on..... 188
H. W. Bayfield on..... 188
Douglass Houghton on..... 188-190
H. D. Rogers on..... 190

Page.

Lake Superior sandstone—Continued.
D. D. Owen on..... 190-191
age of..... 190, 191, 192, 194, 197
C. T. Jackson on..... 191, 193
Foster and Whitney on..... 191-192, 193
J. W. Foster on..... 191
Bela Hubbard on..... 191-192
Jules Marcou on..... 192
J. D. Whitney on..... 194, 198
H. R. Schoolcraft on..... 194
A. Winchell on..... 194
J. S. Newberry on..... 194
T. S. Hunt on..... 195, 197, 198
Charles Whittlesey on..... 195
correlated with St. Croix..... 195
Thomas Macfarlane on..... 195
Alexander Agassiz on..... 195
Brooks and Pumpelly on..... 196
C. Rominger on..... 196
R. D. Irving on..... 196, 197, 198, 199
E. T. Sweet on..... 196-197
M. E. Wadsworth on..... 197, 198
A. R. C. Selwyn on..... 197-198
J. D. Whitney on..... 198
N. H. Winchell on..... 198
T. C. Chamberlin on..... 198
M. E. Wadsworth on..... 198
Irving and Chamberlin on..... 199
fossils of..... 228
definition of..... 252
Lake Superior section..... 336-337
Lane, A. C., on rocks at Nahant, Massachusetts, cited..... 78
Lapham, I. A., on rocks of Wisconsin.... 172
Laramie Mountains, Wyoming, age of Cambrian rocks of..... 212, 350
Laughing White Fish River, Michigan, section..... 337-338
Lea, I., on rocks at Braintree, Massachusetts..... 74
Lesley, J. P., on South Mountain rocks.. 127
on Primal series..... 129-130
atlas of Pennsylvania..... 131
work of, in Tennessee..... 141
on rocks of Pennsylvania..... 288-289
Levis shales described..... 285-286
Lewis, H. C., on primal slates and Potsdam sandstone..... 131
Lingulella lamborni..... 200-201, 340, 341
Little Belle Isle, Newfoundland, section. 259
Little, George, on rocks of Georgia..... 145
Llano County, Texas, section..... 355
Logan, W. E., on rocks of Newfoundland. 51
tabulation of Lower Paleozoic rocks. 51, 52
on rocks of Lower St. Lawrence..115, 118-119
on rocks of Quebec..... 116
on Quebec group..... 117
on rocks of Canada..... 207-208
on fossils of Canada..... 229-230, 231
on Scolithus linearis..... 230
distribution of Trenton limestone... 405-406
Logan and Billings, on the rocks of the St. Lawrence River..... 406
Low, A. P., on rocks of Gaspé peninsula.. 120
on rocks of Lake Mistassini..... 122

Page.

Lower Cambrian, divisions of by A. Sedgwick 239
Lower Cambrian fossils in Bristol County, Massachusetts 271-273
Lower Paleozoic rocks, W. E. Logan's tabulation of 51, 52
Lyell, Charles, on Potsdam of New York. 205
Lyman, B. S., on rocks of Virginia 134

M.

Macfarlane, Thomas, on Lake Superior sandstone 195
Maclure, William, on Appalachian rocks 91
correlations of 391-392
classification of rocks 392
Madison sandstone, definition of 245, 331
Madison, Wisconsin, section 332
Maine, Cambrian rocks of 68-69, 267
Maine and New Hampshire, problems for investigation 381
Malade City, Idaho, fossils of 320-321
Manuel's Brook, Newfoundland, section. 52, 200-261, 262, 273
Manitounuck group 122
Marcou, J., on Georgia slates 103
on red sandrock 103
on Taconic of Lake Champlain 108
on strata of Taconic system 109, 110
on classification of Taconic system .. 112, 113
on age of Lake Superior sandstone .. 192
proposes Georgia 249
proposes St. Albans 281
Marsh, O. C., on fossil track from Adirondacks 231
Marvine, A. R., on rocks of Arizona 220, 221
Maryland, Primal series in 133
Cambrian rocks of 289, 290
Massachusetts (eastern), J. F. and S. L. Dana, on rocks of 72
Cambrian rocks of 72-78, 268-273, 274
M. E. Wadsworth on rocks of 76, 77
fossils of 88-90
work of C. Dewey in 93, 94
problems for investigation in 381
Mather, W. W., classification of 95
on the rocks of Dutchess county, New York 111
on Potsdam sandstone of New York. 204, 205
Matthew, G. F., rocks of Cape Breton and Newfoundland 55
classifications of rocks of New Brunswick 61
on rocks of New Brunswick 62, 64
on rocks of St. John 64, 65
on fauna of Cape Breton 65, 84
on pre-Paradoxides zone at St. John .65, 67, 86
classification of the Cambrian 66, 67
definition of Bretonian 247
definition of St. John 249
definition of Johannian 249
on St. John group 263, 264, 266
classification of rocks in Acadia 265, 266
comparison and correlation of rocks of America and Europe 420, 421

Page.

Matthew and Bailey, on St. John group.. 62
McConnell, R. G., work of in British Columbia 164
McCreath, A., rocks of Virginia 135
McCutchen, A. R., on rocks of Georgia. 145-146, 304
McGee, W. J., on homogeny in correlation 432, 433
Meads, A. D., section at Stillwater, Minnesota, in well 186
Meek, F. B., fossils from Antelope Spring, Nevada 155, 165
on fossils from Idaho 165
fossils from Utah 166
on rocks of Missouri 200, 339
on fossils in correlation 410, 411
Meek and Hayden, on rocks of Black Hills. 215
fossils from Black Hills 233
Mendota limestone, definition of 245
description of 331-332
Mica-schist series, C. H. Hitchcock on ... 268
Middle Cambrian in Atlantic Coast province 274
Milne, J., on rocks of Newfoundland 54
Minneapolis, Minnesota, section in well.. 184
Minnesota, D. D. Owen on rocks of 181
Cambrian rocks of 181-187
N. H. Winchell on rocks of 181-187
general section in 334
Missouri, E. James on rocks of 199
H. King on rocks of 199
G. C. Swallow on rocks of 199 200
Cambrian rocks of 199-201, 339-341
F. B. Meek on rocks of 200
fossils of 229
G. C. Broadhead on rocks of 200, 201
generalized section in 340, 341
problems for investigation in 385
Mistassini Lake, A. P. Low on rocks of... 122
Montana, Dana and Grinnell on rocks of. 162
F. V. Hayden on rocks of 162
Cambrian rocks of 162, 163, 323-326
Montevallo shales, definition of 247
description of 308
Montmorenci Falls, E. Emmons on 114
J. J. Bigsby on 116
Mosquito Range, Colorado, section 352
Moss Agate Springs, Montana, section... 325
Mount Desert, Maine, C. H. Hitchcock on rocks of 68
N. S. Shaler on rocks of 69
Mount Putnam, Idaho, section 161, 322
Mount Stephen, British America, section 164
fossils from 170, 171
Murphy, North Carolina, rocks of 138, 139
Murray, Alexander, on rocks of Newfoundland 52
on rocks of Canada 208

N.

Nahant, Massachusetts, A. F. Foerste on rocks of 78
A. C. Lane on rocks at, cited 78
J. H. Sears on fossils from 78
A. F. Foerste on fossils from 90

Page.

Nahant, Massachusetts—Continued.
stratigraphical position of limestone. 271
W. O. Crosby on rocks of. 271
Nason, F. L., on Cambrian of New Jersey 123, 287
Nepigon series. 339
Nevada, G. K. Gilbert on rocks of. 156
E. E. Howell, on rocks in. 156
Arnold Hague on rocks of. 158, 159, 160
Newberry, J. S., on age of Lake Superior sandstone. 194
on rocks of Texas. 218
on rocks of Arizona. 219, 220
New Brunswick, A. Gesner on rocks of. 59
W. B. Rogers on rocks of. 60
J. W. Dawson on rocks of. 60
J. Robb on rocks of. 60
J. F. W. Johnston on rocks of. 60
G. F. Matthew, classification of rocks of. 61
L. W. Bailey on rocks of. 61, 64
G. F. Matthew, on rocks of. 62, 64
Cambrian rocks of. 273, 274
problems for investigation in. 381
New Brunswick and Cape Breton, Cambrian rocks of. 59–67, 262, 267
fossils from. 80–88
C. F. Hartt on. 80
E. Billings on. 80
C. F. Matthews on. 81–88
C. D. Walcott on. 81
New England, C. H. Hitchcock on classification of rocks of. 72
Newfoundland, historical review of work in. 50–55
J. B. Jukes on rocks of. 50, 51
J. W. Salter on Paradoxides from. 50, 78
C. T. Jackson on rocks of. 50
H. W. Bayfield on rocks of. 50
succession of rocks in. 51
W. E. Logan on rocks of. 51
Alexander Murray on rocks of. 52
primordial formations in. 53
J. Howley on rocks of. 53
A. Hyatt on fauna of. 54
J. Milne on rocks of. 54
C. D. Walcott on rocks of. 54, 55, 113
G. F. Matthew on rocks of. 55
fossils from. 78–80
pre-Olenellus beds of. 261
northwestern, Cambrian rocks of. 253–256
southwestern, Cambrian rocks of. 256–256
eastern and southeastern, Cambrian rocks of. 257–262
Cambrian sediments of. 309
problems for investigation in. 380
New Hampshire, Cambrian rocks of 70–72, 267, 268
C. D. Jackson on rocks of. 70
C. H. Hitchcock, classification of rocks of. 70–71
New Jersey, Cambrian rocks of. 122–123, 287
fossils of. 154
problems for investigation in. 382
Newport, Rhode Island, W. B. Rogers on rocks at. 76
Newton, Henry, on rocks of Black Hills. 216

Page.

New York, J. D. Dana on quartzites of eastern. 109
Cambrian sediments of. 311
problems for investigation in. 381
Nicholson, H. A., on life zones. 424–425
Niobrara River, Wyoming, section. 350
Nisconlith series, G. M. Dawson on. 165
Nomenclature of formations. 18
Nomenclature, geologic, general considerations on. 236–237
Nomenclature and classifications, problems of. 388–390
North American Cambrian compared with European. 372–377
North American and European formations, compared. 414–421
North Attleborough, Massachusetts, N. S. Shaler on rocks of. 77
fossils from. 89
North Carolina, Cambrian rocks of. 138–139, 299
problems for investigation in. 383
Northern Appalachian district, definition of. 91, 275
paleontology of. 148–154
distribution of strata of. 275
Cambrian rocks of. 91–122, 275–287
Northern Appalachian Province, sedimentation in. 284
sediments of. 308–309, 312, 313
fauna of. 371
Norwood, J. C., on Lake Superior rocks, cited. 175, 194
Nova Scotia, Cambrian rocks of. 56–59, 262
A. Gesner on rocks of. 56
problems for investigation in. 380
Nova Scotia gold field, J. Campbell on. 57
A. R. C. Selwyn on. 58
H. Y. Hind on. 58
Nova Scotia metamorphic slate, J. W. Dawson on. 57
Nova Scotia gneissoid series, H. Y. Hind on. 58

O.

Obolella pretiosa, range of. 286
Ocoee, definition of. 252
Ocoee conglomerate, description of. 143
Bailey Willis on. 299–300
Ocoee River, rocks of. 141
Olenellus, range of. 319, 370
Olenellus fauna, range of. 280, 281, 310, 362, 386–387, 389
Olenellus gilberti, remarks on. 319, 329
Ophir City, Utah, section. 156, 158, 319–320
Ordway, A., on fossils from Braintree, Massachusetts. 89
Owen, D. D., on rocks of Wisconsin. 171–172, 173–175
on rocks of Minnesota. 181
on rocks of Iowa. 187
on Lake Superior sandstone. 190–191
on fossils of Upper Mississipi valley. 221–222, 223
Owen, Richard, tabulation of rocks. 206

Page.

Owen, R., on fossil footprints of Canada.. 230
Ozark uplift, Missouri..... 199, 201

P.

Paint Rock, North Carolina, rocks at..... 138
Paleontology of Newfoundland 78–80
Paleontology of the Northern Appalachian district..... 148–154
Paleontology of Rocky Mountain Province..... 165–171
Paleontology of Upper Mississippi area.. 221–228
Paleontology of the Adirondack sub-province..... 229–232
Paleontology of the Rocky Mountain sub-province..... 233–234
Paleontology of Arizona..... 235
Peale, A. C., on Gallatin River, Montana. 162–163
on rocks of Idaho..... 161
on rocks of Colorado 209–210
Pennsylvania, Cambrian rocks of. 124–132, 288–289
Pennsylvania, problems for investigation in..... 382–383
Percival, J. G., on Wisconsin, cited..... 175
Perkins, G. H., on Winooski marble..... 110
Perry, J. B., classification of rocks..... 105
on red sandrock 105
Pioche, Nevada, section..... 156
Pogonip ridge, Nevada, section..... 158
Point Levis fossils, E. Billings on..... 116–117
Portland, Maine, C. H. Hitchcock on rocks about..... 68
Portneuf range, Idaho, section..... 321–322
Potsdam, C. H. Hitchcock on Vermont... 105
of Adirondacks, New York..... 113–114
G. H. Cook on New Jersey..... 122–123
F. Prime on Pennsylvania 128
d'Invilliers on Pennsylvania..... 130
T. S. Hunt on Pennsylvania..... 132
T. D. Rand on Pennsylvania 132
W. B. Rogers on Virginia 134
J. M. Safford on Tennessee..... 142–143
E. A. Smith on Alabama 147, 306
I. A. Lapham on Wisconsin..... 172
J. Hall on Wisconsin 175–176
Wisconsin, compared with eastern rock 176–177
description of Minnesota, 181, 182, 183, 185, 187
fossils of Minnesota 182, 183
E. Emmons on New York, 202–203, 204, 205, 206
L. Vanuxem on New York..... 204
W. W. Mather on 204, 205
Charles Lyell on..... 205
F. B. Hough on 205–206
J. Hall on New York..... 205
T. S. Hunt on New York..... 206
J. J. Bigsby on New York..... 206
C. D. Walcott on 207
C. E. Hall on..... 207
Beecher and Hall on..... 207
of Wyoming..... 211–212
of Texas..... 217, 218, 219
definition of 244
of Newfoundland 254
of Wisconsin 332–334

Page.

Potsdam—Continued.
distribution of 341–342
New York, section 342
formations correlated with..... 360
correlations with New York and Mississippi 408–409
Potsdamic, proposed by C. H. Hitchcock.. 252
Powell, J. W., on rocks of Arizona..... 220–221
Primal, definition of..... 251
Primal series, H. D. Rogers on..... 125, 126
geographical distribution..... 126
fossils of 126
equivalents of..... 126
sedimentation of..... 126
shown on sections..... 126–127
F. Prime on 128
P. Frazer on..... 129
J. P. Lesley on 129–130
of Maryland 133, 289–290
W. B. Rogers on Virginia 133–134
A. McCreath on Virginia..... 135
W. M. Fontaine on Virginia..... 135–137
of Pennsylvania 289
of Virginia 290–291
Primal slates and Potsdam sandstone, H. C. Lewis on 131
Prime, F., on fossils of Pennsylvania.... 128
on Potsdam of Pennsylvania 128, 131, 288
on primal slates of Pennsylvania..... 128
Primordial, in Newfoundland..... 53
of Virginia 135, 294–297
definition of..... 243
fauna of Nevada 155
Prospect Mountain, Nevada, section..... 158, 252
Prospect, definition of 159
Prospect Mountain series, fossils of..... 315
description of..... 313, 314
Protozoic, proposed by A. Sedgwick 238
Prout, H. A., on fossils from Potsdam, of Wisconsin 222
Ptychaspis plochensis, range of 170

Q.

Quandary creek, Colorado, fossils of..... 352
Quebec, J. J. Bigsby on rocks near..... 114
Cambrian rocks near..... 285, 287
Cambrian sediments of 309–310
R. W. Ells on the rocks of Province of. 120–121
Quebec province, C. D. Walcott on rocks of 121
Quebec gold fields, A. R. C. Selwyn on 58
Quebec group, W. E. Logan on..... 116, 117
A. R. C. Selwyn on..... 119
fossils of, in Utah 157–158
rocks of, in Wyoming..... .....212, 213, 351

R.

Rand, T. D., on Potsdam of Pennsylvania 132
Red sandrock, description of 96–98, 250
J. Marcou on..... 103
J. B. Perry on 105
C. H. Hitchcock on 106
J. D. Dana on 107

Page.

Red sandrock—Continued.
distribution of ... 277
character of ... 277
Richardson, J., on rocks of the St. Lawrence River ... 118
Riley, definition of ... 246
Robb, J., on rocks of New Brunswick ... 60
Rockfish Gap, Virginia, section ... 291, 292–293, 294
Rocky Mountain province, problems for investigation in ... 384–385
definition of ... 155, 313
Cambrian rocks of ... 156–165, 313–329
paleontology of ... 165–171
sedimentation of ... 328–329
Rocky Mountain sub-province, paleontology of ... 233–234
definition of ... 347
Cambrian rocks of ... 347–354
Roemer, F., on rocks of Texas ... 216, 217
fossils from Texas ... 234
Rogers, H. D., classification of ... 94–95
on rocks of New Jersey ... 122
correlation of sandstone No. I ... 124
on rocks of Pennsylvania ... 124–127
description of Primal series ... 125–126, 289
on South mountain rocks ... 128
on Lake Superior sandstone ... 190
principles of correlation ... 417–418
Rogers, H. D. and W. B., definition of Primal ... 251
on correlation of rocks ... 403–404
Rogers, W. B., on rocks of New Brunswick ... 60, 61
on rocks at Braintree, Massachusetts ... 73, 74
on fossils from Fall River, Massachusetts ... 75
on rocks at Newport, Rhode Island ... 76
on fossils from eastern Massachusetts ... 88
on Primal series of Virginia ... 133–134, 290–291
sections in Virginia ... 136
Rogers, W. B. and H. D., on lithologic character in correlation ... 428
Rome sandstone, definition of ... 247
Rominger, C., on Lake Superior sandstone ... 196, 337
Rosenfield station, Canada, section ... 334

S.

Safford, J. M., classification of rocks in Tennessee ... 141–142, 144
metamorphic rocks of eastern Tennessee ... 142
Potsdam group of Tennessee ... 142–143
fossils of Tennessee ... 154
definition of Chilhowee ... 251
definition of Ocoee ... 252
on rocks of Tennessee ... 300–302
on classification of rocks ... 405
Saint Albans, proposed by J. Marcou ... 281
Saint Croix, N. H Winchell on Minnesota ... 182, 183, 186
definition of ... 245
description of ... 330–334
Saint Croix district, Wisconsin, section ... 333–334
Saint John, New Brunswick, work of J. W. Dawson on rocks at ... 61

Page.

Saint John, New Brunswick—Continued.
G. F. Matthew on rocks of ... 64–65
G. F. Matthew on pre-Paradoxides zone at ... 65, 67, 86
pre-Paradoxides, beds of ... 264–265
C. D. Walcott, on fossils from ... 81
A. Hyatt, on fossils from ... 82
Saint John group, C. F. Hartt on ... 62
Matthew and Bailey on ... 62
C. D. Walcott on ... 65
definition of ... 249
description of ... 263–264
divisions of ... 266
Saint John, O., on rocks of Idaho ... 161
on rocks of Wyoming ... 213, 214, 350–351
Saint John's slate, description of ... 50, 51
J. F. Whiteaves on ... 54
definition of ... 248
Saint Lawrence River, W. E. Logan, rocks on ... 115, 118–119
J. J. Bigsby on rocks of ... 116
J. Richardson on rocks of ... 118
Saint Louis, Missouri, section in well ... 200, 340
Saint Peter's sandstone and Chazy limestone compared ... 176–177
Salem Village, New York, section ... 282–283
Salt Range, India, section ... 378
Salter, J. W., on Paradoxides from Newfoundland ... 50
fossils of Georgia ... 155
on Tremadoc slates ... 241
Salter and Aveline on Caradoc ... 239
Saratoga, New York, section ... 346
Saratoga section compared with other sections ... 346
Saratoga County, New York, J. H. Steele on rocks of ... 201–202
Sardinia, Cambrian rocks of island of ... 375
Scandinavia, Cambrian rocks of ... 375
Schell Creek Mountain, Nevada, fossils of ... 158
Schoolcraft, H. R., on age of Lake Superior sandstone ... 194
Scolithus linearis ... 131, 132, 137, 147, 172, 306, 404, 407
Scotland, Cambrian rocks of ... 376
Sears, J. H., on fossils from Nahant, Mass. ... 78
Secret Cañon shale, definition of ... 246
description of ... 315
fauna of ... 315
Sedgwick, A., on Upper Cambrian ... 237–238, 239
on Middle Cambrian ... 238, 239
on Lower Cambrian ... 238, 239
Selkirk, British Columbia, section ... 165
Selwyn, A. R. C., gold field of Quebec and Nova Scotia ... 58
on Cambrian group ... 119
on the Quebec group ... 119
on Lake Superior sandstone ... 197–198
on volcanic portion of Cambrian ... 286–287
Shaler, N. S., on rocks of Mount Desert, Maine ... 69
on rocks at Braintree, Massachusetts ... 75
on geology of Bristol County, Massachusetts ... 77, 271–272
Shaler and Foerste, on fossils of eastern Massachusetts ... 89–96

Page.

Shaler and Williams on rocks of Little Falls, New York 207, 347
Shumard, B. F., on Wisconsin, cited 185
on rocks of Texas 217
fossils from Wisconsin and Missouri. 223
fossils from Texas 234–235
Signal Hill sandstone, description of 50, 51, 52
Sillery series, position of 286
Sioux quartzite, description of 182, 185
fossils from 185
age of 184–185
Smith, E. A., work of, in Alabama 146–148
on metamorphic rocks of Alabama ... 146–147
on classification of rocks of Alabama. 147
on Potsdam sandstone of Alabama ... 147
definition of Montevallo 247
definition of Coosa 247
definition of Weisner 251
on rocks of Alabama 305–308
Smock, J. C., on the rocks of Dutchess County, New York 111
Snowden slate quarries, Virginia, section. 297
South America, Cambrian rocks of 379
South Mountain, Pennsylvania, H. D. Rogers on sandstone of 124, 125, 128
J. P. Lesley on 127
P. Frazer on 128
Southern Appalachian district, definition of 122, 287
Cambrian rocks of 122–148, 287–308
paleontology of 154–155
Southwestern sub-province, definition of 216, 354
Cambrian rocks of 216–221, 354–357
sediments of 357–358
Spring Creek, Dakota, section 348
Stevenson, J. J., on rocks of Virginia .. 137, 298–299
Steele, J. A., on rocks of Saratoga County, New York 201–202
on fossils of Adirondacks 229
Straits of Belle Isle, Newfoundland, rocks of 254
Strong, Moses, on rocks of Wisconsin 180
Sutton Mountain anticlinal, Canada 286
Swallow, G. C., on rocks of Missouri 199–200
Swanton, Vermont, section 103, 279–280
Sweet, E. T., on rocks of Wisconsin, cited 178
on Lake Superior sandstone 196, 197, 337

T.

Taconian, definition of 243
Taconian system, pre-Cambrian 132
Taconic slate, A. Fitch on 98–99
C. B. Adams on 99
Taconic group in Minnesota 185
Taconic system, E. Emmons on 98
J. Marcou on Lake Champlain 108
J. Marcou on 109–110
J. Marcou classification of 112–113
definition of 242–243
Tennessee, G. Troost on rocks in 139–141
Cambrian rocks of 139–144, 299–303
work of J. P. Lesley on rocks of 141
J. M. Safford's classification of rocks of 141–142, 144

Page.

Tennessee—Continued.
J. B. Elliott on rocks of 144
Cambrian fauna of 154–155
Cambrian sediments of 311
problems for investigations in 383
Texas, F. Roemer, on rocks of 216, 217
Cambrian rocks of 216–219, 354–356
B. F. Shumard on rocks of 217
S. B. Buckley on rocks of 218
C. D. Walcott on rocks of 218
T. B. Comstock on rocks of 219
W. P. Jenney on rocks of 218
J. S. Newberry on rocks of 218
paleontology of 234–235
Cambrian sections of, compared with others 355
division of rocks by T. B. Comstock .. 355–356
problems for investigation in 385
Thompson, Z., on red sandrock 97
Timpahute range, Nevada, section 156
Tonto group, description of 220, 221
Tonto sandstone, definition of 245
description of 357
Topsail Head, Newfoundland, section 53
fossils of 55, 260
Toughkenamon division 130
Toumey, M., on rocks of Alabama 146
Tremadoc slates 241–242, 374
Trenton limestone, distribution of 405–406
Trinity Bay, Newfoundland, section 53
Troost, Gerard, classification of rocks 139
on rocks of Tennessee 139–141
on Cambrian system of Tennessee. 140–141, 240
Trout Creek, Colorado, section 209–210, 353
Troy, N. Y., S. W. Ford on rocks at 106
J. Hall on fossils from 99
Tyson, P., on rocks of Maryland 289–290

U.

Upper Cambrian in Atlantic Coast province 274
Upper Mississippi area, definition of 171
Cambrian rocks of 171–199
paleontology of 221–228
Upper Mississippi Valley, Cambrian rocks of 330–334
problems for investigation in 385
Upham, Warren on rocks of Minnesota, cited 186
Utah, F. H. Bradley on rocks of 156, 157
Clarence King on rocks of 157
S. F. Emmons on rocks of 157–158
Cambrian rocks of 319–320
Utah and Nevada, Cambrian rocks of 155–160, 312–320
fossils from 169, 170
problems for investigation in 384

V.

Vanuxem, Lardner, on Potsdam sandstone of New York 204, 205
Vermont, C. B. Adams on quartz rock of . 95
C. H. Hitchcock on quartz rock of 96
Amos Eaton on rocks of 98

Page.

Vermont—Continued.
C. H. Hitchcock on fossils from 99
J. Hall on fossils of 100, 102
formations of, C. H. Hitchcock on.... 104
T. S. Hunt on geology of 104
C. H. Hitchcock on Potsdam in..... 105
A. Wing's discoveries in..... 107
Cambrian rocks of..... 107
J. E. Wolff on fossils of..... 113
T. N. Dale on rocks of..... 283
Cambrian sediments of..... 310–311
problems for investigation in..... 381–382
Verneuil, Edward de, principles of correlations 414–415
Virginia, Cambrian rocks of 133–138, 290–299
B. S. Lyman on rocks of..... 134
A. McCreath on rocks of 135
J. L. and H. D. Campbell on rocks in.. 136
H. D. Campbell on rocks of..... 137
J. J. Stevenson on rocks of..... 137, 296–299
W. M. Fontaine on rocks of..... 291, 292–297
Cambrian sediments of 311
problems for investigation in 383

W.

Waagen, W., on fauna of India..... 378
Wadsworth, M. E., on rocks of eastern Massachusetts..... 76, 77
Lake Superior sandstone 197, 198
on Braintree quarry 271
Walcott, C. D., on rocks of Newfoundland 54–55, 113
on St. John group..... 65
classification of the Cambrian.....66, 77, 113
on fossils from Braintree..... 89
on the Cambrian of Georgia, Vermont 110
on the rocks of Washington County, New York..... 112
on granular quartz..... 112
on rocks of Province of Quebec..... 121
correlation of rocks in Tennessee.... 144
fossils from Georgia slates..... 151–152
fossils of Lower Cambrian 153–154
fossils from Alabama 155
on fossils of Utah..... 158, 166
fossils of Nevada 160, 167–170
on fossils from British Columbia 163–164
on Potsdam of New York..... 207
on rocks of Texas 218
on rocks of Arizona 221
fossils from Wisconsin and Minnesota..... 228
on fossils from Saratoga County, New York 231–232, 232–233
fossils from Black Hills..... 234
fossils from Texas 235
principles of correlation 413
Wales, Cambrian rocks of 373–374
Wasatch Mountains, Utah, section..... 157
sedimentation of..... 328
Washington, Iowa, section in well 188
Washington County, New York, section in..... 281–283

Page.

Waterville, Maine, C. H. Hitchcock on fossils of..... 101
Waverly gold district, Nova Scotia, H. Y. Hind on..... 57
Weber Cañon, Utah, section 158
Webster, J. W., on rocks of Boston and vicinity 72
Weisner quartzite, definition of..... 251
description of..... 308
Weisner, Georgia, section..... 304–305
Western border or Rocky Mountain subprovince, definition of 209
Cambrian rocks of 209–216
Western sandstone, description of....197, 335–336
definition of..... 252
White, C. A., fossils of Utah 166
classification of rocks of Iowa..... 187
on fossils of Arizona..... 220–221
White, George, on rocks of Georgia 144–145
Whiteaves, J. F., on slates of St. John's.. 54
Whitehall, New York, section..... 344–345
Whitfield, R. P., on fossils from Braintree, Massachusetts 89
correlations of 108–109
fossils of northern Vermont..... 151
on fossils from Black Hills.....216, 233–234
fossils of Wisconsin..... 226–227
Whitney, J. D., fossils from Nevada..... 155, 165
on Lake Superior sandstone 194, 198
principles of correlation 411
Whitney and Wadsworth on copper-bearing rocks, cited..... 198–199
Whittlesey, C., on rocks of Wisconsin ... 172–173
on Lake Superior sandstone..... 195
William's Cañon, Colorado, section 352
Williams, H. S., on life history in correlation, cited 426
Willis, Bailey, on Ocoee of Tennessee.. . 209–300
Winchell, A., on rocks of Wisconsin..... 178
on Lake Superior sandstone..... 194
fossils from Wisconsin..... 225–226
Winchell, N. H., correlations of...109, 184, 186, 187, 207, 409–410
on rocks of Minnesota..... 181, 187
section at Emmettsburg, Iowa..... 187
on rocks of Black Hills 216
fossils from St. Croix sandstone 228
definition of St. Croix 245
on lithologic character in correlation. 428–429
Wind River range, Wyoming, rocks of ... 350
Wing, A., discoveries in Vermont..... 107
Winooski marble, E. Billings on..... 103–104
C. H. Hitchcock on 105
G. H. Perkins on..... 110
Winwood, H. H., on fossils from Kicking Horse Pass..... 163
Wisconsin, Cambrian rocks of..... 171–181
D. D. Owen on rocks of.....171–172, 173–175
I. A. Lapham on rocks of..... 172
Charles Whittlesey on rocks of..... 172–173
J. Hall on rocks of.....173, 175–178
geologic map of..... 178
work of R. D. Irving in..... 178
A. Winchell on rocks of..... 178
T. C. Chamberlin on rocks in..... 179–180

	Page.
Wisconsin—Continued.	
L. C. Wooster on rocks of	179–180
Moses Strong on rocks of	180
succession of beds of Potsdam in	331
Wolff, J. E., on fossils from Vermont	113
on limestones of East Rutland Valley, Vermont	276
Woodward, H., on trilobites of Australia.	379
Woodward, John, correlations of	391
Wooster, L. C., on Potsdam sandstone	179–180
Wyoming, F. V. Hayden on rocks of	211–212
Cambrian rocks of	211–214, 349–351
A. Hague on rocks of	212
F. H. Bradley on rocks of	212
T. B. Comstock on rocks of	212–213
F. M. Endlich on rocks of	213
O. St. John on rocks of	213, 214
Y.	
Young, A. A., on Potsdam sandstone, cited	180

LIBRARY CATALOGUE SLIPS.

Series title.

United States. *Department of the interior.* (*U. S. geological survey.*)
Department of the interior | — | Bulletin | of the | United States | geological survey | no. 82 | [Seal of the department] |
Washington | government printing office | 1891

Second title: United States geological survey | J. W. Powell, director | — | Correlation papers | Cretaceous | by | Charles A. White | [Vignette] |
Washington | government printing office | 1891
8°. 273 pp. 3 pl.

Author title.

White (Charles A.).
United States geological survey | J. W. Powell, director | — | Correlation papers | Cretaceous | by | Charles A. White | [Vignette] |
Washington | government printing office | 1891
8°. 273 pp. 3 pl.
[UNITED STATES. *Department of the interior.* (*U. S. geological survey*). Bulletin 82.]

Title for subject entry.

United States geological survey | J. W. Powell, director | — | Correlation papers | Cretaceous | by | Charles A. White | [Vignette] |
Washington | government printing office | 1891
8°. 273 pp. 3 pl.
[UNITED STATES. *Department of the interior.* (*U. S. geological survey*). Bulletin 82.]

ADVERTISEMENT.

[Bulletin No. 82.]

The publications of the United States Geological Survey are issued in accordance with the statute approved March 3, 1879, which declares that—

"The publications of the Geological Survey shall consist of the annual report of operations, geological and economic maps illustrating the resources and classification of the lands, and reports upon general and economic geology and paleontology. The annual report of operations of the Geological Survey shall accompany the annual report of the Secretary of the Interior. All special memoirs and reports of said Survey shall be issued in uniform quarto series if deemed necessary by the Director, but otherwise in ordinary octavos. Three thousand copies of each shall be published for scientific exchanges and for sale at the price of publication; and all literary and cartographic materials received in exchange shall be the property of the United States and form a part of the library of the organization; and the money resulting from the sale of such publications shall be covered into the Treasury of the United States."

On July 7, 1882, the following joint resolution, referring to all Government publications, was passed by Congress:

"That whenever any document or report shall be ordered printed by Congress, there shall be printed, in addition to the number in each case stated, the 'usual number' (1,900) of copies for binding and distribution among those entitled to receive them."

Except in those cases in which an extra number of any publication has been supplied to the Survey by special resolution of Congress or has been ordered by the Secretary of the Interior, this office has no copies for gratuitous distribution.

ANNUAL REPORTS.

I. First Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, by Clarence King. 1880. 8°. 79 pp. 1 map.—A preliminary report describing plan of organization and publications.

II. Second Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, 1880–'81, by J. W. Powell. 1882. 8°. lv, 588 pp. 62 pl. 1 map.

III. Third Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, 1881–'82, by J. W. Powell. 1883. 8°. xviii, 564 pp. 67 pl. and maps.

IV. Fourth Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, 1882–'83, by J. W. Powell. 1884. 8°. xxxii, 473 pp. 85 pl. and maps.

V. Fifth Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, 1883–'84, by J. W. Powell. 1885. 8°. xxxvi, 469 pp. 58 pl. and maps.

VI. Sixth Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, 1884–'85, by J. W. Powell. 1885. 8°. xxix, 570 pp. 65 pl. and maps.

VII. Seventh Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, 1885–'86, by J. W. Powell. 1888. 8°. xx, 656 pp. 71 pl. and maps.

VIII. Eighth Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, 1886–'87, by J. W. Powell. 1889. 8°. 2v. xix, 474, xii pp. 53 pl. and maps; 1 p. l. 475–1063 pp. 54–76 pl. and maps.

IX. Ninth Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, 1887–'88, by J. W. Powell. 1889. 8°. xiii, 717 pp. 88 pl. and maps.

X. Tenth Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, 1888–'89, by J. W. Powell. 1890. 8°. 2 v. xv, 774 pp. 96 pl. and maps; viii, 123 pp.

The Eleventh and Twelfth Annual Reports are in press.

MONOGRAPHS.

I. Lake Bonneville, by Grove Karl Gilbert. 1890. 4°. xx, 438 pp. 51 pl. 1 map. Price $1.50.

II. Tertiary History of the Grand Cañon District, with atlas, by Clarence E. Dutton, Capt. U. S. A. 1882. 4°. xiv, 264 pp. 42 pl. and atlas of 24 sheets folio. Price $10.00.

III. Geology of the Comstock Lode and the Washoe District, with atlas by George F. Becker. 1882. 4°. xv, 422 pp. 7 pl. and atlas of 21 sheets folio. Price $11.00.

IV. Comstock Mining and Miners, by Eliot Lord. 1883. 4°. xiv, 451 pp. 3 pl. Price $1.50.

V. The Copper-Bearing Rocks of Lake Superior, by Roland Duer Irving. 1883. 4°. xvi, 464 pp. 15 l. 29 pl. and maps. Price $1.85.

VI. Contributions to the Knowledge of the Older Mesozoic Flora of Virginia, by William Morris Fontaine. 1883. 4°. xi, 144 pp. 54 l. 54 pl. Price $1.05.

VII. Silver-Lead Deposits of Eureka, Nevada, by Joseph Story Curtis. 1884. 4°. xiii, 200 pp. 16 pl. Price $1.20.

VIII. Paleontology of the Eureka District, by Charles Doolittle Walcott. 1884. 4°. xiii, 298 pp. 24 l. 24 pl. Price $1.10.

IX. Brachiopods and Lamellibranchiata of the Raritan Clays and Greensand Marls of New Jersey, by Robert P. Whitfield. 1885. 4°. xx, 338 pp. 35 pl. 1 map. Price $1.15.

X. Dinocerata. A Monograph of an Extinct Order of Gigantic Mammals, by Othniel Charles Marsh. 1886. 4°. xviii, 243 pp. 56 l. 56 pl. Price $2.70.

XI. Geological History of Lake Lahontan, a Quaternary Lake of Northwestern Nevada, by Israel Cook Russell. 1885. 4°. xiv, 288 pp. 46 pl. and maps. Price $1.75.

XII. Geology and Mining Industry of Leadville, Colorado, with atlas, by Samuel Franklin Emmons. 1886. 4°. xxix, 770 pp. 45 pl. and atlas of 35 sheets folio. Price $8.40.

XIII. Geology of the Quicksilver Deposits of the Pacific Slope, with atlas, by George F. Becker. 1888. 4°. xix, 486 pp. 7 pl. and atlas of 14 sheets folio. Price $2.00.

XIV. Fossil Fishes and Fossil Plants of the Triassic Rocks of New Jersey and the Connecticut Valley, by John S. Newberry. 1888. 4°. xiv, 152 pp. 26 pl. Price $1.00.

XV. The Potomac or Younger Mesozoic Flora, by William Morris Fontaine. 1889. 4°. xiv, 377 pp. 180 pl. Text and plates bound separately. Price $2.50.

XVI. The Paleozoic Fishes of North America, by John Strong Newberry. 1889. 4°. 340 pp. 53 pl. Price $1.00.

In press:

XVII. The Flora of the Dakota Group, a posthumous work, by Leo Lesquereux. Edited by F. H. Knowlton. 4° 400 pp. 66 pl.

In preparation:

XVIII. Gasteropoda and Cephalopoda of the Raritan Clays and Greensand Marls of New Jersey, by Robert P. Whitfield.

— The Penokee Iron-Bearing Series of Northern Wisconsin and Michigan, by Roland D. Irving and C. R. Van Hise.

— Mollusca and Crustacea of the Miocene Formations of New Jersey, by R. P. Whitfield.

— Geology of the Eureka Mining District, Nevada, with atlas, by Arnold Hague.

— Sauropoda, by O. C. Marsh.

— Stegosauria, by O. C. Marsh.

— Brontotheridæ, by O. C. Marsh.

— Report on the Denver Coal Basin, by S. F. Emmons.

— Report on Silver Cliff and Ten-Mile Mining Districts, Colorado, by S. F. Emmons.

— The Glacial Lake Agassiz, by Warren Upham.

BULLETINS.

1. On Hypersthene-Andesite and on Triclinic Pyroxene in Augitic Rocks, by Whitman Cross, with a Geological Sketch of Buffalo Peaks, Colorado, by S. F. Emmons. 1883. 8°. 42 pp. 2 pl. Price 10 cents.

2. Gold and Silver Conversion Tables, giving the coining values of troy ounces of fine metal, etc., computed by Albert Williams, jr. 1883. 8°. 8 pp. Price 5 cents.

3. On the Fossil Faunas of the Upper Devonian, along the meridian of 76° 30′, from Tompkins County, New York, to Bradford County, Pennsylvania, by Henry S. Williams. 1884. 8°. 36 pp. Price 5 cents.

4. On Mesozoic Fossils, by Charles A. White. 1884. 8°. 36 pp. 9 pl. Price 5 cents.

5. A Dictionary of Altitudes in the United States, compiled by Henry Gannett. 1884. 8°. 325 pp. Price 20 cents.

6. Elevations in the Dominion of Canada, by J. W. Spencer. 1884. 8°. 43 pp. Price 5 cents.

7. Mapoteca Geologica Americana. A Catalogue of Geological Maps of America (North and South), 1752–1881, in geographic and chronologic order, by Jules Marcou and John Belknap Marcou. 1884. 8°. 184 pp. Price 10 cents.

8. On Secondary Enlargements of Mineral Fragments in Certain Rocks, by R. D. Irving and C. R. Van Hise. 1884. 8°. 56 pp. 6 pl. Price 10 cents.

9. A report of work done in the Washington Laboratory during the fiscal year 1883–'84. F. W. Clarke, chief chemist. T. M. Chatard, assistant chemist. 1884. 8°. 40 pp. Price 5 cents.

10. On the Cambrian Faunas of North America. Preliminary studies, by Charles Doolittle Walcott. 1884. 8°. 74 pp. 10 pl. Price 5 cents.

11. On the Quaternary and Recent Mollusca of the Great Basin; with Descriptions of New Forms, by R. Ellsworth Call. Introduced by a sketch of the Quaternary Lakes of the Great Basin, by G. K. Gilbert. 1884. 8°. 66 pp. 6 pl. Price 5 cents.

12. A Crystallographic Study of the Thinolite of Lake Lahontan, by Edward S. Dana. 1884. 8°. 24 pp. 3 pl. Price 5 cents.

13. Boundaries of the United States and of the several States and Territories, with a Historical Sketch of the Territorial Changes, by Henry Gannett. 1885. 8°. 135 pp. Price 10 cents.

14. The Electrical and Magnetic Properties of the Iron-Carburets, by Carl Barus and Vincent Strouhal. 1885. 8°. 238 pp. Price 15 cents.

15. On the Mesozoic and Cenozoic Paleontology of California, by Charles A. White. 1885. 8°. 33 pp. Price 5 cents.

16. On the Higher Devonian Faunas of Ontario County, New York, by John M. Clarke. 1885. 8°. 96 pp. 3 pl. Price 5 cents.

17. On the Development of Crystallization in the Igneous Rocks of Washoe, Nevada, with Notes on the Geology of the District, by Arnold Hague and Joseph P. Iddings. 1885. 8°. 44 pp. Price 5 cents.

18. On Marine Eocene, Fresh-water Miocene, and other Fossil Mollusca of Western North America, by Charles A. White. 1885. 8°. 26 pp. 3 pl. Price 5 cents.

19. Notes on the Stratigraphy of California, by George F. Becker. 1885. 8°. 28 pp. Price 5 cents.

20. Contributions to the Mineralogy of the Rocky Mountains, by Whitman Cross and W. F. Hillebrand. 1885. 8°. 114 pp. 1 pl. Price 10 cents.

21. The Lignites of the Great Sioux Reservation. A Report on the Region between the Grand and Moreau Rivers, Dakota, by Bailey Willis. 1885. 8°. 16 pp. 5 pl. Price 5 cents.

22. On New Cretaceous Fossils from California, by Charles A. White. 1885. 8°. 25 pp. 5 pl. Price 5 cents.

23. Observations on the Junction between the Eastern Sandstone and the Keweenaw Series on Keweenaw Point, Lake Superior, by R. D. Irving and T. C. Chamberlin. 1885. 8°. 124 pp. 17 pl. Price 15 cents.

24. List of Marine Mollusca, comprising the Quaternary Fossils and recent forms from American Localities between Cape Hatteras and Cape Roque, including the Bermudas, by William Healey Dall. 1885. 8°. 336 pp. Price 25 cents.

25. The Present Technical Condition of the Steel Industry of the United States, by Phineas Barnes. 1885. 8°. 85 pp. Price 10 cents.

26. Copper Smelting, by Henry M. Howe. 1885. 8°. 107 pp. Price 10 cents.

27. Report of work done in the Division of Chemistry and Physics, mainly during the fiscal year 1884–'85. 1886. 8°. 80 pp. Price 10 cents.

28. The Gabbros and Associated Hornblende Rocks occurring in the Neighborhood of Baltimore, Md., by George Huntington Williams. 1886. 8°. 78 pp. 4 pl. Price 10 cents.

29. On the Fresh-water Invertebrates of the North American Jurassic, by Charles A. White. 1886. 8°. 41 pp. 4 pl. Price 5 cents.

30. Second Contribution to the Studies on the Cambrian Faunas of North America, by Charles Doolittle Walcott. 1886. 8°. 369 pp. 33 pl. Price 25 cents.

31. Systematic Review of our Present Knowledge of Fossil Insects, including Myriapods and Arachnids, by Samuel Hubbard Scudder. 1886. 8°. 128 pp. Price 15 cents.

32. Lists and Analyses of the Mineral Springs of the United States; a Preliminary Study, by Albert C. Peale. 1886. 8°. 235 pp. Price 20 cents.

33. Notes on the Geology of Northern California, by J. S. Diller. 1886. 8°. 23 pp. Price 5 cents.

34. On the relation of the Laramie Molluscan Fauna to that of the succeeding Fresh-water Eocene and other groups, by Charles A. White. 1886. 8°. 54 pp. 5 pl. Price 10 cents.

35. Physical Properties of the Iron-Carburets, by Carl Barus and Vincent Strouhal. 1886. 8°. 62 pp. Price 10 cents.

36. Subsidence of Fine Solid Particles in Liquids, by Carl Barus. 1886. 8°. 58 pp. Price 10 cents.

37. Types of the Laramie Flora, by Lester F. Ward. 1887. 8°. 354 pp. 57 pl. Price 25 cents.

38. Peridotite of Elliott County, Kentucky, by J. S. Diller. 1887. 8°. 31 pp. 1 pl. Price 5 cents.

39. The Upper Beaches and Deltas of the Glacial Lake Agassiz, by Warren Upham. 1887. 8°. 84 pp. 1 pl. Price 10 cents.

40. Changes in River Courses in Washington Territory due to Glaciation, by Bailey Willis. 1887. 8°. 10 pp. 4 pl. Price 5 cents.

41. On the Fossil Faunas of the Upper Devonian—the Genesee Section, New York, by Henry S. Williams. 1887. 8°. 121 pp. 4 pl. Price 15 cents.

42. Report of work done in the Division of Chemistry and Physics, mainly during the fiscal year 1885–'86. F. W. Clarke, chief chemist. 1887. 8°. 152 pp. 1 pl. Price 15 cents.

43. Tertiary and Cretaceous Strata of the Tuscaloosa, Tombigbee, and Alabama Rivers, by Eugene A. Smith and Lawrence C. Johnson. 1887. 8°. 189 pp. 21 pl. Price 15 cents.

44. Bibliography of North American Geology for 1886, by Nelson H. Darton. 1887. 8°. 35 pp. Price 5 cents.

45. The Present Condition of Knowledge of the Geology of Texas, by Robert T. Hill. 1887. 8°. 94 pp. Price 10 cents.

46. Nature and Origin of Deposits of Phosphate of Lime, by R. A. F. Penrose, jr., with an Introduction by N. S. Shaler. 1888. 8°. 143 pp. Price 15 cents.

47. Analyses of Waters of the Yellowstone National Park, with an Account of the Methods of Analysis employed, by Frank Austin Gooch and James Edward Whitfield. 1888. 8°. 84 pp. Price 10 cents.

48. On the Form and Position of the Sea Level, by Robert Simpson Woodward. 1888. 8°. 88 pp. Price 10 cents.

49. Latitudes and Longitudes of Certain Points in Missouri, Kansas, and New Mexico, by Robert Simpson Woodward. 1889. 8°. 138 pp. Price 15 cents.

50. Formulas and Tables to facilitate the Construction and Use of Maps, by Robert Simpson Woodward. 1889. 8°. 124 pp. Price 15 cents.

51. On Invertebrate Fossils from the Pacific Coast, by Charles Abiathar White. 1889. 8°. 102 pp. 14 pl. Price 15 cents.

52. Subaërial Decay of Rocks and Origin of the Red Color of Certain Formations, by Israel Cook Russell. 1889. 8°. 65 pp. 5 pl. Price 10 cents.

53. The Geology of Nantucket, by Nathaniel Southgate Shaler. 1889. 8°. 55 pp. 10 pl. Price 10 cents.

54. On the Thermo-Electric Measurement of High Temperatures, by Carl Barus. 1889. 8°. 313 pp. incl. 1 pl. 11 pl. Price 25 cents.

55. Report of work done in the Division of Chemistry and Physics, mainly during the fiscal year 1886–'87. Frank Wigglesworth Clarke, chief chemist. 1889. 8°. 96 pp. Price 10 cents.

56. Fossil Wood and Lignite of the Potomac Formation, by Frank Hall Knowlton. 1889. 8°. 72 pp. 7 pl. Price 10 cents.

57. A Geological Reconnaissance in Southwestern Kansas, by Robert Hay. 1890. 8°. 49 pp. 2 pl. Price 5 cents.

58. The Glacial Boundary in Western Pennsylvania, Ohio, Kentucky, Indiana, and Illinois, by George Frederick Wright, with an introduction by Thomas Chrowder Chamberlin. 1890. 8°. 112 pp. incl. 1 pl. 8 pl. Price 15 cents.

59. The Gabbros and Associated Rocks in Delaware, by Frederick D. Chester. 1890. 8°. 45 pp. 1 pl. Price 10 cents.

60. Report of work done in the Division of Chemistry and Physics, mainly during the fiscal year 1887–'88. F. W. Clarke, chief chemist. 1890. 8°. 174 pp. Price 15 cents.

61. Contributions to the Mineralogy of the Pacific Coast, by William Harlow Melville and Waldemar Lindgren. 1890. 8°. 40 pp. 3 pl. Price 5 cents.

62. The Greenstone Schist Areas of the Menominee and Marquette Regions of Michigan; a contribution to the subject of dynamic metamorphism in eruptive rocks, by George Huntington Williams; with an introduction by Roland Duer Irving. 1890. 8°. 241 pp. 16 pl. Price 30 cents.

63. A Bibliography of Paleozoic Crustacea from 1698 to 1889, including a list of North American species and a systematic arrangement of genera, by Anthony W. Vogdes. 1890. 8°. 177 pp. Price 15 cents.

64. A Report of work done in the Division of Chemistry and Physics, mainly during the fiscal year 1888–'89. F. W. Clarke, chief chemist. 1890. 8°. 60 pp. Price 10 cents.

65. Stratigraphy of the Bituminous Coal Field of Pennsylvania, Ohio, and West Virginia, by Israel C. White. 1891. 8°. 212 pp. 11 pl. Price 20 cents.

66. On a Group of Volcanic Rocks from the Tewan Mountains, New Mexico, and on the occurrence of Primary Quartz in certain Basalts, by Joseph Paxson Iddings. 1890. 8°. 34 pp. Price 5 cents.

67. The relations of the Traps of the Newark System in the New Jersey Region, by Nelson Horatio Darton. 1890. 8°. 82 pp. Price 10 cents.

68. Earthquakes in California in 1869, by James Edward Keeler. 1890. 8°. 25 pp. Price 5 cents.

69. A Classed and Annotated Bibliography of Fossil Insects, by Samuel Hubbard Scudder. 1890. 8°. 101 pp. Price 15 cents.

70. Report on Astronomical Work of 1889 and 1890, by Robert Simpson Woodward. 1890. 8°. 79 pp. Price 10 cents.

71. Index to the Known Fossil Insects of the World, including Myriapods and Arachnids, by Samuel Hubbard Scudder. 1891. 8°. 744 pp. Price 50 cents.

72. Altitudes between Lake Superior and the Rocky Mountains, by Warren Upham. 1891. 8°. 229 pp. Price 20 cents.

73. The Viscosity of Solids, by Carl Barus. 1891. 8°. xii, 189 pp. 6 pl. Price 15 cents.

74. The Minerals of North Carolina, by Frederick Augustus Genth. 1891. 8°. 119 pp. Price 15 cents.

75. Record of North American Geology for 1887 to 1889, inclusive, by Nelson Horatio Darton. 1891. 8°. 173 pp. Price 15 cents.

76. A Dictionary of Altitudes in the United States (second edition), compiled by Henry Gannett, chief topographer. 1891. 8°. 393 pp. Price 25 cents.

77. The Texan Permian and its Mesozoic types of Fossils, by Charles A. White. 1891. 8°. 51 pp. 4 pl. Price 10 cents.

78. A report of work done in the Division of Chemistry and Physics, mainly during the fiscal year 1889–'90. F. W. Clarke, chief chemist. 1891. 8°. 131 pp. Price 15 cents.

79. A Late Volcanic Eruption in Northern California and its peculiar lava, by J. S. Diller. 1891. 8°. 38 pp. 17 pl. Price 10 cents.

80. Correlation papers—Devonian and Carboniferous, by Henry Shaler Williams. 1891. 8°. 279 pp. Price 20 cents.

81. Correlation papers—Cambrian, by Charles Doolittle Walcott. 1891. 8°. 447 pp. 3 pl. Price 25 cents.

82. Correlation papers—Cretaceous, by Charles A. White. 1891. 8°. 273 pp. 3 pl. Price 20 cents.

In press:

91. Record of North American Geology for 1890, by Nelson Horatio Darton.

In preparation:

— Correlation papers—Neocene, by W. H. Dall and G. D. Harris.
— Correlation papers—Eocene, by W. B. Clark.
— Correlation papers—Jura-Trias, by I. C. Russell.
— Correlation papers—Pleistocene, by T. C. Chamberlin.
— Correlation papers—Algonkian and Archean, by C. R. Van Hise.
— The Compressibility of Liquids, by Carl Barus.
— The Eruptive and Sedimentary Rocks on Pigeon Point, Minnesota, and their contact phenomena, by W. S. Bayley.
— A Bibliography of Paleobotany, by David White.

STATISTICAL PAPERS.

Mineral Resources of the United States, 1882, by Albert Williams, jr. 1883. 8°. xvii, 813 pp. Price 50 cents.

Mineral Resources of the United States, 1883 and 1884, by Albert Williams, jr. 1885. 8°. xiv, 1016 pp. Price 60 cents.

Mineral Resources of the United States, 1885. Division of Mining Statistics and Technology. 1886. 8°. vii, 576 pp. Price 40 cents.

Mineral Resources of the United States, 1886, by David T. Day. 1887. 8°. viii, 813 pp. Price 50 cents.

Mineral Resources of the United States, 1887, by David T. Day. 1888. 8°. vii, 832 pp. Price 50 cents.

Mineral Resources of the United States, 1888, by David T. Day. 1890. 8°. vii, 652 pp. Price 50 cents.

In preparation:

Mineral Resources of the United States, 1889 and 1890.

The money received from the sale of these publications is deposited in the Treasury, and the Secretary of the Treasury declines to receive bank checks, drafts, or postage stamps; all remittances, therefore, must be by POSTAL NOTE or MONEY ORDER, made payable to the Librarian of the U. S. Geological Survey, or in CURRENCY, for the exact amount. Correspondence relating to the publications of the Survey should be addressed

TO THE DIRECTOR OF THE
UNITED STATES GEOLOGICAL SURVEY,
WASHINGTON, D. C.

WASHINGTON, D. C., *August*, 1891.

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR

BULLETIN

OF THE

UNITED STATES

GEOLOGICAL SURVEY

No. 82

WASHINGTON
GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
1891

UNITED STATES GEOLOGICAL SURVEY
J. W. POWELL, DIRECTOR

CORRELATION PAPERS

CRETACEOUS

BY

CHARLES A. WHITE

WASHINGTON
GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
1891

CONTENTS.

	Page.
Letter of transmittal	9
Outline of this paper	11
Preface	13
Introduction	15
Scope	15
Taxonomy and the criteria of correlation	17
The literature of the North American Cretaceous	25
List of publications consulted	26
Historical sketch	61
Discussion of the formation by regions	72
Explanation of terms and methods	72
Atlantic border region	74
New Jersey	78
The Non-marine division	80
The Marine division	82
Staten Island and Long Island	84
Martha's Vineyard	86
Pennsylvania and Delaware	87
Maryland and District of Columbia	88
Virginia	90
North Carolina	91
South Carolina	92
Concluding remarks on the Atlantic border region	92
Gulf border region	100
Texan region	114
North Mexican region	130
Great Interior area	140
South Interior region	154
North Interior region	164
The Lower Cretaceous	168
The Upper Cretaceous	170
Pacific border region	181
The Lower Cretaceous	183
The Upper Cretaceous	192
Extra-regional districts	201
Correlation and taxonomy, illustrated by tables	207
Horizons of the North American Cretaceous	248
Potomac horizon	251
Comanche horizon	253
Kootanie horizon	254
Shasta horizon	255
Dakota horizon	257

Page.
Horizons of the North American Cretaceous—Continued.
Maritime and interior horizon 258
Colorado subhorizon 261
Montana subhorizon 261
Laramie horizon 262
Chico-Téjon horizon 264
Great displacements of, and volcanic material in, the North American Cretaceous 265
Explanation of map 267
Index 269

ILLUSTRATIONS.

		Page.
PLATE I.	Map showing the outlines of the regions	72
II.	Summary of the published Cretaceous sections for each region	246
III.	Map showing the distribution of the Cretaceous deposits of North America	268
FIG. 1.	Vertical section of the New Jersey Cretaceous series	79
2.	Section from Philadelphia to Atlantic City	80
3.	Section from Metuchen to Cape May, New Jersey	82
4.	Section from Haywood to New Berne, North Carolina	92
5.	General section of the Cretaceous rocks of Alabama	108
6.	Section from Parker County to Navarro County, Texas	118
7.	The Sierra San Carlos section	134

LETTER OF TRANSMITTAL.

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR,
UNITED STATES GEOLOGICAL SURVEY,
DIVISION OF GEOLOGIC CORRELATION,
Washington, D. C., April 1, 1891.

SIR: I have the honor to transmit herewith a memoir by Dr. Charles A. White on the Cretaceous of North America, prepared for publication as a bulletin.

The Division of Geologic Correlation was created for the purpose of summarizing existing knowledge with reference to the geologic formations of North America, and especially of the United States; of discussing the correlation of formations found in different parts of the country with one another and with formations in other continents; and of discussing the principles of geologic correlation in the light of American phenomena. The formations of each geologic period were assigned to some student already well acquainted with them, and it was arranged that he should expand his knowledge by study of the literature and by field examination of classic localities, and embody his results in an essay. The general plan of the work has been set forth on page 16 of the Ninth Annual Report of the Survey, and on pages 108 to 113 of the Tenth Annual Report, as well as in a letter of transmittal of Bulletin No. 80.

Two of the essays resulting from this work have already been presented. The first, by Prof. H. S. Williams, pertains to the formations of the Carboniferous and Devonian, and constitutes Bulletin No. 80. The second, by Mr. Charles D. Walcott, pertains to the formations of the Cambrian, and constitutes Bulletin No. 81. The present essay is the third of the series, and others will follow.

Dr. White discusses the American Cretaceous formations by districts so chosen and arranged as to constitute a series, and through this discussion divides the formations into two series, which he calls Upper Cretaceous and Lower Cretaceous. These names as used by him have a purely American application and are not believed to coincide with the upper and lower divisions of the European Cretaceous.

The American Cretaceous as a whole corresponds in general to the European as a whole, but it is impossible to recognize in America the precise equivalents of the upper and lower limits of the European Cretaceous.

Very respectfully, your obedient servant,

G. K. GILBERT,
Geologist in Charge.

Hon. J. W. POWELL,
Director U. S. Geological Survey.

OUTLINE OF THIS PAPER.

The primary object of this bulletin is the presentation of a summary of our present knowledge of the North American Cretaceous and a discussion of the system as it is developed on this continent, discussion of or direct reference to the details of the system as it is developed in other parts of the world being omitted.

Among the subjects treated of are the areal distribution of Cretaceous deposits, the recognition and correlation of the various formations which have by any author been published as belonging to this system, the partial rectification of the scale of Cretaceous formations as hitherto recognized, the characterization and delimitation of the now recognized formations and of the larger subdivisions of the system, and a discussion of its delimitation as a whole with reference to the formations which represent the next preceding and succeeding systems.

Preliminary to the principal discussions the bulletin contains a general statement of its object and plan, a historical sketch of the work that has been done with reference to the North American Cretaceous, an annotated list of the principal published works relating to the general subject in hand, and a discussion of the principles of correlation and taxonomy.

In the latter discussions the position is taken that while the European geological systems, as such, are more or less distinctly recognizable in different parts of the world, it has not yet been practicable satisfactorily to recognize their subdivisions beyond comparatively restricted geographical limits. It is therefore assumed that any attempt to correlate the subdivisions of the North American Cretaceous with those of the system as developed in Europe ought to follow, not precede, a thorough investigation of the former and perhaps also a partial revision of the general scale now in use.

It is shown that large portions of the continent are occupied by formations older than the Cretaceous and that therefore no strata referable to that system occur there. Those portions of the continent within which Cretaceous formations have been systematically studied are divided into seven regions, the outlines of which are shown on a small two-page map, and under the head of each of which regions its formations are severally discussed. The Cretaceous deposits which occur in other parts of the continent, and concerning which less is known, are briefly discussed under the head of Extra-regional districts.

These discussions include not only those deposits which all writers agree in referring to the Cretaceous system, but also those occurring at its base and top, respectively, which may be regarded as transitional in character, or concerning the Cretaceous age of which geological writers have differed.

Two great divisions of the Cretaceous system are recognized for North America, which are called Upper and Lower Cretaceous, respectively. The separateness of these divisions from each other is recognized by means of evidence inherent in each, and without regard to their close agreement or disagreement with the Upper and Lower Cretaceous of Europe.

At the close of the discussions under the head of each region a table of its Cretaceous formations is given and compared with similar tables of the formations of adjacent regions. Following these discussions a series of nineteen tables is presented for the

purpose of synoptically representing the correlation of the Cretaceous formations of the continent. Each table represents one of the principal sections which occur in different parts of the continent, and which have been published by different authors. At the side of each table is a uniform graduated scale which theoretically represents the full range of Cretaceous time. Opposite this scale are placed those spaces of the table which represent the respective formations of the section, the position of each space thus expressing the author's opinion as to the taxonomic position of the formation which it represents. By comparing these tables with one another the author's idea of the identity or of the equivalency of certain of the formations to one another is also seen.

Following the discussions and the tabular presentation of the subject of correlation of the North American Cretaceous formations the subject of the recognition of broad horizons among those formations is discussed. The term "horizon" is here used in an unusual and extended sense. It is applied to a formation or to a series of more or less distinctly recognizable formations within the vertical and geographical limits of which the original vertical and geographical range of fossil species was never everywhere or at any time wholly broken. Such horizons have both a physical and biological entity. That is, they are physically expressed in series of sedimentary deposits and paleontologically characterized by their contained faunal and floral remains.

The necessity for recognizing such horizons in the future paleontological investigation of the North American Cretaceous is pointed out. For example, it is shown that fossils which are found to characterize a formation in any given district ought to be studied as members of a fauna which originally had, or that may be assumed to have had, a much wider geographical distribution and, at least in part, a greater range in time than that which is represented by a single formation as developed within a limited district. That is, it is unsafe to assume that any fossil that may be discovered in any given assemblage of strata, in any given district within the geographical limits of any one of these horizons, will not be found in at least any adjoining district or in any immediately overlying or underlying assemblage of strata. It is shown that paleontological investigation with reference to the horizons thus indicated will have a broader philosophical basis than has hitherto prevailed as relates to both biology and structural geology.

A map is inserted at the end of the bulletin upon which are approximately shown all the areas which are known to be occupied by the formations which are herein discussed.

PREFACE.

The preparation of this work was undertaken at the request of the Director of the Survey as part of a general plan for the review of American formations. As the work progressed that which was proposed to be merely an essay has grown to be a memoir, embracing a large range of subjects cognate with the discussion of Cretaceous formations.

It has been my purpose to use all available information that might aid me in correlating and identifying all the formations which have by any author been regarded as of Cretaceous age, even though some of them have been by certain authors referred to other geological systems. For paleontological evidence of correlation and identity I have relied mainly upon invertebrate remains because I believe them to be far more valuable for that purpose than any other fossils. Due weight, however, has been given to the evidence which plant and vertebrate remains afford, and I have used that evidence whenever it has been found available.

Those authors who have published invertebrate fossils from the formations which are discussed in this memoir have generally been so explicit as to the localities and to the strata from which their material has been obtained that I have been able to use the evidence thus furnished without hesitation or serious doubt, and a similar remark may be made concerning many of the published works containing descriptions of fossil plants. I have, however, frequently been unable to obtain information from publications containing descriptions of vertebrate fossils that would enable me to identify with certainty the strata from which they were obtained as portions of the respective formations which working geologists have long known by means of their characteristic invertebrate fossil faunas. For this reason I have felt obliged to omit reference to or consideration of such works in correlating and identifying the formations which I have discussed, notwithstanding that such omission impairs the value which such a work as this ought to possess.

Many of the questions which I have found it necessary to discuss in this memoir are yet unsettled, and the views I have expressed concerning them are intended to be only tentative. Furthermore, so great is the activity among investigators of North American Cretaceous geology that a considerable number of important facts have been published for the first time while this manuscript was in course of preparation, and

it is therefore likely that some of the statements herein made will need modification soon after its publication.

In the labor of reviewing the literature of North American Cretaceous geology and of collating the long array of facts which are therein recorded, and a large part of which it has been found desirable to notice in this memoir, I have received important assistance from many geologists, especially from Dr. G. M. Dawson, assistant director of the Canadian Geological Survey.

WASHINGTON, *February* 23, 1891.

A REVIEW OF THE CRETACEOUS FORMATIONS OF NORTH AMERICA.

By Charles A. White.

INTRODUCTION.

SCOPE.

In planning and preparing this memoir my aim has been to produce a work for general reference which shall contain a concise summary of knowledge concerning the North American formations of Cretaceous age, together with bibliographical references to the principal published works upon the various branches of the subject, and such deductions as have been suggested to my mind by the various series of facts herein recorded. The special incentive to its preparation is the pressing need among geologists of such a grouping of the leading known facts concerning the different geological formations of North America as will aid them in determining their relation to one another and in establishing a rational scheme of their classification for special use upon this continent, and also serve as a basis for future discussions of their correlation with those of other parts of the world.

It is primarily intended that this memoir shall be devoted to a consideration of the Cretaceous formations alone; but it is found desirable to include, besides the undisputed Cretaceous, certain formations of doubtful age or of transitional character which occur respectively at the base and top of that system. The recognition of the North American Cretaceous system as such has been made by means of its general paleontological agreement with that of Europe; but in the case of the former it has not been found practicable so clearly to define its upper and lower limits as seems to have been done in Europe. This fact will plainly appear on following pages in connection with discussions of the formations referred to.

The question of close correlation of the various subdivisions of the Cretaceous system on this continent and in Europe will not now be discussed, because I believe that, beyond the recognition of the larger or more general subdivisions of the systems which have a place in the great geological scheme now in use, any attempt at ascertaining in

detail their correlation with formations upon other continents ought to follow, not precede, a comparatively complete investigation of all the formations of this continent, a work that will require yet many years of study by a large number of investigators. If this view is correct it is evident that we ought to expect to find features in the structural geology of this continent that would have greatly modified the scheme of classification in general use if geology had been first studied here. I have, therefore, felt no hesitancy in adopting such modifications as I have indicated when observed facts have seemed to warrant such a course.

In accordance with these views, and because of the conditions which I have found to exist among the North American Cretaceous formations, I have recognized only two general divisions of the system, an upper and a lower, instead of the upper, middle, and lower divisions which are recognized in some parts of Europe. These two divisions I have called Upper and Lower Cretaceous, respectively, but without any present intention of defining their relation to the Upper and Lower Cretaceous of Europe.[1] They are simply the upper and lower divisions of the North American Cretaceous, and the terms used to designate them are believed to be natural in their application, and less objectionable than Earlier and Later, because the latter terms have been variously applied by geologists.[2]

So far as practicable the nomenclature of the North American formations now in general use is employed in the text. The synonymy of this nomenclature, which has arisen from the independent studies of many geologists, is shown in a series of tables on following pages, which represent nineteen of the principal published sections of the North American Cretaceous. Each of these tables contains the names of the formations embraced in the section which it represents, and in each case the nomenclature used by the author of the section is given. The primary object of those tables, however, is to show, in accordance with my present judgment, the correlation of the formations which they represent.

A work so brief as this upon so comprehensive a subject as that which is treated in this memoir must be confined to its leading features. Its usefulness will therefore be limited to those who are seeking general rather than special information, although the bibliographical list on following pages will serve as a guide to the latter. It is based

[1] Up to a few years ago I was in doubt whether any North American Cretaceous formation ought to be regarded as of greater geological age than the Middle Cretaceous of Europe. It is, however, to be expected that the lower division now recognized will prove to be homotaxially equivalent to certain parts of the European Lower Cretaceous, as has long been claimed by Marcou and others.

[2] Meek and Hayden on some occasions applied the terms Earlier and Later Cretaceous to the upper and lower portions, respectively, of their Upper Missouri River section, which includes no formation older than the Dakota, and all the members of which section are included in the Upper Cretaceous as it is defined in this memoir. See, for example, Dana's Manual of Geology, 1874, pp. 456, 457. Dr. George M. Dawson has applied the term Earlier Cretaceous to certain of those formations which in this memoir are designated as Lower Cretaceous, all of which are older than any of the Earlier Cretaceous of Meek and Hayden. (See Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 38, 1889, p. 120. See also, a different use of the term Earlier Cretaceous, by Dr. Dawson in Proc. and Trans. Roy. Soc. Canada, vol. 1, sec. 4, p. 40.)

mainly upon the published results of the labors of many geologists, and it is therefore, as regards the facts herein stated, essentially a compilation; but the discussions and the manner of presenting the subject-matter of such a work will necessarily reflect the personal views of the writer. In the present case his views are based not only upon a review of the published works of other geologists but upon his own personal studies of the North American Cretaceous, which have extended over a large part of the continent.

TAXONOMY AND THE CRITERIA OF CORRELATION.

For the purpose of indicating the basis of the views which are expressed or implied in the discussions recorded on following pages it is desirable to present some remarks upon the general subject of the taxonomy and correlation of geological formations, and upon the character and value of the criteria which have been held to demonstrate the latter. These remarks, however, are intended to apply almost exclusively to formations which are plainly of clastic origin, and generally to those which are more or less fossiliferous.

Geological taxonomy relates to the establishment of a general scheme of classification of the formations, and correlation to the assignment of those formations which occur in different parts of the world to their respective places in that scheme. As between formations occurring in distant parts of the world correlation is necessarily of a general character only, but it may approach to actual identification within limited regions. The taxonomy of formations embraces not only their systematic arrangement in chronological order, but also their characterization and delimitation.

The scheme of classification referred to is necessarily a chronological one, or one that among working geologists indicates the order in which its respective subdivisions were produced. The basis of this scheme of classification is life, and beyond the actual observation of the superposition of formations upon one another and occasionally their subsequent lithological identification within limited districts, I do not know of any method of determining their chronological relations except that which biological studies afford.

Formations are characterizable physically and biologically. Their physical characterization includes their lithogical composition and their stratigraphy. Their biological characterization includes a consideration of their fossil contents both as regards specific identification and the evolutional development of the organic forms which they represent.

The delimitation of formations is also both physical and biological. Their physical delimitation is marked by a more or less complete lithological and stratigraphical difference between them and those which respectively underlie and overlie them; and their biological delimitation is by the upper and lower limit of the vertical range of their contained fossil faunas and floras.

It is usually the case, especially with true marine formations, that the vertical range of the aqueous fossil forms which characterize them coincides with their upper and lower physical limits, because the physical changes which delimited formations usually arrested the progress of aqueous life and extinguished the living forms whose remains are now found to characterize them. It is, however, sometimes the case, especially with nonmarine formations, that while the remains of water-breathing animals are found to range entirely through the vertical thickness of an unbroken series of strata, and no more, remains of other classes range through only a part of that thickness and are succeeded by others of the same class but of different species, and even of different types. Furthermore, some members of these latter classes may be found to range both above and beneath the extreme vertical limits of the aqueous forms. That is, the vertical range of fossil floras and of land air-breathing faunas may sometimes be independent of the well defined upper and lower physical limits of a given series of strata and of the vertical range of the invertebrate aqueous fauna which characterizes it. In such cases it is plain that the changes of physical or of other conditions which affected the floras and land faunas referred to did not materially affect the invertebrate aqueous fauna, and that those changes which introduced and destroyed the latter did not similarly affect the former.

In accordance with the foregoing statements it will be seen that for the delimitation and characterization of formations for taxonomic purposes, the data derived from their aqueous faunas in connection with their physical characteristics are regarded as more trustworthy than any other.

It is apparent to every student of geology that the various authors who have written upon or with reference to the subject of the correlation of geological formations differ much in their views as to the proper criteria to be used in such cases, or as to the relative value of those which different geological writers have recognized. It is also apparent that at least a part of the criteria which have been employed are illegitimate and not to be relied upon. Some of these have fallen into disuse, but there are others, some of which are of great value in certain cases, of which illegitimate use may be and often has been made.

It is, however, gratifying to observe that so few of the criteria which have been proposed, even of those adopted in the infancy of geological science, have proved to be wholly valueless; and this makes it all the more evident that the differences of opinion that appear in the publications of different geologists have been largely due to the frequent use of legitimate criteria in ex parte or illegitimate ways.

The criteria which properly may be used in arriving at conclusions as to the correlation of formations in different regions and in different *parts* of the world naturally fall into two categories, the one embracing *biological* and the other physical phenomena. Because the biological

phenomena to be referred to in this discussion all relate to fossil forms, the criteria based upon them may properly be classed under the head of paleontological, and because the physical phenomena relate to geological subjects, those coming under this head may be designated as geological criteria. Those designated as paleontological may be divided into evolutional and special, the first relating to the progressive secular development of living forms upon the earth during geological time and the second to the recognition of identical or of similar fossil forms in the rocks of different regions, or of different parts of the world.

The geological criteria may, for our present purpose, be classed as structural, stratigraphical, and lithological. The general character of the lithological criteria is readily understood. In relative practical value they are perhaps next to the paleontological, but they vary in value as well as in kind and in the conditions of their application. The two geological criteria first mentioned are based upon paleontological data, becoming properly geological only in their application. This fact naturally leads to the remark that all the criteria which are to be considered are so interrelated that any classification of them is difficult, and that the one which is here adopted is only a matter of present convenience.

Of all the criteria that may legitimately be used in determining the correlation of formations it can not successfully be denied that while those which are based upon physical phenomena are of great value, and often the only ones directly available, the paleontological are much the most important. Indeed without the latter criteria a universal chronological scheme of classification of formations could never be successfully attempted, and local classification would be deprived of its most essential standard. It is, however, plain to everyone who takes a comprehensive view of the subject that even these are not to be relied upon to the exclusion of others, nor with that entire confidence that has been expressed by some prominent writers, and implied by many others.

The term correlation as here used is meant to imply that a given formation or series of formations, as the case may be, in one district or part of the world, being similar in its characteristics and associations to that of another, is referable to the same relative place in a recognized scheme of classification. As employed in this memoir it takes the place of other terms that have been used by various writers, such as equivalency and contemporaneity, these terms being discarded except with reference to limited areas, as implying more than ascertainable facts will warrant.

It will therefore be understood that the term "correlation," in the more general use which is herein made of it, is intended to imply that the ascertainable relation to one another of the formations which are geographically widely separated is at best only homotaxial, and that even the cases of actual contemporaneity of widely separated formations

which must necessarily have existed can not be demonstrated for want of inherent or any other satisfactory proof. Within limited regions, however, correlation may be more definitely determined, and within certain districts of even considerable extent its determination may be essentially exact, in which cases terms implying equivalency and even contemporaneity may properly be used. That is, we may determine not only the homotaxial correlation of formations, but in some cases at least correlation of essential identity, or even of approximate contemporaneity, may satisfactorily be ascertained.[1] It is the criteria of homotaxial correlation, especially those classed as evolutional, that I shall first consider, both as regards their legitimate and illegitimate use.

If the rate of progress of the secular evolution of organic forms had been uniform for all classes of those forms in all parts of the world, through the whole course of geological time, and if sufficient evidence of the same were discovered or discoverable, it would be a simple matter to determine not only the relative but the actual geological age of any and all formations containing fossils of any kind. In such a case their correlation would be not only homotaxial, but actual equivalency and contemporaneity could be accurately determined.

The practice of a large proportion of paleontological writers is evidently based upon the affirmative side of the question here implied. They have assumed to decide, without reference to any related facts, the taxonomic position of strata in any and all parts of the world from which fossils submitted to them may have been obtained, using the European scheme of classification as if it were an infallible standard of universal applicability, even in its minor details. Paleontological literature abounds in cases of this kind and they embrace all branches of paleontology, vertebrate, invertebrate, and phytological. Even students of special divisions of these branches have assumed to decide such questions by the results of their own labors alone.

The reasons why paleontological data alone do not constitute an adequate basis for deciding all questions of correlation are various, among which are those implied in the following propositions, relating mainly to the subject of biological evolution.

(1) General biological evolution, while it has been progressive, has not progressed at a uniform rate throughout geological time and in all parts of the world. This is shown in many ways; for example, by the survival of a greater or less number of ancient types of life in association with more advanced and later types, by the presence of such advanced types among certain ancient faunas, and by the general differ-

[1] For a statement of views implying the dominant idea of contemporaneity of formations see Pictet, F. J., Traité de Paléontologie, vol. 1, 2e ed., Paris, 1853, p. 100. Also Schimper, W. Ph., Traité de Paléontologie Végétale, vol 1, 1869, p. 100, Paris.

For a presentation of the idea implied in the term "homotaxy," and for the first use of that term, see Huxley, T. H., Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc. Lond., vol. 18, 1864, pp. 41, 42. Literally, the term "homotaxy" implies that any given system is divisible into formations of similar number, character, and relative value in different parts of the world. As this is never actually the case, it is plain that even this term *must be used in a restricted sense.*

ences of grade of existing faunas and floras in different parts of the world, which may be figuratively regarded as respectively the summits of evolutional columns of unequal height, and which indicate that similar differences prevailed during geological time. It is also shown by the evidence we have that in all ages certain trunk lines of descent successively became extinct, while contemporaneous lines continued their existence until they in turn were extinguished.[1]

(2) The rate of general progress in the evolution of vertebrates, invertebrates, and plants has not been the same for each at all times and in all parts of the world. Thus, for example, a given grade of floral development, which was contemporaneous with a certain grade of invertebrate, or of vertebrate, life in one part of the world has been found to have been contemporaneous with a higher or a lower grade, as the case may be, in another part. Again, a given grade of invertebrate development has remained comparatively unchanged during several periods in which great differentiation and evolutional advancement took place in certain floras and in other faunas.

(3) The progress of evolution, such as it has been, was frequently modified by physical causes. For example, the great physical changes which have frequently taken place in the earth's crust and upon its surface, while they were never universally catastrophic as regards biological evolution as a whole, have often been largely destructive of life over great areas. Such physical changes of course extinguished many of the then existing forms of life, and to that extent arrested faunal and floral evolution in the disturbed areas, while in undisturbed areas forms similar to those that were extinguished continued to exist until adequate changes occurring there caused their extinction also.[2]

(4) Physical or other forces operating within a given region have at times caused the extinction or great modification of certain faunas and floras, while they have not affected other faunas to the extent of a change in specific characters. This proposition is, for example, supported by the conditions observed in the great series of strata which has received the name of the Laramie group. This formation contains remains of vertebrates which paleontologists generally regard as characteristic of the Cretaceous system, while at least the upper strata of the series contain a flora which paleobotanists have declared to be Tertiary; and yet a fresh-water branchiferous molluscan fauna ranges from base to top of the whole series without change in the specific character of its members. The survival of these branchiferous mollusca implies a continuity of congenial aqueous habitat from the earliest to the latest portion of the epoch which that series of strata represents and which

[1] For remarks on the extinction of trunk lines of descent see Ward, Lester F., Presidential Address, Biological Society, Washington, 1890.

[2] It is not to be denied that certain faunal types, especially of marine invertebrates, were almost world wide in their distribution, especially in the older geological periods, and that in such cases, respectively, their remains seem to occur within a very narrow vertical range. But this fact does not invalidate the foregoing propositions.

was not affected by the causes that changed the flora. The whole series of strata, including those which bear plants of Tertiary characteristics, also presents the appearance of having been produced by uninterrupted sedimentation.

(5) Because of the facts stated in proposition 2, the remains of land animals and plants possess no inherent trustworthy evidence of the actual contemporaneity they may have had in life with aqueous forms. Therefore contemporaneity can not be proved in these cases except by the commingling of remains of the different kinds in one and the same deposit. Again, contemporaneity of fresh-water and marine faunas can not be proved by any inherent characteristics of either, because the differentiation of fresh-water forms as compared with that of marine forms, especially in the case of the mollusca, has been so slight and so slowly accomplished during geological time. Furthermore, because fresh-water and marine deposits were always separately formed, physical proof of contemporaneity is never conclusive, and usually it is wholly wanting. For these and for the other reasons just mentioned it is always difficult, and often impossible, to determine the true taxonomic relation of fresh-water to marine deposits.

The foregoing propositions relate mainly to evolutional criteria, and are largely of world-wide applicability; but some of them relate to the class which I have designated as special. The former are based upon the recognizability of a number of world-wide stages of biological development, each of which is indicated by characteristic organic types. Their use is legitimate when they are considered in connection with other criteria and confined to a recognition of those general stages, and illegitimate when the recognition of definite upper and lower limits of those stages or of the identity of their smaller subdivisions is thus attempted. Such attempts are especially deplorable when no reference is made to other criteria.

The class of paleontological criteria which I have designated as special are of more restricted applicability than those designated as evolutional because they are based upon the recognition of identical or of similar fossil forms in different formations. Within limited areas these criteria are of direct applicability. For example, the recognition of specific identity of fossils in formations of marine or of lacustrine origin which occur in regions of moderate extent may properly be accepted as proof of approximate contemporaneity, or at least as sufficiently indicating a close correlation of the formations bearing such fossils. But specific identity of fossils discovered in formations of widely separated parts of the world, even if the assumed identity is real, does not prove contemporaneity of those formations, because geographical distribution of species implies lapse of time which, in many cases, may have amounted to long geological periods. Furthermore, there are many forms, especially among the Ostreidæ, Aviculidæ, etc., which have differed so little from period to period of geological

time as to present no observable change in their specific characters. Such apparent specific identity is plainly of no value in the correlation of separate formations, although they may have some general value in the case of groups of formations.

In studying the correlation of widely separated formations by means of those paleontological criteria which I have designated as special, their use is necessarily of a more general character than that which is made of the evolutional criteria, with which, indeed, they are in this way closely connected. For example, if a given series of formations in one part of the world is found to contain the remains of faunas and floras which are respectively homologous to those of a series in another part, and if such series are respectively overlain and underlain by others which correspond in a similar manner, it ought to be accepted, when fortified by other evidence, as proof of at least general correlation. That is, it is the general correspondence of the respective faunas and floras that is to be relied upon in these cases, rather than upon specific or other classificatory identification of fossils.

The upper and lower limits of a series of formations thus correlated with another series in a distant part of the world would, however, rarely coincide, and there would also necessarily be more or less faunal and floral differences between them, due to causes which have been referred to, and also to dissimilar physical conditions which prevailed in the different regions. These facts again plainly indicate the necessity of considering all available concurrent evidence before reaching a conclusion in such cases as have been mentioned.

It was intimated at the outset that all the criteria of correlation are closely interrelated. Turning now to those which are classed as geological we find that for this reason it is difficult to discuss them separately from one another, as we have already found it difficult to discuss those classed as paleontological separately from these.

This interrelationship of geological with paleontological criteria is especially close in the case of those which I have designated as structural, or those which relate to the taxonomic position in a great general scheme of classification of formations or groups of formations which are geographically widely separated. Indeed, these criteria are properly paleontological, but become structural in their application. So also the paleontological, criteria which are designated as special become stratigraphical in their application, and auxiliary to lithological criteria in the identification of formations and the recognition of the order of their superposition within limited regions.

Again, a given assemblage of strata may possess certain paleontological characteristics which suggest that they are referable to a separate period from that of those beneath it, while other paleontological data, together with stratigraphical conformity, tend to connect the whole together as a single series. If then we find the whole assemblage to be involved in displacements which occurred immediately upon the com-

pletion of its deposition this is an additional reason for regarding all those strata as constituting a single formation and representing a single epoch, notwithstanding the partial paleontological discrepancy referred to. Such a condition of things exists with relation to the great series of strata known as the Laramie formation.

Compared with the paleontological, the lithological criteria are, at best, of limited application and available only in either direct or indirect relation to the former. Their use in that relation is direct when they are applied to fossiliferous and indirect when they are applied to unfossiliferous formations. In the former cases they are simply accessory to associated paleontological criteria, but in the latter they constitute the principal evidence of correlation. Their application in the latter cases, however, can be made only with reference to some already known paleontological horizon.

It is hardly necessary in this connection to refer particularly to the former class of cases, but the extensive studies that have been made in the pre Cambrian stratified rocks furnish cases of the latter class that are worthy of special consideration.[1] It has been shown that by use of lithological criteria a very satisfactory classification of these unfossiliferous formations can be made and that their correlation with one another may be determined; but the fact that they are of pre-Cambrian age could be determined only by paleontological evidence. That is, their taxonomic position in the general scheme of classification could be determined only by means of paleontological criteria.

Paleontology, when it is available, affords beyond question the most trustworthy means for the identification of formations that occur within the regions that ordinarily constitute fields of geological study; but in the absence of fossils the geologist often reaches conclusions by methods of reasoning that it would be difficult even for himself to formulate, which conclusions are valuable in proportion to his experience and to the range of his acquirements and observation.

Among these less clearly definable methods is that which takes cognizance of homogeny; that is, of a method in connection with which certain inherent general characteristics which are presented by a series of strata in a given part of a region under investigation are accepted as evidence that it had a common origin with certain series in other parts of the same region presenting similar characteristics. This conclusion necessarily implies that originally there was physical continuity of similar strata between such localities whether near to or remote from one another, but these strata may have been either destroyed or obscured.

This method of identifying formations is of great value in the hands of an experienced and broad-minded investigator, but some of the most grievous mistakes that geologists have made have occurred in consequence of relying upon it to the exclusion of paleontology.

[1] See, for example, Irving, R. D.: Classification of the Early Cambrian and pre-Cambrian formations. *Seventh Ann.* Rep. U. S. Geol. Survey, pp. 371-399

Accepting the foregoing statements as to the character and relative value of the criteria that may properly be employed in determining the correlation of geological formations, especially those which are geographically widely separated, it is evident that no one criterion nor any one class of criteria is sufficient definitely to decide any question of that kind. It is also evident that the correlation of widely separated formations is at best more a matter of opinion than of demonstrable fact, and that a final judgment in such cases must be the result of a consensus of opinion of investigators in all branches of geological science.

THE LITERATURE OF THE NORTH AMERICAN CRETACEOUS.

While those who may consult this memoir are likely to find that much has been omitted which they desire to know, the accompanying briefly annotated bibliographical list will be found to contain the titles of the principal published writings upon the North American Cretaceous, and to serve either directly or indirectly as a guide to nearly all of the literature of the subject. The great mass of that literature has been passed in review by the writer in the preparation of this memoir; and those works whose titles the list contains may be regarded as having been especially consulted.

The necessarily limited scope of this work makes it impracticable to give an exhaustive bibliography of the whole subject, and therefore the question what to reject and what to include in this list has not been an easy one satisfactorily to decide. But the list has been abbreviated so far as could consistently be done, and titles of papers and smaller works are given only when they contain matter having an important bearing on the subject in hand.

Again, a number of important works have been omitted from the list because the substance of them, together with other matter, is included in later and more comprehensive publications by the same authors which are included in the list. Therefore the number of titles by any one author which the list contains does not necessarily bear any relation to the importance of his contribution to the literature of the subject.

AN ANNOTATED LIST OF PUBLICATIONS CONSULTED IN THE PREPARATION OF THIS MEMOIR.

BANNISTER, H. M. Report of a Geological Reconnaissance along the Union Pacific Railroad. <U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr. for 1872, Sixth Annual Report, pp. 519–541. 1873.

The author discusses marine Cretaceous and Laramie strata, and gives sections at Carbon, Black Buttes, along Bitter Creek, and at Almy Coal Mines, all in Wyoming.

BANNISTER, H. M. Note on the age of the Laramie group, or Rocky Mountain Lignitic formation. <Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., 1879, vol. 17, pp. 243–245.

The author states that Clarence King was in error in asserting that the Laramie is always unconformable with overlying formations.

BARCENA, MARIANO. Noticia científica de una parte del estado de Hidalgo. <Anales del Ministerio de Fomento de la Republica Mexicana, vol. 1, 1877, pp. 331–351.

BARCENA, MARIANO. Materiales para la formacion de una Obera de Paleontologia Mexicana. <Anales del Museo Nacional de México, tomo 1, pp. 85–87; 195–202; 283-286. 1877.

BARRETT, L. On some Cretaceous rocks in the southeastern portion of Jamaica. <Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc. London, vol. 16, 1860, pp. 324–326.

The Cretaceous rocks referred to in this article are apparently equivalent to those which were afterward described by Duncan & Wall in the district of Clarendon.

BECKER, GEORGE F. Notes on the stratigraphy of California. <Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 19. 1885.

The author discusses the relation to one another of the different Cretaceous formations of California, and gives his reasons for referring a large part of the metaphoric rocks of the coast ranges to the Cretaceous system.

BECKER, GEORGE F. [Administrative Report.] <Sixth Annual Report U. S. Geol. Survey, pp. 67–70. 1885.

The author discusses the age and time of uplift of the Coast Range formations and the equivalency of different Aucella-bearing beds.

BECKER, GEORGE F. Cretaceous metamorphic rocks of California. <Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 31, 1886, pp. 348–357.

The author repeats his opinion that a large part of the metamorphic rocks of the coast ranges of California are of Cretaceous age.

BECKER, GEORGE F. The Quicksilver Deposits of the Pacific Slope. <Monog. U. S. Geol. Surv., Vol. 13. 1889.

Dr. Becker discusses in this volume the question of the Cretaceous age of a large part of the metamorphic rocks of the coast ranges and of certain Aucella-bearing rocks.

BELL, ROBERT. Report on part of the basin of the Athabasca River, Northwest Territory. <Geol. Surv. Can. Report of progress for 1882-'83-'84. Montreal, 1885, 8°. pp. 786. Maps, plates, sections, and illustrations. 1885.

Cretaceous rocks are reported to exist at several localities, at one of which they are found resting unconformably upon the Devonian limestone.

BILLINGS, E. On the Mesozoic Fossils from British Columbia. <Geol. Nat. Hist. Survey Canada. Report of progress for 1872-'73. Appendix II, pp. 71–75. 1873.

This article contains notes on the Mesozoic fossils collected by Mr. James Richardson in British Columbia in 1872. The author also gives a table comparing the Mesozoic rocks of British Columbia with those of California, Nebraska, and England.

BLAKE, WILLIAM P. Report on the geology of the route near the thirty-second parallel. <Pacific Railroad Surveys, vol. 2. 4°. Washington, 1855. pp. 1–40 and maps. 1856.

The occurrence of fossils on the Llano Estacado, now known to characterize the Comanche beds of the Texas section, is announced.

BLAKE, W. P. Locality of secondary fossils in Oregon. <Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 44, 1867, pp. 118, 119.

The fossils referred to are from the valley of John Day River, are of the age of the Chico group of California, and were subsequently described by Meek.

BLAKE, WILLIAM P. Geographical Notes upon Russian America and the Stickeen River, being a report addressed to the Hon. W. H. Seward, Secretary of State. Washington, 1868.

The author suggests that the coal-bearing formations of Sitka and other adjacent islands are equivalent in age with those of Vancouver and Queen Charlotte Islands.

BLAKE, W. P.; C. H. HITCHCOCK and. (See Hitchcock, C. H., and W. P. Blake.)

BOOTH, JAMES C. Memoir of the Geological Survey of the State of Delaware; including the application of the geological observations to agriculture. 8°. pp. I–XI and 9-188. 1841.

The author divides the "Upper Secondary" of the State into the "Red Clay" and the "Greensand" formations, which seem to correspond to the Potomac formation and the New Jersey marls, respectively.

BRADLEY, F. H. Geological Chart of the United States East of the Rocky Mountains, and of Canada. Published by the author. 1875.

BROADHEAD, G. C. The chalk beds of Wakeeney, Kansas. <Kansas City Review, vol. 5, 1882, p. 616.

These beds furnish commercial "whiting" and belong to the Niobrara group of the Cretaceous section of Meek & Hayden.

CASTILLO, ANTONIO DEL. Bosquejo de una Carta Geologica de la Republica Mexicana, formado por disposicion del Secretario de Fomento, Gen'l Carlos Pacheco por una comision especial bajo la direccion del Prof. Antonio del Castillo, Director de la Escuela Nacional de Ingenieros. Grabado por Erhard Hermanos, 35 calle Deufest-Rochereau, Paris. 1889.

CLARK, WILLIAM B. Discovery of fossil-bearing Cretaceous strata in Anne Arundel and Prince George Counties, Md. <Johns Hopkins University Circulars, No. 69, pp. 20, 21. 1888.

Considerable areas formerly supposed to be occupied by Tertiary deposits are, by the author, shown to be occupied by the upper division of the Cretaceous.

CLARK, W. B. On the Tertiary deposits of the Cape Fear River region. <Bull. Geol. Soc. Amer., vol. 1, 1890, pp. 537–540.

The author mentions the commingling of Cretaceous and Tertiary fossils in one and the same stratum, and is inclined to regard it as mechanical, and not faunal.

CONRAD, TIMOTHY A. Fossil shells from the Tertiary deposits on the Columbia River near Astoria. <Am. Jour. Sci. 2d ser., vol 5, 1848, pp. 432, 433, including 14 wood-cuts.

Some of these species seem to be identical with some found in the Téjon group of the California State Survey. See Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 51.

CONRAD, TIMOTHY A. Observations on certain Eocene fossils, described as Cretaceous by Mr. W. M. Gabb in his report published in the "Paleontology of California." <Am. Jour. Conchology, vol. 1, 1865, pp. 362–365

The fossils discussed by the author and declared to be Tertiary are from both the Chico and Téjon groups of the California State Survey.

CONRAD, TIMOTHY A. Note on the Tertiary of North and South Carolina. <Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 43, 1867, p. 260.

Reference is made in this note to the occurrence of Cretaceous forms in Eocene strata of South Carolina; and Mr. Conrad states that the evidence is conclusive that the commingling took place by a breaking up in Eocene time of previously deposited Cretaceous strata.

CONRAD, TIMOTHY A. Reply to Mr. Gabb on the Cretaceous rocks of California. <Am. Jour. Sci. 2d ser., vol. 44, 1867, pp. 376,377.

The author again states his opinion that the fossils of the Téjon group indicate their Eocene age.

CONRAD, T. A. On some points connected with the Cretaceous and Tertiary of North Carolina. <Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 1, 1871, pp. 468, 469.

The author denies the correctness of the opinion then current that Miocene and Cretaceous fossils are faunally commingled in one and the same stratum on Tar River, N. C., but claims that the commingling is mechanical.

CONRAD, TIMOTHY A. Descriptions of new genera and species of fossil shells of North Carolina, in the State cabinet at Raleigh. <Kerr's Report on the Geol. Surv. of North Carolina, vol. 1, Appendix A, pp. 1-28, plates 1-4. 1875.

The author states that the Cretaceous fossils described in this paper represent the Ripley group.

COOK, GEORGE H. The annual report of Prof. Geo. H. Cook, State geologist, to his excellency, Joel Parker, president of the board of managers of the Geological Survey of New Jersey, 8° pamphlet, pp. 24 and map and section. 1865.

The extension of the Cretaceous into Pennsylvania and Delaware is shown on the map. It also shows the presence of Cretaceous deposits upon Staten Island and a part of the extreme western end of Long Island.

COOK, GEORGE H. Geology of New Jersey, pp. 900, imp. 8° and 7 plates. Also 13 maps in portfolio. 1868.

The Cretaceous formations of New Jersey are elaborately described.

COOK, GEORGE H. Geological map of New Jersey. 1882.

This map exhibits by colors the areal distribution of the geological formations of the State and contains vertical and horizontal sections of them.

COOK, GEORGE H. Geological Survey of New Jersey. Annual Report of the State Geologist for the year 1883, p. 188.

This report contains a section of the Cretaceous formations of New Jersey, with descriptions of the formations as found in artesian borings at Asbury Park and Ocean Grove.

COOK, GEORGE H. Geological Survey of New Jersey. Annual Report of the State Geologist for the year 1884.

This report contains a section of the Cretaceous formations of New Jersey, somewhat modified from those published in the earlier reports, the modification being due to information obtained by artesian borings.

COOK, GEORGE H. Sketch of the geology of the Cretaceous and Tertiary formations of New Jersey. <Brachiopoda and Lamellibranchiata of the Raritan clays and Greensand marls of New Jersey. Monographs of the U. S. Geological Survey, vol. 9, pp. I-XX. 1885.

In this article Prof. Cook gives sections of the Cretaceous formations of New Jersey, corrected by late information obtained from artesian borings at the seacoast.

COOK, GEORGE H. Geological Survey of New Jersey. Annual Report of the State Geologist for the year 1886, pp. 254. 1887.

This report is mostly devoted to economic geology; but with the description of "Greensand marls" sections of the New Jersey Cretaceous are given.

COPE, E. D. The fossil reptiles of New Jersey. <Am. Naturalist, 1868, vol. 1, pp. 23-30, and vol. 3, pp. 84-91.

These are popular articles, the second containing figures illustrating restoration of several species.

COPE, E. D. On some Cretaceous reptilia. <Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Philad., vol. 22, 1868, pp. 233-242.

COPE, E. D. On the fresh-water origin of certain sands and clays in New Jersey. <Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci., Philad., vol. 20, 1886, pp. 157, 158.

The author regards the Raritan clays as of the age of the Dakota group (No. 1) of the upper Missouri River section.

COPE, E. D. On some species of Pythonomorpha from the Cretaceous beds of Kansas and New Mexico. <Proc. Am. Philos. Soc., vol. 9, 1870, pp. 574–584.

COPE, E. D. On the fossil reptiles and fishes of the Cretaceous rocks of Kansas. <Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Survey Terr. for 1870, pp. 385–424. 1871.

COPE, E. D. Synopsis of the extinct batrachia, reptilia, and aves of North America. <Trans. Am. Philos. Soc., vol. 14, 1871, pp. 1–252, Pls. 1–14.

This work contains descriptions of many Cretaceous forms, and references to those previously published are given.

COPE, E. D. On the geology and paleontology of the Cretaceous strata of Kansas. <Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr. for 1871, pp. 318–348. 1872.

COPE, E. D. On the existence of dinosauria in the transition beds of Wyoming. <Proc. Am. Philos. Soc., vol. 12, 1872, pp. 481–483.

The discovery of Agathaumus in the Laramie strata at Black Buttes, Wyoming, is announced, and the strata there assigned to the Cretaceous. This appears to be the first published reference of Laramie strata to the Cretaceous.

COPE, E. D. [On the Cretaceous age of the lignites of the West.] <Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Philad., vol. 26, 1874, pp. 12, 13.

The author asserts the Cretaceous age of "the lignitic and other corresponding formations of the West;" these strata constitute what is now known as the Laramie group.

COPE, EDWARD D. Review of the vertebrata of the Cretaceous period found west of the Mississippi River. <U. S. Geol. and Geog. Survey of the Territories, Bull., vol. 1 (first series), No. 2, pp. 5–48. 1874.

The author concludes that in the Laramie period a Tertiary flora was contemporaneous with a Cretaceous fauna, and that in the Rocky Mountain region there was "no real physical break in the deposition of sediments between the well marked Cretaceous and Tertiary groups."

COPE, E. D. Report on the vertebrate paleontology of Colorado. The Cretaceous period. <Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr. for 1873, pp. 431–454. 1874.

In this report the author discusses the mutual relations of the Cretaceous and Tertiary formations of the West.

COPE, E. D. Synopsis of the vertebrata whose remains have been preserved in the formations of North Carolina. Appendix B, report of the Geol. Surv. N. Carolina, vol. 1, by W. C. Kerr, pp. 29–52 and Pls. 5–8.

Both Cretaceous and Tertiary vertebrates are described in this paper.

COPE, E. D. On the transition beds in the Saskatchewan district. <Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Phila., vol. 27, 1875, pp. 9, 10.

The author shows that certain vertebrate remains from beds now known as Laramie indicate relationship with both the Tertiary and Cretaceous.

COPE, E. D. The vertebrata of the Cretaceous formations of the West. <U. S. Geological Survey of the Territories, vol. 2. 4°. pp. 302, Pls. I–LVII. 1875.

The author, besides describing and illustrating a great number of vertebrates, gives a chapter "On the classification and distribution of the Cretaceous deposits." He includes all the strata now known as Laramie in the Cretaceous and concludes that during that period a Tertiary flora and a Cretaceous fauna were contemporaneous.

COPE, E. D. Report on the geology of the region of the Judith River, Montana, and on vertebrate fossils obtained on or near the Missouri River. <Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr. No. 3, pp. 565–598, Pls. 30–34. 1877.

The author refers the Judith River formation of Meek and Hayden, which is now included in the Laramie group, to the Cretaceous.

COPE, E. D. Fossils of the Mesozoic periods; with a sketch of the geology of the Mesozoic and Tertiary beds of northern New Mexico. <Geog. and Geol. Expl. and Surv. West of the 100th Meridian, vol. 4, part 2, chapter XI. 1877.

In the geological sketch the author recognizes all the members of the upper Missouri Cretaceous section of Meek and Hayden.

COPE, E. D. On the vertebrata of the Dakota epoch of Colorado. <Proc. Am. Philos. Soc., vol. 17, pp. 233–247 and 9 plates. 1877. (See note accompanying next entry.)

COPE, E. D. On the saurians recently discovered in the Dakota beds of Colorado. <Am. Nat., vol. 12, 1878, pp. 71–85.

These are the first remains of that kind the discovery of which in strata of the Dakota group was announced on the authority of Dr. Hayden. The author of this article now believes that the remains in question came from Jurassic and not Dakota strata.

COPE, E. D. The formations of the Belly River of Canada. <Am. Naturalist, vol. 21, 1887, pp. 171, 172.

The author states that at least a large part of the vertebates of the Belly River group, of which numerous species are know n, are identical with Laramie species.

COPE, EDWARD D. The Mesozoic and Cenozoic realms of the interior of North America. <Am. Naturalist, vol. 21, 1887, pp. 445–462.

The author gives his view of the paleontological characteristics of the Cretaceous and its divisions, but it is based upon vertebrate faunas only.

COPE, E. D. Synopsis of the vertebrate fauna of the Puerco series. <Trans. Am. Philos. Soc., vol. 16, 1888, pp. 298–361, Pls. 4 and 5.

On page 300 the author gives a list of his previous publications concerning the Puerco strata.

COTTEAU. Note sur quelques Echinides du terrain Crétacé du Mexique. <Bull. Soc. géol. de France, vol. 18, 3e série, pp. 292–299, pl. 1 and 2.

The author reports a part of the specimens as coming from the same, or nearly the same, locality in Sonora from which Rémond obtained his Comanche specimens. He thinks these indicate their Aptien age.

COZZENS, ISSACHAR, Jr. A geological history of Manhattan, or New York Island, and a suite of sections, tables, and columns. pp. 111; and 9 plates. 8°. New York, 1843.

The author says of the "Greensand or New Jersey marl" that "it is more than probable that this member of the Cretaceous group underlies Long Island." He refers to the discovery of *Exogyra costata* near Brooklyn, which seems to be the case mentioned by Merrill, Redfield and others.

CREDNER, HERMANN. Die Kreide von New Jersey. <Zeitschrift der deutschen geol. Gesell., Jahr. 1870, pp. 191–251, and map.

Forty-two species from the New Jersey Cretaceous are specifically identified with those of Senonian strata of north Germany.

CROSS, WHITMAN. The Denver formation. <Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 37, 1889, pp. 261–282.

The characteristics and relations of the formation are described.

DANA, JAMES D. [Review of] Geological map of the United States, compiled for the Ninth [U. S.] Census by C. H. Hitchcock and W. P. Blake. <Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 6, 1873, pp. 64–66.

The reviewer claims that no known facts warrant the mapping of the north side of Long Island as being occupied by Cretaceous deposits.

DANA, JAMES D. Manual of Geology; Treating of the Principles of the Science with Especial Reference to American Geological History, pp. XIV and 798. 8°, and map. New York, 1880. Third edition.

DAVIS, W. M. Relation of the coal of Montana to the older rocks. <Tenth Census U. S., vol. 15, Report on the Mining Industries of the United States, pp. 697–737. 1886.

The author shows that coal and lignite beds are frequent in all or nearly all the Cretaceous formations from the Dakota to the Laramie, inclusive.

DAWSON, G. M. Note on the occurrence of Foraminifera, Coccoliths, etc., in the Cretaceous rocks of Manitoba. <Canadian Naturalist, new series, vol. 8,1874, pp. 252–257.

These Protozoans are from the chalky layers of the equivalent of the Niobrara group of the Upper Missouri section.

DAWSON, G. M. Report on the Tertiary lignite formation in the vicinity of the forty-ninth parallel. <British North American Boundary Commission, Geological Report of Progress for the year 1873. 8°. Montreal, 1874. pp. 31, Pls. I and II.

The formation reported on is now known as the Laramie.

DAWSON, G. M. Report on the Geology and Resources of the Region in the Vicinity of the Forty-ninth Parallel, from the Lake of the Woods to the Rocky Mountains; with lists of plants and animals collected, and notes on the fossils. pp. 379, with 18 plates and 3 maps. Montreal, 1875.

The author recognizes in this work all the members of the Upper Missouri Cretaceous section of Meek and Hayden, from No. 1 to No. 5, inclusive. The immediately overlying formation now known as the Laramie is called the Western Lignite formation, and he concludes that the general bearing of all the evidence is in favor of its Eocene Tertiary age.

DAWSON, GEORGE M. The lignitic formations of the West. <Canadian Nat., vol. 7, 1875, new series, pp. 241–252.

The author advances the opinion that production of lignites began before the marine Cretaceous waters had left the Rocky Mountain area and continued through the period now called Laramie. The latter is regarded as "lowest Tertiary."

DAWSON, GEORGE M. Report on explorations in British Columbia. <Geol. Survey of Canada, Report of Progress for 1875–1876, pp. 233–265. 1877.

Refers the Cretaceous rocks near Tatlayoco Lake to the horizon of the Shasta group of California. Beds of the "Lignite group" come above these, which are "undoubtedly Tertiary." It includes the Quesnel insect beds.

DAWSON, G. M. General note on the mines and minerals of economic value of British Columbia. <Geol. Surv. Canada, Report of Progress for 1876–'77, pp. 103–149. 1878.

Fuel-bearing rocks of British Columbia are: "1. Cretaceous, or Cretaco-Jurassic rocks of Queen Charlotte Islands, etc., holding anthracite; 2. Cretaceous rocks of Vancouver Islands, etc., with bituminous coal; 3. Tertiary rocks with bituminous coal and lignite."

DAWSON, G. M. Report on explorations in British Columbia, chiefly in the basins of the Blackwater, Salmon, and Nechacco Rivers, and on François Lake. <Geol. Surv. Canada, Report of Progress for 1876–'77, pp. 17–94. 1878.

The author mentions the discovery of fossiliferous strata on the Iltasyouco River, the place of which is immediately beneath the Jackass Mountain group, which strata "bridge to some extent the gap ordinarily found between the Cretaceous and Jurassic."

Extensive outflows of volcanic rocks in the western part of both North and South America during Cretaceous time referred to in discussing the subject of this report.

DAWSON, G. M. Preliminary report on the physical and geological features of the southern portion of the interior of British Columbia. <Geol. Survey, Canada, Report of Progress for 1877–'78, pp. 1–173B. 1879.

The occurrence of Lower Cretaceous rocks on the Skagit River is mentioned and a table is given which shows the author's views as to the relation of the formations of British Columbia to those of other parts of North America.

DAWSON, GEORGE M. Sketch of the geology of British Columbia. <Report 50th meeting British Ass'n Adv. Sci., pp. 588, 589. Also, Canadian Naturalist, vol. 9, n. s., 1880, pp. 445–447.

The age of the Cretaceous rocks of British Columbia is stated to be from that of the Upper and Lower Chalk to the Upper Neocomian. "Beds equivalent to the Chico group yield the bituminous coals of Nanaimo, while anthracite occurs in the somewhat older beds of the Queen Charlotte Islands." The Cretaceous rocks are of great thickness and include extensive contemporaneous volcanic beds.

DAWSON, GEORGE. M. Report on the Queen Charlotte Islands. <Geol. Survey of Canada, Report of Progress for 1878–'79, pp. 1–101; 3 maps. 1880.

Five formations of Cretaceous rocks are recognized, instead of three, as was done by Richardson, all of which are apparently conformable, and one of which bears anthracite coal. This series is unconformably overlain by Tertiary deposits, and it rests unconformably upon Triassic rocks. The fossils are reported on by Mr. Whiteaves (entry on page —.)

DAWSON, G. M. Note on the geology of the Peace River region. <Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 21, 1881, pp. 391–394.

The Dunvegan sandstone, which has since been regarded as equivalent to the Belly River group, is also regarded by the author as equivalent to the Nioborara group of Meek and Hayden's Upper Missouri River section. It is spoken of as "a widely extended series of beds of Cretaceous age, persistently holding fresh-water and estuarine types of mollusks and land plants," all of which fossils "closely resemble those of the Laramie group."

DAWSON, GEORGE M. On the Lignite Tertiary formation from the Souris River to the one hundred and eighth meridian. <Geol. Survey of Canada, Report of Progress for 1879–1880, pp. 12A–49A.

A considerable number of sections are given in this article which show the prevalence of strata of the "lignite Tertiary," which are now known as belonging to the Laramie group.

DAWSON, GEORGE M. Report on an exploration from Port Simpson, on the Pacific coast, to Edmonton, on the Saskatchewan, embracing a portion of the northern part of British Columbia and the Peace River country. <Geol. Survey of Canada, Report of Progress for 1879–1880, pp. 1B–157B. 1881.

This report contains descriptions of the Cretaceous rocks, including the Laramie, of the region traversed; and also a "comparative table of Cretaceous rocks," in which the formations of different parts of British America are compared with one another and with European formations.

DAWSON, G. M. Geology of British Columbia. <Geol. Magazine, December 2, vol. 8, 1881, pp. 156–162 and 214–227.

This article contains general descriptions of the Cretaceous formations of British Columbia, and also a small geological map which includes Vancouver Island and extends north to the parallel of 55°.

DAWSON, G. M. Descriptive note on a general section from the Laurentian axis to the Rocky Mountains. <Trans. Roy. Soc. Canada, vol. 1, 1883, sec. 4, pp. 39–44.

The article contains a plate of sections. The Cretaceous formations from the Benton to the Laramie, inclusive, are discussed. The latter name is now used instead of the name "Lignite Tertiary," as formerly.

DAWSON, GEORGE M. Notes on the more important coal seams of Bow and Belly River districts. <Canadian Nat., vol 10, 1883, p. 423.

The author shows that the coal beds of the districts named occupy various horizons, ranging from the base of the Pierre to the Laramie formation, inclusive.

DAWSON, G. M. Note on the geology of the Peace River region. <Canadian Naturalist, vol. 10, new series, 1883, pp. 20–22.

This article contains statements of views and facts similar to those expressed in an article under the same title in the American Journal of Science. (See second entry on this page.)

DAWSON, GEORGE M. Preliminary report on the geology of the Bow and Belly River region, Northwest Territory, with special reference to the coal deposits. <Geol. Survey of Canada, Report of Progress for 1880, '81, '82, pp. 1B–23B, map, 2 plates. 1883.

A table of the formations of the region is given, showing the position of the Belly River beds beneath the Fox Hills and Pierre strata. The existence of numerous beds of coal is shown in the marine Cretaceous formations, as well as in the Laramie and Belly River formations.

DAWSON, G. M. Report on the region in the vicinity of the Bow and Belly Rivers, Northwest Territory. <Geol. Surv. Canada, Report of Progress for 1882, '83, '84, pp. 1–169C, and maps. 1884.

Three divisions of the Laramie are recognized, having an aggregate thickness of 5,750 feet. The equivalents of the Fort Pierre and Fox Hills groups together are called "Pierre," and are shown to underlie the Laramie and to overlie the Belly River series, although the

DAWSON, G. M.—Continued.

latter was formerly regarded as Laramie. The Belly River series is of brackish-water origin beneath and of fresh-water origin above. The total thickness is 910 feet. It rests on the "lower dark shales," which seem to be equivalent to the Fort Benton group. Coals and lignites are abundant from the base of the Belly River series to the top of the Laramie, inclusive.

DAWSON, GEORGE M. Chapter on Canada in Macfarlane's Geol. Railway Guide (published separately). 1885.

Contains tables of the Cretaceous formations of Manitoba and the Northwest Territory, and of British Columbia.

DAWSON, G. M. Preliminary report on the physical and geological features of that portion of the Rocky Mountains between latitudes 49° and 51° 30′. <Geol. Surv. Canada, Ann. Rep. for 1885. Montreal 1886. pp. 1–169B, and maps. 1886.

Sir William Dawson's name, Kootanie, is used for a formation found in the eastern folds of the Rocky Mountain range, beneath the equivalent of the Dakota formation, and resting upon Carboniferous and Devonian rocks, and is referred to the lowest Cretaceous. Coal is found in its upper portion. An intercalation of volcanic rocks with the Dakota strata is believed to exist in this district. The rocks in question form a prominent feature. One of the Kootanie species of plants has been found 580 miles northwest from the northern limits of the Kootanie district. A table of the Cretaceous rocks of the district is given in this report.

DAWSON, G. M. On the Canadian Rocky Mountains, with especial reference to that part of the range between the forty-ninth parallel and the headwaters of the Red Deer River. <Canadian Record of Science, vol. 2, 1887, pp. 285–300.

The flora of the Kootanie group is spoken of as of "Cretaceous or Cretaceo-Jurassic" age.

DAWSON, G. M. Notes to accompany a geological map of the northern portion of the Dominion of Canada east of the Rocky Mountains. <Ann. Rep. Geol. Surv. Canada for 1886, pp. 1–62 R, and map. 1887.

Dr. Dawson adds to these notes an important list of the publications he has consulted in the preparation of his map.

DAWSON, G. M. On the earlier Cretaceous rocks of the northwestern portion of the Dominion of Canada. <Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 38, 1889, pp. 120–127.

The author shows the existence of Lower Cretaceous rocks at numerous places from the northern boundary of the United States to within the Arctic Circle. A table is also given in which the author expresses his views as to the correlation of the Cretaceous formations of British Columbia with those of other portions of the continent.

DAWSON, G. M. Report on the exploration in the Yukon district, Northwest Territory, and adjacent northern portion of British Columbia. <Geol. Surv. Canada, Ann. Report of Progress for 1887–'88, pp. 5–178 B, and map. 1889.

Dr. Dawson reports the discovery of Lower Cretaceous deposits at numerous places from Northern British Columbia to within the Arctic Circle. He also found strata in the valley of Lewes River bearing Laramie species of plants.

DAWSON, G. M. On the later physiographical geology of the Rocky Mountain region in Canada, with reference to changes in elevation and the history of the Glacial period. <Trans. Roy. Soc., Canada, 1890, vol. 8, sec. 4, pp. 3–74, and 3 plates.

This memoir is devoted in part to the Cretaceous deposits of the region discussed, and contains sketch maps illustrating the author's views as to the respective areas originally occupied by the Lower Cretaceous, Upper Cretaceous, and Laramie.

DAWSON, G. M. British Columbia. List of formations. <American Railway Guide (Macfarlane), 2d edition, pp. 79–81. 1890.

The author, in addition to a list of the formations of British Columbia, gives some valuable notes on the geology of the province, and correlates the formations which occur there with those of the interior region of British America.

DAWSON, G. M. Manitoba and Northwest Territory. List of geological formations. <American Railway Guide (Macfarlane), 2d edition, pp. 74–78. 1890.

Besides a list of the formations the author gives numerous geological notes.

DAWSON, G. M.; A. R. C. SELWYN and. (See Selwyn, A. R. C., and G. M. Dawson.)

DAWSON, SIR J. W. On the Cretaceous and Tertiary floras of British Columbia and the Northwest Territory. Royal Soc. Canada, Proc. and Trans., vol. 1, Trans. Section 4, pp. 15–34, plates 1–8. 1883.

The author describes and figures plants from the "Middle and Upper Cretaceous," and from the "Laramie and Tertiary;" and discusses the relation of the Laramie to the Cretaceous. A table of correlation of Cretaceous formation in various parts of western North America and in England is given on page 19.

DAWSON, SIR J. W. On some relations of geological work in Canada and the Old World. <Trans. Roy. Soc. Canada, 1884, vol. 2, sec. 4, pp. 1–5.

The "insensible gradation upward of the Cretaceous into the Tertiary" is mentioned on page 3, where it is also stated that "our lowest Cretaceous holds a strictly Mesozoic flora, so far as known."

DAWSON, SIR J. W. On the Mesozoic floras of the Rocky Mountain region of Canada. <Roy. Soc. Canada, Proc. and Trans., 1885, vol. 3, sec. 4, pp. 1–22, Pls. I–IV.

The name Kootanie is proposed for a lower Cretaceous formation, and forty-seven species of plants are described from it. The author regards it as corresponding to the Kome of Greenland, and with the oldest European and Asiatic Cretaceous floras. He thinks it is not newer than the Shasta group of California nor than the lower sandstones of Queen Charlotte Islands. Twelve species of plants are also described from the Belly River and Laramie formations.

DAWSON, SIR J. W. Cretaceous floras of the Northwest. <Canadian Record of Science, vol. 2, 1886, pp. 1–9.

The author gives a table of floras from the Kootanie formation to the Upper Laramie inclusive. The Kootanie is regarded "as a representative of the Urgonian or Neocomian, or, at the very least, as not newer than the Shasta group of the United States geologists and the lower sandstones and shales of the Queen Charlotte Islands."

DAWSON, SIR J. W. On the fossil plants of the Laramie formation of Canada. <Roy. Soc. Canada Trans., vol. 4, sec. 4, 1887, pp. 19–34, Pls. 1, 2.

The author discusses the extent and stratigraphical relations of the Laramie formation, and enumerates many species of plants, most of which were previously published. He refers to the fact that a part of the species of plants from the Belly River group are identical with Lower Laramie species.

DAWSON, SIR J. W. Notes on fossil woods from the western territories of Canada. <Canadian Record of Science, vol. 2, 1887, pp. 499–502.

The author expresses the view that "the break which in western Europe separates the flora of the Cretaceous from that of the Eocene does not exist in America."

DAWSON, SIR J. W. Cretaceous floras of the northwest territories of Canada. <Am. Naturalist, vol. 2, Nov., 1888, pp. 953–959.

Although numerous species of plants as now identified are common to the Belly River and Laramie formations, the author thinks that in these cases certain specific differences really existed.

DAWSON, SIR J. W. On fossil plants collected by Mr. R. A. McConnell on Mackenzie River, and by Mr. T. C. Weston on Bow River. <Trans. Roy. Soc. Canada, vol. 7, sec. 4, 1889, pp. 69–74.

The author refers to his former similar work (see next preceding entry), gives notes on the geographical distribution of the species collected, and points out the strong resemblance of the flora from Mackenzie River to that of the Laramie. He also expresses the opinion that a line separating the Cretaceous from the Tertiary will pass between the Upper and Lower Laramie.

DE KAY, J. E. On the remains of extinct reptiles of the genera Mososaurus and Geosaurus found in the secondary formation of New Jersey; and on the occurrence of the substance recently named coprolite, by Dr. Buckland, in the same locality. 1830. <Annals N. Y. Lyceum Nat. Hist., vol. 3, pp. 134–141, and Pl. 3.

DILLER, J. S. Coal in the Chico group of California. <Science, vol. 5, 1885, p. 43.

This announcement shows that the Chico, like its equivalent, the Nanaimo group, is a coal-bearing formation.

DILLER, J. S. Notes on the geology of northern California. <Bulletin U. S. Geol. Survey No. 33, 1886, p. 23.

The author discusses the condition and distribution of the Cretaceous rocks in northern California.

DILLER, J. S. Note on the Cretaceous rocks of northern California. <Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 40, 1890, pp. 476–478.

This article contains a section in which is given a thickness of 3,897 feet for the Upper Cretaceous and 26,081 feet for the Lower, making a total of 29,978 feet.

DUCATEL, J. T. Annual report of the geologist of Maryland, pp. 30, 8°, and 2 maps. Annapolis, 1837.

The presence of Cretaceous deposits along Sassafras River is noticed.

DUNCAN, P. MARTIN, and G. P. WALL. A notice of the geology of Jamaica, especially with reference to the district of Clarendon, with descriptions of the Cretaceous, Eocene, and Miocene corals of the islands. <Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc. Lond., vol. 21, 1884, pp. 1–15.

A small area in the parish of Upper Clarendon is shown to be occupied by Cretaceous rocks. The existence of Cretaceous rocks upon the islands of St. Thomas, St. Domingo, and Trinidad is mentioned or suggested.

DUTTON, C. E. Report on the geology of the high plateaus of Utah. <U. S. Geog. and Geol. Survey of the Rocky Mountain Region, pp. 307, 4°, with atlas. 1880.

The Laramie group is designated as a Cretaceous formation, and its intimate stratigraphical relation to the marine Cretaceous formations is noticed. The full equivalent of the upper Missouri River section of Meek and Hayden exists in that district, but only the Dakota group of that section is separately recognized.

EICHWALD, EDWARD VON. Die Miocän und Kreideformation von Alaska und den Aleutischen Inseln. <Geognost. Palaeont. Bemerkungen ü. d. Halbinsel Mangischlak u. d. Aleutischen Inseln, pp. 88–200; plates. St. Petersburg, 1871.

The author describes many Mesozoic fossils, among which are varieties of Aucella concentrica, which he refers to the Neocomian.

ELDRIDGE, GEORGE H. Montana coal fields. <Reports of the Tenth Census U. S., vol. 15, pp. 739–757; 19 plates of sections and 6 maps. 1886.

The author states that coal and lignite beds are numerous in the Cretaceous formations of Montana, including the Laramie formation.

EMMONS, S. F., ARNOLD HAGUE and. (See Hague, Arnold, and S. F. Emmons.)

ENDLICH, F. M. Post-Cretaceous beds of Trinidad region. <Ninth Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr., pp. 192–215. 1877.

The author states that the formation now known as the Laramie is, in the Trinidad district, sometimes found resting directly upon strata as low in the series as those of the Colorado formation, implying a time hiatus and probable unconformity there.

ENDLICH, F. M. Report on the geology of the White River district. <U. S. Geol. and Geogr. Survey of the Territories, Tenth Annual Report for 1876, embracing Colorado and parts of adjacent Territories, pp. 61–131. 1878.

Descriptions and sections of the Cretaceous formations from the Dakota to the Laramie, inclusive, are given in this report.

ENDLICH, F. M. Report on the geology of the Sweetwater district. <U. S. Geol. and Geogr. Survey of the Territories, Eleventh Annual Report for 1877, pp. 5–158. 1879.

This report contains illustrations and descriptions of the Cretaceous formations from the Dakota Group to the Laramie, inclusive.

EVANS, JOHN, and B. F. SHUMARD. Descriptions of new fossil species from the Cretaceous formation of Sage Creek, Nebraska, collected by the North Pacific Railroad Expedition, under Gov. J. J. Stevens. <Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Philad., vol. 7, 1854, pp. 163, 164.

FELIX, J. and H. LENK. Beiträge zur Geologie und Palaeontologie der Republic Mexico. <Palaeontographica, vol. 37, 1891, pp. 117-194, plates 22-30.

This work embraces a discussion of the geology of Cretaceous deposits in the state of Puebla, and descriptions of Cretaceous fossils from the states of Puebla and Oaxaca.

FINCH, JOHN. Geological essay on the Tertiary formations of America. <Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 7, 1824, pp. 31–43.

On page 32 this author refers certain deposits in the Atlantic and Gulf coast region to the "newer Secondary," which seems to be the earliest recognition of any North American deposits as representing the Cretaceous of the Old World.

FISCHER, P. Sur quelques Fossiles de l'Alaska. <Voyages a la Côte nord-ouest de l'Amerique, par Alph. L. Pinart, pp. 33–36, pl. A. Paris, 1875.

FONTAINE, WILLIAM MORRIS. The Potomac, or younger Mesozoic flora. Monog. U. S. Geol. Survey, vol. 15, 1889. Text, pp. 377. Plates (bound separately), 180. 1889.

This work is primarily devoted to descriptions and figures of the plants of the Potomac formation, but the first 62 pages embrace important discussions concerning its structural geology.

GABB, WILLIAM M. Notes on some fossils from the gold-bearing slates of Mariposa, with descriptions of some new species. <Proc. Cal. Acad. Nat. Sci., vol. 3, 1864, pp. 172, 173.

Among the fossils described is the *Lima erringtonii* of Gabb. They were referred by him to the Jurassic, but those strata are in this memoir regarded as of Cretaceous age.

GABB, WILLIAM M. Geological Survey of California. Paleontology, vol. 1, section IV, 1864. Description of the Cretaceous fossils. Pp. 55–236, and plates 9–32.

The author treats all the fossils of the Téjon group, as well as those of the Chico group, as of Cretaceous age.

GABB, WILLIAM M. Reply to Conrad's criticism on Gabb's Report on the Paleontology of California. <Am. Jour. Conch., vol. 2, 1866, pp. 87–92.

Mr. Gabb contends for the Cretaceous age of the fossils of the Téjon group, which Mr. Conrad had asserted to be of Tertiary age.

GABB, WILLIAM M. On the subdivisions of the Cretaceous rocks of California. <Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 44, 1867, pp. 226–229.

The paleontological characteristics of the strata now known as the Chico-Tejon series are discussed and their Cretaceous age confidently asserted. The substance of this article also appears in the California Academy of Science Proceedings, volume 3, pp. 301–306.

GABB, WILLIAM M. Geological Survey of California. Palaeontology, vol. 2, section 2, 1869, Cretaceous Fossils, pp. 125–276, and plates 19–36.

The fossils described are from the Chico-Téjon series and the Shasta group. Included in this work on the California Cretaceous fossils the author gives "Notes on some Mexican Cretaceous Fossils, with descriptions of new species." The Mexican fossils are from "near Arivechi, Sonora." See first entry on p. 51.

GABB, WILLIAM M. Notice of a collection of Cretaceous fossils from Chihuahua, Mexico. <Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Phila., 3d ser., vol. 2, 1872, pp. 263–265, 2 plates.

These fossils seem to indicate the presence, "at a place called Nugal," of equivalents of both the Comanche and overlying formations of the Texas section. They probably were found at the same place as those obtained by James P. Kimball. See seventh entry on page 41.

GABB, WILLIAM M. On the topography and geology of Santo Domingo. <Trans. Am. Philos. Soc., Phila. vol. 15, 1873, pp. 49–259, and two maps.

Rocks supposed to be of Cretaceous age are mentioned in this work.

GALEOTTI, H. Notice sur le Calcaire Crétacé des environs de Jalapa au Mexique. <Bull. Soc. géol. de France, vol. 10, 1839, pp. 32–39.

GALEOTTI, H. *See* NYST, H., and.

GARDNER, J. STARKIE. On the age of the Laramie formation as indicated by its vegetable remains. <Am. Nat, vol. 14, 1880, pp. 565–569.

Mr. Gardner says of the flora of the "Great Lignite," that is, the Laramie group, "I entertain no doubt whatever that it is of the age of our *Middle Eocene*, and perhaps partly of our Lower Eocene."

GARDNER, J. STARKIE. On the relative ages of the American and English Cretaceous and Eocene series. <Report of the 54th meeting of the British Assoc. Adv. Sci., London. 1885.

The author advances the opinion that at the time the Dakota group was deposited an Eocene flora and a Cretaceous fauna coexisted. He is inclined to accept the evidence of *the plants as of* greater value than any other, and to regard the Dakota as of Eocene age.

GEIKIE, ARCHIBALD. Text book of Geology, pp. 971, 8°. New York. 1882.

GIBBES, ROBERT W. Memoir on Mososaurus and three allied new genera. <Smithsonian Contributions to Knowledge, vol. 2, article 5, pp. 14, plates 1–3. 1851.

The fossils discussed in this memoir are from the Upper Cretaceous of both the Atlantic and Gulf border regions.

GILBERT, G. K., A. R. MARVINE, E. E. HOWELL, JULES MARCOU, and O. LOEW. Geological atlas projected to illustrate geographical explorations and surveys west of the 100th meridian of longitude. 1873.

The reports upon which this atlas is based are contained in the annual and final reports of the surveys above indicated.

GREWINGK, C. Die an der Westküste Nordamerikas und auf den Aleutischen Inseln bisher gefundenen fossilen Thier- und Pflanzen-Reste. <Verhand. der Russisch. kaiserlichen mineral. Gesells., 1848, 1849. St. Petersburg. 1850.

HAGUE, ARNOLD, and S. F. EMMONS. Descriptive Geology. U. S. Geol. Expl. Fortieth Parallel, vol. 2, pp. 890, and 26 plates. 1877.

This volume contains descriptions of the Cretaceous formations of the region bordering the fortieth parallel from the Rocky Mountains to California. The classification of those formations is the same as that used by King in vol. 1.

HALL, CHARLES E. The geology of Philadelphia County and the southern part of Montgomery and Bucks. <Second Geol. Surv. Penn., vol. C6, pp. xx and 145, 1881.

A small exposure of clays in Bucks County, Pa, now referred to the Potomac formation, is doubtfully referred to the Wealden.

HALL, JAMES. Geology and paleontology of the boundary. <United States and Mexican Boundary Survey, vol. 1, 1857, pp. 101–140, and geological map.

The author discusses the then known Cretaceous rocks of North America and indicates the correlation of some of those of the great interior area with those of the Atlantic and Gulf border regions. His map shows the distribution of the then known Cretaceous rocks of the continent, those of Vancouver Island only being at that time known to exist upon the Pacific coast. He notes the presence of Cretaceous deposits in northwestern Iowa and at various localities in Minnesota, and shows that they once extended as far north as the sources of the Mississippi.

HALL, JAMES. Observations upon the Cretaceous strata of the United States with reference to the relative position of the fossils collected by the [Mexican] Boundary Commission. <Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 24, 1857, pp. 72–86.

The Cretaceous deposits of the Atlantic coast, Gulf coast, Texas, and interior regions are discussed and their correlation indicated.

HALL, JAMES. Notes upon the geology of some portions of Minnesota, from St. Paul to the western part of the State. <Trans. Am. Philos. Soc., n. s., vol. 13, 1867, pp. 329–339.

The author announces the existence of Cretaceous deposits at several localities in the valley of Minnesota River and in the adjacent districts.

HALL, JAMES, and F. B. MEEK. Descriptions of new species of fossils from the Cretaceous formations in Nebraska, with observations on *Baculites ovatus* and *B. compressus*, and the progressive development of the septa in *Baculites ammonites* and *Scaphites*. <Mem. Am. Acad. Arts and Sci., vol. 5, new ser., 1856, pp. 379–411, 8 plates.

A section of the Cretaceous formations along the Missouri River is given, but the article is mainly paleontological. The region called "Nebraska" is now a part of both South and North Dakota.

HARLAN, RICHARD. On an extinct species of crocodile not before described. <Jour. Acad Nat. Sci., Philad, vol. 4, 1824, pp. 15–24, plate 1.

The remains described are from the Greensand of New Jersey.

HARLAN, RICHARD. Notice of the discovery of the remains of the ichthyosaurus in Missouri, N. A. <Trans. Am. Philos. Soc. Philad., vol. 4, 1834, pp. 405–409, pl. XXX.

Prof. Cope refers this form to Mosasaurus, and thinks it came from No. 4 of the Cretaceous section of Meek and Hayden.

HARPER, L. Preliminary report on the geology and agriculture of the State of Mississippi, pp. 1–350, maps. 8°. Jackson, 1857.

The author divides the Cretaceous of Mississippi into two groups, the upper called the "calcareous," and the lower the "glauconitic" group. The Eutaw group of Hilgard he believes is either "Permian or Triassic."

HAY, O. P. The northern limit of the Mesozoic rocks in Arkansas. <Ann. Rep. Geol. Survey of Arkansas for 1888, vol. 2, 1888, pp. 261–290.

The limit of the formations referred to by the author is shown on the map accompanying the above-named report, and is described in the text.

HAY, ROBERT. A geological reconnaissance in Southwestern Kansas. Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 57, pp. 49, and one geological map. 1890.

The author briefly discusses the Cretaceous deposits of southwestern Kansas, recognizing the Dakota, Fort Benton, and Niobrara groups of the upper Missouri River section.

HAYDEN, F. V. Notes explanatory of a map and section illustrating the geological structure of the country bordering the Missouri River from the mouth of the Platte River to Fort Benton, in latitude 47° 30′ N., longitude 110° 30′ W. <Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Philad., vol. 9, 1858, pp. 109–116, and map.

The region described was then known as Nebraska Territory and contained the present States of Kansas, Nebraska, South Dakota, North Dakota, and part of Montana. The formations formerly published by Meek and Hayden are described, and the strata now known as Laramie are referred to the Tertiary.

HAYDEN, F. V. Geological sketch of the estuary and fresh-water deposit forming the Bad Lands of Judith River. <Trans. Am. Philos. Soc., vol. 11, 1859, pp. 121–138.

The deposits described by the author are now regarded as a part of the Laramie formation.

HAYDEN, F. V. On the geology and natural history of the upper Missouri, with geological map. <Trans. Am. Philos. Soc., vol. 12, 1862, pp. 1–218.

Dr. Hayden gives a general section of the Cretaceous formations, and a table showing the vertical range of their fossils.

HAYDEN, F. V. [On an extensive chalk deposit on the Missouri River.] <Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Philad., vol. 18, 1866, p. 314.

The author mentions the presence of chalk in the Niobrara group of the upper Missouri section.

HAYDEN, F. V. Remarks on the Cretaceous rocks of the west known as No. 1, or the Dakota group. <Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 43, 1867, pp. 171–179.

This article is devoted mainly to a demonstration of the Cretaceous age of the strata in question.

HAYDEN, F. V. Notes on the lignite deposits of the West. <Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 45, pp. 198–208. U. S. Geol. Survey of the Territories, first annual report, embracing Nebraska. 1867.

The lignite-bearing beds, which are now known as belonging to the Laramie formation, are regarded by the author as certainly of Tertiary age.

HAYDEN, F. V. Sections of strata belonging to the Bear River group, near Bear River City, Wyoming. <Am. Phil. Soc. Proc., vol. 11, 1871, pp. 420–425.

These sections include strata which are exposed in the valley of Sulphur creek, just above its confluence with Bear River, near the site of a temporary village called Bear River City, of which not a house now remains. They embrace marine Cretaceous strata as well as those which have since received the name of Bear River Laramie.

HAYDEN, F. V. Geology of the Missouri Valley. <Preliminary report of the U. S. Geol. Survey of Wyoming and portions of contiguous Territories, pp. 83–188. 1872.

The section previously published jointly by the author and Mr. Meek is here repeated, and an attempt is made to correlate the formations with those of Europe.

HAYDEN, F. V. [Remarks on the age of the lignitic group.] <U. S. Geol. and Geog. Survey of the Territories, Bull., vol. 1, first series, No. 2, pp. 1 and 2. 1875.

The author states that up to this time he had "regarded the entire Lignitic group of the west as of Tertiary age." He now announces that at several localities coal has been found among the marine Cretaceous strata.

HAYDEN, F. V. Remarks on lignitic formation of the West. <U. S. Geol. Survey of the Territories, vol. 7, 1878, pp. III–IX, Contributions to the Fossil Flora of the Western Territories, part 2, the Tertiary Flora. 1878.

The author adheres to his opinion that the "lignitic group" (Laramie) is of Tertiary age.

HAYDEN, F. V.; F. B. MEEK and. (See Meek, F. B., and F. V. Hayden,)

HECTOR, JAMES. On the geology of the country between Lake Superior and the Pacific Ocean (between the forty-eighth and fifty-fourth parallels of latitude), visited by the Government exploring expedition under the command of Capt. J. Palliser. <Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc. Lond., vol. 17, 1861, pp. 388–445, and map.

This article contains a "section of the Cretaceous system as developed in British North America," together with other North American sections for comparison. The author also shows the Cretaceous age of the coal-bearing strata at Nanaimo, Vancouver Island, which seems to be the first published statement of that fact.

HEILPRIN, ANGELO. On the age of the Téjon rocks of California, and the occurrence of Ammonitic remains in Tertiary deposits. <Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Philad., vol. 34, 1883, pp. 196–214.

The author reaches the conclusion that the Téjon group of the California geologists is of Eocene age.

HEILPRIN, ANGELO. The geology and paleontology of the Cretaceous deposits of Mexico. <Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Philad., 1890, pp. 445–469, and 3 plates.

The author states that "Cretaceous deposits cover or are scattered over the greater part of Mexico from the Atlantic plains to the Pacific, and from the Rio Grande to or through the States of Colima, Michoacan, Guerrero, and Oaxaca. These deposits are continuous with the Cretaceous area of the interior basin of the United States, and are largely the equivalents in age of the deposits which are represented in Texas and in the other Gulf States."

HERR, OSWALD. [In a letter from Leo Lesquereux to J. D. Dana.] On fossil plants collected by Dr. John Evans at Vancouver Island and at Bellingham Bay, Washington Territory. <Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 28, 1859, pp. 85–89.

The opinion is advanced by Prof. Herr that the plants from the coal-bearing strata of Vancouver Island, now known to be Cretaceous, are of Miocene age. He also states his opinion that the plants collected from the Dakota formation are of Tertiary and not of Cretaceous age.

HERR, OSWALD. Reply to Dr. Newberry on the age of the Nebraska leaves. <Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 31, 1861, pp. 435–440.

The leaves referred to are from the Dakota formation, and the author defends his previously expressed opinion that they are of Tertiary and not of Cretaceous age.

HICKS, L. E. The Dakota group south of the Platte River in Nebraska. <Proc. Amer. Assoc'n Adv. Sci., vol. 34, 1886, pp. 217–219.

The Dakota formation is announced as occupying 5,000 square miles in Nebraska. The discovery of marine fossils in Jefferson County is also announced, but upon subsequent examination they are found to be brackish-water forms commingled with Unionea and other fresh-water mollusca.

HILGARD, EUGENE W. Report on the Geology and the Agriculture of the State of Mississippi, pp. 389, 8° and plates and maps. 1860.

The author divides the Cretaceous of Mississippi into four divisions; the lowest he calls the Eutaw group, and the others, respectively, Tombigbee sand, Rotten limestone, and Ripley groups.

HILGARD, EUGENE W. On the Geological History of the Gulf of Mexico; with a map. <Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 2, 1871, pp. 391–404.

The author here republishes his Cretaceous section of Mississippi. He thinks the Cretaceous of Arkansas is mostly confined to the equivalent of the Rotten limestone.

HILL, ROBERT T. The Texas section of the American Cretaceous. <Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 34, 1887, pp. 287–309.

The Cretaceous formations of Texas are described, and their relations with those of other parts of North America and of Europe are discussed.

HILL, ROBERT T. The Topography and Geology of the Cross-Timbers and surrounding regions in Northern Texas. <Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 33, 1887, pp. 291–303, plate 6.

A section of the Cretaceous formations of Texas is given, showing their taxonomic position with relation to one another.

HILL, ROBERT T. The Neozoic Geology of Southwestern Arkansas. <Ann. Rep. Geol. Survey Arkansas for 1888, vol. 2, 1888, pp. 1–260.

The Tertiary formations are described in the text, and the ascertained Cretaceous areas are shown on a map accompanying the volume.

HILL, ROBERT T. Geol. Survey of Texas, Bulletin No. 4. A Preliminary Annotated Check List of the Cretaceous Invertebrate Fossils of Texas, pp. I–XXXI and 1–57. 8°. Austin, 1890.

This bulletin contains, besides lists of fossils, the author's classification of the Cretaceous formations of Texas.

HILL, R. T. A brief description of the Cretaceous rocks of Texas, and their economic value. <First Ann. Rep. Geol. Surv. Texas for 1889, 1890, pp. 103–141.

The Cretaceous section of Texas is given in tabular form on pages 132 and 133.

HIND, HENRY YOULE. The Northwest Territory. Reports of Progress, together with Preliminary and General Report on the Assiniboine and Saskatchawan Exploring Expedition. 4°. Toronto, 1859. Another edition of this report was published in London in 1860.

The large region drained in part by the Saskatchawan, now known to be occupied mainly by the Laramie formation, is reported as being occupied by the Cretaceous. Marine Cretaceous formations are also recognized in the same region, fossils from which are described by Mr. Meek. See third entry on page 45.

HITCHCOCK, C. H. Note on the Cretaceous strata of Long Island. <Proc. Am. Assoc'n Adv. Sci., vol. 22, 1873, pt. 2, p. 130.

The author explains his reason for coloring a large part of Long Island upon the geographical map which he had previously published as being occupied by Cretaceous deposits.

HITCHCOCK, C. H. Geological map of the United States and part of Canada. Compiled for the American Institute of Mining Engineers. 1886.

This map is largely based upon the one compiled by W J McGee and published in the Fifth Annual Report of the U. S. Geological Survey. 1884.

HITCHCOCK, C. H., and W. P. BLAKE. Geological map of the United States, compiled for the Ninth Census. 1872.

HITCHCOCK, EDWARD. Report on the geology of Massachusetts. <Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 22, 1833, pp. 1–70.

Existence of Cretaceous deposits on the island of Martha's Vineyard suggested.

HITCHCOCK, EDWARD. Final report on the geology of Massachusetts; vol. 1, pp. 299, 4°, map and 14 plates; vol. 2, 1841, pp. 831, and 55 plates.

Prof. Hitchcock, speaking of the strata exposed at Gay Head, Martha's Vineyard, suggests that some of them contain material which consists of "ruins of * * * the green sand and clay of the Cretaceous formation." See vol. 2, p. 423.

HODGE, James T. Observations on the Secondary and Tertiary formations of the Southern Atlantic States. <Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 41, 1841, pp. 332–343.

The author mentions the existence of Cretaceous deposits at Wilmington and along Cape Fear River in North Carolina.

HOLMES, W. H. Report on the northwestern portion of the Elk Range. <U. S. Geol. and Geogr. Survey of the Territories, Eighth Annual Report for 1874, embracing Colorado and adjacent Territories, pp. 59–71. 1876.

Sections of the Cretaceous formations from the Dakota to the Laramie, inclusive, are given in this report.

HOLMES, WILLIAM H. Report as geologist of the San Juan division. <U. S. Geol. and Geogr. Survey of the Territories, Ninth Annual Report for 1875, embracing Colorado and parts of adjacent Territories, pp. 237–276. 1877.

Several sections of the strata of the region of San Juan River are given, showing the Cretaceous formations from the Dakota to the Laramie formation, inclusive.

HOWELL, EDWIN E. Report on the geology of the portions of Utah, Nevada, Arizona and New Mexico, examined in 1872 and 1873. <Report Geogr. and Geol. Expl. and Surveys west of the one-hundredth meridian, by G. M. Wheeler, vol. 3, Geology, pp. 227–264. 1875.

Only a brief account of the Cretaceous formation is given in this report.

HOWELL, EDWIN E. See entry third on page 37.

JAMES, THOMAS P. Handbook of the State of Georgia, accompanied by a geological map of the State. 1876.

The map shows that a comparatively small area bordering the Chattahoochee River, and extending eastward less than 50 miles, is occupied by Cretaceous deposits.

JOHNSON, LAWRENCE C., EUGENE A. SMITH and. (See Smith, Eugene A., and Lawrence C. Johnson.)

KERR, W. C. Report of the Geological Survey of North Carolina, vol. 1, pp. 325, 8° and map with sections. Also 4 appendices with 7 plates, the first by T. A. Conrad, the second by E. D. Cope, the third by F. A. Genth, and the fourth by C. D. Smith. 1875.

The map shows the few small areas known to be occupied by the Cretaceous, and the section shows its relations to other deposits.

KIMBALL, JAMES P. Notes on the geology of Western Texas and of Chihuahua, Mexico. <Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 48, 1869, pp. 378–388.

The author notices strata containing Texan Cretaceous fossils which he found at the base of the Sierra Nogal, 20 miles from Presidio del Norte, on the Chihuahua road. They apparently come from the same locality as those noticed by Gabb. See ninth entry on page 36.

KING, CLARENCE. Geological and Topographical Atlas accompanying the report of the Geological Exploration of the fortieth parallel. 1876.

The geological sheets of this atlas contain results of the work of Arnold Hague and S F. Emmons, besides those of Mr. King's work. The east half of map 3, which was issued separately in 1875, contains the first announcement of King's classification of the Cretaceous formations, and the first use of the name "Laramie Group." See next entry.

KING, CLARENCE. U. S. Geological Exploration, Fortieth Parallel, vol. 1, Systematic Geology, pp. 803 and plates. 1878.

The equivalents of Nos. 2, 3, and 4, of the Upper Missouri Cretaceous section of Meek & Hayden are joined together under the name of Colorado group; and the strata now known as Laramie is assigned to the Cretaceous, as was done by this author in vol. 3.

KLOOS, J. H. A Cretaceous basin in the Sauk Valley, Minnesota. <Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 3, 1872, pp. 17–26.

A deposit more than 70 feet in thickness is described, which apparently represents the Benton division of the Upper Missouri River section.

KNOWLTON, F. H. Fossil Wood and Lignite of the Potomac formation. <Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey No. 56, pp. 72 and 7 plates. 1889.

Professor Knowlton describes and figures six species based on the microscopic character of the fossilized wood, and briefly discusses the formation geologically.

LECONTE, JOSEPH. Elements of Geology. A text-book for colleges and for the general reader. 1882.

LEIDY, JOSEPH. Extinct vertebrata from the Judith River and great lignite formations of Nebraska. <Trans. Am. Philos. Soc., vol. 11, 1859, pp. 139–154, map and 3 plates.

These vertebrate fossils are from the Judith River strata described by Dr. Hayden. All these strata are now included in the Laramie group.

LEIDY, JOSEPH. Cretaceous reptiles of the United States. <Smithsonian Contributions to Knowledge, vol. 14, 1865, pp. 135, plates I–XX.

The fossils described in this memoir are mainly from New Jersey, but some are from the Gulf coast and the interior regions.

LEIDY, JOSEPH. Description of remains of reptiles and fishes from the Cretaceous formations of the interior of the United States. <Contributions to the Extinct Vertebrate Fauna of the Western Territories. U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr., vol. 1, pp. 266–310. 1873.

A few of the forms noticed or described in this work are from the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions.

LENK, H. See Felix J. and H. Lenk.

LESQUEREUX, LEO. On some fossil plants of recent formations. <Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 27, 1859, pp. 359–366.

The author refers the fossil plants collected by Dr. John Evans from the coal-bearing strata at Nanaimo, Vancouver Island, to the Miocene. They are apparently the same, at least in part, as those which are now known to be of Cretaceous age.

LESQUEREUX, LEO. On the discordance in the characters of the European and American flora at the Tertiary and Cretaceous epochs. <Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr. for 1870, 1871, pp. 377–385.

The author states that the development of botanical types progressed at a more rapid rate in North America than elsewhere.

LESQUEREUX, LEO. Fossil flora. <Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr. for 1871, pp. 283–318. 1872.

Both Cretaceous and Tertiary species are described. Some Laramie species are included in the latter. He states that the Cretaceous and Tertiary floras of North America are intimately related.

LESQUEREUX, LEO. Lignitic formation and fossil flora. <U. S. Geol. and Geogr. Survey of the Territories, embracing portions of Montana, Idaho, Wyoming, and Utah. Sixth Annual Report for 1872, pp. 317–427. 1873.

The author regards the formation now known as the Laramie as of Eocene age.

LESQUEREUX, LEO. Contributions to the fossil flora of the Western Territories, part 1, the Cretaceous Flora. <Report of the U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr., vol. 6, pp. 136, plates I–XXX. 1874.

The author discusses at length the relation of the fossil plants of the Dakota to those of other Cretaceous formations.

LESQUEREUX, LEO. A review of the Cretaceous flora of North America. <Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr., 1876, pp. 316–365, and plates 1–8.

The author, contrary to his earlier views, fully admits the Cretaceous age of the Dakota formation, but he points out the fact that its flora is more nearly like Tertiary than any then known Cretaceous flora.

LESQUEREUX, LEO. The lignitic formations of North America. <Contributions to the fossil flora of the Western Territories, U. S. Geol. Survey of the Territories, part 2, the Tertiary flora, 1878, pp. 3–31.

The author adheres to his opinion previously expressed that the "lignitic formations" (Laramie) are of Tertiary age. A large number of species of plants are described and figured.

LESQUEREUX, LEO. Contributions to the fossil flora of the Western Territories, part II, the Tertiary flora. <U. S. Geol. Survey of the Territories, vol. 7, pp. 366, and 65 plates, 4°. 1878.

The author, after full discussion of the subject, refers all the lignite-bearing formations of the West to the Tertiary.

LINDGREN, W. Notes on the geology of Baja California, Mexico. <Proc. Cal. Acad. Sci., 2d series, vol. 1, 1888, pp. 173–196, and 5 plates.

The author describes and maps the small area occupied by the Cretaceous deposits at Todos Santos Bay that White has referred to the Walalla group.

LOUGHRIDGE, R. H. Report on the geological and economic features of the Jackson Purchase region, embracing the counties of Ballard, Calloway, Fulton, Graves, Hickman, McCracken, and Marshall. <Geological Survey of Kentucky, pp. 357, and 3 maps. 1888.

The Cretaceous of Kentucky has not been found to be fossiliferous, and although Dr. Loughridge regards it all as representing the Ripley group, it resembles the Eutaw in lithological characteristics.

LOUGHRIDGE, R. H. Report on the Jackson Purchase region. <Geological survey of Kentucky, pp. 32-36., and geol. map. 1888.

Dr. Loughridge shows that a narrow belt of Cretaceous deposits extend across the western extremity of Kentucky.

LYELL, CHARLES. Notes on the Cretaceous strata of New Jersey and other parts of the United States bordering the Atlantic. <Geol. Soc. Quart. Jour., vol. 1, 1843, pp. 55–60.

The author refers "all the [Cretaceous] fossiliferous formations of New Jersey to that part of the European series which ranges from the Maestricht beds to the Gault, inclusive."

LYELL, CHARLES. Notes on the Cretaceous strata of New Jersey, and parts of the United States bordering the Atlantic. <Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 47, 1844, pp. 213, 214.

Mr. Lyell regards the Cretaceous of the Atlantic border region as agreeing with the European Gault, to the Maestricht beds inclusive. He states that the limestone of Wilmington, N. C., and of Santee River, S. C., which other geologists had called Upper Cretaceous, are of Eocene age.

MACFARLANE, JAMES. General note of the Geology of Mexico. <American Geological Railway Guide, second edition, 1890, pp. 415–420.

MARCOU, JULES. Notes on the Cretaceous and Carboniferous rocks of Texas. <Boston Soc. Nat. Hist. Proc., vol. 8, 1862, pp. 86–98.

In this article Professor Marcou gives his views as to the order of superposition of the Cretaceous formations of Texas, which are essentially the same as those subsequently published by Hill and White, respectively. He repeats his formerly expressed opinion that the lower portion of the Comanche series is referable to the Aptien and Neocomian of Europe.

MARCOU, JULES. Untersuchungen in Californien. <Verhandl. d. K. K. Geolog. Reichsanstalt, 1875, pp. 215, 216.

The strata designated as the Téjon group by the California geologists are referred to as characteristically Eocene.

MARCOU, JULES. Report on the geology of a portion of southern California. <Annual Report upon the Geogr. Surveys west of the 100th meridian by Wheeler. Annual Report of the Chief of Engineers for 1876, Appendix J J, pp. 158–172. 1876.

Professor Marcou recognizes the unbroken character of the great series of strata which in this memoir is designated as Chico-Téjon; but he refers the whole series to the Tertiary.

MARCOU, JULES. Note sur la geologie de la Californie. <Soc. géol. France, Bull. 3e sér., vol. 11, 1883, pp. 407–435.

M. Marcou still regards the whole of the Chico and Téjon groups of the California geologists as of Tertiary age.

MARSH, O. C. Notice of some new Mososauroid reptiles from the Greensand of New Jersey. <Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 48, 1869, pp. 392–400.

MARSH, O. C. Notice of some fossil birds from the Cretaceous and Tertiary formations the United States. <Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 49, 1870, pp. 205–217.

These remains of Cretaceous birds are from the Upper Cretaceous of New Jersey.

MARSH, O. C. On the Geology of the Eastern Uinta Mountains. <Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 1, 1871, pp. 191–198.

Prof. Marsh mentions the discovery of a crinoid, afterward described as *Uintacrinus socialis* by Grinnell, in strata which appear to be referable to the Colorado group.

MARSH, O. C. Notice of some new fossil reptiles from the Cretaceous and Tertiary formations. <Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 1, 1871, pp. 322–329.

MARSH, O. C. Discovery of additional remains of Pterosauria with descriptions of two new species. <Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 3, 1872, pp. 241–248.

MARSH, O. C. On the structure of the skull and limbs in Mososauroid reptiles with descriptions of new genera and species. <Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 3, 1872, pp. 448–464; plates 10–13.

MARSH, O. C. Birds with teeth. <Third Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Survey, pp. 45–48. 1883.

The author states that these remarkable remains were obtained from the equivalent of No. 3 of Meek & Hayden's section of the Upper Missouri Cretaceous.

MARSH, O. C. Notice of a new genus of Sauropoda and other new Dinosaurs from the Potomac formation. <Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 35, 1888, pp. 89–94.

The author refers the Potomac formation to the Jurassic.

MARVINE, ARCHIBALD R. Report of Middle Park division. <U. S. Geol. and Geog. Survey of the Territories, Seventh Annual Report for 1873, embracing Colorado, pp. 83–192. 1874.

This report gives sections and descriptions of formations at the eastern base of the Rocky Mountains, as well as in Middle Park. These show the different Cretaceous formations from the Dakota formation to the "Lignitic" (Laramie) inclusive, the names applied to the formations being the same as those of the Upper Missouri River section. He reports a limited unconformity between the Laramie and Fox Hills strata in Middle Park.

MARVINE, A. R., A. C. PEALE, F. M. ENDLICH, C. A. WHITE and W. H. HOLMES. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Survey of the Territories. Geological and Geographical Atlas of Colorado, and portions of adjacent Territory. Second edition, corrected. 1881.

The reports upon which this atlas is based are contained in the Annual Reports of the Survey.

MATHER, WILLIAM W. Report of W. W. Mather, geologist of the first geological district of the State of New York. <State of New York in Assembly, February 20, 1838. Communication from the governor relative to the geological survey of the State, pp. 121–184. 8°. 1838.

On page 138 the author suggests that certain deposits in Suffolk and Richmond Counties are equivalent to certain of the New Jersey Cretaceous deposits.

MATHER, WILLIAM W. Geology of New York, part I, comprising the geology of the first geological district, pp. 653. 4° and plates and maps. 1843.

On page 272 the author definitely refers the deposits on Staten and Long Island, mentioned in the last entry, to the non-marine division of the Cretaceous of New Jersey.

MCCONNELL, R. G. On the Cypress Hills, Wood Mountain, and adjacent country, with map. <Geol. and Nat. Hist. Surv. Can., Ann. Rep. for 1885. Montreal, 1886. pp. 1–78 C. 1 map and 3 plates.

The author describes Cretaceous formations from the Belly River to the Laramie formation, inclusive. The position of the former beneath the Fox Hills and Pierre, and its separateness from the Laramie fully stated.

MCCONNELL, R. G. On the geological structure of a portion of the Rocky Mountains. <Geol. Surv. Canada, Ann. Report for 1886, pp. 7–40 D. 1887.

Cretaceous rocks from the Kootanie to the Benton are discussed. The former rest upon Carboniferous rocks. Near Devil's Lake several species of marine molluscan fossils were found at the base of the Kootanie, which Mr. Whiteaves identifies with species found in the lower portion of the Queen Charlotte Island Cretaceous section.

MCGEE, W J. Map of the United States, exhibiting the present status of knowledge relating to the areal distribution of geologic groups. <Fifth Annual Report of the U. S. Geological Survey. 1884.

MCGEE, W J. The geology of the head of Chesapeake Bay. <Seventh Annual Report of the U. S. Geological Survey, pp. 545–646. 1888.

The Potomac formation is defined, and the statement made that the "Sassafras River Greensand" rests unconformably upon it in the vicinity of Sassafras River, in Maryland.

McGEE, W J. Three formations of the Middle Atlantic Slope. <Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 35, 1888, pp. 120–143.

The Potomac formation is described in this article. It was first so named by Mr. McGee in the report of the health officer of the District of Columbia for the year ending June 30, 1885.

MEEK, F. B. Description of new organic remains from the Cretaceous rocks of Vancouver's Island. <Trans. Albany Inst., 1857, vol. 4, pp. 37–49.

The fossils described are from the strata since known as the Nanaimo group. This article is important as containing the first publication of Cretaceous fossils from the Pacific coast.

MEEK, F. B. Remarks on the Cretaceous fossils collected by Prof. Henry Y. Hind, on the Assinniboine and Saskatchewan Exploring Expedition, with descriptions of some new species. <Reports on the Northwest Territory, by Henry Youle Hind, M. A., Toronto, 1859, pp. 182–185 and 2 plates.

MEEK, F. B. Remarks on the Carboniferous and Cretaceous rocks of Eastern Kansas and Nebraska, and their relations to those of the adjacent States and other localities farther eastward, in connection with a review of a paper recently published on this subject by Jules Marcou, in Bulletin Société géologique de France. <Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 39, 1865, pp. 157–174.

The Cretaceous age of the Dakota formation is asserted, nothwithstanding the modern character of its plant remains. It is referred to the base of the Upper Missouri River Cretaceous section, but is not regarded as of Lower Cretaceous age.

MEEK, F. B. Description of fossils from the auriferous slates of California. <Geological Survey of California; Geology, vol. 1, 1865, pp. 477–482, and 1 plate.

The author refers all these fossils, the greater part of which belong to the genus Aucella, to the Jurassic. They are, however, referred to the Lower Cretaceous in this memoir.

MEEK, F. B. Preliminary list of the fossils collected by Dr. Hayden's Exploring Expedition of 1871 in Utah and Wyoming Territories, with descriptions of a few new species. 1872.

A few Laramie fossils are catalogued with the Cretaceous, but the collections from the so-called Bear River Laramie are referred to the Tertiary.

MEEK, F. B. Paleontological report. <Sixth Annual Report of the U. S. Geological Survey of the Territories by F. V. Hayden, pp. 429–518. 1873.

This report is largely geological. It contains an important section of the Cretaceous rocks near Coalville, Utah, among which are an estuary deposit and several beds of coal. It also contains another section of similar formations in the valley of Sulphur Creek, western Wyoming, together with discussions of the formations and descriptions of new species. The latter section embraces the so-called Bear River Laramie, which he refers to the Tertiary.

MEEK, F. B. Notes on some fossils from near the eastern base of the Rocky Mountains, west of Greeley and Evans, Colorado, and others from about 200 miles farther eastward, with descriptions of a few new species. <Bull. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. Terr. No. 1, 2 ser., 1875, pp. 41–47.

The author discusses certain geological questions, and shows that the Laramie strata have been pierced by an artesian boring from 45 to 400 feet beneath the surface of the plains at a point 200 miles east of Greeley, Colorado.

MEEK, F. B. Descriptions and illustrations of fossils from Vancouver's and Sucia Islands and other northwestern localities. <U. S. Geol. and Geogr. Survey of the Territories, Bull., vol. 2, pp. 351–376, and plates I–VI. 1876.

This article contains, among other matter, a republication with figures of Cretaceous fossils from Vancouver Island, which were originally published without figures in vol. 4 Trans. Albany Inst., 1857.

MEEK, F. B. Report on the Cretaceous fossils contained in the collections brought from New Mexico by the exploring expedition under the command of Capt. J. N. Macomb, of the U. S. Topographical Engineers. <Report of the exploring expedition from Santa Fé, New Mexico, to the junction of the Grand and Green Rivers

MEEK, F. B.—Continued.

of the Great Colorado of the West, in 1859, under the command of Capt. J. N. Macomb, Corps of Topographical Engineers, with geological report by Prof. J. S. Newberry. 1876.

Besides the descriptions of fossils, this report contains the descriptive Cretaceous section of Dr. Newberry, and in connection with each division of the section he gives the names of the fossils which characterize it.

MEEK, F. B. Report on the paleontological collections of the expedition. <Report of explorations across the Great Basin of the Territory of Utah for a direct wagon route from Camp Floyd to Genoa, in Carson Valley, in 1859, by Capt. J. H. Simpson, Corps of Topographical Engineers U. S. Army, pp. 337–373, and plates I–V, 1876.

The author is inclined to regard the Bear River Laramie beds as of Upper Cretaceous age although he had formerly assigned them to the Lower Eocene.

MEEK, F. B. A Report on the Invertebrate Cretaceous and Tertiary Fossils of the Upper Missouri Country. U. S. Geol. Sur. Terr., vol. 9, pp. I–LXIV and 1–629; 45 plates, 4°. 1876.

This great work contains a summary of many articles formerly published by the author alone or in coauthorship with Dr. Hayden, most of which articles are therefore not included in this list. Pages I–LXIV are devoted to geological discussion, and they contain discussions of the Cretaceous sections of different parts of North America. These are compared with one another and in part with the European Cretaceous.

MEEK, F. B. United States Geological Exploration of the Fortieth Parallel, Clarence King, geologist in charge. Part I, Paleontology, by F. B. Meek, pp. 1–197 and plates I–XVII. 1877.

This work is wholly paleontological. It contains descriptions and figures of many Cretaceous fossils, and also some from the so-called Bear River Laramie.

MEEK, F. B., JAMES HALL and. (See Hall, James, and F. B. Meek.)

MEEK, F. B., and F. V. HAYDEN. Descriptions of new fossil species of Mollusca, collected by Dr. F. V. Hayden in Nebraska Territory, together with a complete catalogue of all the remains of invertebrata hitherto described and identified from the Cretaceous and Tertiary formations of that region. <Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Phila., vol. 8, 1856, pp. 265–286.

This article contains the first publication of the section of the Upper Missouri Cretaceous, which has since become so well known.

MEEK, F. B., and F. V. HAYDEN. Descriptions of new species of Acephala and Gasteropoda, from the Tertiary formations of Nebraska Territory, with some general remarks on the geology of the country about the sources of the Missouri River. <Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Phila., vol, 8, 1856, pp. 111–126.

The formation now known as the Laramie is in this article referred to the Tertiary.

MEEK, F. B., and F. V. HAYDEN. Descriptions of new species and genera of fossils, collected by Dr. F. V. Hayden in Nebraska Territory, under the direction of Lieut. G. K. Warren, U. S. Topographical Engineers, with some remarks on the Tertiary and Cretaceous formations of the Northwest, and the parallelism of the latter with those of other portions of the United States and Territories. <Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Phila., vol. 9, 1857, pp. 117–148.

This article contains discussions of the Cretaceous formations constituting the Upper Missouri River Cretaceous section published by these authors in the previous year.

MEEK, F. B., and F. V. HAYDEN. Remarks on the Lower Cretaceous beds of Kansas and Nebraska, together with descriptions of Carboniferous fossils from the valley of Kansas River. <Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Phila., 2d ser., vol. 2, 1858, pp. 256–264.

The discussions refer to the opinion of Prof. Heer that the plants of the Dakota formation are of Tertiary age, and the authors show that that formation is overlain by at least 800 feet of Cretaceous strata.

MEEK, F. B., and F. V. HAYDEN. Remarks on the Lower Cretaceous beds of Kansas and Nebraska. <Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 27, 1859, pp. 219–227.

The authors reviewed the controversy that then prevailed concerning the true age of the Dakota formation, and show that it lies beneath well-known Cretaceous formations.

MEEK, F. B., and F. V. HAYDEN. Systematic catalogue, with synonyma, etc., of Jurassic, Cretaceous, and Tertiary fossils collected in Nebraska by the exploring expedition under the command of Lieut. G. K. Warren, of U. S. Topographical Engineers. <Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci., Phila., 2d ser., vol. 4, 1860, pp. 417–432.

The fossils from the strata now known to belong to the Laramie are included with the Tertiary fossils in this catalogue.

MEEK, F. B., and F. V. HAYDEN. Descriptions of new Lower Silurian (Primordial), Jurassic, Cretaceous, and Tertiary fossils collected in Nebraska by the exploring expedition under the command of Capt. Wm. F. Raynolds, U. S. Topographical Engineers, with some remarks on the rocks from which they were obtained. <Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Phila., 2d ser., vol. 5, 1861, pp. 415–447.

This article is largely geological, containing a "General Section of the Cretaceous rocks of Nebraska" and discussions of the formations. The authors compare the Nebraska Cretaceous section with that of New Jersey, and in part with the Cretaceous of the Old World.

MERRILL, F. J. H. On the geology of Long Island. <Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences, vol. 3, 1886, pp. 311–364, and plates 27, 28.

Certain deposits at Glen Cove and other localities in the northwest part of Long Island are regarded as equivalent to at least a portion of the non-marine division of the New Jersey Cretaceous.

MORTON, SAMUEL GEORGE. Geological observations on the Secondary, Tertiary, and alluvial formations of the Atlantic coast of the United States of America, arranged from the notes of Lardner Vanuxem. <Jour. Acad. Nat. Sci. Phila., vol. 6, 1828, pp. 59–71.

The authorship of this article, except the descriptions of fossils which accompany it, is wholly due to Prof. Vanuxem. See fourth entry on page 55. The Cretaceous strata of the Atlantic coast region are discussed. Prof. Vanuxem correlates them with the Cretaceous of Europe in a general way, but Dr. Morton, in additional notes by himself, refers them to the Lower Cretaceous.

MORTON, SAMUEL GEORGE. Synopsis of the organic remains of the Cretaceous group of the United States. Philadelphia, 1834.

This work is a summary, with revision and additions, of his previous papers in the American Journal of Science, vols. 17, 18, 22, 23, and 24, and in the Journal Academy Natural Science, Philadelphia, vol. 6. It is mainly paleontological, but contains a brief general account of the Cretaceous deposits then known, which were mainly confined to the Atlantic border region. Vanuxem had previously referred these deposits to the "Chalk" of Europe, but Morton here continues to refer them to the Lower Cretaceous.

MORTON, SAMUEL GEORGE. Notice of the fossil teeth of fishes of the United States. The discovery of Gault in Alabama, and a proposed division of the American Cretaceous group. <Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 28, 1835, pp. 276–278.

The author proposes three divisions for the Cretaceous of the United States, the lower one of which he refers to the Gault. The upper one embraced strata that are now regarded as Eocene.

MORTON, SAMUEL GEORGE. Description of several new species of fossil shells from the Cretaceous deposits of the United States. <Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Phila., vol. 1, 1841, pp. 106–110.

The fossils are from New Jersey and the Upper Missouri River region. Not figured.

MORTON, SAMUEL GEORGE. Description of some new species of organic remains of the Cretaceous group of the United States, with a tabular view of the fossils hitherto discovered in this formation. <Jour. Acad. Nat. Sci. Phila., 1st ser., vol. 8, 1842, pp. 207–227, and 2 plates.

The author still adheres to his three divisions of the Cretaceous mentioned in a preceding entry.

MUDGE, B. F. Notes on the Tertiary and Cretaceous periods of Kansas. <U. S. Geol. and Geog. Survey of the Territories, Bull., vol. 2, 1876, pp. 211–221.

The author obtained marine fossils (described by Meek and White respectively) from Saline County, Kansas. He states that the Dakota formation in that State rests upon the Permian.

NICOLLET, I. N. On the Cretaceous formation of the Missouri River. <Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 45, 1843, pp. 153–156.

The author describes certain of the Cretaceous deposits along the Missouri River, which afterward became well known through the publications of Meek and Hayden.

NICOLLET, I. N. Report intended to illustrate a map of the hydrographical basin of the Upper Mississippi River. 8°. 1843, pp. 1–170.

Mr. Nicollet briefly describes the Cretaceous formations of the upper Missouri, which seems to be the first definite published announcement of their existence.

NEWBERRY, J. S. Report upon the geology of the route. <Explorations and surveys for a railroad route from the Mississippi River to the Pacific Ocean, vol. 6, part II, pp. 9–68. Routes in California and Oregon. Thirty-third Congress, second session, H. R. Ex. Doc. No. 91. 1855.

The author discusses the age of the formation afterward named the Chico group by the California geologists. He admits the Tertiary character of a part of the fossils, but is inclined to refer the formation to the Cretaceous because of the presence in it of *Ammonites* and *Baculites*.

NEWBERRY, J. S. [Explorations in New Mexico.] <Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 28, 1859, pp. 298, 299.

The author states that the so-called Jurassic of Marcou in New Mexico is Cretaceous, the horizon corresponding to that of Nos. 2 and 3 of the Upper Missouri Cretaceous section of Meek and Hayden.

NEWBERRY, J. S. Notes on the ancient vegetation of North America. <Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 29, 1860, pp. 208–218.

The author reasserts his formerly expressed opinion as to the Cretaceous age of certain fossil plants from different parts of North America which other authors had contended were of Tertiary age.

NEWBERRY, J. S. Geological report. <Report upon the Colorado River of the West, explored in 1857 and 1858. Joseph C. Ives. Part III, pp. 1–154, 2 maps and 6 plates. Washington, 1861.

The author divides the Cretaceous series of New Mexico and Arizona into upper and lower divisions, corresponding to the Earlier and Later Cretaceous of Meek and Hayden, but he does not intend this as a correlation with the Upper and Lower Cretaceous of Europe.

NEWBERRY, J. S. Description of the fossil plants collected by George Gibbs, geologist to the United States Northwest Boundary Commission, under A. Campbell. <Jour. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., vol. 7, 1863, pp. 506–525.

The author shows that the plants from the coal-bearing strata of Vancouver and Orcas Islands are of Cretaceous age, and not Miocene, as claimed by Heer.

NEWBERRY, J. S. Notes on the later extinct floras of North America, with descriptions of some new species of fossil plants from Cretaceous and Tertiary strata. <Annals N. Y. Lyceum Nat. Hist., vol. 9, 1868, pp. 1–76.

Dr. Newberry claims that the plants of the Dakota formation are of Cretaceous and not Tertiary types. He describes many species of Cretaceous plants, and also many from the Fort Union Laramie beds, which he then referred to the Miocene. The substance of this article is contained in his report published a year afterward. See next entry.

NEWBERRY, J. S. Report on the Cretaceous and Tertiary plants. <Geol. Report Expl. Yellowstone and Missouri Rivers in 1859–'60, by Dr. F. V. Hayden, assistant, under the direction of Capt. W. F. Raynolds, pp. 145–174. 1869.

The author reasserts the Cretaceous age of the plants of the Dakota formation, and also of those of Vancouver Island, except a part of those obtained at Birch Bay, north of Bellingham Bay, which he refers to the Miocene. He refers plants from the Fort Union strata, near the mouth of the Yellowstone, to the Tertiary.

NEWBERRY, J. S. [Cretaceous rocks on Long Island.] <Proc. New York Lyceum Nat. Hist., vol. 2, 1874, p. 127.

Angiospermous leaves found at Lloyd's Neck are "similar to those of Raritan and of the Lower Cretaceous in the far West."

NEWBERRY, J. S. On the lignites and plant beds of Western America. <Am. Jour. of Sci., 3d ser., vol. 7, 1874, pp. 399–404.

The author states that all the lignite-bearing strata of New Mexico, as well as those of many other North American regions, which have been referred by certain authors to the Tertiary, are of Cretaceous age. He also mentions the identity of certain species of plants found in New Mexico, in strata equivalent to the Dakota formation, with certain forms found in the Raritan clays of New Jersey.

NEWBERRY, J. S. Geological report. <Report of the exploring expedition from Santa Fé, New Mexico, to the junction of the Grand and Green Rivers of the Great Colorado of the West, in 1859, under the command of Capt. J. N. Macomb. 1876.

In this report Prof. Newberry divides the Cretaceous section of New Mexico into three divisions, which appear to correspond to the Dakota, Colorado, and Montana divisions, respectively, as they are recognized in this memoir.

NEWBERRY, J. S. The Cretaceous flora of North America. <Trans. N. Y. Acad. Sci., vol. 5, 1886, pp. 133–137.

A table accompanying the discussions shows the author's views as to the correlation of the various Cretaceous plant-bearing horizons of North America with those of Europe.

NEWBERRY, J. S. The flora of the Amboy clays. <Bull. Torrey Botanical Club, vol. 13, 1886, pp. 33–37.

Prof. Newberry gives a preliminary account of the fossil flora of the Amboy and Raritan clays, which he is preparing for publication. He points out its close affinity with the Dakota flora, and shows that many of its species are identical with Upper Cretaceous species of Aachen and of Greenland.

NEWBERRY, J. S. The Great Falls coal-field, Montana. <School of Mines Quarterly, vol. 8, 1887, pp. 327–330.

The author announces that the coal-bearing strata in the vicinity of the Great Falls of the Missouri are equivalent to the Kootanie formation which was first discovered at the eastern base of the Rocky Mountains in British America. He shows that several species of fossil plants of the Kootanie occur in the Montana strata.

NEWBERRY, J. S. The flora of the Great Falls coal-field, Montana. <Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 41, 1891, pp. 191–200.

The author shows that at least ten of the species of plants found in the Montana strata are identical with species of the flora of the Potomac formation.

NEWTON, HENRY. Geology of the Black Hills of Dakota. <Report on the Geology and Resources of the Black Hills of Dakota, with atlas, pp. 1–222. 1880.

The five divisions of Meek & Hayden's Cretaceous section of the Upper Missouri River region "surround the Black Hills in an annular rim of irregular width." The Laramie is found in that vicinity resting upon the marine Cretaceous, and is referred to the Tertiary. The area occupied by these respective formations is shown upon the accompanying maps.

NIKITIN, S. Einiges über den Jura in Mexico und Centralasien. <Neues Jahrbuch für Min. Geol. u. Palaeont. Jahrgang 1890, II Band, Drittes Heft, pp. 273–274.

The author mentions the discovery of fossil shells near San Luis Potosi, which appear to be identical with those designated as *Aucella concentrica* in this memoir.

NYST, H., and H. GALEOTTI. [Sur quelques fossiles du calcaire jurassique de Tehuacan, au Mexique. <Bull. Acad. Roy. des Sciences et Bell. Lett., vol. 7, 2d part, 1840, pp. 212–221, and 2 plates.

The fossils described in this article are probably not of Jurassic, but of Cretaceous age.

OWEN, DAVID DALE. Report of a Geological Survey of Wisconsin, Iowa, and Minnesota, and incidentally of a portion of Nebraska Territory, pp. 623, and plates and maps. 1852.

The existence of Cretaceous strata along the Missouri River west of Iowa is noticed, and some fossils from them described and figured. The existence of such deposits in northwestern Iowa is suggested.

OWEN, [RICHARD.] Notes on remains of fossil reptiles discovered by Prof. Henry Rogers, of Pennsylvania, United States, in Greensand formations of New Jersey. <Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc. Lond., vol. 5, 1849, pp. 380–383, plates 10, 11.

PARRY, C. C. Geological features of the Rio Grande Valley from El Paso to the mouth of Pecos River. <Report on the United States and Mexican Boundary Survey, vol. 1, part 2, 1857, pp. 49–61.

The author mentions a great thickness of Cretaceous strata as forming the walls of the Cañon San Carlos, which seem to belong to the Comanche series.

PEALE, A. C. Report of A. C. Peale, M. D., geologist of the South Park division. <U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. Terr., Seventh Ann. Report for 1873, pp. 193–273. 1874.

This report contains descriptions and sections of the Cretaceous formations from the Dakota to the Niobrara group, inclusive. The names of the formations adopted are those of the Upper Missouri River section.

PEALE, A. C. Report of A. C. Peale, M. D., geologist of Middle division. <U. S. Geol. and Geog. Survey of the Territories, Eighth Annual Report for 1874, embracing Colorado and adjacent territory, pp. 73–180. 1876.

The Cretaceous formations from the Dakota to the Laramie formation, inclusive, are described and illustrated. The latter formation is assigned to the Tertiary.

PEALE, A. C. Report of A. C. Peale, M. D., geologist of the Grand River division, 1875. <U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. Terr., Ninth Ann. Rep. for 1875, pp. 31–101. 1877.

A plate of sections across the Uncompahgre Plateau shows the Dakota formation to be well defined in that far southern district. The author also recognizes there the eqvivalents of the other members of the Upper Missouri River section.

PEALE, A. C. Geological report on the Grand River district. <U. S. Geol. and Geog. Survey of the Territories, Tenth Annual Report for 1876, embracing Colorado and parts of adjacent Territories, pp. 161–185. 1878.

This report contains sections and descriptions of the Cretaceous formations from the Dakota to the Laramie, inclusive, the classification of the marine Cretaceous formations being that of the Upper Missouri River section.

PEALE, A. C. The Laramie group of western Wyoming and adjacent regions. <Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr., vol. 5, No. 2, pp. 153–200. 1879.

The formation described is the so-called Bear River Laramie, which, according to the author, extends from the southwest corner of Wyoming up into southeastern Idaho.

POWELL, J. W. Report on the geology of the eastern portion of the Uinta Mountains and a region of country adjacent thereto, pp. 218, 4° atlas. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Survey Terr. 1876.

The formations which in this memoir are referred to the Upper Cretaceous are recognized, but classified under new names. His Point of Rocks group is identical with the Laramie except that he included a portion of the latter in his Bitter Creek group, which is recognized as of Eocene age. The areas occupied by the several formations are shown on the accompanying atlas.

PUMPELLY, RAPHAEL. Bituminous coals and lignites of the Northwest. <Tenth Census U. S., vol. 15, Report on the mining industries of the United States, pp. 689–695, with 5 geological maps. 1886.

It is stated that the area occupied by bituminous coal is limited, but that of lignites is very great. Coal, or lignite, is found in the Dakota, Colorado, and Laramie formations. The author refers the coal of Judith Basin, Belt Creek, Sand Coulée, and Deep Creek to the Dakota formation. At least a part of this is referred to the Kootanie formation by Dr. Newberry.

RAMIREZ, SANTIAGO. Informe que como resultado de su Exploracion en la Sierra Mojada. <Anales del Ministerio de Fomento de la República Mexicana, vol. 3, pp. 627–687. 1877.

RAMIREZ, SANTIAGO. Informe sobre el Mineral de Guadalcázar en el estado de San Luis Potosí. <Anales del Ministerio de Fomento de la República Mexicana, vol. 3, pp. 339–404. 1877.

REDFIELD, W. C. [Cretaceous fossil in a deep well in Brooklyn, New York.] <Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 45, 1843, p. 156.

The author refers to the finding of a specimen of *Exogyra costata* in digging a well in Brooklyn, New York, the specimen being the property of Dr. John C. Gay.

RÉMOND, A. Notice of geological explorations in northern Mexico. <California Acad. Sci. Proc., vol. 3, 1867, pp. 244–257.

The author mentions the presence of Cretaceous deposits "at the foot of the Sierra Madre, at Arivechi, in Sonora," resting upon "porphyries and the Carboniferous limestone."

RICHARDSON, JAMES. Report on the coal fields of Vancouver Island. <Geol. Surv. of Canada, Report of Progress for 1871-1872, pp. 73–94. 1872.

The author gives a section and descriptions of the strata embracing the coal of the Nanaimo district, for which Dr. G. M. Dawson subsequently proposed the name of Nanaimo group.

RICHARDSON, JAMES. Report on the coal fields of Vancouver and Queen Charlotte Islands, with a map of the distribution of the former. <Geol. Survey of Canada, Report of Progress for 1872–1873, pp. 32–65. 1873.

This report is mainly devoted to economic geology, but it contains important sections of Cretaceous rocks, which were afterward more fully reported upon by Dr. G. M. Dawson.

RICHARDSON, JAMES. Report on the coal fields of Nanaimo, Comox, Cowichan, Burrard Inlet, and Sooke, British Columbia. <Geol. Survey of Canada, Report of Progress for 1876–1877, pp. 160–192, map. 1878.

The article treats mainly of economic geology, but numerous sections of the Cretaceous coal-bearing strata are given.

ROEMER, FERDINAND. A sketch of the geology of Texas. < Am. Jour. Sci. 2d ser., vol. 2, 1846, pp. 358–365.

The character of the Texan Cretaceous is discussed, and its paleontological relation to that of southern Europe pointed out.

ROEMER, FERDINAND. Contributions to the geology of Texas. < Am. Jour. Sci. 2d ser., vol. 6, 1848, pp. 21–28.

The author defines the seaward border of the Cretaceous area in Texas, and discusses the paleontological relation of the Texan Cretaceous to other strata of that system in the United States and to those of southern Europe.

ROEMER, FERDINAND. Texas, pp. 464, map 8°. Bonn, 1849.

This work is mainly devoted to a popular account of Texas, but it contains preliminary descriptions of the fossils afterward described in the author's Kreidebildungen von Texas.

ROEMER, FERDINAND. Die Kreidebildungen von Texas und ihre organischen Einschlüsse, pp. 100, plates 11, 4°. Bonn, 1852.

A large number of fossils are described and figured, and the character and distribution of the Cretaceous formations of Texas are discussed.

ROEMER, FERDINAND. Ueber eine durch die Hæufigkeit Hippuriten artiger Chamiden ausgezeichnete Fauna der Oberturonen Kreide von Texas. <Palaeontologische Abhandlingen herausgegeben von W. Dames und E. Kayser, Vierter Band., Heft 4, pp. 281–296, plates 31–33.

The fossils described by Prof. Roemer in this article and referred to the Upper Turonian are from the upper part of the Comanche series of Texas.

ROGERS, HENRY D. Report on the Geological Survey of the State of New Jersey, pp. 174. 1836.

This report contains a descriptive section of the New Jersey Cretaceous, in which the deposits are defined essentially as they are now known.

ROGERS, HENRY D. Description of the Geology of the State of New Jersey, being a final report. 8°, pp. 301, with map and plate of sections. 1840.

This report contains descriptions of the "Upper Secondary" formations of New Jersey, and the plate of sections shows their position with relation to the other formations of the State.

ROGERS, HENRY DARWIN. The Geology of Pennsylvania, vol. 2, pp. 1045, 7 plates of sections, 1 map, 23 plates of fossils, 2 plates of views, 2 separate maps. 4°. Edinburgh and New York, 1868.

Prof. H. D. Rogers, in vol. I, p. 59, says that "Tertiary and Cretaceous strata border the State upon the southeast in New Jersey, but they do not cross the Delaware River into Pennsylvania." It is now known that the Potomac formation, which is provisionally referred to the Cretaceous, occurs upon the Pennsylvania side of the Susquehanna River.

ROGERS, WILLIAM BARTON. A reprint of annual reports and other papers on the Geology of the Virginias, 8°, pp. 832, and map and sections. 1884.

The deposits now known as the Potomac formation are recognized by Prof. Rogers, who speaks of them as "Jurassic, passing upward into the base of the Cretaceous." He recognized Cretaceous deposits in an artesian boring at Fort Monroe, Virginia.

SAFFORD, JAMES M. On the Cretaceous and superior formations of west Tennessee. <Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 37, 1864, pp. 360–372.

The author states that the Cretaceous outcrop is continued northward from Mississippi into Tennessee, and that at least the Ripley portion of the Mississippi section is continued northward into Kentucky.

SAFFORD, JAMES M. Geology of Tennessee. 8°, pp. 550, plates and map. Nashville, 1869.

The author recognizes three divisions of the Cretaceous in Tennessee, namely, the Ripley, Greensand, and Coffeesand. The last he regards as equivalent to the Tombigbee sand of Hilgard, and the first to the Ripley group of that author. The latter alone extends northward to the Kentucky line.

SAWKINS, JAMES G. Reports on the geology of Jamaica, or Part II of the West Indian Survey. 8°, pp. 339, 1 map and 7 plates of sections. London, 1869.

SAY, THOMAS. Observations on some species of zoophytes, shells, etc., principally fossil. <Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 1, 1819, pp. 381–387, and vol. 2, pp. 34–45.

The genus Exogyra is described. Mr. Say's studies of fossils appear to have been biological only, and without reference to structural geology.

SCHOOLCRAFT, H. R. Discovery of a coal basin on the western borders of the Lake of the Woods. <Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 19, 1855, pp. 232–234.

The proof that coal exists at the point indicated is not conclusive; but if it does exist there it probably pertains to an outlier of the Cretaceous.

SELWYN, A. R. C. Observations in the Northwest Territory from Fort Gary to the Rocky Mountain House. <Geol. Surv. Canada, Report of Progress 1873–'74, pp. 17–62. 1874.

The author notices the occurrence of coal in the Saskatchewan region in strata that have since been determined as of the age of the Belly River to the Laramie formations, inclusive.

SELWYN, A. R. C. Age of the lignitic coal formation of Vancouver Island. <Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 9, 1875, p. 318.

Dr. Selwyn shows that the coal of Nanaimo, Vancouver Island, is of Cretaceous age, and that Lesquereux was in error in referring it to the Lower Eocene.

SELWYN, A. R. C., and G. M. DAWSON. Descriptive sketch of the physical geography and geology of the Dominion of Canada, pp. 55, map, 8°. Montreal, 1884.

Dr. Dawson gives a table comparing the Upper Missouri River Cretaceous section of Meek & Hayden with that of the Peace River, and of the Bow and Belly River districts. He speaks of the Laramie as Cretaceo-Tertiary.

SHALER, N. S. Report on the geology of Marthas Vineyard. <Seventh Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Survey. 1888.

The occurrence of Cretaceous rocks, but not in situ, is noticed on pp. 325, 326.

SHUMARD, B. F. Description of new Cretaceous fossils from Texas. <Trans. St. Louis Acad. Sci., vol. 1, 1860, pp. 590–610.

This article contains descriptions of many species of invertebrate fossils from the Cretaceous formations of Texas, some of which have never yet been figured.

SHUMARD, B. F. Observations upon the Cretaceous strata of Texas. <Trans. St. Louis Acad. Sci. vol. 1, 1860, pp. 582–590.

The author gives a section of the Texan Cretaceous showing his view of their order of superposition, which subsequent investigation has shown to be erroneous.

SHUMARD, B. F. See Evans, John, and B. F. Shumard.

SMITH, EUGENE A., and LAWRENCE C. JOHNSON. Tertiary and Cretaceous strata of the Tuscaloosa, Tombigbee, and Alabama Rivers. <Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv. No. 43, pp. 189, and plates; plate XI being a small geological map of Alabama.

The map shows the areal distribution of the Cretaceous formations in Alabama. The authors recognize the Tuscaloosa formation as distinct from the Eutaw, and regard it as of doubtful age. The Eutaw, Rotten limestone, and Ripley groups are referred to the Cretaceous.

STEVENSON, J. J. Geology of a portion of Colorado, explored and surveyed in 1873. <U. S. Geog. and Geol. Expl. and Surv. west of the 100th Merid. (Wheeler), vol. 3, chap. 13, pp. 361–410. 1875.

The author divides the Cretaceous into Upper, Middle, and Lower, apparently in the same manner as it was divided by Newberry. He seems to include the equivalent of the Dakota formation in the Lower, that of the Colorado formation in the Middle, and that of both the Montana and Laramie formations in the Upper.

STEVENSON, J. J. On the geological relation of the Lignitic groups. <Proc. Am. Philos. Soc., 1875, vol. 14, pp. 447–475.

The author states that the whole series of formations which in this memoir are referred to the Upper Cretaceous, including the Laramie, are lignite-bearing. He regards the Laramie as of Cretaceous age, and includes with that formation the equivalent of at least a part of the Fox Hills group of Meek & Hayden.

STEVENSON, J. J. Preliminary report of a special geological party operating in Colorado and New Mexico, from Spanish Peaks, south, field season of 1878. <Annual Report upon the Geographical Surveys of the territory of the United States west of the 100th Meridian, pp. 271–281. 1876.

Prof. Stevenson notes the blending of the Dakota with the overlying Colorado formation in New Mexico. He follows King in making the latter formation consist of the equivalents of the Fort Benton, Niobrara, and Fort Pierre groups of Meek & Hayden's Upper Missouri River section.

STEVENSON, J. J. Report upon geological examinations in southern Colorado and northern New Mexico during the years 1878 and 1879. <U. S. Geog. Surv. west of the 100th Merid. (Wheeler), vol. 3. Supplement—Geology, pp. 420 and 3 maps. 1881.

The author follows King in making the Colorado formation equal to the Benton, Niobrara, and Fort Pierre groups of Meek & Hayden, but he combines the equivalent of their Fox Hills group with the Laramie under the latter name. Therefore he represents the Laramie as resting upon the Colorado formation.

STEVENSON, J. J. Note on the Laramie group of southern New Mexico. <Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 22, 1881, pp. 370–372.

The intimate stratigraphical relation of the Laramie to the underlying marine Cretaceous formation is noted, both formations being coal-bearing.

STIMPSON, WILLIAM. Cretaceous strata at Gay Head, Massachusetts. <Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 29, 1860, p. 145.

He regards the strata at Gay Head as Cretaceous rather than Eocene; and reports the discovery of "Cretaceous bones, vertebræ, and teeth of sharks, some brachyurous crustacea, 12 species of bivalve mollusca, one univalve, leaves, fragments, and seeds of dicotyledonous plants, etc." He mentions no identification of species, and gives no specific or generic names.

ST. JOHN, ORESTES. Notes on the geology of northeastern New Mexico. <U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Bull., vol. 2, pp. 279–308, plates 42–49. 1876.

The Cretaceous formations of the upper basin of the Canadian River are described and discussed.

TOULA, FRANZ. Beschreibung Mesozoischer Versteinerungen von der Kuhn Insel. <Die zweite deutsche Nordpolarfahrt, II Band, pp. 497–507, 2 plates. Leipzig, 1874.

A few fossils from Kuhn Island, off the east coast of Greenland, are described, among which are varieties of Aucella.

TRASK, JOHN B. Description of a new species of Ammonite and Baculite from the Tertiary rocks of Chico Creek. <Proc. Cal. Acad. Nat. Sci., 1st ed., vol. 1, 1856, pp. 85, 86, figures on plate II.

The strata from which these fossils came were afterward included in the Chico group by the California geologists, which is now regarded as of Cretaceous age.

TROOST, GERARD. Fifth Geological Report to the Twenty-third General Assembly of Tennessee, pp. 75 and 3 maps. 1840.

The existence of a Cretaceous deposit in Tennessee is recognized and some of its fossils are mentioned by name.

TUOMEY, M. [Letter to Dr. S. G. Morton.] Proc. Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., vol. I, pp. 32, 33. 1848.

Prof. Tuomey states that six species of Cretaceous fossils are found at Wilmington, North Carolina, and Santee, South Carolina, commingled with an Eocene molluscan fauna.

TUOMEY, M. Report of the Geology of South Carolina, pp. i–iv, and 1–293 and i, lvi. Two maps. 4°. 1848.

The author shows the existence of Cretaceous deposits along the Great Peedee River and its tributaries. He also mentions the commingling of Cretaceous and Tertiary fossils, claiming that no less than six species of Cretaceous mollusks pass up into the Eocene of North Carolina and South Carolina.

TUOMEY, M. First Biennial Report on the Geology of Alabama, pp. 176 and map, 8°. Tuscaloosa, 1850.

An upper and lower division of the Alabama Cretaceous is recognized; the lower apparently corresponding nearly to the Tuscaloosa group of Smith, and the upper to the Rotten limestone and Ripley groups together.

TUOMEY, M. Description of some fossil shells from the Tertiary of the Southern States. <Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci., Philad., vol. 6, 1852, pp. 192–194.

The fossils described are from Wilmington, North Carolina. Prof. Tuomey states that among the characteristic Eocene fossils several equally characteristic Cretaceous forms are found, but he regards the commingling as having occurred while all the forms in question were living.

TYRRELL, J. B. Report on a part of Northern Alberta and portions of adjacent districts of Assiniboia and Saskatchewan. <Geol. Surv. Canada, Ann. Rep. for 1886, pp. 1–152E, with appendix by Mr. Whiteaves on Cretaceous and Laramie fossils, pp. 153–166E. 1887.

The Belly River, Fox Hill-Pierre, and Laramie formations are reported on.

TYRRELL, J. B. The Cretaceous of Manitoba. <Am. Jour. Sci., 1890, 3d ser., vol. 40, pp. 227–232.

Mr. Tyrrell shows that both the Colorado and Montana formations are represented in western Manitoba, but his section shows that no Belly River strata occur there.

TYSON, PHILIP T. First Report of Philip T. Tyson, State Agricultural Chemist, to the House of Delegates of Maryland, pp. 145, and Appendix, pp. 20, and geological map. 8°. 1860.

The Cretaceous is recognized as occupying a belt of country passing from northeast to southwest through the State.

TYSON, PHILIP T. Second Report of Philip T. Tyson, State Agricultural Chemist, to the House of Delegates of Maryland, p. 92. 8°. 1862.

This report contains a table of the formations of the State, including the Cretaceous.

UHLER, P. R. Observations on the Eocene Tertiary and its Cretaceous associates in the State of Maryland. <Trans. Maryland Acad. Sci., vol. 1, 1888, pp. 11–32.

The author states that the Cretaceous deposits extend across Maryland in the same general direction which their outcrop has in New Jersey and Delaware, and shows that the area occupied by the marine division is larger than it was before known to be.

UHLER, P. R. The Albirupean formation and its nearest relatives in Maryland. <Proc. Am. Philos. Soc., vol. 25, 1888, pp. 42–53.

The name Albirupean is proposed for certain beds which unconformably overlie the Potomac formation in certain parts of Maryland.

UPHAM, WARREN. Artesian wells in North and South Dakota. <American Geologist, vol. 6, 1890, pp. 211–221.

The author gives a list of 30 wells in which water flows from the Dakota sandstone.

UPHAM, WARREN, N. H. WINCHELL and. (See Winchell, N. H., and Warren Upham.)

URQUIZA, MANUEL. Exploracion del distrito de Coalcoman, estado de Michoacan. <Anales del Ministerio de Fomento de República Mexicana, vol. 7, pp. 195–261. 1882.

VANUXEM, LARDNER. [Notes furnished to Dr. S. G. Morton for] Geological observations on the Secondary, Tertiary, and Alluvial formations of the Atlantic coast of the United States of America, arranged from the notes of Lardner Vanuxem. <Jour. Acad. Nat. Sci. Phila., 1828, vol. 6, pp. 59–71. (See fourth entry on page 47.)

VANUXEM, LARDNER. Remarks on the characters and classification of certain American rock formations. <Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 16, 1829, pp. 254–256.

The author reasserts the Cretaceous age of certain deposits of the Atlantic Coast region, and refers to his paper published by Dr. Morton. (See preceding entry.)

VOGDES, A. W. Cretaceous and Tertiary of Charleston, South Carolina. <Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 16, 1878, pp. 69, 70.

The author mentions the occurrence of Cretaceous strata at Charleston discovered in an artesian boring at a depth of 950 feet.

WALL, G. P. See Duncan, P. Martin, and G. P. Wall.

WARD, LESTER F. Synopsis of the flora of the Laramie group. <Sixth Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, pp. 405–557 and plates 31–65. 1885.

The author discusses the Laramie group historically, and its flora with reference to that of the Senonian and Eocene.

WARD, LESTER F. Evidence of the fossil plants as to the age of the Potomac formation. <Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 36, 1888, pp. 119–131.

Prof. Ward expresses the opinion that the Potomac formation is not of later origin than the Wealden or the Neocomian.

WHITE, DAVID. On Cretaceous plants from Martha's Vineyard. <Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 39, 1890, pp. 93–101, and plate 2.

Mr. White shows that a considerable number of species of plants which characterize the New Jersey Cretaceous clays occur on the island of Martha's Vineyard.

WHITE, C. A. Report on the Geological Survey of the State of Iowa, vols. 1 and 2. 1870.

The existence of Cretaceous deposits in various parts of western Iowa is shown and evidence given that a large part of the State was once covered by them.

WHITE, C. A. On the eastern limit of Cretaceous deposits in Iowa. <Proc. Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., 1872, vol. 21, pp. 187–192. 1873.

Localities are mentioned at which limited or partially disturbed Cretaceous deposits have been discovered in Iowa, showing that those deposits once extended very much farther eastward than their present unbroken eastern border.

WHITE, C. A. Report upon the invertebrate fossils collected in portions of Nevada, Utah, Colorado, New Mexico, and Arizona by parties of the expeditions of 1871, 1872, 1873, and 1874. <Geog. and Geol. Expl. and Surv. west of the 100th Meridian, vol. 4, part I, pp. 1–219, pls. I–XXI. 1875.

The Cretaceous fossils described and noticed in this report are all from horizons above the Comanche series. A few of them belong to species which pass up from the Laramie into the base of the Wasatch formation. Two species from southern Utah are apparently identical with forms which prevail in the so-called Bear River Laramie.

WHITE, C. A. Invertebrate paleontology of the Plateau Province, together with notice of a few species from localities beyond its limits in Colorado. <Powell's Report on the Geology of the Eastern End of the Uinta Mountains, pp. 74–135. 1876.

The species described are from the marine Cretaceous formations, from the so-called Bear River Laramie, and from the Laramie formation proper. Powell's classification of the Cretaceous formations is adopted in this article, which includes the upper portion of the Point of Rocks group (the Laramie) in the basal portion of the Bitter Creek group (the Wasatch), the *former being then* treated as of Cretaceous age.

WHITE, C. A. Paleontological Papers, No. 5: Remarks on the paleontological characteristics of the Mesozoic and Cenozoic groups as developed in the Green River region. <Bulletin U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Terr., vol. 3, pp. 625–629. 1877.

The gradual transition from the Cretaceous to the Tertiary noticed.

WHITE, C. A. Paleontological Papers, No. 4: Comparison of the North American Mesozoic and Cenozoic Unionidæ and associated mollusks with living species. <Bull. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. Terr., vol. 3, pp. 615–624. 1877.

The genetic descent of living Uniones from those of the Laramie period is suggested, and the untrustworthiness of fresh-water molluscan fossils as indicating geological age is pointed out.

WHITE, C. A. Paleontological Papers, No. 7: On the distribution of molluscan species in the Laramie group. <Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr., vol. 4, pp. 721–724. 1878.

The unity of the Judith River, Fort Union, Lignitic, and Point of Rocks (Bitter Creek series) groups is stated, and all are assigned to the Laramie formation.

WHITE, C. A. Report on the geology of northwestern Colorado. <Tenth Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Sur. Terr., pp. 1–60; 1 map and 1 plate. 1878.

This report contains discussions of Cretaceous and other formations, showing their great displacement in the Uinta range and in two upthrust mountains. The strict conformity of the Laramie upon the marine Cretaceous formations, and the apparent conformity of the Wasatch upon the Laramie are noticed. A table of correlated sections by the writer and other authors is given and the proposition made to divide the marine Cretaceous deposits into only two formations, the equivalents of Nos. 2 and 3 of Meek and Hayden's section forming one, and those of Nos. 4 and 5 of that section the other.

WHITE, C. A. Paleontological Papers, No. 8. Remarks upon the Laramie group. <Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr., vol. 4, pp. 865–876. 1878.

The characteristics of the Laramie formation are discussed and the opinion expressed that it was deposited in a great inland sea. It is believed to represent both the close of Cretaceous time and the beginning of Tertiary time.

WHITE, C. A. Contributions to Invertebrate Paleontology, No. 1: Cretaceous fossils of the Western States and Territories. <Eleventh Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. Terr. (for the year 1877), pp. 273–319, Pls. I–X. 1879.

Fifty-six species are figured, all of which are from the Upper Cretaceous.

WHITE, C. A. Report on the paleontological field work for the season of 1877. <U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. Terr., Eleventh Ann. Rep. (for 1877), pp. 161–319. 1879.

Notes and tables in this report show the distribution of Cretaceous species, including the Laramie, in Wyoming, Colorado, and Utah. The equivalents of Nos. 2 and 3 and of 4 and 5, respectively, of Meek and Hayden's Upper Missouri Cretaceous section are recognized as constituting each a single formation, making only two in all instead of four. The opinion is expressed that certain members of the Eocene molluscan fauna existed before the close of the Laramie epoch.

WHITE, C. A. Descriptions of new Cretaceous invertebrate fossils from Kansas and Texas. <Proc. U. S. Nat. Mus., vol. 2, 1880, pp. 292–298, Pls. I–V.

The Kansas fossils are marine species from the Dakota formation. They come from the most northerly known point at which marine fossils occur in that formation or its equivalents. Other species from the same deposit were previously published by Meek.

WHITE, C. A. Description of a very large fossil gasteropod from the State of Puebla, Mexico. <Proc. U. S. Nat. Mus., vol. 3, 1881, pp. 140–142, and 1 plate.

The species described is *Tylostoma princeps*, and this announcement constitutes one of the few published indications of the presence of Cretaceous rocks in the southern part of the Mexican Republic.

WHITE, C. A. Descripcion de un gran fossil Gasteropodo del estado de Puebla (México). <La Naturaleza, tomo 6, 1882, pp. 219–221.

This description is also printed in Proc. U. S. Nat. Mus., vol. 3, pp. 140–142, and plate. (See next preceding entry.)

WHITE, C. A. On certain Cretaceous fossils from Arkansas and Colorado. <Proc. U. S. Nat. Mus., vol. 4, 1882, pp. 136–139, Pl. I.

The Arkansas species, among which is *Enclimatoceras ulrichi*, are now understood to be of Eocene and not Cretaceous age, as was then supposed.

WHITE, C. A. A review of the non-marine fossil mollusca of North America. <Third Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Surv., pp. 403-550, and Pls. I-XXXII. 1883.

All the hitherto known species, from Devonian to late Tertiary time, inclusive, are noticed and figured, 227 in number. The derivation of the brackish-water Laramie mollusca from Cretaceous estuaries thought probable, and that of certain living fresh-water mollusca and fishes from the Laramie sea, by the persistence of rivers, is suggested. The so-called Bear River Laramie molluscan fauna is shown to be entirely different from that of the Laramie proper, as well as from living faunas. The latter difference is thought to have been due to a nonperpetuation of the drainage of the waters in which the Bear River fauna lived.

WHITE, C. A. Late observations concerning the molluscan fauna and geographical extent of the Laramie group. <Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 25, 1883, pp. 207-209.

The discovery of Laramie fossils in the State of Nuevo Leon, Mexico, is announced.

WHITE, C. A. Contributions to Invertebrate Paleontology, No. 2: Cretaceous fossils from the Western States and Territories. <Twelfth Annual Report U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. Terr. (for the year 1878), pp. 1-38, Pls. XI-XVIII. 1883.

Among the species figured are ten that were originally described by Dr. Shumard, mostly from Texas.

WHITE, C. A. Contributions to Invertebrate Paleontology, No. 4: Fossils of the Laramie group. <Twelfth Annual Rep. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. Terr. (for the year 1878), pp. 49-103, Pls. XX-XXX. 1883.

This article contains a list of all the then known molluscan species of the Laramie formation as it is now comprehensively understood.

WHITE, C. A. On the commingling of ancient faunal and modern floral types in the Laramie group. <Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 26, 1883, pp. 120-123.

It is shown that within the vertical range of characteristic Laramie mollusks Dinosaurian remains have been found associated with plant remains which have been referred to the Eocene and Miocene, among which also are two species that are identified with living species.

WHITE, C. A. On the Nautiloid genus Enclimatoceras Hyatt, and a description of the type species. <Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey, No. 4, on Mesozoic fossils, pp. 16 (104)-17 (105), Pls. VII-X. 1884.

This species is now regarded as of Eocene, and not Cretaceous age, as formerly supposed.

WHITE, C. A. Description of certain aberrant forms of the Chamidæ from the Cretaceous rocks of Texas. <Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv., No. 4, on Mesozoic fossils, pp. 5 (93)-9 (94), Pls. I-V. 1884.

These forms are from the Comanche series.

WHITE, C. A. On a small collection of Mesozoic fossils obtained in Alaska by Mr. W. H. Dall, of the U. S. Coast Survey. <Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey, No. 4, on Mesozoic fossils, pp. 10 (98)-15 (103), Pl. VI. 1884.

The most abundant of these fossils is *Aucella concentrica*, which is now regarded by the author as of Cretaceous age.

WHITE, C. A. Notes on the Mesozoic and Cenozoic paleontology of California. Bull. U. S. Geological Survey, vol. 3, No. 15, pp. 1-33. 1885.

The Chico and Téjon groups of the California geologists are shown to form an unbroken faunal and stratigraphical series from the Cretaceous to the Tertiary. The Aucella-bearing strata are of Cretaceous age, and a part of them are included in the "auriferous slates." All the Cretaceous faunas of the Pacific coast region are shown to be different from any in the interior and more eastern regions, even those which presumably were contemporaneous in their origin.

WHITE, C. A. On new Cretaceous fossils from California. <Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv., No. 22, pp. 1 (349)-15 (361), Pls. I-V. 1885.

The fossils described and discussed are from Mendocino County, California, and from Todos Santos Bay, Lower California. The name Wallala group is proposed for the strata from which they come, which are supposed to be older than the Chico and newer than the Shasta formation.

WHITE, C. A. On marine Eocene, fresh-water Miocene, and other fossil mollusca of western North America. <Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv., No. 18, pp. 1–19, Pls. I–III. 1885.

The Eocene fossils are from the Willamette Valley, Oregon. The strata from which they come represent the upper part of the Téjon group, which, although doubtless of Eocene age, is discussed with the Cretaceous formations in this memoir.

WHITE, C. A. On the relation of the Laramie molluscan fauna to that of the succeeding fresh-water Eocene and other groups. <Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey, vol. 5, No. 34, pp. 391–442, 5 plates. 1886.

It is shown that a part of the Laramie molluscan fauna ranged up into the Wasatch formation, and that sedimentation was continuous from the marine Cretaceous through the Laramie to the Wasatch. The so-called Bear River Laramie is believed to be a separate formation from the Laramie proper, but the author did not then know whether the former was earlier or later than or contemporaneous with the latter.

WHITE, C. A. On the interrelation of contemporaneous fossil faunas and floras. <Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 33, 1887, pp. 364–374.

The view is advanced that sedimentation was continuous from the Colorado Cretaceous to the base of the Eocene Wasatch, inclusive. Molluscan species are shown to range from the Laramie into the Wasatch. The impracticability of definitely correlating inland with marine coast deposits is shown.

WHITE, C. A. On the Cretaceous formations of Texas and their relation to those of other periods of North America. <Proc. Phila. Acad. Nat. Sci., 1887, part 1, pp. 39–47.

This article contains a descriptive section of the Texan Cretaceous and a table of correlation of the formations above the Comanche with those of other parts of the continent. A marine formation, the Timber Creek group, is recognized as equivalent to the Dakota formation.

WHITE, C. A. On the age of the coal found in the region traversed by the Rio Grande. <Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 33, 1887, pp. 18–20.

The coal in question is shown to occur in the Laramie formation, and also in the Eagle Pass beds and their equivalents.

WHITE, C. A. On the Puget group of Washington Territory. <Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 36, 1888, pp. 443–450.

A great estuary formation in Puget Sound basin and upon the western flank of the Cascade Mountains is described. It was probably formed contemporaneously with the Laramie formation, and perhaps in part also with the Téjon.

WHITE, C. A. On the relation of the Laramie group to earlier and later formations. <Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 35, 1888, pp. 432–438.

In this article it is shown that the Laramie formation passes beneath Eocene strata in the valley of the lower Rio Grande, and the author gives reasons for discussing the Laramie among the Cretaceous formations, although the upper part is still held to have been contemporaneous with undisputed Lower Eocene strata.

WHITE, C. A. On the geology and physiography of a portion of northwestern Colorado and adjacent parts of Utah and Wyoming. <Ninth Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Surv., pp. 677–712, and map. 1890.

The Laramie formation is provisionally referred to the Cretaceous, and is shown to have been equally involved with the marine Cretaceous formations in the great displacements which are described.

WHITE, GEORGE. Statistics of the State of Georgia, pp. 1–624, and map. 8°. Savannah, 1849.

This report contains brief mention of Cretaceous deposits on pages 14 and 21.

WHITEAVES, J. F. On some invertebrates from the coal-bearing rocks of the Queen Charlotte Islands, collected by Mr. James Richardson in 1872. <Geol. Surv. Canada, Mesozoic Fossils, vol 1, part 1, pp. 1–92, pl. 1–10, and 1 map. 1876.

The author thinks the fossils "exhibit a blending of the life of the Cretaceous period with that of the Jurassic," and shows the relation of some of them to those of the Shasta formation in California, and that of others to European species.

WHITEAVES, J. F. On the fossils of the Cretaceous rocks of Vancouver and adjacent islands in the Strait of Georgia. <Geol. Surv. Canada, Mesozoic Fossils, vol. 1, part II, Montreal, 1879, pp. 93–190, pl. 11–20. 1879.

The fossils were collected by Mr. James Richardson in 1871–'75. They show the equivalency of the Vancouver strata to the lower part of the Chico–Téjon series of California. Several species are regarded as identical with those of other North American formations, and some with species found in Africa, India, Australia, Ireland, England, Denmark, France, Germany, and Switzerland.

WHITEAVES, J. F. On the Lower Cretaceous rocks of British Columbia. <Roy. Soc. Canada, Proc. and Trans., vol. 1, sec. 4, pp. 81–86. 1882.

The fossils described are from the region of Tatlayoco Lake, the headwaters of Skagit River, the lower valley of Frazer River, and from the northwest coast of Vancouver Island. The author thinks they probably represent the Upper Greensand and Gault, together with the upper division of the Lower Cretaceous. He proposes the name Queen Charlotte Islands group for the whole of Dr. Dawson's section of the Cretaceous rocks of those islands.

WHITEAVES, J. F. On the fossils of the coal-bearing deposits of the Queen Charlotte Islands, collected by Dr. G. M. Dawson in 1878. <Geol. Surv. Canada, Mesozoic Fossils, vol. 1, part 3, pp. 192–262, pl. 21–32. 1884.

The author regards these fossils as representing the Gault of Europe. He identified a part of them with species of the Shasta group of California, and also regards a part of them as identical with Chico species. He thinks the Shasta group represents two distinct formations. He also expresses the opinion that the reputed Jurassic strata of the Interior and Pacific Border regions of the United States are "more nearly the equivalents of the earliest or oldest subdivision of the Middle Cretaceous."

WHITEAVES, J. F. Contributions to Canadian paleontology, vol. 1, part I, Report on the invertebrata of the Laramie and Cretaceous rocks of the vicinity of the Bow and Belly Rivers and adjacent localities in the Northwest Territory, pp. 1–89, pl. I–XI. <Geol. and Nat. Hist. Surv. of Canada. Montreal, 1885.

This work is mainly based on collections made by Dr. G. M. Dawson and Messrs. McConnell, Tyrrell, and Weston. It contains a revision of all the species before published in Dr. Dawson's reports from the formations mentioned in the title.

WHITEAVES, J. F. Note on some Mesozoic fossils from British Columbia. <Geol. and Nat. Hist. Surv. Canada (new series), appendix 1 to Dr. G. M. Dawson's Report B in Annual Rep., vol. 2, for 1888, pp. 108–114.

Seven species of Cretaceous mollusks are described, among which is *Aucella piochii* Gabb.

WHITEAVES, J. F. On some Cretaceous fossils from British Columbia, the Northwest Territory, and Manitoba. <Contributions to Canadian Paleontology: Geol. and Nat. Hist. Surv. of Canada, pp. 151–184. 1889.

Mr. Whiteaves regards the Aucella-bearing strata of the Pacific coast, including "Division C" of the Queen Charlotte Island Cretaceous, as the homotaxial equivalent of the Gault of England.

WHITFIELD, R. P. Paleontology of the Black Hills of Dakota. <Report on the Geology and Resources of the Black Hills of Dakota, with atlas, pp. 325–468, and pl. 1–14. 1880.

Many Cretaceous invertebrates are described and figured in this work, a considerable part of which were not before known.

WHITFIELD, R. P. Brachiopoda and lamellibranchiata of the Raritan Clays and Greensand Marls of New Jersey. Monograph U. S. Geol. Survey, vol. 9, pp. 269, and 35 plates.

Prof. Whitfield's work is wholly paleontological, but this is preceded by a geological sketch by Prof. Cook.

WHITFIELD, R. P. New Jersey Cretaceous. <American Naturalist, vol. 21, 1887, pp. 66–68.

The author presents a table of the fossils that have been obtained from each of the beds of the New Jersey Cretaceous.

WHITFIELD, R. P. Note on the faunal resemblance between the Cretaceous formations of New Jersey and those of the Gulf States. <Bull. Am. Mus. Nat. Hist., vol. 2, Art. VIII, 1889, pp. 113–116.

This article contains a table showing the species which are common to the Cretaceous of New Jersey, Alabama, Mississippi, Texas, and Dakota.

WHITNEY, J. D. Geological Survey of California. Paleontology, Preface to vol. 2, pp. VII–XIV. 1869.

On pages XII–XIV Prof. Whitney names and briefly describes the Cretaceous formations that had then been recognized in California.

WILLIS, BAILEY. The Lignites of the Great Sioux Reservation; a report on the Grand and Moreau Rivers, Dakota. <Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey, vol. 3, No. 21, pp. 335–348, and 5 plates, two of which are maps. 1885.

The author notes the gradual transition from the Fox Hills strata to those of the Laramie. He also mentions the presence of numerous beds of lignite in the Laramie, but he found no true coal in that formation on the reservation.

WILLIS, BAILEY. Report on the coal fields of Washington Territory. <Tenth Census U. S., vol. 15, Report on the Mining Industries of the United States, pp. 759–771, maps, and plates. 1886.

Mr. Willis mentions a probable case of volcanic outflow among Cretaceous strata and reports the presence of important coal beds in the formation in Puget Sound basin that was afterward described by White as the Puget group. (See sixth entry on page 58.)

WINCHELL, ALEXANDER. Notes on the geology of middle and southern Alabama. <Proc. Am. Asso. Adv. Sci., vol. 10, part II, pp. 82–93, with section. 1857.

The strata which by other geologists were afterward designated as the Eutaw group and Tuscaloosa group, Prof. Winchell refers to the Lower Cretaceous. Those now known as the Rotten limestone and Ripley group he refers to the Upper Cretaceous, his classification being essentially the same as that adopted in this memoir.

WINCHELL, N. H. The geology of the Minnesota Valley. <Geol. and Nat. Hist. Surv. of Minn., 2d annual report for 1873, pp. 127–212.

The existence of Cretaceous deposits at several localities in the Minnesota Valley is noticed.

WINCHELL, N. H. Note on lignite in the Cretaceous of Minnesota. <Am. Jour. Sci. 3d ser., vol. 10, 1875, p. 307.

The author mentions lignite in the Cretaceous deposits of different parts of Minnesota, and thinks that the Cretaceous extended over the entire State prior to the drift period. He also thinks that Cretaceous deposits were formed in both Wisconsin and Michigan.

WINCHELL, N. H. The Cretaceous in Minnessta. <Bull. Minn. Acad. Sci., vol. 1, 1878, pp. 347–349.

The author gives a brief summary of the known localities at which Cretaceous deposits have been observed.

WINCHELL, N. H. Section of a deep well at Emmetsburg, Iowa. <Bull. Minn. Acad. Sci., vol. 1, 1880, pp. 387, 388.

It seems probable from the report of this boring that there are about 200 feet of Cretaceous deposits beneath the drift at Emmetsburg.

WINCHELL, N. H. The Cretaceous in Minnesota. <Bull. Minn. Acad. Sci., vol. 1, 1880, pp. 347–350.

The presence of Cretaceous deposits is mentioned in the following counties: Steele, Freeborn, Fillmore, Mower, and other counties. The author thinks there is evidence that these deposits once covered nearly the whole State of Minnesota.

WINCHELL, N. H., and WARREN UPHAM. The Geological and Natural History Survey of Minnesota. The Geology of Minnesota, vol. 2 of the final report, pp. 695, 4°, with maps and plates. 1888.

Prof. Winchell and Mr. Upham show in this report that there are Cretaceous deposits in the counties of Wabasha, Goodhue, Dakota, Carver, Scott, Sibley, Nicollet, Renville, Wright, Hennepin, Stearns, Douglas, Pope, Grant, Stevens, Wilkin, Traverse, Otter Tail, Crow Wing, Morrison, Becker, and Clay. The first three of these counties border on the Mississippi. Previous reports show the existence of Cretaceous deposits in different counties of southwestern Minnesota.

HISTORICAL SKETCH.

The publications of the foregoing list which appear under the name of each author represent to a great extent the growth of his views upon the general subject; and if the whole were arranged in chronological order it would serve in some measure as a historical guide to the gradual development of our knowledge of the North American Cretaceous. It would be interesting to pursue this subject in detail, but the following brief sketch extending from the third to the eighth decade of the present century, inclusive, is thought to be sufficient for this occasion.

Some of the North American formations which are now recognized as of Cretaceous age, especially those along the Atlantic border, were partially studied, and observations upon them were published as early as the second decade of the present century, but their true taxonomic position was not then recognized. Also descriptions of a few characteristic fossils of those formations were published by different authors in these earlier years of geological inquiry, but they were then treated merely as zoological specimens, no distinct reference having been made to their geological age.[1]

The first published recognition of any of the deposits of this continent as representing the Cretaceous of the Old World, appears to be due to Mr. John Finch, an English gentleman who visited the United States in 1824. In that year he published an article in the American Journal of Science, with special reference to the Tertiary formations of the Atlantic coast, which contains the following incidental allusion to the Cretaceous strata there under the name of "newer Secondary." "I wish to suggest that what is termed the Alluvial formation in the geological maps of Messrs. Maclure and Cleveland is identical and contemporaneous with the newer Secondary and Tertiary formations of France, England, Spain, Germany, Italy, Hungary, Poland, Iceland, Egypt, and Hindostan."[2]

In 1828 a more complete and definite recognition of the Cretaceous age of these formations was made by Prof. Lardner Vanuxem; but being at that time pressed with other matters he placed the results of his observations in the hands of his friend, Dr. S. G. Morton, for publication. Dr. Morton published these observations in an article which bears his name,[3] but he distinctly ascribes their authorship to Prof. Vanuxem, who ought to be credited with first demonstrating the Cretaceous age of any North American strata.

In the next year Prof. Vanuxem restated his views as to the true age of the Cretaceous deposits of the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions, referring to his notes, as published by Dr. Morton, in such a way as to leave no doubt that he regarded himself as their author.[4]

---

[1] See, for example, Thomas Say, observations on some species of Zoophytes, shells, etc., principally fossil. Am. Jour. Sci., 1819, vol. 1, pp. 381-387; and vol. 2, pp. 34-45.

[2] Am. Jour. Sci., 1824, vol. 7, pp. 31-43.

[3] Jour. Acad. Nat. Sci., Phila., 1828, vol. 6, pp. 59-71.

[4] Am. Jour. Sci., 1829, vol. 16, pp. 254-256.

From time to time after the publication of Prof. Vanuxem's article, Dr. Morton published descriptions of Cretaceous fossils, all of which were in 1834 embodied in his then very important work, Synopsis of the Organic Remains of the Cretaceous Group of the United States.[1] About this time also, travelers began to bring to active geologists small collections of fossils, which demonstrated the existence of Cretaceous deposits in the great interior portion of the continent. Descriptions of, and reference to, these fossils are contained in the works of Dr. Morton, which were published subsequently to his synopsis, and which are cited in the foregoing list.

In 1836 Prof. Henry D. Rogers published a report on the Geological Survey of New Jersey[2], in which, besides much other important matter, he gave a descriptive section of the Cretaceous formations of that State. This appears to be the first published section of North American Cretaceous strata, and it is in essentially the same form as that which is now recognized by the geologists of that State. This report of Prof. Rogers is noteworthy as containing the first published results of systematic field studies of the Cretaceous formations which have since been so elaborately investigated by other geologists.

In 1837 J. F. Ducatel published a report as geologist of Maryland,[3] in which he announced the existence of Cretaceous deposits along Sassafras River, in that State; and in the next year Prof. W. W. Mather[4] suggested that certain deposits found in Suffolk and Richmond Counties, New York, the former comprising a part of Long Island, and the latter the whole of Staten Island, are equivalent to some of the New Jersey Cretaceous strata.

The existence of Cretaceous deposits in the valley of the Lower Mississippi now began to be definitely known. In 1840 Dr. Gerald Troost,[5] of Tennessee, announced their existence in that State, and gave a list of the fossils which he found to characterize them. In the same year Prof. Henry D. Rogers published his final report on the geology of New Jersey,[6] which contains descriptions and sections of the Cretaceous formations, in addition to those published in his previous report.

There was considerable activity in the study of the North American Cretaceous in 1841, inquiry having been directed to the interior of the continent, as well as to the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions. James C. Booth published a report as geologist of Delaware,[7] in which he discussed the Cretaceous formations of that State; James T. Hodge wrote of deposits of Cretaceous age in the southern Atlantic States;[8] Prof.

[1] Published by the author in Philadelphia 1834, 8vo., pp. 88, and 19 lithographed plates.
[2] Report on the Geological Survey of the State of New Jersey, Phila., 1836, 8vo., pp. 174.
[3] Annual Report of the Geologist of Maryland, Annapolis, 1837, 8vo., pp. 39, and 2 maps.
[4] Report of W. W. Mather, geologist of the First Geological District of New York, 1838, pp. 121–184.
[5] Fifth Annual Report to the General Assembly of Tennessee, Nashville, 1840, pp. 75, and 3 maps.
[6] Description of the Geology of the State of New Jersey, being a Final Report, Phila., 1840, pp. 301, 8vo., with map and plate of sections.
[7] Memoir of the Geological Survey of the State of Delaware, Dover, 1841, 8vo., pp. i–xi and 9–188.
[8] Am. Jour. Sci., 1841, vol. 41, pp. 332–343.

Edward Hitchcock suggested the existence of Cretaceous strata on the Island of Martha's Vineyard,[1] and Dr. Morton published descriptions of New Cretaceous fossils, some of which were obtained from the then little known region traversed by the Upper Missouri River.

Dr. Morton also described new species of Cretaceous fossils in 1842,[2] some of which were obtained from the Upper Missouri River region, in connection with which descriptions he tabulated all the North American Cretaceous species that were then known. Comparatively little of any of his published works pertained to structural geology, but in the article just referred to he proposed three groups or divisions for the Cretaceous system of the United States, the uppermost of which, however, is doubtless of Tertiary age.

In 1843 Prof. W. W. Mather announced the presence upon both Staten and Long Islands of strata which in this memoir are treated as the equivalent of the lower division of the New Jersey Cretaceous, thus confirming his suggestion published 5 years before.[3] In this year Issachar Cozzens suggested the presence at the western end of Long Island of strata equivalent to those of a part of the upper division of the New Jersey Cretaceous.[4]

In this year also I. N. Nicollet published a brief account of the Cretaceous formations of the Upper Missouri River region, which served to increase the then prevalent interest of geologists in that direction.[5]

The presence of Charles Lyell in the United States in 1843 and 1844, gave a still further impetus to geological investigation, and he made a considerable personal study of the Cretaceous rocks of the Atlantic and Gulf border regions. In his published articles[6] he placed those rocks in correlation with the European Cretaceous from the Gault to the Maestricht beds inclusive. He also claimed that the uppermost of the three Cretaceous divisions which were proposed by Morton, as it is found in North and South Carolina, ought to be referred to the Eocene, as has already been intimated.[7]

In 1846, and again in 1848, Prof. Ferdinand Roemer published some of the results of his geological studies in Texas,[8] the completion of which afterward appeared in his Kreidebildungen von Texas. In those early publications, as well as in the latter one, he pointed out the interesting paleontological relationship which exists between the Texan Cretaceous and that of Southern Europe. In 1846 also appeared Prof. M. Tuomey's final report on the geology of South Carolina, in which the existence of

[1] Final Report on the Geology of Massachusetts, vol. 2, 1841, p. 423.

[2] Jour. Acad. Nat. Sci. Phila., 1842, vol. 8, pp. 207–227, and two plates.

[3] Geology of New York, Part 1, Geology of the First District, p. 272.

[4] Geological History of Manhattan, or New York Island, 1843, pp. 111, and 9 plates 8vo. New York. Published by the author.

[5] Rep. Hydrog. Basin of U. Mississippi River, 1843, pp. 1–170. Am. Jour. Sci., 1843, vol. 45, pp. 153–156.

[6] Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc. London, vol. 1, 1843, pp. 55–60. Am. Jour. Sci. 1844, vol. 47, pp. 213, 214.

[7] See also remarks on a following page relative to the commingling of Cretaceous and Tertiary forms in one and the same stratum.

[8] Am. Jour. Sci., 1848, vol. 6, pp. 21–28.

Cretaceous deposits along the rivers of the eastern part of that State is shown.

During the years 1848 and 1849 Prof. Tuomey, having moved to Alabama, was engaged upon the geological work of that State, and his first official report was published in 1850.[1] This report contained a good account of the Cretaceous formations of Alabama, his classification of which has been but little modified by subsequent observers.

An increasing number of publications relating to the North American Cretaceous appeared in the sixth decade of this century, and a rapidly increasing activity prevailed in the study of those formations, especially of those of the interior of the continent. The latter work was largely accomplished in connection with Government expeditions, but much was also done by private enterprise and by scientific societies.

Prof. Roemer's final work on Texas,[2] which appeared in 1852, was the best executed and in many respects the most important work upon the American Cretaceous that up to that time had been published. It not only added much to previous knowledge of the southwestern equivalents of the formations which were already known in the Atlantic and Gulf border regions, but the author therein demonstrated the existence in Texas of a formation which was entirely unknown before his investigations began, and which in this memoir is assigned to the Lower Cretaceous of North America under the name of the Comanche series. In the same year also appeared the final report of the work which David Dale Owen and a corps of assistants accomplished in connection with the Government expedition under his direction.[3] In this report the existence of Cretaceous formations along the Missouri River west of Iowa, was announced, and the presence of similar deposits in northwestern Iowa was suggested.

In 1853 Congress authorized explorations along several lines across the western half of the continent, for the purpose of selecting a route for a transcontinental railroad. Each expedition was accompanied by a geologist, the results of whose observations were embodied in the official reports, commonly known as the Pacific Railroad reports. By this means knowledge of the Cretaceous formations of the West was increased, but owing to the hasty travel which the observers were generally obliged to make, it was not so complete as it otherwise would have been. Still, important results were recorded in the reports of these expeditions, among the more noteworthy of which were those recorded by Dr. John S. Newberry, who seized upon the most important and salient facts, and discussed questions relating to them which have since been investigated by himself and others with increasing interest.[4]

[1] First Biennial Report on the Geology of Alabama. Tuscaloosa, 1850, 8vo., pp. 176, and map.

[2] Kreidebildungen von Texas und ihre organischen Einschlüsse, pp. 100 and 11 plates, 4to Bonn, 1852.

[3] Report on a Geological Survey of Wisconsin, Iowa, and Minnesota, and incidentally of a portion of Nebraska Territory, 4to, pp. 693, plates and maps. Washington, 1852.

[4] See Explorations and Surveys for a R. R. Route from the Mississippi River to the Pacific Ocean, *vol. 6, Part 2, pp. 9–68.*

Among those who pushed out into the new western fields was Prof. James Hall, who had long been engaged upon the geological work of the State of New York. In 1855, his official duties requiring his presence in New York, he employed Mr. F. B. Meek and Dr. F. V. Hayden to explore a part of the Upper Missouri River region with reference to its Cretaceous deposits. The results of this work were mainly paleontological; those pertaining to the invertebrate fossils were published jointly by Prof. Hall and Mr. Meek in 1856.[1]

In 1856 Dr. John B. Trask made his well known announcement of the discovery in California of Ammonites and Baculites in Tertiary strata.[2] These strata are the same that the geologists of the California State Survey afterward named the Chico group, referring them to the Cretaceous. They are also in part the same strata that Prof. Jules Marcou[3] and other geologists have agreed with Dr. Trask in referring to the Tertiary.

The work already mentioned, which Mr. Meek and Dr. Hayden did on the Cretaceous formations of the Upper Missouri River region in connection with Prof. Hall, was the beginning of a long-continued series of labors by the two first-named authors, both jointly and separately, the results of which are still among the most important contributions to the literature of the North American Cretaceous. In 1856, the year in which the results of their first explorations appeared, they published an article which contained the section of the Cretaceous formations of the Upper Missouri River region, which has become so widely known as the Meek and Hayden section.[4] They made two general divisions of the series of formations which their section embraced, designating them respectively the Upper and Lower series, but they afterward applied the terms Earlier and Later Cretaceous.[5] The whole section, however, is in this memoir referred to the Upper Cretaceous of North America.

The report of the United States and Mexican Boundary Commission, vol. 1, which was published in 1857, contains a geological map, and also important discussions of the Cretaceous formations of the United States by Prof. James Hall. In those discussions Prof. Hall pointed out the true relation of the then known Cretaceous formations of the interior portion of the continent with those of the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions; and upon the map referred to he indicated the areas which were then known to be occupied by them. These statements of the correlation of those formations were the most complete that up to that time had been proposed, and they are adopted with little modification in this memoir. At this early date he also showed that deposits of Cretaceous age once extended over a large part of Iowa and a still larger

[1] Mem. Am. Acad. Arts and Sci., vol. 5, new ser., 1856, pp. 376-411, and 8 plates.
[2] Proc. Cal. Acad. Sci., vol. 1, 1st ed., pp. 85, 86, plate 2.
[3] Bull., Soc. géol. France, 3e sér., vol. 11, pp. 407-435.
[4] Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci., Phila., 1856, vol. 8, pp. 265-286.
[5] See Dana's Manual of Geology, 1874, pp. 456, 457.

part of Minnesota. In the same year Prof. Alexander Winchell made some important observations upon the Cretaceous formations of Alabama,[1] separating them into two general divisions, which are identical with those proposed in this memoir for the Gulf Border region.

Messrs. Meek and Hayden continued their work upon the Cretaceous of the Upper Missouri River region during 1857 and 1858, the results of which were published in 1860.[2] The field work was done by Dr. Hayden, in connection with an expedition in charge of Lieut. G. K. Warren, U. S. Army, and the paleontology by Mr. Meek.

During the year 1859 several important publications appeared relating to the Cretaceous formations of the interior of the continent and of the Pacific Border region, among which were a part of the results of Prof. Newberry's work in New Mexico. At this time, also, began important controversies as to the true geological age of a part of the formations in question. These controversies referred mainly to the Dakota formation in the great interior area, and to the coal-bearing strata upon and in the vicinity of Vancouver Island; the character of the fossil floras of those formations being principally concerned in them. It was claimed by Heer, Lesquereux, and other paleobotanists, that neither of those formations could be of greater age than the Eocene, and that a large part of the plant remains obtained from them indicated their Miocene age. On the other hand, Messrs. Meek and Hayden and Prof. Newberry showed that whatever the character of the plant remains might be, all the strata containing them are overlain by others which contain an abundance of characteristic marine Cretaceous fossils.

In 1859, also, Prof. Henry Youle Hind announced the existence of Cretaceous formations in a large part of the great interior portion of British America.[3] In his report Prof. Hind referred to the Cretaceous system, not only those strata concerning the Cretaceous age of which no controversy has ever arisen, but also all those which are now known as the Laramie and Belly River formations.

On the other hand, Dr. Hayden, who in the same year published results of his observations upon the strata which are now known to be referable to the Laramie formation, and which are exposed along the Upper Missouri River, referring them to the Tertiary.[4] This may be regarded as the first of a series of publications which led to the controversy concerning the true geological age of the strata now known as the Laramie formation, the second of the great controversies which have arisen concerning the true age of formations that are discussed in this memoir.

[1] Notes on the Geology of Middle and Southern Alabama. Proc. Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., 1857, vol. 10, part 2, pp. 82–93.

[2] Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci., Phila., 1860, vol. 4, pp. 417–432.

[3] The Northwest Territory, Reports of Progress: together with Preliminary and General Report on the Assiniboine and Saskatchewan Exploring Expedition, 4to, pp. 201, 2 plates and 4 maps. Toronto. 1859. Another edition of this report was published in London in 1860.

[4] Trans. Amer. Philos. Soc., vol. 11, pp. 121–138.

In 1860, Dr. B. F. Shumard, who during the previous year had been studying the Cretaceous formations of Texas, published descriptions of them and of a considerable number of their invertebrate fossils.[1] In connection with those descriptions he published a section showing the order of superposition of the Texan Cretaceous formations as he understood it from his restricted opportunities for study, but subsequent observations have shown the inaccuracy of his section in that respect.

Dr. Philip T. Tyson published his first annual report upon the geology of Maryland in this year wherein he discussed the Cretaceous formations of that state.[2]

In 1860, also, Prof. E. W. Hilgard published his report on the geology of Mississippi, in which he gave a descriptive section of the Cretaceous formations of that State, a summary of which is given in this memoir, and of which little or no modification has been proposed by subsequent authors.

In this year Meek and Hayden published a catalogue of all the Jurassic, Cretaceous, and Tertiary fossils which were collected upon the expeditions in charge of Lieut. G. K. Warren. In this publication those authors continued to refer to the Tertiary all the strata which are now known as Laramie.[3]

An important article was published in 1861 by Meek and Hayden,[4] which embraced results of field observations made by Dr. Hayden in connection with the expeditions in command of Capt. Raynolds. In this article those authors pointed out the correlation of some of the western Cretaceous formations and those of New Jersey, and also expressed their views concerning the relation of the latter to some of the Old World Cretaceous.

The most important report that had up to this time been published concerning the Cretaceous formations of the great interior area was one by Dr. J. S. Newberry recording his observations in connection with the United States expedition in command of Lieut. J. C. Ives.[5] The region he reported upon is now mostly embraced in the Territories of New Mexico and Arizona.

In Canada, as well as in the United States, the importance of obtaining definite knowledge of the geology of the western regions caused that government to send out exploring expeditions. Dr. James Hector,[6] who was appointed geologist to the one which was placed in command of Capt J. Palliser, published a report of his observations in 1861, describing the Cretaceous formations of the region which he traversed, showing their correlation with those of the Upper Missouri section of

[1] Trans. St. Louis Acad. Sci., vol. 1, pp. 582–610.

[2] First Report of Philip T. Tyson, State Agricultural Chemist to the house of delegates, of Maryland. Annapolis. 1860.

[3] Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci., Phila., 1860, vol. 4, pp. 417–432.

[4] Ibid., 1861, vol. 5, pp. 415–447.

[5] Report upon the Colorado River of the West, explored in 1857 and 1858. Joseph C. Ives, Part 3, pp. 1–154, 2 maps and 6 plates. Washington, 1861.

[6] Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, 1861, vol. 17, pp. 388–445, and map.

Meek and Hayden and with other formations. He recognized the Cretaceous age of the coal-bearing formation at Nanaimo, on Vancouver Island, the true age of which, as already mentioned, was in dispute. The controversy upon this question was continued in this year by those who had previously engaged in it.

In 1862 Prof. Jules Marcou published an important article entitled Notes on the Cretaceous and Carboniferous Rocks of Texas,[1] in which he gave his views as to the true order of superposition of the Cretaceous formations of that State and of their relation to the Cretaceous of Europe. This section is essentially correct, and is nearly the same as the one afterward published by myself[2] and by Mr. R. T. Hill.[3] In the same year Dr. Hayden published a general summary of his observations in the Upper Missouri country, and Dr. Tyson published his second report on the geology of Maryland in which he tabulated the Cretaceous formations of that State.

Comparatively few important publications concerning the North American Cretaceous appeared in 1863. Prof. Newberry, however, in this year published descriptions of the fossil plants which were collected upon Vancouver and Orcas Islands by Mr. George Gibbs, geologist of the Northwest Boundary Survey,[4] when he took the ground that these plants are of Cretaceous and not of Miocene types, as they had been regarded by Heer and Lesquereux.

In the first volume of the Paleontology of California, which appeared in 1864, Mr. W. M. Gabb published a large number of species of fossil invertebrates which were collected from strata that were afterward referred to the Shasta, Chico, and Téjon groups, respectively, all of which he regarded as of Cretaceous age. Mr. Conrad and others, however, refused to admit that those fossils which were obtained from the Téjon group are of Cretaceous age, but insisted upon assigning them to the Eocene. This was the beginning of another controversy as to the true geological age of formations discussed in this memoir, which has resulted in the recognition of the fact that the Chico-Téjon series constitutes an unbroken transition from the Cretaceous to the Tertiary.

In the same year Mr. Gabb published descriptions of some invertebrate fossils from the gold-bearing slates of the Mariposa estate,[5] one species of which, his *Lima erringtonii*, is now regarded as identical with his *Aucella piochii*, and as at best only a variety of *A. concentrica* Keyserling. Mr. Gabb and others regarded the strata bearing his *L. erringtonii* as of Jurassic age, but there seems now to be no reason to question its Cretaceous age, as is explained on subsequent pages. In 1864 also, Prof. J. M. Safford published an article in which he showed that the Cretaceous outcrop of the Gulf States is continued as a narrow belt from northern Mississippi across the State of Tennessee to the Kentucky boundary.

[1] Proc. Bost. Soc. Nat. Hist., vol. 8, pp. 96–98.
[2] Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci., Phila., 1887, Part I, pp. 39–47.
[3] Am. Jour. Sci., 1887, vol. 33, pp. 291–303.
[4] Jour. Bost. Soc. Nat. Hist., 1863, vol. 7, pp. 506–525.
[5] Proc. Cal. Acad. Nat. Sc. 1864, vol. 3, pp. 172, 173.

Several important publications upon the Cretaceous appeared in 1865. Prof. Geo. H. Cook, State geologist of New Jersey, in his annual report for this year published a map and sections showing the area occupied by, and the character of, the formations constituting the New Jersey Cretaceous, and noted the extension of the lower formation into Pennsylvania and Staten Island. In this year also Prof. Joseph Leidy published descriptions of an important collection of vertebrate fossils from the New Jersey Cretaceous.[1]

It was in 1865 that the geological survey of California published volume 1, Geology, in which Mr. Meek described several species of fossils from the auriferous slates of that State, among which was the *Aucella* that Mr. Gabb had described under the name of *Lima erringtonii*.[2] These fossils have since assumed much importance because of their bearing upon the geological age of the strata containing them and because that form of *Aucella* has been found to characterize an extensive Cretaceous horizon in the Pacific border region. Those fossils from the auriferous slates were then referred to the Jurassic by Mr. Meek, as they had previously been by Mr. Gabb, but they are in this memoir treated as of Cretaceous age.[3]

The controversy concerning the geological age of the gold-bearing slates in which these fossils were discovered, although perhaps never so prominent as have been some of the other controversies of which mention is made in previous paragraphs, has within the last few years assumed some additional importance because of its bearing upon discussions concerning the age of certain orogenic movements which have occurred in California, especially those published by Dr. G. F. Becker.[4]

Mr. Conrad having criticised Mr. Gabb's reference of the fossils of the Téjon group of California to the Cretaceous, which the former regarded as Tertiary, Mr. Gabb, in 1866, vigorously replied, defending his opinion that they are of the Cretaceous age, as he had also done on former occasions.[5]

In 1867, Dr. Hayden again discussed the Dakota formation, defending his views as to its Cretaceous age and opposing the views of those who claimed that its plants prove its Tertiary age.[6]

Mr. A. Rémond announced the discovery of the Cretaceous deposits in the State of Sonora, Mexico,[7] of which Mr. Gabb afterward published descriptions and figures.[8] Prof. James Hall continued his observations

[1] Smithsonian Contributions to Knowledge, 1865, vol. 14, pp. 135 and 20 plates.

[2] Proc. Cal. Acad. Nat. Sci., 1864, vol. 3, pp. 172, 173.

[3] I have discussed this subject at some length in Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey, No. 15, and in Monograph 13, U. S. Geol. Survey, pp. 226–232. While I am not prepared to deny the statement of certain authors that in Europe *Aucella* ranges from the Jurassic into the Lower Cretaceous, I find no reason for believing that shells of that genus occur in any other than Lower Cretaceous strata in California.

[4] Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey, No. 19, Monograph U. S. Geol. Survey, vol. 13, and Bull. Geol. Soc. America, vol. 2, pp. 201–206.

[5] Am. Jour. Conch., 1866, vol. 2, pp. 87–92.

[6] Am. Jour. Sci., 1867, vol. 43, pp. 171–179.

[7] Proc. Cal., Acad. Nat. Sci., 1867, pp. 244–257.

[8] Paleontology of California, vol. 2, pp. 257–276.

upon the Cretaceous of Minnesota;[1] and Mr. Conrad disputed the then somewhat prevalent belief that certain strata in the Atlantic border region contain a faunal and not a mechanical commingling of Cretaceous and Tertiary fossils.[2]

Prof. Geo. H. Cook in 1868 published his principal volume of official reports on the geology of New Jersey, which contains more elaborate descriptions and illustrations of the Cretaceous formations of that State than before had been published. The section of the New Jersey formations thus constructed from the labors of several investigators has become the standard for all Cretaceous deposits of the Atlantic border region, and it is now known to hold an important relation to the Upper Cretaceous of the remainder of the continent.

In 1868 also, Prof. Newberry published an article[3] preliminary to a report which he published the following year[4] containing descriptions of many Cretaceous plants, together with some from the Fort Union beds, near the mouth of Yellowstone River, the latter being then referred to the Miocene. In these publications Prof. Newberry repeats his former statement that the Dakota formation and the coal-bearing strata of Bellingham Bay are of Cretaceous, and not of Tertiary age, as has been claimed by others, his opinion being based upon the character of the plant remains, without reference to the character of the associated fauna.

In this year Dr. Hayden published an article entitled Notes on the Lignitic deposits of the West,[5] in which he assumed that all the lignites of the great interior area belong to one and the same formation, and that they are all of Tertiary age. It is, however, now known that a large part of them occur in marine Upper Cretaceous formations, a part of them in the Laramie, and only a small part of them in strata that all geologists agree in referring to the Tertiary.

In 1869 appeared volume 2, Paleontology of California, in which Prof. J. D. Whitney gave a concise statement of the recognized Cretaceous formations of that State, and Mr. Gabb described and figured a large number of invertebrate fossils. In this work Mr. Gabb continued to refer to the Cretaceous system the fossils of all the strata that are comprised in what is now known as the Chico-Téjon series.

The eighth decade of this century witnessed greater activity in geological investigation in North America than had ever before existed; and knowledge of the Cretaceous formations of the West correspondingly increased. The latter was mainly due to opportunities for study which were extended to geologists in connection with explorations that were undertaken by government authority, both in Canada and the United States, but much was also done by individual enterprise.

---

[1] Trans. Amer. Philos. Soc., 1867, vol. 13, pp. 329-339.

[2] Am. Jour. Sci., 1867, vol. 43, p. 260. This subject is discussed on following pages of this memoir.

[3] Annals N. Y. Lyceum Nat. Hist., 1868, vol. 9, pp. 1-76.

[4] Geol. Rep. Expl. Yellowstone and Missouri rivers in 1859 and 1860, by Dr. F. V. Hayden, assistant under the direction of Capt. W. F. Raynolds, pp. 145-174, Washington, 1869.

[5] Am. Jour. Sci., 1868, vol. 45, pp. 198-208.

In 1870, Dr. Hermann Credner published some results of his observations upon the New Jersey Cretaceous[1] in which he pointed out its close relationship to the Upper Cretaceous of Europe. So intimate did he regard this relationship that in the article referred to he mentions upward of forty species of the New Jersey Cretaceous fossils as being specifically identical with those of the Senonian of northern Europe.

Peter Doroschin, a Russian engineer, having made considerable collections of fossils in Alaska and the Aleutian Islands, Prof. E. Eichwald published descriptions and figures of them in St. Petersburg in 1871.[2] Among these fossils were numerous examples of several varieties of *Aucella concentrica*, which Prof. Eichwald confidently asserted to be characteristic of the Lower Cretaceous, in opposition to the views of other paleontologists, who had regarded *Aucella* as exclusively a Jurassic genus. This publication of Prof. Eichwald's contained the first distinct recognition of Cretaceous deposits in that far northwestern region, and our knowledge of the Cretaceous there has since been increased only by the discovery at a few other localities of a small number of fossil forms in strata which apparently belong to the same or nearly the same horizon.

The parties connected with the Second German North Pole expedition obtained a small collection of fossils upon Kuhn Island, off the east coast of Greenland, descriptions and figures of which were published in 1874 by Prof. F. Toula, who referred them to the Jurassic.[3] This collection contained varieties of *Aucella concentrica* which show the presence there of strata which correspond to the Aucella-bearing strata of Alaska, British Columbia, and California; all of which, in this memoir, are referred to the Lower Cretaceous.

From and after the early part of the eighth decade of this century the number of investigators greatly increased, and publications concerning the North American Cretaceous became correspondingly numerous and comprehensive. Therefore the history of this subject was proportionally less marked by conspicuous events than formerly, although the labors concerning it so greatly increased in general importance. The events also which followed those that have been mentioned in the preceding paragraphs are so little removed from the present time that further historical details are hardly necessary on the present occasion.

During the eighth and ninth decades the greater part of the publications concerning the North American Cretaceous were made in connection with reports of government explorations and surveys, both of the United States and Canada. In the United States this official work was prosecuted under three organizations, in charge of Dr. F. V. Hay-

[1] Zeitschrift der Deutschen geol. Gesell., Jahr. 1870, pp. 191-257 and maps.

[2] Geognost. Palaeont. Bemerkung über die Halbinsel Mangischlak und der Aleutischen Inseln, pp. 88-200, St. Petersburg, 1871.

[3] Die zweite deutsche Nordpolarfahrt, 2 Band, pp. 497-507, and two plates.

den, Maj. J. W. Powell, and Lieut. George M. Wheeler respectively, until the year 1879, when they were all discontinued and the present Geological Survey was established by Congress.

The Canadian Survey had been in progress many years before the present United States Survey was organized, but the former was mainly engaged upon the older formations of the eastern part of British America, until after the reports of the Northwestern Boundary Commission and of the other expeditions already mentioned had been published. Then the Canadian Geological Survey began systematic investigation in the interior and western portions of British America, among the results of which are some of the most important additions to our knowledge of the North American Cretaceous that have yet been made.

DISCUSSION OF THE FORMATIONS BY REGIONS.

EXPLANATION OF TERMS AND METHODS.

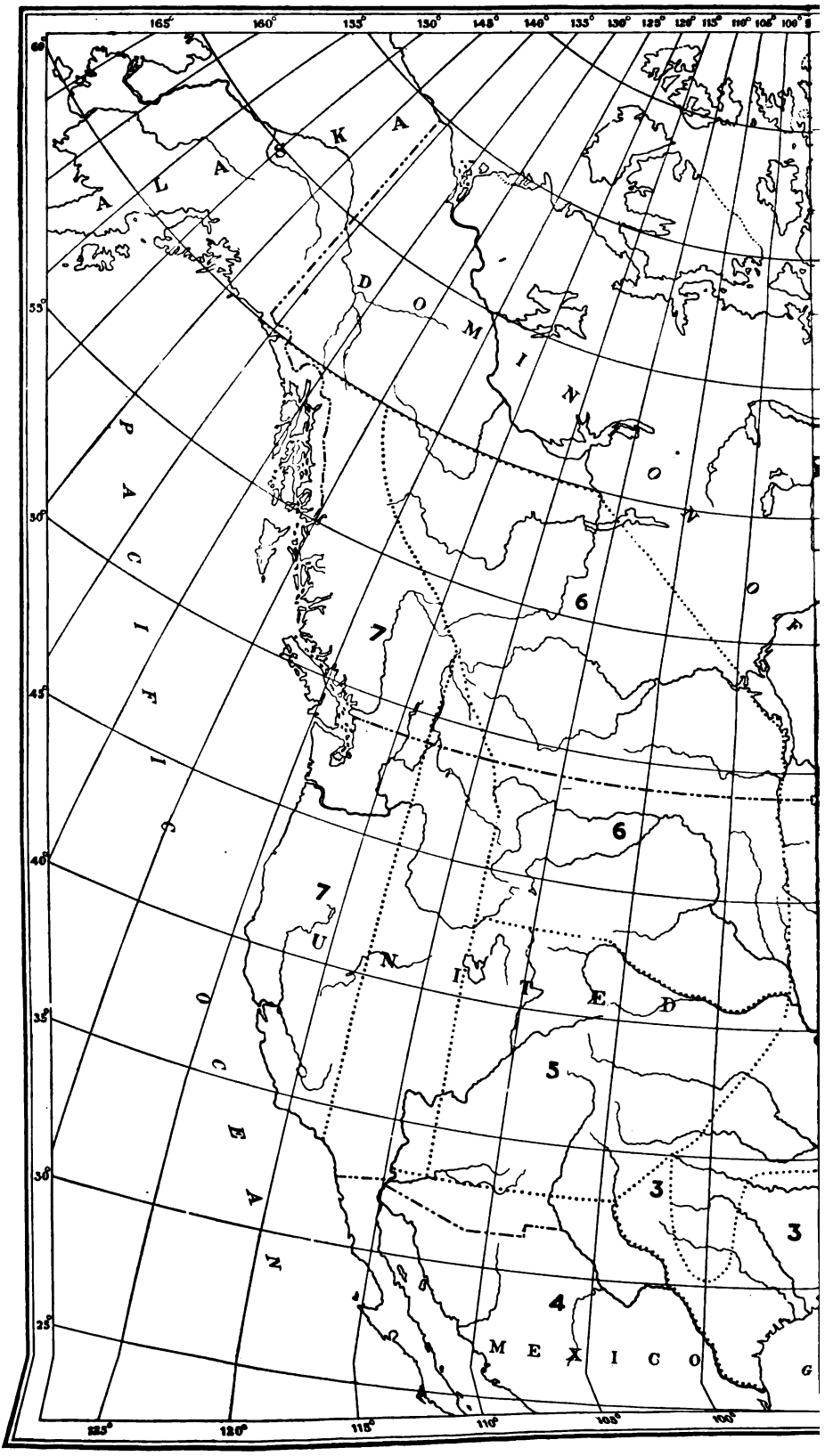
While no rocks of Cretaceous age are known to exist in much the greater part of North America, in some portions of the continent they constitute prominent geological and topographical features; and they are exposed at the surface over several large as well as numerous small areas. For convenience of description and discussion, those portions of the continent in which Cretaceous rocks occur must be divided geographically, although such divisions must, to a great extent, be arbitrarily designated as to their boundaries. For the present purpose the ordinary term region will be restricted in its use to indicate the proposed geographical divisions, while in the descriptions which are to follow the terms area and district will be used with the usual allowable latitude.

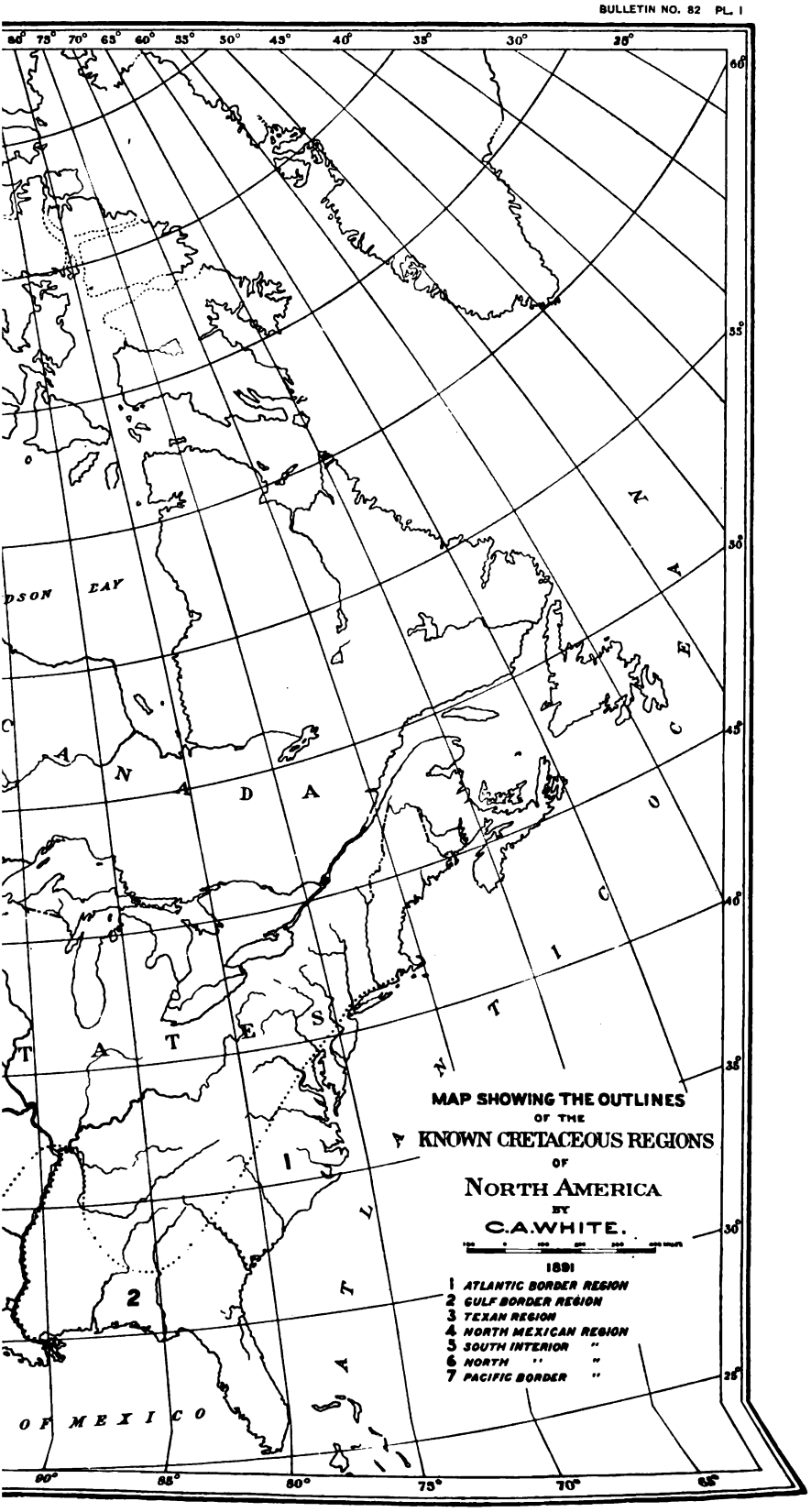
The regions which are thus recognized are in part widely separated from one another, but in most cases each region is in some degree connected with one or more others by a continuity of Cretaceous strata. Still, some of the Cretaceous format ions which prevail in each of the designated regions are found to possess certain distinguishing geological or paleontological characteristics, so that this proposed geographical division of the American Cretaceous is not wholly artificial, nor merely a matter of convenience. The following are the names which are applied to the respective regions that have been recognized.

Atlantic Border region.
Gulf Border region.
Texan region.
North Mexican region.
South Interior region } The Great Interior area.
North Interior region }
Pacific Border region.

The respective boundaries of each region are defined upon appropriate pages, and they are also shown upon the map opposite (Pl. 1).

U. S. GEOLOGICAL SURVEY




80° 75° 70° 65° 60° 55° 50° 45° 40° 35° 30° 25°
60°
55°
50°
45°
40°
35°
30°
25°
DSON BAY
C A N A D A
A T L A N T I C O C E A N
T A T E S
1
2
O F M E X I C O
90° 85° 80° 75° 70° 65°
MAP SHOWING THE OUTLINES
OF THE
KNOWN CRETACEOUS REGIONS
OF
NORTH AMERICA
BY
C.A.WHITE.
1891
1 ATLANTIC BORDER REGION
2 GULF BORDER REGION
3 TEXAN REGION
4 NORTH MEXICAN REGION
5 SOUTH INTERIOR "
6 NORTH " "
7 PACIFIC BORDER "

It will be seen that in each case the boundaries include not merely the space which is actually occupied by Cretaceous strata at the surface, but sufficient additional space is included to show the relation of the Cretaceous with other formations, as well as the relation of the respective regions to other portions of the continent. These boundaries of course refer to the present known limits of areas in which Cretaceous formations occur at the surface, and not to the limits of areas upon which they were originally deposited. It also will be seen that all, except the greater part of one, of the designated regions are included within the limits of the United States together with the southern portion of British America, in which parts of the continent only have the Cretaceous rocks been systematically studied.

A large part of the continent is too little known to allow any satisfactory discussion of or reference to its geological formations; but it can not be doubted that, with the exception of central and southern Mexico and of Central America, the regions designated in this memoir embrace all the important areas which are occupied by Cretaceous rocks. Rocks of this system have been reported to exist in some of the comparatively little known districts referred to, which reports have been based upon a few difficult explorations and the discovery of comparatively few characteristic Cretaceous fossils. Therefore the information which has hitherto been obtained concerning them is so meager that they can not be satisfactorily discussed in connection with the formations of the respective regions, but they will be noticed under the head of Extra-Regional Districts.

The boundaries of the regions, as they are defined on following pages, while they are largely natural are to some extent arbitrary. In some cases they do not coincide with the natural limits of the fossil faunas which characterize the Cretaceous strata of each region respectively, for in such cases the fauna of one region is largely represented in another; that is, the regions here designated are geographical subdivisions, and not faunal provinces. Again, the boundaries of these regions do not necessarily coincide with any interruption of geographical continuity of, or with any marked lithological change in, the character of the strata, for in several cases the formations of one region may be traced into an adjacent one without a geographical break, and without material change. In other cases the formations are presumably continuous in a similar manner from one region to another beneath superincumbent strata of later age. It is therefore apparent that, in the general discussion which will follow the presentation of the facts pertaining to the respective regions, the existence of some of these designated boundaries must largely be ignored.

All the stratigraphical divisions that have been proposed by various authors will be more or less distinctly recognized, but in some cases two or more of such proposed groups of strata will be regarded as one. Following the general presentation of the subject of the formations an

attempt will be made to trace out the great paleontological horizons of the continent which the formations represent that are embraced within the scope of this memoir.

As has been mentioned on a preceding page, the general Cretaceous section of the continent will, in this memoir, be divided into Upper and Lower Cretaceous, but without any intention of indicating that those two great divisions respectively are really equivalent to the Upper and Lower Cretaceous of Europe. All the formations which have by any geologist been referred to the North American Cretaceous will be recognized for discussion, and the names which have been applied to them will in most cases be retained in the tables of sections which are given on following pages, but in some cases two or more of the formations which some authors have recognized will be united into one.

A few words of explanation of some of the terms which are to be used in the following pages with reference to the classification of strata is thought to be necessary because they have been so variously, and often loosely, used by geological writers. This seems to have been mainly due to the fact that no one assemblage of strata ever has more than approximately the same classificatory value as another, and to the consequent impracticability of clearly defining the terms used to designate such assemblages. This difficulty is doubtless not wholly avoidable, but I shall, in accordance with the rule of the Survey, use the term formation for those assemblages of strata to which the term group has generally been applied. The latter term, however, will be retained in citations of and quotations from the works of those geologists who have used it instead of the term formation. The term epoch will be used as a time correlative of the structural term formation. The term series will be used as a collective designation for several more or less closely related formations or for a large formation that really or presumably may be capable of subdivision into smaller ones, at least locally. The Comanche series is an example of the latter kind. As to the use of other terms than those which have been mentioned, it is thought that the manner of their use will make explanation unnecessary.

THE ATLANTIC BORDER REGION.

This region, as its name implies, lies adjacent to the coast of the Atlantic Ocean. Its outlines are shown upon the map (Pl. I) opposite page 72, which also shows its position with relation to the adjacent parts of the continent. It essentially consists of the broad belt of low country which has been appropriately designated as the coastal plain, together with the adjacent peninsulas and islands. Its average elevation above the sea is less than that of any of the other regions, and its strata have suffered comparatively little disturbance since their deposition. It includes portions of the States of South Carolina, Virginia, Maryland, Delaware, Pennsylvania, New Jersey, and New York, a part

of the District of Columbia, and also certain of the islands which lie off the southern coast of New England.

The eastern boundary of the region is the Atlantic Ocean and its western boundary is the dividing line between itself and the Piedmont region, which is wholly occupied by rocks that are older than the Cretaceous. Its northern limit includes the islands just mentioned and, for present convenience, the Savannah River is chosen as the southern boundary. This southern boundary is chosen only for present convenience, because the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions are so intimately related to each other as regards their geological formations and general surface characteristics, that they can only be separated arbitrarily. The other boundaries of the Atlantic Border region are natural and capable of clearer definition.

The Piedmont region, which lies upon the western side of the Atlantic Border region, is very extensive, but, as it is not necessary for our present purpose to fully define its boundaries, it may merely be designated as extending continuously from New England to the Gulf States. The topographical and geological contrast between that region and the Atlantic Border region makes the dividing line between them quite distinct. On the one hand the moderately elevated and diversified surface of the Piedmont region is occupied by a great series of contorted crystalline Archean rocks, upon which here and there, within limited districts, rest more or less displaced Cambrian and Triassic strata. The presence of trap dikes in many places adds to the disturbed condition of those rocks. On the other hand the comparatively low and flat surface of the Atlantic Border region stretches away to the ocean; the low hills which occur within its borders being only those of circumdenudation.

The boundary line between the Piedmont region and the Atlantic Border region is even more distinct than might be inferred from the contrast between the geological and topographical features of each respectively. It is the line along which the western border of the Cretaceous outcrops rest unconformably upon the abrupt eastern border of the older rocks. It is indeed identical with the last named border, although in some places the later rocks lap further westward upon the earlier than in others. This border is so distinct a natural feature that the people of the country recognize it and often refer to it in the ordinary affairs of life. They call it the "fall line" because all the streams which rise in and flow eastward from the Piedmont region, upon reaching its seaward border, fall more or less abruptly over the suddenly terminating older and harder formations of that region upon the lower and softer ones of the Atlantic Border region. To aid the eye in tracing this boundary upon an ordinary map it may be mentioned that the following cities lie approximately upon it: New York, Trenton, Philadelphia, Baltimore, Washington, Richmond, Raleigh, Columbia, and Augusta.

The elevation of the whole surface of the Atlantic Border region above the level of the sea is so slight that, aside from the coast and drainage lines, few topographical features are developed which are capable of being represented upon an ordinary map. Tide water, in numerous bays and rivers, reaches far within its borders, and in some cases entirely across it, when the tide-flow is checked by the rock obstructions at the fall line which, as before shown, corresponds to the western border of the region. In other cases the slope of the rivers from the fall line to tide water is very gentle and the current sluggish, although in some of the rivers it is strong because of the great volume of water which flows in them.

The geological structure of this region is also very simple, and its formations are, with comparatively few exceptions, composed of uncompacted rocks, all of which have been only slightly disturbed since their deposition. The formations which are exposed within its borders are referred to the Cretaceous, Tertiary, and post Tertiary respectively; but along its western border both Cretaceous and Tertiary deposits are found to rest unconformably upon the Triassic, Cambrian, and Archean rocks. All the formations which are later than the Trias have the appearance of lying conformably with one another, and have a gentle dip toward the ocean; but the overlapping of the Tertiary upon the Cretaceous shows that the apparent conformity is not real and that the dip, though slight, is variable. The orogenic movements which resulted in the production of the Appalachian ranges, and those subsequent movements which displaced the Triassic strata of the Piedmont region, all occurred before the deposition of the oldest of the strata which are exposed in the Atlantic Border region. Consequently none of the latter have shared in those great displacements, the movements which have occurred within the region since the deposition of the strata to be observed there having resulted in little more than their present inland elevation, the overlapping just mentioned, and their gentle oceanward dip.[1] In some parts of the region even this dip seems to be little if any greater than the probable natural slope of the sea bottom upon which the strata were deposited; but in other parts the dip is plainly somewhat greater than the original slope of deposition.

Because the formations of this region have in only a few cases become compacted to any considerable degree since their deposition, escarpment exposures are rare, and even river bank exposures are not common. The Cretaceous formations are composed mainly of arkose, gravels, clays, sands, and marls, and those of Tertiary and later age are largely composed of sands.

While it may be assumed that these Cretaceous deposits underlie the whole of the Atlantic Border region, they reach the surface in only a

[1] In the northern part of the region, northeastward from New Jersey, considerable displacements of strata seem to have taken place after the close of the Cretaceous period; but this does not affect the statement as to the generally undisturbed condition of the Cretaceous strata in the remainder of this region.

comparatively small portion of its area. Even within this limited space natural exposures of undisturbed strata are few, because wherever they have been bared by erosion they were soon again covered by the débris of their own soft material, or by the washings of the overlying soil.

The aggregate thickness of all the strata occurring in this region, which will be discussed as pertaining to the Cretaceous system, probably does not much exceed 1,000 feet; and it is not known that even this aggregate is reached in any one locality.

Not only for convenience of description, but because of material differences, two principal divisions of this series of deposits are recognized. An important difference between them is that the upper division is of marine and the lower of non-marine origin. I shall therefore designate them as the marine and non-marine divisions, respectively. The marine division is certainly referable to the Upper Cretaceous, and there is apparently no room for doubt that the upper part of the non-marine division ought also to be so referred. The lower portion of the latter division is, in this memoir, treated as accupying the base of the Cretaceous system, upon the confines of the Jurassic.

The non-marine division is in part of littoral, and in part of estuarine origin, and the layers of which it is composed are usually irregularly bedded. This character is particularly observable in that portion of the division which constitutes the Potomac formation. It consists mainly of sandstone, arkose, gravels, sands, and clays, associated with which is often much carbonized wood and occasional layers of lignite. Plant remains are abundant in certain localities in both the lower and upper portions of the divisions; vertebrate remains have been found in the lower, or Potomac portion, but invertebrate remains are in all parts exceedingly rare. A few mollusks have been found in the upper portion, but the only invertebrates that are known to have been found in the Potomac portion are some imperfect specimens of a bivalve crustacean. (Unpublished.)

Considerable difference of opinion has arisen among geologists as to the true age and interrelation of the deposits which are here assigned to the non-marine division because of the apparently conflicting evidence afforded by the fossils which have been found in different parts of the region, but by clearly separating the New Jersey plastic clays from the Potomac formation proper, the apparent discrepancy of paleontological evidence will probably disappear.

The marine division of the series consists mainly of sands and marls; and the whole of it is plainly of marine origin as is indicated by the character of its fossils. Although it consists of a number of distinct beds, the whole division seems certainly to have been produced by continuous sedimentation from base to top. Its characteristics will appear in connection with following discussions.

As already stated, all the formations exposed within the limits of this region appear to lie conformably with one another, or at least

where unconformity exists it is difficult or impracticable to detect it by the eye. The plan of this memoir does not include a full discussion of formations later than the Cretaceous, but it is proper to say in this connection that although the eye cannot detect unconformity between the Cretaceous and Eocene strata, wherever the latter have been found resting upon the former in this region there is really an important time hiatus between them, evidence of which will be given on following pages.

The geology of this region, as well as that of some of the other regions, has been worked out mainly under the auspices of the States which respectively constitute portions of its area. The most important of these State works, considered in this connection, being that of New Jersey, and the Cretaceous strata of the region being more fully exposed there than in any other part of it, the details of the Cretaceous formations of that State will be first considered. The New Jersey section will also be used as the standard of comparison for the other parts of this region.

NEW JERSEY.

The Cretaceous section of New Jersey comprises both the non-marine and marine divisions into which the series for the whole region has been divided as just explained. These strata are found at the surface within a belt of country from 18 to 20 miles wide, which extends across the State in a northeasterly and southwesterly direction. This trend is parallel with that portion of the western boundary of the Atlantic border region which lies within the State of New Jersey, the western boundary of the belt and of the region being there identical. Prof. Cook defines this boundary as "a line drawn from Staten Island Sound on the eastern border of the State to the Delaware River, at the mouth of Assanpink Creek, in Trenton, on the western side." The somewhat irregular eastern boundary of the belt is formed by the western border of the overlying Tertiary formation.

Only the non-marine division of the New Jersey Cretaceous has been satisfactorily recognized beyond the northeast boundary of that State. Southwestwardly, the Cretaceous belt is continued into the adjoining States of Pennsylvania and Delaware, and beyond. The dip of the strata being southeastward, only those of the non-marine division appear along the northwestern side of the belt, and the outcrops of the different beds of the marine division lie in successive parallel lines within it.

The accompanying vertical section of the Cretaceous series of New Jersey, Fig. 1, is copied with modifications from one published by Prof. Geo. H. Cook.[1] The horizontal section, Fig. 2, is constructed mainly from the figure of a section from Philadelphia to Atlantic City, accompanying the geological map of New Jersey by the same author.[2]

The horizontal section, Fig. 3, is copied, with modifications, from

[1] See Monog. U. S. Geol. Survey, vol. 9, p. x.

[2] See geological map of New Jersey, 1882.

the figure of another section by the same author, from Metuchen to Cape May.[1]

The vertical section, Fig. 1, is intended to serve merely as a summary of the Cretaceous formations that have been recognized in New Jersey. The horizontal section, Fig. 2, shows the general uniformity of thickness of each member of the section, which was formerly thought to be the case with all of them. The other horizontal section, however, that which is represented by Fig. 3, shows that the Upper Marl bed thickens materially beneath the surface, toward the east, while all the other members of the series preserve their thickness as well as their distinguishing characteristics, with remarkable uniformity. This remark, however, is perhaps not entirely applicable to the non-marine division because little is known of the character of its contact with the underlying rocks, and because the latest of those rocks being of Triassic age there is everywhere unconformity between them and the non-marine Cretaceous division.

Prof. Cook[2] says in one of his later reports:

> The several borings for artesian wells which have been made to the southeast of the marl belt confirm the conclusions which had before been reached as to the dip of the Cretaceous strata of southern New Jersey. And borings on the borders of the ocean, and even out on the sand beaches, which are some miles from the upland, show that the strata outcropping at the high ground in the marl region are continued without change or disturbance of their regularity as far out as these borings have been made.

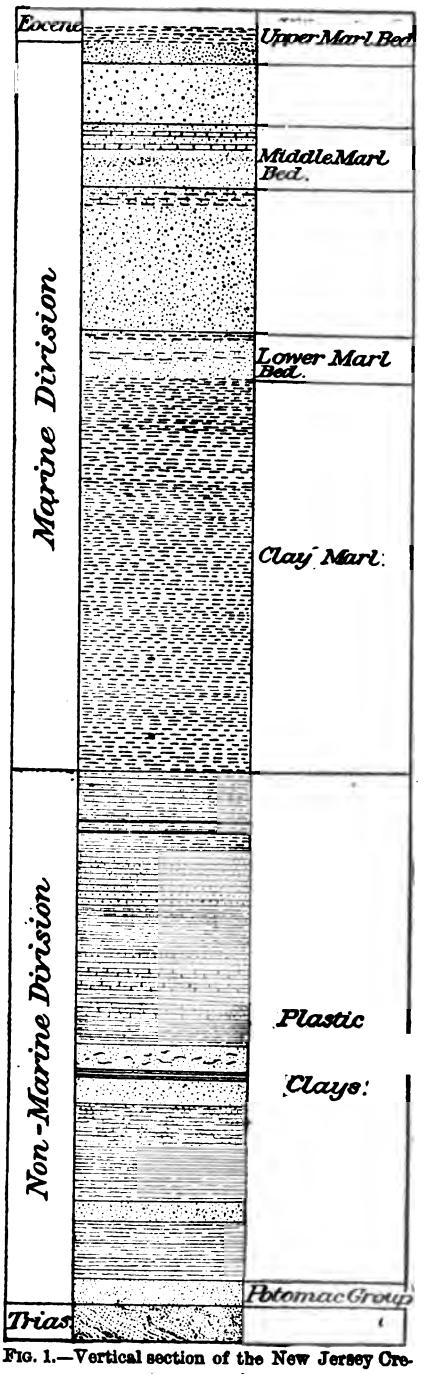


FIG. 1.—Vertical section of the New Jersey Cretaceous series.

[1] See plate facing p. 21, Geol. Surv. N. Jersey, Ann. Rep. State Geologist for the year 1884.
[2] Geol. Survey of New Jersey, Ann. Rep. State Geologist for the year 1884, p. 21.

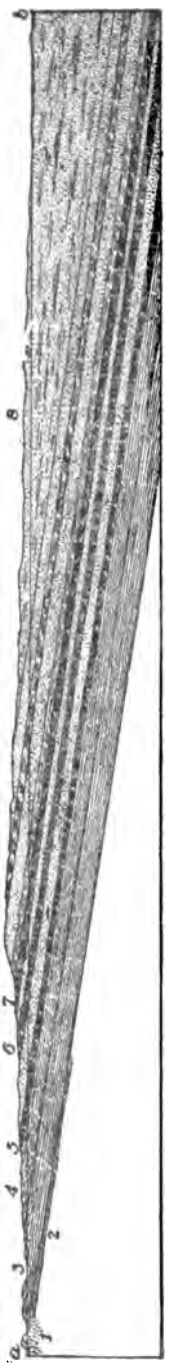


FIG. 2.—Section from Philadelphia to Atlantic City. 1, Triassic; 2, Potomac group; 3, Plastic clays, Raritan, Amboy, etc.; 4, Clay Marl; 5, Lower Marl bed; 6, Middle Marl bed; 7, Upper Marl bed; 8, Tertiary and later deposits.

The basal member of each of these sections represents certain deposits which are referred to the Potomac formation, and which were not recognized in the earlier published sections of the New Jersey Cretaceous. The uppermost strata which are represented in Prof. Cook's original sections, and also in figures 1, 2, and 3, are understood to be of Eocene age, but this matter will be further referred to in following paragraphs.

The Non-marine Division.—In the New Jersey State reports the beds which are here designated as the non-marine division of the Cretaceous series are shown to consist mainly of clays with alternating layers of sand, and in some places the presence of gravel has been noted. These beds have received various names from the New Jersey geologists, such as Amboy clays, Raritan clays, Plastic clays, Fire clays and sands, Camden clays, etc. These names seem to be in part local synonyms, but in part they indicate separate stratigraphical stages. The aggregate thickness of the whole division is given by Prof. Cook at 347 feet. But this estimate of thickness does not seem to include that of certain beds composed largely of arkose, sand, and gravel, which occur at a few localities in western New Jersey, that are evidently older than those which are included in the above estimate. These older beds are referred by Mr. W J McGee to the Potomac formation,[1] which is much more fully developed further south in the Atlantic Border region. These earlier beds of the non-marine division, if referred to the Cretaceous at all, must be classed with the Lower Cretaceous, but the Raritan and Amboy clays are regarded as referable to the North American Upper Cretaceous. They are now placed with the others in the non-marine division for convenience of discussion, and because like them they are of non-marine origin. This assumed material difference in the age of the upper and lower parts of the non-marine division of the New Jersey Cretaceous implies a probable unconformity between them, but such unconformity has not yet been demonstrated, nor are we yet able to clearly distinguish between the two parts by stratigraphical observation.

There seems to be no available data from which to estimate the thickness of the older or Potomac beds of the non-marine division, but they

[1] *See* Three formations of the Middle Atlantic Slope, Am. Jour. Sci., 1888, vol. 35, pp. 120–143.

probably do not exceed 200 feet in New Jersey. The entire thickness of this division in New Jersey is therefore estimated at about 550 feet. The characteristic strata of the Potomac formation, however, reach a much greater thickness in Maryland and Virginia than has been indicated for New Jersey.

Few fossils besides plant remains, which consist of both leaf imprints and lignite, have been found in the non-marine division in New Jersey, and these have been obtained only or mainly from the Raritan and Amboy clays. Invertebrate fossils especially are very rare. In these respects, as well as lithologically, this division strongly contrasts with the marine division. The few invertebrate fossils which have been found in the non-marine division indicate that they are of brackish or of fresh water origin, or both. The prevalence of plant remains indicates the proximity of land at the time the strata were deposited. No vertebrate fossils are known to have been found in this division in New Jersey which throw any light upon its geological age. Layers of lignite occur in some of its beds, and carbonized branches and trunks of trees are frequently met with, but these also have little paleontological value.

Large collections of leaf impressions have been obtained from the Raritan and Amboy clays, concerning which Prof. J. S. Newberry has published an article preliminary to a more exhaustive work on the same subject, upon which he is now engaged.[1]

Prof. R. P. Whitfield is inclined to regard the Raritan clays as of Jurassic age, because he has discovered in them a new molluscan genus similar to one which occurs in European Jurassic strata,[2] but no other known facts seem to be in any degree suggestive of the Jurassic age of these deposits.

Twelve species belonging to the Unionidæ have been published by Dr. Isaac Lea[3] and by Prof. Whitfield[4] from the Camden clays, which I formerly regarded as of Post Tertiary age.[5] This opinion concerning them was then held because of the close resemblance of those species to living forms; but in deference to the opinion of Prof. George H. Cook, who has carefully studied the stratigraphical relations of the Camden clays, they are here included with other beds which are referred to the non-marine division of the New Jersey Cretaceous. This is done with less hesitation than would formerly have been felt, because since that opinion was published I have obtained several species of *Unio* of equally modern types from Jurassic strata in Colorado and Wyoming. Up to the present time the only invertebrates that have been found in the non-marine division in New Jersey are these twelve fresh-water molluscan forms, and the five brackish-water forms which have been published

[1] Bull. Torry Bot. Club, vol. 13, pp. 33–37. See also further remarks on a following page.
[2] Monog. U. S. Geol. Survey, vol. 9, p. 23.
[3] Lea, Isaac, Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci., Phila., 1868, pp. 162–164.
[4] Whitfield, R. P., Mon. U. S. Geol. Survey, vol. 9, pp. 243–252.
[5] Review non-marine fossil mollusca of N. America, p. 72.

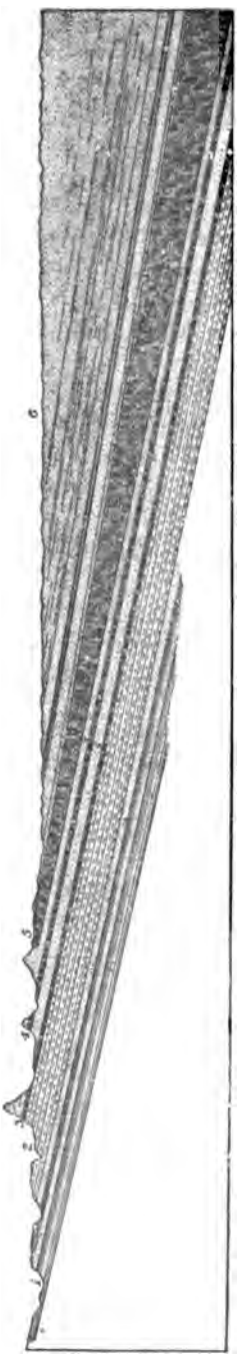


FIG. 3.—Section from Metuchen to Cape May. 1, Raritan and other clays; 2, Clay Marls; 3, Lower Marl bed; 4, Middle Marl bed; 5, Upper Marl bed, showing its oceanward thickening; 6, Tertiary and later deposits.

by Prof. Whitfield, none of which come from beds that are referable to characteristic strata of the Potomac formation.

The Marine Division.—This division in New Jersey has the appearance of resting with strict conformity upon the series of beds of the non-marine division which includes the Raritan and Amboy clays. It is not improbable that this apparent conformity is real, and that there is no material time-hiatus between them as there doubtless is between those clays and the deposits which constitute the Potomac formation as defined by Mr. McGee.

The marine division, as shown in the foregoing sections, is especially characterized by its marl beds and by a somewhat abundant marine-molluscan fauna. Besides its marl, a considerable proportion of which is glauconitic, the division consists of clays and sands together with other strata in which these materials are commingled. The stratification is everywhere quite uniform; all the beds are strictly comformable with one another, and, unlike the beds of the non-marine division, they are characterized by an abundant marine molluscan fauna. The aggregate maximum thickness of these marine beds, as stated in Prof. Cook's reports, is nearly or quite 500 feet. Its basal portion consists of a thick bed which he designates as Clay-marl, above which come the three marl beds proper, separated from one another by beds of sand.

The three marl beds are usually designated as the lower, middle, and upper, respectively, each being composed of three or four layers which differ from one another in character and composition. Each bed possesses certain lithological characteristics by which the New Jersey geologists have distinguished them from one another; but in their characterization of the upper bed they so far ignored paleontological conditions as to include at the top certain layers that are properly referable to the Tertiary. That is, while the lower and middle beds and the lower part of the

upper bed contain numerous species of fossils of Cretaceous types, the upper part of the upper bed contains none of those types, and only those which may properly be referred to the Tertiary.

The New Jersey geologists have recognized three members of the upper marl bed, which they designate as the green marl, ash marl, and blue marl, respectively. The place of the first is at the base, that of the second in the middle, and that of the last, which is referable to the Tertiary, at the top. Only a few traces of fossils have been found in the middle member, and these give no indication as to its age. We therefore can not say with certainty whether the middle or ash marl member belongs to the Cretaceous or the Tertiary and can only say that the delimiting boundary between them occurs between the top of the lower member and the base of the upper. Prof. Cook has shown that there is slight, but nevertheless real, unconformity between these Tertiary strata and the Cretaceous strata upon which they rest,[1] and the paleontological contrast between them is strongly suggestive of a considerable time hiatus also between them. On following pages reasons will be given for assuming that such a hiatus exists throughout the Atlantic and Gulf border regions between the equivalent of the green and that of the blue marl members, that is, between the uppermost Cretaceous stratum and the lowermost one which is referable to the Tertiary.

At the outcrops of the upper marl bed its middle or ash marl member, because of its strict conformity with the other members and of its slight thickness there, has the appearance of being a subordinate member of the bed; but Prof. Cook shows in his annual report for 1884 that artesian borings have demonstrated that this member thickens materially in its eastward extension beneath the surface, while the upper and lower members retain approximately the same thickness which they have at the outcrop. This thickening of the middle member is represented in the section, Fig. 3, on page 82.

It has been mentioned in preceding paragraphs that the few invertebrate fossils found in the non-marine division of the New Jersey Cretaceous offer little or no suggestion as to the geological age of the strata from which they were obtained, but those of the marine division are abundant in many palces, and a large part of them are of characteristic Upper Cretaceous types.

Prof. Whitfield, who has published much concerning the invertebrate paleontology of the upper division of the New Jersey Cretaceous[2], has given a concise summary of them, in which he shows that 354 species have been discovered, 291 of which were obtained from the lower marl bed. He has also shown that a large proportion of these species are common to the Upper Cretaceous of the Gulf border region, which important fact will be further referred to when those formations are dis-

[1] Geol. Survey of New Jersey, Ann. Rep. State Geologist for 1883, p. 13.
[2] Bull. Am. Mus. Nat. Hist., vol. 8, pp. 113–116.

cussed. The following statement prepared by Mr. T. W. Stanton from the collections of the U. S. Geological Survey shows the number of species from Alabama, Mississippi, and Texas, which he has clearly identified with species that have been published from the New Jersey marl beds. It is to be expected that many others will be identified when the faunas have been fully studied.

Statement of the number of New Jersey Cretaceous species that have been identified in southern States:

Species identified in Alabama[1]	35
Species identified in Mississippi	86
Species identified in Texas[1]	54

STATEN ISLAND AND LONG ISLAND.

As early as 1838 Prof. W. W. Mather indicated his opinion that certain of the Long Island deposits are of similar age with the New Jersey Cretaceous,[2] and in 1843 he expressed that opinion in plain terms for both Staten and Long Islands.[3] On page 272 of the publication last referred to he said that—

> The white, red, mottled, brown, and blue clays, and variegated and some other sands of Long and Staten islands are similar in their general character and in their mineral and fossil contents to certain beds of clays and sands in New Jersey, and are undoubtedly a continuation of the same formation.

This opinion has been confirmed by the observations of Prof. J. S. Newberry and other geologists.

Upon the geological map of the United States, prepared by Prof. C. H. Hitchcock,[4] as well as the one compiled by Mr. W J McGee,[5] the northern half of Long Island and the southeastern half of Staten Island are represented as being occupied by Cretaceous deposits. Those maps also represent the southern half of Long Island as being occupied by Tertiary deposits. The northwestern half of Staten Island being occupied by rocks which are older than the Cretaceous, it is evident that deposits of the latter age can exist only in the southeastern half. The proximity of this part of the island to the northern end of the Cretaceous belt of New Jersey, the trend of that belt, and the known oceanward dip of the Cretaceous strata would all be suggestive of the presence there of at least a portion of the Cretaceous series, even if the fact were not already well known.

Only the clays of the non-marine division, however, have been found upon Staten Island, and it is not probable that any portion of the marine division exists there, because no part of the island extends far enough southeastward to bring it within range of the trend of that portion of the New Jersey Cretaceous belt, and because nothing has

[1] These Alabama and Texas species were also all identified among the Mississippi species.
[2] Rep. Geol. First District New York, 8vo. Albany, 1838, p. 138.
[3] Geol. New York, Part I, Geol. First District, 4to. 1843, pp. 643.
[4] Geol. Map U. S. and part of Canada, compiled for Am. Inst. Mining Engineers, 1886.
[5] Fifth Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Survey.

been found overlying the clays upon Staten Island except the soil and the glacial drift. The clays have been found at numerous places upon the southeastern portion of the island; and at several of these localities fossil plants have been obtained, the condition of preservation of which renders them capable of classification. A considerable proportion of these plants have been identified by Prof. Newberry with species collected from the New Jersey clays just referred to.

The southern outline of that portion of the Archean region which lies within the southern New England States indicates that beyond New Jersey and Staten Island the trend of the belt of the Cretaceous outcrop is swerved strongly eastward. That is, it is evident that the trend of that outcrop holds a similar relation to the seaward margin of that northern portion of the Archean region which it does to the eastern margin of the Piedmont portion of the Archean region along the entire Atlantic border region, southward from Staten Island. Such a change of the trend of the Cretaceous outcrop as is thus suggested brings nearly or quite the whole of Long Island within its range. It is therefore probable that the conditions represented upon the maps referred to once existed, but the changes which have been wrought there by erosion and by glacial action since the close of Cretaceous time are great, and the actual evidence of the present existence of such conditions upon this island is at best very meager.

Several persons have written upon, or referred to, the discovery of Cretaceous fossils upon Long Island; but a large proportion of these reported discoveries lack confirmation. Beyond the identification by Prof. Newberry of a few species of fossil plants which have been obtained at different localities along and near the north shore of the western portion of the island, the evidence of the existence of Cretaceous deposits there is mostly or entirely confined to the known or assumed trend of the Cretaceous outcrop which has just been mentioned, and to lithological similarity of certain deposits there to those of portions of the nonmarine division of the New Jersey Cretaceous section.

All the admissible evidence of the present existence of Cretaceous deposits upon Long Island relates to the non-marine division alone. If the reputed discovery of a specimen of *Exogyra costata* Say, in digging a well near Brooklyn,[1] were satisfactorily confirmed, and it were shown to have been found in situ, the fact would be accepted as proof of the present existence there of at least a portion of the marine division, because this species is characteristic of, and confined to, that division of the New Jersey Cretaceous and to its equivalents elsewhere. But the specimen referred to is not now extant, and there is no available evidence that it was found in situ. Still, the presence, from natural causes, of this species where it is reported to have been found, even if not in situ, is an indication of at least the former existence of

[1] See Cozzens, Issachar, Geol. Hist. Manhattan or New York Island, p. 52. Also Merrill, F. J. H., Ann. N. Y. Acad. Sci., vol. 3, p. 346, and Redfield, W. C., Am. Jour. Sci., 1843, vol. 5, p. 158.

strata of the marine division upon or near that portion of the island. That is, in such a case it may be presumed to have been transported by glacial action from some not far distant northern locality.

The geology of Long Island has lately been investigated by Mr. F. J. H. Merrill,[1] and in summing up the results of his investigations he says:

> The locality at which the strata most resemble the Cretaceous beds of New Jersey is Glen Cove, where the strata already described are probably of this age. If the Cretaceous formation extends under the whole of Long Island it must occur at very great depth, since deep sections east of Glen Cove do not reveal its presence.

MARTHA'S VINEYARD.

The existence of Cretaceous deposits upon the island of Martha's Vineyard has, from time to time during nearly 60 years, been either announced or suggested by different authors, and the facts presented seemed to leave little reason to doubt that rocks of that age were originally formed there as well as upon much of the adjacent area now occupied by Vineyard and Long Island Sounds. Until lately, however, the evidence that unaltered or undisturbed Cretaceous strata now exist upon the island has been far from satisfactory.

The earliest published suggestion of the existence of Cretaceous deposits there appears to be the somewhat indefinite one made by Prof. Edward Hitchcock in 1833,[2] and which he repeated more definitely in 1841.[3] At the western end of the island there is a prominent bluff facing the sea known as Gay Head, the strata composing which are strongly folded, apparently by an orogenic movement which took place after the close of the Cretaceous period. Reporting upon these strata Prof. Hitchcock spoke of them as of Tertiary age, and as chronologically equivalent to the plastic clay of England. He says, however, on page 423 of the volume last referred to:

> I did suspect that a single stratum of greensand found there might indicate an older formation. But the organic remains which it contains are much worn, proving that this stratum consists of ruins of older strata; ex. gr. the greensand and clay of the Cretaceous formation.

In 1860 Dr. Willliam Stipson visited Gay Head and reported the discovery there of—

> Cretaceous bones, vertebræ, and teeth of sharks, some brachyurous crustacea, twelve species of bivalve mollusca, one univalve, leaves, fragments and seeds of dicotyledonous plants, etc.[4]

He mentions no identification of any of these with already known species, and gives no names, either specific or generic, to any of those which he collected.

Those discoveries were interesting but not conclusive as to the question of the existence of Cretaceous deposits on that island. Lately,

---

[1] Annals N. Y. Acad. Sci., vol. 8, pp. 341–364, plates 27, 28.
[2] Rep. Geol. Massachusetts, Amherst, 1833, p. 183.
[3] Final Rep. Geol. Massachusetts, vol. 2, p. 423.
[4] Am. Jour. Sci., 1860, vol. 29, p. 145.

however, others have been made upon different parts of the island by Prof. N. S. Shaler[1] and Mr. David White[2] respectively, which leave no doubt that Cretaceous deposits in situ now exist upon Martha's Vineyard. Prof. Shaler obtained a collection of molluscan fossils from a locality about 5 miles southwestward from the town of Vineyard Haven. These fossils consist almost entirely of casts and molds in thin layers of ferruginous sandstone, and comprise about a dozen species, among which is an *Exogyra*. The facies of the collection, as a whole, is also suggestive of its Cretaceous age, but none of the species have been identified with any published forms. The fragments of strata containing the fossils were, however, not found in situ. They were found scattered among drift material upon and near the surface, but their position and their condition indicate that they have not been transported any considerable distance from the place of their original deposition. These fossils are of marine origin, and if really of Cretaceous age, doubtless belong to the Upper Cretaceous. A suggestion as to their stratigraphical position is given on a following page.

The discoveries of Mr. White relate entirely to deposits which are shown by the fossil plants they contain to be equivalent to the Raritan and Amboy clays of New Jersey. The condition in which he found those remains is such as to indicate that the strata inclosing them are really in situ. It therefore appears that the non-marine division of the New Jersey Cretaceous is certainly represented on Martha's Vineyard; and it is probable that marine Upper Cretaceous strata also exist there.

PENNSYLVANIA AND DELAWARE.

Prof. H. D. Rogers, in his final report of the Pennsylvania survey[3] says:

> Tertiary and Cretaceous strata border the State upon the southeast in New Jersey, but they do not cross the Delaware River into Pennsylvania.

It is now known, however, that clays and gravels of what in this memoir is designated as the non-marine division of the New Jersey Cretaceous series occur upon the Pennsylvania side of the Delaware River, those found near Edge Hill and Chestnut Hill perhaps being best known. These exposures, as well as a few others, have been recognized by members of the present Pennsylvania survey, and by other geologists, at various localities not far from the river, between a point opposite Trenton, New Jersey, and the Delaware State boundary.

The belt of outcrop of the whole New Jersey series, preserving about the same width that it has in that State, is continued across the narrow northern portion of the State of Delaware, but very little has been published concerning the existence of the marine division there. The

[1] Seventh Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Survey, pp. 297-363, plates 19-29. Also Bull. Mus. Comp. Zool. Harvard Col., 1889, vol. 16, pp. 89-97, pl. 1.

[2] Am. Jour. Sci., 1890, vol. 39, pp. 93-101, plate 2.

[3] Geology of Pennsylvania, vol. 2, page 59.

western border of the belt, which of course is that of the non-marine division, passes through the city of Wilmington, and thence to the northwestern corner of the State.

J. C. Booth, in his report on the geology of Delaware, recognized in that State both of the divisions which are found in New Jersey, to the lower one of which he gave the name of Red Clay formation, and to the upper one that of Greensand formation. Although the belt of outcrop has about the same width in Delaware that it has in the adjacent part of New Jersey, in the former State it begins to be encroached upon by the overlapping of the Tertiary deposits, and the position of its eastern border is therefore a matter of uncertainty in some places.

MARYLAND AND THE DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA.

The Cretaceous belt, which has already been described as extending through New Jersey and across the northern part of Delaware, also crosses the State of Maryland. In doing so it is known to embrace the northern end of Chesapeake Bay, but the outlines of the belt have not yet been so clearly defined as they have been in New Jersey and Delaware. This is largely due to the overlapping of the Tertiary and later deposits, and to the few and small exposures of strata in the comparatively level area occupied by those formations.

Dr. Philip T. Tyson, in his reports on the geology of Maryland,[1] recognized the existence in that State of the deposits which in this region are now referred to the marine and non-marine divisions of the Cretaceous respectively. He did not separate or clearly define them from each other, but he separated one portion of the non-marine division from the remainder of it, under the name of Iron-ore clays. The difference, however, between these two subdivisions seems to be merely local, or at least not constant for the whole division, as he recognized it.

Comparatively few outcrops of Cretaceous strata are found in Maryland because of the flatness of the country and the prevalence of overlying later deposits; but Mr. P. R. Uhler[2] and Dr. W. B. Clark[3] have lately made considerable additions to our knowledge of the Cretaceous of that State. They show that both the marine and non-marine divisions of the Cretaceous series of this region extend across Maryland as they have been shown to extend across New Jersey and Delaware, and in the same general direction. The western border of the non-marine division, which may be traced with some accuracy, after passing through

[1] First Rep. of Philip T. Tyson, State Ag. Chemist, to the House of Delegates of Maryland: Annapolis, 1860.

Second Rep. of Philip T. Tyson, State Ag. Chemist, to the House of Delegates of Maryland: Annapolis, 1862.

[2] Observations upon the Eocene Tertiary and its Cretaceous Associates in the State of Maryland. Trans. Maryland Acad. Sci., 1888, vol. 1, pp. 11-32.

[3] Discovery of Fossil-bearing Cretaceous Strata in Anne Arundel and Prince George Counties, Maryland. Johns Hopkins University Circulars, 1889, vol. 8, No. 69, pp. 20-21. See also Circular No. 81, 1890, vol. 9, pp. 69-71.

Baltimore, enters the District of Columbia, passes through Washington, and thence continues southward across the Potomac River into Virginia.

The eastern border of the marine division is not so clearly defined as is the western border of the non-marine, but some of the characteristic fossils of the former division have been found near Fort Washington, about 12 miles south of the city of Washington, and also at a locality 5 or 6 miles eastward from that city. These, together with certain facts which are stated by Messrs. Clark and Uhler, indicate that the Cretaceous belt retains about the same width through Maryland and up to its crossing of the Potomac River into Virginia that it is known to have in New Jersey and Delaware.

The smaller subdivisions of the Cretaceous as they are known in New Jersey have not been fully recognized in Maryland, and it is probable that they lose their identity to a large extent in the latter State. Along Sassafras River, in the northeastern part of the State, according to Mr. McGee, the strata which are referred to the marine division rest unconformably upon those referred to the non-marine,[1] which indicates the probable absence there of the Clay Marl, if not also of the Raritan and Amboy clays. No equivalent of those clays have yet been satisfactorily recognized so far south as this locality, and all the strata there which are referable to the non-marine division are understood to be such as are characteristic of the Potomac formation. Therefore the unconformity reported by Mr. McGee accords with other observed conditions.

The clays of the non-marine division which are found between Baltimore and Washington have yielded both vertebrate and plant remains. The latter were thought by Dr. Tyson to be of Cretaceous age,[2] and the former have been referred to the Jurassic by Prof. Marsh.[3]

No trace of the marine division of the Cretaceous has yet been found in the District of Columbia, although small exposures of it have been discovered in Maryland not far from the District boundary, as already mentioned. Considerable exposures of the lower division, however, occur there, which have been described by Mr. McGee in his publications concerning the Potomac formation.[4]

It ought to be mentioned here that Mr. P. R. Uhler has reported the existence in Maryland of a deposit of light-colored sands and clays unconformably overlying the Potomac formation, to which he gave the name of Albirupean.[5] This deposit is also mentioned by Dr. W. B. Clark,[6] but comparatively little is yet known concerning it. It possibly

[1] Seventh Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Survey, p. 634.
[2] First Rep. Ag. Chemist, Maryland, 1860, p. 42.
[3] Am. Jour. Sci., 1888, vol. 35, pp. 89-94, and Ninth Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Survey, p. 115.
[4] See Three Formations of the Middle Atlantic Slope, in Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 35, 1888, pp. 120-143.
[5] Proc. Amer. Philos. Soc., vol. 25, pp. 42-58.
[6] Johns Hopkins University Circulars, No. 81, p. 69.

represents in part those deposits which in New Jersey include the Raritan and Amboy clays.

Southward from this portion of Maryland no deposits seem to exist in the Atlantic Border region which may be regarded as representing either the Raritan and Amboy clays or the Clay Marl of New Jersey. That is, all the deposits southward from here which are referable to the non-marine division evidently belong to the Potomac formation.

VIRGINIA.

From the District of Columbia southward, exposures of the marine division of the Cretaceous of the Atlantic Border region are rarely met with, no discovery of any in Virginia having yet been reported. This is doubtless due, in large part at least, to the overlapping of the Cretaceous by the Tertiary deposits; but it is worthy of remark that while the non-marine division was recognized by Rogers in an artesian boring at Fort Monroe at a depth of 835–907 feet,[1] the materials of the marine division were not there recognized by him.

From the District of Columbia a narrow, irregular, and interrupted belt of outcrop of the non-marine division, which, as before intimated, consists entirely of the Potomac formation, extends southward into Virginia by way of Alexandria, Fredericksburg, and Richmond to the vicinity of Petersburg. It is well exposed at numerous places along the Potomac, Rappahannock, and James Rivers, but only slightly so along the Appomattox. Southward from Petersburg the known exposures are few and comparatively unimportant. Indeed, nearly or quite the whole of the Cretaceous series is, in that part of the Atlantic Border region, covered from view by later deposits, and subsequent erosion has seldom bared any Cretaceous strata.

The Potomac formation, which alone constitutes the non-marine division in Virginia, has been described by Mr. McGee as consisting largely of lithified arkose, a single exposure of which reaches a thickness of 80 feet, but the full thickness of the division there has not been ascertained. He estimates it, however, at 500 or 600 feet.[2]

A large and very important flora has been discovered in the lower portion of the Potomac formation in Virginia, mostly near Fredericksburg, which has been especially studied by Prof. W. M. Fontaine, and published by him in connection with other species from the same horizon in Maryland.[3] It does not yet appear that any of the species of this flora are identical with any of those found in the Amboy and Raritan clays, and Prof. Lester F. Ward has stated that a large proportion of the species of the Fredericksburg flora are of Jurassic types.[4] It is a

[1] Reprint of Annual Reports and other papers on the Geology of the Virginias, 1884, pp. 733-736.
[2] Am. Jour. Sci., 1888, vol. 35, p. 134.
[3] The Potomac or Younger Mesozoic Flora, Monog. U. S. Geol. Survey, 1889, vol. 15.
[4] Am. Jour. Sci., 1888, vol. 36, pp. 119–131.

significant fact in this connection that a large proportion of the plant remains described and figured by Prof. Fontaine from the Potomac formation of Virginia are found in rounded and lenticular masses of indurated clay imbedded in the sandstone or arkose deposit. One is therefore disposed to inquire whether these plants may not represent a somewhat older deposit than is that part of the Potomac formation in which they are found.

NORTH CAROLINA.

Neither Prof. W. C. Kerr nor Dr. Ebenezer Emmons speaks of the existence of the non-marine division, as such, in North Carolina, but other geologists have since recognized a few exposures of it, all of which are referable to the Potomac formation. Prof. Kerr, however, has shown that there are considerable exposures of the marine division. He says:

> This formation is visible in North Carolina only in the river bluffs of the southeastern portion of the State, from the Neuse (and its tributary, Contentnea) southward. Dr. Emmons also speaks of it as occurring on Tar River. It is best exposed in the bluffs along the Cape Fear between Fayetteville and Wilmington. The Cretaceous beds of North Carolina are not usually very rich in fossils, the Greensand containing generally scattered specimens of Belemnites, Ostrea larva, Exogyra costata, and an occasional Anomia; but at several points on the Cape Fear the Exogyras are very numerous, and at Kelly's Cove, about 40 miles from Wilmington, there is a stratum of 2 to 4 feet thick which is filled with marine shells. These beds occupy everywhere the lowest position, and nowhere expose a thickness above 50 or 60 feet, so that there is nothing on which to ground even a conjecture of their vertical extent.[1]

It is not probable that any extensive exposures of the non-marine division of the Cretaceous exist in North Carolina, and those now known are few and unimportant, except that they demonstrate its existence there and afford presumptive evidence that the formation is, or originally was, continuous throughout the whole length of the Atlantic border region. Mr. McGee records an exposure of it at Weldon, on the Roanoke River, where it consists only of a thin bed of arkose.[2] It is, however, to be expected that future investigations will demonstrate the presence of this division within a belt of considerable width extending across the State.

All the Cretaceous deposits of North Carolina are so generally covered from sight by the Tertiary and later deposits that it is difficult to present a satisfactory section of the former. Indeed, the latter stretch entirely across the portion of the State which is embraced within the Atlantic Border region, so that along its western boundary those later formations are at different places found to lap directly upon the Triassic, Cambrian, and Archean rocks respectively.

The accompanying section, constructed from data derived from Prof. Kerr's report, illustrates the relative position of the formations of the

[1] Geology of North Carolina, 1875, vol. 1, pp. 147–149. [2] Am. Jour. Sci., 1888, vol. 35, p. 126.

eastern part of the State; and it also shows the slightness of the oceanward dip of the Cretaceous and later formations. The line upon which it is drawn extends from New Berne, on the Lower Neuse River, to Haywood, at the confluence of Haw and Deep Rivers, those two streams there uniting to form the Cape Fear River.

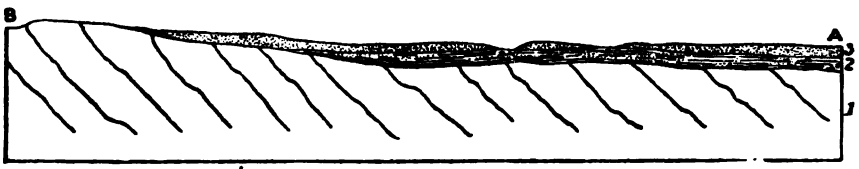


FIG. 4.—Section from Haywood to New Berne, North Carolina; 1, Archean rocks; 2, Cretaceous resting directly and unconformably upon the Archean; 3, Tertiary strata overlapping both the Cretaceous and Archean; A, New Berne; B, Haywood.

SOUTH CAROLINA.

With the exception of a few exposures of the strata of the marine division of the Cretaceous, the Tertiary and later deposits occupy the surface of all that part of the Atlantic Border region which lies within the State of South Carolina, along the inland border of which they rest unconformably upon the Triassic, Cambrian, and Archean rocks, respectively, as they do in North Carolina. Prof. M. Tuomey says the Cretaceous formation of South Carolina is a continuation of the beds so finely exposed on the Cape Fear River in North Carolina.[1] He mentions exposures of the strata as occurring only in the banks of the Great Pedee and neighboring rivers in the eastern corner of the State. A considerable number of the fossil species which characterize the upper marine division of the New Jersey Cretaceous have been found in the South Carolina beds, but neither the base nor the top of that division appears to have been anywhere recognized in the State.

There seems to be no reason to doubt that both divisions of the Cretaceous of the Atlantic Border region exist in considerable force within the limits of South Carolina, and that they are now covered by the later formations, but it is not practicable to define the outlines of the area which they now occupy, or once occupied. That they are, or originally were, continuous in a southwesterly direction with the Cretaceous series of the Gulf Border region has already been indicated.

CONCLUDING REMARKS ON THE ATLANTIC BORDER REGION.

From the foregoing statements it will be seen that the deposition of the whole marine division of the Atlantic Border Cretaceous is regarded as having suffered little if any interruption from beginning to end; and it has also been shown that its molluscan fossils indicate not only that they are of Upper Cretaceous age, but that they represent a fauna, the integrity of which was not entirely broken during the deposition of the whole division.

[1] Rep. Geol. South Carolina, 1848, pp. 132–135.

The upper delimitation of the marine division is understood to be by a time-hiatus between itself and the overlying Tertiary. Its lower delimitation is known in some places to be marked by unconformity upon characteristic strata of the Potomac formation, although it is apparently conformable upon the Raritan and Amboy clays in New Jersey.

The most northerly point in the Atlantic Border region at which strata of the marine division have been certainly recognized is upon the shores of Raritan Bay in New Jersey, and the most southerly point is in the valley of the Great Pedee River in South Carolina. The best exposures of its strata are in New Jersey; southward from that State they become so much covered by Tertiary and later deposits that it is mainly in the river banks that exposures of it are found. There is no reason to doubt that this division is, or originally was, continuous from Raritan Bay to the southern boundary of the Atlantic Border region. For reasons already indicated, and for others yet to be mentioned, it will appear that there is just as little cause for doubt that it is, or originally was, continuous with the marine division of the Cretaceous in the Gulf Border region. It is probable that deposits of this division were originally made upon Long Island and Martha's Vineyard, as has already been mentioned, but no positive evidence has been obtained that any of its undisturbed strata now exist there.

The thin layers of fossiliferous sandstone which were discovered by Prof. N. S. Shaler on the island of Martha's Vineyard, are found to contain a number of molluscan species, all of which, so far as they are distinguishable, are unlike any known forms which occur in either of the divisions of the New Jersey Cretaceous. They are marine species, and can not therefore be referred to the non-marine division. As a whole, this fragmental representative of a molluscan fauna has certain similarities with one which occurs in some Cretaceous layers that immediately underlie strata which represent the Rotten limestone in the banks of the Chattahoochie River near Columbus, Georgia. As the Rotten limestone is regarded as equivalent to the basal portion of the marine division in New Jersey, the Martha's Vineyard deposit is provisionally referred to the base of the marine division of the Atlantic Border Cretaceous, and to the horizon of the Tombigbee Sand, which will be described in connection with the Cretaceous deposits of Alabama.

The non-marine division of the Atlantic border Cretaceous consists of certain deposits the taxonomic position of which corresponds to that of some not yet well ascertained stage or stages between Triassic beneath and the marine Upper Cretaceous above. These deposits lie unconformably upon the former rocks in some places and in others upon Paleozoic and Archean rocks, respectively. The contained fossils are in part such as indicate a brackish and in part a fresh-water origin, no true marine fossils having been found in any part of the division. These facts, together with the lithological character of the deposits, indi-

cate that they are all of either estuary or littoral origin, or of both. Land-plant remains, sometimes in abundance, have been found in the deposits of the lower division, and some of them have yielded remains of land animals. All these deposits together have been thought by some geologists to be referable to the Potomac formation as it has been defined by Mr. McGee, but there are good paleontological reasons for regarding the Amboy and Raritan clays of New Jersey as of later origin than the Potomac formation proper.

The deposits referable to the non-marine division which have been found on Staten, Long, and Martha's Vineyard islands are shown by their fossil plants to represent the Raritan and Amboy clays. No deposits thought to represent the Potomac formation proper have been recognized northward from New Jersey, and none thought to represent the Raritan and Amboy clays have been recognized south of that State, unless it shall appear that they are partially represented in Maryland by the Albirupean of Uhler, which has already been mentioned.

All the deposits which in the Atlantic border region are referred to the Cretaceous and which lie beneath the horizon of the Clay Marl of New Jersey are provisionally grouped together as constituting the non-marine division, coordinate with the overlying division which is composed wholly of marine deposits. Although it has not yet been found practicable to separate the strata of the non-marine division into distinct formations upon stratigraphical grounds, the paleontological evidence which is referred to in following paragraphs indicates that not less than two distinct geological epochs are represented by them.

According to Prof. Ward the Fredericksburg flora, which has been so elaborately studied by Prof. Fontaine, contains no known Jurassic species, but it contains a large number of what he regards as characteristic Jurassic types. He identifies specifically, or as close allies, a considerable number of the members of the Fredericksburg flora with Cretaceous species, which he indicates as ranging from the Wealden to Middle Cretaceous inclusive, in view of which he thinks it difficult to believe the Potomac formation to be higher than Wealden or Neocomian.[1]

Because Prof. Newberry has not yet published the important work which he has prepared on the plants of the Raritan and Amboy clays it is not yet known whether any of those species are common to the flora of the Potomac formation which Prof. Fontaine has published, but it is unquestionable that the former flora, as a whole, is very different from the latter. The following data have been furnished by Prof. Newberry in advance of their publication: The Raritan and Amboy flora is now known to embrace about 150 species. Of these, 120 are angiosperms, 5 are conifers, 12 are ferns, and 2 are cycads. Besides the intrinsic evidence of Cretaceous age which this flora is found to possess, certain of the species among them are identified with some found in the Atane beds of Greenland, in the Dakota beds of the interior of

[1] Am. Jour. Sci., 1888, vol. 36, p. 196.

North America, and in the Upper Cretaceous of Aachen, respectively. None of these species suggests the Jurassic age of the strata from which they were collected.

The dinosaurian remains which were obtained from the clays of the non-marine division in Maryland at certain localities between Baltimore and Washington are confidently referred to the Jurassic by Prof. Marsh. From the same formation, and not far distant from where the vertebrate fossils were found, remains of cycads and conifers were obtained by Dr. Tyson. It is possible that these plant remains are specifically identical with certain members of the Fredericksburg flora, or at least it is believed they all belong to one and the same flora.

It is such facts as the foregoing that seem to make it necessary to conclude that the deposits which are in this essay designated as the non-marine division of the Cretaceous of the Atlantic border region represent at least two geological epochs. Indeed, it seems not improbable that those deposits collectively represent all or portions of the time from late Jurassic to Middle Cretaceous, inclusive. My present impression is that the Potomac formation is properly referable to the Lower Cretaceous upon the confines of the Jurassic;[1] and that the Raritan and Amboy clays are referable to the lower part of the North American Upper Cretaceous.

The character of the deposits which constitute the full Cretaceous series of the Atlantic border region indicates that the materials composing them were derived mainly if not wholly from preëxisting rocks in their neighborhood.

The prevalence of arkose among the component materials of portions of the non-marine division indicates the origin of those deposits in disintegrated masses of crystalline Archean rocks, such as are now to be observed along the eastern border of the Piedmont region. The abundant clays are doubtless decomposed feldspars, the sands, comminuted quartz, and the gravel and small bowlders, water-worn fragments of the harder parts of the same rocks. It is true that a part of the materials of this division may have been derived from adjacent Triassic and Cambrian rocks, but the amount furnished by those rocks was evidently small, and even in these cases it was no doubt originally derived from the Archean rocks just mentioned.

While it is evident that the whole of the overlying division was deposited in marine waters, the character and composition of these deposits also are such as to indicate that the materials composing them originated in the immediate vicinity or that they were not transported to their place of deposition from any considerable distance. Although there is a good degree of variety in the materials which constitute the strata of this division, the bulk of all the beds consists of sand or clay, or both, all of which was doubtless mainly if not wholly derived from destroyed portions of the lower division.

[1] See remarks on following pages, which suggest some doubt whether the Potomac formation really belongs so low in the geological scale.

In view of the facts just mentioned it is apparent that in treating of the geology of the Atlantic Border region the subject of the foreign or distant origin of the materials need not be considered, at least so far as the Cretaceous deposits are concerned. The subject of the displacemen s of strata within this region during and since Cretaceous time will also be treated as of less importance than that of those which have occurred in the other regions. That there was, however, a general subsidence of at least the greater part of the region between earlier Cretaceous and post-Tertiary time, and a similar elevation after that time together with considerable and somewhat diverse tilting, is evident.

The present position of the Cretaceous strata, as is shown by the sections given on preceding pages, indicates that the elevation referred to was not quite uniform over the whole region. The more northerly of the two sections across the State of New Jersey which are there given shows that the Cretaceous strata which are represented by its western end have been elevated more than 300 feet above sea level, while those which are represented by the eastern end are now two or three times as many feet beneath that level. Even allowing for a considerable oceanward slope of the bottom upon which these deposits were made, it is plain that in the final elevation the whole mass has there been tilted as just mentioned. The North Carolina section, a figure illustrating which is given on page 92, shows that a similar oceanward tilting did not occur there in the final elevation. Those North Carolina Cretaceous strata apparently have a less degree of oceanward dip than had the sea bottom upon which they were deposited, which indicates that a slight landward tilting of the strata has probably occurred there.

These displacements are such as properly come under the head of epeirogenic,[1] and not orogenic movements, because their final effect has been merely to add a broad border of slightly disturbed materials to the continental area. Orogenic movements, or abrupt foldings of strata, appear not to have occurred within the limits of the Atlantic Border region after the close of the Triassic period, with the exception of portions of Long Island and Martha's Vineyard. The st ata at Gay Head, on the latter island, as well as some of those near the western end of Long Island, are considerably folded, and the folding seems to have taken place in the latter part of Tertiary time.

In the study of the several formations which occur in each of the regions the names of which are given on page 72, and whose outlines are shown on the map opposite page 72, it is particularly desirable that the upper and lower limits of the full series in each case should be defined with reference to the character of their delimitation and to recognizable general paleontological horizons. Reviewing the

[1] This word, in my former use of it, was spelled "epirogenic." The present spelling is used in deference to Mr. G. K. Gilbert, who was the first to propose the word, although both orthographic forms are regarded as allowable.

foregoing discussions of the Cretaceous deposits of the Atlantic Border region with these objects in view, we find that the lower limit of the full series is especially difficult of definition, both paleontologically and stratigraphically; and also that certain questions bearing upon its upper delimitation are in more or less doubt. With regard to the latter we are aided by a great marine paleontological horizon which we shall find to be recognizable over a large part of the area which is occupied by Cretaceous deposits in North America; but with regard to the lower delimitation of the series we are not aided by a horizon so trustworthy as that, the one with which we have to deal in this case being of non-marine origin.

Although the Raritan and Amboy clays probably represent the base of the Upper Cretaceous, they are in some places known to rest directly upon Triassic rocks, between which and the clays there is, of course, a wide time-hiatus. It has also been shown that characteristic strata of the Potomac formation rest in some places directly upon the Triassic rocks and in others upon the Cambrian and Archean rocks respetively. The Potomac strata are herein provisionally classed as Cretaceous, but it has been shown that they contain fossils which certain authors regard as of Jurassic types. Even if these strata should finally be assigned to the Jurassic they must doubtless be classed with the upper part of that system, and this would also show a considerable time-hiatus between the base of the Potomac formation and the latest of the rocks upon which it has been found to rest.

Comparatively little can be said concerning the lower delimitation of the series from a paleontological standpoint because the evidence relating to it is so far from complete, and because it is mainly confined to those fossil forms which indicate the existence of continental and not of true marine conditions. That is, we must use a different class of criteria in considering the lower delimination of the series from those employed in the discussion of the upper. For the latter we exclusively rely upon marine molluscan forms, and for the former mainly upon land plants.

If no doubt were entertained as to the Cretaceous age of the Potomac formation the lower limit of the series in the Atlantic Border region could be more clearly defined than is now practicable, but the foregoing facts give little hope that this question is likely soon to be definitely settled.

The upper limit of the full Cretaceous series in the Atlantic Border region, although more satisfactorily definable than the lower, is somewhat indefinite, or at least certain stratigraphical and paleontological questions concerning it are not yet settled. The opinion has prevailed with some geologists that the Eocene strata of this region always rest conformably upon the uppermost Cretaceous strata, but this apparent conformity is not real in all cases. Prof. Cook has shown that in New Jersey the general dip of the Eocene strata is constantly less in degree than that of the Cretaceous strata. This condition is also indicated in

other parts of the region by the great overlapping of the Tertiary upon the Cretaceous deposits.

Besides these stratigraphical indications of unconformity between the Cretaceous and Eocene, and consequently of a time-hiatus between them, the paleontological conditions also point to a similar conclusion. That is, the Cretaceous and Eocene strata being both of marine origin, the molluscan fauna of each is too different from that of the other to permit the supposition that there is not a distinct faunal hiatus between them representing a lapse of time during which all, or nearly all, the characteristically Cretaceous types were extinguished, and at least a large part of the Tertiary types were introduced.

There is a condition of things in the southeastern part of North Carolina and the adjacent part of South Carolina that needs to be specially referred to in this connection because of its bearing upon the general question of chronology. This is the commingling in one and the same stratum of molluscan forms that are characteristic of the Eocene with those that are equally characteristic of the Cretaceous, the two best known localities where this commingling is reported to occur being Castle Haynes and Rocky Point, 9 and 15 miles, respectively, northward from Wilmington, North Carolina. The authors who have specially discussed this subject are Prof. Tuomey,[1] Mr. Conrad,[2] and Dr. Clark.[3]

The fact of the commingling of Cretaceous and Tertiary types of fossil mollusks in the manner referred to is too well attested by competent observers to allow of any reasonable question upon that point. Therefore the question to be considered is whether that commingling is mechanical or faunal. That is, whether the stratum in question was formed in Tertiary waters of material derived at least in part from preexisting Cretaceous strata, by which means some of the then fossil shells of the latter formation became commingled with the then living Tertiary shells, or whether that stratum was formed at a time intermediate between the Cretaceous and Tertiary, and the mollusks whose remains are found commingled coexisted as members of one and the same then living fauna.

Prof. Tuomey was disposed to believe that all the commingled forms referred to coexisted, and that the position of the strata in which they are now found is consequently intermediate between the Cretaceous and Tertiary. On the contrary, Mr. Conrad was positive in his opinion that the commingling took place in Tertiary time and that the fossils of Cretaceous types were, after their fossilization, derived by mechanical means from preexisting strata.

Dr. Clark, while he is cautious as to the expression of a final conclusion, is clearly of the opinion that the commingling is mechanical and not faunal. I also regard the commingling of the fossil forms

[1] Tuomey, M.: Report on the geology of South Carolina, 1848, pp. 169, 170; Proc. Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., 1848, vol. 1, p. 33; Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Phila., 1852, vol. 6, p. 193.

[2] Conrad, T. A.: Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Phila, 1865, vol. 17, p. 72; Am. Jour. Sci. 1867, vol. 43, p. 260.

[3] *Clark, W. B.*: Bull. Geol. Soc. Am., vol. 1, pp. 537–540.

referred to as having been produced by mechanical means, which view is supported by the following facts besides those mentioned by the authors just quoted.

The Cretaceous species which are found in this stratum are well known and widely distributed forms which elsewhere are not known to have Tertiary associates. The Tertiary species are those which occur abundantly elsewhere without any Cretaceous associates. The Cretaceous species are few in number in the layers in which the commingling occurs, while the Tertiary species are abundant and characteristic.

There is apparently nowhere among the fossils of the uppermost known undisputed Cretaceous strata of this region any premonition of an immediately impending faunal change of the character implied by regarding that commingling as a faunal one, nor is there any known lingering of characteristic Cretaceous types in the fauna of the earliest known undisputed Eocene strata in this part of the continent.

Again, the Laramie, a great formation that necessarily represents the lapse of a long epoch of time, is understood to belong in the scale of North American formations between the equivalent of the uppermost undisputed Cretaceous strata of the Atlantic Border region and the lowermost of the undisputed Eocene strata of the same region. Therefore it is understood that there is an important hiatus between the Cretaceous and Eocene of the Atlantic Border region, and that this hiatus is represented by the Laramie in the scale of formations which prevail in the Great Interior area.

The lower portion of the upper marl bed in New Jersey and its equivalent in other parts of the Atlantic Border region may be regarded as the present delimiting member of the Cretaceous series there. Much erosion of this upper member has evidently occurred, but no evidence has been observed that a still higher member of the Cretaceous was ever deposited there and since removed by denudation. Still it is believed that the present upper limit of the Cretaceous in this region falls somewhat short of representing the full completion of what may be regarded as Cretaceous time in North America. These facts seem to imply the absence of any deposits in the Atlantic Border region which might have been formed in an epoch of transition from Cretaceous to Tertiary time.

Mr. T. W. Stanton, of the U. S. Geological Survey, has lately visited Rocky Point and Castle Haynes and made some important observations. At the latter place he found the layers which contain the commingled forms to be underlain by a layer which holds characteristic species of the Ripley Cretaceous, mingled with which he could find no Tertiary forms. At Rocky Point also he found strong indications that the layers in which the commingling of forms occurs are underlain by a similar characteristic Cretaceous layer. This observation points out the evident source of the Cretaceous forms which are commingled with a Tertiary fauna.

Those who have been disposed to regard this commingling of Cretaceous and Tertiary forms as faunal and not mechanical have referred to the fact that at some of the localities at least all the shells of both series of forms are now in a similar condition of fossilization, the greater part of them being in the condition of casts and molds in impure limestone. It, however, seems reasonable to suppose that when the Cretaceous shells were washed out of their soft matrix by Tertiary waters and mingled with those of then living forms they were comparatively unchanged by the conditions of their previous entombment, and that subsequently they were all subjected to the conditions which resulted in their present common state of fossilization.

The following table gives a synoptical view of the interrelation of the different members which constitute the full Cretaceous series of the Atlantic Border region, and the relation of the series to the underlying and overlying formations, in accordance with the explanations and discussions which have been presented on preceding pages:

Table of the Atlantic border Cretaceous formations, together with overlying and underlying rocks.

Tertiary		Eocene and later deposits.
		(Hiatus.)
Cretaceous	Marine division	New Jersey marl beds.
		New Jersey clay marls and their equivalents[1].
	Non-marine division	Raritan and Amboy clays.[2]
		(Hiatus.)
		Potomac formation.
		(Hiatus.)
Older rocks—Triassic, Cambrian, and Archean.		

THE GULF BORDER REGION.

In both its geological and topographical characteristics the Gulf Border region is much like the Atlantic Border region. Indeed, so closely similar are the geological features of these two regions that there are probably no Cretaceous strata in the one that are not represented in the other. The whole area of this region is in fact a portion of the great coastal plain which extends from New England to Mexico, but this great plain is broader here than it is in either of the regions which adjoin it. It embraces the whole of the Florida peninsula and reaches up the Mississippi Valley a little beyond the confluence of the Mississippi and Ohio Rivers.

The Gulf Border region includes a portion of each of the States of Georgia, Alabama, Mississippi, Louisiana, Tennessee, and Kentucky, and the whole of Florida. It also includes a small area in the extreme southern portion of Illinois. Its northeastern boundary is the Savannah River which, as before stated, has been arbitrarily chosen as the common boundary between this and the Atlantic Border region. The

[1] This is supposed to be approximately the horizon of the marine Martha's Vineyard Upper Cretaceous deposit.

[2] See remarks on the Albirupean of Uhler on page 89.

Atlantic Ocean forms its eastern boundary and the Gulf of Mexico forms its entire southern boundary. For its western boundary the Mississippi River has been chosen as a matter of convenience because it is not practicable to select a geological feature for this purpose. The latter boundary nominally separates this region from the Texan region but so far at least as certain of the Cretaceous formations are concerned, which occur in both regions, it is as arbitrary in its character as is the northeastern boundary. The inland boundary coincides with an ancient shore line of the Cretaceous sea,[1] and the dividing line between the southern portion of the great Archean and Paleozoic area of eastern North America on the one hand and the broad border area which is occupied by rocks of Mesozoic and later age on the other. That is, the inland boundary line of this region, like that of the Atlantic Border region, is so drawn as to include only the area within which the later Mesozoic and the Tertiary and post-Tertiary deposits are exposed.

The inland boundary is indicated by outlines on the map opposite page 72, and by the foregoing description; but it may be further designated as extending from a point on the Mississippi River a few miles above its confluence with the Ohio to a point on the Savannah River near Augusta, Georgia, where it meets the inland boundary of the Atlantic Border region. From the place of beginning just mentioned it extends eastward to a point on the Ohio River a few miles above its confluence with the Tennessee River, and from there it may be followed along a strongly convex and not very irregular line to the eastern terminus. From its northerly point within western Kentucky the direction of this line is almost due south through western Tennessee and northeastern Mississippi. Here it takes a southeastward direction and passes into northwestern Alabama. Thence, by a broad curve, it passes nearly centrally through Alabama and through a part of Georgia to the point near Augusta before mentioned.

From the point near Augusta to central Alabama the inland boundary line is approximately coincident with a continuation of the so-called fall line, which has already been referred to as a conspicuous physical feature approximately coincident and nearly coextensive with the inland boundary of the Atlantic Border region. That is, the fall line, which is so prominent a feature along the oceanward border of the Piedmont region, is distinctly recognizable as far southward as the Archean portion of that region extends. Its course is approximately indicated by the location of some of the principal cities in Georgia and Alabama, such, for example, as Augusta, Macon, Columbus, and Montgomery, through or near which cities this line passes. Westward, beyond the southern terminus of the Archean area in central Alabama, and thence northward, Paleozoic rocks only, that is, those of Carbon-

[1] Certain facts seem to indicate that this shore line may have extended unbrokenly far northward from the north limit of this region and that it was continuous with a shore line which seems to have approximately corresponded in position with the present course of the Mississippi and of the Red River of the North.

iferous and Silurian age, appear in juxtaposition with the Mesozoic and later rocks. Along this western portion of the inland boundary the fall line loses something of the distinctive character which it has along the border of the Archean area; but still the lithological and topographical contrast upon either side of that part of the boundary line is nearly as great as it is elsewhere.

The average elevation of this region above the level of the sea, if we except its northern portion in the Mississippi Valley, is not much greater than that of the Atlantic Border region, and the whole of it is quite as worthy of being regarded as a part of the great coastal plain as is the region last mentioned. Indeed, the northern portion of the Gulf Border region, that which extends as far north as southern Illinois, can not be topographically separated from the remainder of the region, because the general slope from the mouth of the Ohio River to the Gulf is quite uniform, and the maximum elevation at the northern end of the region is scarcely more than 600 feet, although it is 500 miles from the Gulf coast.

Notwithstanding the comparatively slight general elevation above the sea of the Gulf Border region, it is not so deeply nor so frequently indented with bays and estuaries as is the Atlantic Border region; and therefore the presence of tide water within its limits is not so conspicuous a feature as it is in the latter region. All the larger rivers which traverse it are navigable, but navigation usually ends at or near the inland boundary line, because the rivers are there more or less obstructed by the presence in their channels of the older and harder rocks. In short, the hydrographic features of the whole region are those of a great plain. The topographic features are also those of a plain country, the hills being only those of circumdenudation, and the bluffs, as a rule, have resulted from river corrasion.

The geological structure of the Gulf Border region is quite as simple as that of the Atlantic Border region, and the Cretaceous formations of the one, as already stated, closely correspond with those of the other. The formations which are exposed within its limits are referable to the Cretaceous, Tertiary, and post-Tertiary, respectively. They all have the general appearance of lying conformably with one another, although certain observed conditions indicate at least slight unconformity in some cases. Their line of strike corresponds approximately with the inland boundary of the region, and their general dip, omitting those of the peninsula of Florida, apparently averages about 20 feet to the mile. The strike line being so strongly curved, the general dip of the formations in different parts of the region varies in direction from west to southeastward; and lines which may be drawn upon a map to represent the dip at intermediate places between the terminal points of the line of strike will radiate from the southern terminus of the broad Cumberland uplift. It may be mentioned in passing that this fact is taken to indicate that in the elevation of the Gulf Border region the Cumberland

orogenic uplift was, during the Cretaceous period, still in excess of the surrounding epeirogenic movement.

The peninsula of Florida is omitted from consideration in the following discussions because no rocks of earlier than Tertiary age appear at the surface there, and because it is remote from the outcrops of the Cretaceous formations which only will be specially discussed in this memoir. A very large proportion of the remainder of the region will also receive only incidental consideration for a similar reason.

The displacements of strata which have occurred within the limits of this region since the earliest of its visible strata were laid down are mainly of an epeirogenic character, no true orogenic folds involving the formations under discussion having taken place within its limits. Indeed, their almost uniform gentle seaward dip suggests the idea that the only general displacement which they have suffered is their gradual elevation to their present height above the level of the sea, and that the undulations and minor faults which are observable in different districts are merely accompaniments of that general elevation. But the character, fossil contents, and present condition of the Cretaceous strata indicate that a considerable subsidence and a greater or less number of gentle oscillatory movements took place from time to time before they reached their present elevation. Still, it is evident that any true orogenic movements that may have taken place within the limits of this region occurred before the earliest of its Cretaceous deposits were formed.

Although the geological formations of the Gulf Border region closely correspond with those of the Atlantic Border region they have a greater aggregate thickness in the former than in the latter region, especially those which are herein designated as of Cretaceous age. A greater proportion of the strata of the Gulf Border than of the Atlantic Border region are of stony compactness, and calcareous rocks are also more prevalent. Escarpments and other exposures are not uncommon, especially along the streams, but the surface of the whole region is very largely covered with soil and the débris of the incoherent or easily denuded rocks, and one must often go many miles before finding any exposures of unaltered strata. Besides the general correspondence of the deposits which in this region are referred to the Cretaceous with those of the Atlantic Border region, two divisions of the full series are likewise here recognized, the upper division there, together with Raritan and Amboy clays, being regarded as equivalent to the upper one here, and the lower one here as identical with the Potomac formation there. In each region also the recognition of the two general divisions of its Cretaceous strata have a similar basis. That is, in each case the upper division consists wholly of marine, and the lower division wholly of non-marine strata.

The Cretaceous formations of the Gulf Border region occupy a belt of outcrop which is much wider than that of the Atlantic Border region,

its average width in those States which border upon the Gulf being not far from 50 miles. The width is greatest in the district through which the Chattahoochee River flows, and this increased width is apparently due to an aggregate thickening of the Cretaceous strata there. The general trend of this outcrop, as before indicated, coincides with the strongly curved inland boundary of the region. This belt embraces only a comparatively small part of the whole area of the region, and its visible extent is curtailed at each end by the overlapping of Tertiary deposits upon those parts of it. Therefore no exposures of Cretaceous strata are known to occur farther eastward in this region than central Georgia, and the portion of the outcrop which reaches into western Kentucky is very small. The area occupied by this belt of Cretaceous outcrop, so far as now known, is indicated on the map at the end of this bulletin.

The total maximum thickness of the Cretaceous series in the Gulf Border region does not, according to the authors who have written upon it, exceed 2,600 feet; but this, it will be observed, is more than double the thickness that is estimated for the corresponding series of the Atlantic Border region. The strata of this southern series have been somewhat differently divided into groups by the geologists who have studied them; but there has been no material difference of opinion among them as to the character of the series as a whole.

The Cretaceous series of the Gulf Border region has been made known principally through the labors of Tuomey,[1] Winchell,[2] and Smith & Johnson[3] in Alabama, of Hilgard[4] in Mississippi, and of Safford[5] in Tennessee. The series is doubtless essentially the same in Georgia that it is in the States just named, but the published reports on the geology of that State have not contained a clear description of it or of its extent. Prof. J. M. Safford's reports show that the series is essentially the same in Tennessee that it is in Mississippi, although somewhat modified in its northern extension; but as the best developments occur in the last-named State and in Alabama, the following descriptions will be based mainly upon the strata exposed in those two States. The first of the following descriptive sections is of the Mississippi Cretaceous, published by Prof. E. W. Hilgard in 1871,[6] and is a slight modification of the one published by him in his state report in 1860. The second is that of Smith & Johnson for Alabama.[7]

[1] First Biennial Report on the Geology of Alabama, pp. 176 and map, 8vo. Tuscaloosa, 1850.

[2] Notes on the Geology of Middle and Southern Alabama. Proc. Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., vol. 10, part 2, pp. 82–93, with section.

[3] Tertiary and Cretaceous strata of the Tuscaloosa and Alabama Rivers. Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey, No. 43, pp. 189 and plates.

[4] Report on the Geology and Agriculture of the State of Mississippi, pp. 389, 8vo, and plates and map. Geol. Hist. Gulf of Mexico, Am. Jour. Sci., 1871, vol. 2, pp. 391–404.

[5] On the Cretaceous and Superior formations of West Tennessee. Am. Jour. Sci., 1864, vol. 37, pp. 360–372. Geology of Tennessee, 8vo, pp. 550, plates and map. Nashville, 1869.

[6] See Am. Jour. Sci., 1871, vol. 2, p. 391–404.

[7] Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey, No. 43, p. 189.

HILGARD'S MISSISSIPPI SECTION, 1871.

(1) Ripley group: crystalline, sandy limestones, alternating with dark-colored glauconitic marls containing finely preserved fossils. Thickness, 300 to 350 feet.

(2) The Middle, or Rotten limestone group, not less than 1,200 feet in maximum thickness. Soft, mostly somewhat clayey, whitish, micro-crystalline limestones and calcareous clays; very uniform on the whole, if we except the locally important but not generally extant feature of the "Tombigbee Sand," the special home of Inoceramí, Selachians, and gigantic Ammonites.

(3) Coffee group of Safford (Eutaw group mihi), 300 to 400 feet thick, consisting of non-calcareous sands and blue or reddish laminated clays, with occasional beds of lignite.

The last-named formation in Hilgard's section is found to rest unconformably upon the Carboniferous strata in the State of Mississippi, the earlier Mesozoic being absent. The Archean rocks upon which the lower portion of the Cretaceous series rests in Alabama and Georgia, as well as along nearly the whole length of the Atlantic Border region, do not reach the surface in the State of Mississippi. Eocene deposits containing beds of lignite are found to rest upon the upper member of this section, with which they appear to the eye to be conformable.

SMITH AND JOHNSON'S ALABAMA SECTION, 1888.

(1) A series of yellow sands, dark gray or bluish sandy micaceous clays, impure limestone, and sands again, in all between 200 and 300 feet in thickness. This has been called the Ripley formation by Hilgard, and the name is retained for Alabama.

(2) An impure argillaceous limestone, of tolerably uniform composition and about 1,000 feet in thickness, known as the Rotten limestone.

(3) A series of laminated sands and sandy clays, at least 300 feet in thickness, which has been named the Eutaw formation.

(4) The most conspicuous rocks are purple and mottled clays interstratified with white micaceous sands, and near the base of the formation dark gray, nearly black, thinly laminated clays, with sand partings. All the beds of this formation, being loose clays and still less coherent sands, have suffered a great amount of denudation, and in consequence they form the banks of the river at only a few points.

Smith and Johnson unhesitatingly refer the first three divisions of their Alabama section to the Cretaceous system, but of the Cretaceous age of No. 4, which they call the Tuscaloosa group, they are in doubt. They estimate its aggregate thickness at about 1,000 feet, and show that it rests unconformably upon the Archean in the eastern part of Alabama, and in a similar manner upon the Carboniferous in the western part of the same State. At the western border of the State those authors find their Tuscaloosa group to be identical and continuous with at least a part of the series of beds to which Hilgard applied the name Eutaw group in Mississippi.

The foregoing description of the Alabama section seems to apply more nearly to the central and western parts of the State than to the eastern part. In the valley of Chattahoochee River, where, as already shown, the full Cretaceous outcrop is wider than elsewhere, the whole series above the Tuscaloosa formation is evidently represented, but here it consists of argillaceous and shaly strata, with comparatively lit-

tle calcareous material, among which strata the three divisions of the section farther westward are not satisfactorily recognizable upon lithological ground. Besides this there is such an interlocking of the vertical range of fossil species in the whole of this Chattahoochee valley series that its paleontological division into such formations as have been recognized farther westward also seems to be impracticable.

The following diagram will show what is understood to be the true relation between the Mississippi and Alabama Cretaceous sections as determined by the authors that have been named and briefly described in the foregoing paragraphs. The portions of each section, which are respectively designated as marine and non-marine divisions, are also respectively referred to the Upper and Lower Cretaceous of North America. The object of the diagram being only to show the understood equivalency of the formations of the two States, the width of each of its divisions bears no relation to the thickness of the formation which it represents.

Diagram showing the relation of the Mississippi and Alabama Cretaceous sections to each other and to overlying and underlying rocks.

		Mississippi.	Alabama.
Tertiary		Eocene.	Eocene.
Cretaceous	Marine Division	Ripley.	Ripley.
		Rotten limestone.	Rotten limestone.
		Tombigbee Sand.	Upper Eutaw.
	Non-marine Division	Eutaw.	Lower Eutaw. Tuscaloosa.
Older rocks		Carboniferous.	Carboniferous and Archean.

There is no reason to question the exact equivalency of the Ripley formation of Mississippi to the one to which the same name is applied in Alabama, nor to question the equivalency of the Rotten limestone of Mississippi, less the basal portion of it, which Prof. Hilgard called the Tombigbee sands, to the Rotten limestone of Alabama. That is, the only question of exact equivalency which has been raised applies to the Tombigbee sand and the upper part of Tuomey's Eutaw group.

The upper portion, about 80 feet in thickness, of the Eutaw group of Alabama is stated by Smith and Johnson to be fossiliferous, and in

[1] A time hiatus exists at each of the planes represented by these horizontal lines, but unconformity *is conspicuously* seen only at the lowest of the three.

those strata at Choctaw Bluff in that State fossils are somewhat abundant. All the known fossils of those upper strata of the Eutaw group of Tuomey are of marine and not of non-marine origin, as are those of the lower strata, which he referred to that formation. These fossils of the upper strata appear to be largely identical with those of the Tombigbee sand in Mississippi, the whole also showing close faunal relationship with the overlapping Cretaceous formations in each State. Upon paleontological ground, therefore, there seems to be good reason for not separating the Tombigbee sand from the Rotten limestone group of Mississippi, and this was the final opinion of Prof. Hilgard concerning it.[1] For a similar reason the evident equivalent of the Tombigbee sand, namely, the upper part of the Alabama Eutaw group, should be placed with the Rotten limestone formation in the Cretaceous section for that State. Thus all the strata from the horizon of the top of the Ripley down to that of the base of the Tombigbee sand and its equivalent are known by their contained fossils not only to have been marine deposits, but to be intimately related to one another, and we shall see that they are all probably referable to one great paleontological horizon. The stratigraphical condition of this series of deposits also favors the foregoing opinion as to their paleontological unity.

Because of their lithological character the abundant presence of plant remains in many places, and the absence of marine fossils in all parts, so far as is now known, the deposits constituting the Eutaw group of Hilgard in Mississippi, the Tuscaloosa group of Smith & Johnson in Alabama, and the lower 220 feet of the Eutaw group of Tuomey in Alabama are regarded as of non-marine origin; that is, of littoral or estuarine origin, or of both. Therefore, if we include all the marine deposits of the Cretaceous series of this region in the upper division, and all the presumably non-marine deposits in the lower, as was done in the case of the series of formations in the Atlantic Border region, we must draw the line of separation at the base of the Tombigbee sand, which is here treated as a portion of the Rotten limestone formation of Mississippi, and at about 80 feet below the top of the Eutaw group of Tuomey in Alabama. This dividing line of the two divisions, which are designated as the marine and non-marine divisions, respectively, is indicated by the meeting of braces at the left-hand side of the foregoing diagram.

The accompanying section, Fig. 5, the location of which is approximately along the 87th meridian in Alabama, has been compiled mainly from data derived from Smith and Johnson's memoir on the Tertiary and Cretaceous rocks of a portion of that State.[2] Mr. McGee[3] and Prof. Hitchcock[4] both represent upon their maps a narrow belt extending along the northern edge of the Cretaceous outcrop across the States of

[1] Am. Jour. Sci., 1871, vol. 2, pp. 391-394.
[2] Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey, No. 43.
[3] Map accompanying the Fifth Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Survey.
[4] Map compiled for Am. Inst. Mining Engineers.

Georgia and Alabama as being occupied by post-Tertiary deposits. It seems more probable that that belt is really occupied by remnants of the clayey Tuscaloosa group, which once covered it, but which has there suffered much denudation. The map of Smith & Johnson (op. cit.) shows that those authors were also of this opinion.

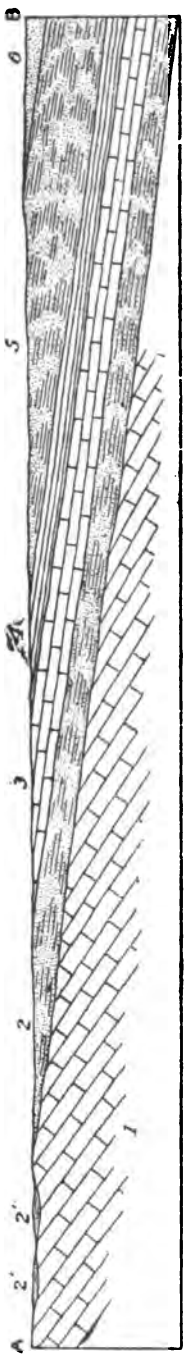


FIG. 5.—General section of the Cretaceous rocks of Alabama. 1, Carboniferous; 2, Tuscaloosa formation; 2', Outliers of Tuscaloosa deposits on Carboniferous rocks; 3, Rotten limestone formation; 4, Ripley formation; 5, Tertiary; 6, Post-Tertiary; A, North boundary line of Tuscaloosa County; B, South State boundary line.

The upper and lower delimitation of the full Cretaceous series in the Gulf Border region is closely like that of the full series in the Atlantic Border region, which has already been described. The upper and lower delimitation of each of the two divisions of the series is also closely similar in each of the two regions.

The rocks which underlie the lowest member of the full Cretaceous series in the Gulf Border region, namely, the Tuscaloosa formation, are, so far as is yet known, only the Archean and Carboniferous. Wherever the contact between that formation and these older rocks has been observed, unconformity is unmistakable, but in the case of the Carboniferous rocks it is not so conspicuous as it is in the case of the Archean, because the former rocks have not been so greatly disturbed since their deposition as have the latter. The time-hiatus, however, between the Carboniferous rocks and the Tuscaloosa formation is very great, even if the latter should finally be referred to the Jurassic, because all representation of the Triassic is wanting there; and probably a considerable part of the Upper Carboniferous is also wanting.

The outcrop of the Tuscaloosa formation occupies a comparatively narrow belt which is evidently coextensive with the line of general outcrop of the Cretaceous formations of the whole region, but as it is understood to be of littoral or of estuarine origin, or of both, it is not likely that it has great seaward extension beneath the Upper Cretaceous and Tertiary deposits.

It may also be suggested that the other Cretaceous formations beneath the surface which is now occupied by the Tertiary and later deposits in this region may have a

somewhat different relation to one another from those which appear along the belt of outcrop. No known facts seem to point to a solution of this question, but some information concerning it may perhaps yet be obtained by artesian borings.

The upper delimitation of the full Cretaceous series in the Gulf Border region is understood to be by a time-hiatus between its uppermost strata and the lowermost of the overlying Tertiary rocks, although the latter are plainly of Eocene age, and are found to rest with apparent conformity upon those Cretaceous strata along the greater part of the whole line of outcrop. This hiatus is regarded as being similar in character to that which has been shown to exist between the Cretaceous and Tertiary of the Atlantic Border region, and the conditions which are held to prove its existence are similar to those which were mentioned in that case. It may be, however, that the hiatus referred to is not quite so great in the Gulf Border region as it is in the Atlantic Border region, especially in the western part of the former, because it is thought probable that the lower Tertiary lignite-bearing beds of Mississippi represent the upper part of the Laramie formation. Still, it is believed that the hiatus in this region, as well as that in the other, represents both the earliest portion of the Eocene epoch and the latest portion of the closing epoch of the Cretaceous.

Although unconformity between the marine and the non-marine divisions of the Cretaceous in the Gulf Border region has rarely if ever been observed, it can hardly be doubted that there is really more or less unconformity, because the paleontological characteristics of each division indicate so wide a time-hiatus there.

The great importance of this time-hiatus will appear more plainly when the formations of the other regions are discussed, but it is proper to make some reference to its character in this connection. The non-marine division of the Cretaceous in this region is understood to represent the Potomac formation of the Atlantic Border region, and the marine division is regarded as equivalent to the corresponding division in the same region, including also the Raritan and Amboy clays. The non-marine division is also regarded as probably constituting the lowermost of all the North American Cretaceous formations,[1] if referable to the Cretaceous at all, and the upper division is understood to contain no representation of any North American strata beneath the horizon of the Dakota formation. Therefore the great Comanche series, which is so well developed in the Texan and North Mexican regions, is understood to have no representation between the lower and upper divisions of the Cretaceous series of either the Gulf or Atlantic Border regions, although that is believed to be its taxonomic place.

Besides this, it will be plainly shown on following pages that there is a marked time-hiatus between the uppermost strata of the Comanche series and the lowermost of the Cretaceous formations which overlie

[1] See a following page for expression of doubt upon this point.

them. This fact adds materially to a proper estimate of the width of the hiatus that has been shown to exist between the marine and non-marine divisions of the Cretaceous series in both the Gulf Border and Atlantic Border regions. Furthermore, it is probable that the time-hiatus between these two divisions is still wider than has been intimated, because it is quite reasonable to assume that there is still another hiatus between the horizon of the base of the Comanche series and that of the top of the Potomac and Tuscaloosa formations.

By separating the Cretaceous formations of the Gulf Border region into two divisions, in the manner that has been shown on preceding pages, their classification not only corresponds to that of the formations in the Atlantic Border region in having a marine and a non-marine division, but the specific identity of a large proportion of the molluscan forms which are found in the strata of the marine division in the Atlantic Border region with these found in the corresponding division of the Gulf Border leaves no room for reasonable doubt as to their actual equivalency, especially as it is so evident that the strata containing these fossils are, or were originally, continuous from one region to the other. The identification of several species of fossil plants which have been found in the lower part of the Tuscaloosa formation in Alabama with members of the Fredericksburg flora in the Potomac formation of Virginia[1] may be accepted as presumptive proof of the equivalency of at least a part of the non-marine division in the one region with that of the corresponding division in the other, especially as we have reason to believe that those deposits are, or once were, physically continuous. It is the lower portion of the non-marine division that has furnished the identical plants in each of the cases referred to, and it remains to be seen whether the upper portion of each will show an identical or similar floral relationship.

No important discoveries of vertebrate fossils have yet been made in the non-marine division of the Cretaceous series of the Gulf Border region, and therefore no paleontological comparisons of that kind can now be made. From the little positive evidence which is now attainable, and the general agreement of negative evidence, it appears to be entirely probable that this division as a whole is, in each of the two regions, chronologically equivalent to that of the other. That is, it is probable that the non-marine division in each of these regions represents certain portions of the time that elapsed from the close of the latest epoch of the Jurassic to the middle of the Cretaceous period, inclusive; but as it has not yet been found practicable satisfactorily to divide these deposits, the whole division is in each case referred to the Cretaceous.

The paleontological equivalency of the marine division of the Cretaceous series of the Atlantic Border region to that of the Gulf Border

[1] See Ward, Lester F.: Geographical Distribution of Fossil Plants. Eighth Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Survey, p. 879.

region is strikingly shown by Mr. Stanton's statement on page 84, and by the tabular statements published by Prof. Whitfield with reference to the invertebrates of the New Jersey marls, which he has studied in connection with the geological survey of that State.[1] Further study of collections of fossils yet to be made from the Upper Cretaceous of the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions, besides that of the collections now in the U. S. National Museum, will doubtless show a still more intimate faunal relationship between the northern and southern formations, respectively, as well as between them and other formations in the interior portions of the continent.

It will doubtless also appear from futher study that a still larger proportion of the molluscan species are common to the different recognized formations of the marine division in both regions than is now known, thus furnishing additional proof that no faunal break has occurred between any of them. This faunal relationship seems to be especially close in the case of the Rotten limestone and Ripley formations, and the proof afforded by the fossils is supported by the appearance which the strata present that sedimentation was continuous from the lower to the higher formation.

These comparisons, together with other facts yet to be noted, place it beyond question that the geographical range of this great Upper Cretaceous marine fauna was not only throughout the whole extent of the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions, but that it extended far beyond their limits into the North Mexican and Interior regions.[2] Such facts also, in connection with other evidence, indicate that the physical conditions within the Great Interior area were very nearly uniform during the whole time represented by the strata in which the remains of that fauna are found.

It will be observed that in the foregoing remarks some of the subdivisions of the marine division of the Cretaceous series which geologists have recognized in different parts of the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions have been to a great extent ignored. While these subdivisions are of local interest, they have not been deemed of sufficient importance to be specially considered in these discussions, because it is general rather than special facts that it is proposed to discuss in this memoir. The disposition of all the strata constituting the marine division in each of those regions was evidently continuous from base to top, and certain species are known to have sufficient vertical range to show a direct faunal connection with one another of all the subdivisions. It is true that Prof. Whitfield states that many of the species which characterize

[1] Bull. Am. Mus. Nat. Hist., vol. 2, pp. 113–116.

[2] If, as some have supposed, the Cretaceous deposits at the extreme northern end of the Gulf Border region were made in a deep embayment of marine waters which received abundant fluviatile waters from the region now drained by the Upper Mississippi and Ohio Rivers we ought to expect to discover a Cretaceous estuary fauna there. The fact that no remains of such a fauna have yet been found accords with the suggestion made on page 101 that marine Cretaceous waters were then continuous northward from the Gulf Border region to the Great Interior area.

the upper division of the New Jersey Cretaceous are confined in vertical range to certain subordinate horizons, a majority of them having been found in the lower marl bed alone. Some of the species, however, which are thus restricted in New Jersey have a large vertical range in Alabama and other parts of the Gulf Border region, and also in the Texan region. For example, some of the forms which are reported to occur only in the lower marl bed in New Jersey range through the whole thickness of both the Rotten limestone and of the Ripley formation. These facts are again alluded to here to emphasize the statement previously made that the marine division in both the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions constitute portions of one and the same great paleontological horizon, which will be further traced on following pages.

There are certain beds overlying the typical Ripley strata in Alabama, and also some equivalent beds in Arkansas, which deserve to be specially mentioned in this connection, because they have been supposed to be of Cretaceous age.[1] These have been called the Enclimatoceras beds because of the prevalence in them of a species of that Nautiloid genus. But an examination of the fauna of these beds has thus far failed to show the presence of any unmistakable Cretaceous species, while they are found to contain Eocene forms, notably *Cardita planicosta*, which I regard as characteristic of an early, but not necessarily the earliest, Eocene horizon. Therefore the uppermost strata which have been positively recognized as of Cretaceous age in the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions are represented by the uppermost beds of the Ripley formation in the Gulf States, by the lower portion of the upper marl bed in New Jersey, and by their equivalents in other parts of those two regions.

Briefly reviewing the subject of the Cretaceous deposits of the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions, as it has been presented upon the preceding pages, we find that they consist of a series of beds which were laid down along a portion of the coast of what was then a part of the eastern and southern boundary of the continent; and that, excepting their subsequent gentle oscillations and their final elevation to a dry land condition, they have not been materially disturbed by displacement. For reasons already stated the whole of this series of deposits is here referred to the Cretaceous, although it is thought probable that the earliest beds of the non-marine division were laid down at or near the close of the Jurassic period.[2] The essential unity of the Cretaceous series for both regions has already been shown.

The eastern part of the ancient shore line along which these Cretaceous deposits were formed was approximately parallel with the present Atlantic coast. A part of its southern portion coincided somewhat nearly with the present Gulf coast, but the larger part of the southern portion

[1] See White, C. A., on certain Cretaceous fossils from Arkansas and Colorado. Proc. U. S. Nat. Mus., vol. 4, pp. 136-139, pl. 1.

[2] See remarks on a following page indicating doubt upon this point.

of that shore line extended to the northern limit of the present Gulf Border region, and it is thought probable that it reached much farther northward into what is now the interior portion of the continent.

The principal portions of both of the divisions of Cretaceous strata which have been recognized in these two regions are nearly or quite coextensive within the extreme limits of each, and therefore the separation of that great area into two regions is more a matter of convenience than of natural requirement. The principal ground upon which the separation of the Cretaceous series into two divisions has been made is the recognition of a true marine origin for the upper and a non-marine, that is estuarine and littoral, origin for the lower division.

The marine division is referred to the Upper Cretaceous mainly upon paleontological ground; that is, it is so referred because of its general paleontological agreement with certain portions of the Upper Cretaceous of Europe, and because of its contrast as a whole with the North American formations that are referred to the Lower Cretaceous. The Raritan and Amboy clays of the lower division are provisionally referred to the Upper Cretaceous because of the agreement in large part of its plant remains with those of the Dakota formation, which is regarded as representing the basal portion of the Upper Cretaceous of North America.

That portion of the non-marine division which is represented by the Potomac and Tuscaloosa formations, which are regarded as fully equivalent to each other, is provisionally referred to the Lower Cretaceous, not because of any satisfactory paleontological agreement with any part of the Lower Cretaceous of Europe, but for the following more general considerations.

The place of those deposits is beneath strata that are regarded as belonging at the base of the Upper Cretaceous, and above strata that are regarded as upper Triassic, while no fully characterized Jurassic strata are known to exist in all that part of the continent.

The great structural break which occurs between the base of the non-marine division and the Trias, the latest of the deposits upon which it is known to rest in the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions, has been already referred to, but it may properly here be emphasized. Still more emphasis may be given to the fact that within the Gulf Border region the latest strata upon which the non-marine division rests are of Carboniferous age.

The following diagram is intended to show the relation of the general section of the Atlantic to that of the Gulf Border region. The relation of the latter section to the general section of the Texan region will be similarly shown on a following page.

Diagram showing the relation of the Atlantic to the Gulf Border Cretaceous formations.

	Atlantic Border region.	Gulf Border region.
Tertiary	Eocene, and later beds[1]	Eocene, and later beds.
Upper Cretaceous	New Jersey Marl beds.. / New Jersey Clay-Marl.. / Raritan and Amboy Clays.[2]	Ripley formation. / Rotten limestone. / Tombigbee sands.
Lower Cretaceous	Potomac formation.	Eutaw and Tuscaloosa formations.
Older Rocks	Triassic, Cambrian, and Archean.	Carboniferous and Archean.

THE TEXAN REGION.

The boundaries which have been chosen for this region, a part of which, like some of those of the other regions, are entirely arbitrary, are indicated upon the map opposite page 72, but a verbal definition of them will show more clearly their character and relations. The eastern and southern boundaries consist of the Mississippi River and the coast of the Gulf of Mexico. The former having been chosen as the western boundary of the Gulf Border region, is necessarily the eastern boundary of the Texan region. Beginning at a point on the west bank of the Mississippi River opposite the extreme northern limit of the Gulf Border region, the inland boundary of the Texan region extends along the gulfward border of the southern extremity of the great Paleozoic area to and around the southern extremity of the same, and thence northward along its western border to the point where the one hundred and first meridian crosses Red River. Thence the chosen boundary is made to extend by a straight line to the point where the thirty-third parallel of north latitude crosses Pecos River. The western boundary is formed by Pecos River from its mouth to the point just mentioned, and by the Rio Grande from the mouth of the Pecos to the Gulf of Mexico.

This region, therefore, embraces portions of the States of Missouri, Arkansas, and Louisiana, a part of Indian Territory, and much the greater part of Texas. It possesses topographical features that in many respects are much like those of the Gulf Border region, but it presents material differences in its geological features. It is within its boundaries that the relations between the Cretaceous formations of the eastern and central portions of the continent are to be favorably observed, and where important Cretaceous deposits are found that are not known in either the eastern or more northern parts of the continent.

[1] A time-hiatus exists at each of the planes represented by these horizontal lines, but unconformity is not readily detected by the eye except at the lower one.

[2] *The marine* Upper Cretaceous rocks of Martha's Vineyard probably belong at about this horizon.

The southward prolongation into Texas of the great interior Paleozoic area nearly divides this region into two portions, an eastern and a western, the Cretaceous formations of each portion having certain characteristics which make it desirable to discuss them separately for each part of the region. The eastern portion is mainly a continuation of the great coastal plain, other portions of which constitute both the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions and a part of the North Mexican region, but that plain here gradually merges into the higher lands of the great plains of the interior portion of the continent.

The inland boundary of the eastern part of the Texan region corresponds to the line of surface junction between the Paleozoic and Mesozoic rocks. All the area which is occupied by the former rocks is therefore excluded from this region, although it makes so large and deep an indentation in its northern boundary. The junction between those older and later rocks does not produce so conspicuous a surface feature upon the inland margin of the region as it does in the case of both the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions. Indeed, the contrast between the surface features on each side of that boundary line which is produced by a difference in the character of the underlying formations is not generally any greater than it is on either side of certain lines of outcrop of the formations within the limits of the region..

The surface of the western portion of the Texan region is more diversified than that of the eastern portion. It, however, contains only a few mountainous elevations, diversification being mainly due to corrasion of the river valleys, to hills of circumdenudation, and to the unequal erosion of the outcropping formations which vary in their resistance to erosive action. The general elevation above the sea of much the greater part of the surface of the region is comparatively slight, and that along the inland boundary seldom reaches 1,000 feet, even at points which are fully 400 miles from the Gulf coast.

As the Paleozoic formations are excluded from this region by the boundary lines that have just been indicated, and those of the earlier Mesozoic are assumed to be absent, the only formations which are recognized within its limits are referred to the Cretaceous, Tertiary, and post-Tertiary respectively. Those of Tertiary and post-Tertiary age are mostly uncompacted rocks, as are also a part of those of Cretaceous age, but a considerable part of the Cretaceous strata consist of more or less compact limestones and sandstones. Within a large part of the region all these formations are either strictly conformable with one another, or they are so nearly conformable that to the eye they have the appearance of being so. There is, however, true unconformity between the Upper and Lower Cretaceous, which is in some places strongly marked, as will be shown on following pages.

The general dip of the Cretaceous formations east of the Paleozoic area is toward the present outline of the Gulf coast, or in part toward that of its Tertiary embayment, now traversed by the Mississippi River; *while those west of* that area have a gentle general westward

dip. No true orogenic uplifts appear to have taken place within the limits of this region since the deposition of the earliest of its Cretaceous strata, except perhaps near its western border, although many such uplifts occurred in the adjacent parts of the North Mexican region. Consequently the principal displacements which they have suffered, while they are more varied than those of the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions, were mostly connected with their epeirogenic elevation to their present moderate height above sea level, and with sundry minor elevations and oscillations which occurred from time to time during the period which was occupied in their deposition.

The structural geology of the Texan region, as regards its Cretaceous formations, is somewhat more complex than that of the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions, but it is less complex than might be supposed from the different and conflicting accounts that have been published concerning it. In former years there were many difficulties in the way of arriving at a correct knowledge of the Texan formations and of their relation to one another, and it is only within the last few years that this knowledge has been obtained, and that the correlation of the Texan Cretaceous with the formations of that age in the other parts of the continent has been demonstrated.

Not only have the relations of these formations been misunderstood, but their nomenclature has been greatly confused; that is, different writers have applied different names to the same formations, and others have subdivided certain of the formations, giving separate coordinate names to the subordinate divisions. This confusion has been increased by mistaking in some instances their true order of superposition.

The names of the Texan Cretaceous formations that are used in this memoir are not all unobjectionable, but they are retained, because to change them would doubtless increase rather than lessen the confusion that has heretofore arisen concerning their classification and taxonomic order. The following list contains the names of all the formations that have been recognized within the limits of the Texan region and referred in this memoir to the Cretaceous, beginning with the latest.[1]

List of the Cretaceous formations of Texas.

1. Laramie formation.
2. Ripley formation and Eagle Pass beds.
3. Austin formation and "Ponderosa marls."
4. Eagle Ford formation.
5. Timber Creek formation.[2]
6. Comanche series.[3]
7. Trinity formation.

[1] Prof. Jules Marcou was the first to publish the true taxonomic order of the Cretaceous formations of Texas, his section being essentially the same as that afterward published by myself and by Mr. Hill. See Bost. Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 8, pp. 86-98.

[2] This name is not to be confounded with that of Timber Creek in New Jersey, a well known locality of Cretaceous fossils. The Texan strata belong to a lower stage of the Upper Cretaceous.

[3] The term Comanche Peak group was proposed by Dr. B. F. Shumard in 1860 (Trans. Acad. Sci., St. Louis, vol. 1, p. 581), and the same term for at least a part of the same strata was used by Prof. Marcou in 1861 (Proc. Bost. Soc. Nat. Hist., vol. 8, pp. 86-97). In both these cases, however, the strata *referred to* comprise less than the full vertical range of the strata which in this memoir are designated *as the Comanche series.*

Although the order of superposition of the formations shown in the foregoing list has been clearly ascertained in this region, in no part of it have all of them been found in juxtaposition. Moreover, the section of the formations in the western part of the region differs considerably from that of the eastern part, which differences are mainly shown by the introduction there of the Laramie formation and by the coal bearing and other characteristics of the Eagle Pass beds, as compared with the Ripley Group. Hitherto to these two western formations have not been so well known in this region as have the others whose names are given in the foregoing list, and which generally have been regarded as constituting the Texan section. Mention is therefore made of them in the two following paragraphs, but they will be again considered in connection with the other formations of the list.

The Laramie has been referred to in the discussion of the formations of both the Atlantic and the Gulf Border regions, not as being present there, but as probably representing in time the hiatus between the uppermost Cretaceous beds and the overlying Eocene that was shown to exist in those regions. The uppermost Cretaceous beds there are regarded as not representing the closing portion of Cretaceous time in North America, and for this and other reasons the Laramie formation is treated in this memoir as of Cretaceous age.[1]

The Laramie formation[2] prevails over a large part of the Great Interior area, but within the Texan region it has been recognized only in western Texas, and it has hitherto been observed there only in the valley of the Rio Grande and in that of the Nueces River, but there seems to be little room for doubt that the Lignitic beds of eastern Texas, as well as those of the State of Mississippi, which are usually regarded as of early Eocene age, are really equivalent to the upper part of the Laramie.

The Eagle Pass beds,[3] upon which the Laramie formation rests in the valley of the Rio Grande, and with which it is strictly conformable, is regarded as equivalent to the Ripley formation of eastern Texas, and also to the Fox Hills strata of the Great Interior area, as will presently be shown.

The following section, Fig. 6, is in part the result of personal observations made by the writer, but in part it has been compiled from data furnished by Mr. W. F. Cummins and from publications of Mr. R. T. Hill. It is believed to represent correctly in a general way the formations of the eastern part of the Texan region, but it does not include by name the two members which have just been referred to as occurring in western Texas.[4] The line upon which it has been traced extends

[1] See White, C. A., On the relation of the Laramie Group to earlier and later formations. Am. Jour. Sci., 1888, vol. 35, pp. 432–438.

[2] The characteristics and relations of this formation will be discussed on following pages.

[3] These beds must not be confounded with the Eagle Ford formation, which belongs to a lower stage of the Upper Cretaceous. The similarity of the latter name with the former is unfortunate, but it is thought best not to change either of them at the present time.

[4] It should be borne in mind that very little has yet been published in the way of mapping and measuring the Cretaceous formations of the Texan region. It is therefore to be expected that when such maps of the region are published some modification of the account here given of them will be necessary.

from the western part of Parker County to the eastern part of Navarro County, its direction being approximately northwest and southeast. This line also approximately corresponds to that of the general dip of the Cretaceous formations which lie upon the eastern side of that portion of the Great Interior Paleozoic area which extends southward into the Texan region.

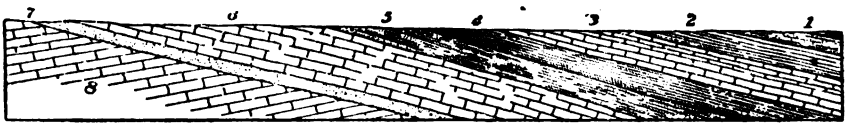


FIG 6.—Section from Parker County to Navarro County, Texas. 1, Lignitic Beds (Tertiary); 2 Ripley formation; 3, Austin formation and "Ponderosa marls"; 4, Eagle Ford formation; 5, Timber Creek formation; 6, Comanche series: 7, Trinity formation; 8, Carboniferous.

In this figure all the formations from No. 1 to No. 7 inclusive are represented as being strongly unconformable with the carboniferous; but I am not certain that the latter strata do not dip abruptly eastward where they come in contact with the Cretaceous formations, instead of being truncated by erosion there as they are represented in this figure.

All the formations in the district traversed by this section which are of later age than the Carboniferous have the appearance of being conformable with one another. In a majority of cases this apparent conformity is unquestionably real, but it is now well known that there is at some places conspicuous unconformity between No. 5 and No. 6—that is, between the Timber Creek formation and the Comanche series, and it is clear from paleontological evidence that there is also an important time-hiatus between them. There is probably also unconformity between No. 6 and No. 7—that is between the Comanche series and the Trinity formation especially as it is regarded as certain that there is a time-hiatus between these two formations.

For our present purpose the foregoing section may be taken as representing the Cretaceous formations of the whole eastern portion of the Texan region, the greater part of which is also recognizable in the western portion. For general description, its members will be taken up serially, beginning with the lowest, namely, the Trinity formation.

This group was originally designated as the Dinosaur sands by both Mr. R. T. Hill[1] and myself,[2] but Mr. Hill afterward changed the name to Trinity division,[3] which latter name I have adopted in this memoir as being more satisfactory than the former. The deposit in question is provisionally placed with the Lower Cretaceous formations, and assigned to the horizon of the Potomac and Tuscaloosa formations, although little other than stratigraphical evidence has yet been obtained as to its taxonomic position in the general geological scale.

[1] *Am. Jour. Sci.*, 1887, vol. 33, pp. 291-303.
[2] *Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Phila.*, 1887, p. 40.
[3] Geol. Survey Texas, Bull. No. 4, p. XIV.

The Trinity formation was first studied in Texas, where it was found to consist mainly of coarse siliceous sand, usually only slightly compacted. Its average thickness east of the Texan Paleozoic area was estimated at about 100 feet, and at somewhat less than that thickness west of the Paleozoic area. Mr. Hill reports it to reach a thickness of 400 feet in Arkansas and to differ materially in lithological character from that which it exhibits in Texas.[1] He says that it there consists of—

a series of calcareous, gypsiferous, argillaceous sands, alternating with numerous thin strata of firm yellow crystalline bands of limestone, which vary from 1 inch to 1 foot in thickness.

The whole of the Trinity formation, like the Potomac and Tuscaloosa formations, seems to have been of littoral, or at least not of open sea origin. This is indicated by lithological and also by paleontological characteristics, so far as the latter are known.

When this formation was first studied in Texas the only fossils it was known to contain were some imperfect dinosaurian remains, but Mr. Hill has since reported the discovery in Arkansas of a considerable number of molluscan fossils, some of which species he also reports to have been found in the same formation in Texas.[2]

The outlines of the surface area which is occupied by the Trinity formation are not yet well known, or not yet published, but it is known that the aggregate area of all its outcrops is comparatively small. These outcrops consist of a somewhat irregular narrow belt along the eastern, and another along the western, border of the Texan Paleozoic area, which it probably fringes, thinning out at no great distance from that area. The eastern belt is coextensive with the forest-covered belt of country in Texas which is known as the Upper Cross Timbers, but it seems to reach its maximum width, as well as its greatest thickness of strata, in Arkansas; and the whole formation seems to be only slightly developed around the southern end of the Paleozoic area. The belt of outcrop upon the western side of the Paleozoic area is narrow and more or less irregular, but its outlines and full extent have not yet been made known.

For certain reasons the Comanche series, the whole of which is plainly of marine origin, possesses peculiar interest. It apparently stands alone in representing a great division of the Lower Cretaceous of North America. It is not only separated by a time-hiatus from the earliest formation which overlies it as well as from the latest one which underlies it, but the characteristics of its fossil fauna are such as to give no indication of its relation to any other Lower Cretaceous formation upon this continent. Besides this, none of the epeirogenic or orogenic movements which are known to have occurred on the continent

[1] Ann. Rep. Geol. Surv. Ark. for 1888, vol. 2, pp. 116–123. Later, Mr. Hill indicates that this formation in Arkansas reaches a thickness of 800 feet. Bull. No. 4, Geol. Surv. Tex., p. IX.

[2] Ann. Rep. Geol. Surv. Ark. for 1888, vol. 2, pp. 127–152, plates 1–7.

give any satisfactory suggestion as to its contemporaneity with any other formation. The character of its fossil invertebrate fauna is in large part similar to that of the Upper, and in part to that of the Lower, Cretaceous of Europe, but because its known taxonomic position is much below the horizon of the Dakota formation it is placed with the North American Lower Cretaceous. Among the characteristics of its fauna, which to a European geologist would doubtless suggest its Upper Cretaceous age, is the prevalence of the Rudistæ and of the aberrent forms of the Chamidæ. In the North American Upper Cretaceous such forms are very rare. Indeed, with the exception of the *Radiolites austinensis* Roem., in the Austin formation and its equivalents, of the *Caprotina bicornis* of Meek, reported to have come from a similar horizon, and of *Coralliochama orcutti* White, in the Wallala formation of the Pacific coast, I do not now know of the existence of any of the forms referred to in any North American Cretaceous formation except in the Comanche series.[1]

In the Texan region the Comanche series consists of limestones, calcareous shales, and earthy calcareous material with stony concretions, but we shall see that the whole series changes materially in lithological character in its westward extension, mainly by the greater consolidation of its strata.

The Comanche series in the Texan region is well defined both above and beneath by its contact with the sandy Timber Creek formation which overlies it, and with the equally sandy Trinity formation which underlies it. In Texas it has been much subdivided by the different geologists who have studied it. This is perhaps well for purposes of local or minute investigation, but for the present purpose it seems only necessary to treat these strata as constituting one large formation, or as a series of strata capable of local subdivision into subordinate groups.

No equivalent of the Comanche series has yet been recognized among the formations which occur eastward from Texas, and it probably thins out in that direction beneath the later formations before reaching the Mississippi River. Moreover, much the greater part of the area which it occupies in the Texan region lies within the boundaries of that State. By means of certain of its characteristic fossils, which are often abundant, portions of the series have been recognized in southwestern Arkansas, in southern Indian Territory, and in both eastern and western Texas. A few of its characteristic fossils also are reported to have been found in southern Kansas, which probably come from outliers of its strata there.

Mr. Hill reports the full series to reach 2,400 feet in thickness in Texas, but in much the larger part of the area which it occupies in that State its thickness is much less. We shall see that the series reaches its greatest known thickness in the North Mexican region, and that it everywhere, so far as has been observed, rests unconformably upon the

[1] Fragments of a *Radiolites*, which are perhaps referable to *R. austinensis*, have been found in the Ripley strata of Mississippi and Texas.

underlying rocks, even upon those of the Trinity formation where the unconformity is doubtless real, although not clearly discernible by the eye.

The boundaries of the area which the Comanche series occupies in the Texan region have not yet been accurately determined, but in Texas it is known to constitute an irregular belt of country extending from Cook County on the north to Bexar County on the south, the northern part of which belt is bounded upon its western and eastern sides by the narrow belts of forest-covered land known as the Upper and Lower Cross Timbers, respectively, the Upper Cross Timber belt being occupied by the Trinity Formation and the Lower Cross Timber belt by the Timber Creek Formation. From Bexar County northward to the northwest boundary of the Texan region the Comanche strata outcrop along the western side of the Paleozoic area, and numerous outliers of them are found resting upon Carboniferous and Permian strata, the Trinity apparently being absent in many cases in the western portion of that area and entirely absent in the western part of the Texan region. In Arkansas[1] a very small area is occupied by the outcrop of this series, and there are probably only small areas in Indian Territory that are occupied by such outcrops.

The Timber Creek formation,[2] which comprises the lowest strata of the Upper Cretaceous of Texas, consists of coarse ferruginous sandstones, a few layers of impure limestone, and occasional sandy and clayey layers. Its estimated thickness is about 250 feet. It has not yet been recognized as a separate formation elsewhere than in this region, nor within it north of Red River or south of Brazos River. It, or its equivalent, doubtless exists west of the Paleozoic area in this region, but it has not yet been recognized there as a separate formation. All of its present known outcrops lie between those two rivers of Texas which have just been named and along the eastern border of the area which is occupied by the Comanche series. The area of its outcrop is nearly identical with that of the Lower Cross Timbers in Texas, which is the eastern one of the two conspicuous north and south belts of forest-covered land in the central part of that State, both of which have been erroneously represented as occupied by Quaternary deposits.[3]

The molluscan fossils of the Timber Creek formation are of marine origin, all of which are of different species from those which are found in the Comanche series or in any other horizon beneath that of its own strata.[4] A few of the species, however, pass up into the next overlying

[1] See map accompanying Ann. Rep. Geol. Surv. Ark. for 1888, vol. 2.

[2] Mr. Hill has lately designated this formation as the Lower Cross Timber Sands. Bull. No. 4, Geol. Surv. Texas, p. 1x, and Ann. Rep. Geol. Surv. Ark. for 1888, vol. 2, p. 72.

[3] See McGee's map accompanying Fifth Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Surv. and Hitchcock's map, compiled for Am. Inst. Mining Engineers.

[4] Both Professor Newberry and myself have published a *Gryphæa* from strata referable to the Colorado formation which we identified with the G. *pitcheri* of the Comanche group. See Macomb's Report, pp. 87 and 99, and Expl. & Surv. West of 100th Merid. p. 117, pl. 17, figs. 1, a, b, c, d, e, and f. I am now confident that the *Gryphæa* in question is a different but closely similar species, or at least that in the absence of other proof it ought not to be regarded as indicating a faunal relationship of the Comanche with the *overlying formations*.

formation in the eastern part of the region, and in the western part of the same the equivalents of both those formations and of their faunas seem to blend together.

Some of the molluscan species which characterize the Timber Creek formation are identical with some of the marine species which have been found in the Dakota formation in Kansas, which have been published by Mr. Meek[1] and myself.[2] This, together with other facts yet to be mentioned, indicates that the Dakota, which is a non-marine formation occupying a large part of the Great Interior area, and which is distinct from all the overlying and underlying formations there, merges into the marine strata in its southward extension, which constitute the Timber Creek formation and its equivalents. It is also an interesting fact in this connection that these marine strata are paleontologically connected with the overlying formations, as has already been intimated.

The Timber Creek formation is probably equivalent, at least in part, to the Tombigbee sands of the Alabama section, but no direct paleontological proof of it has yet been observed. It is, perhaps, also equivalent in part to the Raritan and Amboy clays, such equivalency being suggested by the identity of certain species of fossil plants which are found in those clays with some which are found in the Dakota formation and the stratigraphical relations of the two formations are also similar in their respective regions.

The Eagle Ford formation of the Texan region consists mainly of bluish clayey and yellowish sandy shales, with occasional layers of impure limestone and also occasional layers of sandstone, the whole reaching an estimated thickness of about 300 feet. It is only upon the eastern side of that portion of the great Paleozoic area which extends southward into the Texan region that this group of strata has been recognized as a distinct formation, but strata equivalent to it evidently exist in the Upper Cretaceous series upon the western side of that area.

Paleontologically this formation appears to be intimately related to the overlying Austin formation and its relation to the underlying Timber Creek formation has already been mentioned. Indeed, it appears to be as intimately related to the Austin formation as are the Fort Benton shales of the Upper Missouri section to the Niobrara beds of that section. It is regarded as at least approximately equivalent to the Fort Benton shales just mentioned and as probably equivalent to the lower part of the Rotten limestone formation of the Gulf States and to the Clay Marl of the New Jersey section. In fact this formation is also understood to have representative strata in numerous districts from the North Mexican region to the North Interior region inclusive.

The Eagle Ford formation, as it has been defined for the Texan region, outcrops only along a comparatively narrow belt lying mainly in

[1] See figures on plate 2, Rep. U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr., vol. 9, and references to those assigned to the Dakota formation.

[2] See Proc. U. S. Nat. Mus., vol. 2, pp. 292-298, plates 1-5.

Grayson, Denton, Dallas, Ellis, and Hills Counties, Texas. Southward from Hills County it seems to disappear or to blend with the Austin formation, because in Bexar and adjacent counties strata that seem to represent the latter formation rest directly upon the Comanche series, the Timber Creek formation also being absent there. There are probably some outcrops of the shales of this formation in the southern part of Indian Territory, but Mr. Hill reports[1] that they do not outcrop in Arkansas.

The Austin formation, which is one of the more important of the Upper Cretaceous formations of the Texan region, was first named the Austin limestone by Dr. B. F. Shumard,[2] characteristic exposures of its strata being common in the neighborhood of the city of Austin. It has long been known by that name, but Mr. Hill has lately given it the name of Austin and Dallas chalk.[3] It has been recognized by its characteristic fossils in southwestern Arkansas, southern Indian Territory, and along a belt of country in Texas which extends from Lamar County on the north to Bexar County on the south. Westward from Bexar County to the Rio Grande its fossils have been recognized at several points, but no reports of any considerable exposures of the formation there have been published. It is one of the more conspicuous of the Cretaceous formations in Texas because it is composed largely of a light-gray limestone which is frequently exposed in escarpments and also because of its often abundant characteristic fossils.

From Texas northward nearly to British America the equivalents of this formation constitute a somewhat definite stratigraphical subhorizon, which is largely calcareous in the southern and middle portions and largely argillaceous in the northern. The strata beneath the calcareous portion of this subhorizon are usually more or less clayey, and those immediately above it in the south are often clayey, but in the north more often arenaceous. These facts will be again referred to in connection with the discussion of the two interior regions.

Where the upper layers of the Austin limestone are to be observed they are found to be overlain by or to merge gradually into clayey or marly layers which, in eastern Texas at least, pass up into strata that bear an abundance of characteristic fossils of the Ripley formation. Because of the ease with which these soft strata have been eroded, of the usually level character of the country in which they occur, and of the abundant soil and subsoil which cover them, good exposures of them are not numerous anywhere in the Texan region. For these reasons also the full thickness of those strata can not be satisfactorily measured, and it is difficult to estimate it. Mr. Hill, however, has estimated their thickness at 1,500 feet, giving the name of Glauconitic division to the upper 300 feet and that of Ponderosa marls to the lower

[1] Ann. Rep. Geol. Surv. Ark. for 1888, vol. 2, p. 72.
[2] Trans. St. Louis Acad. Sci., vol. 1, p. 585.
[3] Bull. No. 4, Geol. Surv. Texas, p. IX.

1,200 feet.[1] My own examinations of the geology of the Texan region have not led me to estimate so great a thickness as this between the Austin limestone and the Ripley formation of eastern Texas, and it seems probable that they do not at all places reach that thickness between those two formations.

The uppermost and only member of the Upper Cretaceous section in the eastern part of the Texan region which remains to be considered is the one which is so evidently equivalent to the Ripley formation of the Gulf Border region that it is obviously improper to apply another name to it. This equivalency is plainly shown by the fact that Mr. T. W. Stanton has identified 90 molluscan species which prevail in the Ripley formation of Mississippi out of 124 species which he has collected from the Ripley strata of Texas.

Stratigraphically, it seems to be impracticable to delimit the beds which represent the Ripley formation in the Texan region from those underlying clayey or marly strata which have just been described. Indeed, the beds which bear an abundance of Ripley fossils appear to differ from the other clayey strata beneath them mainly by containing, in many places, calcareous layers and large concretionary masses of limestone in which the fossils are usually found imbedded. Furthermore, it is a well ascertained fact that certain molluscan species range through all the strata from the base of the Austin formation to the top of the Ripley, inclusive.

The best exposures of characteristic Ripley strata that are now known in the Texan region are found in Navarro, Travis, and Kaufman Counties, Texas, but beneath the overlying soil they doubtless extend continuously from southwestern Arkansas southwestward beyond the Colorado River in Texas. Southward and westward from the Colorado River these strata seem to lose in part their distinctive paleontological character, or they are overlapped by the lignite-bearing beds which, in eastern Texas, border them on the east.

Where these lignite-bearing beds have been seen to overlie the Texan Ripley strata they appear to the eye to be conformable, but if those beds are to be regarded as equivalent to the upper part of the Laramie formation, as has been suggested, there must be a hiatus between them and the Ripley strata which is equal to the greater part of the thickness of the Laramie. That is, the hiatus is understood to be similar to that which has been shown to exist between the Cretaceous and Tertiary in both the Atlantic and Gulf border regions.

There seems to be sufficient evidence that the Ripley strata in eastern Texas were much eroded before the lignite bearing beds were deposited upon them, notwithstanding the fact that they are now apparently conformable, and this erosion doubtless took place while the lower and

[1] Bull. No. 4, Geol. Survey Texas, p. IX.

The name Ponderosa marls appears to have been applied because of the prevalence in those strata of *Exogyra ponderosa*, but it ought to be mentioned that this species is common in both the Austin limestone and the Ripley formation and that it also occurs in the Eagle Pass beds.

greater part of the Laramie formation was being deposited. The time during which this erosion of the Ripley strata in eastern Texas and the deposition of the Laramie strata in western Texas took place probably represents the time hiatus between the Cretaceous and Tertiary that has been several times referred to in preceding paragraphs.

The paleontological interrelationship of the whole Upper Cretaceous series in the eastern part of the Texan region has been indicated in the foregoing discussions of its separate formations, but the great importance of this fact makes it desirable that special attention should be called to it. While the physical changes that took place between the time of the deposition of the earliest and the latest strata of that series resulted in considerable changes in their character and lithological composition, it is evident that during the whole time, not only did no complete faunal break occur, but there seems to have been only a partial faunal change with each change in the character of the deposits. That is, the evidence seems to be conclusive that all the Upper Cretaceous strata of the eastern part of the Texan region are referable to one great paleontological horizon,[1] which, with others, is to be discussed on following pages.

Much is yet to be learned of the geology of the eastern part of the Texan region, and that of the western part has been still more imperfectly studied; but enough is now known of it to warrant the confident belief that all the Cretaceous formations which have been shown to exist in the eastern part are more or less completely represented in the western part. Originally most of them doubtless were geographically continuous from one part to the other, and some of them have escaped erosion and are now continuous around the southern end of the Paleozoic area, where, however, they are mostly covered from view by soil and subsoil.

The lower Cretaceous formations seem to be of essentially the same general character in the western that they are in the eastern part of the region. The existence of both the Trinity formation and the Comanche series in the western part of the Texan region has already been stated. The Trinity there is not so well developed as it is in the eastern part of the region, and the whole formation evidently thins out toward the west before reaching its western border.

The Comanche series has been much eroded and covered from sight in the western part of the region, and therefore it does not seem to be so well developed there as it is in the eastern part, but it is known that the whole series thickens toward the west and southwest, and that it has also materially changed in lithological character in those directions. The gradation of this lithological change has not yet been observed, and the strata in which it has occurred are now covered by later formations.

The Upper Cretaceous series of the western part of the Texan region is surmounted by the Laramie formation, which has no representation

[1] The term horizon as used in this extended sense will be explained upon a following page.

in the eastern part unless it shall prove to be partially represented by the lignitic beds. Beneath the Laramie the western series is understood fully to represent the eastern series, although the separate formations of the latter have not all been clearly recognized in the former series.

The Austin formation, overlain by marly shales, is observable in the valley of Medina River, Medina County, Texas, where all those strata have a gentle westerly dip. In the marly shales overlying the Austin strata there I have found some fossil species that are known to occur in the Ripley formation, and those overlying strata probably represent both the Ponderosa marls of Hill and the Ripley formation proper. Certain coal-bearing strata are found in the valley of Nueces River, in Zavalla and Uvalde Counties, which are believed to represent the Laramie formation in part, but little is yet known of the structural geology of the district between the Medina and the Rio Grande.

In the valley of the Rio Grande there is a formation which immediately underlies the Laramie to which I have given the local name of Eagle Pass beds. By means of its fossils and by its intimate stratigraphical relation to the overlying Laramie formation these beds have been satisfactorily identified with the Fox Hills portion of the Upper Missouri River section, or the upper part of the Montana formation of the interior regions. Like both of those formations, and unlike any of the Cretaceous formations of the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions, so far as is now known, the Eagle Pass strata are coal-bearing. The Ripley formation of eastern Texas has not been traced continuously to a connection with the Eagle Pass beds, but the relative position of each of these formations to those which underlie and overlie them respectively, and the specific identity of certain fossils found in each, leaves no reason to doubt that the two are really identical and that they were of contemporaneous origin.

The Eagle Pass beds are well exposed in the vicinity of Eagle Pass, Texas, but within a few miles toward the north from there they appear to thin out or to have been removed by erosion. Southward from Eagle Pass, in the southern part of Maverick County, they pass beneath the Laramie toward the east, so that strata believed to represent the latter formation in part are found resting upon them in the valley of the Nueces in Uvalde and Zavalla Counties, as already mentioned.

The full outlines of the area which is occupied by the Laramie formation in the western part of this region have not been determined, but it has been recognized at various points in Maverick, Webb, Zavalla, and Uvalde Counties, Texas. In Webb County, about 10 miles above Laredo, near the Rio Grande, it is seen to pass by a southerly dip beneath marine Eocene strata. Eastward from Zavalla and Uvalde Counties it thins out or loses the character of a distinct formation which it has in the valley of the Rio Grande and farther northward. It is the upper part of the formation which, in the valley of the Nueces and

that of the Rio Grande, is coal bearing, and which is understood to represent those lignitic beds of eastern Texas which are usually referred to the Eocene Tertiary.

The following diagram shows the relation of the Cretaceous formations of the eastern part of the Texan region with those of the western part, including those which lie along the western border of the Paleozoic area in Texas. The width of the respective spaces in the table has no reference to the proportional thickness of the formations, the names of which they contain, or of the length of time represented by a hiatus. The object of the diagram is only to indicate their understood equivalences.

Diagram showing interrelation of Texan formations.

	Western Texas.	Eastern Texas.
Tertiary	Eocene.	Eocene.
	Eocene portion of Laramie.	Lignitic beds.
Upper Cretaceous	Laramie formation.	Hiatus.
	Eagle Pass bed.	Ripley formation.
	Equivalents of the Ponderosa marls, and of the Austin, Eagle Ford, and Timber Creek formations.	Austin formation and Ponderosa marls.
		Eagle Ford formation.
		Timber Creek formation.
	Hiatus.	Hiatus.
Lower Cretaceous	Comanche series.	Comanche series.
	Hiatus.	Hiatus.
	Trinity formation.	Trinity formation.

The formations which in the Atlantic and Gulf border regions are referred to the Cretaceous are arranged under two divisions, a marine and a non-marine. The correctness of referring the whole of the marine division to the upper Cretaceous need not be questioned, and the character of the plant remains of the upper part of the non-marine division in New Jersey is such as to indicate that those deposits ought also to be so referred; but in view of certain paleontological characteristics of

the Potomac and Tuscaloosa formations doubt has been expressed by some persons whether they ought not to be referred to the Jurassic. The formations of the Texan region which are herein discussed as of Cretaceous age are likewise arranged under two divisions as shown in the foregoing table, and respectively referred to the Upper and Lower Cretaceous; but the considerations which prompted this separation are wholly of a chronological character, while those which suggested the separation in the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions are of a physical character. That is, in the latter case the earlier division is wholly of non-marine and the later wholly of marine origin, while in the Texan region there are both marine and non-marine deposits in both the upper and lower divisions.

The formations of the upper division of the general Cretaceous section of the Texan region, beneath the Laramie, are understood to represent in full the marine division in both the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions. The Comanche series of the lower division, which constitutes the greater part of it, is understood to have no representative in the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions, and the remainder of the division, that is, the Trinity formation, is doubtfully regarded as representing a part of the non-marine division in each of those regions.

The upper and lower delimitation of the full Cretaceous series in the eastern part of the Texan region may be regarded as being nearly identical with that of the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions. That is, the uppermost Cretaceous strata are understood to be at least approximately equivalent in each case, and in each case also those strata are overlain by Eocene beds with evidence of a time hiatus between them. The lower delimitation in the eastern part of the Texan region is by the Trinity formation, which perhaps represents the Potomac and Tuscaloosa formations and which has been found resting upon Carboniferous and older rocks, where its base has been observed.

The upper delimitation of the full series in the western part of the Texan region is by the Laramie formation, which, as has been shown, is overlain by characteristic Eocene strata. The lower delimitation of the series in the western part of the region is not so well known. It is, however, known that near the western border of the Texan Paleozoic area the Trinity strata rest upon the Carboniferous and Permian; but in a considerable portion of the western part of the region the Comanche series is known to rest directly upon Carboniferous and Permian rocks.

The upper delimitation of the Lower Cretaceous in the Texan region is by the upper strata of the Comanche series, between which and the lowermost strata of the Upper Cretaceous there is unconformity and a time hiatus. There is also understood to be a time-hiatus between the two subdivisions of the Lower Cretaceous, which are recognized in this region.

The lower delimitation of the Upper Cretaceous of the eastern part of the Texan region is by the Timber Creek formation, which is understood to represent the Dakota formation of the Interior regions. In the western part of the Texan region that delimitation is by strata equivalent to the Timber Creek formation, but which are not there recognized as constituting a separate formation.

The assignment of the upper division of the Texan section to the Upper Cretaceous has been made because of its general paleontological agreement with the formations that have been so assigned in other regions and because of the intimate relation, either paleontological or stratigraphical, or both, of those Texan formations with one another, including the Laramie. Its lower delimitation by the Timber Creek formation has been recognized because it is regarded as the marine equivalent of the Dakota formation, the horizon of which is, in all the other regions, understood to represent the basal portion of the Upper Cretaceous of North America. Although the Laramie formation is regarded as in part of Tertiary age it is in this memoir treated as the upper delimiting member of the Upper Cretaceous because of its intimate stratigraphical relation to the immediately underlying formations of its common involvement with them in great displacements, and of the presence in its strata of such vetebrate remains as are usually referred to the Cretaceous.[1]

While it is admitted that a considerable number of fossil forms which characterize the Comanche series are closely similar to forms which prevail in the Upper Cretaceous of Europe that series is referred to the North American Lower Cretaceous because it underlies and is separated by an evident time-hiatus from the recognized base of the Upper Cretaceous and because its fossil fauna is wholly different from that of any known North American Upper Cretaceous formation.

The upper strata of the Comanche series are regarded as the upper delimiting portion of the Lower Cretaceous of the Texan region, no deposits having been discovered which are assignable to a place between them and the base of the Upper Cretaceous.

The Trinity formation has been provisionally recognized as the lower delimiting member of the Texan Lower Cretaceous upon comparatively slight evidence of any kind. It is supposed to be, either wholly or in part, equivalent to the Potomac and Tuscaloosa formations, and it is therefore provisionally assigned to the same horizon upon the upper confines of the Jurassic.

Although no deposits are yet known which are assignable to a place between the Trinity formation and the base of the Comanche series their great physical and paleontological differences indicate that there is an important time-hiatus between them.

[1] Reasons are given on following pages for regarding the Laramie formation as in part of Tertiary age.

The next following diagram is intended to show the relation of the Cretaceous formations of the Texan region to those of the Gulf Border region. Like the foregoing diagram its divisions are intended only to indicate known and supposed equivalences of the formations in each region to those of the other, and the width of its respective spaces has therefore no reference to the proportional thickness of the formations the names of which they embrace nor to the length of time represented by a hiatus. It also illustrates the assumed fact that the Comanche series, which is one of the most distinctive features of the Texan section, is wholly absent from that of the Gulf Border region. Besides this it illustrates the tentative opinion of the writer that the Trinity formation of the Texas section represents the non-marine division of the Gulf Border section, and that the horizon of that division is beneath that of the Comanche series.

Both of these tables are so constructed as to show the relation of the Laramie formation to the overlying Tertiary, as well as to the underlying marine Cretaceous formations. Both also represent the hiatus which is understood to exist between the uppermost marine Cretaceous formation and the overlying Eocene deposits, which hiatus is understood to exist in the Atlantic Border region as well as in the other two. That hiatus is, however, assumed to be absent in the western part of the Texan region, where the Laramie formation exists.

Comparison of the Texan and Gulf Border Cretaceous formations.

	Texan Region.	Gulf Border Region.
Tertiary	Eocene.	Eocene.
	Eocene part of Laramie.	
Upper Cretaceous	Laramie formation.	Hiatus.
	Ripley Formation and Eagle Pass beds.	Ripley formation.
	Austin formation and Ponderosa marls.	Rotten limestone.
	Eagle Ford formation.	
	Timber Creek formation.	Tombigbee sands.
Lower Cretaceous	Hiatus.	Hiatus.
	Comanche series.	
	Hiatus.	Eutaw and Tuscaloosa formations.
	Trinity formation.	

THE NORTH MEXICAN REGION.

In connection with the discussion of the Cretaceous formations of the Texan region it was shown that the geology of its western part is not yet so well known as that of the eastern part, or as that of the Atlantic and

Gulf Border regions. It is proper also to say that our knowledge of the geology of the region which lies to the west and southwest of the Texan region, which I have designated as the North Mexican region, is less perfectly known than that of the other regions mentioned, because little or no systematic investigation of any considerable part of it has yet been made.

The North Mexican region, as defined by the boundaries which have been selected for the present purpose, lies mainly within the Republic of Mexico, but it also includes a portion each of western Texas and southern New Mexico, and nominally a portion of southern Arizona. The twenty-sixth parallel of north latitude, which crosses the coast line of the Gulf of Mexico at or near the mouth of the Rio Grande, has been arbitrarily chosen as its southern boundary, because too little is yet known of the geology of the region which lies south of that parallel to allow of the selection of a natural boundary. The eastern boundary is the same as the western boundary of the Texan region, and consists of the Rio Grande, from its mouth up to the mouth of its tributary, the Pecos, and of the Pecos from its mouth to the point where the thirty-third parallel of north latitude crosses it. The northern boundary is the thirty-third parallel of north latitude, and the western boundary is the eastern shore of the Gulf of California, together with that portion of the Colorado River which lies between the northern extremity of the gulf and the parallel last named.

In designating the boundaries of those regions that already have been described it was thought expedient to make the inland boundaries coincide as nearly as practicable with the surface junction of the Paleozoic with the Mesozoic and later rocks, thus excluding all the Paleozoic and earlier rocks from those regions. It will not be practicable, however, to use such geological features for boundary lines in the case of the North Mexican region, nor of that of the other regions yet to be discussed, because the Cretaceous areas within their designated boundaries are more irregular, and sometimes isolated, and also because so much remains to be learned concerning their outlines.

The following brief and incomplete account of the topography and geology of the North Mexican region is based upon the few and meager reports that have been published, supplemented by some of my own personal observations. While lack of knowledge renders this account necessarily incomplete, enough has been acquired to indicate that the region in question is one of the most important of the Cretaceous regions of the continent.

The general surface of this region is more uneven than that of either of the other regions which have been discussed, and the average elevation above the sea is also greater. The valley of the Rio Grande is a prominent surface feature, and a considerable number of short mountain ranges exist in the eastern part, while the central part is largely occupied by a broad, irregular, high plateau. Other inequalities of sur-

face are due to the immense erosion which it has suffered during either Tertiary or post-Tertiary time, or during both those periods.

The small ranges referred to are mostly orogenic uplifts, and usually these are separated by broad spaces of comparatively plain country which are more or less thickly covered with the abundant débris that has resulted from the great erosion which has contributed so largely to the present surface features of the region. Besides these ranges there are in the same districts numerous hills and isolated mountains which are remnants of great volcanic outflows that have occurred since the close of Cretaceous time and that have escaped the great erosion.

The exposures of the greater part of the Cretaceous strata which have been observed in this region have been more or less directly connected with the orogenic uplifts that have been mentioned, but some of the more important exposures are found in the lower, comparatively plain country, and many more would doubtless have occurred there if it were not for the presence of the abundant débris which has resulted from the great erosion just mentioned.

For reasons already mentioned it is impracticable to give a satisfactory account of the several Cretaceous formations, which exist within this region, but from present information it seems to be safe to assume that they occupy only a small proportion of its surface area. The most important report that has been published concerning these formations is contained in volume I of the United States and Mexican Boundary Survey; but even in this publication little indication is given of the separate identity of the Cretaceous formations, equivalents of which are now known to occur there. Prof. Antonio del Castillo, director of the Mexican National School of Mines, has informed me that he has prepared a geological sketch map of the Republic, but no copy of it has yet reached me.[1] The following statements concerning the formations of this region are therefore based mainly upon my personal observations during the several journeys which I have made in different parts of it.

The personal observations referred to were made in western Texas, southern New Mexico, and in the Mexican states of Chihuahua, Cohahuila, and Nuevo Leon. Within these parts of the region both an Upper and Lower Cretaceous series of strata have been recognized. The upper series is understood to represent the whole of the Upper Cretaceous as it occurs in western Texas, and in the two Interior regions. That is, it is understood to represent all the formations from the Dakota to the Laramie formation inclusive, although as separate formations they have not yet been definitely recognized there. The lower series appears to embrace only strata that are referable to the Comanche series of the Texan region, no trace of the Trinity or of any other Lower Cretaceous formation than the Comanche having been observed in the North Mexican region.

[1] This map is received while this memoir is passing through the press. It is an important publication and conveys much information that has not before been published.

It is mainly the formations that are known to occur in Texas between the Pecos and the Rio Grande and in the Mexican States mentioned in the last paragraph that will be considered on the present occasion, but reference should be made to certain rocks of Cretaceous age that were some years ago reported by Mr. Gabb to exist in the Mexican State of Sonora. This report was based on the discovery and collection of some fossils by Mr. Auguste Rémond in the "Sierra de las Conchas near Arivechi, Sonora."[1]

A part of the species of this collection are identical with certain characteristic species of the Comanche series, and a part of them appear to be of Upper Cretaceous age. The former are of especial interest because they represent the most westerly known extension of Comanche strata; and the latter are also important as indicating that both divisions of the North American Cretaceous are represented there. Another matter of interest in connection with the whole collection is that its species have closer relationship to those of the formations which occur toward the east than to those of the Pacific Coast Cretaceous, although the locality in question is upon the drainage slope of the Gulf of California, and comparatively near to the Pacific coast.

It is to be expected that strata referable to the Comanche series will be found to extend far southward into the Republic of Mexico beyond the designated limits of the North Mexican region, but the only direct indication of it at present known to me is the unpublished discovery by Mr. James T. Gardner of some fossils belonging to that series in the State of Tamaulipas.[2] It is also to be expected that large exposures of both Upper and Lower Cretaceous strata other than those now known will be discovered in various parts of the North Mexican region, but we are now necessarily confined to the consideration of those which occur in the districts that are best known.

It is believed that the Comanche series exists in considerable force in the Mexican State of Cohahuila, where the Upper Cretaceous is known to be well developed, but in this region it has been observed mainly in Texas, between the Pecos and the Rio Grande, and in the Mexican State of Chihuahua. Much the most important exposures of these Lower Cretaceous strata that are yet known are found in the State of Chihuahua, exposed in a short range of mountains known as the Sierra San Carlos, about 75 miles southeastward from Presidio del Norte.[3] Dr. C. C. Parry, however, mentions a great thickness of Cretaceous strata as forming the walls of the Cañon San Carlos, through which flows the Rio Grande, from 50 to 75 miles below Presidio.[4] These strata have not been seen by myself, but they seem from Dr. Parry's description to belong to the Comanche series.

[1] Geol. Surv. California, Paleontology, vol. 2, pp. 257-276, and plates 35, 36.

[2] See remarks on Prof. Heilprin's observations in Mexico on a following page.

[3] Am. Jour. Sci., 1889, vol. 38, pp. 440-445.

[4] See Report on the United States and Mexican Boundary Survey, vol. 1, part 2, pp. 49-61.

It has been shown that west of the Paleozoic area in Texas the Comanche series disappears toward the west by a gentle general dip. West of the Pecos those strata are brought up again by the uplifting of the short mountain ranges that have been referred to. Here they are not only found to have increased in aggregate thickness, but they are found to have changed materially in lithological character. As has been shown on a preceding page, the Comanche strata in the Texan region consist of moderately compacted limestones, calcareous shales, and earthy, or sometimes chalky, material with stony concretions, all having a grayish color, usually light; but when the formation appears again in the mountain uplifts before mentioned, the series as a whole has changed to a hard compact bluish limestone so closely resembling the Carboniferous limestone of the interior portion of the continent that the two formations are not easily distinguishable from each other except by their fossils.

Some interesting exposures of these rocks occur at the eastern end of the Chinate Mountains about 25 miles north of Presidio,[1] where the bluish Comanche limestone is found to rest with apparently true conformity upon the similarly colored Carboniferous limestone. Much the most important exposure of the Comanche series yet known, however, is the one found in the cañon of a creek which flows eastward out of the Sierra San Carlos, and which has already been referred to. A section of these strata is represented by Fig. 7.

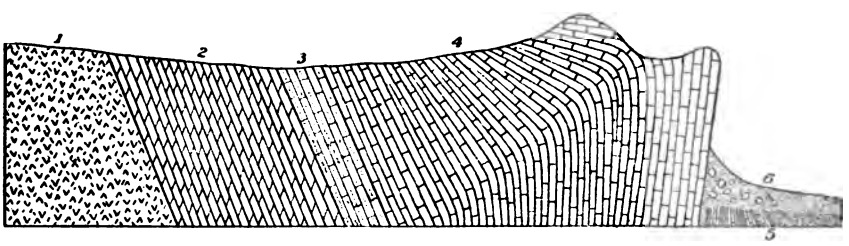


FIG. 7.—*The Sierra San Carlos section.*[2]

	Feet.
No. 1. Gray, crystalline rock, weathering light brown. Thickness not known.	
No. 2. Greenish, brown, and light colored quartzites	2,000
No. 3. Dark blue and brownish limestones, much altered, but showing traces of fossil shells	500
No. 4. Dark blue and bluish gray compact limestones, in part comparatively pure, but in part argillaceous, bearing Lower Cretaceous fossils	4,000
No. 5. Dark blue and drab colored shales alternating with layers of bluish, argillaceous, and sometimes concretionary limestone, gradually changing to lighter-colored arenaceous layers	800
No. 6. Fallen débris, covering No. 5.	

Concerning the geological age of Nos. 1 and 2 of this section no direct paleontological evidence has been obtained; and while traces of fossils were observed in No. 3 they were too indistinct to serve as trust-

[1] Presidio is a Texan town on the left bank of the Rio Grande, and Presidio del Norte, a Mexican town on the right bank of that river, directly opposite.

[2] With the exception of the brief verbal explanation of this important section in the American Journal of Science, already referred to, this is the first publication. Therefore it is more fully elaborated than is any one of the other sections which are discussed in this memoir.

worthy indices in that regard. Therefore the following suggestions as to the age of these members must be understood to have little or no direct paleontological warrant.

It is suggested that No. 1 of the section may be of Archean age, but its lithological similarity to rocks of intrusive origin, which largely enter into the composition of certain mountains in New Mexico, notably some of those in the vicinity of the town of White Oaks, in Lincoln County, which are largely composed of Cretaceous strata, favors the belief that the San Carlos crystalline rock is also of similar origin.

No. 2 of the section consists of stratified, but much altered sedimentary rock. No satisfactory view of its contact with No. 1 has been obtained, but the unexposed space between them is so small that there can be no doubt of their actual contact. No fossils have been found in these strata, and they are highly altered. The Carboniferous rocks in all that part of the continent are usually very fossiliferous and not very highly altered.[1] Therefore it is inferred that they are not Carboniferous, and it is suggested that they may be of pre-Silurian age.

No. 3 is composed of somewhat regularly bedded strata, mostly limestone, but some of the layers are more or less arenaceous. It rests with apparent conformity upon No. 2, but if the latter is really of pre-Silurian age there must necessarily be a great time-hiatus between them.

While the fossils which were originally inclosed in the strata of No. 3 have been so nearly obliterated by the alteration of the rock as to give no satisfactory indication of their geological age, they offer no suggestion that they are not referable to the Cretaceous. Besides this, these strata are so similar in character to those of No. 4, except that they have suffered greater alteration, and their conformity with them is so perfect, that it seems necessary to regard them all as belonging to one and the same series. These strata, as well as their equivalents in the Chinate Mountains, are silver-bearing.

In both lithological and paleontological character No. 4 of the section is quite uniform from bottom to top, but the greater part of the contained fossils are too compactly imbedded in the rock to be removed. It is true that some species of its fossils were found only at certain horizons in the series, but other species range through its whole thickness, among which are some that are common in the Comanche series, as it is known in Texas.

The general character of the molluscan fauna of the whole Comanche series is such as to suggest that while its habitat was marine, it existed in comparatively shallow waters. This implies that during the whole time that the series, as it is represented by the San Carlos section, was accumulating there was a continuous subsidence of the sea bottom upon which the fauna lived, and that this subsidence was approximately equal to the rate of that accumulation.

[1] It is a significant fact that while the Comanche series is found resting directly upon Carboniferous strata at many and widely separated places in western Texas, no strata of Carboniferous age are recognized in the Sierra San Carlos section.

The Upper Cretaceous strata represented by No. 5 were equally involved in the orogenic movement which placed the adjacent strata of No. 4 into a vertical or past vertical position; but as they were not able to resist erosive action so well as the latter, they have been so largely removed and covered with débris that I found them exposed only in the banks and beds of the creek where the strata of the foregoing section are exposed, and at a few other places in the same neighborhood along the eastern base of the Sierra San Carlos. These strata not only differ lithologically from the others, but they contain a different fossil fauna, several species of which are identical with those which characterize the lower portion of the Upper Cretaceous of the Interior regions.

Actual contact of these Upper Cretaceous with the contiguous Lower Cretaceous strata was not seen at the Sierra San Carlos locality, but that of their equivalents was seen at a point nearer to Presidio del Norte. The Upper Cretaceous strata were traced in the bed of the creek at the mouth of the cañon[1] in which the San Carlos section was observed so far toward the line of strike of the uppermost layers of the upturned Lower Cretaceous series that not more than 50 feet of unobserved strata can exist between them. Because of this obscuration of the contact between the Upper and Lower Cretaceous strata there the question of actual conformity remains undetermined, although, as before shown, it can not be doubted that there is closely approximate conformity, but still an important time-hiatus, between them.

The whole Upper Cretaceous series was not observed in the neighborhood of the Sierra San Carlos, the upper portion having been removed by erosion or covered from sight by the abundant débris. The whole series, however, is observable between those mountains and Presidio del Norte.

The opinion that was expressed in a previous paragraph that there is a great time-hiatus between the Lower Cretaceous of the Sierra San Carlos and the next underlying rocks is supported by the fact that a great hiatus is also known to exist between the base of the Lower Cretaceous and the next underlying rocks elsewhere in the North Mexican region. A notable example of such a hiatus, occurring with apparent conformity of strata, is to be observed, as already indicated, at the eastern end of the Chinate Mountains, about 25 miles north of the town of Presidio, Texas. Here the Lower Cretaceous rocks rest directly upon the Carboniferous, and their conformity is so perfect at the point where they were observed that the junction between them was not readily distinguishable. Still, the time-hiatus between them amounts to the whole of the Jurassic and Triassic periods, and apparently a considerable part of the Carboniferous also.

A great thickness of the Comanche Lower Cretaceous is exposed in a large hill that rises near the right bank of the Rio Grande below Presidio del Norte. Upon the southern flank of this hill strata bearing

[1] This cañon must not be confounded with the Cañon San Carlos, through which the Rio Grande flows, and which is mentioned on p. 133.

er Cretaceous fossils rest upon those Lower Cretaceous rocks and a well marked southerly dip. Following the direction of the dip er and higher strata are observed, and at a point a few miles from hill just mentioned strata are reached which are believed to repre- the Laramie formation. The whole thickness of these Upper Cre- ous strata, not including the supposed Laramie, is estimated at 0 feet.

ie following paragraphs are offered as a partial summary of the going statements and discussions:

has been shown that four more or less distinctly definable groups rata are recognized as constituting the Upper Cretaceous series of portion of the Texan region which lies east of the Paleozoic area exas, namely, the Ripley, Austin, Eagle Ford, and Timber Creek ations. The Upper Cretaceous series of that portion of the Texan on which lies west of the Paleozoic area is there capped by the Lara- which is treated in this memoir as a portion of the Upper Cre- ous. The Upper Cretaceous strata, which lie beneath the Laramie estern Texas, apparently are not so distinctly separable into differ- formations, either stratigraphically or paleontologically, as is the esponding series in eastern Texas, but the discovery of character- fossils of each of the formations of the eastern section in strata ie western one leaves no room for reasonable doubt as to the real valency of the two sections as represented by the diagram on 130.

is lack of separate definition of formations observable in the Upper aceous series of the western part of the Texan region is also ob- able in the Upper Cretaceous of the North Mexican region. For nple, the Timber Creek formation of eastern Texas, which is re- ed as equivalent to the Dakota, is not recognized as a distinct ation in either the western district of the Texan region or in the h Mexican region, but certain strata at the base of the Upper Cre- ous in that district are recognized as representing the Timber Creek ation because of the presence in them of some of its characteristic ne fossils.

gain, fossils which characterize the Eagle Ford, Austin, and Ripley ations of eastern Texas are found in similar vertical order of occur- e in the Upper Cretaceous series of the North Mexican region as as in that of the western part of the Texan region; but our present wledge of the strata composing the Upper Cretaceous series there not justify their grouping into formations so distinctly definable as those that have just been named, or as those which in other regions egarded as the true equivalents of this series. Besides this, the mie formation in these two regions, as well as elsewhere toward north, blends so intimately with the next formation beneath it that horizon of their interdelimitation has been recognized as identical that at which the change from a marine to a brackish-water fauna place.

The foregoing statements show that we are not now able to treat the Upper Cretaceous of the North Mexican region and of the adjacent western part of the Texan region under the head of separate formations so satisfactorily as we are to thus treat its equivalent series of strata elsewhere. Therefore the Upper Cretaceous strata of the North Mexican region are in this memoir discussed or referred to as a whole, except in those cases of separate recognition of the Laramie formation and of the Eagle Pass beds. In thus discussing them, however, it is not intended to assume that further study of the North Mexican Upper Cretaceous strata may not show good reason for their separation into several more or less distinct formations.

The Upper Cretaceous strata, which for the western part of the Texan region were designated as the Eagle Pass beds, have been recognized at several places in the valley of the Rio Grande, on the Mexican as well as on the Texan side of that river, ranging from a point a few miles above the town of Piedras Negras to one within a few miles of Laredo. Exposures of equivalent strata occur in and near the valley of Sabinas River, in the central part of the Mexican State of Cohahuila, as well as at a few localities between the Rio Sabinas and the Rio Grande in the same State. They have also been observed at several points in the northern part of the State of Chihuahua, where some of the exposures embrace strata which are believed to represent the whole range of the Upper Cretaceous as it is known in the Texan and South Interior regions, and where they are capped by strata believed to belong to the Laramie, as that formation caps the Upper Cretaceous in the last-named regions.

It has been shown that strata bearing characteristic fossils of the lower marine member of the Upper Cretaceous of the two interior regions are found superimposed upon the Lower Cretaceous in the Sierra San Carlos and at other places in the State of Chihuahua. At the locality not far from the town of Presidio del Norte the whole Upper Cretaceous series seems to be present and to reach a thickness of not less than 5,000 feet, not including the strata provisionally referred to the Laramie formation. This Upper Cretaceous section, when added to the Lower Cretaceous as observed elsewhere in the North Mexican region, gives an estimated aggregate thickness of more than 10,000 feet for the whole system as it is represented in that region.

The Laramie,[1] which is such an important formation in the two interior regions, is also an important one in the North Mexican region, especially in the States of Chihuahua, Cohahuila, and Nuevo Leon. Its presence in the first-named State has just been mentioned, and it is also well developed in the Sabinas Valley, in Cohahuila, where it is an important coal-bearing formation.[2]

[1] The characteristics of this formation are discussed on following pages.

[2] See Am. Jour. Sci., 1887, vol. 33, pp. 18–20.

It has also been recognized by its characteristic fossils as far south as the vicinity of Lampazos, in the State of Nuevo Leon.[1] In this State, near to the Rio Grande, as well as on the Texan side of that river, it has been found to rest upon the equivalent of the Eagle Pass beds and in turn to pass by a gentle southerly dip beneath the marine Eocene beds which occur there.[2]

The stratigraphical relation of the Laramie to the immediately underlying marine Cretaceous formation is quite as intimate in the North Mexican region as it is elsewhere. The two formations appear to have been the result of continuous sedimentation, their interdelimitation being marked only by a material change in the paleontological character of the strata. The characteristics and limitations of the Laramie formation, however, will be discussed in connection with the formations of the South Interior region.

The leading features of the Cretaceous geology of the North Mexican region are similar to those of the Texan region; that is, the same formations, and no others, are represented in one region that occur in the other, with the apparent exception of the Trinity formation, which has not yet been satisfactorily identified in the North Mexican region. Therefore, according to our present knowledge, the Comanche Series alone constitutes the Lower Cretaceous of this region. The series here, however, is lithologically different from what it is farther eastward, being composed mainly of compact limestone; and it also reaches a much greater thickness than it is known to attain in any part of the Texan region.

The Upper Cretaceous series apparently is as well developed in this region as it is in any other part of the continent, and it embraces a full representation of all the formations that occur in the great interior area, including the Laramie and the marine strata which are understood to represent the Dakota formation.

The imperfection of the foregoing account of the formations which in the North Mexican region are referable to the Cretaceous system is due to our present imperfect knowledge of them. Therefore a complete statement of the upper and lower delimitations of the system as it is developed there can not be expected. The facts at present known, however, indicate that the system is there limited by the base of the Comanche series beneath and by the top of the Laramie formation above.

Because it is evident that the Comanche series, fully as it is developed in the North Mexican region, does not represent the earliest epoch of Cretaceous time in North America, it is expected that earlier Cretaceous deposits may yet be discovered in that region beneath the Co-

[1] See Am. Jour. Sci., 1883, vol. 25, pp. 207–209.

[2] See Am. Jour. Sci., 1888, vol. 35, pp. 432–438. A small collection of fossils has been obtained by Prof. O. St. John from an artesian boring in strata at La Zarra, in the State of Tamaulipas, which possibly represent the Laramie where it merges into a marine formation. As Prof. St. John's observations were unavoidably limited, the fact mentioned can be regarded only as a very suggestive one.

manche. At present, however, we know of no such deposits there, and the latest strata that the Comanche series has been found to rest upon in that region are of Carboniferous age. In some places, for example in the Sierra San Carlos, they seem to rest upon earlier rocks than the Carboniferous.

The Laramie formation appears to reach full development in this region. Its strata underlie and apparently pass gradually up into marine Eocene strata in the southeastern part of the region. Furthermore, some imperfect molluscan fossils which have been found in the Laramie strata there seem to indicate that its fauna was, in that district, influenced by neighboring marine conditions, but the evidence upon this point is slight. Farther inland the Laramie has not been found overlain by any other deposits than the loose débris that has resulted from the great erosion which has been referred to; that is, it has not there been found overlain by such lacustrine deposits as are found resting upon it in some parts of both of the interior regions.

It has already been stated that the full Upper Cretaceous series of the Texan and of the South Interior region is represented in the North Mexican region. Therefore the lower delimitation of the Upper Cretaceous there is understood to be by those marine strata which are regarded as the equivalent of the Dakota formation.

The uppermost strata of the Comanche series in the North Mexican region are thought to be equivalent to the uppermost strata of that series in the Texan region. The upper delimitation of the Lower Cretaceous is therefore understood to be the same in both regions, as is also the time-hiatus between the Upper and Lower Cretaceous. No suggestion other than that to be inferred from the tables of sections on following pages, is at present offered as to the extent of that hiatus, or as to what portion of the time which it represents ought to be referred to each of the two divisions of the system.

The Upper Cretaceous of the North Mexican region being regarded as the full equivalent of that of the western part of the Texan region, its recognized upper and lower delimitations are based upon the same data. The Lower Cretaceous of the Texan region, consisting only of the Comanche series, is of course delimited by the well marked paleontological and stratigraphical characteristics of that series.

THE GREAT INTERIOR AREA.

Although some of the boundaries which have been selected for the Cretaceous regions of North America are in large part arbitrary, most of those of the three regions which have been discussed on preceding pages are sufficiently natural to have been advantageously recognized in those discussions. Coming now to the central portion of the continent, we find the Cretaceous formations there to occupy an area which is so very large that it is inconvenient to discuss them under

the head of a single region. We also find that because of their greater irregularity and obscurity it is even more difficult to define the boundaries of this great area in a satisfactory manner than it was those of the three regions just mentioned. These conditions have arisen from the extensive denudation and from the intricate displacements which the Cretaceous formations have suffered there, and from the superposition of later formations and of débris resulting from erosion, which have covered them from sight over large districts.

For the present purpose, however, the eastern boundary of the great Cretaceous area of the interior may be designated as corresponding to the western border of the great Paleozoic area which extends northward and southward through the central part of the continent, and which terminates by a comparatively narrow prolongation in the Texan region, as has already been shown. Tracing the line of such a boundary, we find it to extend northward through western Texas to the southern boundary of Kansas, near the northwestern corner of Indian Territory, thence northeastward to northeastern Kansas, thence northward through eastern Nebraska to the mouth of Big Sioux River, thence north to the Red River of the North and down that river to its mouth at the southern end of Lake Winnipeg, and thence northwestward to the northeast corner of the district of Athabaska. The western boundary of this great area may be designated as approximately corresponding to the line of the great watershed which separates the Pacific drainage from that of the Arctic and Atlantic Oceans, and as extending from the sixtieth parallel of north latitude to where the watershed line meets the one hundred and thirteenth meridian in western Montana, thence south upon that meridian to the thirty-third parallel of north latitude, which has been chosen as the north boundary of the North Mexican region. A natural northern boundary can not now be definitely indicated, because so little is yet known of the geology of that far northern portion of the continent. The sixtieth parallel of north latitude, which constitutes the north boundary of the district of Athabaska and that of the province of British Columbia has been chosen for the north boundary of this region both for present convenience and because it approximately corresponds to the present northern limit of systematic geological investigation. The southern boundary of the great area is identical in part with the northwestern boundary of the Texan region, and in part with the north boundary of the North Mexican region, as they have been respectively indicated on the preceding pages and shown on the small map (Pl. I, p. 72).

It being inconvenient to discuss this great area as a single region, I have divided it by a line which corresponds to the course of Platte River from its mouth to the mouth of the North Platte, thence to a line coincident with the course of the latter stream, extending westward to the point of its nearest approach to the forty-third parallel of north

latitude, and thence to a line coincident with that parallel and extending to the western boundary of the Great Interior area. That portion of the area which lies north of this line I have designated the North Interior region and that portion south of it the South Interior region.

During a number of years past evidence has been accumulating that the Cretaceous area of the central portion of the continent was originally much greater than that which is included within the boundaries that have just been indicated. That is, there is evidence that a considerable portion of the great interior Paleozic region, which lies east of and adjacent to the eastern border of the interior Cretaceous area, as it has just been defined, was originally covered by Cretaceous deposits, and that these were mostly removed by Tertiary denudation and the remainder obscured by the action and accumulation of the great northern drift. In Iowa and Minnesota, for example, many small outliers and limited accumulations of both disturbed and undisturbed Cretaceous strata have been found resting directly upon Paleozoic rocks of various epochs and also upon Archean rocks. Besides these remnants of undisturbed Cretaceous strata much material, which was evidently derived from the same original deposits, has been found in many places mixed with the glacial drift. These discoveries indicate that the Upper Cretaceous sea extended in some places fully as far eastward as the present channel of the Mississippi River, and that it probably occupied certain adjacent portions of western Wisconsin and Illinois, and perhaps also of northern Missouri. The district within which the remnants and débris of the Cretaceous formations referred to are found is so great that if it were included in the present Great Interior Cretaceous area its eastern boundary would be extended more than 200 miles farther eastward than the one which has been indicated in the definition given in a previous paragraph.

Because of the incompleteness of the information which has yet been published concerning these small, isolated, and widely scattered exposures of Cretaceous deposits they will not be discussed in connection with the formations of any of the regularly defined regions, but the district within which they occur will be included among the extra-regional districts which are to be briefly discussed on following pages.

Except along its western border, the Great Interior area is a comparatively plain country, in which the Cretaceous formations lie approximately horizontal. Along its western portion these formations have suffered much displacement by the numerous orogenic uplifts which have taken place since the close of the Cretaceous period. Coincident with those uplifts was the principal part of the great epeirogenic movement by which the formations of the more level portion of the area have reached their present elevation, ranging from a little less than 1,000 feet to more than 5,000 feet above the sea. It is from the western border of these higher levels of comparatively undisturbed strata that the

abrupt orogenic uplifts rise, giving grand exposures of the Cretaceous formations such as are to be seen at the base of the Rocky Mountain, and other ranges. Besides these abrupt uplifts, the evidence of which is so conspicuous at the base of the ranges mentioned, those portions of the Cretaceous formations which are found in the higher intervales and among the mountains are, as a rule, also much disturbed.

The chief of the orogenic movements which have occurred within this area are those which have resulted in the great Rocky Mountain system of ranges, which extends entirely through it from north to south. Other movements, which apparently were simultaneous with this, resulted in the elevation of other ranges, several of which, of less extent than the others, lie west of the Rocky Mountain system proper. The uplifting of these ranges has, with slight if any exceptions within this great area, brought up all the Upper Cretaceous formations, including the Laramie, to such a height that now they are sometimes found at an elevation of 10,000 feet or more above the level of the sea.

The formations of the Great Interior area which in this memoir are referred to the Cretaceous system or are discussed as being intimately connected with those which are unquestionably of that age are in part of marine, in part of brackish, and in part of fresh water origin. That is, while a part of those formations had their origin in open sea waters, as is shown by the character of their fossils, others are as plainly shown to be of non-marine origin, they evidently having been deposited in interior waters, or those which respectively were either wholly or almost entirely landlocked.

It is an interesting fact, as bearing upon the subject of Mesozoic continental conditions, that the Kootanie formation, the only member of the Lower Cretaceous yet recognized in this great area, and also the Dakota formation, the oldest member of the Upper Cretaceous, are of non-marine origin, and that the latter formation was immediately succeeded by two others of true marine origin, namely, the Colorado and Montana formations. These two marine Upper Cretaceous formations were in turn succeeded by the non-marine Laramie formation, and in the northern part of the area another non-marine formation, namely, the Belly River formation, is intercalated between the Colorado and Montana formations. It thus appears that during Cretaceous time, as it is represented by the formations of this continent, great portions of its present interior were alternately above and below sea level. Indeed, a large proportion of the North American Cretaceous formations relate to continental, rather than to marine conditions.[1]

The uppermost of the marine Cretaceous formations of the Great Interior area seem to have been of as late origin as any marine Creta-

[1] There is also evidence that during the pre-Cretaceous portion of Mesozoic time continental conditions prevailed over the greater part of the present continent.

ceous strata that are now known to exist within the Atlantic Border, Gulf Border, Texan, or North Mexican regions. Therefore the Cretaceous age of the non-marine Laramie formation, and of the Puerco, Arapaho, and Denver beds, all of which lie above the marine Cretaceous strata in the interior area and which are to be discussed in following paragraphs, may naturally be questioned in the absence of paleontological evidence. Paleontological evidence in the case of these overlying formations is, as a whole, so conflicting that when all of it is taken into consideration it is difficult to reach a definite conclusion as to their taxonomy. Those who have studied the fossil vertebrates alone, and those who have attempted the study of these formations with little or no reference to paleontology, have generally referred them to the Cretaceous system; the former, mainly on the ground of their containing dinosaurian remains, and the latter because of their intimate stratigraphical relationship to and of their common involvement with undoubted marine Cretaceous strata in orogenic folds and other displacements. So far at least as concerns the Laramie formation which rests directly upon the marine Cretaceous strata referred to, there are certain other conditions which bear upon the question of its true geological age. This question has been discussed by myself in a former publication,[1] where reasons are given for provisionally including the Laramie among the Cretaceous formations, notwithstanding the Tertiary character of certain of its fossils and its superposition upon the latest known marine Cretaceous strata. Those reasons will be further considered in following paragraphs.

For many years after the geology of the Great Interior area began to be studied none of the strata which in this memoir are referred to the Lower Cretaceous were known to exist there. That is, all the then known Cretaceous formations are in this memoir referred to the Upper Cretaceous, the Dakota formation being the earliest one then known in all that great area. The earlier investigators there also always referred the strata which are now known as the Laramie formation to the Tertiary. Therefore the only Cretaceous strata which were then recognized in all that area are embraced in the section commonly known as the Upper Missouri River section, which ranges only from the Dakota to the Fox Hills member of that section inclusive.[2] This section was first published by Meek & Hayden, and it has long been recognized as the standard for reference in the study of the Cretaceous deposits of all the interior portion of the continent. Within its vertical range it is in substance still so used, although it has been modified by various authors for different portions of that great area and also for general use there, the changes referred to being mainly confined to differences in nomenclature and in the grouping of the strata which con-

[1] Am. Jour. Sci., 1888, vol. 35, pp. 432–438.
[2] Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Phila., 1856, vol. 8, pp. 256–286.

stitute the section. The following table represents this section compared with the modification of it which has been adopted in this memoir.[1]

	Upper Missouri section of Meek & Hayden.	Adopted modification of the same.
[2]Later Cretaceous	No. 5. Fox Hills group	Montana formation.
	No. 4. Fort Pierre group	
[2]Earlier Cretaceous.	No. 3. Niobrara group	Colorado formation.
	No. 2. Fort Benton group	
	No. 1. Dakota group	Dakota formation.

The above modification of the Upper Missouri section does not include the Kootanie, Belly River, and Laramie formations, all of which are now known to occur in the Great Interior area, because they either were not known to exist, or were not recognized as Cretaceous formations when the Upper Missouri section was first published. The relation of those three formations to the three whose names are given in the above modification will be shown on following pages.

It is proper to mention here that in the discussion of the formations of the North Interior region it will appear that it is more difficult to recognize in its western part the separate divisions of the Meek & Hayden section, or even those of its modification, than it is in the eastern part.

The Laramie formation has been noticed several times on preceding pages with reference to the formations which occur in the three regions that have already been discussed, but because that great formation prevails in both the South and North Interior regions and extends through the whole length of the Great Interior area, as well as into portions of the Texan and North Mexican regions, it seems desirable to present some remarks upon its characteristics as a whole before proceeding to a discussion of the separate formations of each of the two Interior regions.

The present geographical outlines of the area within which strata of this formation occur are not yet well known, but it apparently is as great as that within which any other North American formation has been observed. Their presence has been recognized at so many and such widely separated localities that they safely may be assumed to once have formed a continuous deposit from near the twenty-sixth to near the fifty-fifth parallel of north latitude, and in certain districts from near the one hundred and third to near the one hundred and fifteenth meridian. That is, it is evident that this formation originally consisted of a contin-

[1] This modification is the same as that of Newberry, Powell, and White, as will be shown on following pages, but the nomenclature is that of Mr. Geo. H. Eldridge as proposed by him in Am. Jour. Sci., 1889, vol. 33, pp. 313–321, except that the term formation has been substituted for that of group.

[2] The terms earlier and later were not applied by Meek & Hayden in the first publication of their section, but they were afterwards used by them. See Dana's Manual of Geology, 2d ed., pp. 456, 457. In Am. Jour. Sci., 1889, vol. 38, pp. 120–127, Dr. Geo. M. Dawson used these terms in a different sense, applying them to those strata which in this memoir are referred to the Upper and Lower Cretaceous respectively.

uous deposit nearly or quite 2,000 miles long from north to south and more than 500 miles across from east to west.[1]

In thickness the Laramie formation varies greatly in different districts, a part of which variation is due to erosion and a part to the difference in the amount of material originally deposited. In western Colorado it has been found to be nearly 4,000 feet thick, and in Canadian territory its maximum thickness is reported to be much greater. Mr. W. Lindgren reports a still greater thickness for the Laramie in Montana, but this matter will be further referred to in connection with the discussion of the Belly River formation. Often, however, the Laramie formation is much thinner, sometimes reaching a maximum of only a few hundred feet within large districts.

In lithological character the Laramie formation is remarkably uniform throughout both its geographical and vertical extent, and it seems everywhere to have been the result of continuous sedimentation from base to top. Its strata within the whole of the great area which they occupy are mostly composed of sandy material, but frequently they are more or less argillaceous, and rarely calcareous. Sandstones of much firmness often occur among them, but a large part of the sandy strata are soft and friable. Shaly strata not infrequently occur, and these are often carbonaceous. The formation throughout its whole extent is coal-bearing, and fossilized wood and other plant remains are often abundant.

The paleontological characteristics of the Laramie formation are to a great degree constant throughout its great geographical and vertical extent, although its strata appear to be unfossiliferous within comparatively large districts. Few or no fossil invertebrate forms, similar to those which now specially characterize marine faunas have been found in any of them, and it is reasonable to assume that no true marine fauna existed in the waters in which these strata were deposited. Remains of brackish-water molluscan forms, including *Ostrea*, *Anomia*, *Corbula*, *Corbicula*, and *Neritina* are frequently found in strata alternating with others containing only fresh-water forms, such as *Unio*, *Viviparus* and *Goniobasis*.[2] The molluscan faunas of both brackish and fresh-water origin which characterize the Laramie formation have remarkable integrity throughout both its vertical and geographical extent.

The plant remains which are found so plentifully in the Laramie[3] show that an abundant flora prevailed throughout the whole region in which

[1] The geologists of the Canadian Geological Survey have discovered deposits containing Laramie species of plants at certain localities far north of the northern limit of the Laramie area here indicated, but it is probable that while those deposits may have been contemporaneous with the Laramie they were made in separate bodies of water. Therefore it is not yet necessary to conclude that the Laramie sea extended so far north as the far northern localities referred to.

See Dr. G. M. Dawson's table on a following page and in Rep. Geol. Surv. Canada for 1887-'88, part I. See also Dawson, J. W., Trans. Roy. Soc. Canada, vol. 7, sec. 4, pp. 69-74.

[2] For a summary of the invertebrate fossils of the Laramie group, see White, C. A., Review of the Non-Marine Fossil Mollusca of N. A. Third Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Survey for 1881-'82.

[3] For a general account of these remains see Ward, Lester F., Synop. Flora Laramie group, Sixth Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Survey for 1884-'85.

its strata occur, and during the whole time in which they were deposited, but considerable differences in that flora have been observed in different districts and at different stages in the Laramie. These differences indicate that there were greater changes in the character of the flora during the Laramie epoch than there were in that of the molluscan fauna during the same time.

The vertebrate remains which have been found in the Laramie formation are those of mammals, reptiles, and fishes, the latter, like the molluscan remains, indicating either brackish or fresh-water conditions of habitat. The mammalian remains are those of small animals of low orders, which are apparently more nearly related to some of those which have been found in strata of Jurassic age than to the Tertiary faunas whose remains are found in strata immediately overlying the Laramie. It is the reptilian remains that possess peculiar interest in connection with the paleontology of the Laramie formation, because so large a portion of them belong to a dinosaurian fauna, and because the discussions concerning the geological age of this formation have usually had especial reference to them.

The localities at which Laramie strata were first studied by geologists were often distant from one another, and they were not then recognized as constituting one great formation. Because they were found to contain molluscan remains of brackish-water types, and none of exclusively marine types, they were generally spoken of by their earlier investigators as estuary deposits. These deposits having been regarded as of estuarine origin those found at each locality were necessarily thought to be of limited extent, and they consequently received a different name in each district. They thus have received such names as Fort Union group, Judith River group, Lignitic group, and Bitter Creek series. The term Lignitic soon came to be applied to the strata of several districts which are now included in the Laramie, and it was then believed that they alone contained the coal of that part of the continent. Afterward, Mr. King and Dr. Hayden, recognizing all these deposits as constituting a single formation, jointly proposed the name Laramie for it.[1] Soon afterward, while studying the invertebrate fauna of this great group and that of those which underlie and overlie it, I was led to the conclusion that the Laramie strata were deposited in a great land-locked sea,[2] and subsequent investigations have confirmed that opinion.

Those who have investigated only the vertebrate remains of the Laramie formation have referred it unqualifiedly to the Cretaceous;[3] the

[1] See U. S. Geol. Expl. 40th Parallel, vol. 1, p. 371. Mr. King, however, in 1875, several years before the publication of this volume, distributed advance sheets of his atlas, upon which the name Laramie was used.

[2] See Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr., 1887–'88. vol. 4, pp. 724, 866; and Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr. for 1877, p. 263.

[3] Prof. Cope as early as 1872, claimed that the Laramie strata of Wyoming are of Cretaceous age. Proc. Am. Philos. Soc., vol. 12, pp. 481–483. See also Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Phila., vol. 26, pp. 12, 13.

judgment of paleobotanists generally has been in favor of its Tertiary age, especially of the upper part of the formation, while students of its invertebrate fauna have found the forms composing it to be of little value in chronological inquiry. The question whether this great formation ought to be referred to the Cretaceous or to the Tertiary is of far less importance than is the acquisition of all the available facts relating to it as representing one of the most interesting epochs in North American geological history. I have, however, found it desirable to treat the Laramie formation as holding a transitional position between the Cretaceous and Tertiary; but I have also found it desirable provisionally to place the whole of it with the Cretaceous formations for discussion in this memoir.

The alternation of brackish and fresh waters in one and the same part of the Laramie sea, evidence of which has been observed in so many and so widely separated localities, is assumed to have been caused by oscillatory movements of the bottom. The presence of remains of an abundant land flora and of numerous coal beds indicates that as a result of those oscillatory movements large portions of the great Laramie area were from time to time occupied by low islands.

Within a large part of the area which the Laramie formation is known to occupy nothing is found to rest upon it except the surface débris which has resulted from the erosion of its own and other strata. In other parts, however, several separate stratified deposits, all of which now are, and originally were, of much less geographical extent than the Laramie, are respectively found to rest upon it and all are of fresh-water origin. These formations are separable from the Laramie in part upon stratigraphical and in part upon paleontological grounds, but they need to be briefly mentioned in this connection to show the upper delimitation of the Laramie and to indicate the strata in which occur the latest fossil forms that any authors have regarded as of Cretaceous types. Those which have peculiar relation to the Laramie are the Wasatch formation, the Puerco beds, and the Arapaho and Denver deposits. The others are of later age than any of these and need not be specially discussed in this connection.

The Wasatch formation is regarded as of Eocene age, and usually its strata are found to rest unconformably upon the Laramie, but in portions of Utah, at least, they rest conformably upon the strata of the latter formation. Here also some of the fresh-water Laramie molluscan species are found to pass up into the lower strata of the Wasatch formation and to become members of its fresh-water molluscan fauna.[1] Some of the Laramie species of plants have also been identified in the Wasatch formation. None of the Laramie brackish-water mollusca, however, and no members of its dinosaurian fauna, although occurring in its uppermost strata, seem to have passed up into the Wasatch, even where the fresh-water mollusca have passed up into that formation.

[1] Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey, No. 34, vol. 5, pp. 391–442.

Furthermore, none of the characteristic Wasatch mammalian remains have been found in the Laramie formation, not even in its uppermost strata, although they occur in the lowermost Wasatch strata.

The fresh-water mollusca which passed from the Laramie into the Wasatch formation having belonged to gill-bearing families, we necessarily infer that they had a continuously congenial aqueous habitat from the Laramie into the Wasatch epoch. Aqueous conditions having been unbroken, sedimentation must also have been, at least in some places, continuous from the one formation to the other. In eastern Montana and western North Dakota the Laramie strata are similarly connected, by specific identity of molluscan remains and by apparent continuity of sedimentation, with those which there are reported to bear a purely Tertiary flora, and which have generally been designated the Fort Union group.

In short we find that the Laramie and fresh-water Eocene formations are, on the one hand, separated from each other by the great dissimilarity of their vertebrate faunas and, in many places, by stratigraphical unconformity, and, on the other hand, that they are closely connected with each other by specific identity of some of their molluscan remains and, in some places, by continuity of sedimentation. In the latter cases there is no time-hiatus between the Laramie and the fresh-water Eocene, and we also find their interdelimitation paleontologically incomplete. In these cases the upper limit of the Laramie formation is taken to coincide with the upper limit of the upward range of brackish-water molluscan fossils which appears to coincide closely with the limit of the upward range of dinosaurian remains and the downward limit of the range of Eocene mammalia, especially of the Coryphodonts.

In northwestern New Mexico and southwestern Colorado an assemblage of strata is found resting upon the Laramie that structurally is not clearly distinguishable from the Wasatch. These strata, however, contain remains of a vertebrate fauna which Prof. Cope finds to be very different from that of any other known North American formation. Because of this he has given them a separate name, that of the Puerco group,[1] but which I designate as the Puerco beds because I do not now regard that assemblage of strata as structurally coordinate with those to which the term formation is generally applied. Because of certain characteristics possessed by the vertebrate fauna of these Puerco strata, Prof. Cope refers them to the Cretaceous system, although that fauna contains some admitted Tertiary types. No species of any kind are yet known to pass from the Laramie up into the Puerco, but it is probable that some of the molluscan forms of the latter group are common to the Wasatch.[2]

I regard it as reasonable to suppose that the Puerco beds, notwithstanding their peculiar vertebrate fauna, were deposited contemporaneously with the lower part of the Wasatch, which all admit to be of

[1] See Am. Naturalist, vol. 19, pp. 385, 493, and 985.

[2] See Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey, No. 34, p. 15.

Eocene age, but these beds are herein noticed in connection with the Cretaceous formations because they have been so assigned by Prof. Cope and because it is desirable to present all the principal facts relating to the upper delimitation of the full Cretaceous series of formations in the Great Interior area.

The other strata that have been mentioned as superimposed upon the Laramie and requiring notice in this connection are those to which the names Arapaho and Denver groups respectively have been applied, both of which occur together, and both have yet been found only in the district around Denver, Colorado, at the eastern base of the Rocky Mountains.[1] The lower of these two assemblages of strata, the Arapaho, rests unconformably upon the Laramie, and the Denver rests unconformably upon the Arapaho. Both the Denver and the Arapaho deposits are of fresh-water origin, and both are lithologically different from the Laramie and from each other. Although they are stratigraphically and lithologically different from the Laramie they appear to be related to that formation by molluscan and plant remains; but this relationship appears to be more complete than is that of the Laramie with the Wasatch formation in Utah, which already has been mentioned.

In view of these facts, especially in view of their stratigraphical separateness, the Tertiary age of the Arapaho and Denver deposits would doubtless have never been questioned if it were not that both are found to contain dinosaurian remains which are of such a character as to give no indication of a decadence of that great reptilian subclass or of its approaching extinction.

Dinosaurian remains of similar types are found in the Laramie formation at various and widely separated localities, and in view of the fact that those Laramie strata upon which the Arapaho deposit rests are not known to constitute the latest part of the Laramie, the question may be raised whether the Arapaho and Denver deposits were not formed in the latter part of the Laramie epoch, and consequently whether they were not contemporaneous with the upper part of the Laramie where that formation is complete. My present belief favors the affirmative side of this question, but there seems to be no reason why a continuation of the existence of dinosaurs into Tertiary time should be denied, and none why the Arapaho and Denver deposits should not be regarded as Tertiary, as is the stratigraphically inseparable upper part of the Laramie formation. Hitherto the upper limit of the vertical range of dinosaurian remains in the Laramie has appeared to be coincident with that of brackish water molluscan remains, but if the Arapaho and Denver deposits are to be assigned to the Tertiary it will not be unreasonable to look for dinosaurian remains in the Wasatch formation also.

[1] See Mining Industry, Denver, Colorado, for July 13, 20, and 27, 1888. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 37, 1889 pp. 261-282, and Proc. Colorado Sci. Soc., vol. 3, part 1, p. 97.

The Tertiary age of all the stratified deposits of the Great Interior area, which are later than the Denver deposit, is unquestioned, and this fact, together with those which before have been noticed, sufficiently indicates that no other deposits than those which have just been discussed need be further mentioned in this connection.

Turning now to the base of the Laramie formation, we find its lower delimitation to be in some respects indefinite. In the great area within which the Laramie occurs it has been found to rest with strict conformity upon the next underlying marine Cretaceous formation, and usually also the strata of both formations present an appearance which indicates that sedimentation was continuous from the lower to the higher formation.

Certain observed facts make it evident that between the last marine Cretaceous epoch, as represented by the strata which have just been mentioned, and the Laramie epoch, certain land faunas and floras were unbroken, but it is plain that there was an abrupt break of the aqueous faunas there. That is, in exposures of strata where the base of the Laramie and the top of the marine Cretaceous series occur, marine fossils may be traced upward, to a certain level, where they cease; but this level is unmarked by any material change in the character of the strata. Still tracing these strata upward, a level is soon reached at which brackish and fresh-water fossils are found, and here also there is no material change in the character of the strata, and none also between the two levels indicated.

These brackish water molluscan remains, together with those of fresh-water mollusks in alternating beds, range through the whole thickness of the Laramie formation and constitute its distinctive paleontological feature; and they are, as I believe, the most trustworthy indicators of the identity, and of the delimitations of that formation.

The base of the Laramie is therefore understood to be stratigraphically unmarked at all points where it has been observed, but the level upon which the aqueous faunas change from a marine to a brackish water character is assumed to mark its base. The level where the brackish-water mollusca became extinct and a purely fresh-water fauna prevailed is assumed to mark the top of the Laramie, even though at some points some of the fresh-water species of the latter formation continued to live afterward, and even though sedimentation was unbroken at such points.

From the foregoing statements it will be seen that the upper and lower delimitation of the Laramie formation which I have recognized agrees with and is dependent upon the full vertical range of its brackish water fauna. This basis is regarded as more trustworthy than any other, because all the members of that fauna were denizens of the waters in which the strata containing their remains were deposited, while the presence of remains of land faunas and floras in those strata is in all cases the result of accidental circumstances. Moreover there is good

reason for assuming that the great flora and the land vertebrate fauna which characterize the Laramie began their existence as such not later than the later portion of the Montana epoch, and probably before, and that a large part of the flora just mentioned, as well as certain members of the Laramie fresh water and land molluscan faunas, continued their existence into the Wasatch Tertiary epoch.

In making these statements I neither forget that several of the characteristic Laramie species of invertebrates have been found in the Belly River formation, nor deny that those species had their origin as early as that epoch, but the paleontological lower delimitation of the Laramie by its invertebrate fossils is not therefore the less trustworthy wherever that formation is found to rest upon the Montana formation.

By some persons the opinion has been held that during the Laramie epoch proper, open sea waters made occasional incursions at different places upon the area occupied by the non-marine waters whose fauna characterizes the Laramie formation,[1] but although the frequent alternation of strata bearing brackish water fossils with those bearing only fresh-water forms show that within certain districts brackish waters alternated with fresh, I have, in my extensive examinations of this formation, never detected any evidence of the incursion of open sea waters. The opinion referred to, which I think has not yet been demonstrated, has perhaps arisen from a supposed identification of coal-bearing strata of the upper part of the Montana formation with similar coal bearing strata of the Laramie. Because it is my present belief that all true marine waters were withdrawn from the interior portion of this continent at the beginning of the Laramie epoch, no true marine strata are in this memoir recognized as belonging to the Laramie formation.

While I am not now prepared to admit that the open ocean made incursions upon the great Laramie inland sea after it had become established as such at the close of the Montana epoch, it is reasonable to infer that it had somewhere a more or less restricted outlet to oceanic waters until all the area which it had occupied became in part dry land and in part the bed of the great fresh-water Tertiary lake or lakes which immediately succeeded it. What we now know of the various epeirogenic movements which resulted in the production of the present continent leads me to believe that such an outlet, if one existed, was at the southern end, and this suggestion is supported by certain paleontological conditions which have been observed in Laramie strata in the Texan and North Mexican regions. That is, certain fossil forms have been observed in those strata which seem to indicate a greater saltness of the water in which they were deposited than prevailed elsewhere in the Laramie sea; but these observations are too incomplete to be confidently relied upon in an inquiry of this kind.[2]

In 1875 a small collection of marine Tertiary fossils, purporting to have been found in Colorado, 40 miles east of Denver, was placed in

[1] See for sample, U. S. Geol. Expl. 40th Parallel, vol. 1, p. 352.

[2] See foot note on page 139.

my hands for examination. This led me to believe that the relation of the Laramie to the marine Tertiary would be discovered in that district, but subsequent examination showed that no marine Tertiary strata exist in that part of the continent, and that the fossils in question came from another locality.[1]

The molluscan fauna of the Laramie, as that great formation has been defined in preceding paragraphs, has, as already stated, remarkable integrity from base to top and throughout its whole geographical extent; but there is a series of strata in the central portion of the Great Interior area which generally has been referred to the Laramie formation, but which paleontologically is very different. These strata, which have become generally known as the Bear River Laramie because their best known exposures occur in the valley of Bear River, in southwestern Wyoming, have been represented by all the geologists who have reported upon them as holding the same relation to the overlying Wasatch and the underlying marine Cretaceous strata that the typical Laramie strata do elsewhere; but wherever they have been observed they are found to have been so displaced by faulting and folding as to render their true relation to underlying and overlying formations a matter of great uncertainty. I have long believed that these strata are older than those of the Laramie formation, both because of the dissimilarity of their molluscan fauna to the Laramie and later faunas, and because I had seen marine Cretaceous strata in the valley of Bear River which I believed to belong above them, although I have hitherto failed to demonstrate it satisfactorily.

The branchiferous molluscan fauna of these strata is so different from the typical fauna of the Laramie that not only have none of the species of the former fauna been identified with any of the latter, but some of the generic forms are different. So far as I am aware no important collections of either plant or vertebrate remains have been made from the Bear River Laramie strata, the paleontological comparisons referred to having been confined to their fossil mollusca. The difference between the molluscan fauna of the Bear River strata and that of the typical Laramie formation is so great as to indicate that they were not deposited in one and the same body of water, and both faunas give little or no indication by their characteristics whether they were contemporaneous or not; therefore, this question must be decided by stratigraphical observations, aided by the ascertained paleontological characteristics of all the formations involved in the investigation.

Investigation of this question is now in progress by the division of the survey in my charge, which, it is believed, will demonstrate that the so-called Bear River Laramie strata are considerably older than the Laramie formation proper. In this case I shall discontinue the use of the term Laramie, as applied to these deposits.

[1] See Geology of the Uinta Mountains, pp. 106, 107; also, Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr. for 1876, pp. 191, 192.

THE SOUTH INTERIOR REGION.

The boundaries of the South Interior region are of course those of the southern part of the Great Interior area, together with its line of division, which have been defined on pages 141 and 142. These boundaries are at best only nominal, and are given merely to indicate the general limits of the southern portion of that area which includes all the numerous irregular districts which are occupied by Cretaceous rocks and which lie between the great Paleozoic area of the continental interior on the east and the Pacific Border region on the west. The region as thus defined comprises the whole of Colorado and portions of Kansas, Nebraska, Wyoming, Utah, Arizona, New Mexico, and of northwestern Texas. It is more than 600 miles across from north to south and more than 800 miles from east to west.

The great interior plains extend over the eastern portion of this region, but the western portion is almost everywhere more or less mountainous, and in large part extremely so. These orogenic uplifts, the numerous volcanic outflows, and the immense denudation which the rocks have suffered there, together with the overlapping of subsequent sedimentary deposits, have obliterated or covered from sight a large part of the Cretaceous rocks which were doubtless originally formed there. This has left the visible Cretaceous areas much broken, very irregular, and often small and isolated. For this reason, and because the geology of the region has not yet been thoroughly studied, it is not at present practicable to give so complete an account of the Cretaceous formations which are known to exist there as might be desired.

So far as is now known, all the Cretaceous formations which exist in this region belong to the Upper Cretaceous as defined in this memoir if we except a small area in southern Kansas where a few Lower Cretaceous fossils are reported to have been found. That is, these strata range in the vertical series from the equivalent of the Dakota to the Laramie formation inclusive and, for reasons stated on preceding pages, some other deposits which in this region rest upon the Laramie are discussed in connection with the Cretaceous formations.

The whole Upper Cretaceous series, including the Laramie formation, is upturned against the eastern flank of the Rocky Mountains, conspicuously so in Colorado, and the thickness and character of the separate formations may there be satisfactorily studied. The series thins out toward the east, perhaps partly by erosion, but southward, in New Mexico and in northern Mexico, the whole series thickens, as it also does west of the Rocky Mountains.

A considerable number of authors have written upon the Cretaceous formations of the South Interior region, all of whom have classified them, for the respective districts in which they studied them, in a somewhat different manner, and all have used a more or less different nomenclature. These disagreements were a natural result of the independent labors of the different investigators, and of the then generally prevalent imper-

fect knowledge of the geology of that part of the continent, and were not due to inaccuracy of observation. Furthermore, the essential features of a correct classification of those formations appear in the reports of all those authors because of the integrity of the great general horizons which will be defined on following pages and which we now know embrace the greater part of the strata in question, not only throughout the whole of the South Interior region, but throughout much of the great interior portion of the continent. We therefore find that in its leading features each classification referred to closely agrees with that of the Upper Missouri Cretaceous section of Meek and Hayden which has been given on page 145. Because of the differences of detail and of nomenclature in the published sections of different authors it is desirable to compare them with one another and with the Upper Missouri section.

In his earlier geological exploration of the region which now in part constitutes the Territories of New Mexico and Arizona, Prof. Newberry seems to have recognized only two divisions of the Cretaceous series which he found there and which he designated as Upper and Lower Cretaceous respectively.[1] It is evident, however, that he did not regard the latter as equivalent to any part of the European Lower Cretaceous or to any strata which are in this memoir referred to the North American Lower Cretaceous. In his later work in portions of the same region he divided the same series into lower, middle, and upper divisions.[2] These he correlated with the designated groups of Meek and Hayden's Upper Missouri section, making the lower one equivalent to the Dakota group, the middle, to the Fort Benton and Niobrara groups together, of that section, and the upper, to the Fort Pierre and Fox Hills groups together. His omission in the former case to recognize separately the equivalent of the Dakota formation was probably due to the blending of those strata with the next overlying ones, in the southern part of the region which he examined, such as I have referred to on preceding pages as occurring in the Texan and North Mexican regions. The line of separation of his middle and upper divisions corresponds to that which Meek and Hayden recognized as separating their Earlier from their Later Cretaceous. The following table represents Prof. Newberry's section compared with that of the Upper Missouri River region by Meek and Hayden.

Newberry's New Mexican section.	Meek and Hayden's Upper Missouri section.
Upper division	No. 5; Fox Hills group.[3]
	No. 4; Fort Pierre group.
Middle division	No. 3; Niobrara group.
	No. 2; Fort Benton group.
Lower division	No. 1; Dakota group.

Newberry estimates the thickness of his upper division at 1,500 feet, the middle division at from 1,200 to 1,500 feet, and the lower division at from 250 to 400 feet.

For the district embracing the eastern end of the Uinta Mountain

[1] Lieut. Ives's Report upon the Colorado River of the West, Part III.

[2] Macomb's Expl. Exped., Geol. Report, pp. 121, 122.

[3] Prof. Newberry *seems also to* have included at least a part of the Laramie in his Upper division.

range Maj. J. W. Powell proposed a classification of the Cretaceous series, which differs from all others in nomenclature, and which he divides into four formations.[1] The first or lower one of these he called the Henry's Fork group, the second the Sulphur Creek group, the third the Salt Wells group, and the upper one the Point of Rocks group. The first three are equivalent to Newberry's lower, middle, and upper divisions, respectively, and the upper one is equivalent to the greater part of the Laramie formation. The upper portion of the Laramie he referred to the overlying Eocene formation, to which he gave the name of Bitter Creek group. His Salt Wells group is equivalent to the Montana formation as defined on page 158, and also to both the Fox Hills and Fort Pierre groups of Meek and Hayden's Upper Missouri section. Powell's Sulphur Creek group is equivalent to the Colorado formation as defined on page 158, and to the Niobrara and Fort Benton groups together of the Upper Missouri section. The Henry's Fork group is equivalent to the Dakota group of the Upper Missouri section. It is clearly recognizable as a separate formation in the Uinta district, but it apparently is not so clearly recognizable in at least some parts of New Mexico or at any point south of that Territory, as has just been intimated.

The strata between the equivalent of No. 1, of the Upper Mississippi section, and of that of the Laramie, that is between his Henry's Fork and Point of Rocks groups, Powell divided into two parts upon the same plane that was recognized by Meek and Hayden as dividing the Earlier from the Later Cretaceous and by Newberry as dividing his Middle from his Upper Cretaceous. The following table represents Powell's section compared with the Upper Missouri section:

Powell's section.	Upper Missouri section.
Point of Rocks group	Wanting.
Salt Wells group	No. 5; Fox Hills group. No. 4; Fort Pierre group.
Sulphur Creek group	No. 3; Niobrara group. No. 2; Fort Benton group.
Henry's Fork group	No. 1; Dakota group.

Powell gives the following statement of the thickness of each of the groups of his section: Point of Rocks, 1,800 feet; Salt Wells, 1,800 feet; Sulphur Creek, 2,000 feet, and Henry Fork, 500 feet.

Clarence King divided the marine Cretaceous series as he found it in Colorado and Wyoming into three parts, to which he added the Laramie as a Cretaceous formation.[2] The lower member of King's section is strictly equivalent to the lower members of the three sections already mentioned, which were published by Meek and Hayden, Newberry and Powell respectively, and for it King retained the name Dakota group, which the first-named authors had given it. Instead, however, of dividing the strata between the Laramie and Dakota formations at the plane of junction between the equivalents of Nos. 3 and 4 of the Upper Missouri section, as Meek and Hayden and Powell did, he divided them at

[1] *Geology of the Uinta Mountains*, p. 76. [2] See U. S. Geol. Expl. 40th Parallel, vol. 1 and Atlas.

the junction of the equivalents of Nos. 4 and 5. That is, he placed the equivalents of Nos. 2, 3, and 4 in one and the same formation which he called the Colorado group, apparently overlooking or ignoring the fact that such a grouping of those strata is unnatural on paleontological ground. For a comparison of this section with others, see the next following table and also the series of tables on following pages.

Prof. J. J. Stevenson, in his earlier work in New Mexico and adjacent parts of Colorado,[1] divided the Cretaceous into upper, middle, and lower divisions, as Prof. Newberry had done. In his later work there,[2] however,[2] he adopted the classification of Mr. King, which has just been explained, so far as to combine the equivalents of the Fort Benton, Niobrara, and Fort Pierre groups of Meek and Hayden's section to form the Colorado formation, but he also combined the equivalents of the Fox Hills and Laramie strata under the name of the latter formation. Therefore he represents the Laramie as resting upon the Colorado formation. Dr. F. M. Endlich also reported a similar condition of those strata in southern Colorado.[3]

The assumption of such a condition implies an important time-hiatus in the Cretaceous series there, which I am not disposed to admit, because I believe that all the formations of the series are represented throughout the South Interior region, with the partial exception in Middle Park, which is indicated by slight unconformity which has been reported by Mr. A. R. Marvine[4] to exist there between the Laramie and Montana formations.

In 1877 I employed a form of classification for the Cretaceous series of northwestern Colorado similar to that of King, retaining the names which were proposed or adopted by him, but I divided the series differently into formations.[5] That is, the Dakota and Laramie formations of that section were then recognized as King had defined them, but the Colorado formation was restricted to include only the equivalents of the Fort Benton and Niobrara groups of the Upper Missouri section, while the equivalents of the Fort Pierre and Fox Hills groups of that section were placed together under the single name of Fox Hills group.

The following table represents White's section compared with that of King and with the Upper Missouri section. For further comparisons of these and other sections, with the names of the formations as used by different authors, see the series of tables on following pages.

White's section.	Upper Missouri section.	King's section.
Laramie	Wanting	Laramie.
Fox Hills group	No. 5, Fox Hills group	Fox Hill group.[6]
Colorado group	No. 4, Fort Pierre group No. 3, Niobrara group No. 2, Fort Benton group	Colorado group.
Dakota group	No. 1, Dakota group	Dakota group.

[1] U. S. Geog. & Geol. Expl. & Surv. West of the 100th meridian (Wheeler), Chap. 13, pp. 361–410, vol. 3.
[2] Ibid., vol. 3, supplement, geology, pp. 240, and 3 maps.
[3] Ninth Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr., pp. 192–215.
[4] Seventh Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr., pp. 83–192.
[5] See Tenth Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr., 1878, p. 22.
[6] King gives this name as "*Hill*," not "Hills," as in Meek and Hayden's section.

The estimated thickness of the formations constituting White's section is, for the Laramie, 3,500 feet, for the Fox Hills, 1,800 feet, for the Colorado, 2,000 feet, and, for the Dakota, 500 feet.

Since the publication of the works just referred to, there has been a tendency among those who have studied the Cretaceous of the Great Interior area to recognize only two formations between the top of the Dakota and the base of the Laramie, instead of four, as was done by Meek and Hayden in the Upper Missouri section, and to indicate the plane of separation as occurring at the junction of the equivalents of Nos. 3 and 4 of that section, as was done by Newberry, Powell, and White.

The modified classification of the Upper Cretaceous formations of the South Interior region which I have adopted in this memoir is that which has already been given on page 145, the nomenclature of which was proposed by Mr. Eldridge.[1] The following table shows the relation of the adopted section, with the addition of the Laramie formation, to the Upper Missouri section:

Upper Missouri section of Meek and Hayden.	Adopted classification.
Not recognized	Laramie formation
No. 5, Fox Hills group No. 4, Fort Pierre group	Montana formation
No. 3, Niobrara group No. 2, Fort Benton group	Colorado formation
No. 1, Dakota group	Dakota formation

It will be seen that in the classification which is herein adopted for the South Interior region, and also for all the interior portion of the continent, the use of the numbers introduced by Meek and Hayden is discontinued, and that only one of the names of formations which those authors used, namely, the Dakota, has been retained.

The partial confusion in the classification of the Cretaceous rocks of this region which has been referred to has evidently arisen from the blending together in certain parts of the Great Interior area of the equivalents of the formations which were by Meek and Hayden recognized as distinct from one another in more northern districts, and from changes in the character of others of those formations. For example, the Dakota is as clearly distinguishable as a separate formation in the northern and central portions of the South Interior region as it is at the typical localities in the North Interior region, in all of which districts the strata are plainly of nonmarine origin. In the southern part of the South Interior region, however, as well as in central Kansas and in eastern Texas, the strata which are confidently regarded as representing the Dakota formation are found to bear true marine fossils, and, in some cases, both paleontologically and stratigraphically, to blend so intimately with the next overlying strata which are regarded as equivalent to the lower part of the Colorado formation as to render their interdelimitation indistinct.

[1] See Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 38, pp. 313-321.

Again we find the Colorado formation to possess unmistakable integrity throughout this region, and although there is in different districts considerable difference in the lithological character of the different beds of which the great formation is composed, and in certain districts considerable modifications of the character of its molluscan fauna, the group, as a whole, is such as to make any division of it into separate formations either unnatural or unnecessary. The integrity of the Montana as a single formation, although its modifications are in some respects similar to those of the Colorado, is also as unmistakable in this region as that of the latter formation.[1]

There are apparently good reasons for believing that no material time-hiatus exists between the Colorado and Montana formations as they are developed in the South Interior region, but the paleontological difference between them is such as to warrant their recognition as separate formations, and their separation is made upon the same plane that has been recognized as a natural one by much the larger number of the geologists who have studied the Cretaceous series of the Great Interior area. Some interesting facts relating to this plane of separation will be discussed in connection with remarks upon the Belly River formation, which is found in the North Interior region.

In the larger part of the South Interior region the Dakota is readily recognizable as a separate formation. In the northern and northwestern part of the region it consists of coarse sandstones, usually heavily bedded, and, especially in the Rocky Mountain district, often having a bed of variegated clayey shales at the base, the whole reaching a maximum thickness seldom exceeding 500 feet. In these districts the sandstone is often found to contain plant remains, but it appears that few or no vertebrate remains have yet been discovered in this formation; those which were collected by Dr. Hayden and published by Prof. Cope,[2] as coming from the Dakota, are now referred by the latter author to the Jurassic.[3]

In the eastern part of the region, for example in southeastern Nebraska, fresh and brackish water molluscan remains have been found in Dakota strata by Prof. L. E. Hicks (unpublished), and in central Kansas Prof. B. F. Mudge found remains of many true marine molluscan forms in strata which occupy the horizon of the Dakota formation.[4] Some of these Kansas species have been identified among the molluscan remains of the Timber Creek formation of the Texan region, for which reason, among others, that formation is regarded as equivalent to the Dakota, as already explained.

In the Rocky Mountain and Uinta Mountain districts the Dakota formation rests conformably upon the Jurassic, and some of the strata

[1] It is nevertheless true that more or less distinct faunal stages are recognizable in certain parts of both the Colorado and Montana formations.

[2] See Am. Naturalist, vol. 12, pp. 71-85; also, Proc. Am. Philos. Soc., vol. 17, pp. 233-247.

[3] See preface to vol. 3, Book I, U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr.; also, Compte rendu Sten. du Cong. Int. de Géol., Paris, 1878.

[4] See U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr., vol. 9; and Proc. U. S. Nat. Mus., vol. 2, pp. 292-298.

The estimated thickness of the formations constituting White's section is, for the Laramie, 3,500 feet, for the Fox Hills, 1,800 feet, for the Colorado, 2,000 feet, and, for the Dakota, 500 feet.

Since the publication of the works just referred to, there has been a tendency among those who have studied the Cretaceous of the Great Interior area to recognize only two formations between the top of the Dakota and the base of the Laramie, instead of four, as was done by Meek and Hayden in the Upper Missouri section, and to indicate the plane of separation as occurring at the junction of the equivalents of Nos. 3 and 4 of that section, as was done by Newberry, Powell, and White.

The modified classification of the Upper Cretaceous formations of the South Interior region which I have adopted in this memoir is that which has already been given on page 145, the nomenclature of which was proposed by Mr. Eldridge.[1] The following table shows the relation of the adopted section, with the addition of the Laramie formation, to the Upper Missouri section:

Upper Missouri section of Meek and Hayden.	Adopted classification.
Not recognized	Laramie formation
No. 5, Fox Hills group No. 4, Fort Pierre group	Montana formation
No. 3, Niobrara group No. 2, Fort Benton group	Colorado formation
No. 1, Dakota group	Dakota formation

It will be seen that in the classification which is herein adopted for the South Interior region, and also for all the interior portion of the continent, the use of the numbers introduced by Meek and Hayden is discontinued, and that only one of the names of formations which those authors used, namely, the Dakota, has been retained.

The partial confusion in the classification of the Cretaceous rocks of this region which has been referred to has evidently arisen from the blending together in certain parts of the Great Interior area of the equivalents of the formations which were by Meek and Hayden recognized as distinct from one another in more northern districts, and from changes in the character of others of those formations. For example, the Dakota is as clearly distinguishable as a separate formation in the northern and central portions of the South Interior region as it is at the typical localities in the North Interior region, in all of which districts the strata are plainly of nonmarine origin. In the southern part of the South Interior region, however, as well as in central Kansas and in eastern Texas, the strata which are confidently regarded as representing the Dakota formation are found to bear true marine fossils, and, in some cases, both paleontologically and stratigraphically, to blend so intimately with the next overlying strata which are regarded as equivalent to the lower part of the Colorado formation as to render their interdelimitation indistinct.

[1] See Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 38, pp. 313–321.

Again we find the Colorado formation to possess unmistakable integrity throughout this region, and although there is in different districts considerable difference in the lithological character of the different beds of which the great formation is composed, and in certain districts considerable modifications of the character of its molluscan fauna, the group, as a whole, is such as to make any division of it into separate formations either unnatural or unnecessary. The integrity of the Montana as a single formation, although its modifications are in some respects similar to those of the Colorado, is also as unmistakable in this region as that of the latter formation.[1]

There are apparently good reasons for believing that no material time-hiatus exists between the Colorado and Montana formations as they are developed in the South Interior region, but the paleontological difference between them is such as to warrant their recognition as separate formations, and their separation is made upon the same plane that has been recognized as a natural one by much the larger number of the geologists who have studied the Cretaceous series of the Great Interior area. Some interesting facts relating to this plane of separation will be discussed in connection with remarks upon the Belly River formation, which is found in the North Interior region.

In the larger part of the South Interior region the Dakota is readily recognizable as a separate formation. In the northern and northwestern part of the region it consists of coarse sandstones, usually heavily bedded, and, especially in the Rocky Mountain district, often having a bed of variegated clayey shales at the base, the whole reaching a maximum thickness seldom exceeding 500 feet. In these districts the sandstone is often found to contain plant remains, but it appears that few or no vertebrate remains have yet been discovered in this formation; those which were collected by Dr. Hayden and published by Prof. Cope,[2] as coming from the Dakota, are now referred by the latter author to the Jurassic.[3]

In the eastern part of the region, for example in southeastern Nebraska, fresh and brackish water molluscan remains have been found in Dakota strata by Prof. L. E. Hicks (unpublished), and in central Kansas Prof. B. F. Mudge found remains of many true marine molluscan forms in strata which occupy the horizon of the Dakota formation.[4] Some of these Kansas species have been identified among the molluscan remains of the Timber Creek formation of the Texan region, for which reason, among others, that formation is regarded as equivalent to the Dakota, as already explained.

In the Rocky Mountain and Uinta Mountain districts the Dakota formation rests conformably upon the Jurassic, and some of the strata

[1] It is nevertheless true that more or less distinct faunal stages are recognizable in certain parts of both the Colorado and Montana formations.

[2] See Am. Naturalist, vol. 12, pp. 71–85; also, Proc. Am. Philos. Soc., vol. 17, pp. 233-247.

[3] See preface to vol. 3, Book I, U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr.; also, Compte rendu Sten. du Cong. Int. de Géol., Paris, 1878.

[4] See U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr., vol. 9; and Proc. U. S. Nat. Mus., vol. 2, pp. 292-298.

of each formation are there so similar in lithological character that it is often difficult to determine the plane of delimitation of each. In the eastern part of this region, however, as well as in the eastern part of the North Interior region, the Dakota strata rest unconformably upon the Carboniferous, and apparently also, in some cases, upon still older rocks.

In the northern and northwestern parts of the South Interior region the contrast between the Dakota formation and the lowermost strata of the overlying Colorado formation, which usually consist of bluish shales, is well marked both lithologically and paleontologically; but as before stated, the distinction between the respective equivalents of those two formations is apparently either obliterated or obscured in the southern part. This matter will be further mentioned in connection with the separate discussion of each of the great Cretaceous horizons of the continent.

As a rule, to which, however, there are some exceptions, the lower portion of the Colorado formation, or that which in this province represents No. 2 of the Upper Missouri section, is shaly, often consisting of bluish, fissile shales, and is, in a portion of this region, overlain by more sandy strata, while the portion which represents No. 3 of that section is more or less calcareous. Sometimes, however, the last named portion consists of regularly bedded limestone, and sometimes it is friable or chalky. Overlying this calcareous portion of the formation there are usually several hundred feet of argillaceous, or sometimes sandy, strata.

The chalky condition referred to is observable in portions of western Kansas, where limited deposits of true chalk are sometimes found. In that district these beds have furnished many important vertebrate remains. But the best known development of the calcareous member of the formation in this region is found in the valley of the Arkansas River, west of the city of Pueblo, Colorado, where it consists of about 50 feet in thickness of light gray, regularly bedded limestone, which is equivalent to, and closely resembles, the limestone of the Austin formation of Texas. The following table shows the principal members of the section near Pueblo and their approximate correlation with those of the Upper Cretaceous section of eastern Texas:

Pueblo section.		Eastern Texas section.
Montana formation		Ripley formation and underlying shales.
Colorado formation	Gray limestone	Austin limestone.
	Bluish shales	Eagle Ford shales.
Dakota formation		Timber Creek formation.

Although the calcareous member of the Colorado formation is better developed along the east front of the Rocky Mountains from central to southern Colorado than elsewhere, the average thickness of the whole formation seems to be less east of the mountains than it is west of them. Still, it is probable that the eastern strata represent the whole of the Colorado epoch.

The paleontological characteristics of the Colorado formation are, with exceptions presently to be mentioned, closely similar on both sides of the Rocky Mountains. Its physical characteristics, west of those mountains, are described by Powell[1] and White,[2] who show that, in a general way, they are similar to those which the formation presents east of the mountains. The calcareous member of the formation, however, is seldom recognizable west of the Rocky Mountains or southward from southern Colorado or north of the 45th parallel of north latitude.

The lithological characteristics of the Montana generally present a considerable contrast with those of the underlying Colorado formation. Usually, however, a shaly condition of the strata similar to that of the upper portion of the Colorado prevails in that portion of the Montana formation which represents No. 4 of the Upper Missouri section. In such cases it is difficult to distinguish the lower strata of the Montana from the upper ones of the Colorado formation, except by means of their respective fossils. It appears to have been this lithological similarity of portions of the two groups which led King to add the lower portion of the Montana formation to his Colorado group.

Above this lower shaly portion of the Montana formation sandstones of considerable thickness usually prevail, which are succeeded by argillaceous shales again, and these pass up into more sandy strata, upon which the Laramie rests.

The sandstone portion of the Montana formation is often well developed, especially west of the Rocky Mountains, where those strata frequently form high, bold escarpments. They are often fossiliferous, and many species of the fossil mollusks which characterize them range to the uttermost limits of this region as well as to those of the North Interior region. In the discussions of the Cretaceous horizons of the continent we shall also see that certain of the Upper Cretaceous strata of the Gulf and Atlantic Border regions are closely connected with these and other strata of the Montana formation by their molluscan fossils.

Estward from the eastern base of the Rocky Mountains the Montana formation is much obscured by the débris of the plains, and its identity as a separate formation has not been clearly recognized along the eastern border of the region, near which the recognizable Cretaceous strata seem to belong either to the Dakota or Colorado formation, or to both. That is, Montana and Laramie strata do not appear to extend so far eastward in this region as do those of the two formations beneath them. Southward, in New Mexico, and also west of the Rocky Mountains in Colorado and Wyoming, the Montana formation is perhaps the most conspicuous member of the Cretaceous series, and it reaches a great maximum thickness in both those districts.

While there is usually not much difficulty in distinguishing the Montana from the Colorado formation in this region, in the absence of fossils it is, as already stated, always difficult to determine the plane of delimitation between the Montana and Laramie formations because of

[1] Geology of the Uinta Mountains.

[2] Tenth Annual Report U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr.

the close similarity of the strata of each, because both formations, as a rule, have the aspect of having been produced by uninterrupted sedimentation, and because both have been equally involved in all stratigraphical displacements which either has suffered. The only trustworthy means of distinguishing between them is their invertebrate fossils, and these within large portions of the region are often absent or undiscovered, and they are especially rare in the greater part of the Laramie strata. The separation of the two formations, as already stated, is made upon some conveniently but usually indistinctly recognizable plane between the uppermost strata which bear characteristic fossils of the Montana formation and those which are found to bear only brackish and fresh water molluscan forms, such as are known to be characteristic of the Laramie formation. Both the Laramie and Montana formations are coal-bearing, and this similarity has served to increase the difficulty of discriminating between the strata of each.[1]

Although the modification of the Upper Missouri section, which has been given on page 158, is applicable to the whole South Interior region, the two upper divisions of it, namely, the Colorado and Montana formations, are paleontologically somewhat differently characterized in certain parts of it. For example, at certain localities near the east base of the Wasatch range in Utah and Wyoming, and near the east base of the Sangre de Cristo range in Colorado, where those two groups are stratigraphically more or less clearly recognizable, the species of molluscan fossils which there characterize each, although all are of marine types, are largely different from those which elsewhere characterize those formations respectively. Still, each formation contains a sufficient number of the forms which characterize it elsewhere to make its identification satisfactory, especially when such identification is aided by stratigraphy. The localities at which these modified faunas, especially that of the Colorado formation, have been most satisfactorily examined are in the valley of Weber River, near Coalville, Utah, in the southwestern corner of Wyoming, and in Huerfano Park, Huerfano County, Colorado.

The modification of the molluscan fauna of the Montana and Colorado formations, although it extended over quite a large area, was evidently due to local conditions, which can not now be discussed. The fact, however, has much interest in this connection, because the molluscan fauna of the Colorado and of the Montana formation generally has great integrity throughout their geographical extent.

All the strata of the Cretaceous section at the Coalville locality, beneath the Laramie, are plainly of marine origin, except one bed which contains estuarine forms.[2] Some of these estuarine species are so closely

[1] For further discussion of this subject, see following pages.

[2] See Twelfth Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr., Part 1, pp. 5-34, and plate 12.

The character of some of these estuarine fossils is so nearly like that of certain forms which are found in the Laramie formation as to suggest that the molluscan fauna of the great inland Laramie sea was derived from the estuarine and fluviatile faunas that existed along the borders of the preexisting Cretaceous sea, which gradually gave place to the Laramie sea. It will, however, be seen that some of the Laramie molluscan forms had a still earlier origin in the waters in which the Belly River formation was deposited.

like certain forms found in the Laramie formation that the two faunas have been confounded by some geologists, but this estuary bed lies beneath fully 1,000 feet of the marine Cretaceous strata upon which the Laramie rests.

The remarks which have been made upon the Laramie formation on preceding pages render a general discussion of it unnecessary in this connection. In the South Interior region it appears to reach its minimum thickness east of the Rocky Mountains. In the vicinity of the valley of the South Platte it is often found to be no more than 100 to 400 feet thick, and it evidently thins out toward the east, beneath the débris of the plains. Its eastern boundary is not definitely known, but it has been recognized a few miles east of the western boundary of both Kansas and Nebraska. West of the Rocky Mountains it is much thicker, reaching in western Colorado a maximum thickness little, if any, less than 4,000 feet. In New Mexico it also reaches a great thickness, and its strata are so similar to those of the Montana formation, upon which they rest, that they have often been confounded together by geologists. This has arisen mainly from the fact that not only are the strata of both formations similar in lithological and stratigraphical character, but both are coal-bearing and fossils in large portions of that district are rare, especially in the Laramie.

It is within the limits of the South Interior region that the Arapaho, Denver, and Puerco deposits occur, the general characteristics of all three of which have been given on preceding pages. In the northwestern part of this region occurs the apparently exceptional blending of the Laramie and Wasatch strata, which has been described, and it is in that part of the region that the strata already noticed under the probably erroneous name of the Bear River Laramie are found.

Reviewing the foregoing discussion of the Cretaceous formations of the South Interior region we observe that, with the possible exception of some Comanche outliers in southern Kansas, their vertical range includes none that are older than the Upper Cretaceous; but it has been found desirable to discuss some later deposits, concerning the Cretaceous age of which opinion is divided. Practically, then, we may regard the Dakota formation and its equivalent strata as constituting the base of the Cretaceous series in this region, while its upper delimitation is indefinite, blending in some places with the overlying Tertiary. There is good reason to believe, also, that during the deposition of the whole Cretaceous series of the South Interior region from the base of the Colorado to the base of the Wasatch formation, inclusive, continuity of sedimentation was never at all points wholly interrupted.[1]

It has also been shown that, with the probable exception of some outliers of Comanche strata in southern Kansas, all the Cretaceous formations of the South Interior region are referable to the Upper Cretaceous. These formations have been distinguished from one another

[1] See White, C. A., Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv. No. 34, vol. 5, pp. 391–442.

upon both paleontological and stratigraphical ground, mainly upon the former, and, for reasons already explained, invertebrate fossils have in most cases been more relied upon than have plant and vertebrate remains.

The Dakota formation is so well defined that no difference of opinion as to its identity, characterization, and delimitation has ever arisen among the geologists who have studied it in the South Interior region. All these geologists who have given due attention to paleontological evidence in connection with field studies have agreed upon the delimitations of the Colorado and Montana formations which have been stated upon preceding pages, although some of them have subdivided both of these great formations. It is probable, however, that some paleontologists have referred certain vertebrate and plant remains to the Laramie that were really obtained from the Montana formation. That is, for reasons already mentioned, it seems probable that the upper delimitation of the Montana and the lower delimitation of the Laramie formation cannot be clearly defined by means of plant and vertebrate remains.

The delimitation of the Laramie formation and the data upon which it has been recognized have already been discussed.

The following table represents the order of superposition of the formations in three different portions of the South Interior region that have been discussed on preceding pages; but its arrangement is not intended to have any reference to the question of equivalency to one another of the formations, especially of those above the Laramie:

New Mexico.	Utah.	Colorado.
1. Puerco beds.	1. Wasatch formation.	1. Denver formation.
2. Laramie formation.	2. Laramie formation.	2. Arapaho formation.
3. Montana formation.	3. Montana formation.	3. Laramie formation.
4. Colorado formation.	4. Colorado formation.	4. Montana formation.
5. Dakota formation.	5. Dakota formation.	5. Colorado formation.
6. Not definitely known.	6. Jurassic.	6. Dakota formation.
		7. Jurassic.

THE NORTH INTERIOR REGION.

The boundaries of this region, so far as they are definable, have already been indicated in connection with the definition of the boundaries of the whole Interior area,[1] and they are also shown on the map (Pl. I) opposite page 72. Those boundaries embrace a large portion of both United States and Canadian domain. Nearly the whole of Montana and nearly or quite the whole of both North and South Dakota are included in the former portion of the region, as well as parts of Nebraska, Wyoming, and Idaho; and the Canadian portion includes the whole of the districts of Assiniboia and Alberta, the greater part of Saskatchewan and Athabasca, and the western part of the province of Manitoba.

[1] See pages 141 and 142.

Besides the great area included within these boundaries evidence has already been referred to as indicating that a large part of both Iowa and Minnesota, and perhaps also the eastern part of Manitoba, were once occupied by Cretaceous deposits which were then continuous with those of this region. The evidence of this former eastward extension of the Cretaceous sea far beyond the limits of the North Interior region as they have been defined on preceding pages, consists of the presence of numerous outliers of Cretaceous deposits beneath, and of much of their débris mingled with, the glacial drift at numerous places in the two States mentioned, the most easterly of these discoveries being near the Mississippi River. Because it is impracticable to define a boundary which will accurately include all those outliers, the one proposed is thought to be more convenient for the discussion of this region, and the outliers just mentioned will be again referred to under the head of Extra Regional Districts.

Including the Laramie among the Cretaceous formations, these boundaries embrace the broadest unbroken Cretaceous area which is known to exist upon this continent, it being fully 600 miles across both from east to west and from north to south. A large, and perhaps the larger, part of the whole region is occupied by the Laramie formation.

The Cretaceous series of the North Interior has a greater chronological range than that of the South Interior region. That is, beneath the Upper Cretaceous series of the North Interior region, which is held to have the same chronological range as that of the South Interior region there is found, within limited areas, another formation which is not known to occur in any other region. This formation, because of its known position beneath the equivalent of the Dakota and of the character of its fossil flora, is referred to the Lower Cretaceous, and it is the lower delimiting formation of the whole series in this region. In this region, as in the South Interior, North Mexican, and Texan regions, the Laramie formation constitutes the upper delimiting member of the series and reaches a greater thickness than is elsewhere known. Coal, or lignite as it is usually called, prevails throughout the Laramie in this region at many horizons. Much of it is of good quality, but at present a large proportion of it has little economic value.

Next to the Cretaceous rocks of the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions, those of the North Interior region have been more exhaustively studied than have any others that are discussed in this memoir; and yet considerable differences of opinion have arisen among geologists as to the proper delimitation of the formations which constitute the series there, and also as to the true geological age of some of them. These facts have been discussed to some extent in remarks upon the Cretaceous geology of the South Interior region, but it is well to refer to them again because it is in the North Interior region that occurs the best known and earliest published section of the Cretaceous rocks of the Great Interior area. This section, which already has been frequently

referred to under the name of the Upper Missouri Cretaceous section of Meek and Hayden, has, up to the present time, really remained a standard for the study of the marine Cretaceous formations of the whole of the Great Interior area, although subsequent investigations have shown the necessity for modifying and adding to it.

At the time Meek and Hayden published their section, as stated on a preceding page, they regarded the Laramie strata at the few localities where they had studied them, not as the great formation which it is now known to be, but as separate estuary deposits, all of which they referred to the Tertiary. They also then had no knowledge of the strata which are now known as constituting the Kootanie, or of those which constitute the Belly River formation.

The following table represents the Cretaceous formations which are now recognized in the North Interior region, compared and correlated with the Upper Missouri River section as published by Meek and Hayden.

General section of the North Interior region.		Meek and Hayden's Upper Missouri section.
Upper Cretaceous	Laramie formation	Not recognized as Cretaceous.
	Montana formation	Fox Hills group.
		Fort Pierre group.
	Belly River formation	Not recognized.
	Colorado formation	Niobrara group.
		Fort Benton group.
	Dakota formation	Dakota group.
Lower Cretaceous	Kootanie formation	Not recognized.

The modification for the South Interior region of the section which Meek and Hayden adopted for the formations of the Upper Missouri country and the reasons for that modification have been discussed on preceding pages. A similar modification of the classification of the Cretaceous formations in the North Interior region is indicated in the left-hand column of the foregoing table, where also is shown the introduction of members not included in Meek and Hayden's section. So far as the real equivalents of the different members of the Upper Missouri section are concerned, the modification which it is thought necessary to recognize in the North Interior region is approximately the same as that which has been proposed for the South Interior region. The general section for the whole region is, however, still further modified by the presence in the former region of two formations which have been made known mainly by the labors of the Canadian geologists, since Meek and Hayden's section was published. These are the Kootanie and Belly River formations, the place of the former being beneath the horizon of the Dakota formation and referable to the Lower Cretaceous, and that of the latter at the base or perhaps in part intercalated within the lower portion of the Montana formation, and therefore a member of the Upper Cretaceous.

Among the noteworthy features of the Cretaceous series of the North Interior region are three non-marine formations of great thickness and geographical extent. One of these formations is the Kootanie, of the

Lower Cretaceous, and the other two are the Belly River and Laramie, of the Upper Cretaceous. These non-marine deposits together apparently exceed in bulk all the marine deposits of this region, and they perhaps represent a longer lapse of time than the latter. It is therefore evident that a consideration of continental conditions is essential in the study of the Cretaceous geology of this part of the continent.

It should be understood that the section which is indicated in the left-hand portion of the foregoing table is intended only for general application to the whole North Interior region, and that in some portions of the region the modification of the Cretaceous formations is such as to make it difficult to recognize the exact identity of some of those which are designated in the table. It has already been shown that the divisions of the Cretaceous section which were adopted for the South Interior region are not so clearly recognizable in its extreme southern part as they are in its more northern parts. It is a somewhat similar modification that certain of the formations of the general section of the North Interior region which are named in the foregoing table seem to have undergone that makes them less clearly recognizable in some parts of the region than they are in others, especially in the western and northern parts as compared with the eastern. For example, it is often difficult there to separate the Dakota from the Colorado formation. Besides this, the Kootanie and Belly River formations are wanting in large portions of the region, even where other Cretaceous formations occur, and it is rarely if ever the case that all the recognized formations of the general section have been found in contact with one another in any one district of this region.

It has been shown in connection with discussions of the formations of the South Interior region that, while it is practicable in many cases to indicate approximately the limits of the areas which are occupied by the Cretaceous deposit as a whole, it is seldom practicable to define the geographical boundaries of the areas occupied by separate formations, and their discussion therefore has had reference mainly to the known localities in which they occur. This imperfect condition of our knowledge is largely due to the fact that many of the geologists who have reported upon those formations have more or less completely ignored paleontological characteristics, by which alone their identity can be certainly determined.

A similar condition of things exists in the North Interior region as regards the mapping of separate Cretaceous formations, especially south of the northern boundary of the United States. Much more accurate work has been done in this respect in the Canadian portion of the region than in the southern portion. Still, it frequently will be found impracticable to define the outlines of the areas occupied by the separate formations.

THE LOWER CRETACEOUS.

It has been shown that while both the Upper and Lower Cretaceous occur in the Texan and North Mexican regions, only the Upper Cretaceous has been certainly recognized in the South Interior region. In the North Interior region, however, a formation occurs, namely the Kootanie, which is in this memoir classified as Lower Cretaceous, and it is the only formation in this region which is referable to that division of the system.

The first recognition of the Kootanie as a distinct formation was made by Dr. G. M. Dawson in 1885, and in the same year the name which it now bears was proposed by Sir J. William Dawson.[1] The district within which Dr. Dawson first recognized the existence of this formation is in western Alberta. It embraces a portion of the Rocky Mountain Range, together with the adjacent eastern foothills. Its length north and south is about 140 miles, and its width about 40 miles. The whole district within which the Kootanie strata referred to exist lies between the parallels of 49° and 52° north latitude,[2] but equivalent strata have since been recognized elsewhere by means of its peculiar fossil flora. By means of the specific identification of fossil plants Prof. Newberry has recognized a series of coal-bearing strata, which occur in the vicinity of the Great Falls of the Missouri, in Montana, as equivalent to the Kootanie of western Alberta.[3] The geologists of the Canadian Survey, as just intimated, have also recognized identical or equivalent strata at various localities, some of which are far northwestward from the district in which the Kootanie was first discovered. An important observation concerning the stratigraphical relation of the Kootanie to marine Cretaceous strata of the Pacific Border region has been made at one of these localities, which will be again referred to in the discussions of the formations of that region.

According to Dr. Dawson, the Kootanie formation in western Alberta rests uncomformably upon the Carboniferous and Devonian limestone series, and reaches a maximum thickness of more than 7,000 feet, the beds being chiefly shales and sandstones of various texture and appearance, characteristic Kootanie species of plant remains ranging through the whole.[4]

He finds these strata conformably overlain by others in many respects resembling them, which he refers to the Dakota formation; and the latter overlain by others referred by him to the Benton group (the lower part of the Colorado formation). The former reference of course implies the existence of a time-hiatus between the Dakota and the Kootanie strata. Still, no plane of their interdelimitation has yet been definitely recognized.

[1] Roy. Soc. Canada, Proc. and Trans., vol. 3, sec. 4, pp. 1-22.
[2] Geol. Surv. Canada, Ann. Rep. for 1886, pp. 1-169 B.
[3] See School of Mines Quarterly, vol. 8, pp. 327-330.
[4] Geol. Surv. Canada, Ann. Rep. for 1886, pp. 1-167 B.

The sum of all the evidence yet obtained is in favor of regarding all the strata referable, or equivalent, to the Kootanie as of non-marine origin, and I have therefore so treated them in this memoir. Certain marine fossils, however, have been discovered in Kootanie strata in western Alberta.[1] These discoveries do not seem sufficient to indicate a full marine origin for the strata in which they were made, but taken in connection with the observed relation of the Kootanie to marine Cretaceous strata, which is to be noticed in treating of the formations of the Pacific Border region, they seem to support the opinion which the Canadian geologists apparently entertain, that the Kootanie was in part at least contemporaneous with the marine Queen Charlotte formation of the Pacific Border region, and that it in some degree merged into that formation.

The only invertebrate fossils that have been reported as occurring in the Kootanie strata of the Great Falls region in Montana are some sandstone casts of a bivalve shell, apparently a species of Unio,[2] which were found by Prof. Newberry, and it is not improbable that these strata were deposited in fresh waters at the same time with, but perhaps separated from, those in which the northern Kootanie strata were deposited, by intervening land upon which grew the plants whose deciduous leaves were cast into the waters upon either side.

The Montana Kootanie strata occupy, or originally occupied, several hundred square miles, but its limits are unknown. The area occupied by them in British America was evidently much greater, but their original extent is also unknown.

The obscuration of any plane of separation which may exist between the Dakota and Kootanie strata that Dr. Dawson observed in western Alberta appears also to obtain in Montana. For example, as one traces the Cretaceous formations up the valley of the Missouri, upon approaching the Great Falls he observes a series of strata arising from beneath the Fort Benton shales which have the general aspect of those of the Dakota formation, and upon reaching the falls he finds that it is strata of this series over which the Missouri River plunges there and which form the bluffs of the river upon both sides. All the strata at and near the falls are referred to the Kootanie by Prof. Newberry and although it is probable that the Dakota formation is represented by similar and conformable strata in that neighborhood, it seems not yet to have been definitely recognized there as separate from the Kootanie strata. Since such chronological evidence as marine fossils might afford is wanting in the case of the Kootanie formation, it has been assigned to the Lower Cretaceous upon the evidence furnished by its fossil plants and by its stratigraphical relation to other formations the taxonomic po-

[1] See Whiteaves, J. F., Cont. Can. Paleont., vol. 1, part 2, p. 163 et seq.
Also Ann. Rep. Geol. Surv. Canada for 1885, p. 162 B.

[2] These casts suggest that the so-called American types of Unio were introduced much earlier than was before known. That is, the surface is sculptured in a pattern which in a general way resembles that of certain species of *Unio* now living in the Mississippi drainage system.

sition of which is known. The character of some of the plants is such as to have originally raised a doubt whether the formation ought not to be referred to the Upper Jurassic,[1] but the subequent discovery of strata bearing several marine species belonging to the fauna of the Queen Charlotte group beneath strata bearing characteristic Kootanie plants[2] leaves no reason to doubt the Cretaceous age of the latter.

Dr. Dawson has shown that in western Alberta the Kootanie is an important coal-bearing formation, and Prof. Newberry also has shown that important coal beds occur in the strata near the Great Falls of the Missouri which he refers to the Kootanie.

THE UPPER CRETACEOUS.

The names of the formations which constitute the Upper Cretaceous series of the North Interior region have been given on page 166. Four of them, the Dakota, Colorado, Montana, and Laramie, are regarded as essentially identical with those which are designated by the same names in the South Interior region, and the other, the Belly River formation, is peculiar to the North Interior region. Only two of them, the Colorado and Montana formations, are of marine origin, the other three, the Dakota, Belly River, and Laramie, being of non-marine, all three of them apparently having been deposited in part in brackish and in part in fresh waters. It will thus be seen that of the whole Cretaceous series in the North Interior region all the Lower Cretaceous strata and the greater part of those of the Upper Cretaceous, in which the Laramie is included, are of non-marine origin. This fact has already been mentioned as implying that the greater part of all the Cretaceous strata in this region was accumulated under continental, that is, not under true marine conditions.

The reports of the field geologists of both the Canadian and United States surveys make it evident that in the eastern part of the North Interior region the Dakota, Colorado, and Montana formations present considerable differences from the groups of strata which respectively represent them in the western part. That is, in the eastern part the strata constituting or representing these three formations are more readily referable to the Upper Missouri section of Meek and Hayden, or to the modification of it which I have adopted in this memoir, than they are in the western part. These differences, although largely lithological, are in part paleontological, but in the latter respect the hitherto observed difference appears to be due more to the paucity of fossils than to actual faunal and floral variance. Unfortunately it has not yet been practicable to harmonize these differences by tracing their physical connection across the broad Cretaceous area of this region.

Although it is in the North Interior region that the Dakota formation was first recognized it has been found exposed in only a small part of its

[1] See remarks of Sir J. Wm. Dawson in Roy. Soc. Canada, Proc. and Trans., vol. 3, sec. 4, pp. 1-22.
[2] Am. Jour. Sci., 1890, vol. 38, p. 120.

area, even where other Cretaceous formations occur. In no part of the region, except perhaps in the vicinity of the Rocky Mountains, does its thickness appear to exceed the few hundred feet that it reaches in the South Interior region. Although it is not frequently exposed at the surface, it has been reached by artesian borings at many localities in both North and South Dakota, where it has lately attracted considerable attention as the strata which have furnished abundant flows of water from artesian wells.[1]

The most characteristic exposures of the Dakota formation are found in the southern districts of this region, where also its identity is clearly distinguishable. Farther westward and northwestward, as already mentioned, the strata which are regarded as its equivalent have not been found to present all the distinctive characteristics which the formation presents at the typical localities, and it is probable that in its extreme northward extension it either disappears or loses its identity by blending with the next overlying Upper Cretaceous formation, as it is now understood to do in its extreme southward extension.

The lithological character and fossil contents of some of the Cretaceous outliers which have been discovered in Iowa eastward from the nominal boundary of the North Interior region, where they rest unconformably upon Paleozoic rocks, indicate that the Dakota deposits probably were nearly or quite coextensive in that direction with those which are referable to the immediately succeeding epochs.

The Dakota formation has been discussed or referred to in connection with what has been written of the Texan, North Mexican, South Interior, and North Interior regions, but the following general remarks are added as applicable to the formation in its whole extent and they are regarded as proper in this place because the formation is not represented in the region that remains to be discussed.

As has already been stated, this formation is of non-marine origin and originally covered a remarkably large area for a deposit of that kind. In some districts the presence of the remains of *Unio* and of other forms similar to those which are usually associated with living species of that genus shows that fresh water conditions prevailed. In other districts molluscan forms are found which indicate the presence of brackish water, and in the southern and southeastern portion of the great area which the formation occupies its contained fossils show that the waters in which it was accumulated gradually changed from a fresh water to a marine character.

Until these marine remains were discovered few or none of the purely paleontological data derived from the Dakota formation itself gave satisfactory indications as to its age, and that question was vigorously discussed by geologists and paleontologists for several years, some con-

[1] See Robert Hay, in Senate Mis. Doc. No. 179, Fifty-first Congress, first session, p. 5. Also Warren Upham, in Am. Geologist, vol. 6, pp. 211–221. Mr. Upham gives a list of thirty wells in which water flows from the Dakota sandstone.

tending for its Tertiary and some for its Cretaceous age.[1] The fact that all the other formations which in this memoir are referred to the Upper Cretaceous are found in their order of superposition above the Dakota and the comparatively late discovery that its strata merge into an unmistakably marine Cretaceous formation would seem to leave no further room for such discussion; but it is nevertheless true that within the last 5 or 6 years the Tertiary age of the Dakota formation has been again suggested, if not asserted.[2] This opinion has been based upon the character of its plant remains, which prevail in nearly all the districts in which the formation occurs, its other fossils, which are comparatively rare, never having entered into discussions concerning its age.

It has already been mentioned that in the South Interior region the Dakota formation rests with apparent conformity upon the Jurassic, where the two formations are found in contact, and that at some places it rests unconformably upon the Carboniferous. It is also known that while the Dakota rests with apparant conformity upon both the Kootanie and the Jurassic in the North Interior region its outliers in Iowa rest unconformably upon the Paleozoic rocks. Because the Dakota formation is referred to the Upper Cretaceous it can not be conceded that its apparent conformity upon the Jurassic is real or at least that there is not a great time-hiatus between them; and in view of the comparatively recent character of the Dakota flora and the ancient character of that of the Kootanie we have necessarily inferred that there is a very great time-hiatus between these two formations also.

That a marine formation should be found to preserve its identity over a great geographical area need excite no surprise, but it is remarkable, even in view of what we know of the great extent and integrity of the Laramie, that a non-marine frequently coal-bearing formation like the Dakota, which has a thickness seldom exceeding 500 feet, should preserve its integrity of character over an area little, if any, less than 1,000 miles in extent, both north and south and east and west, not including its marine equivalents in the Texan and North Mexican regions.

Strata representing the Colorado formation as it has been defined in connection with discussions of the formations of the South Interior region, that is, those which represent both the Fort Benton and the Niobrara groups of Meek and Hayden's Upper Missouri section, have been recognized, not only in the southern, but in the far northern portions of the North Interior region. In the southern portions of the region the lithological, and in part the paleontological, differences between the upper and lower portions of the Colorado formation are such that Meek and Hayden regarded each portion as properly constituting a separate group, as has already been shown; but north of the forty-ninth parallel, where the Canadian geologists have studied it with care, the

[1] See the historical sketch in the introductory portion of this memoir.

[2] See J. Starkie Gardner, British Association Report of the 54th Meeting, London, 1885, pp. 739–741.

presence of the Niobrara portion as separate from the equivalent of the Fort Benton portion has not been clearly recognized upon paleontological ground. Indeed, those geologists seem to have experienced some difficulty in recognizing both the upper and lower limit of the equivalent of the Colorado formation north of the forty-ninth parallel. This difficulty appears to have arisen in part from the presence of the Belly River formation within a considerable area, and from the apparent uncertainty whether that formation rests wholly between the Colorado and Montana or is intercalated in the latter formation near its base.

That the true equivalent of the Colorado formation is coextensive with the other marine members of the Upper Cretaceous series in British America there seems to be abundant reason for believing, and if it were not for certain modifications which all those formations have undergone in their northerly extension, and for the presence there of the Belly River formation, the relation of the equivalent of the Colorado to that of the Dakota and Montana formations would doubtless be essentially the same as it is in other parts of the Great Interior area. Still, if the Cretaceous series north of the forty-ninth parallel had been fully and independently investigated before the publication of Meek & Hayden's section, it is doubtful whether the results would not have varied from that section, even more than the modification of it which is proposed on page 158.

However indefinite the upper and lower limits of the Colorado formation may be in certain districts, it is true that the strata which constitute it and its equivalents form a very distinct Cretaceous horizon or subhorizon within a large part of the interior portion of North America.[1] By comparing with one another the various tables which have been presented on preceding pages it will be seen that the Colorado horizon may be traced from the district of Alberta, and apparently from much farther northward in British America, southward through the Great Interior area to the valley of the Rio Grande, and thence eastward, where it is understood to blend with the horizon that is represented by the Montana formation in the Interior regions. This matter will be further discussed on following pages under the head of Horizons of the North American Cretaceous.

The Belly River formation is found occupying the surface within a large area which embraces portions of the Canadian districts of Assiniboia, Saskatchewan, and Alberta, the Canadian geologists having traced it continuously as far north in northern Alberta as the parallel of 53° 30′. This area is not less than 300 miles across by its longer diameter, but that which the deposit originally occupied was evidently much larger. The Belly River strata, which reach a known maximum thickness of not less than 1,000 feet, as well as its fossil fauna and flora, are

[1] Because of the intimate relation of the equivalents of the Colorado with those of the Montana formation in the southern and eastern Cretaceous regions, I have treated the strata which those formations respectively represent in the North Interior region as sub-horizons. See following pages, where this unusual use of the term horizon is explained.

similar in character to those of the Laramie, many of the fossil species of both formations including vertebrates, invertebrates and plants, being regarded as identical. The Belly River strata also constitute an important coal-bearing formation.[1]

Typical exposures of these strata are found in the valley of the Belly River, a tributary of the South Saskatchewan, from which circumstance Dr. G. M. Dawson gave them the name by which the formation is now known.[2] Certain observed conditions of strata exposed along the Missouri River in northern Montana apparently indicate its presence there. It also seems not improbable that some of the strata in the upper part of the valley of Musselshell River, in Montana, which have been referred to the Laramie,[3] really belonged to the Belly River formation. If strata of this formation really exist there they probably were originally continuous with those of the Belly River Valley. At present, however, almost nothing is known of either its southern or eastern limit, but it is known not to reach so far east as western Manitoba.[4]

Within a district drained by Peace River, and near the fifty-sixth parallel of north latitude, there are certain beds of non-marine origin which are underlain and overlain by marine Cretaceous strata apparently representing the Colorado and Montana formations respectively. These beds are designated as the Dunvegan series by the Canadian geologists, who regard them as corresponding to the Belly River formation, more or less completely, and as representing the northwestern continuation along the eastern base of the Rocky Mountains of the conditions under which the Belly River strata were deposited,[5] but the northern and southern areas have not yet been definitely connected by continuous tracing of outcrops. It is evident that the Dunvegan series thins out toward the east from the base of the Rocky Mountains,[6] and it already has been shown that the strata which are definitely referred to the Belly River formation also thin out in that direction. Mr. R. G. McConnell's section on Athabasca River also indicates an eastward thinning out of the Dunvegan series.[7] The following remarks, however, are intended to apply more especially to the Belly River group as represented by its exposures on Belly River.

Like the Laramie, this formation rests directly upon marine Cretaceous strata, and its faunal and floral remains are also closely like those of that group, both indicating an intracontinental, non-marine, but not

[1] Canadian Naturalist, vol. 10, pp. 423, et seq.

[2] Geol. Surv. Canada, Report of Progress for 1880, '81, '82, pp. 1–23 B.

[3] See Lindgren, W., Tenth Census of the United States, vol. 15, pp. 743–746.

[4] See Tyrrell, J. B., Am. Jour. Sci,, vol. 40, 1890, p. 228.

[5] See Ann. Report Geol. Surv. Canada for 1882–'84, p. 118 C; ib. for 1881–'82, p. 8 B; and Trans. Roy. Soc. Canada, vol. 3, sec. 4, p. 18. Compare also Ann. Rep. Geol. Surv. Canada for 1879–'80, pp. 115, 116, et seq, where the lower sandstones and shales, or Dunvegan series, are characterized, and the existence of a great clayey fresh-water intercalation in the Cretaceous is recognized.

[6] See column V on p. 128 B, of report last cited, where a thickness of only 100 feet is assigned to this series on Smoky River.

[7] See report last cited, pp. 132, 133 B; Ann. Rep. Geol. Surv. Canada, for 1884, p. 40, and Am. Jour. Sci., 1881, vol. 21, p. 393.

wholly fresh-water origin. Unlike the Laramie, the Belly River formation is immediately overlain, as well as underlain by marine Cretaceous strata. The marine strata which overlie the Belly River are certainly referable to the Montana formation, but whether they represent the whole of that formation or not it is at present impossible to say. That is, it is not yet certainly known whether the Belly River formation is interposed between the top of the Colorado and the base of the Montana or between a large upper and a small lower part of the last-named formation. The former condition is assumed to exist, although it is not yet certain that some of the fossil species discovered beneath Belly River strata do not also occur in the Montana formation.

Although the area occupied by this non-marine formation is, or originally was, several thousand square miles in extent, its presence as such among the Cretaceous formations excites no surprise in view of the existence of such non-marine formations as the Kootanie, Dakota, and Laramie, at least two of which have much greater geographical extent than has the Belly River formation. What gives this formation especial interest is the intimate relation of its fauna and flora to those of the Laramie, although these two non-marine formations are, in the district within which both are now known to occur, separated by a great thickness of strata which are unmistakably of marine origin.

This faunal and floral relationship is not only of that character which appears upon a general comparison, and which is shown by identity of certain of the families and genera which are found in the strata of each formation, but a considerable number of the species in each are identical with those of the other.[1] That certain species of plants and of air-breathing animals should have survived from the Belly River epoch through the Montana and into the Laramie epoch is in accord with well known facts of that character. In this case, however, we find that certain of the Laramie species which survived from the Belly River into the Laramie epoch are gill-bearing mollusks of fresh and brackish water types. Their survival implies the continuity of congenial aqueous conditions of habitat from one epoch to the other through an intervening one, because their specific identity in both the earliest and latest of these three epochs implies direct genetic descent.

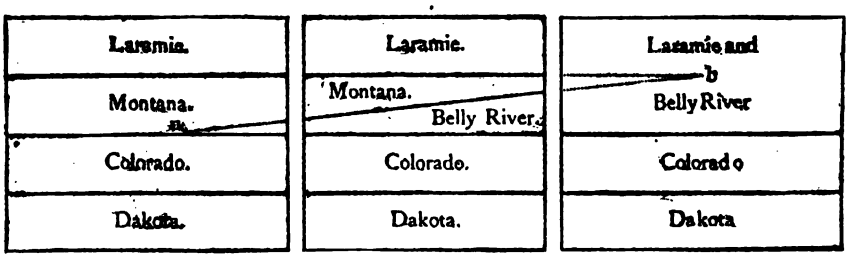
It is not to be supposed that the molluscan fauna referred to could have survived in the marine waters of the Montana epoch that subsequently prevailed over the ground which they had occupied, and we therefore must conclude that the fresh-water habitat of the Belly River molluscan fauna was shifted, not destroyed, during that epoch. Such a shifting must necessarily have been caused by subsidence and elevation respectively of land and sea bottom or by subsidence and gradual filling of aqueous areas. The conditions that have been observed suggest a subsidence which, at the close of the Belly River epoch, brought marine waters upon the whole or a part of the area which had pre-

[1] See Whiteaves, J. F., Cont. Canadian Paleont., vol. 1, pp. 56–63.

viously been occupied by the land-locked Belly River sea, and probably shifted a portion of that sea upon districts which previously were occupied by dry ground. An elevation or filling, or both, is also suggested, which, at the close of the Montana epoch, caused the withdrawal of the marine waters of that epoch from the area upon which they had previously encroached, not only restoring the previous nonmarine condition there, to be continued during the Laramie epoch, but probably then completing the final retirement of all marine Cretaceous waters from the interior portions of the continent.

Although the suggestions which have just been made as to the occurrence of certain physical changes and to their resulting conditions seem to be fully warranted by the facts referred to, it is true that no observation has yet been made of a complete thinning out of the Belly River formation in any direction, or of its blending with the Laramie by the absence or by the thinning out of the Montana formation. It is reasonable, however, to infer that such conditions existed and to expect that observations confirming these suggestions may yet be made. The following diagram represents the supposed chronological relation of the Belly River formation with other members of the Upper Cretaceous series of the North Interior region, and its supposed community of origin with the Laramie formation. The vertical width of the divisions of the diagram has no reference to the relative thickness of the formations which they respectively represent.

Diagram showing the relations to one another of the Upper Cretaceous formations.



The left-hand portion of the diagram represents the relation of the four Upper Cretaceous formations as they are known in the southern part of the North Interior region, the middle portion represents the observed relations of those formations including the Belly River, while the right-hand portion represents the supposed passage of the Belly River into the Laramie formation. A, assumed point where the Belly River thins out between the Colorado and Montana formations.[1] B, assumed point of union of the Belly River and Laramie formations.

From the foregoing diagram and the remarks preceding the same it will be seen that the continental conditions which produced the Lara-

[1] Mr. J. B. Tyrrell has recently shown that the Belly River formation is not present between the equivalents of the Colorado and Montana formations in western Manitoba. It therefore has thinned out toward the east. See Am. Jour. Sci., 1890, vol. 40, p. 228.

mie formation and favored the development of the fauna and flora which characterize it are understood to have prevailed over a portion of that part of the continent which is now designated as the North Interior region long before the begining of the Laramie epoch as it is represented by the formation which now bears that name. That is, those conditions are understood to have been continuous from the beginning of the Belly River epoch, if not from a preceding one, to the close of the Laramie epoch; and if the Belly River and Laramie formations are ever found in contact they will doubtless constitute a single formation, the lower part of which only was formed contemporaneously with the Montana formation.

The Montana formation extends, or originally extended, over much the greater part of the North Interior region, recognizable exposures of it having been observed at numerous localities from the northern to the southern and from the eastern to the western borders. Fossils found in the Cretaceous outliers in Iowa and Minnesota, which already have been mentioned, indicate that these strata originally extended as far eastward as the Mississippi River.

The lithological characteristics of the Montana formation are quite uniform over large portions of this region, in which respect it does not greatly differ from that part of it which lies in the South Interior region. The Canadian geologists find that in this region, especially in its eastern part, the upper portion of the formation is largely composed of sandy material, and that the lower portion, that which represents the Fort Pierre group of the Upper Missouri section, is frequently clayey or shaly.

In all parts of the North Interior region, as well as elsewhere, wherever the Laramie has been found resting upon the Montana formation, their conformity with each other appears to be, and doubtless is, complete; and, as before stated in connection with the discussion of the Great Interior area, both formations appear to have been the result of continuous sedimentation from the lower to the upper formation, notwithstanding the freshening of the waters in which the latter was deposited. The conformity of the Montana with the Belly River formation, wherever it has been observed, also appears to be complete; but, if the suggested shifting of the areas which their respective waters occupied really occurred, some degree of unconformity must have resulted, although it may not anywhere have been important. Still, wherever the Montana formation has been found resting upon the Colorado their conformity seems to be complete.

The general characteristics of the Laramie formation have already been stated on preceding pages, and as they are practically the same in the North Interior region that they are elsewhere the subordinate differences only need be pointed out. Its southern extension into the South Interior, North Mexican, and Texan regions has already been discussed, and it has also been shown to extend to near the fifty-fifth

parallel of north latitude, or to within five degrees of the designated northern boundary of the North Interior region. The strata at the localities north of this northern boundary, in which Laramie species of plants have been found, were doubtless deposited in two or more separate bodies of water, as mentioned on page 146.[1]

The Laramie is really the most conspicuous of the Upper Cretaceous formations of this region, on account of its great maximum thickness, which the Canadian geologists estimate at not far from 7,000 feet, and of the great area within which it occupies the surface. Being not only the latest of the Cretaceous series, but with slight exceptions the uppermost of all the sedimentary deposits of this great region, it covers from view a large part of all the Cretaceous formations there which are older than itself. Therefore, in the greater part of that portion of this region which upon the accompanying map is represented as being occupied by Cretaceous rocks, it is the Laramie alone that occupies the surface beneath the soil.

Students of the plant remains of the Laramie formation often have recognized a considerable difference between those of the upper and lower portions respectively, but except in the Canadian districts no definite division of the great formation has been made upon stratigraphical grounds. There the Canadian geologists have recognized three divisions of the Laramie on account of certain differences in the character of the strata, and they also find that certain species of plants are characteristic of each division.[2] The molluscan fauna of the whole formation in this region is, however, so nearly identical with that of all other portions of it in other regions that further reference to it is now deemed unnecessary.

The two upper divisions of the Laramie, which are recognized by the Canadian geologists, are distinguishable over a great part of the North Interior region. They are not understood as respectively representing, except perhaps in a general way, those strata in central Colorado which have received the names Denver and Arapaho groups, although those northern upper divisions probably represent them approximately as to time.

The lower delimitation of the full Cretaceous series in the North Interior region is by the Kootanie formation, which, according to Dr. Dawson,[3] rests unconformably upon the Carboniferous and Devonian limestone series. The Kootanie formation, as already mentioned, was formerly thought to occupy the lowest position in the Cretaceous system, and some doubt was entertained whether it ought not to be referred to the Jurassic; in the discussion of the formations of the Pacific Border region, we shall see that, while it is now regarded as referable to the Lower

[1] See Dawson, G. M., Later Phys. Geol. Rocky Mt. Region in Canada. Trans. Roy. Soc. Canada, 1890, vol. 8, sec. 4, sketch map No. 3.

[2] See Dawson, Sir J. W., Roy. Soc. Can. Trans., vol. 4, sec. 4, pp. 19–34.

[3] Dr. Dawson seems now to be in doubt whether any of these underlying strata ought to be referred to the Devonian.

Cretaceous, certain other Cretaceous strata underlie it. The upper delimitation of the Lower Cretaceous of this region is also by the Kootanie, no other formation having been recognized as occupying a position between it and the base of the equivalent of the Dakota.

The lower delimitation of the Upper Cretaceous series of this region is by the Dakota formation, and its upper by the Laramie.

Sedimentation is believed to have been continuous within at least some portions of this region from base to top of the series, the interruptions at the places where the shifting of the waters of the Belly River and the Montana seas took place, as suggested in preceding paragraphs, not having been general. That is, it is believed that sedimentation was at no time at all points wholly interrupted from the beginning of the Dakota to the close of the Laramie epoch.

The following table shows the relation to one another of the formations of the North Interior region and their order of superposition, and Dr. G. M. Dawson's table on a following page will show to some extent his view of their correlation with the formations of the Pacific border region.

Table of the Cretaceous formations of the North Interior region.

1. Laramie.
2. Montana.
3. Belly River.
4. Colorado.
5. Dakota.

(Probable hiatus.)[1]

6. Kootanie.

(Hiatus.)

7. Carboniferous and Devonian.

Briefly reviewing the preceding discussion of the Cretaceous geology of the six regions which occupy the central, southern, and eastern portions of the continent we observe that certain of the facts there recorded have special significance and importance with reference to the character, and to the order, of the events which took place on this continent during Cretaceous time. Among the most remarkable facts pertaining to the geology of the regions that have been discussed are those which show that a large part of the formations which are referred to the Cretaceous are of non-marine origin, that they range in age from the earliest to the latest epoch of Cretaceous time, and that they are all of great, and some of them of remarkable, geographical extent.

A part of the facts referred to relate, on the one hand, to the correlation of certain of the Cretaceous formations in each of the regions

[1] Some hundreds of feet in thickness of strata occur in the Kootanie section between the uppermost stratum known to bear Kootanie fossils and the lowermost one, which Dr. Dawson has found to be satisfactorily referable to the Dakota. He informs me in a private note that he therefore does not now feel sure that these strata do not represent all the time between the Kootanie and Dakota epochs.

mentioned with others respectively, which occur in all the other regions; and on the other hand, to the existence of certain deposits in each of the regions that are not known to be represented in others. For example, the difficulty, if not the impracticability, of correlating non-marine with marine formations makes it quite uncertain whether the Kootanie of the North Interior region was, or was not, contemporaneous in its origin with the Comanche series of the Texan and North Mexican regions; and none of the great physical changes which are known to have occurred on the continent appear to offer any valuable suggestions on this subject. For similar reasons none of the non-marine formations of the Great Interior area have been satisfactorily correlated with the formations of the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions. Therefore the correlation which has been recognized as extending to all six of the regions referred to is confined primarily to the marine formations of the Upper Cretaceous, but secondarily extended to the non-marine because of their known stratigraphical relation to some of the former.

While approximately definite correlation is practicable for the regions mentioned we shall see that satisfactory correlation of any of the Cretaceous formations of the Pacific Border region with any of those of all the other regions has not yet been accomplished. This statement applies to the marine as well as to the non-marine formations, and even to those which presumably were of contemporaneous origin. It is expected that the nearest approach to their correlation will be made through the Cretaceous formations of British Columbia, some progress in which has already been made by the Canadian geologists; and it is highly probable that future investigation of the Mexican Cretaceous formations will throw much light upon this subject.

No evidence of the existence of coal has yet been found among any of the Cretaceous strata of either the Atlantic border or the Gulf border regions, but some unimportant beds of lignite are reported to exist in strata of the lower division of the Cretaceous series in the first-named region. In the Texan region coal has been found in Cretaceous strata only in the valley of the Rio Grande, and only in the upper formations of the Upper Cretaceous, namely, the Eagle Pass beds, and the Laramie formation, and a similar condition prevails in the North Mexican region. That is, in these two southern regions coal is not known to have been found in either the Lower Cretaceous or in the lower portion of the Upper Cretaceous. In the South Interior region, however, all the Cretaceous formations, from the Dakota to the Laramie inclusive, have been found to be coal-bearing, and coal-producing conditions prevailed there through the Laramie into the Wasatch epoch.

It has been shown also that coal-producing conditions prevailed in Upper Cretaceous time in the North Interior region, large carbonaceous accumulations having taken place there, especially in the Belly River and Laramie epochs. Furthermore, it has been shown that the Kootanie, which has been recognized only in the North Interior region, is

an important coal-bearing formation. This fact, together with others yet to be presented, demonstrates that coal-producing conditions prevailed extensively in the western portion of North America in Lower, as well as in Upper, Cretaceous time. Indeed, the Cretaceous system as it is developed in North America seems to be as worthy the name of Carboniferous as is the system to which that name has been specifically applied.

THE PACIFIC BORDER REGION.

This region is very long and narrow, and for want of knowledge of the distribution of the Cretaceous formations in the greater part of that portion of the continent its northern, southern, and inland boundaries are not clearly definable. The thirty-first parallel of north latitude may, however, be selected as the south boundary and the sixtieth parallel as the north boundary, the latter parallel being the same that was selected for the north boundary of the North Interior region. The western boundary of the Pacific border region is naturally the shore line of the Pacific Ocean, or rather a line so drawn between the sixtieth and thirty-first parallels as to include the islands adjacent to the coast. The eastern boundary may be designated as being identical with the western boundary of the North Interior region from the sixtieth parallel of north latitude to where that boundary meets the one hundred and eighteenth meridian, and from that point along the one hundred and eighteenth meridian to where the latter meets the Pacific Coast line in southern California. In other words, the southern portion of the boundary is the meridian just named, and the northern portion is the watershed between the Pacific drainage on the one hand and the Arctic and Atlantic drainage on the other.

The existence of certain geographical and geological features has made it convenient to divide the eastern and southern portions of the continent into smaller regions than the one here designated as the Pacific Border region, but although the latter is so very long and narrow our present knowledge does not seem to warrant its division. Therefore this portion of the continent will for the present purpose be regarded as constituting a single Cretaceous region.

The displacements of the strata constituting the different formations are found to be so great in all the Pacific Border region, especially as compared with the moderate displacements in the greater part of both the Interior regions, that it is often difficult to study those western Cretaceous formations in a comprehensive manner. The reports, however, of the California State geological survey, of the United States survey for portions of California, Oregon, and Washington, and of the Canadian survey for western British America afford some good data for at least their general classification.

From those reports and from other sources we learn that both the Upper and Lower Cretaceous are in this region represented by formations which respectively bear distinguishing types of fossils. Besides

these formations certain others are found in different parts of the region resting upon undoubted Upper Cretaceous strata, concerning the true geological age of which the opinions of geologists differ, some regarding them as of Cretaceous and others as of Tertiary age. Facts will be presented or cited in following paragraphs which are accepted as evidence that at least a part of these formations occupy a transitional position between the Cretaceous and Tertiary.

The first published account of Cretaceous rocks in this region seems to have been by Prof. Newberry[1] in 1855 and the next by Sir James Hector in 1861,[2] the former referring to strata occurring in California, and the latter to those occurring upon, and in the vicinity of, Vancouver Island. The publications in which distinctive names were first given to the Cretaceous formations in this region were those of Prof. J. D. Whitney and Mr. Wm. M. Gabb, of the California State survey.[3] The section for northern California, published by Mr. J. S. Diller,[4] and that for Queen Charlotte Islands, published by Dr. G. M. Dawson[5] and republished by Mr. J. F. Whiteaves,[6] are the most comprehensive and important; and together they embrace nearly or quite the full vertical range of all the known deposits which in this region are certainly referable to the Cretaceous.

By the aid of these two sections we are able to determine the relation to one another of all, or nearly all, the formations of the Pacific border region which will be discussed on this occasion; but, as will be plainly shown on following pages, we are not yet able satisfactorily to correlate these Pacific Coast formations with those of the other regions which have been discussed on preceding pages.

The following table contains the names of the formations, in their order of superposition, which constitute the California Cretaceous section as published in the geological reports of that State and which are retained in this memoir, to which is added in brackets the name of the subsequently recognized Wallala group.[7]

The table also indicates the portions of the California section which are referred to the Upper and Lower Cretaceous respectively.

Table of the California Cretaceous formations.

Upper Cretaceous	Tejon group. Chico group. [Wallala group.]
Lower Cretaceous	Shasta group.

The next following table represents Dr. Geo. M. Dawson's section of the Cretaceous formations of Queen Charlotte Islands,[8] which is also

[1] Pacific Railroad Reports, vol. 6, part 2, pp. 9–68.
[2] Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc. Lond., vol. 17, pp. 388–485.
[3] See, for example, Paleontology of California, vol. 2, pp. xii, xiii.
[4] Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 40, 1890, pp. 476–478.
[5] Geol. Survey of Canada, Rep. Progress for 1878–'79, pp. 1–10, and map.
[6] Geol. Survey Canada, Mesozoic Fossils, vol. 1, part 1, pp. 1–92.
[7] Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv. No. 22, vol. 3, p. 8.
[8] Geol. Surv. Canada, Rep. Progress for 1878–'79, pp. 1–101. Also, Geol. Surv. Canada, *Mesozoic Fossils, vol. 1*, part 3, p. 192.

made to indicate the formations that are, according to the plan adopted in this memoir, referred to the Upper and Lower Cretaceous, respectively,

Table of the Cretaceous formations of Queen Charlotte Islands.

[1] Upper Cretaceous	A. Upper shales and sandstones. B. Coarse Conglomerates.
[1] Lower Cretaceous	C. Lower shales and sandstones. D. Agglomerates. E. Lower sandstones.

An assemblage of strata to which the name Puget group has been applied, and of which further mention will be made, occurs in the State of Washington. It is an estuary deposit, and is probably equivalent to a portion of the Téjon group of the California geologists and perhaps also to a portion of the Laramie formation.

THE LOWER CRETACEOUS.

The Lower Cretaceous, as it is represented by portions of the California and Queen Charlotte Islands section, respectively, has been recognized in various parts of the Pacific Border region, from near its north boundary to central California, and it is believed to have been originally continuous between the two points indicated, if not throughout the whole length of the region. If these formations were originally thus continuous much the greater part of all of them has been obscured by later deposits or removed by erosion. It is evident that at least between the two points mentioned they have been largely covered from view by subsequent accumulations of strata and of débris resulting from erosion; and where they have been brought to the surface by the great displacements which have occurred in this region they have been largely removed by subsequent erosion. Mainly because of these displacements and of the erosion which the strata have suffered, they have been observed only at a few localities in those portions of the region which have been examined. Some of the localities at which they have been observed are in California, some in Oregon, some in Washington, and the remainder in British America. It will be convenient to begin the discussion of the Lower Cretaceous of this region with the deposits which are found in California.

The name Shasta group was applied by the geologists of the California State Survey to all the Cretaceous strata which they found in that State and knew to be older than the strata which they designated as the Chico group; and under this head they embraced all the California strata which in this memoir are referred to the Lower Cretaceous. It was believed by those geologists that the strata which they referred to the Shasta group represent two epochs, or that they constitute two divisions of a series of strata which are respectively characterized by

[1] Dr. Geo. M. Dawson designates these divisions as Earlier and Later Cretaceous, respectively. See Am. Jour. Sci., 1889, vol. 38, pp. 121-127.

a more or less distinct molluscan fauna; and they recognized them both together as probably representing the European Cretaceous from the Neocomian to the Gault.[1] In the course of my own field studies of these rocks I have found it convenient to recognize those two divisions, and I designated them respectively as the Horsetown beds and the Knoxville beds, from the names of the localities at which typical exposures of each division occur.[2]

These divisions, of which the Knoxville is understood to be the older, are each characterized by a molluscan fauna, of which few or no species are yet known to be common to both within the limits of California, but there is probably no time-hiatus between them. The Knoxville division is characterized by the prevalence of shells of *Aucella*, which are often abundant, and it is believed that none of those fossil forms occur in the Pacific Border region in strata that are older than the Knoxville division, although northward from California they are now known to range above it into the equivalent of the Horsetown division. That is, although specimens of *Aucella* have seldom if ever been found in the Horsetown division within the State of California, they have been found in the equivalents of that division in Oregon, Washington and British Columbia. Cephalopods are the leading fossil forms in the Horsetown beds of northern California, the greater part of those which are published in the paleontological reports of that State as coming from the Shasta formation having been in found in those beds.

The foregoing remarks, of course, imply that the *Aucella*-bearing strata of the Pacific Border region characterize a great paleontological horizon of the Lower Cretaceous. They also imply that this horizon includes not only strata which all geologists agree in referring to the Cretaceous, but certain others that some geologists have regarded as of Jurassic age. Not only is the lower division of the Shasta formation especially characterized by *Aucella*, but while, northward from California, that fossil form ranges higher in the series it is still the northern equivalent of the lower division that is especially characterized by it; that is, strata in which *Aucella* is found to prevail abundantly are regarded as belonging at or near the base of the Pacific Border Lower Cretaceous; but it is believed that these lowest strata of that region do not represent the beginning of Cretaceous time.

The Cretaceous strata just mentioned as having by some geologists been referred to the Jurassic are found in Mariposa County, California,[3] and constitute a portion of the so-called auriferous slates. These strata, although greatly altered and much disturbed by orogenic movements, have been found to bear fossils the Mesozoic age of which has not been questioned, opinion having differed only as to whether they indicate the earlier or later Mesozoic age of the strata containing them.

[1] Paleontology of California, vol. 2, p. XIV.

[2] Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv., No. 15, vol. 3, p. 19.

[3] See Gabb, Wm. M., Proc. Cal. Acad. Nat. Sci., vol. 3, pp. 172, 173. Also Meek, F. B., Geol. Surv. Cal. Geology, vol. 1, pp. 477–482, and plates.

Recognizing the specific identity of the *Aucella*, which these strata bear with those which prevail in the Knoxville division of the Shasta formation, I have referred these slates to that horizon, and therefore regard them as of Lower Cretaceous age.[1] This view is supported by the probable identity of other fossil forms in the auriferous slates with some found in the Shasta formation.

Other strata, which occur in the Coast Range and in other parts of California, and which are much altered or metamorphosed, have been by Dr. Becker referred to the Lower Cretaceous, although other geologists have regarded them as of much greater age.[2]

The specimens of *Aucella* which have been obtained from the Cretaceous strata of different parts of California have received various specific names from different authors, some of which specimens were referred to other genera; but I regard all these, and also all the forms of *Aucella* which are found in the Knoxville division, and, in short, all the forms referable to that genus which have yet been found in North America, as belonging to one and the same species, albeit a very variable one.[3]

Aucella-bearing strata have been discovered at numerous places in northern California, all of which are referred to the Knoxville division of the Shasta formation. They also have been found in the vicinity of Monte Diablo, in the central part of the State. Those which occur at the most southerly known locality, as already shown, were formerly referred to the Jurassic, but they are now referred to the Shasta formation of the Lower Cretaceous. The latter locality, which is near the parallel of 37° 30′ north latitude, is the most southerly point to which *Aucella* is certainly known to reach in the northern hemisphere,[4] and it is the most southerly known locality of fossil-bearing Lower Cretaceous strata in the Pacific Border region.

All the Lower Cretaceous strata of California have been so much disturbed, eroded, and covered from view by later formations, that their study has been a matter of much difficulty. Mr. J. S. Diller, of the U. S. Geological Survey, who has done much field work upon these California formations, has lately published a statement concerning some sections

[1] See White, C. A., Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv., No. 15, vol. 3, pp. 24, 25; and Monog. U. S. Geol. Surv., vol. 13, pp. 226–232. See also Becker, Geo. F., in last named volume, and in Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv., No. 19, vol. 5.

[2] See Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv., No. 19; Monog. U. S. Geol. Surv., vol. 3; and Bull. Geol. Soc. Amer., vol. 2, pp. 201–206.

[3] See Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv., No. 15, vol. 3, p. 23, and Monog. U. S. Geol. Surv., vol. 13, pp. 226–232, pls. 3 and 4.

[4] After the foregoing paragraphs were written Prof. S. Nikitin published in the Neues Jahrbuch Jahrgang, 1890, II. Band, drittes Heft, pp. 273, 274 the discovery of some fossil shells near San Luis, Potosi, Mexico, which he believes to be identical with forms which I have referred to *Aucella concentrica*. Should his determination prove to be correct it will also prove to be a very important fact in North American geology. It is probable that an investigation of the strata from which Prof. Nikitin's fossils were obtained, together with that of associated formations, will reveal the true relation of the Shasta formation and its equivalents to Comanche series. It will also add an important fact to our present knowledge of the geographical distribution of *Aucella*, since this Mexican locality lies upon the twenty-second parallel of north latitude.

which he has measured in the northern part of the State.[1] He gives the maximum ascertained thickness of the Knoxville division of the Shasta formation on Elder Creek, Tehama County, at nearly 20,000 feet, but suggests that this apparent great thickness may have been increased by faulting. In the same neighborhood he finds the Horsetown division to reach a thickness of over 6,000 feet.

The following tables copied from the publication just referred to contain the results of Mr. Diller's measurements of the full Cretaceous series in two districts in northern California.

Section on Elder Creek, Tehama County.

		Feet.
Upper Cretaceous	Chico group	3,897
Lower Cretaceous	Shasta group, Horsetown division	6,109
	Shasta group, Knoxville division	19,974
Total		29,978

Section of the north fork of Cottonwood Creek, Shasta County.

		Feet.
Upper Cretaceous	Chico group	3,623
Lower Cretaceous	Shasta group, Horsetown division	5,218
Total		8,841

The first of these two sections shows that the Lower Cretaceous in California reaches a thickness of over 26,000 feet, and that much the greater part of this thickness is referred to the Knoxville division. Although the thickness of these strata, as ascertained by Mr. Diller, is so great, his announcement will occasion less surprise when one remembers the conclusions which Dr. Becker has reached as to the Cretaceous age of a great thickness of strata in the coast range and elsewhere in California, which has been by most other geologists regarded as of much greater age.

While it is understood that the lower portion of the Shasta formation of California and its equivalent strata in other portions of the Pacific Border region are the oldest Cretaceous strata in that region, they are not believed to represent the very earliest portion of Cretaceous time in North America. The Potomac, Tuscaloosa, and Trinity formations of the Atlantic, Gulf Border, and Texan regions, respectively, are, in this memoir, assumed to be older, at least in part, than the lower portion of the Shasta formation, but we have yet found no satisfactory means of comparing them with the Lower Cretaceous of the Pacific Border region.

Just as this memoir is going to press, however, Prof. Newberry has published an article,[2] in which he announces the certain identification of at least ten species of fossil plants from the coal-bearing strata in the vicinity of the Great Falls of the Missouri River in Montana with species that have been published by Prof. Fontaine from the Potomac

[1] Note on the Cretaceous rocks of northern California. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 40, 1890, pp. 477, 478.
[2] Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 41, 1891, pp. 191–201.

formation. By means of specific identity of fossil plants Prof. Newberry had previously identified the Montana strata referred to with the Kootanie strata of the district of Alberta, as has already been mentioned.

If the specific identification of these fossil plants is held to prove the contemporaneity, as that term is usually employed by geologists, of the respective formations containing them, this discovery is a very remarkable one. It is shown in this memoir that in western Alberta Kootanie strata have been found resting upon others which bear marine Cretaceous fossils specifically identical with members of the fauna which characterizes the Shasta and Queen Charlotte formations, which geologists generally do not regard as representing the earliest epoch of Cretaceous time. If we admit the contemporaneity of the Kootanie strata of Alberta and of Montana with the Potomac formation, we must admit that the Potomac is of later age than at least a portion of the Shasta and Queen Charlotte formations, notwithstanding the fact that the Potomac formation has been referred to the Jurassic. This matter will be further referred to on a following page, in connection with the discussion of the Potomac horizon.

The oldest of the rocks that have been found immediately to underlie the Lower Cretaceous strata of the Pacific Border region are presumably of Archean age. Others are of Paleozoic, and still others are of Triassic age. That is, none of the immediately underlying strata have yet been satisfactorily shown to be of Jurassic age. Indeed, entirely satisfactory proof of the existence of any strata of the latter age in the Pacific Border region has not yet been published.

Although Mr. Diller has found apparent conformity between the Shasta and Chico formations in California[1] the great difference between their respective fossil faunas indicates that there is a time-hiatus between them. The time relation of the Wallala formation to the Shasta and Chico formations, as indicated on page 193, has not yet been demonstrated, but its place is understood to be between the two last-named groups. As the comparatively little known Wallala formation is regarded as Upper Cretaceous, it follows that no strata in California of a later age than the Shasta formation are referred to the Lower Cretaceous.

As already indicated, Lower Cretaceous strata have been found at a number of localities in southern Oregon, and some are also known to exist in the State of Washington; but, beyond the commingling there of species which in California characterize the Knoxville and Horsetown beds, respectively, these discoveries have afforded no general facts that have not been mentioned in connection with the California section.

The Lower Cretaceous strata of British Columbia will next be considered. The most complete section of those rocks that has yet been investigated in this part of the Pacific Border region is found on Queen

[1] Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv. No. 33, pp. 1-23.

Charlotte Islands, and a table representing the full Cretaceous series there as studied by Dr. G. M. Dawson has been given on page 183.

This series of formations is found exposed within a comparatively small district embracing a portion of each of the two islands, but they constitute one of the most important Cretaceous sections that are yet known in the Pacific Border region.[1] Dr. Dawson found the lowest member to rest unconformably upon Triassic rocks, and the uppermost member to be unconformably overlain by Tertiary deposits. His divisions A and B, which consitute the upper portion of the section, are referred to the Upper Cretaceous and will be discussed in following paragraphs, while divisions C, D, and E constitute the lower portion and are referred to the Lower Cretaceous.

Dr. Dawson found division C to be very fossiliferous, and Mr. Whiteaves identified a large proportion of its species with those which characterize the Shasta formation in California. According to Dr. Dawson, division D is of volcanic origin, and yet divisions C and E are closely related to each other by the specific identity of some of their fossils. Indeed, it seems evident that these three members represent in time not only the Shasta formation, but all other Lower Cretaceous strata that are yet known to occur in the Pacific Border region.

Because of this identity of species, notwithstanding the intercalation of the volcanic formation before mentioned, these three members of the Queen Charlotte section will, for our present purpose, be regarded as representing an unbroken epoch of Lower Cretaceous time, and for the sake of brevity they will be referred to as the Queen Charlotte formation. The paleontological recognition of these strata, as representing the Shasta formation of California, is of great importance in the correlation of the different and widely separated exposures of Lower Cretaceous rocks in the Pacific Border region. The extent to which specific identification of the fossils of the two series has been made is shown by Mr. Whiteaves.[2]

Lower Cretaceous rocks have been found by members of the Canadian Geological Survey at the following localities in British Columbia, which in each case were recognized as equivalent to at least a portion of the Queen Charlotte formation by means of the specific identity of fossils: the northern part of Vancouver Island, Tatlyoco Lake, Jackass Mountain, Skagit River, and Upper Skena River.[3]

The full series of strata as represented by the Shasta and Queen Charlotte sections appears not to have been found exposed at any of these localities, but one gets the impression from the reports of the Canadian geologists that their original thickness in that part of the

[1] See Dawson, G. M., Geol. Surv. Canada., Rep. Prog. for 1878, pp. 1-101. Also, Richardson, James, Ibid., for 1882-'83, pp. 42-65.

[2] Geol. Surv. Canada, Mesozoic Fossils, vol. 1, part 3.

[3] See Canadian Reports for 1875-'76, 1876-'77, 1877-'78, 1878-'79, 1879-'80. Also, Dawson, G. M., Am. Jour. Sci., 1889, vol. 38, pp. 120-127.

Pacific Border region was hardly inferior to that which has been reported by Mr. Diller for northern California.

The Canadian geologists report exposures of presumably Cretaceous rocks on Stikine River, in British Columbia, nearly east from Sitka,[1] and W. P. Blake has suggested that the coal-bearing strata of Sitka Island are of Cretaceous age, but whether they belong to the Upper or Lower Cretaceous, or to both, is not yet known.[2]

An important discovery, already two or three times referred to, has been made in western Alberta, near Devil's Lake,[3] which, although the locality is within the North Interior region, it has been left for special mention in connection with the Lower Cretaceous of the Pacific Border region. At the locality mentioned strata bearing characteristic Kootanie species of plants were found resting upon others which contain equally characteristic marine invertebrates of the Queen Charlotte formation. Furthermore, those Kootanie strata rest so conformably upon the others that they all have the aspect of constituting one formation, and the impression seems to prevail among the Canadian geologists that the Kootanie and Queen Charlotte groups were, at least in part, contemporaneous. However this may be, it is now clear that at least a part of the Kootanie is of later age than at least a part of those strata upon Queen Charlotte Islands, which are regarded as equivalent to the Shasta formation of California.

There are several points of great interest connected with this discovery, among which are the following: The locality at which it was made, being upon the eastern slope of the Rocky Mountains, lies east of the nominal boundary of the Pacific Border region. It is also the most easterly point at which fossils of the Queen Charlotte and Shasta formations have been found, if we except the circumpolar distribution of the *Aucella*, which occurs so abundantly in those strata and their equivalents, and the lately reported occurrence of the same near San Luis Potosí, mentioned on page 185.

The fact that these Lower Cretaceous strata, in western Alberta, underlie a portion, if not all, of the Kootanie formation is of especial importance: first, because the character of the Kootanie flora has heretofore caused that group to be regarded as of the lowest Cretaceous, if not of the Jurassic, age, and, second, the Upper and Lower Cretaceous strata, on Queen Charlotte Islands, are reported to have the aspect of one unbroken series of deposits. If the upper strata of the full section on those islands really are of Upper Cretaceous age it seems necessary to assume that notwithstanding their conformity with the lower portion of the series there is a material time-hiatus between them similar to,

[1] See Dawson, G. M., An. Rep. Geol. Surv. Canada for 1887–'88, pp. 56 and 57 B; also, map accompanying this report.

[2] See bibliographical entry on p. 27.

[3] See Dawson, G. M., Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 38, p. 122; McConnell, R. G., Geol. Survey Canada, Rep. Prog. for 1886, p. 17 D, and Whiteaves, J. F., Cont. Canadian Paleont., vol. 1, part 2, pp. 163–172.

but not so great as, that which is assumed to exist between the Shasta and Chico groups of California. Neither on Queen Charlotte Islands nor in any other part of British Columbia, or in California, has any trace of a formation yet been found which may be understood to represent the Kootanie formation, unless it be represented by a portion of the Queen Charlotte and Shasta formations, respectively, and of this we yet have no definite evidence.

The discovery of the taxonomic relation of the Kootanie to the Queen Charlotte formation gives almost the only direct clew yet obtained as to the correlation of the Cretaceous series of the Pacific Border region with that of the Great Interior area; but the opinion of an experienced geologist upon the subject of their general correlation is worthy of consideration. Therefore the following table by Dr. G. M. Dawson[1] is reproduced here for the purpose of illustrating his view of the relation of the Lower Cretaceous formations of the Pacific Border region to those of the adjacent North Interior region, and to the Upper Cretaceous of several districts in those regions.

[1] Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 38, 1889, p. 127.

Table illustrating the relations of the earlier Cretaceous formations of British Columbia and of adjacent parts of the Northwest Territory. (After Dawson.)

Queen Charlotte Islands.	Comox, Vancouver Island.	Mainland of British Columbia.	Yukon District. (North of 60th parallel.)	Rocky Mountains proper. (Between 49° and 51° 30'.)	Southern Alberta.
	Upper conglomerates 320′ Upper shales..... 776′ Mid. conglomerates 1,100′ Middle shales..... 76′ Lower conglomerates 900′ Lower shales.....1,000′ Productive coal meas. 739′ *(Local base of Cretaceous.)*		Laramie of Lewes R.....	Laramie (base).....	Laramie.....5,750′
A. Upper shales and sandstones..... 1,500′			(Intermediate formations probably represented but not recognized.	Pierre (including Fox Hill). Belly River..... Benton (possibly with part of Niobrara, 1,400′).	Pierre (incl. Fox Hill). 830′ Belly River..... 910′ Lower dark shales.... 800′
B. Coarse conglomerates..... 2,000′		Tatlayoco beds (7,000′). Nechacco beds (6,000′) Skeena beds, Skagit beds (4,400′ or more). Jackass Mt. beds (5,000′). All sandstones and quartzites, with shales, and generally coarse conglomerates above. "Porphyrite" series of Iltasyouco 10,000′ (probably passing up into above) of Tatlayoca, and possibly of Nechacco and Skeena.	Conglomerates of Rink Rapids, etc.	Dakota, apparently represented in part by coarse conglomerates, and including on Crow Nest Pass, 2,200′, of volcanic ejectamenta.	Dakota (probably).
C. Lower shales and sandstones (with coal) ..... 5,000′ D. Agglomerates ... 3,500′			Fossiliferous shales and sandstones, on Rink Rapid, L. Labarge, etc.	Kootanie formation, 7,000′ or more. Sandstones, shales, etc., with coal.	
E. Lower sandstones 1,000′					
(Local base of Cretaceous.)		*(Local base of Cretaceous.)*	*(Local base of Cretaceous.)*	*(Local base of Cretaceous.)*	*(Local base of Cretaceous.)*

In closing the remarks upon the Lower Cretaceous of the Pacific Border region it is well to refer to the fact that not only have plant remains been found in the Shasta formation, but the Queen Charlotte is an important coal-bearing formation. This shows that considerable land areas existed in those districts, although the strata referred to are of marine origin, as is shown by their fossils.

THE UPPER CRETACEOUS.

The Upper Cretaceous of the Pacific Border region, so far as our present knowledge goes, is mainly represented by the Chico-Téjon series of California and the coal-bearing Cretaceous strata of Vancouver and adjacent islands, and by their recognized equivalents elsewhere; but the strata which have received the names of Wallala group and Puget group respectively will also be considered under this head. The names of the divisions of the Upper Cretaceous which have been recognized in California have been given on page 182, and it will be convenient to consider them separately in that order, beginning with the yet imperfectly known Wallala formation.

For many years after the geolcgical formations of California began to be studied the only strata that were recognized as of Cretaceous age were those of the Shasta formation and the Chico-Téjon series. In 1884, however, Dr. G. F. Becker discovered exposures of strata near the town of Wallala, in Mendocino County, California, from which he obtained molluscan fossils that are different from any known to occur in either of the two series of strata just mentioned. No stratified rocks were found overlying these Wallala strata, or none that could be regarded as of Cretaceous age. The underlying rocks also were not observed where the Wallala strata were found exposed, but presumably they rest upon the metamorphic rocks which are known to prevail in that district [1]

Nearly coincident with Dr. Becker's discovery Mr. C. R. Orcutt sent to the Smithsonian Institution a collection of fossil mollusca from the shores of Todos Santos Bay, in Lower California, a part of the species of which are identical with those found in the Wallala strata.[2] In general character a part of the fossils from these two localities so much resemble certain of the forms which characterize the European Gosaugebilde that one naturally infers that the strata containing them are referable to the Upper Cretaceous, especially as none of the species have been recognized in the Shasta formation. None of them having been recognized in the Chico formation or in any other North American Upper Cretaceous strata, I suggested for those in which the fossils referred to were found a place between the Shasta and Chico formations and proposed for them the name of Wallala group. This sugges-

[1] See White, C. A., Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv., No. 15, vol. 3; and Becker, G. F., ibid., No. 19, vol. 3.
[2] Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey, No. 22, vol. 3.

tion seemed also to be warranted by the generally accepted opinion that there is a considerable time-hiatus between the Shasta and Chico formations.

The localities at which these strata have been recognised by means of their peculiar fossils are only two, and these are fully 500 miles apart. If these strata are to be regarded as representing a separate formation, it is reasonable to infer that originally they were continuous between those localities, and that they constituted a distinct Upper Cretaceous horizon which probably extends far down into Mexico. Since, however, these strata have yet furnished only a few species of fossils, and have been discovered only at the two localities mentioned, our present knowledge of them is confined to a few almost isolated facts. Much more, therefore, remains to be learned concerning the Wallala strata before they can take a permanent place in the list of Cretaceous formations of the Pacific Border region.

When the geologists of the California State survey began their work they were disposed to recognize the strata which I have called the Chico-Téjon series as constituting three separate formations, namely, the Chico, Martinez, and Téjon; but they afterward suggested the propriety of abandoning their name, Martinez group, because they recognized those strata which occur between the Chico and Téjon divisions as transitional in character.[1] They also recognized the fact that the two last-named divisions are intimately connected with each other by specific identity of a large proportion of the fossils found in each.

While most, but not all, of the geologists who have written concerning this series of strata have admitted the Cretaceous age of the lower or Chico portion, some have contended earnestly that the upper or Téjon portion is of Eocene age.[2] The geologists of the California State survey referred the whole series to the Cretaceous, evidently assuming that being an unbroken series, and containing unmistakable Cretaceous fossils in certain parts of it, the whole must be Cretaceous.

In former publications[3] I have shown that the Chico-Téjon strata form an unbroken series, the lower portion bearing characteristic Cretaceous forms, and the upper portion bearing equally characteristic Eocene forms. In short, I regard the deposition of this series as having been begun in Cretaceous time and continued without interruption to its termination in Eocene time. While the upper or Téjon division of this series is regarded as probably referable to the early Tertiary, it is, like the Laramie formation, discussed in this memoir among the Cretaceous formations because it is impracticable or inexpedient to separate it by definable limits from the lower or Chico division of the series, either upon stratigraphical or paleontological grounds. Because of this indivisible character of the series I have adopted the compound

[1] Paleontology of California, vol. 2, pp. XII, XIII.

[2] See for example, Conrad, T. A., Am. Jour. Sci., 1867, vol. 44, pp. 376, 377.

[3] Bull. U. S. Geol. Survey, No. 15, vol. 3, and No. 51, vol. 8.

term, Chico-Téjon, to designate the whole of it as it is known in California.

The most southerly known limit of this series of strata is in Santa Barbara County, southern California, where, however, only the upper or Téjon division seems to have been recognized. In Fresno County both divisions are well developed and they are to some degree separately recognizable in other parts of central California, but northward from those districts the strata which represent the upper division appear to diminish, or at least they do not appear to reach as far northward as do the equivalent strata of the lower division, as will be shown when the Vancouver Island strata are discussed.

With the exception of a locality in eastern Oregon which lies approximately upon the intersection of the one hundred and twentieth meridian and the fortieth parallel of north latitude, where strata equivalent to those of the Chico division have been found,[1] all the known strata referable to, or representing any part of, this series lie west of the Sierra Nevada and Cascade ranges.

The known exposures of equivalents of the Chico-Téjon strata in Oregon and Washington are few, and the limits of the areas occupied by them have not been fully determined.[2] While some of them are plainly referable to the lower division of the series, others represent a part of the upper, or Téjon division, among which are probably some that have by some authors been referred to the Eocene and Miocene Tertiary[3] respectively.

Aside from the Chico-Téjon series in California, which in some places is coal-bearing, the coal-bearing series of the southern part of Vancouver Island and the adjacent smaller islands of the Gulf of Georgia constitutes the best representation of the Upper Cretaceous that is known to occur in the Pacific Border region. In the Vancouver district, however, the strata are apparently all referable to the Chico division, no representative strata of the Téjon division having yet been recognized there; that is, no fossils have been found in the Vancouver strata or in any strata northward from the Vancouver district which are understood to be restricted to the Téjon division in California.

The section of these Vancouver rocks has been made known mainly through the publications of Mr. James Richardson and Dr. G. M. Dawson, references to whose works have been made on preceding pages; but a number of other authors have written upon their paleontology. In one of my own publications concerning the fossils of this series of strata I proposed the name Vancouver group[4] for those which are known to bear many of the molluscan species that characterize the Chico strata in California, intending that the name should be only of restricted geographical application. I then overlooked the fact that Dr. G. M. Daw-

[1] See Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv., No. 15, p. 8, and Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr., vol. 2, p. 359.
[2] For references to these localities see Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv., No. 51, vol. 8, pp. 28–32.
[3] Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv., No. 51, vol. 8, pp. 30–32.
[4] Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv., No. 51, p. 33.

son had in 1886 applied the same name to another assemblage of strata which he regarded as of Triassic age and had suggested the name Nanaimo group for the Upper Cretaceous strata in question.[1]

Subsequently Dr. Dawson confirmed his selection of the name Nanaimo group for those Cretaceous strata, and briefly discussed their relations and characteristics.[2] I have therefore abandoned the name Vancouver group for the Upper Cretaceous strata of the Vancouver district, and adopted the name Nanaimo in its stead.

The occurrence of certain Lower Cretaceous strata near the northern end of Vancouver Island has been referred to, but no Upper Cretaceous strata appear to have been found in connection with them, and no Lower Cretaceous strata have been found in the Vancouver district in connection with the Nanaimo formation. The latter formation, as already stated, is understood to embrace no strata that are not referable to the epoch of the Chico group of the California geologists exclusive of the Téjon; and, as defined by Dr. Dawson, it seems to embrace all the strata of Vancouver district which are referable to, or that need be discussed in connection with, the Upper Cretaceous.

The invertebrate fossils of the Nanaimo formation have been published by Mr. Whiteaves,[3] Mr. Meek,[4] Mr. Gabb,[5] and by myself,[6] and the plants have been published mainly by Dr. J. S. Newberry, Sir William Dawson, Dana, Lesquereux, and Heer.[7]

Because of the paucity of exposures of Upper Cretaceous strata north of the Vancouver district, the next and only other section that will be considered on this occasion is that of Dr. G. M. Dawson on Queen Charlotte Islands, which has already been referred to as embracing both Upper and Lower Cretaceous strata, the former division reaching a thickness there of 3,500 feet.

It appears that very few fossils have been obtained from these upper strata, but Mr. Whiteaves regards those which have been found as establishing their equivalency to certain of those which I have designated as of Upper Cretaceous age.[8] They perhaps represent in part the Nanaimo formation of Vancouver Island, but I am at present disposed to regard them as referable to a somewhat earlier Upper Cretaceous horizon. These strata are not reported to contain any coal although the Nanaimo formation contains very important beds, and coal is known to exist in both the upper and lower divisions of the Chico-Téjon series in California.

Aside from the important formations that have already been discussed little or nothing appears to be known of strata in all the Pacific Border

[1] See Geol. Surv. Canada, Ann. Rep., 1886, p. 10B.
[2] Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 39, 1890, pp. 180–183.
[3] Geol. Surv. Canada, Mesozoic Fossils, vol. 1, part II.
[4] Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr., vol. 2, pp. 351–374, and 6 plates, and Trans. Albany Inst., vol. 4, pp. 37–49.
[5] Paleontology of California, vols. 1 and 2.
[6] Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv., No. 51, vol. 8, pp. 33–48, plates 6 and 7.
[7] For Newberry's publication, see Jour. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., vol. 7, pp. 500–525.
[8] Geol. Surv. Canada, Mesozoic Fossils, vol. 1, part 3, pp. 193, 194.

region, which may confidently be referred to the Upper Cretaceous, and we are especially in want of knowledge concerning strata to represent Cretaceous time between the close of the Shasta and the beginning of the Chico epoch. This lack of knowledge is perhaps largely due to the great displacements and to the immense erosion which all the formations of that region have suffered, but it is doubtless in part due to the fact that the region has yet been only partially examined.

All the Cretaceous formations of the Pacific Border region which have been discussed on the preceding pages are shown by their fossils to have been of marine origin, except that some fresh water molluscan forms have been found in layers connected with the coal beds of the Nanaimo formation. One important formation of non-marine origin, however, occurs in this region which it is desirable to notice in this connection although its Cretaceous age may well be questioned. This formation, to which I have applied the name of Puget group,[1] is found occupying a considerable district which embraces a part of the eastern side of Puget Sound basin and extends upon the flanks and among the mountains of the range which borders the basin on the east. Comparatively little is yet known as to the relation of this formation to those which underlie it, but it has been observed in one or two localities to overlie strata which are evidently equivalent to a portion of the Nanaimo formation.

The only fossils that have yet been obtained from these strata are a few molluscan forms and remains of a considerable number of plants. The flora to which the latter belong is regarded by Dr. Newberry as probably identical with that of the Laramie formation, a part at least of the species being identical. None of the molluscan species have been found in any other formation, and their character indicates their estuarine origin, besides which no associated trace either of true marine or of purely fresh-water forms has been observed. According to the original estimates of Mr. Bailey Willis[2] the Puget formation reaches a maximum thickness of 12,000 feet, but his later observations have led him to reduce this estimate.[3] Still there can be no reasonable doubt that this formation is a remarkably thick one for a deposit of that kind.

The Puget formation has been definitely recognized only in the districts already indicated, and its geographical limits are not yet known, but Dr. Dawson has observed a formation in the district around the mouth of the Frazer River, in British Columbia,[4] which reaches a thickness of several thousand feet. It seems to possess the general characteristics of the Puget formation and to occupy a similar taxonomic position, but no fossils have yet been found in its strata by which the two series of strata may be identified with each other. Still, it is thought probable that the British Columbian deposit was contemporaneous with the Puget formation and it is possible also that the two were originally continuous. The Puget formation in Puget Sound

[1] See Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv., No. 51, vol. 8, pp. 49–63.
[2] See Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv. No. 51, vol. 8, p. 52.
[3] See Rep. Tenth Census U. S., vol. 15, pp. 759–771.
[4] See Am. Jour. Sci., 1890, vol. 39, pp. 182, 183.

basin bears several coal beds, a part of which are of great commercial importance, but no coal has yet been reported to exist in the similar deposit near the mouth of Frazer River.

In my publication of the Puget formation, I suggested that it was probably synchronous in its origin with a part of the Téjon group of California, but no direct evidence on this point has yet been obtained. As already mentioned, the Puget formation has furnished very little intrinsic evidence which bears upon the question of its geological age; but, as it is supposed to have been contemporaneous with at least portions of the Laramie and Téjon formations, respectively, it is in this memoir briefly referred to in connection with the Upper Cretaceous of the Pacific Border region. It is of some importance also as still further indicating the indefiniteness of the upper delimitation of the North American Cretaceous.

In the table which is copied on page 191, Dr. Dawson has given his view not only of the correlation of the Lower Cretaceous formations in the Pacific Border and North Interior regions, but of certain of the Upper Cretaceous deposits also. These and other assumed correlations will be further shown in tables on following pages, but it can not be denied that the correlation of any of the Cretaceous formations of the Pacific Border region with any of those of all other regions is still a matter of much uncertainty. The discovery of Kootanie strata superimposed upon others which bear characteristic fossils of the Queen Charlotte group, which has been several times mentioned on preceding pages, is of great importance, but it is not yet conclusive as to the full correlation of any of the formations in question.

The Kootanie being a non-marine formation, its true equivalency to other Lower Cretaceous formations may never be known, but one naturally indulges a hope that marine faunas may yet afford a clew to the correlation of the different Lower Cretaceous formations of the continent. As a matter of fact, however, the abundant marine fauna of the Shasta and Queen Charlotte formations of the Pacific Border region contains no form that has yet been satisfactorily identified with any form found in any other North American formation, not even with any member of the abundant marine fauna of the Comanche series.[1] This is all the more noteworthy because it is now known that the latter fauna extended westward in the North Mexican region to a point within the drainage area of the Gulf of California.

In the case of the Atlantic Border, Gulf Border, Texan, North Mexican, and the two Interior regions, the correlation of certain of the Upper Cretaceous formations of each with certain of those or all the others has been confidently determined by specific identity of fossils, and in many cases by geographical continuity of strata also. But while one can not doubt that the Upper Cretaceous deposits of the Pacific Border region were contemporaneous with some of those which occur

[1] See foot-note relative to certain Ostreid forms, on page 121.

in all the other regions, no geographic continuity of their strata has yet been observed and no satisfactory recognition of their faunal relationship has been made. It is, however, true that a large number of specific forms in the molluscan fauna of the Chico formation are represented by closely similar forms in the Upper Cretaceous of those more eastern regions, especially in the Ripley formation of the Gulf Border and Texan regions.

General remarks concerning the Cretaceous of the seven North American regions.

In the course of the foregoing discussion of the Cretaceous formations of the different regions, the coal-bearing character of a large part of them has been several times referred to. The presence of coal among these strata is important from an economic view, and it has much significance with reference to the physical conditions which prevailed during Cretaceous time in North America.

The vegetal substance of which the coal is composed having originated upon land or marsh surfaces implies that, although it may be, as it in some cases is, intercalated between marine strata, non-marine conditions prevailed when and where its material was produced, although marine conditions immediately preceded and followed its production. It is true, however, that much the greater part of the coal and so-called lignite of the Cretaceous formations of North America, which in the aggregate probably exceeds the coal of the Carboniferous Coal Measures of the continent, has been accumulated among the strata of wholly non-marine formations, which implies the existence of broad continental areas.

Thus the coal of the Colorado, Montana, Chico, Nanaimo, and Queen Charlotte formations being both overlain and underlain by marine strata indicates the preponderance of marine over land conditions when and where those formations were accumulated. But the coal of the Kootanie, Dakota, Belly River, Laramie, and Puget formations occurring among strata of wholly non-marine origin implies that marine waters had retired from the districts or regions where they were deposited and that broad continental conditions prevailed.

These facts, together with the evidence of the existence of various breaks in the order of succession of the formations which has been pointed out, show that during the whole of Cretaceous time continental conditions prevailed over large portions of what is now the North American continent. Therefore, the study of its Cretaceous geology ought to have large reference to continental conditions.

Closing the discussion of the formations of each of the Cretaceous regions of the continent, remarks were made upon the upper and lower delimitations of the full Cretaceous series as found within its borders, but the following summary will give a more comprehensive view of the

relation of the North American Cretaceous as a whole to the earlier Mesozoic and to the Eocene.

The entire absence of Lower Cretaceous formations from large geographical areas where Upper Cretaceous formations prevail and the comparatively slight development of them in other areas, together with the great paleontological differences between the characteristics respectively of the Lower Cretaceous formations which are now known, indicate the existence of large continental areas during Lower Cretaceous time, of which no record has yet been discovered, and necessarily render the lower delimitation of the Cretaceous system in North America as a whole a matter of much uncertainty. Besides this the Triassic and Jurassic systems are nowhere well represented in North America, particularly as regards their paleontological characteristics.

At no known place in North America where Jurassic strata have been recognized do their fossil contents give any clear indication of an impending change to Cretaceous characteristics, and in no case have Lower Cretaceous strata been found to bear fossil remains which indicate a gradual transition from the Jurassic, unless the Potomac formation and its equivalents shall prove to be an exception. Moreover, with that possible exception, no Lower Cretaceous strata have been found resting upon those which may satisfactorily be referred to the Jurassic.[1] Admitting the possible exception just mentioned, the Potomac formation is, in the tables on following pages, represented as occupying a transitional position between the Jurassic and Cretaceous; but this question is not regarded as by any means a settled one. In all other cases the facts hitherto observed indicate on the one hand that the lowermost known Cretaceous strata do not represent the very earliest portion of Cretaceous time, in North America, and on the other that no strata yet discovered represent the close of North American Jurassic time.

It will thus be seen that, with the possible exception referred to, the lower delimitation of the North American Cretaceous is everywhere marked by a hiatus which is an important one even where the shortest interval of time is indicated, and which over a great geographical area is so great as to reach upward to the base of the Dakota formation, which is regarded as the base of the Upper Cretaceous. Moreover, this hiatus is, in many places, extended downward by the absence of older formations, so that Cretaceous strata, even as late as those of the Dakota formation, are found resting upon Paleozoic, and even upon Archean rocks.

The lower delimitation of the North American Cretaceous system is indefinite because of the facts just mentioned, and because of the impracticability of correlating with one another those formations that in the

[1] It is possible that the Trinity formation of the Texan region, upon which the Comanche series rests there, may yet prove to be of Jurassic age, but it is in this memoir referred provisionally to the Lower Cretaceous.

different regions of the continent constitute the local base of the full series of Cretaceous formations. The upper delimitation of the system is frequently the result of removal of strata that have been deposited, or that of a failure of their deposition, but in certain cases it is indefinable because of the blending of the uppermost strata of the Cretaceous with those the Eocene age of which can not reasonably be doubted.

The plainest and most unmistakable case of blending of Upper Cretaceous with Eocene strata is that of the Chico-Téjon series in California, where it is both paleontological and stratigraphical. This series is known to reach an aggregate thickness of not less than 10,000 feet, through which ranges a marine molluscan fauna embracing both Cretaceous and Tertiary types. In the lower portion of the series the Cretaceous types are so numerous that one is not justified in referring it to other than the Cretaceous system; and in the upper portion the fauna, a large proportion of the members of which are also found in the lower portion, is equally characteristic of the Tertiary, the Cretaceous forms having gradually disappeared.

It seems to be unquestionable that the passage from Cretaceous to Tertiary time was accomplished while the marine area in which the Chico-Téjon series of strata was deposited was undisturbed by any movements of the earth's crust which resulted disastrously to its fauna or in any general interruption of its sedimentation.

Another case of the blending of the Cretaceous and Tertiary is understood to have occurred within or in connection with the Laramie formation, which subject has been discussed on preceding pages. In this case, however, while the stratigraphical evidence is quite as good as it is in the case of the Chico-Téjon series the paleontological evidence is not so direct. That is, in the case of the Chico-Téjon series, unbroken marine conditions existed, but in the other case there was, near the close of Cretaceous time, a change from marine to non-marine conditions, while there was evidently no general interruption of sedimentation within the great area where the evidences of that transition from marine to non-marine conditions have been observed.

It is probable also that the Puget formation represents the Laramie, and therefore a transitional epoch between Cretaceous and Tertiary time; but the Puget formation occupies a comparatively small area, while the aggregate area occupied by the Chico-Téjon series and by the Laramie formation are each many thousands of square miles in extent.

These facts are sufficient to show the indefinable character of the upper delimitation of the North American Cretaceous system, at least in two important regions, a condition that must necessarily have existed in many other parts of the world, but evidence of which has seldom been recognized.

One can not review the facts that have been ascertained concerning the North American Cretaceous without being impressed with the evidence already referred to of the prevalence of continental conditions at *different* epochs during the whole of Cretaceous time, some of them

having been contemporaneous with those in which important marine formations were deposited; and he is still further impressed with the fact that continental conditions prevailed in North America even more extensively during the earlier Mesozoic.

It is true that, upon at least the western border of the continent, we find the marine Cretaceous merging into the marine Eocene, but within a large part of its great interior portion we find the marine Cretaceous formations immediately succeeded by those which were deposited in either brackish or purely fresh waters, all of which necessarily were more or less completely landlocked. The prevalence of such bodies of water implies the contemporaneous existence of surrounding continental conditions which we have reason to believe never afterward suffered from marine invasion. The subsequent continental changes involved the final draining away of those non-marine waters, and the elevation of the principal now existing mountain ranges, but the occurrence of those changes was evidently coincident with, or after the close of, Cretaceous time.

EXTRA-REGIONAL DISTRICTS.

Reference has already been made to the existence of Cretaceous deposits in certain portions of North America which are not included within the limits of any one of the seven regions which have been defined and discussed on preceding pages. These deposits have been left to be discussed or referred to under the head of extra-regional districts, because their known exposures are small and it is impracticable to clearly define the respective areas which they occupy, or because little has yet been learned of their character or extent.

From a few desultory publications and from casual items of information which have from time to time reached geological investigators there is reason to believe that large portions of central and southern Mexico and of Central America are occupied by Cretaceous formations. The Upper Cretaceous doubtless prevails in that great southern area, and it is probable that the marine Lower Cretaceous has there a more important development than it has elsewhere upon this continent. This is indicated by the increase in thickness of the Comanche series toward the west and southwest from the Texan region, which has been noted, as has also the evidence that the whole series thins out toward the north and east within the Texan region. The little that is yet known of the geology of this great southern portion of the continent makes it probable that when it has been systematically investigated it will be found to constitute one of the most important Cretaceous regions within its limits in North America.

The following publications, besides those which have already been referred to, contain the most that has yet been made known concerning the Cretaceous geology of Mexico:

CASTILLO, ANTONIO DEL. Bosquejo de una Carta de la República Mexicana, formado por disposicion del Secretario de Fomento.

GALEOTTI, H. Notice sur le Calcaire Cretace des environs de Jalapa au Mexique. Bull. Soc. géol. de France, vol. 10, 1838 a 1839, pp. 32–39.

RAMIREZ, SANTIAGO. Informe que como resultado de su Exploracion en la Sierra Mojada. Anales del Ministerio de Fomento de la República Mexicana, vol. 3, pp. 627–687.

—— ——. Informe sobre el Mineral de Guadalcazar en el Estado de San Luis Potosí, ibid, pp. 339–404

—— ——. Memoria para la Carta Geologica del Distrito de Zumpango.

BARCENA, MARIANO. Noticia científica de una parte del Estado de Hidalgo. Anales del Ministerio de Fomento de la República Mexicana, vol. 1, pp. 331–351.

—— ——. Materiales para la Formacion de una Obra de Paleontologia Mexicana. Anales del Museo Nacional de Mexico, vol. 1, pp. 85–87, 195–202, 283–286.

URQUIZA, MANUEL. Exploracion del Distrito de Coalcoman, Estado de Michoacan. Anales del Ministerio de Fomento de Republica Mexicana, vol. 7, pp. 195–261.

WHITE, CHARLES A. Descripcion de un gran fossil Gasteropodo del Estado de Puebla. La Naturaleza, vol. 6, pp. 219–221.

HEILPRIN, ANGELO. The Geology and Paleontology of the Cretaceous Deposits of Mexico. Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci., Phila., for 1890, pp. 445–469, and 3 plates.

NIKITIN, S. Einiges ueber den Jura in Mexico und Centralasien. Neues Jahrbuch für Min., Geol. u. Palaeont., Jahrgang, 1890, II Band, drittes Heft, pp. 273–274.

Just as the manuscript of this memoir is going to press an article by Prof. Angelo Heilprin has appeared, entitled The Geology and Paleontology of the Cretaceous Deposits of Mexico.[1] He says:

> Cretaceous deposits cover, or are scattered over, the greater part of Mexico, from the Atlantic plains to the Pacific, and from the Rio Grande to (or through) the States of Colima, Michoacan, Guerero, and Oaxaca. These deposits are continuous with the Cretaceous area of the interior basin of the United States, and are largely the equivalents in age of the deposits which are represented in Texas and in the other Gulf States.

The geological map by Prof. Castillo is also received while this memoir is in press. It is an important contribution to the knowledge of the geology of the Mexican Republic, and contains much matter hitherto unpublished, but it is accompanied by no descriptive text.

Several authors have published reports of the existence of Cretaceous deposits upon certain of the West India Islands, namely, upon Jamaica, St. Thomas, San Domingo, and Trinidad.[2] For the present purpose, however, these discoveries are comparatively unimportant, and the reported characteristics of the deposits afford few if any data by which they may be correlated with any of the North American Cretaceous formations. Indeed, a part of them, especially those of the Island of Trinidad, appear to have less affinity with these than with those of South America.

Naturalists connected with the various expeditions to the far north have brought back collections of fossils, comprising both invertebrate and plant remains, which indicate the existence of Cretaceous deposits

---

[1] Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Phila., Dec., 1890, pp. 445–469; Plates xi–xiii.

[2] See Barrett: On some Cretaceous Rocks in the Southeastern portion of Jamaica. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc. Lond. for 1860, pp. 324–326.

Duncan, P. M., and G. P. Wall: A notice of the Geology of Jamaica. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc. Lond. for 1884, pp. 1–15.

Sawkins, J. G: Report on the Geology of Jamaica, or Part 2 of the West Indian Survey.

in different portions of Arctic North America. The best known collections of plant remains were obtained in western Greenland, and these represent floras that are respectively referable to the Upper and Lower Cretaceous of North America.[1] The collections that have been obtained at the two localities, respectively designated as Atane and Patoot, are each regarded as representing a separate stage of the Upper Cretaceous, that of Atane being the older, and probably equivalent to the Dakota formation. The collections made at the Kome locality are referred to the Lower Cretaceous.

The second North Pole expedition obtained a collection of invertebrate fossils on Kuhn Island, off the east coast of Greenland,[2] which contained among other forms numerous examples of the *Aucella*, which is found so plentifully at various places in the Pacific Border region and in northwestern North America north of the sixtieth parallel of north latitude. The strata from which these Greenland fossils were obtained are therefore referred to the Lower Cretaceous and not to the Jurassic.

There is in the central portion of the continent, and not included within any of the regions that have been defined on preceding pages, a large district which has been already referred to as one within which Cretaceous deposits formerly prevailed, but which have been mostly removed by erosion or obscured by glacial action. This district lies east of and adjacent to the eastern boundary of the Great Interior area as defined on page 141, and north of the Texan region. The eastern boundary is not clearly definable, but it may be designated as passing northward through the western border of Illinois and that of Wisconsin to the northeast corner of Minnesota, and thence northwestward through Manitoba. That is, it is assumed that the sea in which the Cretaceous deposits of the Great Interior area were formed originally extended eastward nearly or quite as far as the boundary just indicated.

Small outliers or local exposures of Cretaceous strata have been found at numerous localities in Minnesota, and a less number in Iowa, the principal of which are shown upon the map accompanying this memoir. In the former State these discoveries range from its southern to near its northern boundary, but in the latter they are confined mainly to the western and northern portions.[3]

---

[1] Oswald Heer, Flora Fossils Arctica.

[2] Toula, F.: Die zweite deutsche Nordpolarfahrt, vol. 2, pp. 497–507.

[3] For the various published accounts of these exposures and of the discovery of Cretaceous fossils in the drift, consult the following works:

Hall, James, U. S. and Mexican Boundary Survey, vol. 1, pp. 101–140, 4 maps.
Hall, James, Trans. Am. Philos. Soc., vol. 13 (n. s.), pp. 329–339.
White, C. A., Rep. Geol. Surv. Iowa, vols. 1 and 2.
White, C. A., Proc. Am. As'n Adv. Sci., vol. 21, pp. 187–192.
Winchell, N. H., Geol. and Nat. Hist Surv. Minn., Rep. for 1873, pp. 127–212.
Winchell, N. H., Minn. Acad. Sci. Bull., vol. 1, pp. 347–350.
Winchell, N. H., and Warren Upham, Geol. and Nat. Hist. Surv. Minn., Final Report, vol. 2.
Kloos, J. H., Am. Jour. Sci., 1872, vol. 3, pp. 17–26.
Worthen, A. H., Rep. Geol. Surv. Illinois, vol. 8, pp. 3–7.

Besides these discoveries in Iowa and Minnesota, Cretaceous fossils and material believed to have been derived from Cretaceous deposits have been found in the drift of western Illinois[1] and the drift of certain portions of western Wisconsin is believed by some geologists to contain similar material. The character of these latter discoveries is such as to indicate that original deposition of Cretaceous deposits occurred in the neighborhood where the observations were made.

No such deposits, or unmistakable traces of them, are yet known to have been discovered in Missouri, but it is thought not improbable that they may yet be found at least in the northern part of that State. Indeed it seems probable that the waters in which the interior Cretaceous deposits were made were continuous with those in which were deposited the Cretaceous formations of the Gulf Border region, by way of a narrow strait passing through what is now a portion of southwestern Illinois. That the Cretaceous sea extended eastward as far as has just been indicated seems to be unquestionable, but that a narrow strait connected it with the southern sea has not yet been proved.

The exposures of Cretaceous deposits in situ that have been discovered in this district are all so small that they are represented only by mere dots on the accompanying map, but there are trustworthy indications that in certain parts of the district they really occupy considerable unbroken areas beneath the drift, especially in Iowa and Minnesota, and that in some of those places they reach several hundred feet in thickness. There is no reason to doubt that this is the case within a considerable area in northwestern Iowa and within similarly important areas in southern Minnesota. So fully convinced was I, while investigating the geology of northern and western Iowa, that Cretaceous deposits occupy a large area beneath the drift that I so represented it upon the maps of my reports.[2]

All the Cretaceous deposits which have been recognized within this district belong to the Upper Cretaceous, remnants of the Dakota, Colorado, and Montana formations having been recognized in different parts of it by means of characteristic fossils, but no evidence has been observed that the Laramie ever existed within it, and none that this formation ever extended so far eastward as its western border. Because these deposits are generally found resting upon Paleozoic and older rocks it is not thought probable that any Lower Cretaceous strata were ever deposited within the limits of the district.

It is probable that the Cretaceous formations of this district never reached so great a thickness as did their representatives in the regions to the west of it, and this may in part account for the small bulk of the remnants which now exist there. But evidently this paucity of Cretaceous deposits there is largely due to the fact that they were not only exposed to erosion during Tertiary time, but they were still further

[1] Geol. Surv. Illinois, vol. 8, pp. 3–7.

[2] See Rep. Geol. Surv. Iowa, 1870, vols. 1 and 2, with maps.

removed and obscured by glacial action. These causes together have left the record of Cretaceous history for this part of the interior of the continent in a very fragmentary condition.

The other extra-regional districts which remain to be noticed embrace Alaska and other portions of the northwestern part of the continent, north of the 60th parallel. The discovery of Cretaceous deposits in western Alaska and adjacent islands have been made by persons connected with several different expeditions. These discoveries have given comparatively little information concerning the general Cretaceous geology of the district, and therefore our knowledge of it is mainly confined to the inferences which properly may be drawn from the character of the fossils collected there. This information is scattered through a considerable number of publications in different countries.[1]

The localities at which the fossils referred to were discovered are nearly all indicated upon the accompanying map by spots of the color used to designate other Cretaceous areas, but the following statements indicate the localities that were visited by each discoverer.

The fossils published by Grewingk were collected by Ilia Wosnessensky at the bay of Katmai on the southern coast of the Alaskan peninsula, approximately upon 58° north latitude and 155° west longitude. It was near this locality that some Mesozoic fossils were obtained that were published by myself, but which I could not then confidently refer to the Cretaceous.[2] It is now thought probable that these fossils belong to the same general horizon as the Aucella-bearing beds, and if so they ought to be referred to the Cretaceous.

The few fossils that were published by Fischer were obtained by Alph. Pinart at "le baie d'Amakshak, près de Soutkhoum, et le baie Nokkhalilik, près du volcan Chigihinagak." The former locality is approximately upon north latitude 56° 58′ and longitude 159° 40′, and the latter upon 56° 58′ north latitude and longitude 159° 10′ west, both localities being upon the north side of the Alaskan peninsula.

The few species which were published by myself and collected by W. H. Dall at Fossil Point, Port Müller, were found approximately upon longitude 160° 31′ minutes west and latitude 55° 14′ north, the locality being upon the north side of the Alaskan peninsula, and not far distant from the localities which were visited by Pinart.

Eichwald's fossils were obtained by Peter Doroschin from several localities upon both sides of the Alaskan peninsula, the principal of which may approximately be indicated as follows by north latitude and west longitude: lat. 59° 20′, long. 152°; lat. 60° 32′, long. 152° 25′; lat. 58°, long. 155° 25′; lat. 56° 30′ long 157° 30′.

---

[1] Eichwald, E., Geognost. Palaeont. Bemerkungen ü. d. Halbinsel Mangischlak u. d. Aleutischen Inseln, pp. 88–200; White, C. A., Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv. No. 4, pp. 1015; Grewingk, C., Russ. Kais. Min. Gesellsch., St. Petersburg, 1848–'49, pp. 344–347; Fischer, P., Voyage à la côte nordouest de l'Amérique, par M. Alph. Pinart, pp. 33, et seq. For a brief sketch of the geology of the Alaskan Peninsula, see W. H. Dall in Am. Jour. Sci. for July, 1882, pp. 67–68. Compare also White, C. A., Mesozoic Mollusca from the Southern Coast of the Alaskan Peninsula, Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv. No. 51, vol. 8, pp. 494–500, and plates 12–14.

[2] See Bull. U. S. Geol. Surv. No. 51, vol. 8, pp. 494–500 and Plates 12–14.

The fossils found at all the localities which have been mentioned in the foregoing paragraphs are all invertebrates, and all are referred to the Lower Cretaceous, although Eichwald refers a part of his species to the Gault. Furthermore, I have little or no doubt that the strata from which all these fossils were obtained belong to the great horizon of the Shasta group of California, and of the Queen Charlotte group of British Columbia.

The only other published evidence of the existence of Cretaceous strata in the western Alaskan district of which I have any knowledge consists of some fossil plants which have been discovered at Cape Lisburne, and which have been referred to the Neocomian by Lesquereux.[1] These plants probably represent a portion of one of the Greenland floras, but direct evidence upon that point is wanting.

The discoveries of Cretaceous deposits, which have been made in British America north of the sixtieth parallel of north latitude and in the adjacent parts of eastern Alaska, are among the results of explorations undertaken by the Canadian geological survey, only a part of which are yet published.[2] Besides the information derived from the published reports of that survey, I have been favored with notes from reports by Dr. G. M. Dawson and Mr. R. G. McConnell, which are yet unpublished. The following statements, as well as the outlines of the areas which are colored as Cretaceous upon the map at the end of this bulletin, are in part made in accordance with those notes and in part from the published reports referred to.

The color upon the map includes all deposits, from those of the Shasta horizon to the Laramie, inclusive, and the observations that have been made have not yet been sufficient to define all the intervening formations which presumably exist in that northern region. It is certain, however, that strata of the Shasta horizon originally extended over a large part of it, especially in the area drained by the Yukon. It appears also that marine Upper Cretaceous deposits also occur nearly or quite as far north as the mouth of Mackenzie River. These latter deposits presumably are, or originally were, continuous with those farther south, in the Great Interior area, but it does not necessarily follow that those deposits which, in the valley of Mackenzie River, have been found to contain Laramie species of plants were originally continuous with the great Laramie formation. It is more probable that they were contemporaneously deposited in separate bodies of water and that the leaves of then existing deciduous plants were cast into those waters on either hand, as has been intimated by Dr. G. M. Dawson.[3]

---

[1] Proc. U. S. Nat. Mus., vol. 11, 1888, pp. 31–33, and plates 10 and 16.

[2] See Dawson, G. M., Report on an Exploration in the Yukon District, N. W. T., etc., Geol. Surv. Canada, Ann. Rep. Prog. for 1887–'88, pp. 5–178 B; also, Notes to accompany a geological map of the northern portion of the Dominion of Canada east of the Rocky Mountains. Ann. Rep. Geol. Surv. Canada for 1886, pp. 1–62 R, and map.

Mr. R. G. McConnell, of the Canadian geological survey, has now in press an important report concerning his explorations in the valley of Mackenzie River and that of the Yukon.

[3] Trans. Roy. Soc. Canada, vol. 8, sec. 4, sketch map 3, following page 74.

CORRELATION AND TAXONOMY ILLUSTRATED BY TABLES.

The relation of the Cretaceous formations in each of the seven recognized regions of the continent to those which lie adjacent to it and the known or supposed taxonomic position of each of those formations with relation to a recognizable scale, have to some extent been shown upon preceding pages, but it is desirable that the subject of the correlation and taxonomy of the North American Cretaceous formations should be presented somewhat more concisely. Therefore, the principal sections, 18 in number, that have been published from time to time by different authors have been selected for tabular arrangement in such a manner as to be synoptically comparable with one another, and these tables are presented on following pages. This tabular presentation of the subject not only gives my own views as to the correlation and taxonomic position of each formation, but it shows the limitation of the formations which other authors have recognized and the identity of certain formations that have received different names from different authors. The spaces which in each table are inclosed by lines respectively represent the formations which have been recognized and also the position in the scale to which each is assigned. The spaces which are open at the right-hand side represent the assumed absence of strata necessary to make the section complete.

One always finds it more or less difficult to present satisfactorily in tabular form his views as to the correlation of formations which occur in different and widely separated portions of a continent, but perhaps one of the best methods is to tabulate them by name in parallel columns upon a single sheet. In the present case a sheet would be inconveniently large, especially as explanations are deemed necessary for each section to be represented. I have therefore devoted one table to each section, a whole page to each table, and the whole of the opposite page to its explanation.

To show the actual or supposed relation of each section with the others I have adopted for each table a graduated scale, the unitary divisions of which are represented by the letters of the alphabet, a full alphabet being devoted to both the Upper and Lower Cretaceous. Thus "a" of the Upper Cretaceous division of the scale represents the terminal portion of Cretaceous time; and "z" of the Lower Cretaceous division, the initial portion of the same.

The scale for each table being an exact counterpart of all the others, the position, with reference to its unitary divisions, of the space which in each table is devoted to each formation of the section represented approximately expresses my views as to its correlation with, or its taxonomic position with reference to, the formations represented in all the other tables.

Conspicuous among the objections that may be made against the use of this scale is the aspect of mathematical exactness which is produced

by the equal spacing of the unitary divisions; but this objection would apply to any scale the purpose of which is to express subdivisions of geological time. I therefore wish distinctly to state that the correlation and taxonomic arrangement of formations which are shown in the tables in connection with the use of this scale are intended only to represent my present views, a part of which, at least, are likely to be changed by further investigation.

In some cases, for example in the case of the Lower Cretaceous formations represented in the following tables, it is likely that the true position of each formation with reference to the base and top of the series and also with reference to the other formations may not be accurately represented, but their present assignment in the scale has been made in accordance with my present interpretation of ascertained facts. In other cases, however, the correlation and taxonomy represented in the tables are regarded with much confidence, and in certain cases the correlation is necessarily correct because similar or identical sections are compared, the formations of which have received different names from different authors; that is, the differences in the latter cases are only or mainly those which relate to their nomenclature.

In the discussion of the formations of the Pacific Border region it has been shown that the correlation of separate formations there with those of any of the other regions is a matter of much uncertainty, although one can not doubt that at least the Upper Cretaceous formations of that region were really contemporaneous with some of those of the other regions. It will therefore be understood that the correlation which is implied in the tables embracing those formations has not yet been directly demonstrated.

Other cases, in which I have only indicated my present views rather than given expression to established facts, are the placing of the Dakota formation and its equivalents at the base of the Upper Cretaceous, and of the Potomac formation and its real and supposed equivalents at the base of the Lower Cretaceous, with a partial extension of them into the Jurassic.

The student of European geology will doubtless be disappointed by not finding in these tables an attempt to correlate the subdivisions of the American with those of the European Cretaceous, but, as was stated in the introduction, I believe that much more extensive studies of these formations ought to be made before any such correlation can be satisfactorily established. It has already been shown that North American Cretaceous geology is not a continental unit, and until we are able to satisfactorily correlate the Pacific Border formations with those of the other regions of this continent, it is well to hold in abeyance any definite attempt at the correlation of the subdivisions of the North American Cretaceous with those of any other continent.

It may not be amiss, however, to say that the time-scope of the American scale which I have here introduced being regarded as ideally equiv-

alent to that of the European scale, it is thought that the plane of "c" in the Upper Cretaceous portion of the former corresponds to a plane that will fall within the approximate homotaxial equivalent of the subdivision of the European scale known as the Upper Chalk. This somewhat indefinite statement and the general inferences that may be drawn from it as to further correlation of the North American with the European Cretaceous constitute all that I feel warranted in saying upon that subject in this connection.

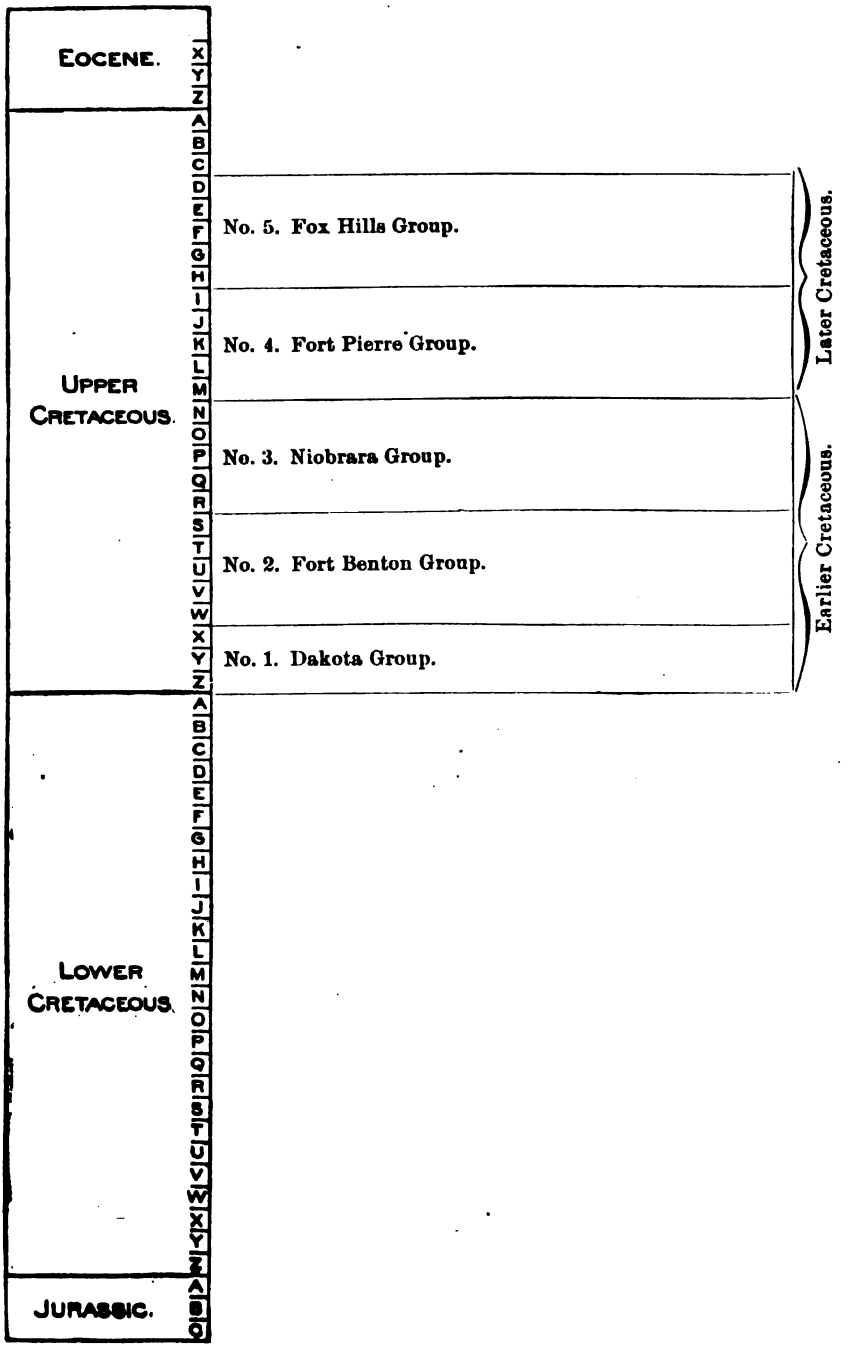
It is in part my belief that the time has not yet arrived for a full correlation of the subdivisions of the American with those of the European Cretaceous, but it is mainly the inherent characteristics of the various formations which constitute our North American Cretaceous that has caused me to recognize only two general divisions of the system, an upper and a lower, instead of upper, middle, and lower divisions which are usually recognized in Europe.

MEEK & HAYDEN'S UPPER MISSOURI RIVER SECTION.

The section which for many years has been known as Meek & Hayden's Upper Missouri River section is represented by the table on the opposite page. It embraces all the Cretaceous formations that were recognized by those authors as existing in the region which is traversed by the Missouri River from Fort Benton in Montana to the mouth of Big Sioux River in western South Dakota. By most geologists this section has been recognized, with or without modification, as a standard for the classification of the formations of the interior portion of the continent, which in this memoir are referred to the North American Cretaceous.

The modifications which have been proposed by different authors are shown in the tables upon pages 213, 226, 231, 233, 235, and 237. For discussions of the section and tables representing it see pages 144, 145, 155 and 158.

Meek & Hayden's Upper Missouri River Section.

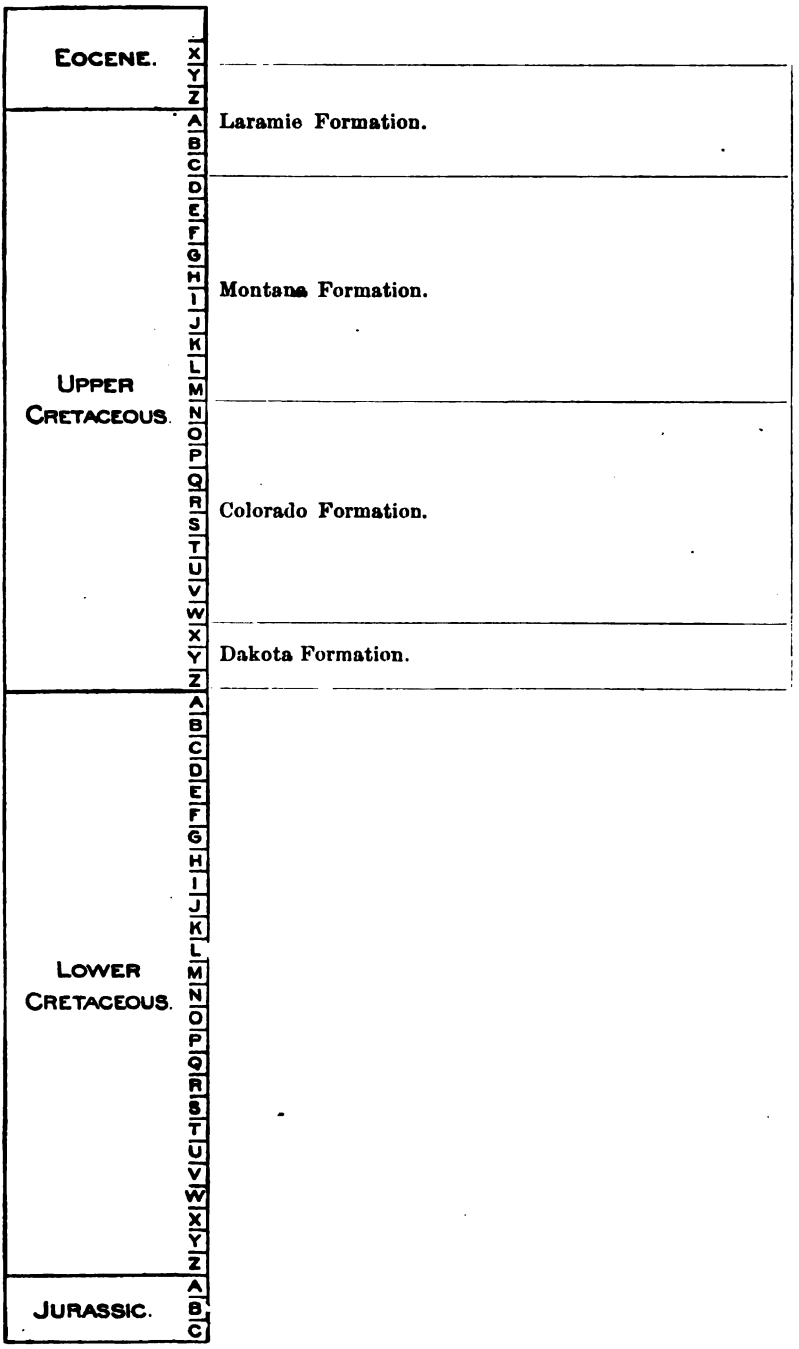


GENERAL SECTION OF THE UPPER CRETACEOUS FOR THE GREAT INTERIOR AREA.

The opposite table represents the general section of the Upper Cretaceous formation of the Great Interior area in the form which was proposed and published by Mr. George H. Eldridge as a modification of the classification and nomenclature of the strata and their equivalents which were embraced in the Upper Missouri River section of Meek and Hayden, and not as being exclusively applicable to any particular one of the several districts in which the strata referred to occur.

This modified classification has the same scope and is essentially the same as that which was used by Newberry, Powell, and White respectively, the difference being only or mainly that of nomenclature. Both the nomenclature and classification proposed by Mr. Eldridge are in this memoir adopted for general use in those districts where the formations in question are known to occur. See pages 144 and 158.

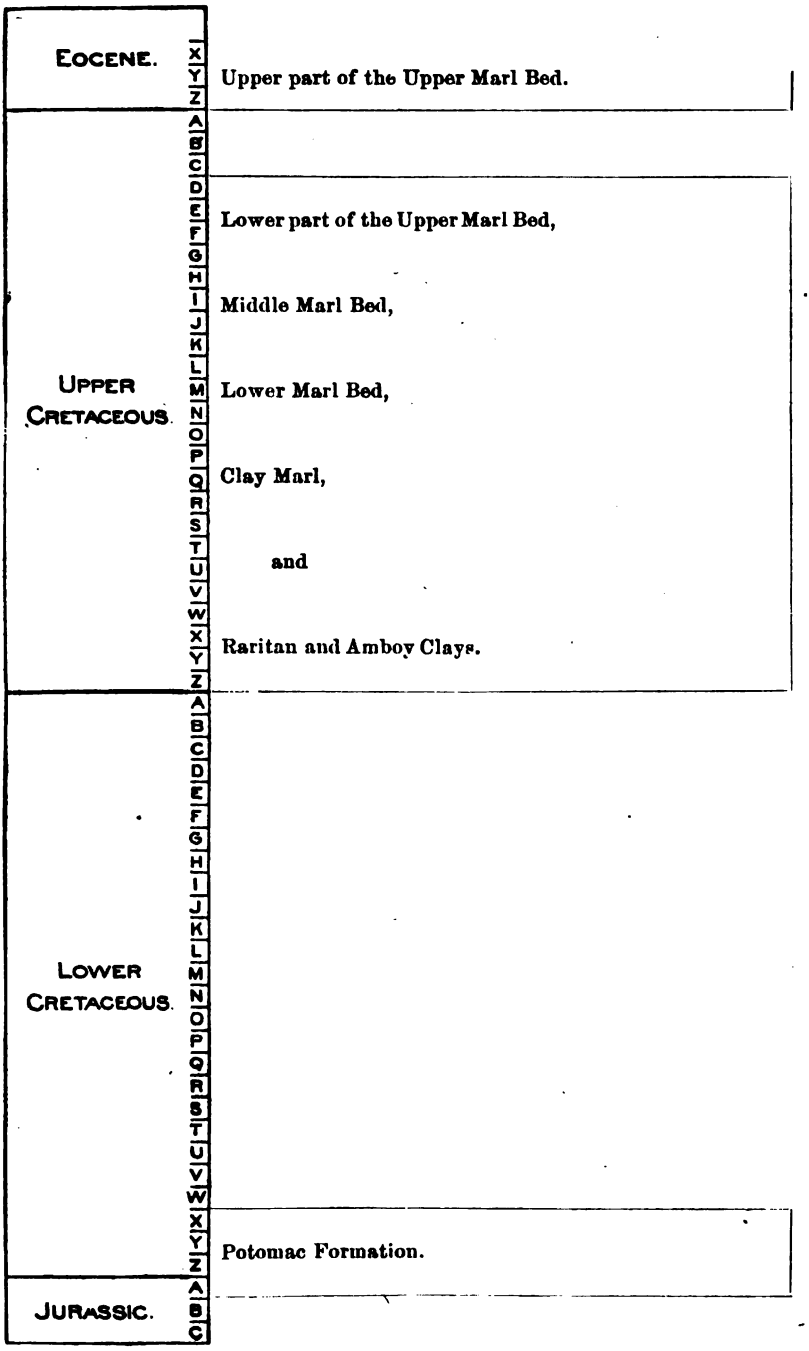
General Section of the Upper Cretaceous for the Great Interior Area.


EOCENE.
X Y Z
UPPER CRETACEOUS.
A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
Laramie Formation.
Montana Formation.
Colorado Formation.
Dakota Formation.
LOWER CRETACEOUS.
A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
JURASSIC.
A B C

THE NEW JERSEY SECTION.

The section which is represented by the table upon the opposite page is that which has been described and illustrated by Prof. Geo. H. Cook in several of the publications of the New Jersey State Geological Survey, but which was first defined by Prof. H. D. Rogers. The tabular arrangement of the formations with reference to the scale adopted for this memoir shows that the Potomac formation proper is supposed to belong in part to the Jurassic, and also that the Raritan and Amboy clays are thought to be equivalents, at least in part, of the Dakota formation. See tables on pages 211 and 213. The arrangement of the formations in this table also shows that there is understood to be a time-hiatus between the lower and upper parts of the Upper Marl bed equal to at least the greater part of the epoch of the Laramie formation, the taxonomic position of which is shown in the tables on pages 213, 223, 225, 233, 237 and 239, where it occupies essentially the same portion of the scale that the hiatus does in this. For description of the members of the New Jersey section, see pages 80–83.

The New Jersey Section.


EOCENE.
X Y Z
Upper part of the Upper Marl Bed.
UPPER CRETACEOUS.
A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
Lower part of the Upper Marl Bed,
Middle Marl Bed,
Lower Marl Bed,
Clay Marl,
and
Raritan and Amboy Clays.
LOWER CRETACEOUS.
A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
Potomac Formation.
JURASSIC.
A B C

SMITH AND JOHNSON'S ALABAMA SECTION.

The greater part of this section, which may be taken to represent the full Cretaceous series of Alabama, was published many years ago by Prof. M. Tuomey and by Prof. A. Winchell, but as it is presented in this memoir it has been compiled mainly from Bulletin No. 43 of the U. S. Geological Survey, of which Prof. E. A. Smith and Mr. L C. Johnson are the authors. The section, as a whole, is understood to be equivalent to that of New Jersey and also to that of Mississippi, which are shown in the tables on pages 215 and 219 respectively.

The time-hiatus which is shown in the opposite table to occur above the Ripley group of those authors occupies the same part of the scale that the corresponding hiatus does in that of both the New Jersey and Mississippi sections, and like the hiatus represented in the two latter sections it is understood to represent the whole or nearly the whole of the epoch of the Laramie formation of the Interior regions, the position of which formation is shown in the tables on pages 213, 223, 225, 233, 237 and 239.

Immediately above this hiatus certain beds occur in Wilcox County which contain numerous specimens of the nautiloid genus *Enclimatoceras* of Hyatt, which beds are represented here because they and their equivalents near Little Rock, Arkansas, have been erroneously referred to the Cretaceous. See also table on page 221.

The upper portion of the Eutaw group of Alabama is understood to be equivalent to the Tombigbee sands of the Mississippi section and, like the latter, to be not properly separable from the Rotten limestone. The horizon of the Tombigbee sands is believed to be approximately the same as that of the Dakota formation, as will be seen by comparing its tabular position with that of the latter formation upon pages 211, 213, 229, 231, 233, 237 and 239. For discussions of the formations of the Alabama section and a figure representing it see pages 105–108.

Smith and Johnson's Alabama Section.

EOCENE.	X Y Z	Enclimatoceras Bed.
UPPER CRETACEOUS.	A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z	Ripley Group.
		Rotten Limestone Group.
		Upper portion of Eutaw Group.
LOWER CRETACEOUS.	A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z	Lower portion of Eutaw Group and Tuscaloosa Group.
JURASSIC.	A B C	

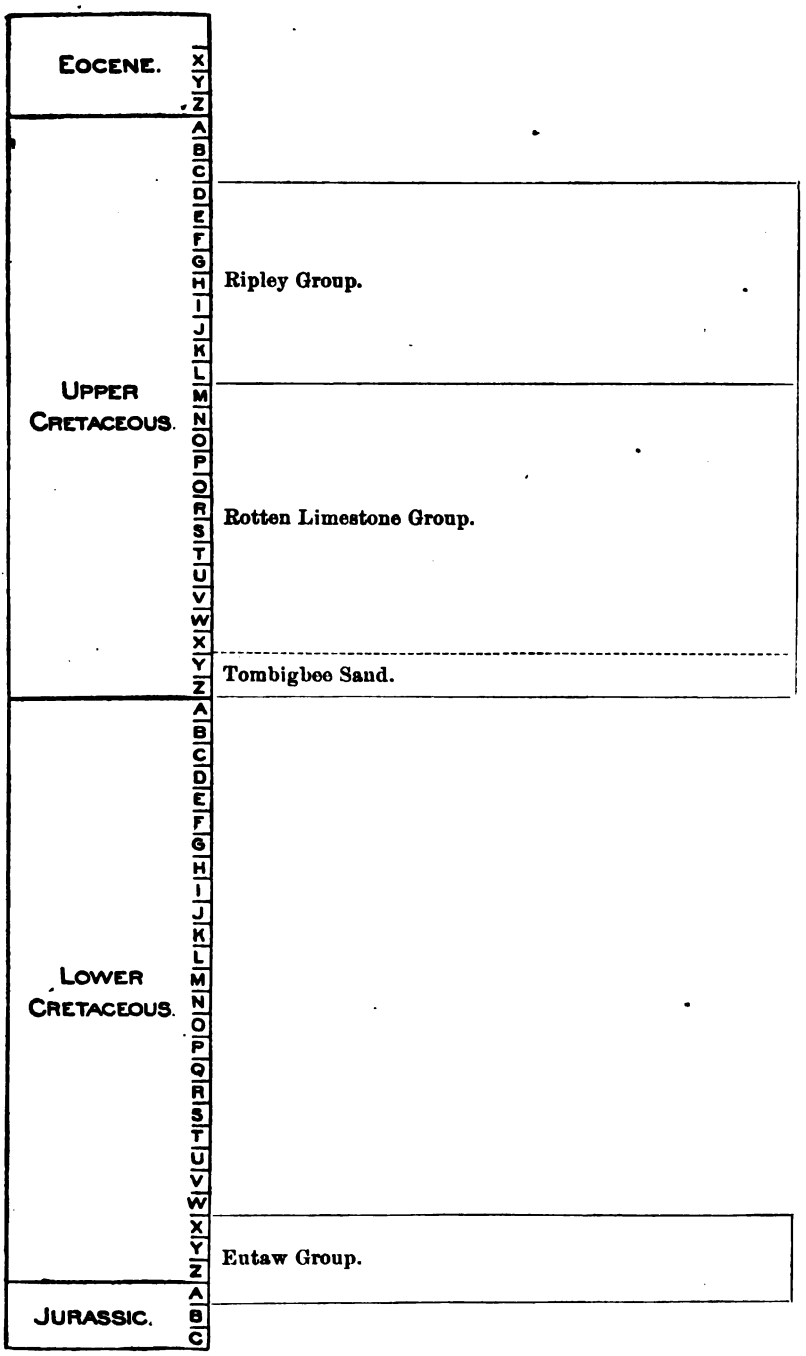
HILGARD'S MISSISSIPPI SECTION.

Prof. E. W. Hilgard, in his Geological Survey of the State of Mississippi, found there essentially the same section of Cretaceous rocks that exists in the adjoining State of Alabama, and these are assigned to similar positions with reference to the scale, as will be seen by comparing the table on page 217 with this. The same time-hiatus also is recognized in the Mississippi section which has been indicated in the tables representing the New Jersey and Alabama sections as having occurred between the deposition of the uppermost Cretaceous strata and that of the overlying Eocene. Furthermore, it is understood that this hiatus, as in the other cases referred to, represents either the whole or much the greater part of the Laramie epoch.

The Eutaw group of the Mississippi section is understood to represent the Tuscaloosa group and the lower, greater part of the Eutaw group of the Alabama section, and to be equivalent to the Potomac formation of the Atlantic Border region.

The Tombigbee Sand is understood to be not properly separable as a distinct formation from the Rotten limestone, and, like the upper part of the Eutaw group of Alabama, to belong to approximately the same horizon as that of the Dakota formation. See tables on pages 211, 213, 229, 231, 233, 237 and 239; and for discussions of the formations, see pages 105, 106.

Hilgard's Mississippi Section.



THE EAST TEXAN SECTION.

Aside from the Comanche series the Cretaceous section of the eastern part of the Texan region is regarded as essentially equivalent to those of New Jersey, Alabama, and Mississippi, respectively, which are represented in the tables on pages 215, 217 and 219.

The time-hiatus above the Ripley formation is understood to be approximately identical with that which is shown in those three sections, and to represent at least the greater part of the epoch of the Laramie formation, the position of which is shown in the next and other tables. The *Enclimatoceras* bed of the Eocene is shown in the opposite table for the reason given on page 112. It is not known whether this bed really constitutes the base of the Eocene, as it is represented to do in these two tables, but its position is evidently not far from the base.

The true position of the Comanche series in the Lower Cretaceous scale is not known, and it is only provisionally placed in the position shown in the opposite table, as well as in the two next following tables.

The true place of the Trinity formation is a matter of much doubt. It is perhaps equivalent to the Potomac formation of the Atlantic Border region, the assumed position of which is shown in the table on page 215, and upon that supposition the Trinity is given a similar place in the opposite table. For references to the Potomac formation, see pages 80, 90; and to the Trinity, pages 118, 119.

The East Texan Section.

EOCENE.	X Y Z	Enclimatoceras Bed, near Little Rock, Ark.
UPPER CRETACEOUS.	A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z	Ripley Formation, "Ponderosa Marls," and Austin Formation. Eagle Ford Formation. Timber Creek Formation.
LOWER CRETACEOUS.	A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z	Comanche Series. Trinity Formation.
JURASSIC.	A B C	

THE WEST TEXAN SECTION.

In the western part of the Texan region the Cretaceous series is capped by the Laramie, which formation there reaches its most southeasterly known extension. Beneath the Laramie, this section as a whole is regarded as equivalent to the East Texan section, but all of the separate formations of the eastern section have not yet been satisfactorily recognized in the western one. The Comanche series and the Trinity formation, however, have been recognized in the western section, which fact is shown in the opposite table. The thickness of the Trinity is less in this section than in the preceding one.

In this table also it is shown that marine Eocene beds overlie the Laramie, which fact is recorded on page 126.

For discussion of these formations, see pages 125–127.

The West Texan Section.

EOCENE.	X Y Z	Marine Eocene Beds.
UPPER CRETACEOUS.	A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z	Laramie. Eagle Pass Beds. Equivalents of the "Ponderosa Marls," and of the Austin, Eagle Ford, and Timber Creek Formations.
LOWER CRETACEOUS.	A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z	Comanche Series.
JURASSIC.	A B C	Trinity Formation.

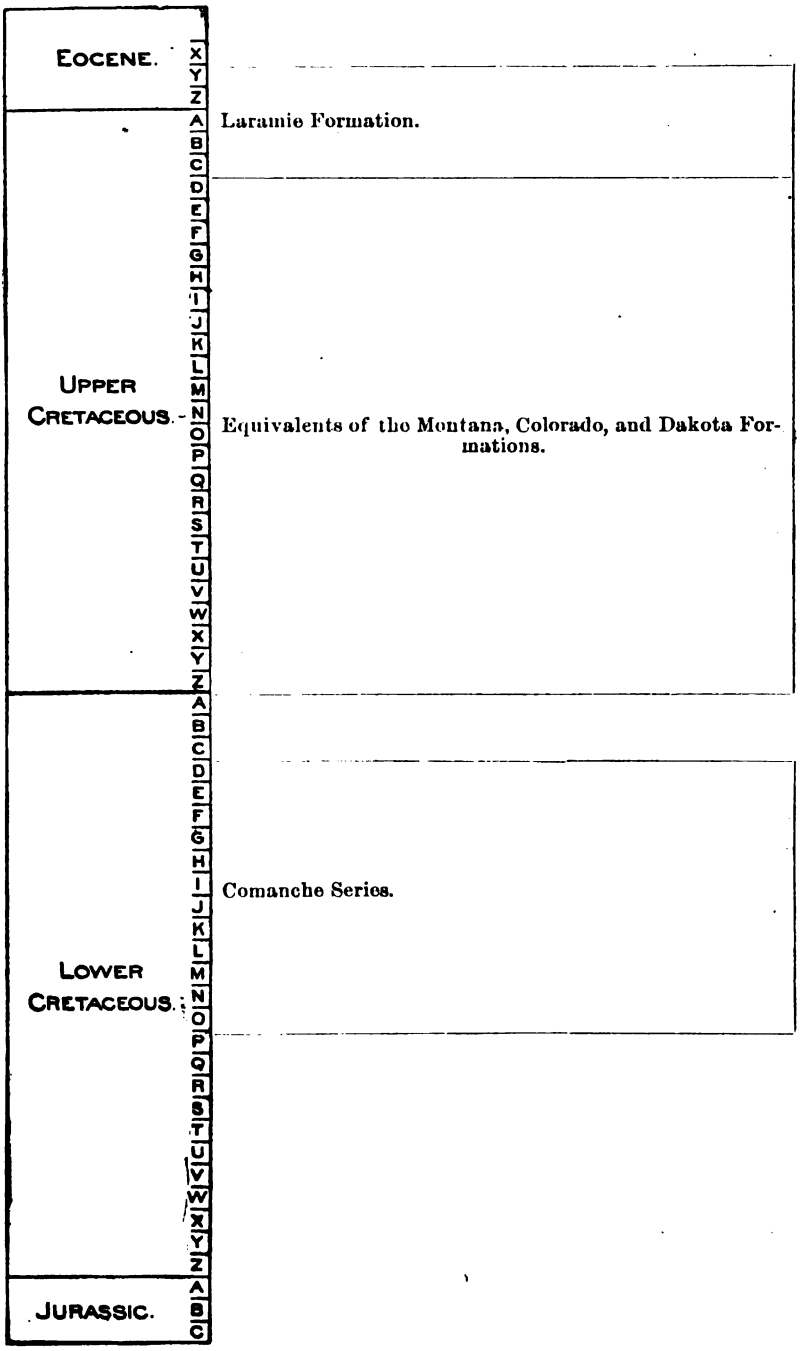
THE NORTH MEXICAN SECTION.

Too little is definitely known of the Cretaceous geology of the North Mexican region to enable one to construct a satisfactory section of those formations. Enough, however, is known to indicate that all the Upper Cretaceous series, from the Dakota to the Laramie formation inclusive, is represented in that region as shown in the opposite table. The separate formations of the series, as they exist in the interior regions, have, however, not yet been recognized in the North Mexican region.

The Comanche series here reaches its greatest known development, but no other Lower Cretaceous strata have yet been recognized in that region.

For discussions of these formations, see pages 134–140.

The North Mexican Section.

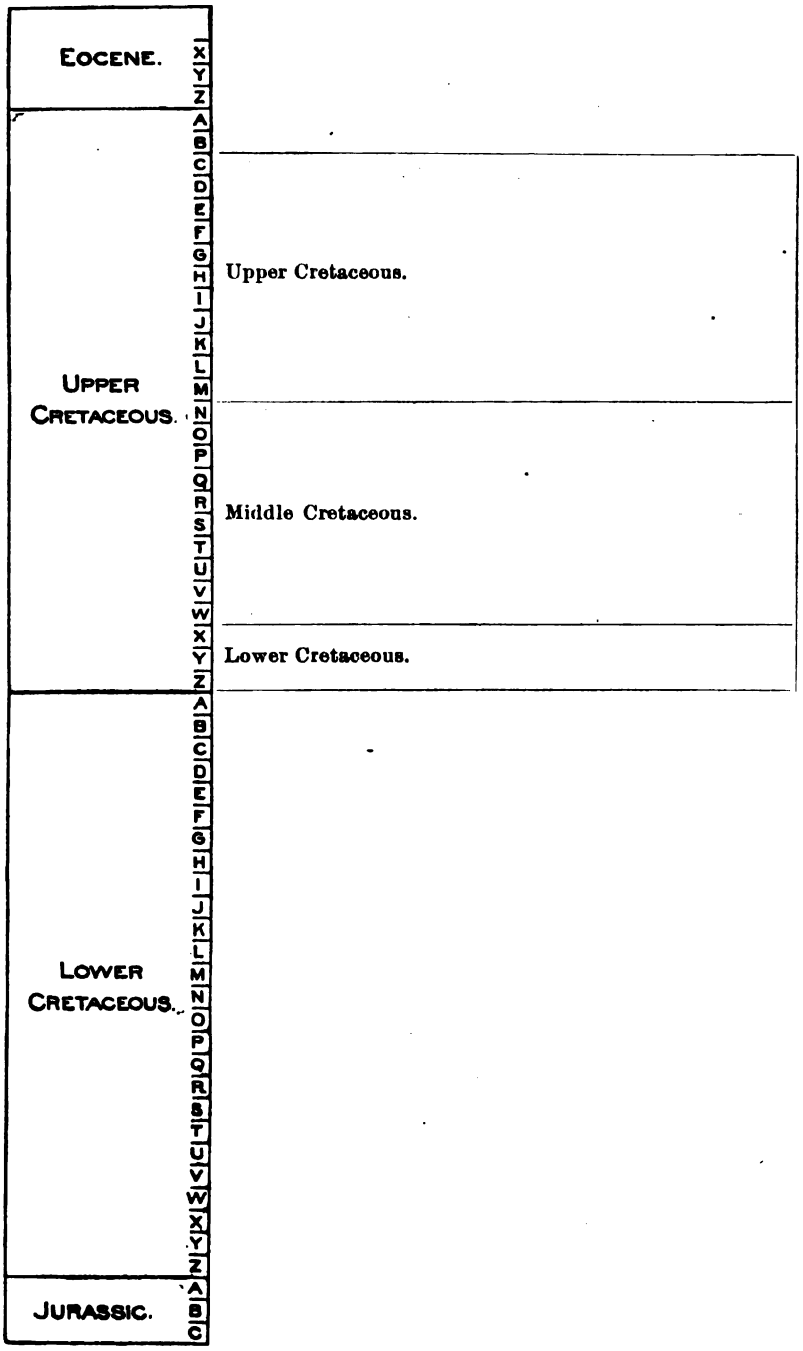


NEWBERRY'S NEW MEXICAN SECTION.

The opposite table represents the three divisions of the Upper Cretaceous series which Prof. Newberry recognized in New Mexico. This section agrees with that which is adopted in this memoir for general use in the Great Interior area, and with the sections of White and Powell, respectively, as shown on pages 235 and 237, except that it differs in nomenclature, and his upper division seems to include a portion of the Laramie formation. The terms upper, middle, and lower are relative only as applied to the portions of the series which they represent, and were not used by Newberry as applicable to the whole Cretaceous system. For references to the work of Prof. Newberry in New Mexico see page 155.

In his first geological work in New Mexico, Prof. J. J. Stevenson used substantially the same classification as that of this section of Dr. Newberry's, but in his later work there he adopted the classification which was used by King in his survey of the fortieth parallel, so far as the marine Cretaceous formations are concerned. See page 157.

Newberry's New Mexican Section.



COPE'S GENERAL SECTION.

The opposite table is constructed mainly from an article by Prof. E. D. Cope, entitled "The Mesozoic and Cenozoic Realms of the Interior of North America," in the American Naturalist, volume 21, page 445–459 inclusive. Prof. Cope does not therein present a formal section but adopts the Upper Missouri River section of Meek & Hayden with the addition of subsequently discovered or recognized formations. It is introduced here mainly for the purpose of showing the relation to the Laramie of the assemblage of strata to which he gave the name Puerco group, and its taxonomic position with relation to the other formations. See page 149.

Cope's General Section.

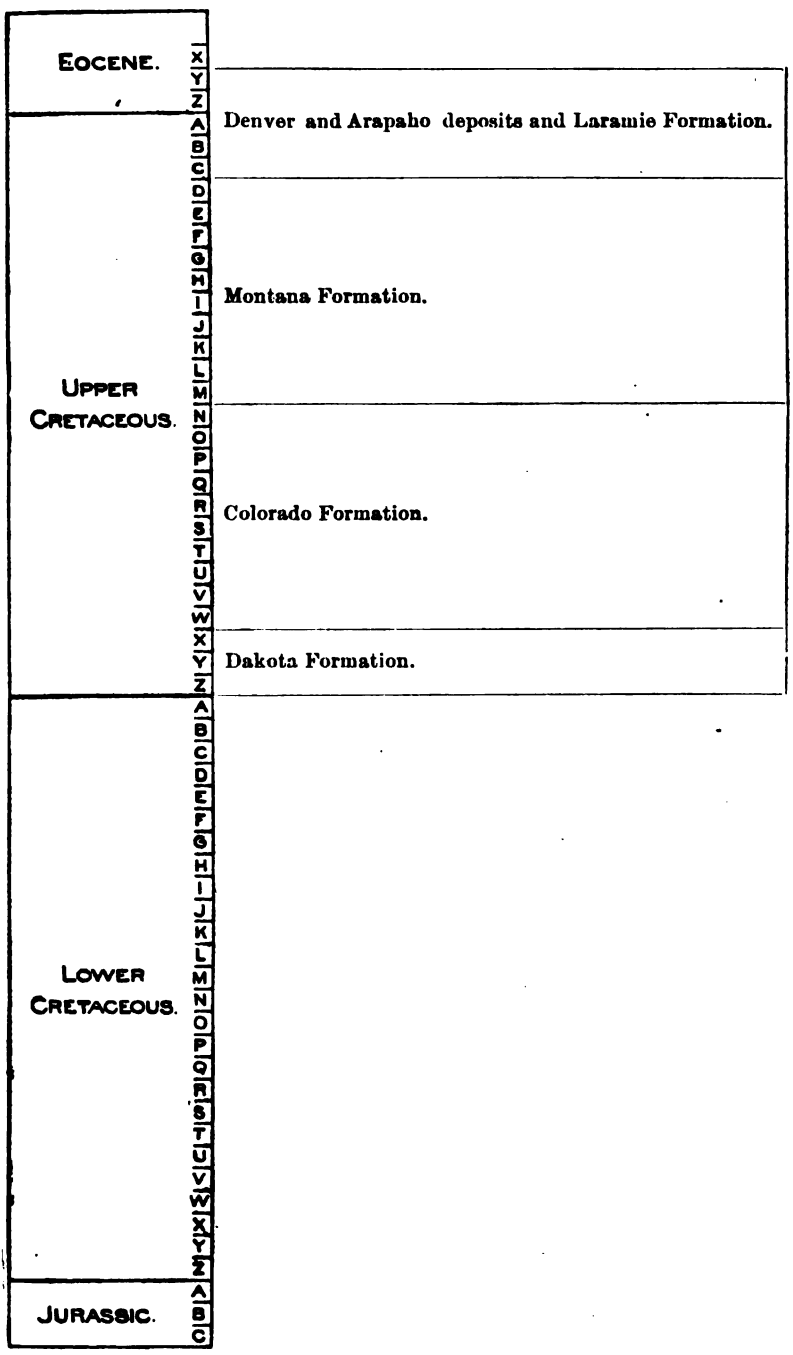
EOCENE.	X Y Z	Puerco and Laramie Groups.
UPPER CRETACEOUS.	A B C D E F G H	Fox Hills Group.
	I J K L M	Fort Pierre Group.
	N O P Q R	Niobrara Group.
	S T U V W	Fort Benton Group..
	X Y Z	Dakota Group.
LOWER CRETACEOUS.	A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z	Comanche Series.
JURASSIC.	A B C	

THE EASTERN COLORADO SECTION.

This table, which is essentially identical with the one on page 213 representing the general section of the Upper Cretaceous of the Great Interior area, but to which is added space representing the Arapaho and Denver deposits, is introduced to exhibit the position of the latter with relation to the other members of the section which occur in the same district.

For discussion of these deposits, see pages 154–160.

The Eastern Colorado Section.

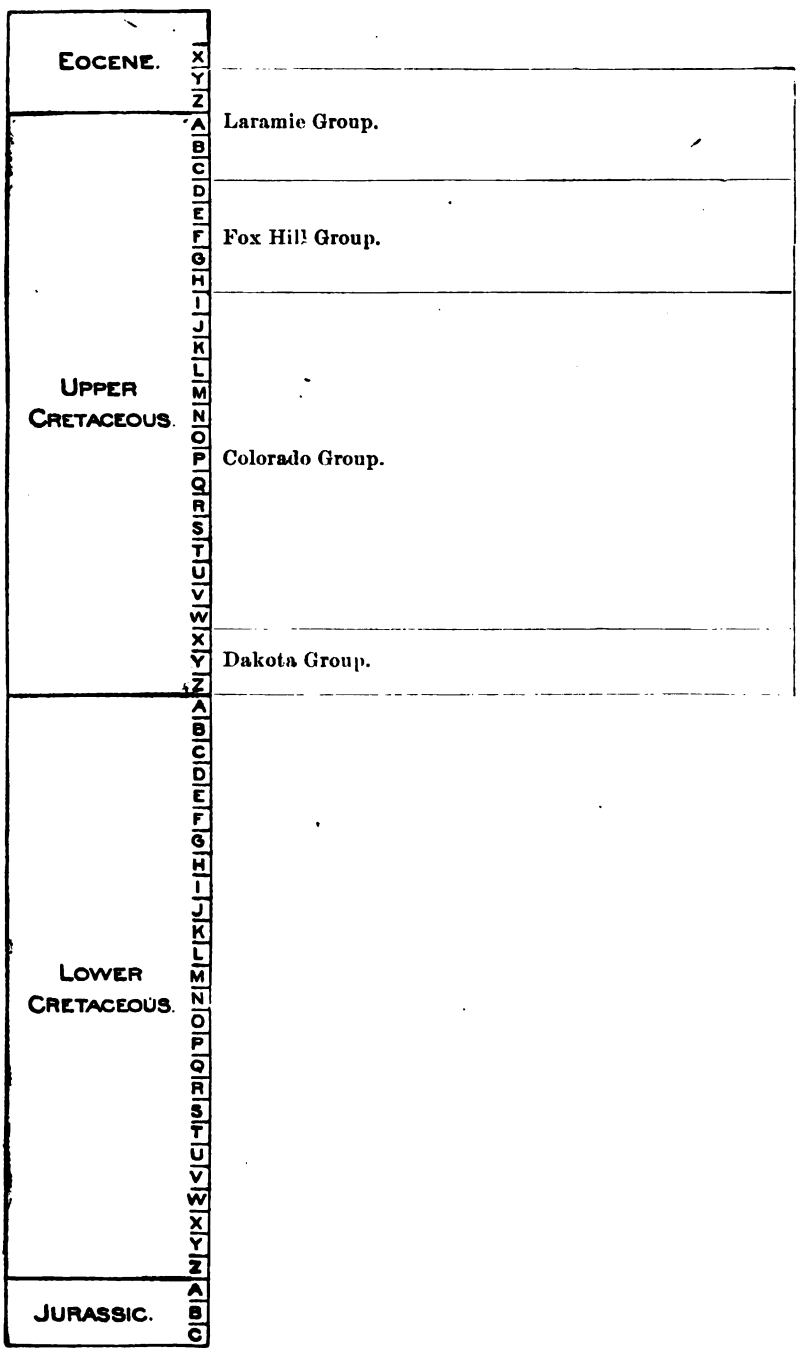


KING'S FORTIETH PARALLEL SECTION.

The vertical range of this section is the same as that of White, which is represented on page 257, and it is also the same as that of Meek and Hayden's Upper Missouri River section, with the addition of the Laramie formation. In nomenclature and in the delimitation of a part of the formations, however, King's section differs from the two sections just named, that is, the equivalents of the Fort Benton, Niobrara, and Fort Pierre groups of Meek and Hayden are united under the name of the Colorado group, while the equivalents of the Dakota and Fox Hills groups of the latter section are retained as separate groups by King.

In his later geological work in New Mexico Prof. J. J. Stevenson followed Mr. King with regard to those features of his classification of the Cretaceous formations which are here shown to distinguish it from that which is adopted in this memoir.

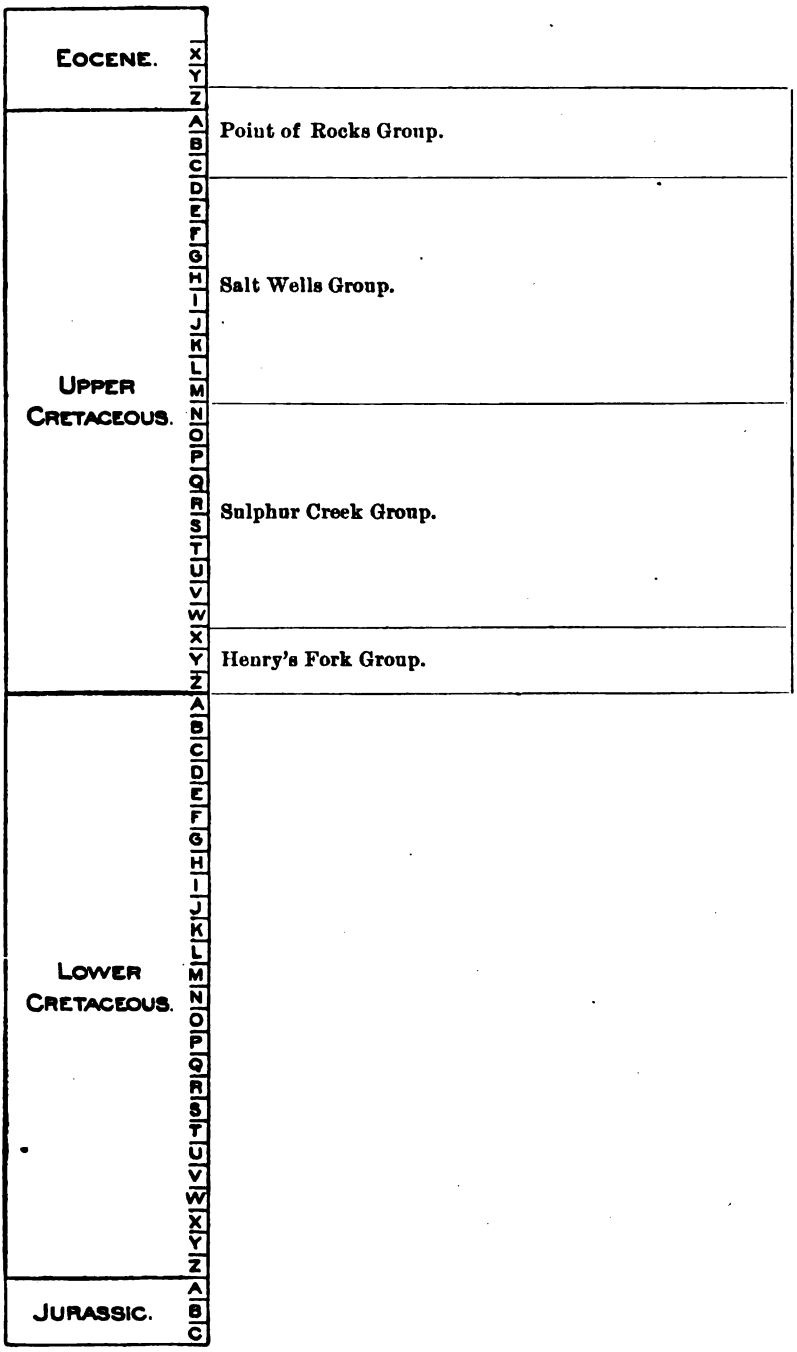
King's Fortieth Parallel Section.



POWELL'S UINTA SECTION.

The section represented by the opposite table was published by Maj. J. W. Powell in his report on the eastern portion of the Uinta Mountains. Its vertical range is nearly the same as that of the sections of King and White respectively, which sections are represented by the tables on pages 233 and 237. The only difference as to the vertical range of Powell's section, as compared with the two others just named, consists in the assignment of the extreme upper portion of his Point of Rocks group, that is of the Laramie, to the overlying Eocene formation. With that exception also, the separate formations of Powell's section are exactly equivalent to those of the general section which is represented on page 213, and to those of White's section, which is represented by the next following table. That is, Powell's section, with the slight exception mentioned, differs from those two sections only in nomenclature. For discussion of Powell's section see pages 155, 156.

Powell's Uinta Section.

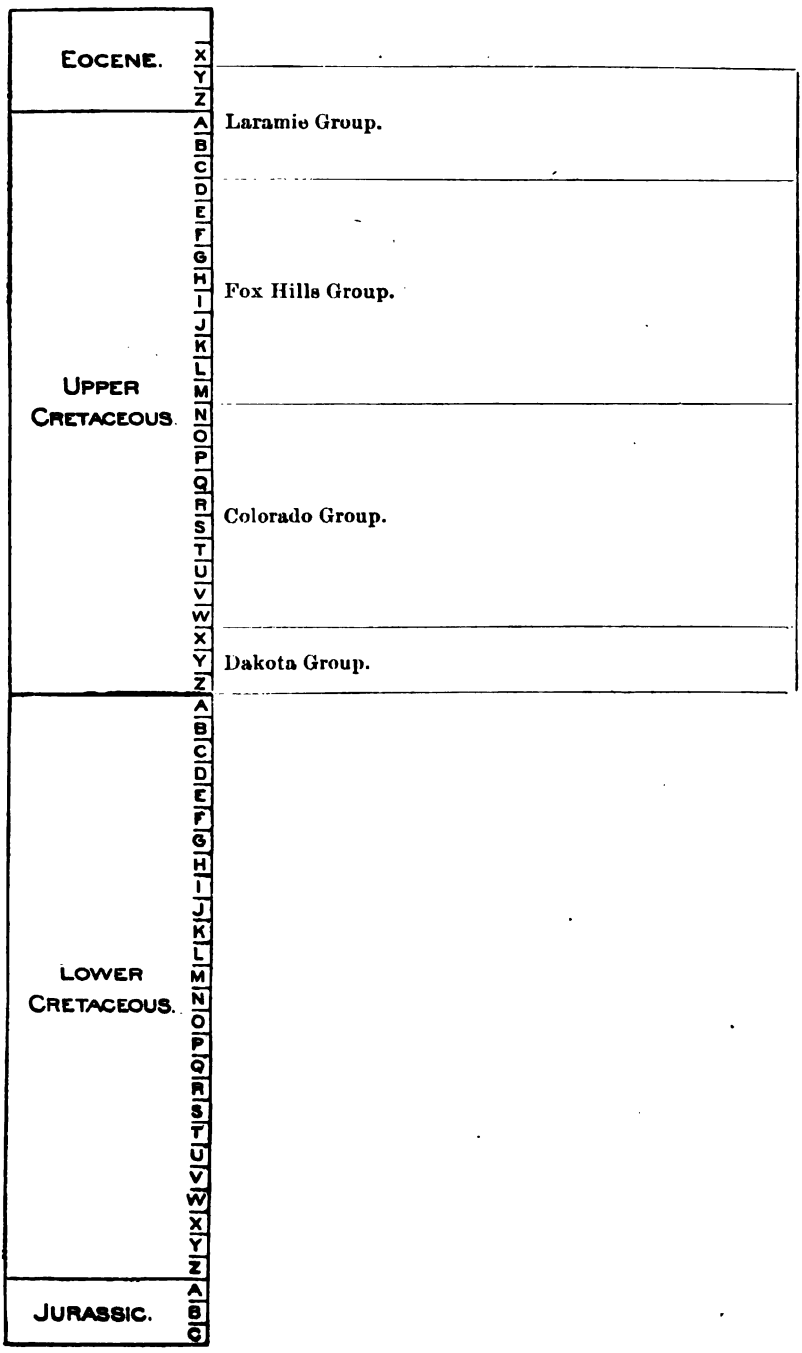

EOCENE.
X Y Z
UPPER CRETACEOUS.
A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
Point of Rocks Group.
Salt Wells Group.
Sulphur Creek Group.
Henry's Fork Group.
LOWER CRETACEOUS.
A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
JURASSIC.
A B C

WHITE'S NORTHWEST COLORADO SECTION.

The formations embraced in this section occur in part in the same district as that in which Maj. Powell's section, represented in the immediately preceding table, was constructed. It is equivalent to that section in all respects except that the Laramie formation extends to a somewhat higher horizon than does the Point of Rocks group as defined by Powell. In this section, however, King's nomenclature, which is shown in the table on page 233, is adopted, but the division into formations of that portion of the series which comes between the Dakota and Laramie formations is different from that which was made by King. This portion of the section is medially divided upon the same horizon as that which was recognized by Meek and Hayden, Powell and Newberry, as is shown in the tables on pages 211, 235, and 227.

For remarks on this section see page 157.

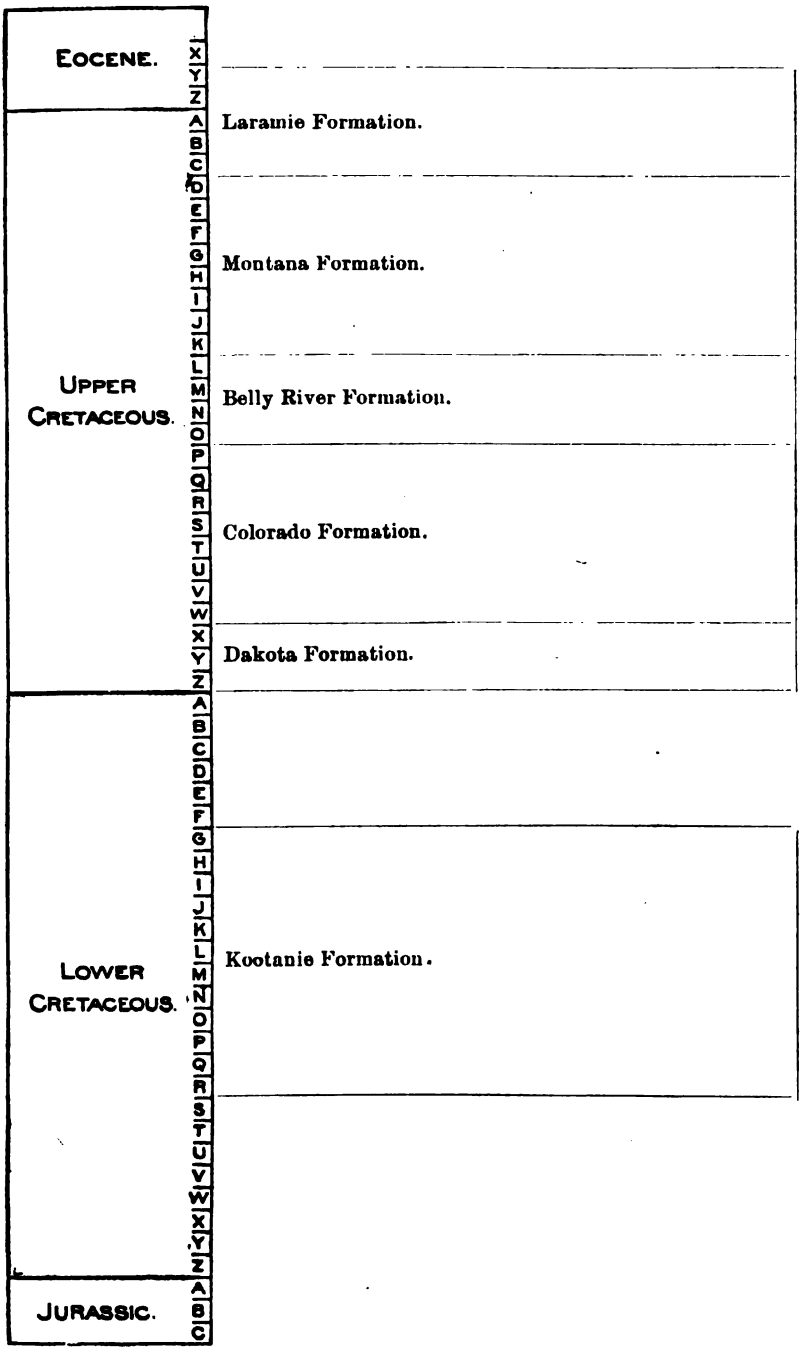
White's Northwest Colorado Section.


EOCENE.
X Y Z
A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
Laramie Group.
Fox Hills Group.
UPPER CRETACEOUS.
Colorado Group.
Dakota Group.
A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
LOWER CRETACEOUS.
A B C
JURASSIC.

THE NORTH INTERIOR GENERAL SECTION.

The opposite table represents all the Cretaceous formations which have been recognized in the North Interior region, together with their position with relation to one another. The Upper Cretaceous series there has the same vertical range as have the sections which are represented by the tables on pages 213, 231, 233, and 237, but the non-marine Belly River formation, to which the Dunvegan beds are regarded as equivalent, is added to the series, its taxonomic position, as shown in the table, being between the Colorado and Montana formations. A non-marine Lower Cretaceous formation also occurs in this region, namely, the Kootanie. Its relative position in the Lower Cretaceous series is represented in the table in accordance with my present views. It is known to be later than at least a part of the Queen Charlotte formation, the relative position of which, as at present understood, is shown in the table on page 245. That table also shows that the latter formation is not understood to represent the earliest part of Lower Cretaceous time. In that table also, for reasons just indicated, the Kootanie, as a whole, is placed higher in the scale than is the base of the Queen Charlotte formation. For discussion of the formations which constitute the North Interior section see pages 165–171.

The North Interior General Section.



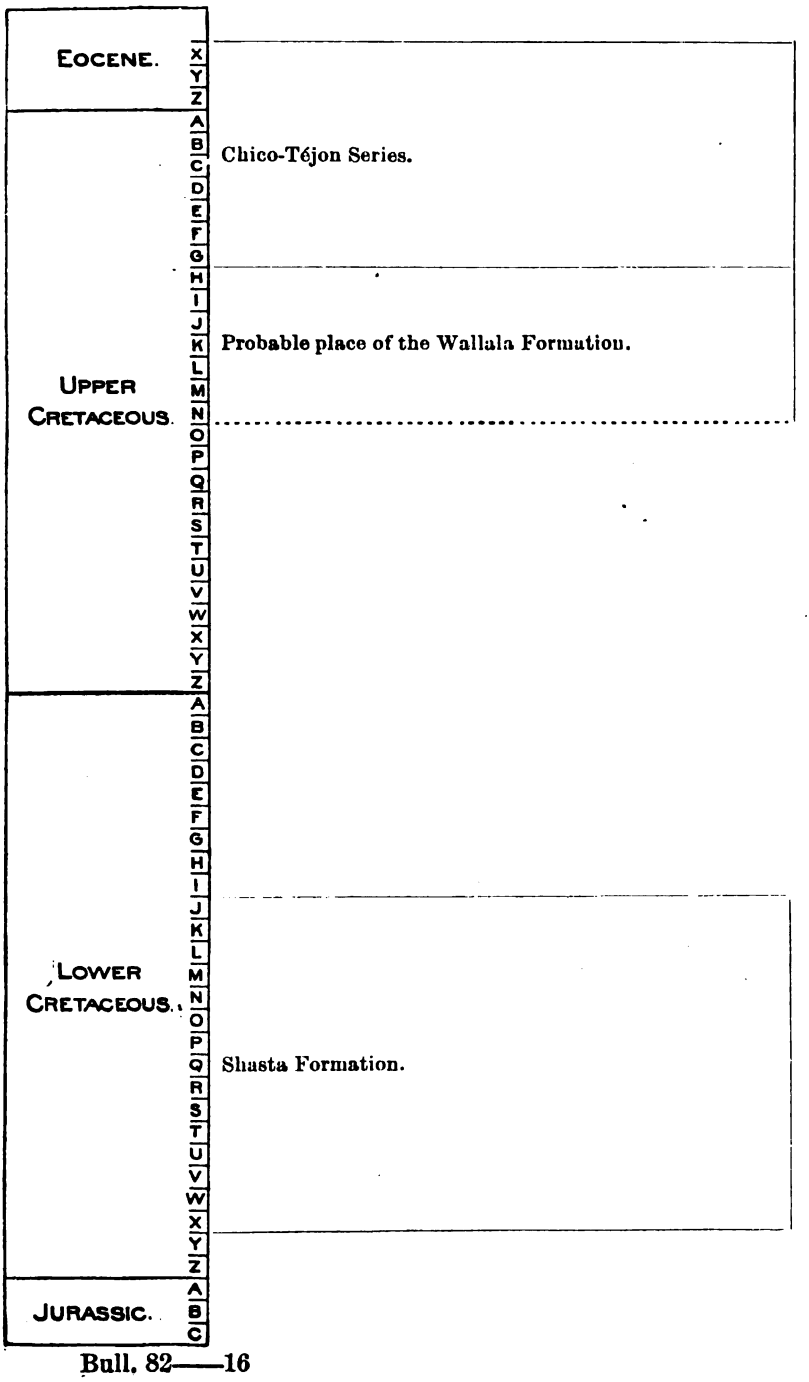
THE CALIFORNIA SECTION.

The opposite table shows the author's present views as to the relative position of the different Cretaceous groups that have been recognized in California. The Chico-Téjon series is thus shown to extend upward from a level that is well down in the Cretaceous scale to one that is much above the base of the Eocene, as has been explained on page 193.

Too little is yet known concerning the character and relative position of the Wallala formation to confidently assign its place in the scale, but its probable place is represented in the table. For remarks upon this group, see page 192.

The lower portion of the Upper, and the upper portion of the Lower, Cretaceous are both understood to be absent from California, but the Shasta formation is believed to occupy a place near the base of the Lower Cretaceous scale, and to be equivalent to the Queen Charlotte formation, as is shown by the table on page 245. For remarks upon this subject, see pages 184, 188.

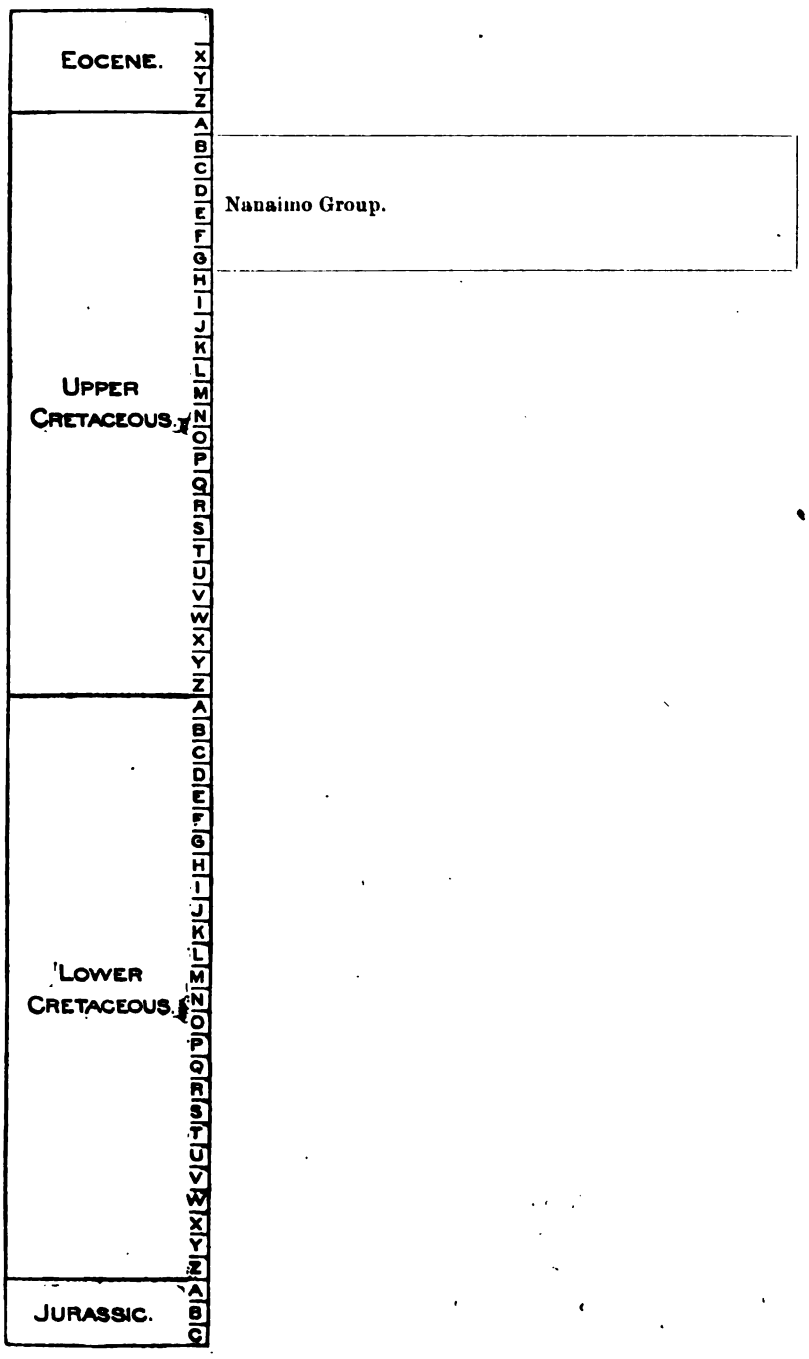
The California Section.



THE NANAIMO SECTION.

The opposite table is presented only for the purpose of representing the position in the scale that the Nanaimo formation, as defined by Dr. G. M. Dawson, and which occurs on Vancouver Island, as well as upon several smaller islands in the adjacent waters of the Gulf of Georgia, is understood to occupy. As is shown by the table, and as stated on preceding pages, those strata are regarded as equivalent to the lower or Chico portion of the Chico-Téjon series of California, which is represented in the immediately preceding table. For remarks concerning the name and characteristics of this formation see page 194.

The Nanaimo Section.

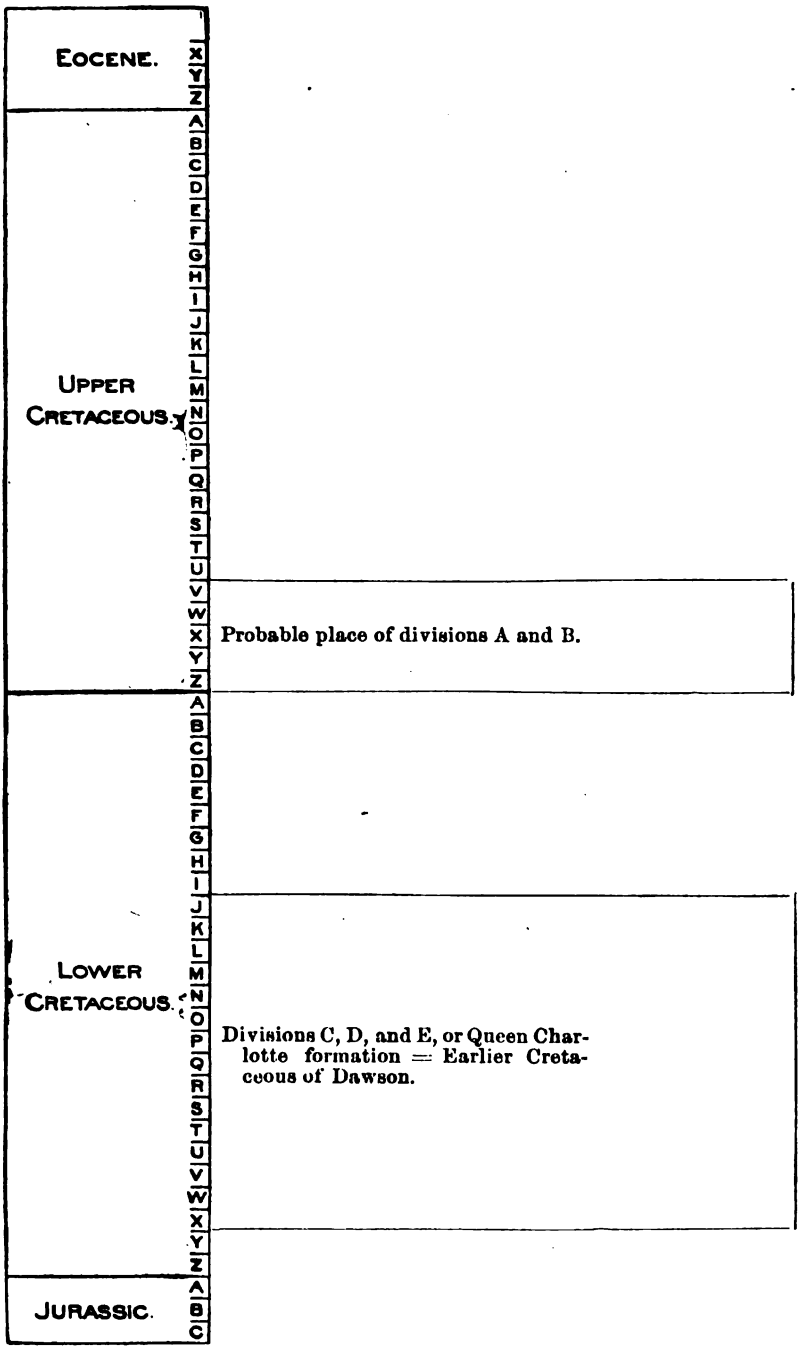


DAWSON'S QUEEN CHARLOTTE ISLANDS SECTION.

Although this is one of the most important Cretaceous sections of the Pacific border region the opposite table shows definitely little more than that the divisions C, D, and E of Dr. G. M. Dawson are regarded as equivalent to the Lower Cretaceous Shasta formation of California, as is shown by the table on page 241, and that divisions A and B probably belong to the base of the Upper Cretaceous.

For references to the Queen Charlotte Islands section, see pages 183, 187, 188, and 189.

Dawson's Queen Charlotte Islands Section.


EOCENE.
X Y Z
UPPER CRETACEOUS.
A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
Probable place of divisions A and B.
LOWER CRETACEOUS.
A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
Divisions C, D, and E, or Queen Charlotte formation = Earlier Cretaceous of Dawson.
JURASSIC.
A B C

The foregoing 18 graduated tables representing the principal published Cretaceous sections of North America are intended to exhibit the relation to one another of the formations which they respectively embrace, their taxonomic position with reference to a recognizable general scale, and the identity with one another of certain of those formations to which different names have been applied by different authors.

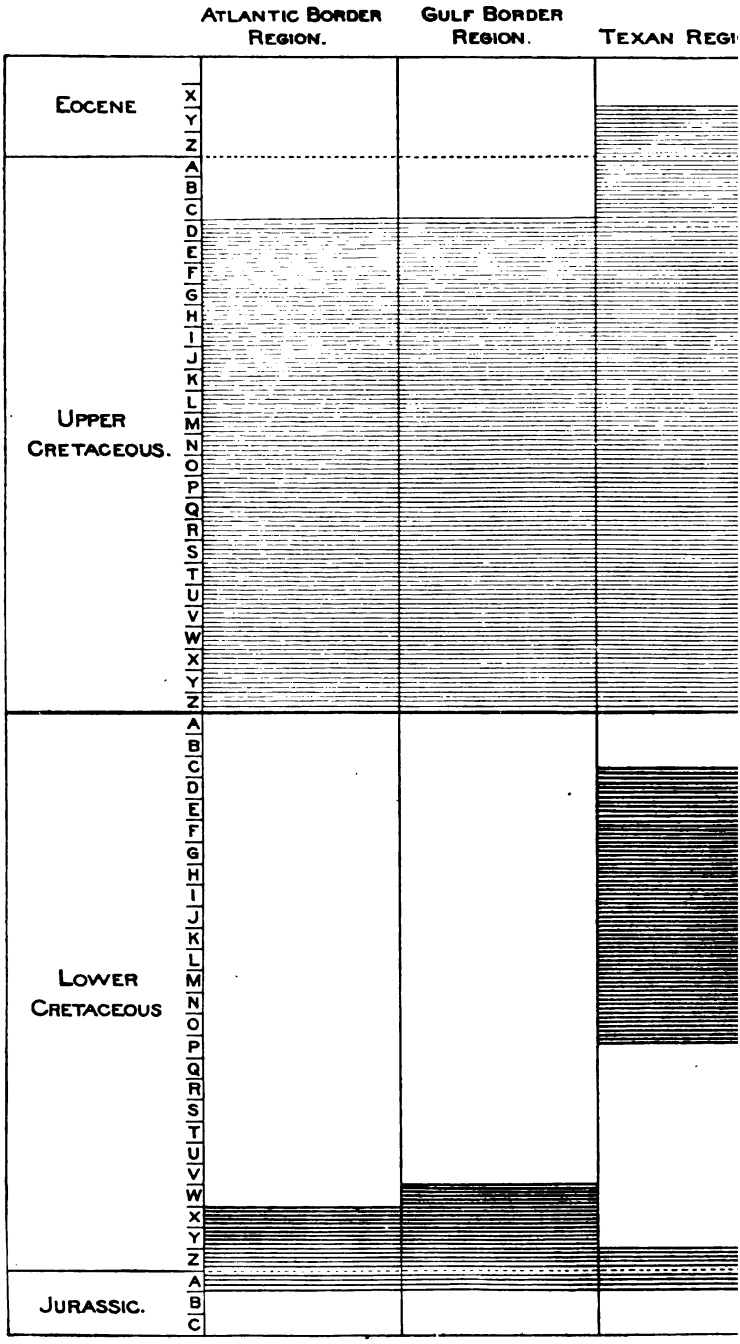
The folded plate opposite (Pl. II), entitled "Summary of the published Cretaceous sections for each region," is intended to represent at a single glance a part of the conclusions that have been expressed in the foregoing tables and to form a visible basis for a few general remarks concerning them. The scale upon which it is constructed is the same as that of the preceding tables. It is divided into seven columns, each respectively bearing the name and representing the full Cretaceous section of one of the seven regions which have been defined and discussed upon preceding pages. The upper and lower dotted lines across the table respectively represent, theoretically, the earlier and later limits of Cretaceous time.

The Cretaceous section of each region, omitting all its subdivisions, is represented in its appropriate column by line-shading. The blank spaces indicate the assumed absence of any strata which would represent those portions of the scale if the section were complete, and the extension of the shading beyond the dotted lines indicates that in those cases certain Cretaceous characteristics have been recognized, or reported to exist, beyond the theoretical time-limit of the system.

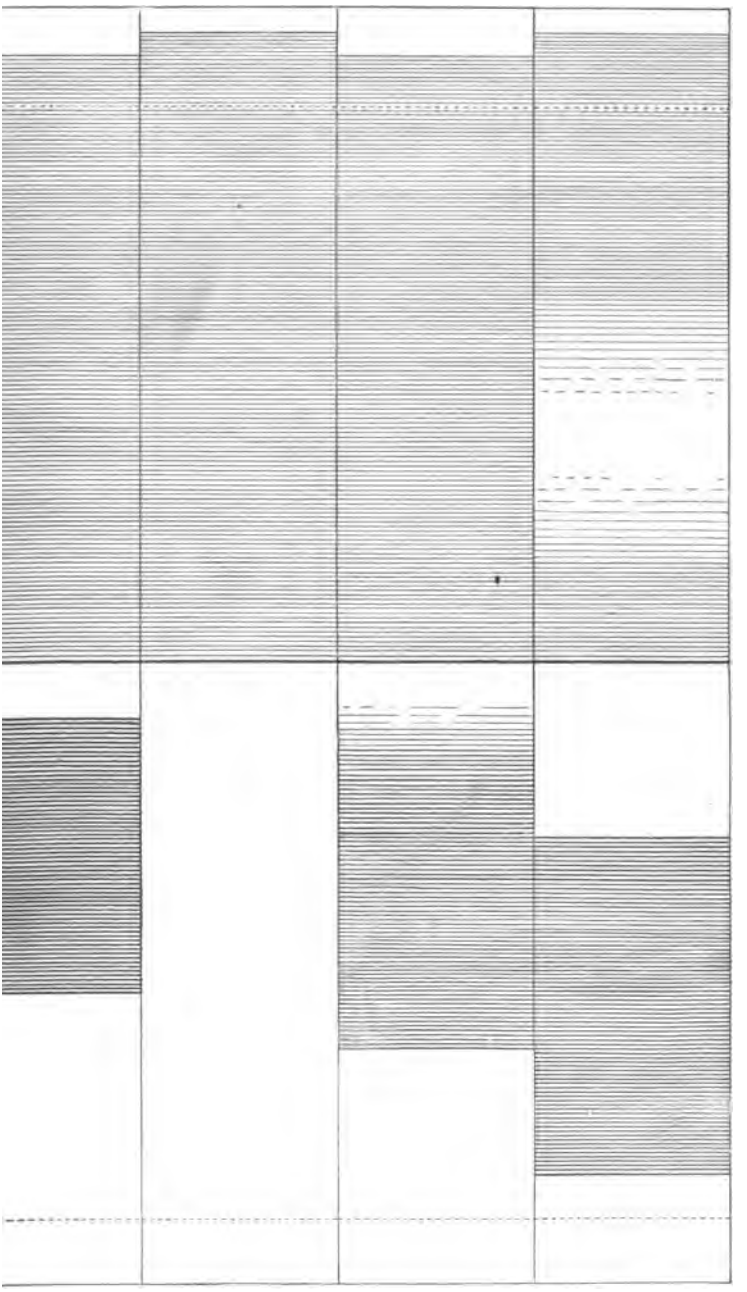
Thus the deposits which occur at the base of the full Cretaceous series in the Atlantic Border, Gulf Border, and Texan regions are represented by the shading in the table as extending below the dotted line into the space assigned to the Jurassic, because certain of the vertebrate and plant remains which those strata contain are reported to possess Jurassic characteristics.

Again, the shading in the columns which respectively represent the Texan, North Mexican, and North Interior regions extends above the upper dotted line into the space assigned to the Eocene. This is in accordance with the view that has been expressed on preceding pages that the Laramie formation which prevails in those regions is properly referable in part to the Eocene and in part to the Cretaceous.

The shading in the columns which represent the South Interior and the Pacific Border regions, respectively, extends still farther into the space assigned to the Eocene than it does in the former cases. In the case of the South Interior region the additional extension represents the Puerco beds which rest upon the Laramie, both of which Prof. Cope has referred to the Cretaceous. The extension of the shading in the column representing the section of the Pacific Border region far up into the space assigned to the Eocene, is in accordance with the evidence that has been given and referred to on the preceding pages that the Chico-Téjon epoch extended from Cretaceous far into Eocene time.


ATLANTIC BORDER REGION.
GULF BORDER REGION.
TEXAN REGI
EOCENE
X
Y
Z
UPPER CRETACEOUS.
A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z
LOWER CRETACEOUS
A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z
JURASSIC.
A
B
C

H MEXICAN REGION | SOUTH INTERIOR REGION. | NORTH INTERIOR REGION | PACIFIC BORDER REGION



3 SECTIONS FOR EACH REGION.

This plate conspicuously illustrates the fact that much the greater part of the Cretaceous deposits of North America are referable to the Upper Cretaceous according to the classification adopted in this memoir and it also shows conspicuously that the base of the Upper Cretaceous in each of the seven sections is referred to one and the same horizon. Because the delimitation of formations and series of formations must from the nature of the case be more or less indefinite, the last-named feature of this table will doubtless strike the observer as unnatural. It should be explained, however, that the opinion indicated by this tabular arrangement of the formations is the result of a somewhat definitely ascertained equivalency of the basal member of the Upper Cretaceous section of each region with that of all the others.

For example the basal formation in both the North and South Interior regions is the Dakota formation, the identity of which in both regions can not be questioned. Evidence has been presented on preceding pages that the basal member of the Texan Upper Cretaceous is equivalent to the Dakota formation, and there are also paleontological indications that the base of the North Mexican Upper Cretaceous belongs to the same horizon. The identity of certain plant remains which are found in the Raritan and Amboy clays of the Atlantic Border region with Dakota species, together with the position of those clays with reference to overlying formations, is thought to be acceptable proof of at least the approximate equivalency of the former to the Dakota formation. The evidence that has been given on preceding pages of the equivalency of the Gulf Border section to those of New Jersey and Eastern Texas, respectively, seems to make it reasonable to refer the basal portion of the Gulf Border Upper Cretaceous also to the horizon of the Dakota formation.

These facts seem to warrant the selection of a common horizon for the base of the Upper Cretaceous in each of the six regions designated, but it can not be denied that the reference of the upper part of Dawson's Queen Charlotte Islands section to the same horizon has been made on comparatively slight evidence.

The horizon of the Dakota formation has been chosen as the base of the North American Upper Cretaceous because its marine representative has been found to blend both paleontologically and stratigraphically with overlying formations the Upper Cretaceous age of which need not be questioned, and because no older formation, which is not plainly referable to a much lower horizon, has yet been recognized. All the formations above and including the Dakota are referred to the Upper Cretaceous because the character of their respective fossil faunas approximately indicates that age and because their paleontological and stratigraphical relation to one another is too intimate to admit of their natural separation. That is, all the time from the beginning to the end of the Upper Cretaceous seems to be represented in North America by a series of formations that was not in any case everywhere completely broken.

HORIZONS OF THE NORTH AMERICAN CRETACEOUS.

The term horizon, aside from its ordinary signification, has been variously used by geologists and paleontologists in its application to their respective branches of investigation. Sometimes this term or others which convey the same idea have been used in a purely biological and sometimes in a purely stratigraphical sense. That is, some paleontologists, confining their studies to a biological basis and prosecuting them with reference to an erroneously assumed uniform rate of the past secular evolution of all organic forms, recognize the vertical or time range of a given class of faunal or floral types of fossil remains as constituting a sufficiently well defined horizon, and confine their work to that class of remains alone, disregarding the time range of all other associated types and paying little or no regard to the structural geology of the region in which their discoveries are made. Again, it has been the habit of some field geologists to recognize horizons only from a physical point of view, and to prosecute their studies in structural geology with little or no reference to paleontology.

While a knowledge of certain important facts may be obtained by each of these exclusive methods they are quite insufficient for the acquirement of the fullest obtainable biological results on the one hand or for acquiring those of general structural geology on the other. Therefore, the recognition of geological horizons for the purposes of general investigation can be rationally made only after due consideration of all obtainable facts relating to them. A rational recognition of geological horizons as an indispensable aid to the comprehensive study of structural geology, while always implying their material existence in definable series of strata, is in all cases based, either directly or indirectly, upon paleontological data. These data, however, are of unequal value, and for obvious reasons preference in such cases should always be given to such of them as relate to the remains of denizens of the waters in which were deposited the strata wherein they are found.

The North American Cretaceous horizons which are thus recognizable differ considerably from one another in their character and scope, some embracing no more than a single well defined formation and some embracing a series of more or less distinctly recognizable formations which, to some degree and in some places, blend with one another both paleontologically and stratigraphically. The former may be designated as simple and the latter as complex horizons. The strata which physically constitute the former are, of course, regarded as having been deposited in a body of water which was geographically unbroken and not materially changed from the beginning to the end of the deposition of the strata which now represent it. The sedimentation by which the formations constituting the latter class of horizons was produced is regarded as not having been everywhere wholly broken or interrupted, although it was at times so largely arrested or modified as to mark off

the great series of strata into more or less readily distinguishable formations. Such arrests or modifications of the sedimentation were accompanied by material changes of the fauna which lived in the waters in which the sedimentation took place, but they were not sufficient to produce at any time and in all places a complete break in the natural genetic succession of the denizens of those waters. The formations constituting the Cretaceous horizons which are discussed in following paragraphs having been produced under diverse conditions, further definition of the term as here employed will necessarily be expressed or implied in the following description of each.[1]

The paleontological and physical characteristics of each horizon naturally convey much information as to the physical conditions which prevailed during the time when and within the area where the deposits which constitute them were accumulated. It is by this means that the respective formations which have been discussed on preceding pages are known to have originated under a wide diversity of conditions, and these facts necessarily have an important bearing upon their paleontological investigation. The value of such facts will be enhanced and their character emphasized by the recognition and study of the horizons which those formations are found to constitute. Furthermore, because the vertical and geographical limits of such horizons are coincident with our attainable knowledge of both the geographical and time limits of faunas and floras, the advantages to be derived from their recognition and study are very important from a biological as well as a geological standpoint.

By most paleontologists the Cretaceous fossils of North America, especially those of aqueous origin, heretofore have been studied only or mainly with reference to the formations which were recognizable within the respective districts where their collections were made, and not with reference to extended horizons throughout which a greater or less proportion of such species are now known to have ranged with only local variations. Furthermore, those authors often failed to recognize the fact that certain species range vertically from one formation to another. One result of such a treatment of the subject has been a great duplication of specific names and a burdensome synonymy in our paleontological literature that might in large part have been avoided by a proper recognition of great horizons as representing both the time and geographical range of specific forms.

I am well aware that objection may be raised to this manner of treating the subject, especially to the great difference in the relative scope of the horizons that have been indicated and are to be briefly discussed on following pages, but I am confident that in future paleontological work upon the North American Cretaceous the recognition of such hori-

[1] It is obvious that the term horizon is herein employed in an unusually extended sense, but even in the absence of a better one it is believed that the idea intended to be conveyed will readily be understood.

zons will be indispensable. Such recognition will enable the paleontologist to correct many of the errors that have been committed either by himself or others and will largely tend to the establishment of both the geology and paleontology of those formations upon a more philosophical basis than heretofore has been recognized.

Eight horizons and two subhorizons have, with sufficient distinctness for separate discussion, been recognized among the North American Cretaceous formations, each of which is more or less clearly distinguishable over a large area, and the following names have been selected to indicate them.

Upper Cretaceous.
- Laramie horizon.
- Chico-Tejon horizon.
- Maritime and interior horizon.
  - Montana subhorizon.
  - Colorado subhorizon.
- Dakota horizon.

Lower Cretaceous.
- Shasta horizon.
- Kootanie horizon.
- Comanche horizon.
- Potomac horizon.

The areas occupied by some of these horizons embrace portions of several of the regions which have been defined and named in this memoir and some are confined to a single region. Some of them plainly succeeded one another in time, but the order of succession of others is not accurately known. Some were probably either wholly or in part contemporaneous with one or more others, but in accordance with the foregoing definition they are treated separately because of their geographical restriction and of their paleontological dissimilarity to any others.

The formations which physically constitute these horizons have been produced under two classes of conditions, a part of them having been marine and a part non-marine or continental. Those of the former class are naturally more uniform than most of the others and, as a rule, they had greater geographical extent. They therefore generally constitute the best and most distinctive horizons, although some of the lacustrine formations are quite as distinctive as are those of marine origin and a part of them have as great geographical extent as have many marine formations. The non-marine formations have various and in some cases quite diverse characteristics, and they also originated under various and diverse conditions. That is, some of the formations of this class were accumulated under littoral, some under estuarine, and some under lacustrine conditions. Some of the latter, as is shown by their molluscan fossils, were accumulated in fresh waters and others in waters that were in part fresh and in part brackish.

The estuarine deposits have naturally been too limited in geographical extent to be profitably discussed as horizons, as that term has been defined for present use, and this is also true to some extent with the littoral deposits. Most of the lacustrine deposits that have been described on preceding pages as pertaining to the North American Cretaceous, however, are remarkable not only for their great geographical

extent but for their general lithological resemblance to marine formations, and the horizons which they represent are among the most important of those which are to be discussed on this occasion.

THE POTOMAC HORIZON.

Those deposits which occur in the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions respectively, and which, in the discussion of those regions, have been assigned to the non-marine division of the Cretaceous series as it is developed there, may be designated as constituting the Potomac horizon; to which may be provisionally added the Trinity formation of the Texan region, but from which the Raritan and Amboy Clays of New Jersey and their equivalents evidently must be excluded. So far as this horizon can now be definitely characterized it consists of the Potomac formation of the Atlantic Border region and the Tuscaloosa formation of the Gulf Border region, together with their known equivalents.

Excluding the Raritan and Amboy Clays of New Jersey and their equivalents on Staten, Long, and Martha's Vineyard Islands and elsewhere, as being of later date, and the Trinity formation of the Texan region as being of doubtful equivalency, the Potomac horizon may be traced from central New Jersey through the Atlantic and Gulf States to northern Mississippi, a distance of fully 1,000 miles.[1] It is true that the deposits which physically constitute it are not now continuously visible along the whole distance mentioned, but there is apparently no reason to doubt that they were originally continuous through the whole of that distance, and they perhaps extended much beyond the limits just indicated.

Although this horizon is traceable for so great a distance, its known geographical extent is approximately linear, because its visible width is everywhere very small. There can be no doubt that its original width was somewhat greater than is now discernible, but the deposits which constitute it having been of littoral and estuarine origin, their width must necessarily always have been small, as compared with that of marine and the larger lacustrine deposits.

The lithological characteristics of the deposits which physically constitute the Potomac horizon have been discussed on preceding pages, but, as has already been intimated, its known paleontological characteristics are few. Because so few paleontological data which might be used to characterize the Potomac horizon are available we rely upon the general evidence of homogeny which it presents throughout its entire extent, and upon its great physical dissimilarity from the deposits which respectively are known to underlie and overlie it. The few paleontological characteristics which the Potomac horizon presents have not given an entirely satisfactory indication of its geological age. For

[1] Deposits belonging to this horizon doubtless extend northward through Tennessee, and probably through Kentucky also.

reasons already stated, however, it is in this memoir provisionally assigned to the base of the Cretaceous system.

The deposits which constitute the Potomac horizon being of nonmarine origin, and those which constitute the next overlying horizon being of true marine origin, the discovery of any direct paleontological relationship could not reasonably be expected. Besides this, the next overlying horizon being of Upper Cretaceous age, there is understood to be a wide time hiatus between them, and there is also a wide time-hiatus between the Potomac horizon and the underlying deposits, the latest of which are regarded as of Triassic age. Therefore this horizon is well defined from both the underlying and overlying horizons. Furthermore, there appear to be no deposits among the other North American Cretaceous formations that are closely similar to the Potomac and its known equivalents, and none which have afforded any evidence of contemporaneity with the latter, with the possible exception of the Kootanie.

In view of the statements that have been made on page 186 concerning the identification of several species of fossil plants in the Kootanie strata of Alberta and Montana, and in the Potomac strata of the Atlantic Border region, the question may be raised whether the Potomac horizon, as it is recognized in this memoir, ought not to include the Kootanie formation, and whether that specific identification of plants does not prove the contemporaneity of the Potomac and Kootanie formations. Neither of these questions, however, is regarded as settled by this discovery for the following, among other, reasons: The horizons which are recognized in this memoir are only those which have, besides their biological characteristics a material existence in strata that were deposited in one continuous, or nowhere wholly broken, body of water. Such a definition will not apply to the case in hand, because it is evident that although the Kootanie may be shown to contain remains of plants which are specifically identical with some found in the Potomac formation, it is certain that the waters in which the two formations were deposited were geographically widely separated. Again the specific identification of fossil plants can not in all cases be accepted as proof of the contemporaneity of origin of the respective formations containing them. For example, it is claimed that five of the species which constitute the flora of the Dakota formation have been identified as members of the flora which characterizes the Laramie. Several species of the latter flora have been published as identical with Belly River forms, several have been recognized in the overlying Green River Tertiary, and three species from the Upper Laramie have been identified with living species.[1] And yet, no one would think of suggesting that the Dakota, Belly River, Laramie, and Green River formations ought to be referred to one and the same hori-

[1] See Ward, Lester F., Synopsis of the Flora of the Laramie Group. Sixth Annual Report U. S. Geol. Surv., pp. 405–557, plates 31–65.

zon, even upon purely paleontological ground, and a suggestion that those formations were contemporaneous in their origin would be too absurd for consideration.

In future studies of the characteristics of the Potomac horizon little aid can be expected from invertebrate fossils because of the paucity of such remains in the deposits which physically constitute it, and because of the comparatively slight value of non-marine invertebrates as indicators of the geological age of the strata containing them. Therefore a knowledge of the paleontological characterization of the deposits which physically constitute the Potomac horizon, and of the upper and lower delimitation of the same must be sought for mainly by means of vertebrate and plant remains, which in all cases ought to be specially studied in connection with stratigraphical details.

THE COMANCHE HORIZON.

While I have in this memoir assigned the Potomac horizon to the base of the Cretaceous system, I have at the same time admitted the incompleteness of the evidence upon that point, and I do not hesitate to admit my inability to indicate more than approximately the taxonomic position of the Comanche horizon, with relation to any of the other North American Lower Cretaceous horizons in the scale which is used in the preceding tables. For example, we do not yet know whether the strata which constitue the Comanche horizon were deposited before, after, or contemporaneously with any given one of the other Lower Cretaceous formations which have been defined on preceding pages; and therefore the relative place which is assigned to each of these formations in the tables referred to must be understood to represent only my present judgment in this case.

So far as is now certainly known, the Comanche horizon is represented only in the Texan and North Mexican regions, and only by the strata which, in connection with the discussion of the geology of those regions, have been described under the head of the Comanche series. The area within which strata of this horizon are now known to occur is about 800 miles across from east to west, and about 500 miles from north to south. It can not be doubted, however, that they extend far southward into the central and southern portions of the Mexican Republic, and it is even probable that they reach their greatest development there.[1] No sufficient evidence has yet been obtained that strata referable to this horizon were ever deposited to the north or east of the Texan region, if we except some inconspicuous outliers that have been reported to exist in southern Kansas.

The Comanche is a purely marine horizon, and for that reason it can not be compared paleontologically with two of the other Lower Cretaceous horizons, namely, the Potomac and Kootanie, which are of non-marine origin. The Shasta horizon, like the Comanche, is physically

[1] See remarks on p. 202 relative to late observations of Prof. Hellprin.

[illegible] strata [illegible] are wholly different from [illegible] a single species having yet been recognized as common to both. The molluscal fauna as a whole of the Comanche horizon appears to [illegible] the entire thickness of the series of strata which constitute it and with a few doubtful exceptions consisting of [illegible] forms none of its species has been found in other formations. The Comanche therefore is paleontologically one of the most distinctly defined horizons that the geologist is likely to encounter on this continent. It is doubtless in all respects with the Comanche series of strata, and its physical definition is quite as clear as its paleontological.

Up to the present time no plant remains have been discovered in any strata of the Comanche horizon, and few, if any, vertebrate remains, even of fishes, have yet been detected. Invertebrate remains other than those of mollusks are also comparatively rare; and it is evident that the paleontological characterization of the horizon must mainly be accomplished by means of its abundant molluscal fauna.

THE KOOTANIE HORIZON.

The Kootanie horizon is represented only by the strata of the Kootanie formation, which now are only known to occur in the North Interior region, where there is evidence that they originally occupied an area many hundred square miles in extent. These strata are of non-marine origin, and their blending with or passage horizontally into, those of marine origin, as the brackish-water strata of the Dakota horizon are understood to do in their southern extension, has not yet been demonstrated, although it seems to be the impression of the Canadian geologists that they thus blend with equivalents of Queen Charlotte strata. It is, however, not unlikely that such a horizontal blending did occur somewhere, but for want of more knowledge upon that point it is now necessary to treat the Kootanie strata as forming a geographically isolated horizon.

The upper and lower delimitation of the Kootanie horizon, both physically and biologically, is in its typical district the same as that of the Kootanie formation, which has been defined on preceding pages. So far as I am aware, no strata of later age than the Carboniferous have yet been reported as underlying it except in the case which is recorded on page 189, where the immediately underlying strata are found to bear certain characteristic fossils of the Shasta horizon, the lower delimitation of the Kootanie in Montana not having yet been clearly defined. No strata of earlier age than those of the Dakota horizon have yet been found to overlie those of the Kootanie, and these are reported to lie conformably with them in Alberta. Still, the paleontological characteristics of each of these horizons is such that it is necessary to assume that there is an important time-hiatus between them.

Very few invertebrate fossils have yet been found in strata of the Kootanie horizon, and if more were found they would probably be of

little value in its characterization, because the differentiation incident to the secular evolution of non-marine invertebrates has been so slight as compared with that of marine invertebrates. No vertebrate fossils have yet been reported from Kootanie strata, the most important fossils yet discovered being those of plants, upon the character of which, together with their contrast with those of the overlying Dakota horizon, they have been referred to the Lower Cretaceous. It ought to be remarked in this connection that the identity of the Alberta and Montana Kootanie deposits having been assumed only upon the evidence afforded by the specific identity of fossil plants, they may have been simultaneously formed in separate bodies of water. This being true would not necessarily disprove their identical taxonomic position, but it would make the Kootanie, as now understood, a paleontologically and not a physically, continuous horizon.

There is no apparent reason why an important vertebrate fauna may not yet be discovered in the strata of this horizon, but at present we must rely almost alone upon its flora for its paleontological characterization.

The importance of this horizon is not confined to its taxonomic relation to the other horizons herein discussed, nor to its paleontologoical relation to them. It ought to be studied as representing one of the phases of development of the present North American continent and as one of the series of remarkable continental conditions that existed from time to time from the beginning to the end of the Mesozoic era.

THE SHASTA HORIZON.

The Shasta horizon embraces all the strata in the Pacific Border region which have been referred to the Lower Cretaceous. The best known and most characteristic exposures of the strata of this horizon are those which have been described on preceding pages under the head of the Shasta formation of California and of the Queen Charlotte formation of British Columbia. The Shasta formation, as it is developed in California, consists of two divisions, which are found to differ from each other paleontologically; but it is now known that a sufficient number of fossil forms are common to equivalents of both divisions which occur in other parts of the region to warrant the placing of both of them in one and the same general horizon. Again, because divisions "C" and "E" of the Queen Charlotte section contain certain identical fossils, they are both referred to one and the same great horizon, notwithstanding the presence between them of the eruptive formation "D" of the same section.[1] That is, while these strata and their fossil contents constitute one great horizon it is to be expected that within certain districts more or less distinct paleontological stages may be recognized within the full vertical range of the strata which physically con-

[1] See page 188.

attitude the whole horizon. This practically has been done in the recognition of the Horsetown and Knoxville divisions of the Shasta group, and that condition indicates some degree of complexity for this horizon as compared with the simpler ones.

The most constant and most widely distributed of the fossil forms which characterize the Shasta horizon is the variable *Aucella* which in my writings I have generally referred to the *A. concentrica* of Keyserling, but it is likely that when the fossils of the whole horizon come to be duly studied and arranged it will be found that other species also have so wide a geographical range as to be equally valuable for such general use.

[illegible]

any, of these are of any paleontological value. The presence of important coal beds, however, indicates that vegetation was abundant during the epoch in which these strata were deposited, and it is not improbable that collections of fossil plants of taxonomic value may yet be obtained.

The strata of the whole horizon are, however, almost entirely of marine origin, and because of the paucity of vertebrate and plant remains we must doubtless rely upon invertebrate fossils for its paleontological characterization. These at present show a very wide, and apparently an entire, faunal difference between the Shasta and Comanche horizons, although their geographical separation is not very great toward the south. The other Lower Cretaceous horizons having been of non-marine origin the paleontological difference between them and the Shasta horizon is necessarily very great.

THE DAKOTA HORIZON.

The Dakota horizon, as I now recognize it, is represented only by the Dakota formation, which, as a distinct formation, is known only in the interior parts of the continent. It is believed that certain strata at the base of the Upper Cretaceous series in the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions represent this horizon taxonomically, and, being confident that it is represented by certain marine strata at the base of the Upper Cretaceous of the Texan and North Mexican regions, I have so treated those strata in this memoir.[1] It is, however, only the non-marine Dakota formation proper that I shall consider as physically constituting the Dakota horizon, and its real or supposed marine equivalents will be considered in connection with the strata which pertain to the great complex Maritime and Interior horizon. Therefore, the description of the Dakota formation which has already been given[2] is a description of the Dakota horizon as it is physically constituted.

The Dakota horizon is regarded as constituting the base of the Upper Cretaceous, but the deposition of its strata is not known to have immediately succeeded that of any of those which are herein referred to Lower Cretaceous. It is true that strata referred by Dr. Dawson conformably overlie the Kootanie in western Alberta, but he is apparently not yet satisfied that certain of those strata which intervene between the characteristic underlying Kootanie and the overlying Dakota do not represent all the intervening time between those epochs. Marine equivalents of Dakota strata rest upon those of the Comanche horizon in the Texan region, and elsewhere the characteristic strata of the Dakota horizon have been found to rest upon both Jurassic and Paleozoic rocks. Therefore, while the base of the Dakota formation apparently everywhere represents the beginning of the sedimentation which produced it, the lower delimitation of the horizon is, in different districts, by formations

[1] See page 122.

[2] See pages 159 and 171.

stitute the whole horizon. This practically has been done in the recognition of the Horsetown and Knoxville divisions of the Shasta group, and that condition indicates some degree of complexity for this horizon as compared with the simpler ones.

The most constant and most widely distributed of the fossil forms which characterize the Shasta horizon is the variable *Aucella* which in my writings I have generally referred to the *A. concentrica* of Keyserling, but it is likely that when the fossils of the whole horizon come to be fully studied and catalogued it will be found that other species also have so wide a geographical range as to be equally valuable for such general use.

By means of its characteristic fossils the Shasta horizon has been recognized at numerous places in the Pacific Border region from central California to its northern boundary and from there to points within the Arctic Circle, and also upon the peninsula of Alaska and adjacent islands; but at only one point are its strata yet known to have extended eastward within the designated limits of the Great Interior area.[1] If, however, we accept the *Aucella* that has been referred to as indicating the presence of strata belonging to this horizon, it is circumpolar in its extension,[2] and prevails over large areas in northern Europe and northern Asia.[3] Only the North American strata which have been referred to the Shasta horizon will, however, be considered in this memoir.

The lower delimitation of the Shasta horizon is a matter of uncertainty, because there is plainly a wide time-hiatus between its earliest known strata and the latest of those upon which they are found to rest, which are regarded as of Triassic age, and also because we do not yet know whether the earliest known strata of this horizon are the earliest that anywhere pertain to it. We also do not know whether the earliest known strata of the Shasta horizon represent the beginning of Cretaceous time in North America, but it is my present opinion that they represent a somewhat later epoch than the earliest one.

The upper delimitation of the Shasta horizon is also a matter of uncertainty because we do not yet know that any of the later Cretaceous strata which have been found resting upon those pertaining to this horizon immediately succeeded them in time. In California the earliest overlying strata seem to be of Upper Cretaceous age; and the local superposition of Kootanie upon Queen Charlotte strata[4] is the only known case of other Lower Cretaceous strata resting upon those of this horizon.

So far as I am aware no vertebrate remains have yet been found in strata referable to this horizon. Numerous fragments of wood and of other plant remains have been found at various localities, but few, if

[1] See page 189.
[2] See Monog. U. S. Geol. Surv., vol. 13, pp. 227, 228.
[3] See foot note on page 185 for reference to the probable discovery of this *Aucella* in southern Mexico.
[4] See page 189.

any, of these are of any paleontological value. The presence of important coal beds, however, indicates that vegetation was abundant during the epoch in which these strata were deposited, and it is not improbable that collections of fossil plants of taxonomic value may yet be obtained.

The strata of the whole horizon are, however, almost entirely of marine origin, and because of the paucity of vertebrate and plant remains we must doubtless rely upon invertebrate fossils for its paleontological characterization. These at present show a very wide, and apparently an entire, faunal difference between the Shasta and Comanche horizons, although their geographical separation is not very great toward the south. The other Lower Cretaceous horizons having been of non-marine origin the paleontological difference between them and the Shasta horizon is necessarily very great.

THE DAKOTA HORIZON.

The Dakota horizon, as I now recognize it, is represented only by the Dakota formation, which, as a distinct formation, is known only in the interior parts of the continent. It is believed that certain strata at the base of the Upper Cretaceous series in the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions represent this horizon taxonomically, and, being confident that it is represented by certain marine strata at the base of the Upper Cretaceous of the Texan and North Mexican regions, I have so treated those strata in this memoir.[1] It is, however, only the non-marine Dakota formation proper that I shall consider as physically constituting the Dakota horizon, and its real or supposed marine equivalents will be considered in connection with the strata which pertain to the great complex Maritime and Interior horizon. Therefore, the description of the Dakota formation which has already been given[2] is a description of the Dakota horizon as it is physically constituted.

The Dakota horizon is regarded as constituting the base of the Upper Cretaceous, but the deposition of its strata is not known to have immediately succeeded that of any of those which are herein referred to Lower Cretaceous. It is true that strata referred by Dr. Dawson conformably overlie the Kootanie in western Alberta, but he is apparently not yet satisfied that certain of those strata which intervene between the characteristic underlying Kootanie and the overlying Dakota do not represent all the intervening time between those epochs. Marine equivalents of Dakota strata rest upon those of the Comanche horizon in the Texan region, and elsewhere the characteristic strata of the Dakota horizon have been found to rest upon both Jurassic and Paleozoic rocks. Therefore, while the base of the Dakota formation apparently everywhere represents the beginning of the sedimentation which produced it, the lower delimitation of the horizon is, in different districts, by formations

[1] See page 122.

[2] See pages 159 and 171.

of widely different ages. Its upper delimitation, where any strata have been found to rest upon it, is always by the marine Upper Cretaceous strata of the Colorado formation and of its equivalents.

The character of the strata which constitute the Dakota horizon is such as to indicate conditions favorable to vertebrate life during their deposition, but they have yet furnished few or no vertebrate fossils. Invertebrate fossils also are rare, and, being of non-marine origin, they are of little value as indicating the geological age of the strata which bear them. At present, therefore, we must rely almost alone upon fossil plants for the paleontological characterization of this horizon; and, in this, great caution is necessary because several of its species have already been identified in later horizons.[1]

Although this horizon is now known to occupy a position at what in this memoir is treated as the base of the Upper Cretaceous, certain paleontologists have insisted on referring it to the Tertiary because of the character of its flora.[2] While, therefore, this flora as a whole may be relied upon to distinguish the horizon,[3] a true understanding of its geological age has been arrived at only by means of its ascertained stratigraphical relation to other formations, the age of which has been determined by their invertebrate marine fossils.

THE MARITIME AND INTERIOR HORIZON.

This is one of the most important of the North American Cretaceous horizons, because of its great geographical extent and because it comprises the greater part of the Upper Cretaceous strata of the interior and eastern portions of the continent. Some of the other horizons are simple or they embrace only one recognizable formation, but this, the most complex of them all, embraces several formations, each of which is characterized by certain stratigraphical and paleontological peculiarities. Still all of those formations are more or less directly connected by the ranging of certain species of fossil mollusks from one to another, except where this great horizon becomes differentiated and finally divided into two subhorizons, as will presently be shown. That is, while certain formations are distinguishable, no complete biological break took place within the vertical range of the series of strata which represents this horizon in the two eastern maritime regions, namely, the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions; but the upper and lower portions of the series which represent it in the Great Interior area are respectively characterized by a greater degree of paleontological difference than obtains between any of the other distinguishable formations. Therefore

[1] See Ward's tables, Sixth Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Survey, pp. 443–514.

[2] See pages 36 and 70.

[3] There is now passing through the press an important work, entitled "The Flora of the Dakota Group," which flora is shown to consist of 460 known species, the larger part of them being published *therein for* the first time. See Mon. U. S. Geol. Survey, vol. 17, pp. 1–400, pls. I–LXVI. A posthumous work by Leo Lesquereux, edited by F. H. Knowlton.

those upper and lower portions of this great horizon are, in that part of the continent, respectively designated as subhorizons.

The strata which constitute this great horizon are all of marine origin. Those which represent it in the Atlantic Border region are the New Jersey marl beds and their equivalents, and those which represent it in the Gulf Border region are the Rotten limestone and the Ripley formations, all of which have been defined on preceding pages. In the eastern part of the Texan region this horizon is represented by all the Upper Cretaceous formations, from the top of the Ripley down to the base of the Eagle Ford formation, inclusive. To these should doubtless be added the Timber Creek formation, which, although regarded as the time representative of the Dakota, is of marine origin and paleontologically related to the formations which immediately overlie it. In the western part of the Texan region and in the North Mexican region this horizon is represented by all the Upper Cretaceous strata which are now known to occur there between the top of the Comanche and the base of the Laramie horizon. In the South Interior region the Colorado and Montana formations constitute the full equivalent of all the Upper Cretaceous strata just referred to, and while they were evidently produced by continuous sedimentation from the lower to the higher of these two formations, their paleontological relation to each other seems less intimate than is the relation to one another of the formations which constitute the full horizon in the more southern and eastern regions.

Upon going northward into the North Interior region we find the Colorado and Montana formations to be as well developed there as they are in the South Interior region, and also that the before-mentioned paleontological difference between them continues, but it does not increase to such an extent as to materially change the faunal character of each of those great formations. Furthermore, upon passing the northern boundary of the United States we find that the interposition of the non-marine Belly River between the Colorado and Montana formations, in quite a large district there, has divided the great horizon into the two subhorizons which have just been referred to, the lower being represented by the Colorado and the upper by the Montana formation. They are designated as subhorizons because they are so separated, and are not treated as distinct horizons because each portion there largely retains the paleontological features that characterize it farther southward and eastward, where the two portions are in conformable contact, where their paleontological relation to each other is recognizable, and where their lithological character indicates that they were produced by continuous sedimentation from the lower to the higher strata.

The geographical extent, the vertical range, and the stratigraphical diversity of this complex horizon, as it has just been defined, are so great that it is difficult to characterize it as a whole. It is, however, treated

reasons already stated, however, it is in this memoir provisionally assigned to the base of the Cretaceous system.

The deposits which constitute the Potomac horizon being of nonmarine origin, and those which constitute the next overlying horizon being of true marine origin, the discovery of any direct paleontological relationship could not reasonably be expected. Besides this, the next overlying horizon being of Upper Cretaceous age, there is understood to be a wide time hiatus between them, and there is also a wide time-hiatus between the Potomac horizon and the underlying deposits, the latest of which are regarded as of Triassic age. Therefore this horizon is well defined from both the underlying and overlying horizons. Furthermore, there appear to be no deposits among the other North American Cretaceous formations that are closely similar to the Potomac and its known equivalents, and none which have afforded any evidence of contemporaneity with the latter, with the possible exception of the Kootanie.

In view of the statements that have been made on page 186 concerning the identification of several species of fossil plants in the Kootanie strata of Alberta and Montana, and in the Potomac strata of the Atlantic Border region, the question may be raised whether the Potomac horizon, as it is recognized in this memoir, ought not to include the Kootanie formation, and whether that specific identification of plants does not prove the contemporaneity of the Potomac and Kootanie formations. Neither of these questions, however, is regarded as settled by this discovery for the following, among other, reasons: The horizons which are recognized in this memoir are only those which have, besides their biological characteristics a material existence in strata that were deposited in one continuous, or nowhere wholly broken, body of water. Such a definition will not apply to the case in hand, because it is evident that although the Kootanie may be shown to contain remains of plants which are specifically identical with some found in the Potomac formation, it is certain that the waters in which the two formations were deposited were geographically widely separated. Again the specific identification of fossil plants can not in all cases be accepted as proof of the contemporaneity of origin of the respective formations containing them. For example, it is claimed that five of the species which constitute the flora of the Dakota formation have been identified as members of the flora which characterizes the Laramie. Several species of the latter flora have been published as identical with Belly River forms, several have been recognized in the overlying Green River Tertiary, and three species from the Upper Laramie have been identified with living species.[1] And yet, no one would think of suggesting that the Dakota, Belly River, Laramie, and Green River formations ought to be referred to one and the same hori-

[1] See Ward, Lester F., Synopsis of the Flora of the Laramie Group. Sixth Annual Report U. S. Geol. Surv., pp. 405–557, plates 31–65.

zon, even upon purely paleontological ground, and a suggestion that those formations were contemporaneous in their origin would be too absurd for consideration.

In future studies of the characteristics of the Potomac horizon little aid can be expected from invertebrate fossils because of the paucity of such remains in the deposits which physically constitute it, and because of the comparatively slight value of non-marine invertebrates as indicators of the geological age of the strata containing them. Therefore a knowledge of the paleontological characterization of the deposits which physically constitute the Potomac horizon, and of the upper and lower delimitation of the same must be sought for mainly by means of vertebrate and plant remains, which in all cases ought to be specially studied in connection with stratigraphical details.

THE COMANCHE HORIZON.

While I have in this memoir assigned the Potomac horizon to the base of the Cretaceous system, I have at the same time admitted the incompleteness of the evidence upon that point, and I do not hesitate to admit my inability to indicate more than approximately the taxonomic position of the Comanche horizon, with relation to any of the other North American Lower Cretaceous horizons in the scale which is used in the preceding tables. For example, we do not yet know whether the strata which constitue the Comanche horizon were deposited before, after, or contemporaneously with any given one of the other Lower Cretaceous formations which have been defined on preceding pages; and therefore the relative place which is assigned to each of these formations in the tables referred to must be understood to represent only my present judgment in this case.

So far as is now certainly known, the Comanche horizon is represented only in the Texan and North Mexican regions, and only by the strata which, in connection with the discussion of the geology of those regions, have been described under the head of the Comanche series. The area within which strata of this horizon are now known to occur is about 800 miles across from east to west, and about 500 miles from north to south. It can not be doubted, however, that they extend far southward into the central and southern portions of the Mexican Republic, and it is even probable that they reach their greatest development there.[1] No sufficient evidence has yet been obtained that strata referable to this horizon were ever deposited to the north or east of the Texan region, if we except some inconspicuous outliers that have been reported to exist in southern Kansas.

The Comanche is a purely marine horizon, and for that reason it can not be compared paleontologically with two of the other Lower Cretaceous horizons, namely, the Potomac and Kootanie, which are of non-marine origin. The Shasta horizon, like the Comanche, is physically

[1] See remarks on p. 202 relative to late observations of Prof. Hellprin.

represented by marine strata, but their faunas are wholly different from each other, not a single species having yet been recognized as common to both. The molluscan fauna as a whole of the Comanche horizon appears to range through the entire thickness of the series of strata which constitute it, and with a few doubtful exceptions consisting of ostreid forms, none of its species has been found in other formations. The Comanche, therefore, is paleontologically one of the most distinctly defined horizons that the geologist is likely to encounter on this continent. It is identical in all respects with the Comanche series of strata, and its physical definition is quite as clear as its paleontological.

Up to the present time no plant remains have been discovered in any strata of the Comanche horizon, and few, if any, vertebrate remains, even of fishes, have yet been detected. Invertebrate remains, other than those of mollusks, are also comparatively rare; and it is evident that the paleontological characterization of the horizon must mainly be accomplished by means of its abundant molluscan fauna.

THE KOOTANIE HORIZON.

The Kootanie horizon is represented only by the strata of the Kootanie formation, which now are only known to occur in the North Interior region, where there is evidence that they originally occupied an area many hundred square miles in extent. These strata are of non-marine origin, and their blending with, or passage horizontally into, those of marine origin, as the non-marine strata of the Dakota horizon are understood to do in their southern extension, has not yet been demonstrated, although it seems to be the impression of the Canadian geologists that they thus blend with equivalents of Queen Charlotte strata. It is, however, not unlikely that such a horizontal blending did occur somewhere, but for want of more knowledge upon that point it is now necessary to treat the Kootanie strata as forming a geographically isolated horizon.

The upper and lower delimitation of the Kootanie horizon, both physically and biologically, is in its typical district the same as that of the Kootanie formation, which has been defined on preceding pages. So far as I am aware, no strata of later age than the Carboniferous have yet been reported as underlying it except in the case which is recorded on page 189, where the immediately underlying strata are found to bear certain characteristic fossils of the Shasta horizon, the lower delimitation of the Kootanie in Montana not having yet been clearly defined. No strata of earlier age than those of the Dakota horizon have yet been found to overlie those of the Kootanie, and these are reported to lie conformably with them in Alberta. Still, the paleontological characteristics of each of these horizons is such that it is necessary to assume that there is an important time-hiatus between them.

Very few invertebrate fossils have yet been found in strata of the Kootanie horizon, and if more were found they would probably be of

little value in its characterization, because the differentiation incident to the secular evolution of non-marine invertebrates has been so slight as compared with that of marine invertebrates. No vertebrate fossils have yet been reported from Kootanie strata, the most important fossils yet discovered being those of plants, upon the character of which, together with their contrast with those of the overlying Dakota horizon, they have been referred to the Lower Cretaceous. It ought to be remarked in this connection that the identity of the Alberta and Montana Kootanie deposits having been assumed only upon the evidence afforded by the specific identity of fossil plants, they may have been simultaneously formed in separate bodies of water. This being true would not necessarily disprove their identical taxonomic position, but it would make the Kootanie, as now understood, a paleontologically and not a physically, continuous horizon.

There is no apparent reason why an important vertebrate fauna may not yet be discovered in the strata of this horizon, but at present we must rely almost alone upon its flora for its paleontological characterization.

The importance of this horizon is not confined to its taxonomic relation to the other horizons herein discussed, nor to its paleontologoical relation to them. It ought to be studied as representing one of the phases of development of the present North American continent and as one of the series of remarkable continental conditions that existed from time to time from the beginning to the end of the Mesozoic era.

THE SHASTA HORIZON.

The Shasta horizon embraces all the strata in the Pacific Border region which have been referred to the Lower Cretaceous. The best known and most characteristic exposures of the strata of this horizon are those which have been described on preceding pages under the head of the Shasta formation of California and of the Queen Charlotte formation of British Columbia. The Shasta formation, as it is developed in California, consists of two divisions, which are found to differ from each other paleontologically; but it is now known that a sufficient number of fossil forms are common to equivalents of both divisions which occur in other parts of the region to warrant the placing of both of them in one and the same general horizon. Again, because divisions "C" and "E" of the Queen Charlotte section contain certain identical fossils, they are both referred to one and the same great horizon, notwithstanding the presence between them of the eruptive formation "D" of the same section.[1] That is, while these strata and their fossil contents constitute one great horizon it is to be expected that within certain districts more or less distinct paleontological stages may be recognized within the full vertical range of the strata which physically con-

[1] See page 188.

stitute the whole horizon. This practically has been done in the recognition of the Horsetown and Knoxville divisions of the Shasta group, and that condition indicates some degree of complexity for this horizon as compared with the simpler ones.

The most constant and most widely distributed of the fossil forms which characterize the Shasta horizon is the variable *Aucella* which in my writings I have generally referred to the *A. concentrica* of Keyserling, but it is likely that when the fossils of the whole horizon come to be fully studied and catalogued it will be found that other species also have so wide a geographical range as to be equally valuable for such general use.

By means of its characteristic fossils the Shasta horizon has been recognized at numerous places in the Pacific Border region from central California to its northern boundary and from there to points within the Arctic Circle, and also upon the peninsula of Alaska and adjacent islands; but at only one point are its strata yet known to have extended eastward within the designated limits of the Great Interior area.[1] If, however, we accept the *Aucella* that has been referred to as indicating the presence of strata belonging to this horizon, it is circumpolar in its extension,[2] and prevails over large areas in northern Europe and northern Asia.[3] Only the North American strata which have been referred to the Shasta horizon will, however, be considered in this memoir.

The lower delimitation of the Shasta horizon is a matter of uncertainty, because there is plainly a wide time-hiatus between its earliest known strata and the latest of those upon which they are found to rest, which are regarded as of Triassic age, and also because we do not yet know whether the earliest known strata of this horizon are the earliest that anywhere pertain to it. We also do not know whether the earliest known strata of the Shasta horizon represent the beginning of Cretaceous time in North America, but it is my present opinion that they represent a somewhat later epoch than the earliest one.

The upper delimitation of the Shasta horizon is also a matter of uncertainty because we do not yet know that any of the later Cretaceous strata which have been found resting upon those pertaining to this horizon immediately succeeded them in time. In California the earliest overlying strata seem to be of Upper Cretaceous age; and the local superposition of Kootanie upon Queen Charlotte strata[4] is the only known case of other Lower Cretaceous strata resting upon those of this horizon.

So far as I am aware no vertebrate remains have yet been found in strata referable to this horizon. Numerous fragments of wood and of other plant remains have been found at various localities, but few, if

[1] See page 189.
[2] See Monog. U. S. Geol. Surv., vol. 13, pp. 227, 228.
[3] See foot note on page 185 for reference to the probable discovery of this *Aucella* in southern Mexico.
[4] See page 189.

any, of these are of any paleontological value. The presence of important coal beds, however, indicates that vegetation was abundant during the epoch in which these strata were deposited, and it is not improbable that collections of fossil plants of taxonomic value may yet be obtained.

The strata of the whole horizon are, however, almost entirely of marine origin, and because of the paucity of vertebrate and plant remains we must doubtless rely upon invertebrate fossils for its paleontological characterization. These at present show a very wide, and apparently an entire, faunal difference between the Shasta and Comanche horizons, although their geographical separation is not very great toward the south. The other Lower Cretaceous horizons having been of non-marine origin the paleontological difference between them and the Shasta horizon is necessarily very great.

THE DAKOTA HORIZON.

The Dakota horizon, as I now recognize it, is represented only by the Dakota formation, which, as a distinct formation, is known only in the interior parts of the continent. It is believed that certain strata at the base of the Upper Cretaceous series in the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions represent this horizon taxonomically, and, being confident that it is represented by certain marine strata at the base of the Upper Cretaceous of the Texan and North Mexican regions, I have so treated those strata in this memoir.[1] It is, however, only the non-marine Dakota formation proper that I shall consider as physically constituting the Dakota horizon, and its real or supposed marine equivalents will be considered in connection with the strata which pertain to the great complex Maritime and Interior horizon. Therefore, the description of the Dakota formation which has already been given[2] is a description of the Dakota horizon as it is physically constituted.

The Dakota horizon is regarded as constituting the base of the Upper Cretaceous, but the deposition of its strata is not known to have immediately succeeded that of any of those which are herein referred to Lower Cretaceous. It is true that strata referred by Dr. Dawson conformably overlie the Kootanie in western Alberta, but he is apparently not yet satisfied that certain of those strata which intervene between the characteristic underlying Kootanie and the overlying Dakota do not represent all the intervening time between those epochs. Marine equivalents of Dakota strata rest upon those of the Comanche horizon in the Texan region, and elsewhere the characteristic strata of the Dakota horizon have been found to rest upon both Jurassic and Paleozoic rocks. Therefore, while the base of the Dakota formation apparently everywhere represents the beginning of the sedimentation which produced it, the lower delimitation of the horizon is, in different districts, by formations

[1] See page 122.

[2] See pages 159 and 171.

of widely different ages. Its upper delimitation, where any strata have been found to rest upon it, is always by the marine Upper Cretaceous strata of the Colorado formation and of its equivalents.

The character of the strata which constitute the Dakota horizon is such as to indicate conditions favorable to vertebrate life during their deposition, but they have yet furnished few or no vertebrate fossils. Invertebrate fossils also are rare, and, being of non-marine origin, they are of little value as indicating the geological age of the strata which bear them. At present, therefore, we must rely almost alone upon fossil plants for the paleontological characterization of this horizon; and, in this, great caution is necessary because several of its species have already been identified in later horizons.[1]

Although this horizon is now known to occupy a position at what in this memoir is treated as the base of the Upper Cretaceous, certain paleontologists have insisted on referring it to the Tertiary because of the character of its flora.[2] While, therefore, this flora as a whole may be relied upon to distinguish the horizon,[3] a true understanding of its geological age has been arrived at only by means of its ascertained stratigraphical relation to other formations, the age of which has been determined by their invertebrate marine fossils.

THE MARITIME AND INTERIOR HORIZON.

This is one of the most important of the North American Cretaceous horizons, because of its great geographical extent and because it comprises the greater part of the Upper Cretaceous strata of the interior and eastern portions of the continent. Some of the other horizons are simple or they embrace only one recognizable formation, but this, the most complex of them all, embraces several formations, each of which is characterized by certain stratigraphical and paleontological peculiarities. Still all of those formations are more or less directly connected by the ranging of certain species of fossil mollusks from one to another, except where this great horizon becomes differentiated and finally divided into two subhorizons, as will presently be shown. That is, while certain formations are distinguishable, no complete biological break took place within the vertical range of the series of strata which represents this horizon in the two eastern maritime regions, namely, the Atlantic and Gulf Border regions; but the upper and lower portions of the series which represent it in the Great Interior area are respectively characterized by a greater degree of paleontological difference than obtains between any of the other distinguishable formations. Therefore

[1] See Ward's tables, Sixth Ann. Rep. U. S. Geol. Survey, pp. 443-514.

[2] See pages 36 and 70.

[3] There is now passing through the press an important work, entitled "The Flora of the Dakota Group," which flora is shown to consist of 460 known species, the larger part of them being published therein for the first time. See Mon. U. S. Geol. Survey, vol. 17, pp. 1-400, pls. I-LXVI. A posthumous work by Leo Lesquereux, edited by F. H. Knowlton.

those upper and lower portions of this great horizon are, in that part of the continent, respectively designated as subhorizons.

The strata which constitute this great horizon are all of marine origin. Those which represent it in the Atlantic Border region are the New Jersey marl beds and their equivalents, and those which represent it in the Gulf Border region are the Rotten limestone and the Ripley formations, all of which have been defined on preceding pages. In the eastern part of the Texan region this horizon is represented by all the Upper Cretaceous formations, from the top of the Ripley down to the base of the Eagle Ford formation, inclusive. To these should doubtless be added the Timber Creek formation, which, although regarded as the time representative of the Dakota, is of marine origin and paleontologically related to the formations which immediately overlie it. In the western part of the Texan region and in the North Mexican region this horizon is represented by all the Upper Cretaceous strata which are now known to occur there between the top of the Comanche and the base of the Laramie horizon. In the South Interior region the Colorado and Montana formations constitute the full equivalent of all the Upper Cretaceous strata just referred to, and while they were evidently produced by continuous sedimentation from the lower to the higher of these two formations, their paleontological relation to each other seems less intimate than is the relation to one another of the formations which constitute the full horizon in the more southern and eastern regions.

Upon going northward into the North Interior region we find the Colorado and Montana formations to be as well developed there as they are in the South Interior region, and also that the before-mentioned paleontological difference between them continues, but it does not increase to such an extent as to materially change the faunal character of each of those great formations. Furthermore, upon passing the northern boundary of the United States we find that the interposition of the non-marine Belly River between the Colorado and Montana formations, in quite a large district there, has divided the great horizon into the two subhorizons which have just been referred to, the lower being represented by the Colorado and the upper by the Montana formation. They are designated as subhorizons because they are so separated, and are not treated as distinct horizons because each portion there largely retains the paleontological features that characterize it farther southward and eastward, where the two portions are in conformable contact, where their paleontological relation to each other is recognizable, and where their lithological character indicates that they were produced by continuous sedimentation from the lower to the higher strata.

The geographical extent, the vertical range, and the stratigraphical diversity of this complex horizon, as it has just been defined, are so great that it is difficult to characterize it as a whole. It is, however, treated

as a single horizon, because all its stratigraphical subdivisions are understood to be paleontologically more or less intimately related to one another, and because of the evidence we have that marine conditions prevailed continuously in time from the deposition of its earliest to that of its latest strata. It is true that the evidence of direct continuity of sedimentation is lacking in many places, and in many places it is plain that such continuity was broken, but the result of extended observations leaves no room for reasonable doubt that it was never everywhere wholly interrupted within the vertical range indicated.

The strata of this horizon are, in many places, very fossiliferous, and a great number of species have been published by various authors, the most important of whose publications are mentioned in the bibliographical list which is given in the introductory part of this memoir.

Although vegetation was abundant over a large part of the great area which is occupied by the strata of this horizon, as is indicated by the presence of numerous and important coal beds, comparatively little is yet known of the character of the floras that existed during the time which is represented by them. Judging from the character of the remains that have been discovered in the Montana formation, however, vegetation seems to have been similar to that which existed during both the Dakota and Laramie epochs.

Important discoveries of vertebrate remains have been made at various localities and in various strata of this horizon from its base to its top, the greater part of which have been published by Profs. Leidy, Marsh, and Cope.

The abundant invertebrate fossils of this horizon are, and doubtless always will be, the most important for its characterization, and for this purpose a thorough revision of all the known species from the various recognized formations of this great horizon is greatly needed. When this revision is made it will appear that there are within the vertical range of the horizon several more or less distinct faunal stages, the greater part of the species of which are unlike those of the other stages, while some of them will be found to be common to two or more of them. No one species, or any set of species can yet be selected as characteristic of this horizon throughout its entire geographical extent, or through its entire vertical range, but enough is now known upon this point to show that it will always be unsafe to assume that any given marine molluscan species obtained from any formation belonging to this horizon will not be found in any overlying or underlying one which pertains to it. This last mentioned fact is a significant one in its bearing upon the subject of a connected history of geological events within the present limits of the North American continent during Upper Cretaceous time, and with reference to the interdelimitation of the Upper and Lower Cretaceous of this continent.

The lower delimitation of this great horizon is the same as that of the whole Upper Cretaceous of the interior and eastern portions of the

continent except where the Dakota formation and its non-marine equivalents prevail. Its upper delimitation is by a time-hiatus between it and the Tertiary in the Atlantic and Gulf border regions and in the eastern part of the Texan region; but elsewhere, that is, in the western part of the Texan region, in the North Mexican region, and in the two Interior regions, its upper delimitation is by the Laramie horizon, the aqueous fauna of which is wholly different, although the stratigraphical relation between the two horizons is remarkably intimate, as has already been pointed out.

THE COLORADO SUBHORIZON.

If it were not that in the North Interior region the non-marine Belly River formation intervenes between the Colorado and Montana formations, the propriety of considering the two latter formations as subhorizons might well be questioned. In any case paleontological study of these two subhorizons should always be prosecuted with direct reference to all other portions of the great complex Maritime and Interior horizon, especially to the lower portion of the Upper Cretaceous series in the North Mexican, Texan, Gulf Border, and Atlantic Border regions. That is, a large proportion of the species constituting the fauna of this subhorizon are believed to be geographically distributed in all those regions, and it will be unsafe to assume that any one of its species may not be found in more than one district within which strata of this subhorizon occurs.

Within limited districts more or less distinct paleontological stages are recognizable in this subhorizon, such, for example, as those of Meek and Hayden's Fort Benton and Niobrara groups, but even in such cases certain species may be expected to range from one stage to another. Besides this, considerable modifications of its invertebrate fauna are observable in different districts, such, for example, as those which have been noticed as occurring in Colorado and Utah.[1]

THE MONTANA SUBHORIZON.

The Montana, like the Colorado subhorizon, is physically represented by a single great formation of that name, which has been discussed on preceding pages. As in the case of the Colorado subhorizon, certain stages are recognizable in portions of the Montana subhorizon, such, for example, as the Fort Pierre and Fox Hill stages, which were regarded as separate formations by Meek and Hayden.

Besides this, it is now known that a considerable number of the invertebrate species of fossils which characterize this subhorizon occur in the upper part of the Upper Cretaceous series in the North Mexican, Texan, Gulf Border, and Atlantic Border regions. Therefore, the invertebrate fauna of this subhorizon ought always to be studied with direct reference to that of those formations.

[1] See page 162.

In some respects the character of the Belly River formation is such as to suggest its designation as a separate subhorizon, but too little is yet known of its geographical extent and of that of its assumed equivalents to enable one to satisfactorily define the physical limits of a separate subhorizon that shall include them. The Dunvegan series, while it is assumed to have been contemporaneous with the Belly River formation, was perhaps deposited in a separate body of water. Originally the Belly River formation proper doubtless had a large geographical extent. It seems to occur at several places in Montana[1] as well as at the typical localities in the adjacent part of British America, yet little or nothing is definitely known of its presence at intervening localities.

Besides this there are peculiar difficulties in defining this subhorizon paleontologically, mainly because so considerable a number of Belly River species of vertebrates, invertebrates, and plants have been recognized in the Laramie. Therefore, it is doubtful whether an attempt to recognize these deposits as constituting a separate subhorizon will lead to results as valuable as those to be obtained in the other cases referred to. This brief reference to the question is, however, herewith presented, because of the fact that the Belly River formation, where it is known to occur, distinctly separates the Colorado and Montana subhorizons from each other, as has been already shown.

THE LARAMIE HORIZON.

This horizon physically consists of the Laramie formation alone, but it is probable that the Denver and Arapaho deposits are not clearly separable from it on paleontological ground. Its abundant flora has been published by Profs. Newberry, Lesquereux, and Ward, and Sir J. Wm. Dawson; and its vertebrate fauna mainly by Profs. Leidy, Cope, and Marsh. Its invertebrate fauna has been published by Mr. Meek, Mr. Whiteaves, and myself. It is wholly composed of such forms as either characterize, or are known to occur in brackish and fresh waters, no remains of forms like those which occur only in the open ocean having been discovered in any of its strata. This horizon is therefore, like the Potomac, Kootanie, and Dakota horizons, a nonmarine one; and although nearly or quite as distinct in its character as any of the horizons herein recognized, it is held to represent both the close of Cretaceous and the beginning of Tertiary time.

It has been explained on preceding pages that wherever the Laramie strata have been found resting upon the uppermost of those which belong to the Maritime and Interior horizon, there is the appearance not only of strict conformity, but of vertical continuity of sedimentation also. It has been shown that in consequence of this intimate stratigraphical relation between the two horizons the plane of separation between them can be determined only by means of invertebrate

[1] See page 174.

fossils, and this plane has been designated as that at which exclusively marine forms ceased, and brackish water forms began to appear. It is regarded as certain that some of the characteristic Laramie species of plants and of air-breathing vertebrates began their existence before the beginning of the Laramie epoch as thus physically limited, even as early as the Belly River epoch. Therefore it is likely that remains of certain plants and of vertebrate species are to be found in both Montana and Laramie strata, but this fact does not make the lower delimitation of the Laramie horizon which I have adopted an unnatural one, for it has never yet been recognized except in contact with the Montana horizon. My reasons for selecting this plane of separation between the two horizons are based upon the physical changes in the surrounding portions of the continent which the observed stratigraphical and paleontological conditions imply. It may be that we shall yet discover the physical blending of the Laramie and Belly River formations, in which case the foregoing statement of the lower delimitation of the Laramie horizon will not be applicable, but this does not affect the definiteness of that delimitation in all the cases yet known.

The Laramie sea is understood to have occupied a very large portion of the area which in the immediately preceding epoch was occupied by the marine waters in which the Montana formation was deposited, and that at its close the waters of the Laramie area became more or less completely surrounded by land resulting from an elevation of sea bottom above water level. Its waters consequently became partially freshened by the surrounding surface drainage, producing a habitat in which it was impossible for true marine forms to live, but which was a congenial one for those whose remains we find there. Thus was recorded a great physical, as well as a great biological, event in the geological history of the continent, our estimate of the importance of which is enhanced when we remember how great was the geographical area over which it occurred.

It is reasonable to assume that the habitat of many of the vertebrate and other land animals which existed within and around that area before the event referred to occurred was not made uncongenial by its occurrence. But be that as it may, the strata which physically constitute such geological horizons as I have defined in this case are the result of sedimentation in great bodies of water, and physical changes which altered the conditions relating to those bodies of water and materially affected the character of their denizens, were leading events in geological history. As such they are more properly used to mark its subdivisions than are those which have, or which are assumed to have, only produced certain changes in land faunas and floras.

A part of the foregoing remarks have special reference to the lower delimitation of the Laramie horizon which, so far as it is yet known, has been shown to be clearly definable only upon paleontological ground,

and apparently only by means of invertebrate fossils. Its upper delimitation is usually by the unconformity of overlying formations and by a material change in the character of its invertebrate fossils, but at certain places neither of these two conditions are complete. That is, at certain places, which have been mentioned on preceding pages, the immediately overlying fresh-water Tertiary strata are conformable and vertically continuous with those of the Laramie, and a few of the fresh water molluscan forms of the latter pass up into those of the former formation. In such cases the chosen plane of separation between them is that upon which all the brackish water forms, which prevail at frequent levels in the Laramie, finally cease to appear, which plane also is apparently identical or nearly so, with the upper limit of the range of dinosaurian remains.

As has already been intimated, the Denver and Arapaho deposits perhaps ought to be referred to the Laramie horizon upon paleontological, although not upon structural, grounds, but it does not follow that the Puerco beds ought to be so referred, although Prof. Cope assigns them to the Cretaceous system. These beds, as well as the Denver and Arapaho deposits, are of comparatively small geographical extent, and they therefore can not be profitably discussed as constituting separate horizons. The Laramie strata therefore constitute the latest horizon which will be defined as belonging to the series of Upper Cretaceous formations in the great interior portion of the continent.

Although much is known concerning the strata which constitute the Laramie horizon, the limits of the great area which it occupies, and those which distinguish it from underlying and overlying formations have not, as a rule, been well defined by the field geologists who have reported upon the regions in which its strata occur. It is true that the Canadian geologists have defined with considerable clearness that part of the Laramie horizon which lies within their domain, but in many of the reports which have been made upon that part of the United States within which the horizon occurs the lack of discrimination in the matter referred to is especially noticeable. These omissions have much retarded the acquirement of a comprehensive knowledge of one of the most interesting phases in the geological history of the North American continent.

THE CHICO-TÉJON HORIZON.

It has been shown that although the Laramie horizon is paleontologically an indivisible one it represents both the close of Cretaceous and the beginning of Tertiary time. A similar statement may be made concerning the Chico-Téjon horizon, and with even greater force because the evidence is clearer and more abundant.

This horizon is physically represented by the Chico-Téjon series of strata as they are developed in California, and by its equivalents in Oregon, Washington, and British Columbia. It comprises all the

Upper Cretaceous deposits of the Pacific Border region with the probable exception of the strata which have been designated as the Wallala group,[1] and the possible exception of the upper members of the Queen Charlotte Islands series. The strata constituting the Chico-Téjon series have been discussed on preceding pages, where it is shown that, with unimportant exceptions, they are all of marine origin, but these exceptions show only local breaks in the direct succession of marine deposits which was complete elsewhere.

Among these strata at different localities continuity of deposition and unbroken faunal succession may be traced from the base to the top of the series, although the observations must be made at favorable localities, owing to the great disturbance that all the strata have suffered. This shows that the whole series was all deposited in a comparatively undisturbed marine area, and the character of its fossil fauna plainly indicates the Cretaceous age of its lower, and the Tertiary age of its upper, portion.

The presence of important coal beds in this series indicates that an abundant flora existed during the time of its deposition, but few classifiable remains of it have yet been found except in those strata which occur on Vancouver Island. Few or no vertebrate remains have been discovered in its strata, although it can not be doubted that an abundant vertebrate fauna existed while they were deposited. We are therefore now under the necessity of relying upon invertebrate fossils for the paleontological characterization of the horizon.

The invertebrate fauna of this horizon is so varied and abundant, and so different from that of the Tertiary strata which overlie and the Cretaceous strata which underlie it, that little difficulty need be experienced in its identification. Such a difficulty is still further obviated by the geographical separateness of the strata of this horizon from all others which were presumably contemporaneous with them, and by the faunal difference between the latter strata and those which physically constitute this horizon.[2]

The geographical area which the Chico-Téjon horizon originally occupied was very long, but comparatively narrow. Its present known northern and southern limits are fully 1,000 miles apart, but with the exception of a limited area in Oregon [3] its strata have not been discovered east of the Sierra Nevada, or of the Cascade Mountains.

GREAT DISPLACEMENTS OF, AND VOLCANIC MATERIAL IN, THE NORTH AMERICAN CRETACEOUS.

The Cretaceous strata of the continent have suffered important displacements which occurred at different epochs of Cretaceous time, besides those which occurred at and after its close. The results of these displacements affecting the questions concerning correlation which are discussed in this memoir, are especially noticeable among the Lower

[1] See page 192. [2] See page 190. [3] See page 194.

Cretaceous horizons as they have been defined on preceding pages. That is, they have resulted in the nearly or quite complete geographical isolation of those horizons from one another, while the Upper Cretaceous formations have not been thus isolated, but have all been equally involved in the great post-Cretaceous displacements. It is at present impracticable to discuss these displacements and the phases of continental history with which they were connected, but it is to be expected that a careful general study of them will throw much light upon the taxonomic relation to one another of the different Lower Cretaceous horizons, which in all cases is now more or less obscure.

It is well known that immense outflows of volcanic material took place in many and widely separated districts after the close of Cretaceous time; that this material was erupted through the Cretaceous formations, and that in many cases it covered the later Cretaceous strata over great areas. It is also true that much volcanic material was erupted at various intervals between the opening and close of the Cretaceous time, and that much of this material is found in approximately horizontal beds alternating with sedimentary Cretaceous strata. It is probable that a comprehensive investigation of these last mentioned phenomena would afford some aid in an attempt to correlate with one another the horizons of the Lower Cretaceous. Too little is yet known upon this subject, however, to allow of its satisfactory discussion in this memoir, but a considerable number of publications, mainly the work of Canadian geologists, contain accounts of or reference to the most that is now known upon this subject.[1] Evidence of such outflows seems to be abundant in the Cordillera belt north of the forty-ninth parallel of north latitude, where such rocks form great intercalations among Cretaceous deposits. Similar intercalations have also been observed in Montana and elsewhere.

[1] See Ann. Rep. Geol. Surv. Canada for 1880-'82, part 2, p. 2 B. Ib. for 1882-'84, p. 109 C. Ib. for 1885, pp. 164-166 B. Ib. for 1876-'77, p. 90. Ib. for 1878-'79, p. 66 B, et seq. Geol. Mag., London, vol. 4, decade 2. Ib. vol. 8, decade 2. Also Bailey Willis, Tenth U. S. Census, vol. 15, p. 768.

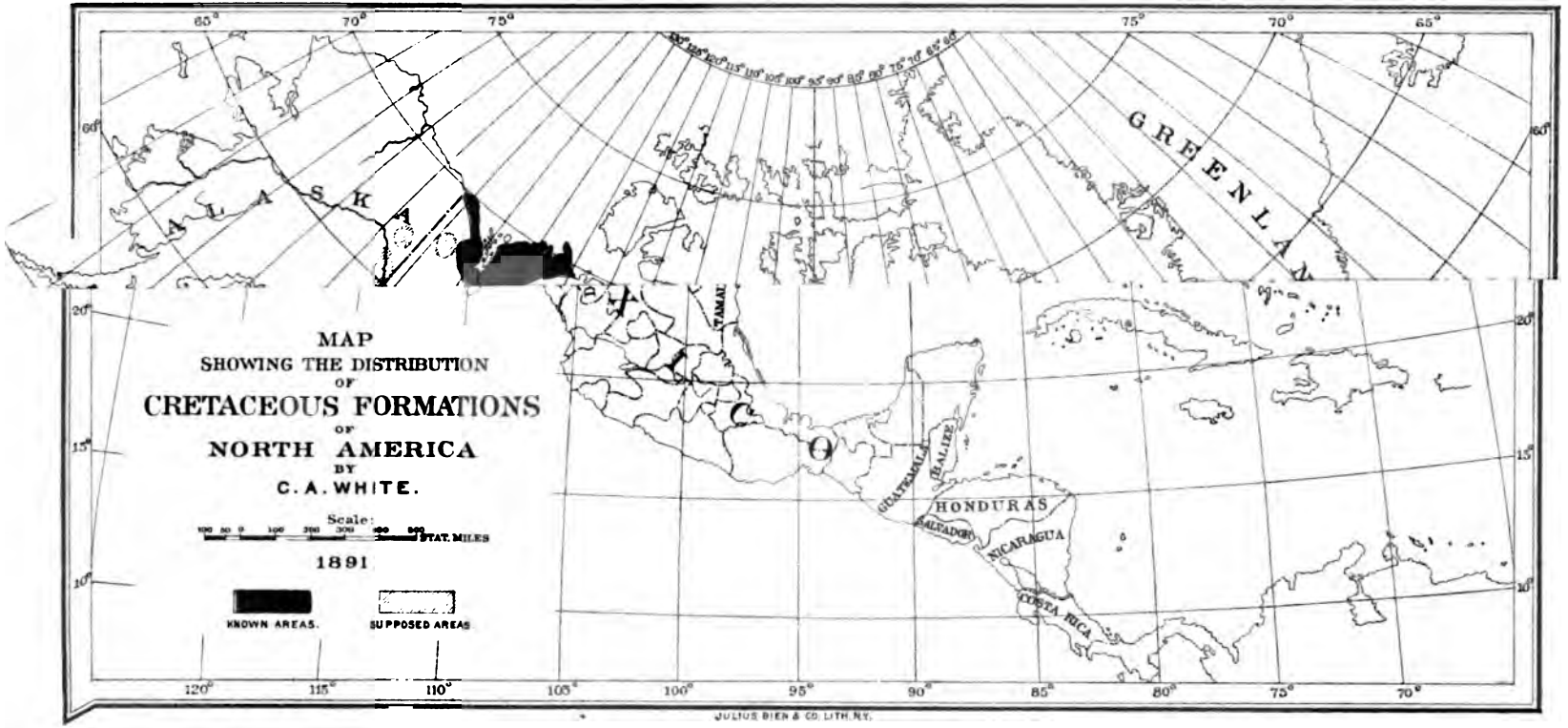
EXPLANATION OF THE MAP.

The following map is intended to show by means of the color applied to it the areas within and the localities at which those rocks appear at the surface which have been discussed upon preceding pages, all other parts of the map being left uncolored. The vertical range of the strata thus represented embraces not only those the Cretaceous age of which has never been questioned, but those groups which have been recognized as lying at the base and top respectively of the Cretaceous system, concerning which there exists a difference of opinion as to their true geological age. Thus the color upon the map represents not only the areas occupied by the fully characteristic Cretaceous formations, but those within which the Potomac, Tuscaloosa, and Trinity formations occur on the one hand, and the Laramie, Téjon, and Puget formations, etc., on the other. The size of the map is too small to allow such a modification of the color as would show a distinction between those doubtful formations and the others, even if we were able to point them out, and too small also to admit of any such distinction between the separate formations, or even between the Upper and Lower Cretaceous. Therefore only one color is used.

Although the colored spaces upon the map indicate only those areas where the Cretaceous rocks are found at the surface or immediately beneath the soil, those rocks without doubt extend beneath other formations within adjacent areas, some of which areas are perhaps as great as some of those within which they are visible; but it is of course impracticable to represent even approximately the areas occupied by those hidden deposits. Again, it cannot be questioned that Cretaceous deposits once occupied large areas where they do not now exist, because they have been removed by erosion.

It will thus be seen that the outlines of the present areas within which Cretaceous deposits are known to occupy the surface bear no necessary relation to those of the areas within which they were originally deposited. These outlines are necessarily only approximately correct, because of the small size of the map and also because of the incompleteness of the details of the surveys that have been made of many of those areas. This is especially true of the small areas or localities which are represented by mere dots, for even the size of those dots are exaggerations of the real areas they are intended to represent. Therefore the principal use of this map will be to indicate in a general way the parts of the continent in which occur the strata that are discussed in this memoir.

The sources from which the information concerning the outlines of those areas has been derived are the various reports which have been quoted in their discussion, the geological maps of the United States by Mr. McGee and Prof. C. H. Hitchcock, respectively, personal observation, and information personally communicated by different geologists. Among the latter are Dr. George M. Dawson, to whom I am indebted for information concerning portions of the Dominion of Canada, Dr. G. F. Becker, Mr. J. S. Diller, Mr. H. W. Turner, concerning California, and Prof. N. H. Winchell, concerning the Cretaceous outliers of Minnesota.


MAP
SHOWING THE DISTRIBUTION
OF
CRETACEOUS FORMATIONS
OF
NORTH AMERICA
BY
C. A. WHITE.
Scale:
STAT. MILES
1891
KNOWN AREAS.
SUPPOSED AREAS
ALASKA
GREENLAND
CANADA
GUATEMALA
BALIZE
HONDURAS
SALVADOR
NICARAGUA
COSTA RICA
JULIUS BIEN & CO. LITH. N.Y.

INDEX.

A.

Page.

Alabama, Cretaceous deposits of 104–108
Tuomey, M., on 104
Winchell, Alexander, on 104
section of, by Smith and Johnson 105, 108
graduated table of section of 217
Alaska, Cretaceous of 205
Albirupean formation of Uhler 89
Arapaho group of G. H. Eldridge, remarks on 150
Arctic regions, Cretaceous of 202
Artesian water from Dakota formation 171
Atlantic Border region, boundaries of 74
Cretaceous series of 76
geological features of 76–78
general description of 77
marine and non-marine divisions of 77
concluding remarks on 92
table of formations of 100

B.

Bear River Laramie, so called 153
Becker, G. F., publications on California Cretaceous 26
discovery of Wallala Cretaceous strata by 192
aid received from 268
Belly River formation, district occupied by. 173
discussion of 174–177
physical relation to the Laramie. 174
biological relation to the Laramie 175
Bibliographical list, annotated 26–60
Biological evolution, propositions concerning 20
Blake, W. P., Cretaceous age of Sitka coal suggested by 189
British America, Cretaceous of north 206

C.

California Cretaceous, W. M. Gabb's publications on 36
J. D. Whitney's section of 182
general section of 182
first noticed by J. S. Newberry 182
J. S. Diller's sections of 186
graduated table of 241

Page.

Castillo, Antonio del, geological map of Mexico by 132
Chalk in the Cretaceous of Kansas 160
Chico-Téjon series, controversy concerning age of 68
defined 193
geographical limits of 194
transition from Cretaceous to Tertiary in 193, 200
Chinate Mountains, Cretaceous strata in .. 136
Clark, W. B., on the Maryland Cretaceous. 88
on commingling of Cretaceous and Tertiary fossils 98
Comanche series, of Texas 120
of the Sierra San Carlos 134
Conrad, T. A., writings of, on the Cretaceous 28
on commingling of Cretaceous and Tertiary fossils 98
Contemporaneity of formations, F. J. Pictet quoted on 20
W. Ph. Schimper quoted on 20
Cook, G. H., on the New Jersey Cretaceous 78–83
Cope, E. D., writings on the Cretaceous ... 29–30
early reference of the Laramie to the Cretaceous 147
on the Puerco group 149
graduated table of Cretaceous section by 229
Correlation, criteria of, discussed 17
of American and European Cretaceous uncertain 11, 208
Correlation and Taxonomy, statement of methods of illustrating 207
graduated tables of, for N. American Cretaceous 210–245
Cozzens, Issachar, on the Cretaceous of Long Island 85
Credner, Hermann, on the New Jersey Cretaceous 71
Cretaceous system of North America, recognition of 15
subdivisions of, unlike those of Europe 15
regions of, defined 72
Cross, Whitman, publications on Denver group 30
Cummins, W. F., information obtained from 117

INDEX.

A.

Page.

Alabama, Cretaceous deposits of 104–108
Tuomey, M., on 104
Winchell, Alexander, on 104
section of, by Smith and Johnson 105, 108
graduated table of section of 217
Alaska, Cretaceous of 205
Albirupean formation of Uhler 89
Arapaho group of G. H. Eldridge, remarks on 150
Arctic regions, Cretaceous of 202
Artesian water from Dakota formation 171
Atlantic Border region, boundaries of 74
Cretaceous series of 76
geological features of 76–78
general description of 77
marine and non-marine divisions of 77
concluding remarks on 92
table of formations of 100

B.

Bear River Laramie, so called 153
Becker, G. F., publications on California Cretaceous 26
discovery of Wallala Cretaceous strata by 192
aid received from 268
Belly River formation, district occupied by. 173
discussion of 174–177
physical relation to the Laramie. 174
biological relation to the Laramie 175
Bibliographical list, annotated 26–60
Biological evolution, propositions concerning 20
Blake, W. P., Cretaceous age of Sitka coal suggested by 189
British America, Cretaceous of north 206

C.

California Cretaceous, W. M. Gabb's publications on 36
J. D. Whitney's section of 182
general section of 182
first noticed by J. S. Newberry 182
J. S. Diller's sections of 186
graduated table of 241

Page.

Castillo, Antonio del, geological map of Mexico by 132
Chalk in the Cretaceous of Kansas 160
Chico-Téjon series, controversy concerning age of 68
defined 193
geographical limits of 194
transition from Cretaceous to Tertiary in 193, 200
Chinate Mountains, Cretaceous strata in .. 136
Clark, W. B., on the Maryland Cretaceous. 88
on commingling of Cretaceous and Tertiary fossils 98
Comanche series, of Texas 120
of the Sierra San Carlos 134
Conrad, T. A., writings of, on the Cretaceous 28
on commingling of Cretaceous and Tertiary fossils 98
Contemporaneity of formations, F. J. Pictet quoted on 20
W. Ph. Schimper quoted on 20
Cook, G. H., on the New Jersey Cretaceous 78–83
Cope, E. D., writings on the Cretaceous ... 29–30
early reference of the Laramie to the Cretaceous 147
on the Puerco group 149
graduated table of Cretaceous section by 229
Correlation, criteria of, discussed 17
of American and European Cretaceous uncertain 11, 208
Correlation and Taxonomy, statement of methods of illustrating 207
graduated tables of, for N. American Cretaceous 210–245
Cozzens, Issachar, on the Cretaceous of Long Island 85
Credner, Hermann, on the New Jersey Cretaceous 71
Cretaceous system of North America, recognition of 15
subdivisions of, unlike those of Europe 15
regions of, defined 72
Cross, Whitman, publications on Denver group 30
Cummins, W. F., information obtained from 117

D.

Page.

Dakota formation, controversy concerning age of ... 66
Timber Creek formation, equivalent to. 122
in South Interior region ... 159
in North Interior region ... 170
artesian water in ... 171
Dawson, G. M., aid received from ... 14, 268
on terms earlier and later Cretaceous .. 16
Belly River formation named by ... 174
Queen Charlotte Islands section by ... 183
table of Cretaceous formations by ... 191
Nanaimo section by ... 195
on a probable equivalent of the Puget group ... 196
graduated table of Nanaimo section ... 243
graduated table of Queen Charlotte Islands section ... 245
Dawson, J. W., Kootanie formation named by ... 168
on the character of the Kootanie flora. 170
Delaware, Cretaceous deposits of ... 87
J. C. Booth on ... 88
Denver group, publications of Whitman Cross on ... 30
remarks on ... 150
Diller, J. S., sections of California Cretaceous by ... 186
aid received from ... 268
Displacements of the North American Cretaceous ... 265
District of Columbia, Cretaceous deposits of 88
Dunvegan series, probably equivalent to the Belly River ... 174

E.

Earlier and later Cretaceous ... 16, 145
East Texan section, graduated table of ... 221
Eastern Colorado section, graduated table of 231
Eichwald, E., refers Aucella-bearing Alaskan strata to the Neocomian ... 71
Eldridge, G. H., on Cretaceous coal fields of Montana ... 35
modified Cretaceous section by ... 145–158
Enclimatoceras beds referred to the Tertiary ... 112
Extra-regional districts, Mexico ... 201
Arctic regions ... 202
West Indies ... 202
Upper Mississippi Valley States ... 203
Alaska ... 205
North British America ... 206

F.

Fall line defined ... 75
Finch, John, first recognition of American Cretaceous by ... 61
Fischer, P., on Alaska fossils ... 205
Fontaine, W. M., work on Potomac fossil flora ... 90

G.

Gabb, W. M., publications on California Cretaceous ... 36
Aucella-bearing strata referred to Jurassic by ... 68
Gabb, W. M.—Continued.
Tejon strata referred to Cretaceous by. 68, 193
Mexican Cretaceous fossils published by 60
Gardner, J. S., on the age of the Dakota formation ... 172
Gardner, James T., discovery of Mexican fossils by ... 133
Graduated table, Meek & Hayden's section 211
Great Interior section ... 213
New Jersey section ... 215
Alabama section ... 217
Mississippi section ... 219
East Texan section ... 221
West Texan section ... 223
North Mexican section ... 225
New Mexican section ... 227
Cope's general section ... 229
Eastern Colorado section ... 231
Fortieth parallel section ... 233
Uinta section ... 235
Northwest Colorado section ... 237
North Interior section ... 239
California section ... 241
Nanaimo section ... 243
Queen Charlotte Islands section ... 245
Great Interior area, general description of. 140
boundaries of ... 141
Grewingk, C., on Alaskan fossils ... 205
Gulf Border region, boundaries of ... 100
general description of ... 102
Cretaceous series of ... 103
Marine and non-marine divisions of Cretaceous ... 106

H.

Hall, James, on Cretaceous deposits in Minnesota ... 37, 203
early studies of Western Cretaceous ... 65
on correlation of Eastern and Western Cretaceous ... 65
Hay, Robert, on artesian water in the Dakota formation ... 171
Hicks, L. E., non-marine invertebrates found by, in the Dakota formation . 159
Hilgard, E. W., Mississippi Cretaceous section by ... 105
graduated table of ... 219
Hill, R. T., on the Texan Cretaceous ... 116–123
on the Arkansan Cretaceous ... 119
Hind, Henry Yule, early observations on Western Cretaceous ... 66
Hitchcock, C. H., geological map by ... 40
Hitchcock, E., on Cretaceous of Martha's Vineyard ... 63, 86
Homogeny a means of identifying formations ... 24
Homotaxy, T. H. Huxley quoted on ... 20
Horizon, unusual use of the term explained 248
Potomac defined ... 251
Comanche defined ... 253
Kootanie defined ... 254
Shasta defined ... 255
Dakota defined ... 257
Maritime and Interior defined ... 258
Laramie defined ... 262
Chico-Tejon defined ... 264

Page.
Horizons of North American Cretaceous, necessity for recognizing 249
names of 250
Horsetown beds of the Shasta group..... 184
Huxley, T. H., quoted on homotaxy 20

I.

Irving, R. D., lithological classification of formations by..... 24

K.

Kerr, W. C., on the North Carolina Cretaceous 91
King, C., Cretaceous section of the fortieth parallel by..... 157
graduated table of 233
Knoxville beds of the Shasta formation..... 184
Kootanie formation, named by J. W. Dawson 168
original discovery of..... 168
casts of Unio found in..... 169
identified in Montana..... 169
coal-bearing 170, 181
identified in Pacific Border region 189
strata of, found resting on marine Cretaceous 189

L.

Larimie formation, controversy concerning age of..... 66
in Texan region..... 125
a transitional series of strata.....127, 148
in North Mexican region..... 138
general discussion of..... 145
fossil plants of, in far northern districts 146
name proposed by King and Hayden... 147
name previously used by King..... 147
Bear River, so called, an older formation 153
in South Interior region..... 163
in North Interior region..... 178
fossil plants of, in Puget formation.... 196
Lea, Isaac, description of Unionos from the Camden clays..... 81
Lesquereux, Leo, list of publications of.... 42
on Alaska fossil plants..... 206
posthumous report on Dakota flora by. 258
Lindgren, W., on great thickness of the Laramie in Montana..... 146
Lithological criteria of correlation, remarks on..... 24
Long Island, Cretaceous deposits of..... 84
Lower Cretaceous of North America designated 16, 246, 247
Gulf Border region.....114, 217
Texan region 118, 127
North Mexican region..... 132
North Interior region..... 168
Pacific Border region 183
Atlantic Border region..... 215
Lyell, Charles, on the Atlantic Border Cretaceous 63

M.

Page.
Map, explanation of, colored..... 267
Marcou, Jules, on American Lower Cretaceous..... 16
on the Texan Cretaceous section.....68, 116
Marine Tertiary deposits in Colorado, erroneous report of..... 152
Marsh, O. C., publications by 43, 44
on the age of the Potomac formation... 89
Martha's Vineyard, Cretaceous deposits of. 86, 87
Maryland, Cretaceous series of..... 88
Clark, W. B., on 88
Tyson, P. T., on 88
Uhler, P. R., on..... 88
Mather, W. W., on Cretaceous of Long and Staten Islands 63
McConnell, R. G., quoted..... 174
important work of, now in press..... 206
McGee, W. J., geological map by 44
publications of, on the Potomac formation 44, 45
on the Maryland Cretaceous 89
Meek, F. B., publications of, on the Cretaceous..... 45, 46
Meek & Hayden, earlier and later Cretaceous proposed by.....16, 145
early studies of Western Cretaceous... 65
Upper Missouri Cretaceous section by. 141
tables representing Upper Missouri section of 145, 156, 158
graduated table of Upper Missouri section of..... 211
Merrill, F. J. H., on the Cretaceous of Long Island..... 86
Mexico, Cretaceous of south 201
Morton, S. G., publications of, on American Cretaceous..... 47
L. Vanuxem's first announcement of American Cretaceous, published by 61

N.

Nanaimo group, Dr. Dawson's name used for 195
graduated table of..... 243
New Jersey, Cretaceous series of 78
figures of sections of.....79, 80, 82
Non-marine division of..... 80
Marine division of 82
origin of materials of 95
graduated table of..... 215
Newberry, J. S., early observations of the Cretaceous by..... 64
summary of Raritan and Amboy fossil floras by..... 94
New Mexican section by..... 155
on identity of Kootanie and Potomac fossil plants.....186, 252
graduated table of New Mexican section by..... 227
Nikitin, S., announcement of Aucella in Southern Mexico by..... 185
North American Cretaceous, two divisions of..... 11
abundantly coal-bearing 198
general delimitation of..... 188

52D CONGRESS, 1st Session. } HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES. { MIS. DOC. No. 336.

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR

BULLETINS

OF THE

UNITED STATES

GEOLOGICAL SURVEY

No. 83

WASHINGTON
GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
1892

LIBRARY CATALOGUE SLIPS.

Series title.

United States. *Department of the interior.* (*U. S. geological survey*).
Department of the Interior | — | Bulletin | of the | United States | geological survey | no. 83 | [Seal of the department] |
Washington | government printing office | 1891

Second title: United States geological survey | J. W. Powell, director | — | Correlation papers | Eocene | by | William Bullock Clark | [Vignette] |
Washington | government printing office | 1891
8°. 173 pp. 2 pl.

Author title.

Clark (William Bullock).
United States geological survey | J. W. Powell, director | — | Correlation papers | Eocene | by | William Bullock Clark | [Vignette] |
Washington | government printing office | 1891
8°. 173 pp. 2 pl.
[UNITED STATES. *Department of the interior.* (*U. S. geological survey*). Bulletin 83.]

Title for subject entry.

United States geological survey | J. W. Powell, director | — | Correlation papers | Eocene | by | William Bullock Clark | [Vignette] |
Washington | government printing office | 1891
8°. 173 pp. 2 pl.
[UNITED STATES. *Department of the interior.* (*U. S. geological survey*). Bulletin 83.]

ADVERTISEMENT.

[Bulletin No. 83.]

The publications of the United States Geological Survey are issued in accordance with the statute approved March 3, 1879, which declares that—

"The publications of the Geological Survey shall consist of the annual report of operations, geological and economic maps illustrating the resources and classification of the lands, and reports upon general and economic geology and paleontology. The annual report of operations of the Geological Survey shall accompany the annual report of the Secretary of the Interior. All special memoirs and reports of said Survey shall be issued in uniform quarto series if deemed necessary by the Director, but otherwise in ordinary octavos. Three thousand copies of each shall be published for scientific exchanges and for sale at the price of publication; and all literary and cartographic materials received in exchange shall be the property of the United States and form a part of the library of the organization; and the money resulting from the sale of such publications shall be covered into the Treasury of the United States."

On July 7, 1882, the following joint resolution, referring to all Government publications, was passed by Congress:

"That whenever any document or report shall be ordered printed by Congress, there shall be printed, in addition to the number in each case stated, the 'usual number' (1,900) of copies for binding and distribution among those entitled to receive them."

Except in those cases in which an extra number of any publication has been supplied to the Survey by special resolution of Congress or has been ordered by the Secretary of the Interior, this office has no copies for gratuitous distribution.

ANNUAL REPORTS.

I. First Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, by Clarence King. 1880. 8°. 79 pp. 1 map.—A preliminary report describing plan of organization and publications.

II. Second Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, 1880–'81, by J. W. Powell. 1882. 8°. lv, 588 pp. 62 pl. 1 map.

III. Third Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, 1881–'82, by J. W. Powell. 1883. 8°. xviii, 564 pp. 67 pl. and maps.

IV. Fourth Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, 1882–'83, by J. W. Powell. 1884. 8°. xxxii, 473 pp. 85 pl. and maps.

V. Fifth Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, 1883–'84, by J. W. Powell. 1885. 8°. xxxvi, 469 pp. 58 pl. and maps.

VI. Sixth Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, 1884–'85, by J. W. Powell. 1885. 8°. xxix, 570 pp. 65 pl. and maps.

VII. Seventh Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, 1885–'86, by J. W. Powell. 1888. 8°. xx, 656 pp. 71 pl. and maps.

VIII. Eighth Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, 1886–'87, by J. W. Powell. 1889. 8°. 2 v. xix, 474, xii pp. 53 pl. and maps; 1 p. l. 475–1063 pp. 54–76 pl. and maps.

IX. Ninth Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, 1887–'88, by J. W. Powell. 1889. 8°. xiii, 717 pp. 88 pl. and maps.

X. Tenth Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, 1888–'89, by J. W. Powell. 1890. 8°. 2 v. xv, 774 pp. 98 pl. and maps; viii, 123 pp.

XI. Eleventh Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey, 1889–'90, by J. W. Powell. 1891. 8°. 2 v. xv, 757 pp. 66 pl.; ix, 351 pp. 30 pl.

The Twelfth Annual Report is in press.

MONOGRAPHS.

I. Lake Bonneville, by Grove Karl Gilbert. 1890. 4°. xx, 438 pp. 51 pl. 1 map. Price $1.50.

II. Tertiary History of the Grand Cañon District, with atlas, by Clarence E. Dutton, Capt. U. S. A. 1882. 4°. xiv, 264 pp. 42 pl. and atlas of 24 sheets folio. Price $10.00.

III. Geology of the Comstock Lode and the Washoe District, with atlas, by George F. Becker. 1882. 4°. xv, 422 pp. 7 pl. and atlas of 21 sheets folio. Price $11.00.

IV. Comstock Mining and Miners, by Eliot Lord. 1883. 4°. xiv, 451 pp. 3 pl. Price $1.50.

V. The Copper-Bearing Rocks of Lake Superior, by Roland Duer Irving. 1883. 4°. xvi, 464 pp. 15 l. 29 pl. and maps. Price $1.85.

VI. Contributions to the Knowledge of the Older Mesozoic Flora of Virginia, by William Morris Fontaine. 1883. 4°. xi, 144 pp. 54 l. 54 pl. Price $1.05.

VII. Silver-Lead Deposits of Eureka, Nevada, by Joseph Story Curtis. 1884. 4°. xiii, 200 pp. 16 pl. Price $1.20.

VIII. Paleontology of the Eureka District, by Charles Doolittle Walcott. 1884. 4°. xiii, 298 pp. 24 l. 24 pl. Price $1.10.

IX. Brachiopoda and Lamellibranchiata of the Raritan Clays and Greensand Marls of New Jersey, by Robert P. Whitfield. 1885. 4°. xx, 338 pp. 35 pl. 1 map. Price $1.15.

X. Dinocerata. A Monograph of an Extinct Order of Gigantic Mammals, by Othniel Charles Marsh. 1886. 4°. xviii, 243 pp. 56 l. 56 pl. Price $2.70.

XI. Geological History of Lake Lahontan, a Quaternary Lake of Northwestern Nevada, by Israel Cook Russell. 1885. 4°. xiv, 288 pp. 46 pl. and maps. Price $1.75.

XII. Geology and Mining Industry of Leadville, Colorado, with atlas, by Samuel Franklin Emmons. 1886. 4°. xxix, 770 pp. 45 pl. and atlas of 35 sheets folio. Price $8.40.

XIII. Geology of the Quicksilver Deposits of the Pacific Slope, with atlas, by George F. Becker. 1888. 4°. xix, 486 pp. 7 pl. and atlas of 14 sheets folio. Price $2.00.

XIV. Fossil Fishes and Fossil Plants of the Triassic Rocks of New Jersey and the Connecticut Valley, by John S. Newberry. 1888. 4°. xiv, 152 pp. 26 pl. Price $1.00.

XV. The Potomac or Younger Mesozoic Flora, by William Morris Fontaine. 1889. 4°. xiv, 377 pp. 180 pl. Text and plates bound separately. Price $2.50.

XVI. The Paleozoic Fishes of North America, by John Strong Newberry. 1889. 4°. 340 pp. 53 pl. Price $1.00.

In press:

XVII. The Flora of the Dakota Group, a posthumous work, by Leo Lesquereux. Edited by F. H. Knowlton. 1891. 4°. 400 pp. 66 pl.

XVIII. Gasteropoda and Cephalopoda of the Raritan Clays and Greensand Marls of New Jersey, by Robert P. Whitfield.

In preparation:

— The Penokee Iron-Bearing Series of Northern Wisconsin and Michigan, by Roland D. Irving and C. R. Van Hise.

— Mollusca and Crustacea of the Miocene Formations of New Jersey, by R. P. Whitfield.

— Geology of the Green Mountains in Massachusetts, by Raphael Pumpelly, J. E. Wolff, T. Nelson Dale, and Bayard T. Putnam.

— Geology of the Eureka Mining District, Nevada, with atlas, by Arnold Hague.

— Sauropoda, by O. C. Marsh.

— Stegosauria, by O. C. Marsh.

— Brontotheridæ, by O. C. Marsh.

— Report on the Denver Coal Basin, by S. F. Emmons.

— Report on Silver Cliff and Ten-Mile Mining Districts, Colorado, by S. F. Emmons.

— The Glacial Lake Agassiz, by Warren Upham.

BULLETINS.

1. On Hypersthene-Andesite and on Triclinic Pyroxene in Augitic Rocks, by Whitman Cross, with a Geological Sketch of Buffalo Peaks, Colorado, by S. F. Emmons. 1883. 8°. 42 pp. 2 pl. Price 10 cents.

2. Gold and Silver Conversion Tables, giving the coining values of troy ounces of fine metal, etc., computed by Albert Williams, jr. 1883. 8°. 8 pp. Price 5 cents.

3. On the Fossil Faunas of the Upper Devonian, along the meridian of 76° 30′, from Tompkins County, New York, to Bradford County, Pennsylvania, by Henry S. Williams. 1884. 8°. 36 pp. Price 5 cents.

4. On Mesozoic Fossils, by Charles A. White. 1884. 8°. 36 pp. 9 pl. Price 5 cents.

5. A Dictionary of Altitudes in the United States, compiled by Henry Gannett. 1884. 8°. 325 pp. Price 20 cents.

6. Elevations in the Dominion of Canada, by J. W. Spencer. 1884. 8°. 43 pp. Price 5 cents.

7. Mapoteca Geologica Americana. A Catalogue of Geological Maps of America (North and South), 1752–1881, in geographic and chronologic order, by Jules Marcou and John Belknap Marcou. 1884. 8°. 184 pp. Price 10 cents.

8. On Secondary Enlargements of Mineral Fragments in Certain Rocks, by R. D. Irving and C. R. Van Hise. 1884. 8°. 56 pp. 6 pl. Price 10 cents.

9. A report of work done in the Washington Laboratory during the fiscal year 1883–'84. F. W. Clarke, chief chemist. T. M. Chatard, assistant chemist. 1884. 8°. 40 pp. Price 5 cents.

10. On the Cambrian Faunas of North America. Preliminary studies, by Charles Doolittle Walcott. 1884. 8°. 74 pp. 10 pl. Price 5 cents.

11. On the Quaternary and Recent Mollusca of the Great Basin; with Descriptions of New Forms, by R. Ellsworth Call. Introduced by a sketch of the Quaternary Lakes of the Great Basin, by G. K. Gilbert. 1884. 8°. 66 pp. 6 pl. Price 5 cents.

12. A Crystallographic Study of the Thinolite of Lake Lahontan, by Edward S. Dana. 1884. 8°. 34 pp. 3 pl. Price 5 cents.

13. Boundaries of the United States and of the several States and Territories, with a Historical Sketch of the Territorial Changes, by Henry Gannett. 1885. 8°. 135 pp. Price 10 cents.

14. The Electrical and Magnetic Properties of the Iron-Carburets, by Carl Barus and Vincent Strouhal. 1885. 8°. 238 pp. Price 15 cents.

15. On the Mesozoic and Cenozoic Paleontology of California, by Charles A. White. 1885. 8°. 33 pp. Price 5 cents.

16. On the Higher Devonian Faunas of Ontario County, New York, by John M. Clarke. 1885. 8°. 86 pp. 3 pl. Price 5 cents.

17. On the Development of Crystallization in the Igneous Rocks of Washoe, Nevada, with notes on the Geology of the District, by Arnold Hague and Joseph P. Iddings. 1885. 8°. 44 pp. Price 5 cents.

18. On Marine Eocene, Fresh-water Miocene, and other Fossil Mollusca of Western North America, by Charles A. White. 1885. 8°. 26 pp. 3 pl. Price 5 cents.

19. Notes on the Stratigraphy of California, by George F. Becker. 1885. 8°. 28 pp. Price 5 cents.

20. Contributions to the Mineralogy of the Rocky Mountains, by Whitman Cross and W. F. Hillebrand. 1885. 8°. 114 pp. 1 pl. Price 10 cents.

21. The Lignites of the Great Sioux Reservation. A Report on the Region between the Grand and Moreau Rivers, Dakota, by Bailey Willis. 1885. 8°. 16 pp. 5 pl. Price 5 cents.

22. On New Cretaceous Fossils from California, by Charles A. White. 1885. 8°. 25 pp. 5 pl. Price 5 cents.

23. Observations on the Junction between the Eastern Sandstone and the Keweenaw Series on Keweenaw Point, Lake Superior, by R. D. Irving and T. C. Chamberlin. 1885. 8°. 124 pp. 17 pl. Price 15 cents.

24. List of Marine Mollusca, comprising the Quatenary Fossils and recent forms from American Localities between Cape Hatteras and Cape Roque, including the Bermudas, by William Healy Dall. 1885. 8°. 336 pp. Price 25 cents.

25. The Present Technical Condition of the Steel Industry of the United States, by Phineas Barnes. 1885. 8°. 85 pp. Price 10 cents.

26. Copper Smelting, by Henry M. Howe. 1885. 8°. 107 pp. Price 10 cents.

27. Report of work done in the Division of Chemistry and Physics, mainly during the fiscal year 1884-'85. 1886. 8°. 80 pp. Price 10 cents.

28. The Gabbros and Associated Hornblende Rocks occurring in the neighborhood of Baltimore, Md., by George Huntington Williams. 1886. 8°. 78 pp. 4 pl. Price 10 cents.

29. On the Fresh-water Invertebrates of the North American Jurassic, by Charles A. White. 1886. 8°. 41 pp. 4 pl. Price 5 cents.

30. Second Contribution to the Studies on the Cambrian Faunas of North America, by Charles Doolittle Walcott. 1886. 8°. 369 pp. 33 pl. Price 25 cents.

31. Systematic Review of our Present Knowledge of Fossil Insects, including Myriapods and Arachnids, by Samuel Hubbard Scudder. 1886. 8°. 128 pp. Price 15 cents.

32. Lists and Analyses of the Mineral Springs of the United States; a Preliminary Study, by Albert C. Peale. 1886. 8°. 235 pp. Price 20 cents.

33. Notes on the Geology of Northern California, by J. S. Diller. 1886. 8°. 23 pp. Price 5 cents.

34. On the relation of the Laramie Molluscan Fauna to that of the succeeding Fresh-water Eocene and other groups, by Charles A. White. 1886. 8°. 54 pp. 5 pl. Price 10 cents.

35. Physical Properties of the Iron-Carburets, by Carl Barus and Vincent Strouhal. 1886. 8°. 62 pp. Price 10 cents.

36. Subsidence of Fine Solid Particles in Liquids, by Carl Barus. 1886. 8°. 58 pp. Price 10 cents.

37. Types of the Laramie Flora, by Lester F. Ward. 1887. 8°. 354 pp. 57 pl. Price 25 cents.

38. Peridotite of Elliott County, Kentucky, by J. S. Diller. 1887. 8°. 31 pp. 1 pl. Price 5 cents.

39. The Upper Beaches and Deltas of the Glacial Lake Agassiz, by Warren Upham. 1887. 8°. 84 pp. 1 pl. Price 10 cents.

40. Changes in River Courses in Washington Territory due to Glaciation, by Bailey Willis. 1887. 8°. 10 pp. 4 pl. Price 5 cents.

41. On the Fossil Faunas of the Upper Devonian—the Genesee Section, New York, by Henry S. Williams. 1887. 8°. 121 pp. 4 pl. Price 15 cents.

42. Report of work done in the Division of Chemistry and Physics, mainly during the fiscal year 1885-'86. F. W. Clarke, chief chemist. 1887. 8°. 152 pp. 1 pl. Price 15 cents.

43. Tertiary and Cretaceous Strata of the Tuscaloosa, Tombigbee, and Alabama Rivers, by Eugene A. Smith and Lawrence C. Johnson. 1887. 8°. 189 pp. 21 pl. Price 15 cents.

44. Bibliography of North American Geology for 1886, by Nelson H. Darton. 1887. 8°. 35 pp. Price 5 cents.

45. The Present Condition of Knowledge of the Geology of Texas, by Robert T. Hill. 1887. 8°. 94 pp. Price 10 cents.

46. Nature and Origin of Deposits of Phosphate of Lime, by R. A. F. Penrose, jr., with an Introduction by N. S. Shaler. 1888. 8°. 143 pp. Price 15 cents.

47. Analyses of Waters of the Yellowstone National Park, with an Account of the Methods of Analysis employed, by Frank Austin Gooch and James Edward Whitfield. 1888. 8°. 84 pp. Price 10 cents.

48. On the Form and Position of the Sea Level, by Robert Simpson Woodward. 1888. 8°. 88 pp. Price 10 cents.

49. Latitudes and Longitudes of Certain Points in Missouri, Kansas, and New Mexico, by Robert Simpson Woodward. 1889. 8°. 133 pp. Price 15 cents.

50. Formulas and Tables to facilitate the Construction and Use of Maps, by Robert Simpson Woodward. 1889. 8°. 124 pp. Price 15 cents.

51. On Invertebrate Fossils from the Pacific Coast, by Charles Abiathar White. 1889. 8°. 102 pp. 14 pl. Price 15 cents.

52. Subaërial Decay of Rocks and Origin of the Red Color of Certain Formations, by Israel Cook Russell. 1889. 8°. 65 pp. 5 pl. Price 10 cents.

53. The Geology of Nantucket, by Nathaniel Southgate Shaler. 1889. 8°. 55 pp. 10 pl. Price 10 cents.

54. On the Thermo-Electric Measurement of High Temperatures, by Carl Barus. 1889. 8°. 313 pp. incl. 1 pl. 11 pl. Price 25 cents.

55. Report of work done in the Division of Chemistry and Physics, mainly during the fiscal year 1886–'87. Frank Wigglesworth Clarke, chief chemist. 1889. 8°. 96 pp. Price 10 cents.

56. Fossil Wood and Lignite of the Potomac Formation, by Frank Hall Knowlton. 1889. 8°. 72 pp. 7 pl. Price 10 cents.

57. A Geological Reconnaissance in Southwestern Kansas, by Robert Hay. 1890. 8°. 49 pp. 2 pl. Price 5 cents.

58. The Glacial Boundary in Western Pennsylvania, Ohio, Kentucky, Indiana, and Illinois, by George Frederick Wright, with an introduction by Thomas Chrowder Chamberlin. 1890. 8°. 112 pp. incl. 1 pl. 8 pl. Price 15 cents.

59. The Gabbros and Associated Rocks in Delaware, by Frederick D. Chester. 1890. 8°. 45 pp. 1 pl. Price 10 cents.

60. Report of work done in the Division of Chemistry and Physics, mainly during the fiscal year 1887–'88. F. W. Clarke, chief chemist. 1890. 8°. 174 pp. Price 15 cents.

61. Contributions to the Mineralogy of the Pacific Coast, by William Harlow Melville and Waldemar Lindgren. 1890. 8°. 40 pp. 3 pl. Price 5 cents.

62. The Greenstone Schist Areas of the Menominee and Marquette Regions of Michigan; a contribution to the subject of dynamic metamorphism in eruptive rocks, by George Huntington Williams; with an introduction by Roland Duer Irving. 1890. 8°. 241 pp. 16 pl. Price 30 cents.

63. A Bibliography of Paleozoic Crustacea from 1698 to 1889, including a list of North American species and a systematic arrangement of genera, by Anthony W. Vogdes. 1890. 8°. 177 pp. Price 15 cents.

64. A report of work done in the Division of Chemistry and Physics, mainly during the fiscal year 1888–'89. F. W. Clarke, chief chemist. 1890. 8°. 60 pp. Price 10 cents.

65. Stratigraphy of the Bituminous Coal Field of Pennsylvania, Ohio, and West Virginia, by Israel C. White. 1891. 8°. 212 pp. 11 pl. Price 20 cents.

66. On a Group of Volcanic Rocks from the Tewan Mountains, New Mexico, and on the occurrence of Primary Quartz in certain Basalts, by Joseph Paxson Iddings. 1890. 8°. 34 pp. Price 5 cents.

67. The Relations of the Traps of the Newark System in the New Jersey Region, by Nelson Horatio Darton. 1890. 8°. 82 pp. Price 10 cents.

68. Earthquakes in California in 1869, by James Edward Keeler. 1890. 8°. 25 pp. Price 5 cents.

69. A Classed and Annotated Bibliography of Fossil Insects, by Samuel Hubbard Scudder. 1890. 8°. 101 pp. Price 15 cents.

70. Report on Astronomical Work of 1889 and 1890, by Robert Simpson Woodward. 1890. 8°. 79 pp. Price 10 cents.

71. Index to the Known Fossil Insects of the World, including Myriapods and Arachnids, by Samuel Hubbard Scudder. 1891. 8°. 744 pp. Price 50 cents.

72. Altitudes between Lake Superior and the Rocky Mountains, by Warren Upham. 1891. 8°. 229 pp. Price 20 cents.

73. The Viscosity of Solids, by Carl Barus. 1891. 8°. xii, 139 pp. 6 pl. Price 15 cents.

74. The Minerals of North Carolina, by Frederick Augustus Genth. 1891. 8°. 119 pp. Price 15 cents.

75. Record of North American Geology for 1887 to 1889, inclusive, by Nelson Horatio Darton. 1891. 8°. 173 pp. Price 15 cents.

76. A Dictionary of Altitudes in the United States (second edition), compiled by Henry Gannett, chief topographer. 1891. 8°. 393 pp. Price 25 cents.

77. The Texan Permian and its Mesozoic Types of Fossils, by Charles A. White. 1891. 8°. 51 pp. 4 pl. Price 10 cents.

78. A report of work done in the Division of Chemistry and Physics, mainly during the fiscal year 1889–'90. F. W. Clarke, chief chemist. 1891. 8°. 131 pp. Price 15 cents.

79. A Late Volcanic Eruption in Northern California and its Peculiar Lava, by J. S. Diller. 1891. 8°. 33 pp. 17 pl. Price 10 cents.

80. Correlation papers—Devonian and Carboniferous, by Henry Shaler Williams. 1891. 8°. 279 pp. Price 20 cents.

81. Correlation papers—Cambrian, by Charles Doolittle Walcott. 1891. 8°. 447 pp. 3 pl. Price 25 cents.

82. Correlation papers—Cretaceous, by Charles A. White. 1891. 8°. 273 pp. 3 pl. Price 20 cents.

83. Correlation papers—Eocene, by William Bullock Clark. 1891. 8°. 173 pp. 2 pl. Price 15 cents.

91. Record of North American Geology for 1890, by Nelson Horatio Darton. 1891. 8°. 88 pp. Price 10 cents.

In preparation:

92. The Compressibility of Liquids, by Carl Barus.

93. Some insects of special interest from Florissant, Colorado, by S. H. Scudder.

94. The Mechanism of Solid Viscosity, by Carl Barus.

— Correlation papers—Neocene, by W. H. Dall and G. D. Harris.

— Correlation papers—Jura-Trias, by I. C. Russell.

— Correlation papers—Pleistocene, by T. C. Chamberlin.

— Correlation papers—Algonkian and Archean, by C. R. Van Hise.

— The Eruptive and Sedimentary Rocks on Pigeon Point, Minnesota, and their contact phenomena, by W. S. Bayley.

— A Bibliography of Paleobotany, by David White.

STATISTICAL PAPERS.

Mineral Resources of the United States, 1882, by Albert Williams, jr. 1883. 8°. xvii, 813 pp. Price 50 cents.

Mineral Resources of the United States, 1883 and 1884, by Albert Williams, jr. 1885. 8°. xiv, 1016 pp. Price 60 cents.

Mineral Resources of the United States, 1885. Division of Mining Statistics and Technology. 1886. 8°. vii, 576 pp. Price 40 cents.

Mineral Resources of the United States, 1886, by David T. Day. 1887. 8°. viii, 813 pp. Price 50 cents.

Mineral Resources of the United States, 1887, by David T. Day. 1888. 8°. vii, 832 pp. Price 50 cents.

Mineral Resources of the United States, 1888, by David T. Day. 1890. 8°. vii, 652 pp. Price 50 cents.

In preparation:

Mineral Resources of the United States, 1889 and 1890.

The money received from the sale of these publications is deposited in the Treasury, and the Secretary of the Treasury declines to receive bank checks, drafts, or postage stamps; all remittances, therefore, must be by POSTAL NOTE or MONEY ORDER, made payable to the Librarian of the U. S. Geological Survey, or in CURRENCY, for the exact amount. Correspondence relating to the publications of the Survey should be addressed

TO THE DIRECTOR OF THE
UNITED STATES GEOLOGICAL SURVEY,
WASHINGTON, D. C.

WASHINGTON, D. C., *December*, 1891.

UNITED STATES GEOLOGICAL SURVEY

J. W. POWELL, DIRECTOR

CORRELATION PAPERS

EOCENE

BY

WILLIAM BULLOCK CLARK

WASHINGTON
GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
1891

CONTENTS.

	Page.
Letter of transmittal	9
Outline of this paper	11
Preface	13
Introduction	15
Atlantic and Gulf Coast region	17
Preliminary remarks	17
Historical sketch	17
General boundaries	38
Stratigraphical and paleontological characteristics	39
General remarks	39
New Jersey	40
Delaware	43
Maryland	43
Virginia	46
North Carolina	48
South Carolina	50
Georgia	54
Florida	55
Alabama	57
Mississippi	66
Tennessee	70
Kentucky	71
Illinois	73
Missouri	73
Arkansas	74
Louisiana	75
Texas	76
Correlation of deposits	79
New Jersey	80
Maryland	80
Virginia	80
North Carolina	81
South Carolina	82
Georgia	82
Florida	82
Alabama	83
Mississippi	83
Mississippi embayment	83
Louisiana	84
Texas	84
Tabular representation of the Geological range of the Eocene in the Atlantic and Gulf Coast region	85

Page.

Atlantic and Gulf Coast region—Continued.
Provisional division into provinces 85
New Jersey province 85
Maryland-Virginia province 86
Carolina-Georgia province 87
Gulf province 87
Comparisons with European deposits 88
Appendix 90
The Brandon formation 90
Vermont 92
Pennsylvania 93
Georgia 93
Pacific Coast region 95
Preliminary remarks 95
Historical sketch 96
Stratigraphical and paleontological characteristics 100
Tejon group 100
Puget group 107
Grounds for the reference of the Tejon and Puget groups to the Eocene 108
Interior region 111
Preliminary remarks 111
Historical sketch 111
Stratigraphical and paleontological characteristics 131
General remarks 131
Laramie group 132
Fort Union beds 135
Bear River Estuary beds 135
Arapaho beds 135
Denver beds 136
Middle Park beds 137
Puerco beds 137
Wasatch group 139
Green River group 140
Wind River group 140
Manti beds 141
Amyzon beds 141
Bridger group 141
Huerfano beds 142
Uinta group 143
Summary of correlative evidence 144
Table showing the relative position of the Interior deposits in the Eocene series 146
Bibliography 148
Atlantic and Gulf Coast region 148
Pacific Coast region 155
Interior region 156
Index 161

ILLUSTRATIONS.

		Page.
Plate	I. Map of Alabama, showing the distribution of Eocene strata.....	60
	II. Distribution of the Eocene in the United States	146

LETTER OF TRANSMITTAL.

U. S. GEOLOGICAL SURVEY,
DIVISION OF GEOLOGIC CORRELATION,
Washington, D. C., June 1, 1891.

SIR: I have the honor to transmit herewith an essay by Dr. William B. Clark on the Eocene of the United States, prepared for publication as a bulletin.

The Division of Geologic Correlation was created for the purpose of summarizing existing knowledge with reference to the geologic formations of North America, and especially of the United States; of discussing the correlation of the formations found in different parts of the country with one another, and with formations in other countries; and of discussing the principles of geologic correlation in the light of American phenomena. The formations of each geologic period were assigned to some student already well acquainted with them, and it was arranged that he should expand his knowledge by study of the literature and by field examination of classic localities, and embody his results in an essay. The general plan of the work has been set forth on page 16 of the Ninth Annual Report of the Survey, and on pages 108 to 113 of the Tenth Annual Report, as well as in a letter of transmittal to Bulletin No. 80 of the Survey.

The present essay is the fourth of a series resulting from this work. The first, prepared by Prof. Henry S. Williams, pertains to the formations of the Carboniferous and Devonian periods, and constitutes Bulletin No. 80; the second, prepared by Mr. C. D. Walcott, pertains to the formations of the Cambrian, and constitutes Bulletin No. 81; the third, prepared by Dr. C. A. White, pertains to the formations of the Cretaceous, and constitutes Bulletin No. 82. The present essay is closely related to the one which follows it in the series, an essay by Dr. William H. Dall on the formations of the Neocene, Bulletin No. 84.

Dr. Clark has devoted himself chiefly to the correlation and systematic presentation of published material and opinions bearing on correlation of the formations of the Eocene. He finds that the marine faunas of the Atlantic and Gulf coasts permit a separation of the

Eocene as a whole from formations belonging to earlier and later periods with a high degree of confidence, but that with present evidence the lines of separation are not sharply drawn among the marine and fresh-water formations of the Pacific Coast and the Interior region. The correlation of the individual formations one with another has not yet been satisfactorily made throughout the Atlantic and Gulf Coast, constituting the district best known, and still less has this been found practicable when comparison is extended to the Interior and Pacific regions.

Very respectfully, your obedient servant,

G. K. GILBERT,
Geologist in Charge.

Hon. J. W. POWELL,
Director.

OUTLINE OF THIS PAPER.

This essay comprises, first, a general discussion of the limitations of the term Eocene as employed in American geology. The two-fold character of the Tertiary (1. Eocene, 2. Neocene) in America is insisted on.

After a somewhat extended review of the literature, in which the various opinions upon disputed points are especially considered, a general study of the stratigraphical, paleontological, and topographical characteristics of the Eocene in the various portions of the country is undertaken.

A division of the Eocene of the United States into three distinct regions is made—

1. Atlantic and Gulf Coast region.
2. Pacific Coast region.
3. Interior region.

Following a study of the stratigraphical relations of the Eocene of the Atlantic and Gulf Coast region, an attempt is made to correlate the very diverse formations of this great area. Four provinces are provisionally established (1. New Jersey province, 2. Maryland-Virginia province, 3. Carolina-Georgia province, 4. Gulf province), though fuller knowledge may break down their bounds. The general similarity of the deposits and their fossils to extra-American Eocene is shown, but detailed correlation is not considered feasible.

The meager knowledge of the Pacific Coast Eocene precludes any general discussion of the stratigraphical and paleontological relations of that horizon. The local peculiarities, shown both in fossils and deposits, are referred to, and the close relationship existing between the Eocene and Cretaceous is dwelt upon. Their separation is a matter of some uncertainty with our present information. Certain points of identity with Eocene deposits elsewhere are mentioned. Two groups of strata are recognized, one marine (Tejon group), the other brackish (Puget group).

The remarkable conditions under which the deposits of the Interior region were accumulated and the interesting fauna and flora that they afford are fully discussed in the final division of the essay. The Lara-

mie problem, although more fully presented by Dr. White in his paper upon the Cretaceous, is here referred to, and facts are given to show that the Laramie is probably in part Eocene. The conflict between the evidence afforded by animals and plants is stated and the consequent hindrance to satisfactory correlation is shown. The general relations of the fauna and flora of the Eocene of the Interior to that of other regions is pointed out, though no attempt is made at a detailed correlation of its various members.

In conclusion, an alphabetical list of the leading articles upon the Eocene of the United States is presented.

PREFACE.

The present report is one of a series of essays in which, as authorized by the Director, "existing data affecting the problems of American geologic nomenclature should be collected and discussed." The division of the work assigned to the writer embraces that portion of the American geological column designated as the "Eocene." As the limits to be assigned to this horizon have been variously determined by different geologists, the discussion of its delimitation forms an important feature of the essay. Furthermore, the divisions into which the Eocene has been separated have each received many different names and boundaries, and have been variously correlated by those who have examined the different areas of their occurrence or who have employed one or the other of the various classes of paleontological data that the deposits afford.

That a wide variance in the opinions of geologists upon Eocene stratigraphy should prevail is not surprising, but oftentimes the extreme meagerness of obtainable information on important points renders a critical comparison of their views impossible. At every point the insufficiency of existing knowledge has been forcibly shown as the investigation has proceeded.

In the preparation of the essay I have been necessarily guided largely by the published opinions of others, which I have endeavored, as far as possible, to arrange logically and correlate with one another.

Although the facts employed have thus been, in the main, acquired from the literature, I have nevertheless had an opportunity of personally examining extensive areas of the Atlantic Coast region from New Jersey to Georgia, together with the more typical localities of the Interior. As the object of the report, however, is to present a summary of existing knowledge rather than to give the results of original research, the investigations made have had largely for their aim the acquirement of a general acquaintance with the leading features of Eocene stratigraphy and the possible reconciliation of conflicting statements.

I wish especially to thank Dr. C. A. White, of the U. S. Geological Survey, for many valuable suggestions that have been kindly given during the preparation of this report. Thanks are likewise due to Dr. Whitman Cross, and Dr. W. H. Dall for much important information. Of special value in the preparation of this essay has been Prof. Heilprin's "Contributions to the Tertiary Geology and Paleontology of the United States," from which frequent quotations have been made.

THE EOCENE OF THE UNITED STATES.

By William B. Clark.

INTRODUCTION.

The Eocene of the United States is widely represented both in the Coastal and the Interior portions of the country. Formed in the several areas under very different conditions, it exhibits clearly defined dissimilarities in structure and in fossils. Marine and brackish-water strata, with their attendant lithological and paleontological characteristics, by which the presence or close proximity of the open sea is attested, prevail generally throughout the Coastal regions. In the Interior, on the other hand, the sediments were deposited in great fresh-water lakes, that admitted of the accumulation of beds that equal or surpass in extent those of the ocean border, and in which are entombed the remains of lacustrine life. A natural division, therefore, of the Eocene deposits into a Coastal Province and an Interior Province may be made. Furthermore, the coast regions of the Atlantic and Pacific borders are so clearly limited geographically, and at the same time present such widely varying stratigraphical relations and fossil remains, that they merit separate consideration.

On stratigraphical and geographical grounds, then, the Eocene of the United States will be treated in the succeeding portions of this paper under the three divisions above outlined:

I. The Atlantic and Gulf Coast region.
II. The Pacific Coast region.
III. The Interior region.

Before proceeding further with their consideration it becomes necessary to outline, in a general way, the limits of the term Eocene as employed in the present essay. As one of the eleven classificatory units established by the U. S. Geological Survey to designate the several time periods in American geological history, it has equal value with the terms Cretaceous and Neocene, the names adopted for the preceding and succeeding divisions, respectively. Together with the Neocene, it constitutes what is frequently denominated the Tertiary, and individually includes those deposits that have been hitherto described in Amer-

ican literature as Eocene and Oligocene. These latter terms, as indicating divisions of the lower Tertiary, have no place in the nomenclature of American geology, however applicable they may be found for European formations. The Tertiary strata of America, on both stratigraphical and paleontological grounds, may be best divided into two groups. The term Eocene, which is retained as equivalent to Lower Tertiary, may or may not coincide with the division so designated by European geologists.

The attempt at a detailed correlation of American formations with European, so often made in the past on insufficient data, is greatly to be deprecated. The Tertiary strata of America, deposited under conditions peculiar to themselves, merit consideration upon those characteristics rather than upon features typical for other and far distant regions. Certainly not until the strata have been much more exhaustively studied will it be possible even to approximate to an accurate correlation of the leading divisions of the American Tertiary with those of other lands.

In the treatment of the subject in the pages of this paper the Eocene, so far as practicable, will be separated into three divisions: (1) Lower. (2) Middle. (3) Upper. Although in many localities too little is known of the deposits, due to the partial representation of the series, to make an accurate determination possible, yet where best developed a triple division is the most natural.

More complete observations will doubtless clear up many points that are now obscure, and enable a correlation to be made of dissimilar deposits in contiguous areas that at present defy comparison. Until such exhaustive investigations have been made many discrepancies in our knowledge of American Tertiary geology must continue to exist.

ATLANTIC AND GULF COAST REGION.

PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

The Atlantic and Gulf Coast region, as regards its geographical extent, its stratigraphical diversity, and its copious literature far exceeds in importance the other Eocene areas. It stretches as an almost continuous belt along our eastern coast from New Jersey to Texas, and has been variously considered in official reports of the several States and in numerous articles scattered through scientific journals. Wide differences of opinion have prevailed among the various writers, as regards the geographical and stratigraphical limits of the Eocene, as will be set forth in the historical sketch.

In the following pages the stratigraphical relations of the Eocene are discussed in considerable detail, and the leading sections for each State given with their typical fossils. The topographical characteristics, although greatly modified by later deposits, are yet sufficiently distinctive in many instances to demand attention.

An extended correlation of the Eocene deposits of the Atlantic and Gulf Coast region is generally unsatisfactory, although a more or less accurate reference of the strata to a relative position in the series may usually be made.

The fauna, in different portions of the area, shows marked variations, but is as yet too imperfectly understood to warrant a division of the Atlantic and Gulf Coast region into established provinces. A provisional separation is, however, attempted. When further correlation is made by comparison with European formations the task is still more difficult and the results of correspondingly less value. To each of these subjects a special chapter will be devoted.

HISTORICAL SKETCH.

The earlier writers upon the geology of the North American continent dwelt exclusively upon the general relations of the strata, and included the entire Upper Mesozoic and Cenozoic series of the coastal plain in the "alluvial formation." Later others, whose personal investigations or study had extended to an examination of the geology of foreign lands, endeavored to correlate upon lithological grounds the various formations of the coastal area with the minuter divisions established in Europe. Recognizing the futility of such detailed correlation before a knowledge of the fossils of the several horizons had been acquired, Conrad, Morton, Say, Lea, and others proceeded with marked industry

to describe the rich fauna that the deposits afforded. Based upon this work, many important papers appeared, dealing either with the relations of local deposits or the general features of the entire coastal region. The State geological surveys, during the same time, made more or less complete examinations of their respective territories, presenting us with data relating to the stratigraphy. In short, during the last half century the activity displayed in every other field of American geology has not been wanting in this, the eastern Tertiary belt, if the numerous publications are a criterion. Unfortunately, the results as a whole have not been as valuable as in many other lines of investigation, although many marked exceptions might be cited.

In the historical sketch that follows the leading articles and reports bearing upon the different epochs in the evolution of our knowledge of the Eocene will be considered, though much of value must of necessity be hurriedly passed over.

The first important contribution appeared in 1809, when William Maclure[1] read before the American Philosophical Society at Philadelphia his "Observations on the Geology of the United States," in which the entire coastal plain is referred to the alluvial formation, the fourth of the grand divisions of the geological column according to the Wernerian classification which Maclure adopted. The general limits of the region are given, and the shell deposits, limestone, and buhrstone are referred to, although it is evident that the author was ignorant of their stratigraphical position or taxonomic importance. Maclure subsequently revised and enlarged the work, which appeared in book form[2] in 1817, and in the Transactions of the American Philosophical Society for the same year.[3]

A few years subsequent to the appearance of Maclure's articles H. H. Hayden published a volume of "Geological Essays" (1820) in which an explanation is given of the great accumulation of "alluvial deposits" in the eastern and southern portions of the United States, and the stratigraphy of the region is described in much greater detail than by his predecessor. Reference is made to the wide distribution of fossil shells, and vertebrate remains, and many localities are cited.

A second work of the same general character, so far as it relates to the geology, was published in 1822, by Parker Cleveland, entitled "An Elementary Treatise on Mineralogy and Geology," in which, on page 785, under "Remarks on the Geology of the United States Explanatory of the Subjoined Geological Map," the author defines the limits of the "alluvial deposits," and in general terms describes their lithological character.

[1] Am. Phil. Soc. Trans., vol. 6, 1809, pp. 411-428. A translation appeared in the Journal de Physique, vol. 69, 1809, pp. 204-213, and vol. 72, 1811, pp. 137-165.

[2] Observations on the Geology of the United States of America, etc. By William Maclure, Philadelphia, 1817, 8vo., 130 pp.

[3] Am. Phil. Soc. Trans., new ser., vol. 1, 1817, pp. 1-92. Also Leonard's Zeitschrift, Band 1, 1826, pp. 124-128.

Before the publication of the latter work, articles descriptive of local points in the stratigraphy had appeared, chiefly as communications to the American Journal of Science and Arts.[1] Of importance among these is a paper by Elias Cornelius in which the limits of the alluvial formation of the Mississippi are outlined and potent reasons given for its extension beyond the boundaries assigned by Maclure.

Samuel Akerly, in an essay published in New York in 1820, discusses the "alluvial deposits" of northern New Jersey. In this paper the marl beds, together with some of their fossils, are described, but no evidence is adduced that the author recognized their taxonomic position.

In volume 3 of the American Journal of Science two articles appeared: The first by John Dickson,[2] on the geology of parts of North and South Carolina; the second by Dr. Troost,[3] on the stratigraphy of the region about the Magothy River, Anne Arundel County, Maryland.

James Pierce, in a "Notice of the Alluvial District of New Jersey,"[4] published in 1823, describes the marl deposits of Monmouth County.

By far the most important contribution to the stratigraphy of the coastal plain that had up to that time appeared was made by Prof. John Finch in a "Geological Essay on the Tertiary Formations in America,"[5] in the American Journal of Science and Arts for 1824. This was the first attempt at a correlation of the deposits of the coastal plain on scientific grounds, and although thus early in the history of the subject, minute comparisons, which are always unsatisfactory, were made, yet the knowledge of American Tertiary formations was materially advanced. The author says:

> In America an immense tract of country, extending from Long Island to the Sea of Mexico, and from 30 to 200 miles in width, is called an alluvial formation. From an examination of fossils brought from that quarter of the United States, from a personal inspection of some of its strata, and the perusal of most of the publications which bear a reference to it, I wish to suggest that what is termed the alluvial formation in the geological maps of Messrs. Maclure and Cleveland is identical and contemporaneous with the newer Secondary and Tertiary formations of France, England, Spain, Germany, Italy, Hungary, Poland, Iceland, Egypt, and Hindostan.

The deposits, which will be discussed in a later portion of this report, as exhibited in New Jersey, Maryland, on the James River, Virginia, on the Santee River and at Orangeburg, South Carolina, at Shell Bluff, on the Savannah River in Georgia, and at numerous localities in Alabama and Mississippi are considered in greater or less detail, and an attempted correlation made with one another and with European strata. In short, the author states that—

> Many more instances might be advanced to establish the identity of what has been called the alluvial district in America with the Tertiary formation of England and

[1] Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 1, 1819, pp. 214-226, 317-331.
[2] Ibid., vol. 3, 1821, pp. 1-5.
[3] Ibid., vol. 3, 1821, pp. 8-15.
[4] Ibid., vol. 6, 1823, pp. 237-242.
[5] Ibid., vol. 7, 1824, pp. 31-43.

the continent of Europe. The fossil shells from the various beds would not, perhaps, be exactly like those of Europe, but a sufficient number would be found so to establish their relation and order of succession.

In the same volume of the American Journal, Prof. Edward Hitchcock[1] describes the presence of the "Plastic Clay formation" on Martha's Vineyard and the Elizabeth Islands, an attempt at detailed correlation that is not supported by facts as we now interpret them.

During 1824 and 1825 Olmsted's "Report on the Geology of North Carolina" appeared, and a review[2] of the same in the American Journal in 1828. The shell marl of the Neuse is herein described, together with its fossils.

During the year 1825 Jer. Van Rensselaer delivered a course of lectures in the New York Athenæum, on geology, that were subsequently published in book form.[3] The author adopted the classification proposed by Finch, although he confined his descriptions to the more northern representatives of the Tertiary series.

On page 34 of "Mills's Statistics of South Carolina" (1826) reference is made to the limestones of the Santee and Savannah Rivers, which contain "many oyster shells of uncommon size, and different from those now found near our shores." An occurrence of a shell deposit at Orangeburg is described in this work in considerable detail, and the general geological characteristics of the region are given.

The American Journal for 1826 contains a communication by James Pierce[4] "On the shell-marl region of the eastern parts of Virginia and Maryland," in which reference is made to the river sections on the James and Potomac, and to the "shell rock" at Upper Marlboro, Maryland.

In volume 13 of the same journal Mr. S. Porter,[5] in a letter to Prof. Silliman, gives some valuable information in regard to the shell deposits of Alabama; and Elisha Mitchell[6] presents still more detailed statements in regard to the stratigraphy of similar strata in South Carolina.

In notes[7] by Lardner Vanuxem, arranged by Dr. S. G. Morton for publication in the Journal of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, the attempt is made to more accurately define the limits of the Tertiary. The author states that much that had been designated by that name properly belongs to other formations.

Up to the year 1830 all investigations upon the stratigraphy of the Tertiary had been carried on in the main independently of a study of its fossils. Generic similarities had been cited as grounds for correlation, and although this aided largely in determining the limits of the Tertiary itself, further subdivisions were impracticable.

---

[1] Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 7, 1824, pp. 240-248.
[2] Ibid., vol. 14, 1828, pp. 230-251.
[3] Lectures on Geology, 1825, 8vo., 356 pp.
[4] Ibid., vol. 11, 1826, pp. 54-59.
[5] Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 13, 1828, pp. 77-79.
[6] Ibid., 1828, pp. 336-347.
[7] Geological observations on the Secondary, Tertiary, and Alluvial formations of the Atlantic coast of the United States of America. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Jour., vol. 6, 1828, pp. 59-71

With the publication of Conrad's article[1] "On the Geology and Organic Remains of a part of the Peninsula of Maryland," with an appendix containing descriptions of new species of fossil shells, a new era in the investigation of the Atlantic and Gulf Coast strata was inaugurated. It is true that Say[2] had described several Tertiary species, but, as stated in Conrad's paper, he did not "draw any geological inferences from the organic remains examined." Conrad from the first applied the paleontological evidence he possessed to an interpretation of the stratigraphy; and although many of his conclusions were erroneous, still the knowledge of the geology of the coastal plain was very materially advanced. In this first paper such well known early Tertiary forms as *Turritella Mortoni*, *Cucullæa gigantea*, and *Crassatella alæformis* are figured and described, and the presence of *Venericardia planicosta* Lamarck is also noted. Making use of the data afforded by these investigations, the strata at Fort Washington were correlated with the London Clay of England.

In 1832 Conrad published an important work on the "Fossil Shells of the Tertiary Formations of North America,"[3] which was followed in 1833 by a description[4] of a large number of new forms from Claiborne, Alabama. In the latter article the position of the white limestone below the Claiborne sands is affirmed.

The same year Lea published his "Contributions to Geology"[5] in which he treats of the general features of the Atlantic and Gulf Coast Tertiary, but especially considers the Claiborne section, describing 219 new species. The Claiborne beds are correlated with those at Fort Washington, Maryland. In regard to their European equivalence, the author says:

> After a careful examination of a great number of genera and species from the Tertiary of Claiborne, Alabama, I had no hesitation in referring them to the same period as the London Clay of England, and the Calcaire Grossier of Paris. * * * This part of the Tertiary formation * * * is called by Mr. Lyell the Eocene period.

This is the first application of the term Eocene to American deposits.

About the same time Withers gave in the American Journal[6] the general features of the section at St. Stephen's Bluff, Alabama.

A year later, in "Observations on the Tertiary and more recent formations of a portion of the Southern States,"[7] Conrad adopted the term Eocene for the well known sections at Fort Washington, Maryland; Eutaw Springs, South Carolina; Shell Bluff, Savannah River, Georgia; Claiborne, Alabama, and many intermediate points. In an

---

[1] Philadelphia Acad. Sci., Jour., vol. 6, 1830, pp. 205–217.

[2] Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 1, 1819, pp. 381–387; vol. 2, 1820, pp. 34–45. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Jour., vol. 4, 1824, pp. 124–155 (*Ostrea compressirostra*).

[3] 8°, 56 pp. 16 pls., Philadelphia, 1832.

[4] Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 23, 1833, pp. 339–346, 405.

[5] Contributions to Geology, by I. Lea. 8vo. 1833. 227 pp., 6 pls.

[6] Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 24, 1833, pp. 187–189.

[7] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Jour. vol. 7, 1834, pp. 116–157.

appendix to this paper many new fossils are described. A diagram representing the bluff at Claiborne is added, in which the white limestone is again placed below the fossiliferous sands. Conrad quotes Lyell on European formations as stating that no secondary fossils are found in the Eocene, yet his own observations at Claiborne warranted him in claiming the admixture of a few species. He further considers the Eocene of Claiborne older than the Eocene of Fort Washington, Maryland, and of Europe.

Prof. Chas. U. Shepard published in the American Journal of Science the same year "Geological Observations upon Alabama, Georgia, and Florida,"[1] in which several of the Eocene localities of those States are described.

Three other articles appeared at this time by Harlan,[2] McGuire,[3] and W. B. Rogers,[4] that added somewhat to the knowledge of local deposits. The paper by Rogers is especially interesting, as the first of a series of articles and reports on the geology of Virginia that give us a clearer insight into the Tertiary geology of that State than of any other on the Atlantic seaboard.

About the same time Dr. Morton published a "Synopsis of the organic remains in the ferruginous sand formations of the United States," in which several species from the "white limestone" of South Carolina are included through a misconception of the proper stratigraphical position of that formation.

In 1835 Conrad added two more papers[5] on the Atlantic Tertiary region. In the transactions of the Geological Society of Pennsylvania he says:

> Having traced the burr stone of Georgia, the fossilferous sands of Claiborne, Alabama, and a calcareous clay near Orangeburg, South Carolina, to common or synchronous origin, I immediately perceived that the deposit at Upper Marlboro was a link in the chain of older Tertiary beds.

Reference is made in both articles to the commingling of the Cretaceous and Eocene forms, a point subsequently more fully considered. It was held, at the same time, worthy of mention that no fossils had been found common to the Eocene and Miocene.

H. B. Croom[6] published an account of early Tertiary fossils found in Craven County, North Carolina, in the American Journal of Science of the same year.

William B. Rogers published in the Farmers' Register for 1835, "Further observations on the greensand and calcareous marl of Virginia"[7] The marked lithological similarity of the beds to the greensand of New

[1] Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 25, 1834, pp. 162–173.
[2] Am. Phil. Soc. Trans., new ser., vol. 4, 1834, pp. 397–403.
[3] Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 26, 1834, pp. 93–98.
[4] Farmers' Register, 1834. Reprinted in Geology of the Virginias, 1884, pp. 3–9.
[5] Pennsylvania, Geol. Soc. Trans., 1835, pp. 335–341; Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 28, 1835, pp. 104–111.
[6] Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 27, 1835, pp. 168–171.
[7] Reprinted in Geology of the Virginias, 1884, pp. 11–20.

Jersey is mentioned in this article, but the character of the fossils is shown to place those of Virginia in the Eocene.

For the next few years Professor Rogers devoted himself to a most careful study of the Tertiary geology of Virginia, and as State geologist published annual reports [1] giving detailed accounts of the progress of the survey. Numerous sections of early Tertiary marl and greensand are herein described, and lists of characteristic fossils are given. As these publications afford the most important literature upon the geology of Virginia, a consideration of the details will be reserved for a later portion of this report.

In conjunction with his brother, H. D. Rogers, the same writer published in the Transactions of the American Philosophical Society of Philadelphia a series of articles entitled, "Contributions to the geology of the Tertiary Formations of Virginia," [2] that, beyond the description of several new species of early Tertiary shells, cover much the same ground as the annual reports.

During this same period, Mr. T. A. Conrad contributed several papers [3] of importance, first among them being a special treatise on Tertiary shells,[4] that appeared in 1838.

A point much discussed in southern Tertiary stratigraphy was considered by Conrad in the American Journal of Science for 1840, under the title "On the geognostic position of the Zeuglodon or Basilosaurus of Harlan." [5] The statement is made that the Zeuglodon occurs "in the limestone of Alabama immediately under the lower Tertiary fossiliferous strata," and further that "this formation seems to fill the chasm which in Europe has been often noticed to occur between the Secondary and Tertiary series."

While Prof. William B. Rogers and T. A. Conrad were conducting their important investigations, others were not idle. H. D. Rogers, as State geologist for New Jersey, published reports in 1836 and 1840, in which the marls of Monmouth County at Shark River and Squankum are described and referred to the "upper Secondary."

In Delaware the State geological survey, under J. C. Booth, published two annual reports of work done during 1837–'38, which were subsequently (1841) issued in enlarged form as a "Memoir."

In Maryland a series of annual reports, extending from 1833 to 1840, were made by the State geologist, J. T. Ducatel, to the legislature. The sections exhibited at numerous points in the Tertiary area are given in these reports, together with lists of fossils.

In 1836, J. R. Cotting published a "Report of a Geological and Agri-

[1] Reports were published for the years 1835–1841, inclusive. Reprinted in Geology of the Virginias, 1884, pp. 21–546.

[2] Am. Phil. Soc., Trans., new ser., vol. 5, 1835, pp. 319–342; vol. 6, 1837–1839, pp. 347–370, 371–377. Abstract in Amer. Phil. Soc. Proc., vol. 1, 1840, pp. 88–90.

[3] Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 35, 1839, pp. 237–251; vol. 38, 1840, pp. 86–93. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Jour., vol. 8, 1841, p. 190. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol 1, 1841, p. 33.

[4] Fossils of the Tertiary Formations of the United States, 8vo., 1838, 89 pp., 49 pls.

[5] Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 38, 1840, pp. 381–382.

cultural Survey of Burke and Richmond counties, Georgia," in which the character of the Tertiary deposits is reviewed in considerable detail, though the author had little conception of their stratigraphical relations.

The occurrence of early Tertiary strata in Arkansas is recorded in Featherstonhaugh's "Geological Report of an Examination made in 1834 of the Elevated Country between the Missouri and Red rivers."

Nine biennial geological reports were presented by G. Troost, the State geologist, to the legislature of Tennessee, between the years 1831–'47. The geology of the eastern portion of the State is in the main considered, though now and then references are made to the later formations of the west. The information conveyed is, however, of slight importance, so far as the older Tertiary is concerned. Very much the same remarks apply to W. W. Mather's "Report on the Geological Reconnaissance of Kentucky, made in 1838."

The activity manifested by the geological surveys of the States just mentioned in the study of the Tertiary deposits, was accompanied by much private investigation, the result of which appeared in numerous articles in the American Journal of Science and Proceedings of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia.

Some of the more striking features of the topography and geology of Florida are pointed out by Maj. Henry Whiting, in a paper entitled "Cursory Remarks upon East Florida in 1838,"[1] that was published in 1839.

In 1841 Edmund Ravenal[2] and Henry C. Lea[3] published descriptions of new Eocene fossils from South Carolina and Alabama, respectively.

An article by James T. Hodge, on "Observations on the Secondary and Tertiary Formations of the Southern Atlantic States,"[4] followed in the succeeding volume of the American Journal of Science. So far as the Eocene is concerned, his observations chiefly related to points in North and South Carolina, and to Shell Bluff and Jacksonboro, in Georgia. In this article the limestone and conglomerate on the Northeast Cape Fear River and at Wilmington are held to be an "upper Secondary" deposit, interposed between the Cretaceous and Eocene.

Some interesting points in the Eocene stratigraphy of Virginia were reported by Prof. Tuomey, in 1842,[5] from a shaft sunk at Evergreen, on the James River.

In the Proceedings of the National Institution for the Promotion of Science, Conrad contributed further "Observations on a portion of the Atlantic Tertiary Region, with a description of new species of Organic Remains."[6] Especial importance was at that time attached to the fact

[1] Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 35, 1839, pp. 47–64.
[2] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Jour., vol. 8, 1841, pp. 333–336.
[3] Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 40, 1841, pp. 92–103.
[4] Ibid., vol. 41, 1841, pp. 332–348.
[5] Ibid., vol. 43, 1842, p. 187.
[6] Second Bulletin, 1842, pp. 191–194. (See Rogers, Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 47, 1844, p. 264.)

that the author found what he considered proof of the commingling of Secondary and Tertiary types. He presented a list of forms that were supposed to show the connection of the "white limestone" of Alabama to the "greensand formation" of New Jersey.

The first of Lyell's contributions to the literature of the Eastern Tertiary belt appeared in the Proceedings of the Geological Society of London, for 1842. His conclusions were derived from personal observations, and were of special value from his wide knowledge of the Tertiary in other portions of the globe. He succeeded in explaining many hitherto imperfectly understood points in American Tertiary stratigraphy.[1] The narrative of this first report contains the following statement:

> Having examined the most important Cretaceous deposits in New Jersey, Mr. Lyell proceeded, in the autumn of 1841 to investigate the Tertiary strata of Virginia, the Carolinas and Georgia, with a view to satisfy himself, first, how far the leading divisions of the Tertiary strata along the Atlantic border of the United States agree in aspect and organic contents with those of Europe; and secondly, to ascertain whether any rocks containing fossils of a character intermediate between those of the Cretaceous and the Eocene beds really exist. The conclusions at which he arrived from his extensive survey are given briefly as follows:
>
> (1) The only Tertiary formations which the author saw agree well in their geological types with the Eocene and Miocene beds of England and France; (2) he found no Secondary fossils in those rocks which have been called upper Secondary, and supposed to constitute a link between the Cretaceous and Tertiary formations.

Each of the above mentioned States was at this time separately considered and a careful description given of every locality visited.

During the next few years six important contributions by the same writer to the Tertiary geology of the eastern United States, appeared in the Proceedings and Quarterly Journal of the Geological Society of London. In most cases special points in the stratigraphy, that had been the subject of discussion by American geologists, were taken up, and much light thrown upon the questions at issue.

In regard to the occurrence of early Tertiary strata on Marthas Vineyard, as claimed by Prof. Hitchcock[2] in 1824, when the deposits at Gay Head were correlated with the "Plastic and London clay of Alum Bay," Mr. Lyell[3] thought that the evidence was altogether in favor of considering them Miocene.

In an article on the "Cretaceous of New Jersey and other parts of the United States bordering on the Atlantic"[4] the lithological similarity of the Eocene and the Miocene farther south to the Cretaceous of New Jersey, and the necessity of fossils for the identification of the various green sand horizons, are clearly set forth, thus substantiating the earlier claims of Rogers.

A later communication "On the Miocene Tertiary strata of Mary-

[1] Geol. Soc., London, Proc., vol. 3, 1842, pp. 735–742.
[2] Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 7, 1824, pp. 240–248.
[3] Geol. Soc. London, Proc., vol. 4, 1843, pp. 31–33.
[4] Ibid, Proc., vol. 4, 1844, pp. 301–306.

land, Virginia, and North and South Carolina,"[1] contains numerous sections in which the Eocene occurs.

Immediately following the last paper in both the "Proceedings" and the "Journal," are the "Observations" of Mr. Lyell "on the White Limestone and other Eocene or Older Tertiary formations of Virginia, South Carolina, and Georgia."[2] After stating that the Eocene of Virginia "consists in great part of green sand and marl, containing green earth * * * like that which characterizes the Cretaceous strata of New Jersey," he adds:

> Farther south, in North and South Carolina and in Georgia, the Eocene formation acquires a larger development and a new mineral type, consisting of highly calcareous white marl and white limestone, and passing upward, especially in Georgia, into red and white clays, ferruginous sands, with associated layers of burrstone and siliceous rock.

Speaking of the already well known Claiborne section, he states in an article "On the newer deposits of the Southern States of North America"[3] that the relationship of the deposits is different from that previously held, inasmuch as the "Nummulite limestone" occurs above the Claiborne fossiliferous sands and not below, and that the remains of the Zeuglodon are always found "in the Eocene white limestone below the level of the Nummulitic rock and above the beds which contain the greater number of perfectly preserved Eocene shells," among them *Cardita planicosta*, and *Ostrea sellæformis*. Writing[4] on the same subject a year later, he reaffirmed the position he had previously taken in this matter, showing at the same time from numerous sections the much wider application of this relationship of the strata.

During this time Lyell made four contributions[5] to the American Journal of Science, which contain in the main the same conclusions as the previously cited articles.

Murchison,[6] in his presidential address delivered to the Geological Society of London in 1843, reviewed the results of Lyell's investigations upon the "Older Tertiary" strata of America, and added his own interpretation of a few points.

During these years, due in part to Lyell's inspiring presence and valuable publications, many articles appeared from the pens of American geologists. Dr. Morton[7] found it necessary in 1842 to correct certain statements he had made in his synopsis in 1834 in regard to the occurrence of Cretaceous fossils, since the observations of Lyell had shown the deposits to be Eocene.

---

[1] Proc. Geol. Soc. London, vol. 4, 1845, pp. 547–563; and Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc. London, vol. 1, 1845, pp., 413–429.

[2] Proc. Geol. Soc. London, vol. 4, 1845, pp. 563–576; and Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc. London, vol. 1, 1845, pp. 429–442.

[3] Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc. London, vol. 2, 1846, pp. 405–410.

[4] Ibid., vol. 4, 1847, pp. 10–17.

[5] Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 47, 1844, pp. 213, 214; 2d ser., vol. 1, 1846, pp. 313–315; 2d ser., vol. 3, pp. 34–39; 2d ser., vol. 4, 1847, pp. 186–191.

[6] Proc. Geol. Soc. London, vol. 4, 1843, pp. 127–133.

[7] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Jour., vol. 8, 1842, pp. 216–227.

The following year Edmund Ruffin, director of the agricultural survey of South Carolina, presented to the legislature a report[1] in which the early Tertiary marls are given the name of the "Great Carolina bed." He states that "this great deposit has been by different geologists considered as belonging to different formations. Vanuxem first, and also Conrad and Morton afterward, supposed it the 'Upper Cretaceous.' Lyell, from recent inspection, includes it in the Eocene." He then adds: "The 'Great Carolina bed' of marl will serve every present purpose of designation and distinction as well as if it were definitely settled and the bed named either Upper Cretaceous or Eocene." Over thirty finely printed pages are devoted to a detailed description of the area occupied by these calcareous deposits and the siliceous beds along their northern margin. The stratigraphical position of the latter is not properly interpreted in this work. In short, the siliceous beds are described as overlying the calcareous deposits.

Several papers treating especially of Eocene fossils appeared during this and the succeeding year by Bulkley,[2] Conrad,[3] and Ravenel.[4]

In the "Supplemental Report of the Agricultural Survey of South Carolina for 1843," Prof. M. Tuomey discusses the character and geological age of the "marl in adjacent parts of North Carolina." The occurrence of the "Great Carolina bed" with its characteristic fossils is asserted from the region to the north and northeast of Wilmington. In the American Journal of Science for 1844, the same writer[5] expresses the opinion that the South Carolina formations will prove older than the Eocene of Maryland and Virginia, although he accepts Lyell's position that they are not "Upper Secondary."

In an address delivered at the meeting of the Association of American Geologists and Naturalists, held in Washington in May, 1844, Prof. H. D. Rogers presented an outline of opinions regarding American Tertiary formations,[6] in connection with a general statement of progress in American geology.

From the importance of the Zeuglodon as a charcteristic fossil of the Jackson group of the Upper Eocene, and the extended discussion which its character and geological position have hitherto occasioned, it becomes necessary to refer briefly to the extensive literature upon that subject.

Although originally described as a saurian by Dr. Harlan,[7] in 1834, under the name of Basilosaurus, its mammalian character was subse-

[1] Report of the Commencement and Progress of the Agricultural Survey of South Carolina for 1843. Columbia, 1843.

[2] Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 44, 1843, pp. 409–412.

[3] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 1, 1843, p. 310; vol. 2, 1844, pp. 173, 174.

[4] Ibid., vol. 2, 1844, pp. 96–98.

[5] Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 47, 1844, p. 117.

[6] Ibid., vol. 47, 1844, pp. 254–259.

[7] Am. Phil. Soc., Trans., new ser., vol. 4, 1834, pp. 397–403; Pennsylvania Geol. Soc., Trans., vol. 1, 1853, pp. 348–357.

quently established by Richard Owen[1] and the name Zeuglodon substituted.

Later, papers appeared by Wyman,[2] Rogers,[3] Bulkley,[4] Lister,[5] Gibbes,[6] Tuomey,[7] and others, in which the views of Owen were substantiated, and more definite information given in regard to the localities and geological horizon of the many specimens up to that time discovered.

Important contributions to the geology of the Southern States were made during the years 1846–'49. Conrad alone published eight[8] articles in which many new species of fossil shells are described, and considerable additions made to the knowledge of the stratigraphy of the Eocene in Florida and Mississippi.

In the American Journal of Science for 1846, Dr. Conrad[9] made the first attempt at correlating the "limestone" of Florida. From a study of the fossils he proposed to place it in the Upper Eocene together with "the limestone of the Savannah River in Georgia, between Savannah and Shell Bluff."

In 1848 Conrad[10] published a description of *Aturia ziczac* from the upper portion of the upper marl bed of New Jersey, and referred the marl, principally on account of the presence of this shell, to the Eocene era.

During this time Morton,[11] Bouvé,[12] Lea,[13] and Gibbes[14] described many new fossils, while Allen,[15] Couper,[16] Agassiz,[17] Tuomey,[18] Hale,[19] and Holmes[20] contributed important data relative to the stratigraphy of local areas.

Tuomey, in a "Report on the Geology of South Carolina," published in 1848, enters into a detailed description of the geology of that State, and proposes three divisions for the Eocene formation, viz: 1, Buhrstone; 2, Santee marls, and 3, Ashley and Cooper marls.

---

[1] Geol. Soc. London, Proc. vol. 3, 1839, pp. 24–28; Geol. Soc., London, Trans. 1842, pp. 69–79; Ann. Sci. Nat., vol. 12 (Zool.), 1839, pp. 222–229; Mag. Nat., vol. 3, 1839, pp. 209–213.

[2] Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 2, 1845, pp. 65–68.

[3] Ibid., p. 79.

[4] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 2, 1846, pp. 125–131.

[5] Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 2, 1846, pp. 95–96.

[6] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Jour., 2d ser., vol. 1, 1847, pp. 5–15.

[7] Ibid., pp. 16–17.

[8] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 1, 1846, pp. 209–221, 395–405; vol. 2, 1846, pp. 36–48, 124–125, 210–215, 398–400. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 3, 1846, pp. 19–27; vol. 3, 1847, pp. 280–299. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Jour., 2d ser., vol. 1, 1848, pp. 111–134.

[9] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 2, 1846, p. 47.

[10] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Jour., 2d ser., vol. 1, 1848, p. 129.

[11] Ibid., Proc., vol. 3, 1846, p. 51.

[12] Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 2, 1846, p. 192.

[13] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 4, 1848, pp. 95–107.

[14] Ibid., Jour., 2d ser., vol. 1, 1848, pp. 139–147; 1849, pp. 191–206.

[15] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 1, 1846, pp. 38–42.

[16] Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 2, 1846, pp. 123, 124.

[17] Ibid., p. 193.

[18] Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., Proc., vol. 1, 1848, pp. 32–33; Report on the Geology of South Carolina, 1848, pp. 136, 139–170, 211.

[19] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 6, 1848, pp. 354–363.

[20] Ibid., vol. 7, 1849, pp. 187–201.

Roemer, in 1849, published at Berne a general treatise upon Texas, in which he gives the first account of the occurrence of the Eocene in that State. Fossils were found sufficiently similar to those of Claiborne, Alabama, to justify him in considering the deposits of like age. Although discovered at only one locality, he expressed the opinion at that time that it was hardly probable that the Eocene was thus limited to one point, but doubtless existed as a continuous deposit across the State. He considered that the surface exposures were only prevented from being seen by overlying formations.

During 1850 papers appeared on the geology and paleontology of the Atlantic Coast Eocene by Ravenel,[1] Ruffin,[2] Gibbes,[3] Wyman,[4] Conrad,[5] and Holmes.[6]

A year later, Tuomey, in a "Notice of the Geology of the Florida Keys, and of the Southern Coast of Florida,"[7] confirmed the observations of Conrad concerning the age of the Tampa Bay limestone, and showed its wider extension.

In the same volume of the American Journal of Science, Prof. J. W. Bailey published a notice of "Silicified Polythalamia in Florida," in which he speaks of large masses possessing all the mineralogical characters of flint, occurring in the white "orbitolite limestone," which, he says, is common throughout the portion of Florida between Tampa and Palatka.[8]

In 1850 Desor discussed the equivalence of the American Tertiary at a meeting of the Boston Society of Natural History. He agreed with Prof. Rogers as to the want of a complete correspondence of American and Europaan Tertiary, and also with regard to the absence of a close correlation between the American Tertiary of different epochs.[9]

During the next few years contributions were made to the paleontology of the Eocene by Bouvé,[10] Tuomey,[11] Holmes,[12] and Conrad.[13]

Conrad,[14] in "Remarks on the Tertiary Strata of San Domingo and Vicksburg (Miss.)," states that a comparison of fossils from the two localities had resulted in the recognition of several identical forms, and from that circumstance he drew the conclusion that the strata were probably of the same age.

In a later publication entitled "Observations on the Eocene deposit

[1] Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., Proc., vol. 3, 1850, pp. 159–161.
[2] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 9, 1850, pp. 127–129.
[3] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Jour., 2d ser., vol. 1, 1850, pp. 299, 300.
[4] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 10, 1850, pp. 228–235.
[5] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Jour., 2d ser., vol. 2, 1850, pp. 39–41.
[6] Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., Proc., vol. 3, 1850, pp. 201–204.
[7] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 11, 1851, pp. 390–394.
[8] Ibid., p. 86.
[9] Boston Soc Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 3, 1850, p. 247.
[10] Ibid., vol. 4, 1851, pp. 2–4.
[11] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 6, 1852, pp. 192–194.
[12] Elliott Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 1, 1853, p. 21.
[13] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 6, 1853, pp. 316–319, 320, 321, 448, 449; vol. 7, 1854, pp. 29–31, vol. 7, 1855, pp. 257–263, 265–268, 269; vol. 9, 1857, p. 166.
[14] Ibid., vol. 6, 1852, pp. 198, 199.

of Jackson, Mississippi, etc."[1] the same author presents a table to "show the order of succession of Eocene groups." The Jackson group is placed between the Claiborne and the Vicksburg, and the "orbitolite limestone" of St. Stephen's Bluff is placed in the lower part of the Vicksburg series. From the fossils sent him Conrad came to the conclusion that the Jackson deposits contained no species in common with those of Vicksburg, and very few with those of Claiborne.

During this time Winchell,[2] Le Conte,[3] Emmons,[4] Rogers,[5] Safford,[6] and McCrady[7] contributed the results of observations that relate wholly or in part to the stratigraphy of the eastern Eocene.

During the decade 1850–'60, while so much valuable information relative to the Eocene was accumulated by private industry, the State governments were not inattentive to the importance of geological investigations of their territories.

The State Geological Survey of New Jersey, under William Kitchell, published three annual reports for 1854, 1855, and 1856, in which the descriptions of the marls in the eastern and southern parts of the State were prepared by the assistant geologist, Geo. H. Cook. As a result of his investigations, he states in the first report that "there are three distinct beds of marl," and that "the third bed includes the marls of Deal, Poplar, Shark River, and Squankum," localities that will receive later consideration. The second and third reports added nothing as to the taxonomic position of the upper marls, though the local stratigraphy had been worked out in greater detail. Although accepting the conclusions of Vanuxem and Morton that the marls of the State were Cretaceous, he wisely says that "it is felt to be a matter of much importance to know as many as possible of the fossils found here."

In Maryland the State agricultural chemist published six reports between 1850–'58, but they are of slight importance from a geological standpoint.

Prof. Emmons, in a report on the Geological Survey of North Carolina, published in 1852, considers the Eocene at some length. The outliers in the central part of the State are referred to in connection with the more extensive deposits that occupy the eastern portions. In a subsequent report, published in 1858, the special features of the Eocene are treated in much greater detail, and many sections and new species of fossils are described.

During 1856–'60 the State geologist of South Carolina, Oscar M. Lieber, presented four annual reports to the general assembly, but nothing of importance was added to the earlier contributions of Ruffin and Tuomey upon Eocene stratigraphy.

---

[1] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 7, 1855, pp. 257–263.
[2] Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., Proc., vol. 10, pt. 2, 1856, pp. 94–103.
[3] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 23, 1857, pp. 46–60.
[4] Am. Assoc. Adv., Sci., Proc., vol. 11, part 2, 1857, pp. 76–80.
[5] Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 7, 1859, pp. 60–64.
[6] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser. vol. 27, 1859, pp. 363, 364.
[7] Elliott Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 1, 1859, pp. 282, 283.

Prof. Tuomey, in the "First Biennial Report on the Geology of Alabama" (1850), considers the extent, structure, and stratigraphy of the earlier Tertiary of that State, and gives numerous typical sections and a list of fossils. A second report, finished in 1855, but on account of the death of the author not published until 1858, contains considerable new information and extended lists of fossils from well known localities.

Wailes's "Report on the Agriculture and Geology of Mississippi" appeared in 1854. The work deals largely with the economic features of the deposits, but lists and figures of characteristic fossils are given, together with the local character of the beds in which they occur.

Three years later a "Preliminary Report on the Geology and Agriculture of the State of Mississippi, by L. Harper," was published, but very little of importance was added to the stratigraphy of the Eocene.

A greatly expanded account of his geological observations in Texas is given by Prof. Roemer in "Die Kreidebildungen von Texas," published in Bonn in 1852.

The "First Report of the Geological and Agricultural Survey of Texas" was prepared by Dr. Shumard in 1859, but little attention is given in this work to the Tertiary, although reference is made to the lignite brown coal of the eastern and middle portions of the State. Nothing of importance was added to the earlier statements of Roemer.

Two reports upon the geology of Arkansas were published in 1858 and 1860 by D. D. Owen, in which several occurrences of the Eocene, with characteristic fossils, are cited. But slight attempt, however, was made at a delimitation of the Tertiary area.

Safford's first and second biennial reports on the geology of Tennessee, presented to the general assemblies of 1855 and 1857, contain a few references to "The Lignite group" which crosses the western portion of the State.

The four large quarto volumes of the Kentucky Geological Survey that was prosecuted between the years 1854 to 1859 are devoted almost exclusively to a description of the economic products of the State. The Tertiary strata are barely referred to.

Important contributions were made to the paleontology of the Eocene by Conrad,[1] Gabb,[2] Whitfield,[3] and Marsh[4] during the next decade (1860–'70).

An important paper by J. M. Safford, on the lignitic beds of the southern Tertiary, entitled "On the Cretaceous and Superior Formations of west Tennessee,"[5] appeared in the American Journal of Science

[1] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Jour., new ser., vol. 4, 1860, pp. 275–298. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 14, 1862, pp. 284–291; ibid., vol. 16, 1864, pp. 211–214. Amer. Jour. Conch., vol. 1, 1865, pp. 1–35, 137–141, 142–149, 210–212, 213–215; vol. 2, 1866, pp. 75–78, 101–103, 104–106; vol. 3, 1867, pp. 188–190. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc. vol. 17, 1865, pp. 73–75, 75, 184.

[2] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 13, 1861, pp. 367–372, Jour., new ser., vol. 5, 1862, pp. 111–179.

[3] Am. Jour. Conch., vol. 1, 1865, pp. 259–268.

[4] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser. vol. 48, 1869, pp. 397–400. Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., Proc., vol. 18, 1869, pp. 227–230.

[5] Ibid., vol. 37, 1864, pp. 360–372.

for 1864. In this article the lignite beds of the Eocene are divided into the Porters Creek group (lower) and the Orange Sand or La Grange group (upper). Overlying these is placed a third group, called the Bluff Lignite, that at that time was provisionally considered Tertiary by Safford.

In an article by Conrad "On the Eocene Lignite Formation of the United States,"[1] the upper marl of the Upper Marl Bed of New Jersey is correlated with the Brandon (Vermont) and southern lignites. The presence of such a horizon between Cretaceous and Eocene is claimed in this paper on the authority of Vanuxem and Tuomey to occur in South Carolina and Alabama, and upon that of Durand[2] and Harper in Maryland and Mississippi.

Conrad[3] proposed, in 1866, the name "Shell Bluff group" for certain strata of the Eocene he considered characterized by *Ostrea georgiana*, an oyster found at Shell Bluff, on the Savannah River, as well as "at Vicksburg * * *, in the lower part of the bluff below the Orbitolite limestone of the Jackson group."

In a communication in the succeeding volume of the American Journal of Science, Hilgard[4] takes exception to Conrad's statements and conclusions upon this point.

In this article he says that the "Orbitolite limestone of the Jackson group" is erroneous, as he knows of no case where *Orbitoides* are found below the Vicksburg strata. He further casts doubt upon the occurrence of *Ostrea georgiana* at Vicksburg. In conclusion, he says that the "Shell Bluff group" is above the Jackson and probably identical with his own "Red Bluff group."

In an article "On the Tertiary Formations of Mississippi and Alabama,"[5] the same writer says:

> I can not, therefore, with the lights before me, agree to the propriety of distinguishing as separate divisions the *Orbitoides* limestone and the Vicksburg group of fossils. * * Even the occurrence of a different species of *Orbitoides* (*O. supera*, Con.) at Vickburg can not alter the case, for the undoubted *O. Mantelli* occurs there also in the solid rock, and there are few of the characteristic fossils of the Vicksburg profile which I have not on some occasions found side by side with the *O. Mantelli* and its companions, the *Pecten Poulsoni* and *Ostrea vicksburgensis*.

He states further that Lyell and Hale were the only two observers who had hitherto comprehended the proper position of the "Zeuglodon bed" in relation to the "*Orbitoides* rock."

In "Notes on American Fossiliferous strata,"[6] published in 1869, Conrad presents some facts relative to the section at Shark River, New Jersey, and gives an account of the more interesting fossil remains found there.

---

[1] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 17, 1865, pp. 70–73. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 40, 1865, pp. 265–268.

[2] Philadelphia College of Pharmacy, Jour., vol. 5, 1834, p. 12.

[3] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 41, 1866, p. 96.

[4] Ibid., vol. 42, 1866, pp. 68–70.

[5] Ibid., vol. 43, 1867, pp. 29–41.

[6] Ibid., vol. 47, 1869, pp. 358–364.

During the period 1860 to 1870 the State governments interested themselves but little in geological surveys. The war broke up those that did exist, excepting in New Jersey, and the inauguration of new ones had hardly begun at the close of the decade.

In New Jersey George H. Cook, now appointed State geologist, prosecuted the survey of that State vigorously, and presented a report of progress for 1863, which was followed by yearly reports thereafter. In the report for 1863 he states that "a section has been surveyed across the State from the mouth of Shark River Inlet, on the Atlantic shore, to the Delaware Water Gap." The areal distribution of the Eocene, together with certain of its characteristics, is described, though its taxonomic position was but partially appreciated. In the report for 1864 an analysis of the Eocene marl is given, together with the most important localities at which it is exposed. Nothing further of importance upon Eocene geology appeared until the publication of the "Geology of New Jersey," in 1868, in which the boundaries, structure, and fossil remains of the Upper Marl Bed receive careful and detailed treatment.

In Maryland a geological survey was started under Philip T. Tyson, who published reports in 1860 and 1862. The sudden termination of the survey, after the appearance of the second report, prevented the publication of a large amount of important data that would have thrown much light upon the stratigraphy of the Maryland Eocene.

Maury's "Physical Survey of Virginia," which appeared in 1869, contains several references to the stratigraphy of the Eocene.

The later reports of Emmons at the opening of this decade, and the earlier reports of Kerr, at its close, present practically nothing new on the Eocene geology of North Carolina.

In the "First Report to the Cotton Planters' Convention of Georgia on the Agricultural Resources of Georgia" (1860), the author, Joseph Jones, gives an account of "the Tertiary lime formations" of the State. Many localities are cited where fossils had been found, and the general character of the strata in Burke and Washington Counties is dwelt upon.

Of the geological work performed under State authority during this period, the investigations of Hilgard in Mississippi and Louisiana deserve special mention. In the former his "Report on the Geology and Agriculture of the State of Mississippi (1860)" has been by far the most important contribution to its geology. In this report the early Tertiary is divided into (1) Great Northern Lignite; (2) Claiborne; (*a*) siliceous, (*b*) calcareous; (3) Jackson; (4) Vicksburg. The most detailed observations are there recorded, and from a comparative study of the fossils collected a correlation of the leading horizons of the Eocene is successfully accomplished.

Two short reports on the geology of Louisiana by the same author appeared at the close of the decade. The second or final report was not published, however, until 1873. The stratigraphy of the Eocene is

not dwelt upon very fully in these reports, but the author's conclusions are valuable from his intimate knowledge of the same formations in Mississippi.

Safford's "Geology of Tennessee" (1869), contains much of importance upon the Teritary of that State. The lignite deposits are divided into (1) Porters Creek group (provisional); (2) Orange Sand or La Grange group; (3) Bluff Lignite group.

Numerous sections and lists of plant remains are given, and the general limits of the Eocene are designated.

The second of Owen's reports on the geology of Arkansas (1860), although it appeared at the beginning of this decade, has been earlier referred to.

A valuable classificatory list of Eocene fossils was published by Conrad in 1866, in the Smithsonian Miscellaneous Collections.[1]

Some most valuable contributions to the history of the life of the Eocene period, which includes the descriptions of many new species, were presented by Conrad[2], Marsh[3], Cope[4], Lesquereux[5], and Heilprin[6], during the decade 1870–'80.

In an article on the "Geological History of the Gulf of Mexico,"[7] read before the American Association for the Advancement of Science, Hilgard presents some important conclusions as to the age of the lignite deposits of the Gulf States. He says:

> So far, indeed, from considering the predominently lignitiferous area as representing a period distinct from the older marine Tertiary, I have little doubt that the larger portion, if not all, of the beds I have heretofore designated as the northern lignitic (and Flatwood clay) group (La Grange and Porter's Creek groups of Safford) are the strict equivalents in time of the oldest marine beds observed in South Carolina and Alabama, and designated by Tuomey as the Buhrstone group ("Siliceous Claiborne" of my Mississippi Report).

He adds, further, that the lignitic facies is but slightly developed in Alabama as compared with the upper portion of the Mississippi Embayment. "In Arkansas; nevertheless, small marine beds are more liberally interspersed among the lignitic clays than is the case east of the Mississippi."

Articles by Shaler[8], Hitchcock[9], Leidy[10], Vogdes[11], Heinrich[12], and Fontaine[13], contain references to early Tertiary stratigraphy that are of

---

[1] Smithsonian Misc. Coll., vol. 7, 1866, art. 6, pp. 1–41.

[2] Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 1, 1871, pp. 468, 469; Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 24, 1872, pp. 50–55, 216, 217.

[3] Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., Proc., vol. 26, 1877, pp. 211–258.

[4] Am. Phil. Soc., Proc., vol. 11, 1870, pp. 285–294; vol. 17, 1877, pp. 82–84.

[5] Ibid., Trans., new ser., vol 13, 1870, pp. 411–433.

[6] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 31, 1879, pp. 211–216, 217–225.

[7] Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., Proc., vol. 20, 1871, pp. 222–236; Am. Jour. Sci., 31 ser., vol. 2, 1871, pp. 391–404.

[8] Boston Soc. Nat. History, Proc., vol. 13, 1870, pp. 222–236.

[9] Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., Proc., vol. 22, pt. 2, 1873, pp. 131, 132.

[10] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Jour., new ser., vol. 8, pp. 209–262.

[11] Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 16, 1878, pp. 69, 70.

[12] Am. Inst. Min. Eng., Trans., vol. 6, 1878, pp. 227–274.

[13] Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 17, 1879, pp. 25–39, 151–157, 229–239.

value in conjunction with the more extended accounts of the same localities elsewhere published and referred to.

A work that contains much scattered information in regard to the Eocene is Macfarlane's "American Geological Railroad Guide," that first appeared in 1879. A second edition was published in 1890.

During the decade (1870–'80) a marked increase in activity in geological work was manifested on the part of the States.

In New Jersey annual reports were published by Prof. Cook, though little of importance was added to the knowledge of the Eocene.

"Virginia, a geographical and political summary," by Jed. Hotchkiss, is the title of a book that appeared in 1876. It contains a brief summary of the Tertiary geology of that State and several type sections of the Eocene. Most of the author's conclusions are identical with those in the earlier reports of Rogers.

The State geologist of North Carolina, W. C. Kerr, published several reports during this period, the most important of which is a "Report of the Geological Survey of North Carolina, vol. 1, 1875," in which the Eocene is stated as limited by the Neuse and Cape Fear Rivers on the north and south respectively, a few isolated outcrops alone excepted. An appendix to this report contains an article by Conrad on the Tertiary, with descriptions of new species of fossils.

Several works of a geological character appeared at this time bearing upon the Eocene of Georgia. Three short reports by the State geologist, George Little, were published in 1875, 1876, and 1878. The "Geology and Mineralogy of Georgia" (1871), by M. F. Stevenson, contains an outline of the main features of the Eocene, which were later restated by T. P. Janes in his "Handbook of the State of Georgia" (1876.)

The earlier publications of the present geological survey of Alabama, beginning in 1875, contain nothing upon the Eocene. In an "Outline of the Geology of Alabama," by E. A. Smith, State Geologist, in "Berney's Handbook of Alabama" (1878), the Eocene is divided into:

5. Grand Gulf 4. Vicksburg	Upper Eocene.
3. Jackson 2. Claiborne	Middle Eocene.
1. Lignitic and Buhrstone	Lower Eocene.

The characteristic features of each group are given, and in a general way its boundaries.

Three annual reports on the geology of Louisiana were published in the early part of this decade by F. V. Hopkins. Much attention is given to the Eocene, particularly to the Jackson and Vicksburg groups, and lists of fossils are appended.

Two reports of the geological and agricultural survey of Texas were presented by S. B. Buckley in 1874 and 1876. They added little of value to previously existing knowledge of the Eocene.

Prof. N. S. Shaler published four reports upon the geology of Ken-

tucky that contain meager reference to the Eocene strata of the western portion of the State.

It is hardly necessary to consider in detail the literature of the last decade (1880–'90), as the results of the investigations of that period will be incorporated in the subseqent portions of this report. In passing, however, it is necessary to refer to a discussion, precipitated by Dr. Otto Meyer, in regard to the stratigraphical position of the various members of the early Tertiary of the Gulf States. Chiefly from a study of the fossils, but likewise from investigations in the field, Meyer came to the conclusion that the order of succession of the various Tertiary formations is just the reverse of that generally accepted, viz: That the Vicksburg beds occupy the position accorded to the Claiborne, and that the order, beginning with the lowest, is (1) Vicksburg, (2) Jackson, (3) Claiborne, instead of (1) Claiborne, (2) Jackson, (3) Vicksburg, as first made out by Lyell and accepted by all subsequent investigators. Meyer's position was attacked by Hilgard, Smith, Heilprin, and others, whose long experience in the study of the southern Tertiary showed the fallacy of such conclusions. It is not necessary here to enter into the details of the discussion, or present more at length the grounds upon which Meyer based his argument. Most of the articles appeared in the American Journal of Science[1] and Science[2] in 1885–'86.

Among the contributors upon Eocene geology during this decade are Heilprin,[3] Smith,[4] Hilgard,[5] Aldrich,[6] Johnson,[7] Meyer,[8] Kerr,[9] Gardner,[10] Dall,[11] Mell,[12] White,[13] Winchell,[14] Hill,[15] Miller,[16] Uhler,[17] Campbell,[18] Langdon,[19] McGee,[20] Darton,[21] and the writer of this paper.[22]

[1] Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 29, 1885, pp. 457–468; vol. 30, 1885, pp. 60–72, 266–269, 270–275, 300–308, 421–435; vol. 32, 1886, pp. 20–25.

[2] Science, vol. 5, 1885, pp. 475, 476; vol. 6, 1885, pp. 44, 83, 143, 144; vol. 7, 1886, p. 11.

[3] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 32, 1880, pp. 20–33, 364–375; vol. 33, 1881, pp. 151–159, 416–422, 423–428, 444–447, 448–453; vol. 34, 1882, pp. 150–186, 189–193; vol. 36, 1884, pp. 321–322; vol. 39, 1887, pp. 314–322; Science, vol. 5, 1885, pp. 475, 476; Wagner Free Inst. Sci., Trans., vol. 1, 1887, pp 1–134; U. S. Geological Survey, Fourth Ann. Report, 1882–'83, Appendix I, pp. 309–316.

[4] Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 21, 1881, pp. 292–309; Science, vol. 5, 1885, pp. 376, 395–396; Am. Geol., vol. 2, 1888, pp. 269–284; U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. No. 43, 1887.

[5] Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 22, 1881, pp. 58–65.

[6] Cincinnati Soc. Nat. Hist. Jour., vol. 8, 1885, pp. 145–153, 256, 257; vol. 9, 1886, pp. 104–114.

[7] Science, vol. 2, 1883, p. 777; Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 36, 1888, pp. 230–236.

[8] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 36, 1884, pp, 104–112; vol. 39, 1887, p. 51; Bericht über d. Senck. Naturf. Gesells. in Frankfurt, a. M., 1887, pp. 1–20.

[9] Am. Nat., vol. 19, 1885, p. 69; Elisha Mitchell Sci. Soc., Proc., vol. 2, 1884–'85, pp. 79–84, 86–90.

[10] Brit. Assoc., Rept. 54th meet., 1884, pp. 739–741; Geol. Mag., new ser., decade 3, vol. 1, 1884, pp. 492–506.

[11] Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 34, 1887, pp. 161–170.

[12] Am. Inst. Min. Eng., Trans., vol 8, 1880, pp. 304–313.

[13] Washington Biol. Soc., Proc., vol 3, 1885, pp. 1–20; Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 35, 1888, pp. 432–438.

[14] Science, vol. 3, 1884, p. 32.

[15] U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. 45, 1887.

[16] North American Mesozoic and Cenozoic Geology and Paleontology, 1881.

[17] Maryland Acad. Sci., Trans. vol. 1, 1888–'90, pp. 10–32, 45–72, 97–104.

[18] Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 31, 1886, pp. 193–202.

[19] Ibid., vol. 31, 1886, pp. 202–209; Geol. Soc. America, Bull., vol. 2, 1891, pp. 587–605.

[20] Ibid., vol. 35, 1888, pp. 120–143, 328–330, 367–388, 448–466; Geol. Soc. America, Bull., vol. 2, 1891, pp. 2–6.

[21] Geol. Soc. America, Bull., vol. 2, 1891, pp. 431–450

[22] Ibid., vol. 1, 1890, pp. 537–540; Johns Hopkins University, Circulars, vol. 7, 1887, pp. 65–57; vol. 9, 1890, pp. 69–71; vol. 10, 1891, pp. 105–108.

In 1884 Heilprin published the most important treatise[1] that has appeared upon the general features of Eocence stratigraphy. In the main the work embodies the points presented in numerous articles in the Proceedings of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, and referred to above. It has thus far been the only attempt at a succinct treatment of the subject of Tertiary geology, and the conclusions at which Prof. Heilprin has arrived are most valuable, and will often find place in the pages of this report.

Surveys were prosecuted in many of the States during this decade. In New Jersey Prof. Cook, the State geologist, published annual reports. Under the same auspices a memoir by Prof. Whitfield on the Brachiopoda and Lamellibranchiata, appeared, in which the Eocene species from Monmouth County are figured and described.

In the Carolinas two works of a general character that include chapters upon geology appeared in 1883; the first, entitled a "Handbook of the State of North Carolina," was published under the direction of the board of agriculture; the second, "South Carolina Resources and Population, Institutions and Industries," prepared by H. Hammond.

The municipal report of the city of Charleston for 1884 contains an article on artesian wells, in which a detailed section is given of the geological strata beneath the city, to a depth of nearly 2,000 feet.

"The Commonwealth of Georgia" (1885), by J. T. Henderson, gives the boundaries and general character of the Eocene belt.

The Florida State geological survey, under J. Kost, has published but little on the older Tertiary limestones.

In Alabama the State Geological Survey has been ably prosecuted under Prof. E. A. Smith, and the reports of the survey, together with Bulletin 43 of the U. S. Geological Survey, afford a detailed account of the most important sections of the Eocene of that State.

In Arkansas the State geological survey published in 1889 a report on the Neozoic formations by Prof. Robert T. Hill, in which the Eocene is fully considered.

The present Texas geological survey has presented in its first annual report for 1889 a preliminary statement by R. A. F. Penrose, jr., concerning the Gulf Tertiary area in which the stratigraphical relations of the Eocene are discussed.

A critical examination of the literature, a brief summary of which has been given, will convince one that although much has already been done, far more exhaustive and systematic investigations must be made before our knowledge of the Eocene formation of the Atlantic and Gulf coast region approaches in any degree to completeness.

[1] Contributions to the Tertiary Geology and Paleontology of the United States, Philadelphia, the author, 1884, 4to, 117 pp. and map.

GENERAL BOUNDARIES.

The Eocene of the Atlantic coast extends as a narrow band intermittingly appearing and disappearing across the States of New Jersey, Delaware, Maryland, and Virginia, and thence with an increase in width of surface exposure across the Carolinas and Georgia into Florida. Within the Gulf States it outcrops over a still greater area, extending from Florida across central Alabama and Mississippi, while in the latter a northward extension covers much of the northern portion of that State together with parts of eastern Tennessee and Kentucky and southern Illinois. Upon the western bank of the Mississippi the Eocene is found in southeastern Missouri, and much more widely represented over eastern and southern Arkansas and western Louisiana, while a band of considerable width extends across Texas in a southwesterly direction to the Mexican border.

Throughout the Atlantic and Gulf States the exposures of Eocene are separated from the coast line by a region of greater or less width, in which later Tertiary and post-Tertiary deposits constitute the land surface. On the other hand, the Eocene seldom comes in contact with the older rocks of the Piedmont Plateau, but is in nearly all cases separated from them by an area of Mesozoic formations. Occupying as it does a more or less central position in the coastal plain, the Eocene, after its first appearance in eastern New Jersey near the coast, maintains a distance of from 50 to 75 miles from the same through Maryland and Virginia. Beginning with a width of exposure in eastern New Jersey of less than 5 miles, it broadens in Maryland and Virginia to 20 or 25. This is very greatly increased in North Carolina, where many isolated outcrops are found scattered from Wilmington and New Berne to near Raleigh, the first scarcely 10 miles from the coast, the last considerably over 100 miles. In South Carolina the different divisions of the Eocene are found over quite as wide an area, and in the vicinity of Charleston approach within a few miles of the sea. Less is known of its boundaries in Georgia and Florida, but that it is widely extended and in the former State reaches over 150 miles from the coast is recognized. The careful study made of the Eocene in Alabama and Mississippi make it possible to speak with some accuracy as to its limits. Extending in a northwesterly direction across the southern and central portions of these States, its distance at the boundary between them is not far from 100 miles from the Gulf, while its northward extension in the latter State, to form the Mississippi embayment, reaches across Tennessee and Kentucky into Illinois, with a width of exposure north of the Gulf and east of the Mississippi River of from 50 to over 100 miles. The region of the Eocene extending from Missouri southwestward through Arkansas, Louisiana, and Texas, although a continuation of the eastern belt is yet separated from it and the Gulf by a wide area of more recent deposits that have been formed by the Missis-

sippi and other streams reaching the coast. The width of the outcrop in Louisiana and Arkansas is quite 150 miles, which again becomes contracted as eastern central Texas is reached.

In the next chapter a more detailed discussion of the geographical distribution of the deposits in the several States will be found.

STRATIGRAPHICAL AND PALEONTOLOGICAL CHARACTERISTICS.

GENERAL REMARKS.

The Eocene constitutes a well defined stratigraphical and paleontological unit in the series of late Mesozoic and Cenozoic deposits of the coastal plain. A brief sketch of the succession of events during the formation of that area will aid in acquiring a clear idea of the relationship of the Eocene to the other members of that series.

At about the opening of the Cretaceous period, or perhaps somewhat earlier, a great depression of the continent took place along the Atlantic and Gulf borders, by which the coast line was moved far inland against the buttress of Archean and Paleozoic strata. The gravels, sands, and clays of this basal formation have received different names in the different regions in which they are represented—upon the Atlantic coast the Potomac, on the eastern Gulf coast the Tuscaloosa, and on the western Gulf the Trinity formation. In the western Gulf region the Trinity formation is succeeded by the Comanche series, characterized by limestones and a fauna that denotes a deep infralittoral origin.

A marked continental elevation occurred previous to the great subsidence that opened the Upper Cretaceous epoch throughout the Atlantic and Gulf coast region. The deposits of this age, largely greensand marls on the Atlantic coast and marls and limestone on the Gulf border, are the basement beds upon which the Eocene strata have been chiefly laid, though these are also found unconformably overlying the earlier horizons in local areas.

The materials of which the Eocene deposits are formed were mainly derived from the softer beds of the Cretaceous series, although the continental area to the north and west supplied a considerable admixture of sand and clay. The deeper water deposits of late Eocene time were, however, largely the accumulations of organic remains in a sea only periodically exposed to the inroads of land-derived materials. Throughout the Gulf area and at times locally represented on the Atlantic coast are shore deposits of lignitic character and in part at least of brackish water origin, that attain great thickness in the Mississippi embayment, and in the southwest appear at different horizons to the top of the Eocene.

Unconformably overlying the Eocene with its varied development in brackish and marine deposits, is the Neocene which likewise occurs under very different facies in different portions of the coastal area. Composed largely of sands, clays, and marls that have been in part

derived from the Eocene itself, it occupies a band of varying breadth upon the shoreward side of the deposits of that horizon.

Spread widely over nearly the entire area of the coastal plain are post-Tertiary deposits of varied origin, the details of which it is unnecessary to discuss here, that bury, almost completely, the Cretaceo-Tertiary series.

Due to the slight elevation of the region above sea level and the comparatively slight inroads that have been made into the surface covering by denudation since their deposition, the outcrops of the pre-Quaternary series are confined chiefly to the channels of the rivers and their larger tributaries. The strata that have just been described as entering into the formation of the coastal plain are approximately horizontal, with a dip of a few feet to the mile toward the east on the Atlantic coast and toward the south on the Gulf border. Few disturbances of the strata have occurred throughout the territory, and only locally have the beds shown any change from the original condition of their deposition.

When search is made in the literature for data upon which to construct a typical section of Eocene strata for the Atlantic and Gulf coast region the contradictory nature of the material at hand renders the consummation of the task difficult and the results doubtful.

The Eocene is so varied in its facies in different portions of the area that it becomes often perplexing to determine to which division of the series a particular deposit belongs.

As the work has been prosecuted largely under State supervision, and as the State geologists have employed chiefly local terms in the designation of the different horizons, it is thought advisable to consider the stratigraphy of each State by itself, and subsequently to endeavor to correlate, so far as may be, the different divisions. Such treatment is but seldom warranted on stratigraphical grounds, yet the character of the literature makes it in this case the only feasible method. A consideration of the subject by provinces is much more to be desired, but this would be hazardous with our present meager knowledge of the area. A provisional establishment of provinces is, however, attempted in a later chapter.

NEW JERSEY.

The green-sand marls of New Jersey early attracted the attention of geologists, and the similarity of the fossils to those of the Cretaceous of Europe was soon recognized. That horizons other than the Cretaceous were represented in the marl series was not at first entertained, and even after the upper beds were shown to contain Eocene fossils their conformity to the Cretaceous marls was for a still longer period considered probable. Conrad,[1] in 1848, first referred the marls of the upper portion of the Upper Marl Bed near Long Branch to the Eocene,

[1] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci. Jour., 2d ser., vol. 1, 1848, p. 129.

and Cook,[1] in 1883, first proved by detailed field work the unconformity of that formation to the Cretaceous. The paleontological investigations of Whitfield have further substantiated the results of Conrad and Cook.

From the standpoint of stratigraphy the Eocene of New Jersey does not form a prominent feature in the coastal deposits. The conditions for its formation were not markedly different from those in other portions of the marl series, so that structurally the dissimilarities are not conspicuous. Furthermore, the inconsiderable thickness of the deposits renders the geographical distribution limited. Although the dip has been estimated to be only 25 feet[2] to the mile, it soon carries the strata below sea level in a country so slightly elevated above tide as this portion of the coastal plain.

It is probable that the Eocene extends as an unbroken band from northeast to southwest across the State, although its surface continuity is frequently interrupted by the covering of more recent deposits. These toward the south acquire considerable thickness.

The most northern exposure is on Deal Beach, where numerous pits have been sunk into the marl near tide water. Several other localities are found in Monmouth County, particularly that of Shark River, the best known of all, and isolated exposures near Farmingdale, Squankum, and neighboring places. To the southeast of these localities an almost continuous band of the Upper Marl Beds is found extending from near New Egypt, Ocean County, across Burlington County to near Clementon in Camden County. A continuation of this belt, beginning at Deal and extending to Clementon, would reach the Delaware River not far from Salem, but to the southwest of Clementon it is buried from sight by later deposits.

The stratigraphical sequence of deposits in the Upper Marl Bed, as established by the late Prof. Cook, State geologist, is as follows:

Upper Marl Bed	Blue Marl	Eocene.
	Ash Marl, Green Marl	Cretaceous.

He thus describes the Blue Marl:

The Blue Marl.—This layer lies directly upon the Ash Marl, without any well marked line of division, and it is terminated above by surface sand and loam, or by what is called rotten stone; it is 11 feet thick; it is a mixture of green sand and light-colored earth; the upper 2 or 3 feet are quite hard and stony. It lies unconformably on the layers beneath; its fossils are quite distinct and are pronounced by paleontologists to be of the Eocene division of the Tertiary age.[3]

The stratigraphical and paleontological individuality of the New Jersey Eocene thus clearly stated by Cook has been recognized by many other geologists who have investigated the strata.

The fossils, although varying in a marked degree from those of the preceding deposits of the marl series, still lack the more characteristic

[1] Geol. Surv. New Jersey, Ann. Rept., 1883, pp. 13–19.
[2] Ibid., p. 19.
[3] Geology of New Jersey, 1868, p. 275; reprinted in Geol. Surv. New Jersey, Ann. Rept., 1888, p. 153.

forms found in the Eocene to the south. Such typical species as *Ostrea compressirostra*, *Ostrea sellæformis*, *Cucullæa gigantea*, *Cardita planicosta*, and *Turritella Mortoni* are wanting. The important contributions (published and in press) to the paleontology of the New Jersey Cretaceous and Eocene by Prof. R. P. Whitfield, give the following Eocene species from the Blue Marl of the Upper Marl Bed:

Lamellibranchiata.

Ostrea glauconoides Whitfield.
linguafelis Whitfield.
Pecten Kneiskerni Conrad.
Rigbyi Whitfield.
Avicula annosa Conrad.
Nucula circe Whitfield.
Nuculana albaria Conrad (Yoldia protexta Conrad).
Nucularia secunda Whitfield.
Axinea Conradi Whitfield.
Astarte castanella Whitfield (Crassina veta Conrad).
planimarginata Whitfield.
Cardita perantiqua Conrad (Cardita subquadrata Gabb).
Brittoni Whitfield.
Crassatella alta Conrad.
obliquata Whitfield.
Protocardium curtum Conrad.
Caryatis ovalis Whitfield (Caryatis delawarensis Conrad).
Veleda equilatera Whitfield.
Corbula (Neæra) nasutoides Whitfield.
Neæra æquivalvis Whitfield.
Parapholas Kneiskerni Whitfield.
Teredo emacerata Whitfield.

Glossophora.

Leptomaria gigantea Whitfield.
pergranosa Whitfield.
perlata Conrad sp.
Architectonica annosa Conrad.
Natica globulella Whitfield.
Xenophora lapiferens Whitfield.
Scalaria tenuilirata Whitfield.
Mesalia elongata Whitfield.
Calyptophorus vetusta Conrad.
Rhinocantha [?] Conradi Whitfield.
Cypræa sabuloroides Whitfield.
Cassidaria carinata Lamarck.
Ficus penitus Conrad.
Triton eocense Whitfield.
Pseudoliva vetusta Conrad.
Fusus angularis Whitfield.
eocenicus Whitfield.
paucicostatus Whitfield.
perobesus Whitfield.
pluricostatus Whitfield.
(Neptunea) hector Whitfield.
var. multilineatus Whitfield.
staminea Conrad.
(Urosalpinx) multicostatus Whitfield.
Trematofusus venustus Whitfield.
Clavella raphanoides Conrad.
Fasciolaria hercules Whitfield.
propinqua Whitfield.
Samsoni Whitfield.
Voluta Newcombiana Whitfield.
parvula Whitfield.
perelevata Whitfield.
scaphoides Whitfield.
vesta Whitfield.
lelia Whitfield.
Caricella ponderosa Whitfield.
pyruloides Conrad.
Volutilithes cancellata Whitfield.
Sayana Conrad.
Murex (Pleuronotus?) levivaricosa Whitfield.
Cancellaria rudis Whitfield.
Pleurotoma surculiformis Whitfield.
regularicostata Whitfield.
(Surcula) altispira Whitfield.
perobesa Whitfield.
Surculites arenosa Conrad.
cadaverosa Whitfield.
curta Whitfield.
Conus subsauridens Whitfield.
Actæon prisca Conrad.
(Tornatina) lata Conrad.
Wetherelli Lea.

Cephalopoda.

Nautilus Cookana Whitfield.
Aturia Vanuxemi Conrad.

In addition to the invertebrate fossils described by Conrad and Whitfield, Marsh[1] and Cope[2] have added a few vertebrate forms.

Mammalia	Sus. sp	Monmouth Co.
Reptilia	Dinophis littoralis Cope	Shark River.
	halidanus Cope	Squankum.
	grandis Marsh	Shark River.
Pisces	Myliobatis glottoides Cope	Farmingdale.
	rectidens Cope	Harrisonville.
	biculus Marsh	Monmouth Co.
	Cœlorhynchus acus Cope	Farmingdale.
	Histiophorus parvulus Marsh	Squankum.
	Embalorynchus Kinnei Marsh	Squankum.
	Phyllodus elegans Marsh	Farmingdale.

DELAWARE.

Until the recent investigations of Darton[3] no positive evidence had been adduced of the occurrence of Eocene within the limits of the State of Delaware, although Heilprin in his "Contributions to the Tertiary Geology and Paleontology of the United States" says:

> No reasonable doubt can be entertained as to its existence there (although possibly entirely obscured by the newer Miocene deposits) as a direct continuation of, or connection between, the belts developed in Maryland and New Jersey.

Booth[4] mentions the occurrence as far north as Old Duck Creek of Tertiary fossils which, from their description, must be Neocene, while Chester's[5] investigations show that the Cretaceous is found somewhat to the south of Appoquinimink Creek.

The intervening country, at most 6 miles in breadth, has been hitherto doubtfully referred to the Eocene. Darton, by the recent discovery of several characteristic Eocene fossils, among them *Cardita planicosta*, has proved beyond doubt that surface exposures of Eocene strata occur within this area. The characteristic greenish gray and red sandstone that is typical for the more northern exposures of the Maryland Eocene has been recognized at numerous localities.

The lithological and paleontological features of the Delaware Eocene ally it so closely with the Maryland representatives of this horizon, of which it is, in fact, only the northward prolongation, that a consideration of its relations will be deferred until the Maryland strata are discussed.

MARYLAND.

The Eocene of Maryland is much more extensively developed than in New Jersey and Delaware and becomes for the first time a marked structural feature in the stratigraphy of the coastal plain. This fact, together with the great number and excellent state of preservation of

[1] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 48, 1869, pp. 397–400; Am. Assoc. Adv., Sci., Proc., vol. 18, 1869, pp. 227–230.
[2] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 20, 1868, pp. 234–235; Am. Phil. Soc., Proc., vol. 11, 1870, pp. 285–294.
[3] Geol. Soc. America Bull., vol. 2, 1891, pp. 441, 442.
[4] Memoir of the Geological Survey of the State of Delaware, 1841, pp. 18, 81, 84.
[5] Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci., Philadelphia, vol. 36, 1884, pp. 249–258.

the fossils, early attracted the attention of geologists. Although the valuable contributions of Finch[1] and Say[2] in 1824 included references to the Maryland Tertiary, the first really important geological inferences, drawn from a study of the organic remains, were made by Conrad[3] in the Journal of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia for 1830. Many articles by the same author upon the Maryland Tertiary followed in subsequent years, and to-day the contributions of Conrad remain the most exhaustive that we have upon the Eocene of the State. The more recent articles of Tyson, Uhler, Darton,[4] Heilprin and the writer of this bulletin have added many new facts, but there is much to be done before all the problems presented by the Eocene of Maryland will be fully solved.

The Eocene deposits extend as a nearly unbroken belt from the Delaware line to the Potomac River, and are found in Cecil, Kent, Queen Anne, Anne Arundel, Prince George, and Charles counties. The strike is approximately northeast and southwest; the dip 20 to 30 feet in the mile toward the southeast. The breadth of outcrop upon the eastern shore of the Chesapeake is scarcely 5 miles at the head of the Sassafras River, but gradually expands toward the southwest until upon the western shore it is in places more than 25 miles wide.

The lithological character of the rocks is remarkably persistent. The typical deposit is a green-sand marl, which may, however, by chemical changes, lose its characteristic green color, and by the deposition of a greater or less amount of hydrous iron oxide be found as an incoherent red sand or firm red or brown sandstone. To this is added at times a siliceous cement that produces a firm siliceous sandstone, from which generally most of the carbonate of lime has been removed in solution, so that the organic forms are found only in the shape of casts. The green-sand type is chiefly confined to the southwestern portion of the area in Charles and Prince George counties, where the deposits overlying the Eocene attain their greatest thickness. In Anne Arundel County and on the eastern shore of the Chesapeake the Eocene is less deeply buried and the strata are more thoroughly weathered, affording greenish gray or red sands and at times bands of firm sandstone.

No widespread division of the series into different horizons is indicated upon lithological grounds, as the variations in composition are apparently due to subsequent chemical changes rather than to original deposition. It is likewise impossible with our present imperfect knowledge of the Eocene fauna to attempt to establish definite horizons upon such a basis, as even the geological range of the best known forms has not been as yet fully determined.

---

[1] Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 7, 1824, pp. 31–43.
[2] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Jour., vol. 4, 1824, pp. 124–155.
[3] Ibid., vol. 6, 1830, pp. 205–217.
[4] Geol. Soc. America, Bull., vol. 2, 1891, pp. 440–442, 450.

Among the more common species found in the Maryland Eocene are—

Ostrea compressirostra Say.
Cucullæa gigantea Conrad.
transversa Rogers.
Pectunculus staminеus Conrad.
Crassatella alæformis Conrad.
palmula Conrad.
capricranium Rogers.
Cardita regia Conrad.
planicosta Lamarck.
Dosiniopsis Meekii Conrad.
Cytherea ovata Rogers.
Pholadomya marylandica Conrad.
Glycimeris elongata Conrad.
Pholas petrosa Conrad.
Monodonta glandula Conrad.
Turritella humerosa Conrad.
Mortoni Conrad.

Among these *Cucullæa gigantea* is chiefly confined to the basal strata, although in individual cases, as reported by Uhler and Darton, it has been found in the upper portions of the series. *Turritella Mortoni*, on the other hand, is infrequent in the lowest beds, and in the sections on the Potomac and its tributaries is found above those layers in which the *Cucullæa gigantea* is most numerous.

Hitherto few Eocene fossils have been obtained from the deposits of the eastern shore of the Chesapeake. At the head of the creeks tributary to the Chester River and on the hills to the north of the latter several characteristic forms are reported by Uhler.[1] Among them *Turritella Mortoni*, *Cardita planicosta*, *Cucullæa transversa*, *Pectunculus staminеus*, and *Ostrea compressirostra* have been identified.

On the western shore of the Chesapeake there are numerous localities where typical Eocene fossils are found in great numbers. At South River, in Anne Arundel County, and Upper Marlboro, Fort Washington, and Piscataway Creek, in Prince George County, the sections with their fossils have been studied with some care.

The section[2] afforded by the Fort Washington bluff, so frequently referred to in geological literature, is presented below.

Section at Fort Washington.

Pleistocene	Coarse gravel	8 feet.
Eocene	Red sand with casts of *Turritella Mortoni*, *Dosiniopsis Meekii*, *Cytherea ovata*, *Crassatella* sp., *Ostrea* sp	12 feet.
Cretaceous	Light, variegated sands, slightly glauconitic.....10 feet. Dark, micaceous sand, with *Cyprimeria densata*, *Crassatella vadosa*, *Cucullæa vulgaris*, etc.....10 feet.	20 feet.
Potomac	Variegated clay, slightly lignitic on upper surface, with layers of ironstone	55 feet.

The Eocene deposits of Maryland must be considered to represent a single horizon until a more detailed examination of the range of the different fossil forms afford us evidence for a division upon that basis.

[1] Maryland Acad. Sci. Trans., vol. 1, 1888, p. 29.
[2] Johns Hopkins University Circulars, vol. 9, 1890, p. 70

VIRGINIA.

There is no State upon the Atlantic seaboard in which the Eocene has received such careful examination as in Virginia, and certainly none where the literature exists in such a compact and accessible form. For this geology is in the main indebted to Prof. William B. Rogers, who from 1835 to 1841 held the position of State geologist of Virginia and who published during that time annual reports, in each of which defined areas were taken up for detailed investigation.

The first mention by Prof. Rogers of the occurrence of Eocene deposits in Virginia was made in the Transactions of the American Philosophical Society for 1835[1] where, to use the author's words, "the existence of an extensive Eocene formation in eastern Virginia is now for the first time announced."

In my study of the Eocene of Virginia I have had occasion to refer constantly to Prof. Rogers's writings, and from personal examination of the localities described have been impressed with the accuracy of that investigator's observations.

More recently Mr. N. H. Darton,[2] of the U. S. Geological Survey, has examined the Tertiary area of Virginia, and has more accurately delimited the extent of the Eocene in the various river basins.

The deposits of the early Tertiary of Virginia form an intimate continuation southward of the Maryland belt, and extend from the Potomac River, where the width of outcrop is about 25 miles, to the James and its southern tributary the Appomattox, where the limits have been much narrowed. Throughout much of this region the thick covering of post-Eocene sediments renders an exact delimitation of the boundaries of the Eocene formation altogether impossible. Presumably this belt continues on to the southern border of the State, but so far as we have any evidence it is buried, throughout most if not all of that distance, by more recent deposits. McGee[3] reports a single occurrence on the Nottoway River below Bollings Bridge where the Potomac formation "is unconformably overlain by 3 or 4 feet of stratified greenish-blue clay containing Eocene fossils."

The strike of the strata is approximately north and south; the dip at a very low angle toward the east. If we take the data furnished by the well-boring at Fortress Monroe, not 50 miles to the east of the supposed seaward boundary of the Eocene, we find the sands that have been referred to that formation at a depth of something less than 600 feet. This at the outside would admit of a dip of 10 to 15 feet to the mile.

On account of the surface covering of post-Tertiary deposits, the sections are chiefly found along the water courses or on the steeper

[1] Am. Phil. Soc., Trans., new ser., vol. 5, 1835, pp. 319–341.
[2] Geol. Soc. America, Bull., vol 2, 1891, pp. 439–443.
[3] Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 35, 1888, p. 126.

slopes of the higher ridges. The slight elevation of the coastal plain above tide level, together with the incoherent nature of the materials, renders the occurrence of high cliffs even along the larger rivers exceptional and consequently the superposition of any considerable thickness of strata in a single section out of the question. It thus becomes a matter of some difficulty to measure accurately the entire thickness of the Eocene deposits, but it is doubtful if they are found to exceed 150 feet. In fact no single section thus far described shows a thickness of even 100 feet.

The deposits are in the main identical with those hitherto described as typical for Maryland. The green-sand marl predominates, though beds of a micaceous or aluminous character are not infrequent in the southern portion of the area.

Along the northern portion of the belt, the Eocene marl rests unconformably upon the Fredericksburg sandstone, the local representative of the Potomac formation. Farther south, however, the Eocene overlaps the Archean and so continues until it is itself buried by more recent deposits. To the east it is followed in direct succession by the Neocene, while over the whole, when not completely eroded, an uneven covering of post-Tertiary deposits is found.

The most northern and one of the most typical of the river sections of the Virginia Eocene is found upon the south bank of the Potomac River, extending from the mouth of Acquia Creek to the vicinity of Mathias Point.

At Acquia Creek the following section of the Eocene overlain by Pleistocene has been observed by the writer.[1]

Section at Acquia Creek.

Pleistocene	Red sandy loam		20 feet.
Eocene	Light-colored sand, slightly glauconitic	20 feet.	65 feet.
	Light green-sand, with *Cardita planicosta, Turritella Mortoni, Cucullæa onochela, Crassatella capricranium, Cytherea ovata*, etc	9 feet.	
	Soft, yellowish green-sand, with *Ostrea compressirostra*	15 feet.	
	Ledge of dark green-sand, with *Turritella Mortoni, Cardita planicosta, Panopæa elongata, Fusus sp.* etc	3 feet.	
	Dark green-sand, with *Cytherea ovata, Crassatella capricranium*, etc	18 feet.	

In the basin of the Rappahannock the Eocene is reported by Darton as extending from the vicinity of Fredericksburg to a point below Port Royal. He says that it consists at the higher elevations landward of buff-colored weathered green-sand that to the east becomes a typical green-sand with abundant and characteristic fossils. Rogers and Darton both refer to the exposures of Eocene in the valleys of the Matapony and Pamunky that afford a marked admixture of argillaceous materials

[1] John Hopkins University Circulars, vol. 9, 1890, p. 70.

and at times show bands of limestone. The Eocene is not reported from the basin of the Chickahominy. On the James River, however, the bluffs, particularly in the vicinity of City Point, afford excellent exposures of Eocene green-sand with numerous characteristic fossils.

In its paleontological characteristics the Eocene of Virginia is closely allied to that of Maryland. The common forms *Turritella Mortoni* and *Cardita planicosta* are widely distributed, while the prevalent oyster of Maryland, the *Ostrea compressirostra*, has given place for the most part to *Ostrea sellæformis*, so important as a typical Eocene fossil in the States farther south.

Among the species recognized from the Virginia strata are the following:

Ostrea sellæformis Conrad.
sinuosa Rogers.
Anomia Ruffini Conrad.
Cucullæa transversa Rogers.
onochela Rogers.
Nucula cultelliformis Rogers.
parva Rogers.
Nuculana improcera Conrad.
Cardita planicosta Lamarck.
ascia Rogers.
Crassatella capricranium Rogers.
Protocardia virginiana Conrad.
Cytherea ovata Rogers.
lenticularis Rogers.
eversa Conrad.
lenis Conrad.
liciata Conrad.
perbrevis Conrad.
Dosiniopsis alta Conrad.
Turritella Mortoni Conrad.

Even less is known of the range of these forms in Virginia than in Maryland, and they afford no basis for a division of the strata into separate horizons. The Eocene of Virginia must be considered, for the present at least, as a single lithological and paleontological unit.

NORTH CAROLINA.

The Eocene of North Carolina is very different from that in Maryland and Virginia. Neither in the stratigraphical nor paleontological characteristics of its members does it afford many points for comparison with the Eocene of the more northern areas. Furthermore, the isolated manner of its occurrence makes a determination of its boundaries extremely difficult, and thus, hitherto, where fossils have not been found its separation from other horizons has been rendered uncertain. From the State reports of Emmons and Kerr and the paleontological writings of Conrad our knowledge of the structure and fossils of the Eocene is mainly derived.

Geographically considered, the Eocene is confined in its northern and southern extension between the Neuse and Cape Fear Rivers, and is found scattered between those limits from near the mouths of the larger streams to over a hundred miles inland. As in Virginia the sections are chiefly exhibited along the river channels, which alone cut through the surface covering of more recent deposits. Thus the cliffs along the banks of the Neuse, New, and Cape Fear Rivers and their larger tributaries afford the best exposures. The Neuse, between New Berne and

Goldsboro and its large southern tributary, the Trent, for the last 30 or 40 miles of their courses, frequently cut through Eocene strata. The headwaters of the New, in Onslow County, and its southwest branch penetrate similar deposits. The lower course of the Cape Fear in Bladen and New Hanover Counties and the Northeast Cape Fear, in the latter county, afford extensive sections. Some distance to the west of the Coastal region several isolated areas of the Eocene occur, that in each case reach an altitude of over 300 feet above sea level. The most northern of these areas is situated a short distance east of Raleigh, while two others occur to the northwest of Fayetteville in Harnett and Moore Counties. If, as seems probable, these isolated outcrops are but the remnants of a once continuous belt of Eocene strata, then the inland extension of the Eocene must have been more than 100 miles from the present coast line.

The relations of the Eocene to the Cretaceous on the one hand and the Neocene on the other are especially well exhibited in the basin of the Cape Fear River, where the Eocene has been shown by the writer[1] to occupy hollows within the Cretaceous, which afforded an unevenly eroded surface upon which the sediments of the Eocene period were accumulated. The erosion that followed the elevation of the Eocene deposits approximately base-leveled the region before the submergence in Neocene time.

Kerr became convinced latterly of a much wider extension of the Eocene than had been previously admitted by him or other writers upon the geology of the State. In an article in the American Naturalist for 1885 upon "The Eocene of North Carolina,"[2] he states:

> I have recently ascertained by the discovery of the unmistakable superposition of the small outliers of Eocene fossiliferous rocks (noted in the text and geological map of the State in the report of 1875) and of other similarly situated patches of the same beds, with Upper Eocene shells capping the highest hills of the so-called Drift or Quaternary, that nearly all of these beds of sand and gravels heretofore referred to the latter horizons are of Eocene age. The area of Tertiaries in this State must now be extended over a wide stretch of country from the tops of the Laurentian hills near Raleigh and the higher elevations of the Huronian slates to from 50 to 75 miles southeast along the course of the Deep River and so onward to the South Carolina border, reaching at one point an elevation of 600 feet above tide. This leaves the Quaternary, like the Miocene, to be represented by a thin and broken covering of superficial deposits of only a few feet to a few yards in thickness and reaching from the coast only about 100 miles inland, and an elevation of but little above 100 feet.

Although from the data at hand it seems probable that the views of Professor Kerr, as to the wide distribution of the Eocene, are too extreme, yet the supposition that the post-Eocene depressions were not sufficient to bring the higher and more inland portions of the Eocene deposits below sea level, is fully substantiated by the facts. Our knowledge of the stratigraphy is far too meager to admit of the incorporation in the Eocene of many of the unfossiliferous beds that such a

[1] Geol. Soc. America, Bull., vol. 1, 1890, p. 538.
[2] Am. Naturalist, vol. 19, 1885, p. 69.

conclusion would require. Much that Kerr has included in the Eocene is referred by McGee and Holmes to the Appomattox formation.

In the character of its deposits the Eocene is in a marked degree calcareous, occurring as a finely comminuted, light-colored marl, shell conglomerate, calcareous sandstone or hard, gray limestone. The isolated outcrops situated far inland are more siliceous than the deposits in the extreme eastern portions of the State, which afford still further evidence of their closer proximity to the shore of the Eocene sea. The calcareous nature of the eastern deposits indicates a comparatively clear and open sea and a sufficient distance from the Eocene shore to prohibit the intermingling of large quantities of land-derived sediments with the calcareous accumulations of marine organisms out of which the strata are largely formed.

The paleontological characteristics of the North Carolina Eocene are very imperfectly comprehended. No collections of importance are now in existence, and the lists of fossils hitherto reported can not at the present time be substantiated. Moreover, there is particular danger in the use of such data so far as the North Carolina deposits are concerned from the fact that a commingling of Cretaceous and Eocene fossils is known to occur. Futhermore, that intermixture has been shown to be due to mechanical agencies rather than contemporaneous existence. The best evidence of this may be seen in the limestone beds in the vicinity of Wilmington, where this remarkable occurrence has been observed and recorded by several investigators.[1]

A few typical Eocene fossils have been recognized by myself from the North Carolina Eocene deposits, including *Ostrea sellæformis* and *Cardita planicosta*. From the fact that the fossils are chiefly preserved in the form of casts, their determination is frequently in doubt, and extensive collections will have to be made before a comparative study of the forms will afford satisfactory results.

SOUTH CAROLINA.

In many of its structural peculiarities the Eocene of South Carolina shows a close relationship to the early Tertiary deposits of North Carolina that have just been described. In its geographical distribution it covers a much more extensive area than in the States hitherto referred to, and becomes one of the most important features in the geology of the Coastal plain.

The reports of Ruffin, Tuomey, and Lieber present us with detailed descriptions of the stratigraphy of the Eocene, while Ravenel, Conrad, Bouvé, and others have figured and described the organic remains from the same horizon. Although a review of the conclusions arrived at by these different authors affords but few points for comparisons with

[1] Tuomey, Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., Proc., vol. 1, 1848, p. 33; Tuomey, Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 6, 1852, 193; Conrad, Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 17, 1865, p. 72; Clark, Geol. Soc. America, Bull., vol. 1, 1890, pp. 537-549.

other areas, careful descriptions of local deposits render the literature of South Carolina geology among the best of official publications. Numerous sections within the Tertiary belt are discussed in minute detail, but the attempt at a geological establishment of boundaries has given vague and unsatisfactory results.

The inland border of the Eocene forms a more or less continuous line "from the mouth of Stevens Creek, on the Savannah, north of Hamburg, crossing the Saluda and Broad Rivers near their junction; the Wateree at the canal; Lynch Creek at Evans Ferry, and Thompson Creek at the point where it enters the State in Chesterfield district."[1] Its seaward extension is buried under more recent deposits, of different character, or the disturbed upper layers of the Eocene itself, a condition of outcrop that occasions an extremely sinuous boundary, and one at the same time very difficult of determination. In the vicinity of Charleston the strata approach nearly to the coast line, though complicated in the aforesaid manner. As the river sections afford almost the only indications of the pre-Quaternary geology the field of observation is much narrowed, and the tracing out of intermediate deposits, binding what may be only different facies of contemporaneous development, is greatly hindered.

Tuomey, in the "Report on the Geology of South Carolina," published in 1848, divides the Eocene of the State into three horizons, which in ascending order are: 1, Buhrstone; 2, Santee Beds; 3, Ashley and Cooper Beds. Ruffin had previously (1843) designated the last two of Tuomey's[2] divisions as the "Great Carolinian Bed," and had likewise described the Buhrstone and its fossils, although he did not consider the latter apparently of much taxonomic importance, and, moreover, entirely mistook its stratigraphical position. Following in great measure the authority of Lyell, Ruffin accepted tentatively the Eocene age of the "Great Carolinian Bed," thus going counter to the opinions of Vanuxem, Conrad, and Morton, who had pronounced it "Upper Secondary." In a later statement he says, "the 'Great Carolinian Bed' of marl will serve every present purpose of designation and distinction as if it were definitely settled and the bed named either 'Upper Cretaceous' or Eocene."[3] The important contributions made by Ruffin to the geology of the State were greatly augmented by the more extensive observations of Tuomey. For our present purpose the three divisions established by the latter will be accepted, although some suggestions as to their taxonomic value will be stated in subsequent pages.

The Buhrstone.—The Buhrstone, the basal member of the Eocene series, as recognized by Tuomey, occupies the inner border of the Tertiary belt.

[1] Tuomey: Report on the Geology of South Carolina, 1848, p. 140.

[2] The Santee Beds and Ashley and Cooper Beds are also referred to by Tuomey at the "Calcareous Strata of the Charleston Basin."

[3] Ruffin: Report of the Commencement and Progress of the Agricultural Survey of South Carolina, 1843.

It is chiefly developed in the area lying between the Congaree and Savannah Rivers. Its eastern boundary begins at or near Lower Three Runs, on the Savannah River, passes in a sinuous line near Barnwell and Orangeburg, and thence to the Santee River, beyond which its limits are unknown.

The Buhrstone receives its name from the layer of silicified shells that forms but an insignificant portion of the strata. Sands, clays, and marls are the chief deposits. They are generally incoherent, though at times consolidated. In the area to the east of the Savannah River beds of kaolin (reaching at Aiken 60 feet in thickness) form an important element in the series.

Tuomey [1] gives a section of the beds in the vicinity of Aiken that is held to be typical for the Buhrstone elsewhere. The strata rest upon granite, and are in descending order, as follows:

6. Beds of sand and iron ore.
5. Silicified shells.
4. Siliceous clay bed.
3. Beds of sand, gravel, colored clay, etc.
2. Bed of sandstone and grit.
1. Granite on Horse Creek.

Tuomey mentions the occurrence of individual members of the series at many other places throughout the area above outlined, although the different beds exhibit more or less important variations in thickness and lithological characters. The stratum of silicified shells is found often at the top of the Buhrstone and in close proximity to the marl of the "calcareous strata." The lower deposits of the Buhrstone are composed largely of coarse sands that may upon further study afford evidence for a stratigraphical separation from the overlying beds. A statement as to their probable equivalence is given in the chapter on correlation.

The northward extension of the Buhrstone toward the North Carolina State line has received but little attention. Tuomey cites localities on the Pee Dee River and Lynch Creek where beds of silicified shells are found, and mentions the occurrence of *Cardita planicosta* and other fossils. The thickness of the Buhrstone has been estimated at 200 feet in its typical localities. Tuomey gives a list of over ninety species of fossils from the Buhrstone in the Report on the Geology of South Carolina, which, with a few exceptions, belong to marine mollusca. Among other well known forms the writer has recognized *Turritella humerosa*, *T. Mortoni*, *Cardita planicosta*, and *Pectunculus stamineus*.

The Santee Beds, which overlie the Buhrstone, form, according to Tuomey, the lowest member of the "Calcareous Strata of the Charleston Basin." They occupy the region between the boundaries given above as the seaward limits of the Buhrstone and an undetermined line farther eastward. The deposits are most typically developed on the

[1] Report on Geology of South Carolina, 1848, p. 143.

Santee River, where they reach as far down the stream as Mazyck's Ferry. The base of the Santee beds is at times a green sand, though this is not constant. Tuomey mentions a locality on the headwaters of the Cooper River where a bed of "white marl abounding in corals, which may be designated the coralline bed of the Charleston basin" underlies the green sand. That the green sand is allied with the Santee Beds rather than with the Buhrstone is shown by the occurrence of the bones of the Zeuglodon that have not been found in the latter formation. The typical deposits of the Santee Beds are white marls, more often incoherent, though frequently consolidated to form a marlstone. At Vance's Ferry, on the Santee, a superb section of the Santee Beds 6 miles in extent is exposed that in places reaches 30 feet in height.

Tuomey gives a list of 60 to 70 species of fossils, chiefly lamellibranchs, gasteropods, echinoderms, and corals. The bones of Zeuglodon likewise occur. *Ostrea sellæformis*, *Crassatella alta*, *Lucina panda*, and *Lutraria petrosa* are common types.

The Ashley and Cooper Beds, which are held by Tuomey to occupy a position above the Santee Beds and to constitute a separate formation, have many species of fossils in common with the Santee, including the Zeuglodon, which ranges throughout the Santee and Ashley and Cooper Beds. More than that, the deposits are similar lithologically, and no break has been recognized in the series of beds, which shows that the conditions under which they were formed were probably the same and continuous. In this connection Heilprin says: "There appears to me no good reason for separating the above deposits from each other as indications of special horizons, although they may occupy different stratigraphical positions in the geological scale, and therefore I have retained them as one group, the correspondent of the 'Jacksonian.'"[1]

The geographical range of the Ashley and Cooper Beds is limited to the basins of the Ashley and Cooper Rivers, and even there the surface outcrops are much complicated by the post-Pliocene rearrangements to which the upper layers have been subjected. As the fossils of the earlier beds have been transported and occur commingled with those of later date, accurate discrimination between the original and derived deposits is rendered difficult. In general the Ashley and Cooper Beds are darker than the Santee Beds. They are sometimes dark gray, and at other times approach an olive color.

Tuomey mentions 25 invertebrate fossil forms from this horizon. The Zeuglodon is likewise found and is the most characteristic of the Eocene types. Among the molluscan forms *Panopæa elongata*, *Lucina panda*, and *Modiola cretacea* are common species.

Upon the Carolina bank of the Savannah River are deposits of white marl containing fossils whose stratigraphical position in reference to the deposits just described has not as yet been satisfactorily determined.

[1] Contributions to the Tertiary Geology and Paleontology of the United States, 1884, p. 20.

By many they have been considered to be later than the uppermost strata of the Charleston Basin, though the data for such conclusions seem to the writer inadequate. As these beds are much better developed on the Georgia bank of the Savannah River, a discussion of them will be deferred until the geology of that State is considered.

GEORGIA.

The Eocene deposits of Georgia are less fully comprehended than those of any other State on the Atlantic Coast. No works of great importance have been published, due largely to the fact that Georgia has not hitherto maintained a geological survey of the pretensions of the States immediately to the north. The publications of Cotting, Hodgson, Jones, Stephenson, Little, and Henderson, all of a more or less official character, present a meager outline of the Eocene geology of local areas or the entire State, though generally the information given is rather of agricultural than stratigraphical importance.

Stephenson[1] and Little[2] give the inland boundary of the Eocene as a sinuous line extending from near Augusta, on the Savannah River, past Macon and Milledgeville to Pataula Creek, just above Fort Gaines, on the Chattahoochee River. Too little is known of its seaward extension to warrant a statement of its boundaries, although should any portion of the deposits in Screven County, hitherto referred to the Eocene, be proved such, the width of the belt would reach fully 50 miles. On the Ocmulgee River its most eastern outcrop has been found by Burns near the boundary of Dodge and Telfair Counties.

A separation of the Eocene into definite horizons has not been attempted in Georgia as in South Carolina and Alabama, although it is probable that the leading divisions there represented extend across the State, as beds of sand and clay here form the base of the series and are followed by calcareous strata. Situated as the Eocene deposits of Georgia are, intermediate between the Atlantic and Gulf areas, an accurate knowledge of their relations would render it possible to determine many points in the stratigraphy of each that are at present very imperfectly understood.

The locality of Shell Bluff, on the Savannah River, about 20 miles below Augusta, has been so often referred to in geological literature as to merit more special attention than the other Eocene areas of the State. Conrad[3] was led to the conclusion that on both structural and paleontological grounds the deposits at Shell Bluff possessed sufficient individuality to warrant the establishment of a new and distinct "group" which he called the Shell Bluff group. The common oyster, *Ostrea georgiana*, was considered by him to be the characteristic fossil for the

[1] Geology and Mineralogy of Georgia, 1871, p. 28.
[2] Catalogue of Ores, Rocks, etc., for the Paris Exposition, 1878, p. 14.
[3] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 41, 1866, p. 96.

horizon. The deposits are similar to those represented on the Carolina bank of the Savannah River, and previously referred to. The position of the strata in the Eocene series can not be determined until more is known of the fossils and the stratigraphical relations of the beds. A section made by myself at the locality is given below:

	Feet.
Red loam	40
White sandy marl	4
Coarse white marl with shell fragments	2
Fine white marl with *Ostrea* sp	2
Shell marl with numerous casts	4
Coarse yellowish white shell marl	5
Compact fine white marl	2
White sandy marl with *Ostrea georgiana*	10
Ledge of hard white marl	1
Fine yellowish white, sandy marl	8
Compact marl filled with casts of shells, *Ostrea* sp	5
Yellow shell marl alternating with beds of clay	6
Indurated yellow and white variegated shell marl	6
Yellowish white, coarse shell marl with numerous fragments of shells	14

The detailed sections of other observers[1] differ considerably from that just given, both as to the divisions of the beds and the fossil-bearing horizons.

The deposits at Jacksonboro in Screven County, hitherto referred to the Eocene, although presenting similar characteristics lithologically, afford, so far as the collections made by myself are concerned, no forms in common with other Eocene localities. Lyell gives a long list of such similar types, but I have failed to obtain them. The specimens collected seem to point to a decidedly younger fauna, probably Neocene in age.

Dr. Jones, in a report on the agricultural resources of the State, refers to the shell marl of Washington and Jefferson Counties, although presenting few data of stratigraphical importance. Of the more western counties even less information is at hand.

The section of Eocene strata afforded by the Chattahoochee River has been quite recently investigated by Langdon,[2] who, however, has studied the deposits in their relations to the Alabama series and mainly on the Alabama bank of the river, so that a detailed consideration of them will be deferred until the strata of that State are discussed. Representatives of the Lignitic, Buhrstone, Claiborne, and White limestone have been established and the thickness of the series placed at 1,200 feet.

FLORIDA.

The presence of Eocene strata in Florida was early recognized by Conrad[3] and Tuomey[4], though later doubt was cast upon their conclu-

[1] Loughbridge—Report on the Cotton Production of the State of Georgia, Tenth Census of the U. S. vol. 5, 1884, pp. 14–16.
Singleton—see Heilprin, Contrib. Tert. Geol. and Pal. U. S., 1884, p. 22, foot-note.
[2] Geol. Soc. America, Bull., vol. 2, 1891, pp. 594-605.
[3] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 2, 1846, pp. 36–48, pp. 399, 400.
[4] Ibid., vol. 11, 1851, pp. 390–394.

sions by Agassiz[1] and Le Conte,[2] who endeavored to prove that the peninsula was of coral formation and more recent in origin. The later investigations of Smith, Dall, Heilprin, and Johnson have shown the truth of the earlier observations, and have more fully identified the various horizons represented.

That Eocene covers a wide area in Florida is now generally conceded, though the various writers differ as to the limits that are to be assigned to it. Direct reference to the publications will best explain these differences. Smith says:

From specimens collected by me at points widely distant from each other, from the observations of others as quoted above, and from evidence derived from other sources, I am brought to the conclusion that almost the whole of Florida, from the Perdido River on the west, eastward and southward, including the middle and western parts of the peninsula, certainly as far south as the latitude of Tampa Bay, and probably as far as the latitude of Charlotte Harbor, has for its underlying formation the white or Orbitoides limestone of Vicksburg age, the exceptions as yet known being the post-Pliocene or recent limestones forming the Keys and the immediate coasts along the western, southern, and eastern shores, and isolated patches, if not a continuous belt, of Miocene limestone between the St. Johns River and the elevated tablelands westward.

Heilprin,[3] in his "Contributions to the Tertiary Geology and Paleontology of the United States," remarks upon the geographical boundaries:

From what has preceded, taken in connection with the observations that have been made in western as well as in northern Florida, it may safely be conceded that the underlying rock of the greater portion, if not of nearly the entire State, is of Oligocene age, and therefore no countenance is given to the theory which assumes a recent formation. How far south the Orbitoitic limestone extends has not yet been determined, but there appear to be no reasons for assigning it to a limit far removed from the border line of the Everglades. For aught we know to the contrary, it may extend quite or nearly to the peninsula's extremity.

Dall,[4] discussing the same point, says:

The older rocks of course come out to the northward and along the central part of the peninsula, and the succession of the newer ones is toward the southern extreme end, and the Atlantic and Gulf shores. The hypothetical southward extension of the Oligocene (sometimes taken as Eocene) on most recent geological maps, now seems erroneous. It is without doubt represented as considerably too great.

Johnson[5] states in regard to its limits that—

The most southern actually seen are at Pemberton, Pasco County, and on the headwaters of Hillsboro River, in Polk County, Secs. 27 and 28, T. 26, R. 23—which, till further advised, may be set as the southern boundary of Eocene exposure.

From the above statement of views it will be perceived that the Eocene covers a wide area in the State, even though somewhat restricted in

[1] Report U. S. Coast Survey, 1851, pp. 145 et seq.
[2] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 23, 1857, pp. 48-60.
[3] Pages 23, 24.
[4] Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 34, 1887, p. 165.
[5] Ibid., vol. 36, 1888, p. 233.

range, as suggested by Dall and Johnson. The deposits are in the main calcareous, and possess many points in common with the "calcareous strata of the Charleston basin," though paleontologically more closely allied to the limestone of Alabama and Mississippi, described later on.

The Eocene strata in the northern portions of the State apparently afford two horizons, the significance of which has not been as yet fully determined. The lower horizon, composed chiefly of limestones and marls, and the one most generally represented, contains great numbers of *Orbitoides Mantelli* and *Pecten perplanus*. Overlying this is a thin layer, generally silicified, that contains *Orbitoides ephippium*, *O. dispansa*, and *Operculina complanata*.

Johnson states that "it is a mistake, however, to suppose that this Nummulitic formation everywhere hides the Vicksburg rocks of the *Orbitoides Mantelli*, or ever did overlie the whole of it. Numerous are the exposures to prove the contrary." A typical locality in which to see the superposition of the beds is at Levyville, Levy County, where the upper horizon is "really a stratum overlying the Vicksburg rocks," and "is a beautiful, soft, porous building stone about 20 feet in thickness." "Often struck in artesian borings and easily identified by the peculiar nummulites, it has a greater thickness under the Neocene formations to the east. In these western regions it has probably suffered general removal by erosion. Apparently conformable in deposition with the Vicksburg stage, the Levyville formation is evidently not identical with it, and demands a further investigation." Later observations tend to show that Johnson has confounded the Eocene and Miocene siliceous rocks at many points, so that his conclusions are somewhat vitiated.

ALABAMA.

No other portion of the coastal area has received such careful and detailed investigation as that contiguous to the Tombigbee and Alabama Rivers. The publications of Hale, Conrad, Tuomey, Lyell, Hilgard, Winchell, Smith, Johnson, Langdon, Heilprin, Aldrich, and others afford an extensive literature that gives us the results of investigations extending over a long term of years. The State geological survey, under the directorship of Prof. E. A. Smith, has been the chief factor in this work, and its members have compiled the only complete section of the early Tertiary strata that has thus far been made.

The deposits of Eocene age extend across the State from the Chattahoochee River to the Mississippi border in a slightly sinuous southeast and northwest direction, and with an average width of about 60 miles. The thickness of the entire series has been estimated by Smith to be not far from 1,700 feet and the dip seaward approximately 30 feet to the mile, although marked variations occur at several points. The

divisions established by Smith and Johnson[1] are adopted here, and are in descending scale as follows:

			Feet.
Eocene.	White limestone	Coral limestone (Vicksburg?)	150
		Vicksburg (orbitoidal)	140
		Jackson	60
	Claiborne		140-145
	Buhrstone		200
	Lignitic	Hatchetigbee	175
		Woods Bluff	80-85
		Bells Landing	140
		Nanafalia	200
		Matthews Landing and Naheola	130-150
		Black Bluff	100
		Midway	25

Lignitic.—The lowest member of the Eocene series has been designated the Lignitic by Hilgard. It has a thickness of about 900 feet, and according to Smith and Johnson—

Is made up of laminated clays and laminated and cross-bedded sands of a prevailing gray color, except immediately below the Buhrstone, where for 200 feet or more they are of dark brown, often purplish colors. With the above-mentioned laminated clays and sand are interstratified several beds of lignite and several beds holding marine fossils, and usually characterized by the presence of glauconite or greensand. * * * The Lignitic formation comprises three well marked divisions defined by color, which is here an index of constitution. The upper one-fourth consists of irregularly bedded, dark, siliceous, and lignitiferous clays and heterogeneous sands, approaching the basal portion of the Buhrstone formation in composition and structure, interstratified with discontinuous beds of lignite and continuous layers of clay and sand containing marine fossils. The medial three-fifths of the formation is made up of rather more regularly stratified clays and sands of light color, frequently cross bedded, containing occasional beds of lignite and of marine sands yielding littoral fossils, one of which (the *Gryphæa thirsæ* bed) is 50 to 60 feet in thickness. The basal deposits are irregularly bedded, dark, or even black, calcareous, shaly or slaty clays, with few fossils or definite beds of lignite, though considerable quantities of carbonaceous matter are disseminated throughout its mass.

At the base of the Lignitic there is a rapid change in the character of both rocks and fossils, the lowermost 15 to 20 feet of the formation being limestone, at first argillaceous, then quite pure, and even crystalline. This crystalline limestone rests with apparent conformity upon the yellow sands which make the summit of the Cretaceous group.[2]

The Lignitic group as a distinct horizon is, according to Smith, separated from the overlying formation (Buhrstone) upon lithological grounds alone. He says:

In the strata which we have called Lignitic the material, as compared with that of the Buhrstone, is more sandy and calcareous and at the same time more fossiliferous. The shells in many cases are decayed and the calcareous matter of the same often appears to have been leached out and diffused through the surrounding sands, occasionally cementing them together and forming calcareous sandstone. These sandstone beds always show a tendency to weather into rounded, bowlder-like masses, which project from the faces of the bluffs or, broken off, roll down, forming a talus. When broken open these bowlders usually show a nucleus of thoroughly decayed shells or of ferruginous, lignitic matter. * * * A ledge of calcareous sandstone of this kind is found about 20 or 30 feet below the lowermost of the alu-

[1] U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. 43, 1887, p. 18. [2] Ibid., pp. 39, 135.

minous rocks, which we consider as characteristic of the Buhrstone, and similar calcareous sandstones weathering into bowlders occur at intervals throughout the underlying Lignitic strata. * * * None of the beds of the underlying Lignitic have even a remote resemblance to the Buhrstone rocks, except certain indurated clays which overlie the *Gryphœa thirsæ* beds in the Grampian Hills of Wilcox County and their prolongation into Butler County. Even in this case the distinction between the two can readily be discovered, as the indurated clays of the Lignitic are, in some of the beds, quite full of shell casts, principally Turritellas and Cythereas, and the material itself, upon close examination, does not so strongly resemble the Buhrstone as upon first sight appears.[1]

The Lignitic occupies the inland border of the Eocene area, increasing in thickness from the east toward the west. The interstratified marine beds, each of which has its "peculiar association of fossils," together with certain "lithologic and structural character," have been divided by Smith and Johnson into the following 7 horizons, which are given in descending order:

7. The Hatchetigbee marls.
6. The Woods Bluff or Bashi marl.
5. The Bells Landing series.
4. The Nanafalia or *Gryphœa thirsæ* marl.
3. The Matthews Landing and Naheola marls.
2. The Black Bluff beds.
1. The Midway or Pine Barren beds.

The sections exhibited on the Alabama and Tombigbee Rivers are characterized as follows:[2]

The Midway or Pine Barren section.—Thickness, 25 feet. The strata are: a white, argillaceous limestone holding a large nautilus, which is characteristic of the horizon, 10 feet; calcareous sands and a yellowish crystalline limestone, with Turritellas, Carditas, and corals, the sands 6 feet, the limestone 8 or 9 feet. This section is best seen in eastern Wilcox County, on Pine Barren Creek, but the upper or Nautilus rock occurs at Midway, on the Alabama River, and westward across Marengo County.

The Black Bluff section.—We have difficulty in determining the exact thickness, since on the Tombigbee the strata of this section are spread over an extent of surface which would, with uniform dip, correspond to a thickness of over 200 feet, while on the Alabama, and more particularly inland in the eastern part of Wilcox County, the thickness is not greater than 35 or 40 feet. Since 80 feet of these beds are seen in superposition at one locality (Black Bluff), we think that the maximum thickness can not be less than 100 feet. The characteristic strata which compose nearly the whole of this section are black or very dark brown clays, which are in part fossiliferous.

The Naheola and Matthews Landing section.—It is difficult to give the precise thickness of this section, since it varies on the two rivers. We have placed it at 130 to 150; the strata are gray, sandy clays in the main, alternating with cross-bedded sand. The beds of dark, sandy, and glauconitic clay, containing marine fossils, lie at the base of the section. At Naheola, on the Tombigbee, the upper and more glauconitic part of the bed is most prominent, while at Matthews Landing, on the Alabama, the lower part of the bed dark gray sandy clay forms the bluff.

The Nanafalia or Coal Bluff section.—The strata of this section are 200 feet in thickness, and consist of about 50 feet of gray sandy clays at top, which shows a tendency to indurate into tolerably firm rocks resembling very closely some of the strata of the

[1] U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. 43, 1887, pp. 35, 36.

[2] Ibid., pp. 69, 70.

Buhrstone. Below this, about 80 feet of sandy beds, often strongly glauconitic, characterized throughout by shells of a small oyster (*Gryphæa thirsæ*). Near the base of this sandy division there is a bed about 20 feet thick, literally packed with these shells. Below the *Gryphæa thirsæ* beds follow some 70 feet of cross-bedded sands, glauconitic and apparently devoid of fossils, including, about 10 feet from the base of the section, a bed of lignite which varies in thickness from 4 to 7 feet.

The Bells Landing section.—This is 140 feet in thickness, and includes two important marine beds, and a third quite small and apparently unimportant. These fossiliferous beds are interstratified with yellowish sands in the upper and rather heavy bedded sandy clays in the lower part of the section. The upper marine bed, called the Bell's Landing marl, is about 10 feet in thickness and has 40 feet of sandy strata above it. The middle bed is called the Greggs Landing marl, and it is 20 to 25 feet below the preceding; it is about 5 feet in thickness. The lowermost of the fossiliferous beds of this section is only about one foot in thickness and lies about 50 feet below the Greggs Landing bed. It is highly glauconitic, but does not contain any great variety of fossils. The Bells Landing marl is distinguished from all others in Alabama by the great size of the shells which it contains.

Voluta Newcombiana, *Rostellaria trinodifera*, *Turritella Mortoni*, *Cardita planicosta*, and *Ostrea compressirostra* are common forms.

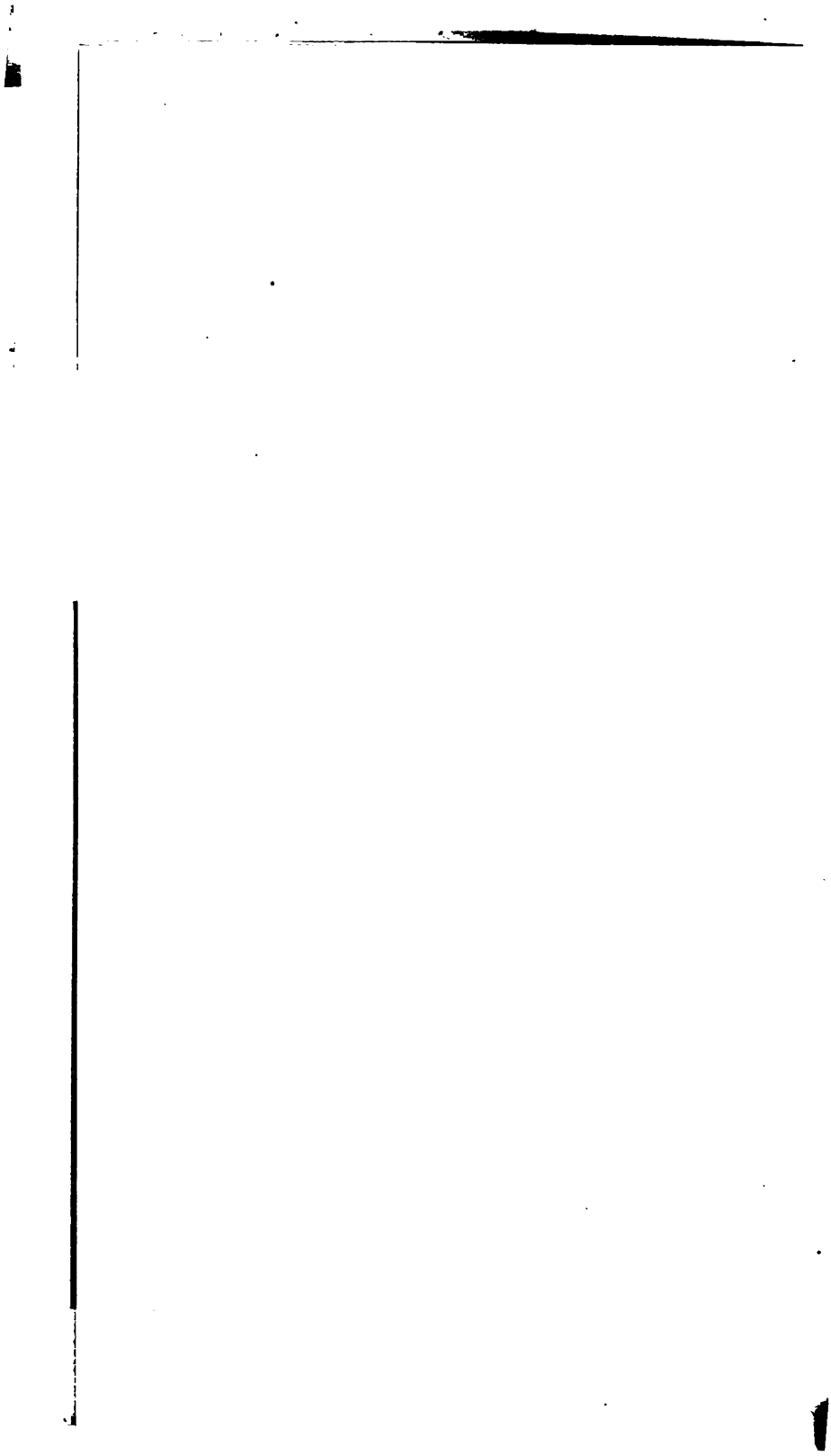
The Wood's Bluff or Bashi section.—This is 80 to 85 feet in thickness. The uppermost 30 feet of the section consist of dark brown clays passing into a green sand, which holds a great variety of finely preserved marine shells. Below this greensand marl are gray sandy clays, with 4 or 5 thin beds of lignite within the first 25 feet, succeeded by about 30 feet of cross-bedded sands, with a 2-foot seam of lignite at the base.

The Hatchetigbee section.—This section is 175 feet in thickness, made up of sandy clays of prevailing brown or purplish color, containing 3 or 4 beds of marine fossils in the uppermost 75 feet, and of somewhat similar purplish brown sandy clays nearly devoid of marine fossils in the lower 100 feet. All these brown sandy clays become much lighter colored upon drying and exposure to the weather.

Due to several folds in the strata, the Lignitic beds appear at the surface at several points to the south of its continuous outcrop, and have been very fully investigated in the western portion of Clarke County.

Langdon[1] has recently published an article in which the continuation of the Lignitic into the Chattahoochee drainage is shown. Several of the horizons established by Smith in the central and western portions of the State are traced to the banks of the Chattahoochee River, although they frequently exhibit marked changes in both deposits and fossils. In general the strata present a more marine phase, and the lignitic character of the beds farther west is gradually lost. The Midway or Pine Barren beds reach the thickness of about 220 feet on the Chattahoochee and become the most important member of the Lignitic series. The Black Bluff beds and the Matthews Landing and Naheola marls are wanting. The Nanafalia marl rests unconformably upon the Midway beds and attains a thickness of 175 feet. This marl was considered Claiborne by Loughridge.[2] The Bell's Landing series is 173 feet thick on the Chattahoochee, and is with difficulty separated from the overly-

[1] Geol. Soc. America, Bull., vol. 2, 1891, pp. 587-605.
[2] Rep. on the Cotton Production of Ga., 10th Census, vol. 15, p. 14.



ing formation, the Wood's Bluff or Bashi marl, which here attains a thickness of 44 feet. The uppermost member of the Lignitic, the Hatchetigbee marls, present quite similar lithological characteristics on the Chattahoochee River as at the place of its typical development, though the beds have been reduced to 10 feet in thickness.

Buhrstone.—Overlying the Lignitic is a series of alluminous sands and sandstones that are at times glauconitic, even appearing locally as well-defined layers of greensand.

In most cases they are merely alterations of indurated clays, with alluminous sandstones of varying degrees of hardness. While in the extremes of pure clay and almost pure quartz the materials of this formation differ widely, the formation as a whole leaves upon the mind of the observer a lively impression of the uniformity in the lithological structure and general appearance of its constituent strata. * * * In general the uppermost beds (15 to 20 feet) are composed of joint clays, which, when indurated, form tolerably firm rocks. Near the base of the formation similar clays or claystones are usually seen. In many places there is a bed several feet in thickness of a hard, siliceous, or flinty sandstone, almost a quartzite, just at the base of the Buhrstone.[1]

Smith and Johnson separate this horizon from the Lignitic upon lith. ological grounds alone. Following Tuomey, they employ the term Buhrstone to designate it. They say, "The aluminous rocks we assign to the Buhrstone, while the sandy rocks, with the intercalated beds of calcareous matter we place with the Lignitic." Although this discrimination seems possible in Alabama, too little is known of the relationship of the beds beyond the State to say whether this difference is widespread.

The Buhrstone is found as a sinuous band to the south of the Lignitic, and extending from southeast to northwest across the State.

On the Alabama River the uppermost of the Buhrstone beds are well exposed at Lisbon Landing, and the lowermost a short distance above Hamilton's, whence they extend across Clarke County westward or northwestward to White Bluff and McCarthy's Ferry, and thence in a northwesterly direction across Choctaw County, just south of Butler. On the eastern side of the Alabama River they appear in the hills south of Bells Landing, and across Monroe County north of Kempsville and south of Turnbull, turning a little to the northward in the eastern part of the county. To the eastward they may be seen again near Ozark, in Dale County, and near Abbeville, in Henry County.[2]

There is considerable doubt as to the thickness of the Buhrstone series, but the least estimate places it at 300 feet. The fossils do not afford a means of discrimination either from the Claiborne above or the Lignitic below. They are not numerous and are for the most part poorly preserved.

Langdon[3] has more recently noted the occurrence of the Buhrstone on the Chattahoochee, where "the percentage of clay decreases, while the rocks become more calcareous and the fossils more abundant. In lieu of the silicified casts characterizing the Buhrstone of the Tombig-

[1] U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull, 43, 1887, pp. 35, 36.
[2] Ibid., p. 36.
[3] Geol. Soc. America, Bull., vol. 2, 1891, p. 597.

bee and Alabama Rivers, extensive beds of *Ostrea sellæformis* (var. *divaricata*) and an *Anomia* occur." The thickness of the beds here is stated to be about 190 feet.

Claiborne.—The Claiborne formation, so typically represented at the Claiborne Bluffs, on the Alabama River, consists of incoherent sands and clays, that are frequently ferruginous or calcareous and often glauconitic. The thickness of the deposits is about 150 feet. The beds of this horizon are renowned for their many fossils, which, however, are chiefly confined to the ferruginous sands near the top of the formation. Beneath this upper bed, known as the "Claiborne Fossiliferous sand," and which is about 15 feet in thickness, are "some 60 feet of calcareous clays and calcareous sands."

The whole of this 60 feet of strata, except perhaps some 10 feet of blue clay near the top, is distinguished from all the other beds of the Claiborne formation by the great numbers of shells of *Ostrea sellæformis* which it holds. These shells are found more abundantly in the hard sandy ledges which occur at intervals of a few feet through the whole thickness of these beds. * * * Below these *Ostrea sellæformis* beds we find at Claiborne and at Lisbon some 50 feet or more of sandy and clayey beds in many cases strongly glauconitic and holding a great number as well as a great variety of well preserved fossils.[1]

A generalized section of the Claiborne Bluff, according to Prof. E. H. Smith, is given below:[2]

7. A bed of very variable thickness, consisting of sand, pebbles, and red loam, which forms the surface over a great part of the State. The average thickness of this bed along the bluff may be put at ..... 35 to 40 ft.
6. A band of white limestone, containing glauconite grains, forming vertical faces usually striped by thin projecting ledges ..... about 45 ft.
5. A band showing two very distinct parts, viz, an upper part, a bed holding great numbers of *Scutella Lyelli*, 3 feet thick, and a lower part, 6 feet thick, of coarse, ferruginous sands, which are indurated at the base and form a very marked projecting ledge ..... 9 ft.
4. A band of very uniform appearance of reddish yellow or buff color, consisting of a mass of shells embedded in red sand. This is the celebrated Claiborne sand. It weathers very smoothly and is less projecting than the ledges above and below it ..... 15 to 17 ft.
3. A band of light gray calcareous clay with a few sandy stripes and indurated ledges ..... 25 to 28 ft.

   All these beds make up the nearly vertical part of the bluff near and between the two landings. Below these to the river level the slope is almost entirely covered by the loose fragments rolled down from above, so that the underlying stratified rocks are discovered only where these loose materials have been removed. Between the upper landing and the ferry these lower strata of the bluff are more clearly exposed to view.
2. A band of light yellowish, gray, calcareous sand striped with a number of hard ledges of similar sandy material. This band is a very prominent part of the bluff, but is in many places, as above stated, much obscured by the fragments of the other beds which have rolled down from above ..... about 35 ft.

[1] U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. 43, 1887, pp. 26, 27. [2] Ibid., p. 28.

1. A band of dark bluish green color, consisting of clayey sands and clays passing downward into a green sand bed 6 to 8 feet thick, which appears, however, above water only above the upper landing..... about 12 ft.

No. 4, probably represents the top of the Claiborne division. The base of the series is not reached at this point, but the following more detailed section presents in Nos. 6–15 the portion of the Claiborne Bluff just given in Nos. 1–4, while Nos. 1 [1]–6 [6] in the detailed section are represented at Lisbon Landing, a few miles above, thus affording a complete series of the Claiborne in the vicinity of its type locality. Smith says:

There is no doubt as to the geologic horizon of the Lisbon section, since the two lowermost beds of the Claiborne section appear at the top of the Lisbon Bluff, the peculiar association of the shells making the identification easy and certain.[1]

Detailed section of Claiborne group of Claiborne Bluff and Lisbon Landing, Alabama River, after Smith and Johnson.[2]

15. Ferruginous sand, holding vast numbers of comminuted as well as well preserved shells. Near the center of this there are in places thin bands of lignite, and along the ferry road the upper part of it is composed of laminated gray clays filled with leaf impressions. This is the source of the celebrated Claiborne fossils, and we shall call it the Claiborne Fossiliferous sand. In many parts of Monroe and Clarke Counties, where this bed is more protected, the material in which the shells are embedded is seen to be a green sand, while at the Claiborne Bluff and vicinity, and at a bluff above St. Stephens, it is completely oxidized into a red ferruginous sand. Thickness about Claiborne ..... 15 to 17 ft.
14. Bluish green glauconitic, sandy marl, with *Ostrea sellæformis* usually somewhat indurated above, and forming a hard projecting ledge.....3 to 4 ft.
13. Calcareous clay or clayey marl, of gray color when dry, but blue when wet. It contains a few badly preserved chalky fossils, Bulla and small Turritellas. This bed becomes sandier below, as well as glauconitic and highly fossiliferous, the principal shells being *Ostrea sellæformis* and a few Pectens. The clayey sandy parts, together about.....18 ft.
12. Light gray calcareous clay similar to the upper part of the preceding bed, with hard, sandy ledges at the top and bottom .....7 ft.
11. Light yellowish gray calcareous sands, with *Ostrea sellæformis* and Pectens; the lower half indurated and full of the molds or casts of univalve shells.....5 ft.
10. Light yellowish gray calcareous sands, like those which make the upper half of bed No. 11. This bed has several hard projecting ledges of the same sandy material and contains a number of fossils: *Ostrea sellæformis*, fragments of *Scutella Lyelli*, *Scalpellum eocense*, *Pecten Deshayesii*, etc. The sandy parts of this bed are loose, crumbling easily between the fingers. There are thin beds of more clayey texture, one of which, about the center of the stratum, holds a number of irregularly shaped concretionary masses of clay. Near the base are one or two indurated ledges of glauconitic sand and shells of *Ostrea sellæformis* .....27 ft.
9. Layer of comminuted shells of *Ostrea sellæformis*, together with perfect shells of some other species embedded in glauconitic or green sand.....3 ft.
8. Dark bluish black sandy clay .....2 ft.
7. Bluish green clayey sands with few fossils in the upper part, but becoming more clayey below and highly fossiliferous: *Venericardia planicosta*, *V. rotunda*, *Nucula magnifica*, *Arca rhomboidella*, *Ostrea sellæformis*, *Voluta Sayana*, *Turritella lineata*, *T. bellifera* Aldrich, besides species of *Natica*, *Corbula*, *Cytherea*, *Lucina*, etc. This bed averages 10 feet or more in thickness.

[1] U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. 43, 1887, p. 30. [2] Ibid., pp. 29, 30.

6. Dark green sandy marl, glauconitic; grayish above, bluish below. This bed is sometimes badly weathered and of more brownish color. It holds a number of fossils, among which the most noticeable are a peculiar small form of *Venericardia planicosta* Lam. and large *Turritella Mortoni* Con. This bed, which is the lowest at Claiborne, may be seen between the upper landing and the ferry, and its exposure is from 6 to 8 feet, according to the stage of the water.
6. [6] Dark brown sandy clays, badly weathered, highly fossiliferous, containing the same shells as beds Nos. 7 and 6 at Claiborne, viz, the peculiar small variety of *Venericardia planicosta* Lam., large *Turritella Mortoni* Con., *Arca rhomboidella* Lea, *Lucina compressa* Lea, *Nucula magnifica* Con., *Turritella bellifera* (Aldrich), etc. This bed becomes more sandy below ..... 8 to 12 ft.
5. [5] Hard projecting sandy ledge ..... 8 in.
4. [4] Calcareous, clayey sands, light yellow when wet, nearly white when dry, glauconitic, forming smooth vertical bluff ..... 6 to 8 ft.
3. [3] Coarse grained sandy glauconitic bed with comminuted shells and many finely preserved shells of uncommon occurrence ..... 3 ft.
2. [2] Light yellow glauconitic sands capped with hard ledge ..... 15 ft.
1. [1] Blue glauconitic sands, probably the same as No. 2 above, but less completely oxidized, lowest of Claiborne strata ..... 5 ft.

Important sections are found at Gosport Landing and Rattlesnake Bluff, on the Alabama River, and at Coffeeville Landing, on the Tombigbee River, as well as at other points in Choctaw, Washington, Clarke, and Monroe Counties.

On the Chattahoochee River Langdon[1] states that the Claiborne is represented by the *Ostrea sallæformis* zone alone, which persists across Alabama with a thickness of about 75 feet, occurring as a bed of gray calcareous sand.

White limestone.—Under this division are included deposits that have hitherto been generally designated as the Jackson and Vicksburg groups, terms derived from Mississippi localities, where strata of similar age are more extensively represented. That there is little distinctive difference in the fauna of these two horizons has been shown by the fossils which have recently been collected in Alabama by Mr. T. H. Aldrich, as well as "the finding by him of *Cardita planicosta* in the uppermost beds of the White limestone near Claiborne." Smith and Johnson[2] state that although certain paleontological and lithological differences may be observed in the two portions of the series, these differences do not justify the division of a formation which in Alabama so clearly presents itself as a unit. Moreover, overlying the Jackson and Vicksburg groups a third horizon has been recognized by them and designated the Coral limestone.

The term White limestone, which includes these three subdivisions, was early employed by Tuomey[3] with much the present significance, although later used by Heilprin[4] for the lower or Jackson group only.

The literature of the White limestone is rather confusing, owing to the fact that the stratigraphical position of the Zeuglodon beds was

[1] Geol. Soc. America, Bull., vol. 2, 1891, pp. 597, 598.
[2] U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull., 43, 1887, p. 19.
[3] Geol. Surv., Alabama, 1st Rien. Rept., 1850, p. 154.
[4] Contrib. Tert. Geol. and Pal. U. S., 1884, p. 33.

not early recognized. Conrad held that the Zeuglodon and Orbitoides were referable to deposits of the same age. Lyell[1] was the first to properly distinguish the two horizons and to assign to the Zeuglodon beds (Jackson) their real position below the Orbitoides limestone (Vicksburg). The same fact was also recognized by Hale[2] and strongly insisted on by Hilgard[3] and most subsequent writers.

The general features of the White limestone are described in the following terms by Smith and Johnson:[4]

It consists chiefly of regularly bedded, impure limestone, with intercalated layers of marl, calcareous clay and sand, and some ledges of pure limestone. Its upper portion is perceptibly more calcareous than the lower, and contains a notably greater proportion of deep sea fossils; but neither the lithologic nor the paleontologic features are sufficiently distinct to warrant division of the formation. Its position and its structure alike indicate that it was laid down in a deep and probably deepening sea.

The different subdivisions of the White limestone are further described in detail.[5]

The lower division of the White limestone, about 60 feet in thickness, is in general terms a light colored argillaceous limestone, resembling the Rotten limestone of the Cretaceous formation both in the character of the rock and in that of the soils to which it gives rise on disintegration. It is traversed by thin bands of tolerably pure white limestone, and by beds of slightly calcareous clay, the latter often impregnated with gypsum. In places it is strongly glauconitic. This division contains a greater variety of fossils than either of the other two, though probably a smaller number. The fossils appear in general to be much more abundant in the upper half of the rock, where the more commonly occurring species are *Pecten perplanus* Mort., *Spondylus dumosus* Mort., *Ostrea cretacea* Mort., sharks' teeth, bones of *Zeuglodon cetoides*, and *Terebratula lachryma* Mort. This upper and most highly fossiliferous part holds calcareous clays which are strongly phosphatic and occasionally well filled with phosphatic or coprolitic nodules. The lower half of this division, while less fossiliferous than the preceding, has, in nearly every locality examined, a bed near its base at least 3 feet in thickness holding vast numbers of *Scutella Lyelli* Con. This, which we have called the Scutella bed, has often served us as a guide in the study of this formation in the field, since it overlies by a few feet only the Claiborne fossiliferous sands.

The middle division of the White limestone has a thickness of at least 140 feet. Lithologically it varies considerably, being in part a hard, crystalline limestone weathering into rough, irregularly shaped pieces, which have suggested the name "horse bone" rock, popularly used to designate it. Another variety is a soft, sometimes pulverulent mass of nearly pure carbonate of lime, which is everywhere quarried for building purposes. When fresh, this rock may easily be cut with an ax or a saw, but it hardens on exposure to the air and lasts for many years in chimneys and pillars to houses. This part of the White limestone contains as a characteristic fossil *Orbitoides Mantelli*, often in such numbers that the rock is little more than a mass of the disks of Orbitoides packed in soft, white carbonate of lime. The Orbitoides are most abundant in the upper two-thirds of this division, becoming less and less abundant below this.

The uppermost division, 150 feet in thickness, has as yet been observed in one locality only, viz, at Salt Mountain at the Middle Salt Works in Clarke County.

[1] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 4, 1847, pp. 186-191.
[2] Ibid., vol. 6, 1848, pp. 354-363.
[3] Ibid., vol. 43, 1867, p. 29-31.
[4] U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. 43, 1887, p. 124.
[5] Ibid., pp. 20, 21.

The rock here is a hard, white limestone, composed in great measure of masses of corals partly silicified. Near the base of this rock there occur great numbers of the spines and plates of echinoderms.

The White limestone is widely represented in Choctaw, Washington, Clarke, Monroe, Conecuh, Covington, and Geneva Counties. The White limestone of the Chattahootchee section, according to Langdon, is represented by both the Jackson and Vicksburg, though "it loses its distinctiveness as Jackson and Vicksburg, and may well be included under one head."[1] It is estimated to attain a thickness of 275 feet.

MISSISSIPPI.

The Eocene of Mississippi covers a wide area in the central and northern portions of the State. The publications of Prof. E. W. Hilgard, whose exhaustive investigations have extended over fully 40 years, afford the chief source of information upon the geology of this area.

The boundary of the Eocene upon the north and east passes in a curve northwest to north, through Kemper, Noxubee, Oktibbeha, Clay, Chickasaw, Pontotoc, Union, and Tippah Counties, near Macon, Starkville, Houston, and Ripley. Upon the south the boundary passes in a somewhat sinuous line through Wayne, Jones, Jasper, Smith, Rankin, Hinds, and Warren Counties, and somewhat to the south of Waynesboro, Jackson, and Vicksburg.

The Eocene overlies the Cretaceous upon the north and east, which it succeeds in its various horizons regularly from northeast to southwest. The relations of the deposits are described by Hilgard, in his Report on the Geology and Agriculture of the State of Mississippi. He says:

The position of the Tertiary strata appears to be more or less in conformity with that of the Cretaceous beds. It certainly is so in the southern portion of the State, where their dip is distinctly southward. Whether or not the same is true in reference to the strata occupying the northern portion of the State I have thus far been unable to determine, in consequence both of the rare accessibility of the strata and their character. If, however, any westerly dip exists in the Tertiary strata of northern Mississippi (as is the case in the Cretaceous strata) it is certainly much less than that of the latter.

In a later publication[2] the same writer estimates the dip in the north as 4 to 5 feet in the mile toward the west; in the south 10 to 12 feet in the mile toward the south.

In the official report first referred to, the lithological character of the Eocene is thus described:

It exhibits, essentially, three different facies, viz, that of lignitiferous clays and sands, varying in color from black to brown, blue, green, yellow, gray, and almost white, with remains of vegetables; that of siliceous sandstones and claystones with marine fossils; and that of limestone and calcareous marls, with marine fossils.

Although these three divisions correspond in the main with the leading stratigraphical divisions of the Eocene, yet many modifications

[1] Geol. Soc. America, Bull., vol. 2, 1891, p. 600.
[2] Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 43, 1867, p. 36.

occur in the series. The lignitic phase has often bands of sandstone intercalated which contain marine fossils, while "the several marine stages are separated by intervening strata of dark colored, often lignitic clays." This peculiarity is not confined alone to the sands and sandstones, but is likewise found in the calcareous beds. The following generalized section, changed but slightly from that given by Hilgard in the report above mentioned, is presented in descending scale:

VICKSBURG. Crystalline limestones and marls with, *Ostrea, vicksburgensis, Ostrea gigantea, Pecten Poulsoni, Arca mississippiensis, Naviculа mississippiensis, Naviculа lima, Crassatella mississippiensis, Cardium diversum, Panopæa oblongata, Dentalium mississippiensis, Fulgoria mississippiensis, Cypræa lintea, Madrepora mississippiensis, Orbitoides Mantelli*..... ..... 80 feet.
Ferruginous rock of Red Bluff, with *Plagiostoma dumosa*, etc..... 12 feet.
Lignitic clay and lignite, at Vicksburg and north of Brandon..... 20 feet.

JACKSON. White (often indurate) and blue marls with *Zeuglodon macrospondylus*, etc.
Lignitic clay and lignite, at Jackson, Garlandsville, Coounpy Creek..... 80 feet.

CLAIBORNE (Calcareous Clăiborne). White (sometimes indurate) and blue marls with *Ostrea cellæformis*, etc.
Lignitic clays and sands of northern Clarke County.

BUHRSTONE (Siliceous Claiborne). Sandstones and claystones with *Cardita planicosta*, etc. Found in Neshoba, Newton, Lauderdale, and Clarke Counties.

LIGNITIC. Lignitiferous strata with interstratified beds of brown, yellow, and gray sands and clays containing marine fossils and plant remains. *Quercus* sp., etc. *Cardita planicosta*, etc.

Lignitic.—The term lignitic, first employed by Hilgard to designate the deposits now under consideration, had, under the name "the Northern Lignitic," much the same stratigraphical significance that it has received in the present report.

Heilprin has suggested the use of Eolignitic, but the earlier term is here retained. Although there seems to be but little doubt as to the stratigraphical position of the greater part of the deposits here referred to the Lignitic, the evidence is somewhat conflicting as to other portions. Much more exhaustive examinations must be made before all the lignitic strata can be assigned to their proper horizons. The deposits of undoubted Lignitic age have been observed to dip below the Buhrstone, and further afford specimens of *Cardita planicosta, Aturia ziczac*, and other early Eocene forms. The Lignitic occupies a much wider area than any other member of the Eocene series. It covers the whole or portions of Lauderdale, Kemper, Neshoba, Leake, Madison, Yazoo, Holmes, Attala, Winston, Noxubee, Oktibbeha, Clay, Webster, Choctaw, Montgomery, Carroll, Grenada, Tallahatchee, Yallabusha, Calhoun, Chickasaw, Pontotoc, Union, Lafayette, Panola, Tate, De Soto, Marshall, Benton, and Tippah Counties.

The northeastern portion of the area bordering the Cretaceous has been designated by Hilgard the "Flatwoods." The deposits are gray or whitish, often laminated clays. The Lignitic strata to the west of this area are thus described by Hilgard:

Westward of the Flatwoods proper, however, the clays are commonly laminated, less uniform in their character, and interstratified more or less with the sand. Such usually are the clays associated with the lignite beds and containing impressions of leaves; nevertheless, the genuine "Flatwoods clay" character frequently reappears over the whole region. * * * Through these clay stones any sign of lithological transitions, from the pure almost white clay to the fossiliferous sandstone of Tippah County, may be traced, and careful examination will sometimes detect in them unequivocal remnants of marine fossils. * * * In short, the greatest diversity of material generally obtains in connection with the lignite beds.

Buhrstone.—The Buhrstone called Siliceous Claiborne by Hilgard is characterized by aluminous sandstones and claystones. It is found chiefly in the eastern portion of the State and extends from the Alabama State line across Clarke, Lauderdale, Newton, and Neshoba Counties into Scott and Leake Counties, occurring also as an outlier in Attala, Holmes, Choctaw, Montgomery, and Carroll Counties. Its stratigraphical position below the Claiborne and above the Lignitic has been fully established, and among its more important fossils are *Ostrea divaricata*, *Cardita planicosta*, *Cardita rotunda*, *Cardium Nicolleti* and *Voluta petrosa*. Hilgard corroborates the statements of Tuomey and Conrad of the division of the Buhrstone into two horizons, but the investigations have hardly been exhaustive enough as yet to admit of their final acceptance.

Claiborne.—The Claiborne, or as it is designated by Hilgard, the Calcareous Claiborne, is poorly represented in Mississippi. So far as its presence has been reported it is found mainly in Clarke County, although Hilgard, in an article in the American Journal of Science in 1867, states that he has "received evidence that it extends somewhat farther westward, between the territory of the Jackson and Siliceous Claiborne groups, than it appears on the map" in his State report. As a group the strata are not very sharply defined "inasmuch as the transition from siliceous to calcareous materials is a gradual one" and on this account the Claiborne deposits occupy a somewhat intermediate position lithologically between the Buhrstone and the Jackson.

The beds are chiefly blue and white marls, the latter generally arenaceous and often indurated. The fossils of this horizon are so poorly preserved that but few have been recognized. Among those reported by Hilgard are *Ostrea divaricata*, *Ostrea sellæformis*, *Pecten Lyelli*, *Corbula gibbosa*, and *Voluta petrosa*.

Jackson.—This division of the Eocene was first recognized in Mississippi by Conrad,[1] who described an extensive collection of fossils from the neighborhood of Jackson and first employed that name to designate the horizon since so called. He assigned to the strata their proper stratigraphical position above the Claiborne and below the Vicksburg, although from the nature of the material he had for examination he failed to recognize the true faunal relationship of the several horizons. His investigations led him to the conclusion that there were

[1] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 7, 1855, pp. 257-263.

no forms in common with the Vicksburg series and but four or five with the Claiborne. Subsequent observations, however, have shown in Mississippi, as well as in Alabama, that there are many forms common to the three horizons. Such common species as *Cardita planicosta* and *Cardita rotunda* of the Claiborne, with many less usual types, are found, while the list of species reported as likewise occurring in the Vicksburg is very large. The most distinctive fossil of the Jackson beds is the Zeuglodon, which, as already stated under Alabama, had been reported by Conrad and others to occur at the same horizon with Orbitoides, though this was denied by Hilgard. If such intermingling has been locally found it is explained probably on the ground of subsequent rearrangement of the deposits.

The Jackson beds are composed "at times of a soft yellowish limestone or indurate marl containing a good deal of clay; at others of, in reality, nothing more than soft gray or yellowish calcareous clay." Hilgard recognizes two horizons, an *upper* of about 70 feet of marl or clay in which the bones of the Zeuglodon are prominent, and a *lower* of 10-20 feet of bluish sandy strata, containing green-sand grains. It is the lower horizon that is developed at Jackson and contains the important series of fossils described by Conrad. In this lower division beds of lignite are conspicuously developed at several points.

The Jackson deposits extend as a band of varying width from Wayne across Clarke, Jasper, Smith, Scott, Rankin, and Madison Counties, into Yazoo, where they disappear below the alluvium of the Mississippi.

Vicksburg.—The Vicksburg strata extend as a narrow band across the State south of the region occupied by the Jackson group, and pass through Wayne, Jasper, Smith, Rankin, Hinds, and Warren Counties, reaching the Mississippi River at Vicksburg Bluff.

As stated in a previous paragraph, the Vicksburg group is both lithologically and paleontologically closely associated with the Jackson. This is shown most clearly when the section exposed at Red Bluff in Wayne County is considered. The intermediate deposits there exhibited, which Hilgard thought sufficiently important to establish as a subgroup of the Vicksburg series, contain a most interesting association of typical Jackson and Vicksburg forms (the latter predominating), together with a large number of species peculiar to the horizon. Conrad, who had examined beds on the Savannah River at Shell Bluff, held that this division (Red Bluff group of Hilgard), in which the same species of oyster (*Ostrea georgiana*) was reported to occur, was of the same age and, moreover, that its position was between the Claiborne and Jackson. He called the formation the Shell Bluff group.[1] In the American Journal of Science for 1866, Hilgard[2] opposed the opinions of Conrad and showed the proper position of the deposits in Mississippi to be at the base of the Vicksburg. The strata of this horizon are

[1] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser,, vol. 41, 1866, p. 96.
[2] Ibid., vol. 42, 1866, pp. 68-70.

never of great thickness, and at Red Bluff Station, Wayne County, where typically developed, are only about 4 feet thick. At this point, the beds consist of "irregular masses of fine grained, ferruginous rock, imbedded in a brownish or greenish clayey mass."

The deposits of the Vicksburg group proper consist chiefly of limestones, marls, and clays, which are frequently arenaceous and at times glauconitic. The change is often very marked, for, as Hilgard states, "not only do the materials of the different groups often bear a most extraordinary resemblance to each other, but their character varies incessantly in one and the same stratum within short distances."

The typical fossil is the Orbitoides. Conrad, although at first recognizing in its fossils the close relationship of the Orbitoides limestone with the beds exposed at Vicksburg bluff, was later[1] of the opinion that the faunas should be separated and the former associated with the Jackson group. Subsequent investigation has shown the error of this position, for the Orbitoides has been found in sufficient numbers mingled with the other characteristic Vicksburg forms, to prove the identity of the deposits.

The following section of the Vicksburg Bluff is given in its main details as found in the State report of Hilgard:

	7. Bluff formation	10–20 ft.
	6. Orange Sand	5–20 ft.
Vicksburg group..	5. Alternating strata, 1 to 6 feet thick of limestone and marl, containing the Vicksburg fossils, and some bands of non-effervescent, gray sand and clay	60–65 ft.
	4. Black lignitic clay, and gray sand, with *Ostrea gigantea, Corbula alta, Natica mississippiensis, Cytherea sobrina, Madrepora mississippiensis*	5 ft.
	3. Gray or black lignitic clays and sand, with iron pyrites; exuding salts and sulphureted hydrogen	25 ft.
	2. Solid lustrous lignite, with whitish cleavage planes	3 ft.
	1. White limestone of the Jackson group?	3 ft.

TENNESSEE.

The Eocene of Mississippi, which reaches the northern boundary of that State, continues in a southwest-northeast direction across the western part of Tennessee. It has been reported to cover much of the area lying between the Tennessee River on the east and the Mississippi River on the west, and has been found to outcrop at several localities on the bluffs of the latter stream. It has been estimated to attain a width of quite 50 miles, but with the fragmentary data at hand the exact delimitation of the formation is in much doubt.

The several official reports of Troost upon the Geology of Tennessee barely touch upon the Eocene. Considerable attention, however, is given to this portion of the State by Safford, though the recent investigations of McGee tend to show that much that has been hitherto held to belong to the Eocene series must be referred to later horizons.

Safford,[2] whose authority has been followed up to this time, divides

[1] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 41, 1866, p. 96.

[2] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 37, 1864, pp. 360–372. Geology of Tennessee, 1869, pp. 422–428.

the series into two groups which he terms I. The Porter's Creek group, II. The La Grange group. The Upper or La Grange group McGee has recently correlated with the Appomattox formation of the Atlantic slope, so that a large part of the deposits hitherto referred to the Eocene has been given by him a much more recent origin. The Bluff Lignite group, which Safford doubtfully referred to the Tertiary and placed above the La Grange group, is held by Loughridge[1] to be a phase of the Porter's Creek group. McGee, on the other hand, considers it Pleistocene. It will thus be seen that the various authorities upon the geology of western Tennessee vary widely in their opinions.

The problems here presented for solution have to be determined almost wholly on stratigraphical data due to the absence of distinctive fossils. In short, with the exception of a somewhat limited flora, which has not as yet received much study, and a few poorly preserved molluscan remains, there is nothing of a paleontological character to aid in the determination of the geological horizons represented. The Lignitic (Porter's Creek group) is probably, however, the single member of the Eocene series found in Tennessee. In its lithological characters it has much in common with the same formation found in Mississippi. The Flatwoods phase, with its laminated and aluminous structure, is widely represented. Arenaceous and lignitic strata likewise occur. We have much yet to learn of the Eocene of Tennessee, however, before its distinctive features can be at all accurately defined.

KENTUCKY.

The Eocene of Kentucky is the northward extension of the Tennessee formation and presents much the same characters as its more southern representative. It occupies that portion of the State lying between the Tennessee and Mississippi Rivers and the same divisions in the series have been found to occur as in Tennessee. It has been hitherto stated, however, that McGee correlates the La Grange group with the Appomattox and refers the Bluff Lignite to the Pleistocene, although the latter is by Loughridge considered to be a phase of the Porter's Creek group.

The Eocene series as subdivided by Loughridge[2] in his Report upon the Jackson Purchase Region is as follows in descending order:

3. La Grange group (of Safford's Tennessee).
2. Lignitic (Safford's Porter's Creek and Bluff Lignite).
1. Hickman (provisional).

The *Hickman group*, the lowest member of the Eocene, which Loughridge has provisionally established, is found chiefly in the vicinity of Hickman, where exposures occur "in the bluff bordering the Mississippi bottom from Hickman south into Tennessee." In evidence that

[1] Geol. Surv. Kentucky, Rept. Jackson Purchase Region, 1888, p. 41.
[2] Ibid, p. 37.

the deposits at Hickman are older than the Lignitic the author says: "These exposures are embraced in a belt of country 5 miles west of a line running south from the lignitic outcrops at Columbus, and both of the formations have an apparent slight easterly and northwesterly dip, which would carry the Hickman beds much below those of Columbus." The deposits consist of clay, sand, and gravel, but have not been exposed to their base.

The *Lignitic group*, which, according to Loughridge, is the equivalent of Safford's Porter's Creek group—

enters from Tennessee with a width of about 10 miles, passes northward through the middle of Calloway County, soon bends to the northwest through the southwest corner of Marshall, and passes diagonally through the center of McCracken and the northern part of Ballard County into Illinois; southward along the Mississippi River bluffs, its first outcrops occur 2 miles north of Wickliffe, Ballard County, and in the bluffs between Wickliffe and Fort Jefferson reaching eastward 7 miles to Blandville and southward to Laketon; at Columbus and a mile above, and also at Chalk Bluff, 2 miles south, the greatest exposures of the lignitic beds occur.

Loughridge characterizes the group lithologically as follows:

First.—A lower heavy bed of massive joint clay, black when wet, but drying to a lead-gray color, and on exposure to air crumbling to a fine shaly mass. This is the Porter's Creek group of the Tennessee series. It is popularly called soapstone. Along the Mississippi River bluffs the clays, while dark and somewhat jointy, are more sandy than those on the eastern side of the region.

Second.—An upper bed of dark sandy clay, holding two layers of lignite, each varying from 2 to 4 feet in thickness, the topmost being about 5 feet from the surface of the formations. This upper or lignitic portion of the group, while perhaps at one time continuous from the Mississippi River eastward nearly to the Cretaceous, has now almost disappeared on the east, outcropping only on Panther Creek, 6 miles east of Mayfield, in Graves County On the west, however, in the neighborhood of Wickliffe, the lignite beds reach for 3 miles to north and south, and for 7 miles eastward to Blandville.

Loughridge gives the following section which shows the character of the several members comprising the group:

Section of the Lignitic group.

	Feet.
Dark sandy clays	3
Lignite bed	4
Dark sandy clays	5
Lignite bed	3
Dark sandy clays	3
Clay stone with fossil-leaf impressions	2
Dark sandy clay, the upper holding leaf impressions	2
Micaceous sandstone with fossil casts	3
Black joint clay, changing to dark sandy clay	100

The paleontological evidence, with the exception of a few poorly preserved molluscan remains from the micaceous sandstone near Paducah, depends entirely upon fossil leaves, of which a considerable number have been described by Lesquereux from the beds near Columbus[1] and Wickliffe.[2] The molluscan forms, five in number, *Mysia ungulina* (?),

[1] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 27, 1859.

[2] U. S. National Museum Proc., vol. 11, 1888, pp. 11–12.

Leda protexta (?), *Leda sp.*, *Nucula ovula* (?), and *Turritella Mortoni* are described by Heilprin[1] in the Proceedings of the Academy of Natural Science, of Philadelphia, as occurring "mainly in the form of casts in a highly ferruginous and fairly micaceous yellow-white sandstone."

The non-occurrence of Lignitic strata in the area between the eastern and western outcrops above described is accounted for by the removal of the deposits and "the filling up of the gap by the La Grange beds."[2] This is considered probable from the fact that the La Grange is found at depths below the level of the Lignitic deposits.

The wide surface covering of more recent deposits limits the examination of the Eocene to the exposures afforded by streams and well borings.

ILLINOIS.

In Geology, vol. 1 of the Reports of the Geological Survey of Illinois, certain deposits in the southern portions of the State, in Massac, Pulaski, and Alexander Counties, are referred to the Tertiary. They consist of gravels, sands, and clays that are at times cemented into a ferruginous conglomerate. In Pulaski County, a bed of greensand marl occurs, with casts of marine shells that are referred by Worthen to the genera Cucullæa and Turritella. The bluff at Caledonia, on the Ohio River, affords a fine section of Tertiary strata 100 feet in thickness. Worthen states that a thin bed of lignite is found at the water's edge. Loughridge, who visited the locality at high water, states that the basal member is "greensand (glauconite) with hyoline sand; also, some black sand and clay, 2 to 4 feet." Overlying this he mentions the occurrence of "75 feet of the dark joint clay weathering to a gray shale and similar in every regard to the clay beds of the lignitic." The presence of 20 feet of "dark, sandy clay, indurated" above the joint clay is further stated. This is supposed by Loughridge to represent the micaceous sandstone of the Paducah series.

Worthen is of the opinion that the Tertiary strata may have extended along the basin of the Mississippi as far north, at least, as Hancock County, since the occurrence there of shark's teeth in the alluvial deposits can be explained only on the ground of subsequent rearrangement of earlier marine deposits. It seems probable that the various deposits here referred to are the northward extension of the Lignitic represented in Tennessee and Kentucky and described in the previous pages.

MISSOURI.

Little more than the bare statement of the occurrence of Eocene in the southeastern portion of the State is found in the literature. That the strata partake of the character of the deposits in Kentucky and

[1] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci. Proc., vol. 38, 1886, pp. 57, 58.
[2] Geol. Surv. Kentucky, Rept. Jackson Purchase Region, 1888, p. 51.

Illinois, which collectively outline in a general way the head of the Mississippi embayment in early Tertiary times, is recognized. The outcrops are found chiefly in Mississippi and New Madrid Counties. So far as known, the strata are entirely confined to the Lignitic. No fossils have been reported from the beds, and even the stratigraphical relations of the deposits themselves are very imperfectly understood.

ARKANSAS.

Our knowledge of the Eocene of Arkansas is confined chiefly to a small area in the southwestern portion of the State that has lately been investigated by Prof. Robert T. Hill.[1]

The earlier reports of David Dale Owen, State Geologist of Arkansas, contain many casual references to Tertiary deposits, in the eastern and southern counties, a portion of which can be shown to be Eocene, while the remainder are to be referred in part to older, in part to younger formations. The Tertiary area examined by Hill includes portions of Hot Springs, Dallas, Clark, Howard, Hempstead, Nevada, Ouachita, Columbia, La Fayette, and Miller Counties, and the sections are found for the most part along the Ouachita and Red Rivers and their tributaries. The inland border of the formation is found to extend in an irregular line from southwest to northeast, a short distance to the west of the Iron Mountain Railway and passes near Texarkana, Washington, Arkadelphia, and Malvern. From the scattered data accessible for the remainder of the State it seems probable that this line extends in approximately the same direction toward the northeast, past Little Rock to the Missouri border.

The lignitic formation of this area has been designated by Hill the "Camden series." He describes it as "an extensive, shallow-water, marine formation of stratified, micaceous, non-indurated, alternating laminæ of sands and clay shales, sandy shales occasionally accompanied by bituminous shales, lignitic shales, thin sandstones (quartzites), etc."[2] The series takes its name from the town of Camden on the Ouachita River, near which the most typical exposure is found. The following section is from Hill's report:

8. Surface soil (residuum of substructure) ferruginous sandy ..... 5 ft.
7. Laminated sand, with green-sand specks, originally white, but ferruginating and cementing into red iron sandstone, with a tendency to shaly disintegration on exposure ..... 32 ft.
6. Little Missouri lignites, or ligneous shales, with white sand between layers of the same character as those seen at the mouth of the Little Missouri ..... 20 ft.
5. Buff-colored, micaceous sand and clay shales, changing on exposure to pink and light yellow ..... 10 ft.
4. Bituminous shales, with bituminous masses and asphalt-like concretions. This stratum is full of concretions of iron pyrites, which oxidize on exposure, coloring the neighboring strata red ..... 15 ft.

[1] Geol. Surv. Arkansas, Ann. Rept. for 1888, vol. 2, pp. 48-65.
[2] Ibid., p. 49.

3. Light drab, fine, micaceous sands or sandy clays, finely laminated..... 25 ft.
2. Concealed..... 25 ft.
1. Repetition of No. 3 to the water line ..... 10 ft.

In the vicinity of Arkadelphia are deposits "consisting of alternate bands of blue clay and white or orange-colored sands" that occupy a position below the Camden series as exhibited at Camden. They rest unconformably upon the Cretaceous, and have received the name of "Arkadelphia shales" from Hill.

Hill states that there are many other outcrops within the area that afford deposits similar to the Camden section, but that, judging from the dip, it is not probable that the strata are identical. On the contrary, they represent alternating conditions in the deposition of an extensive series of beds. The thickness of the Camden series can not be accurately given, but it is estimated to be quite 700 feet between Curtis and Camden. At the latter point, 300 feet more are exposed from low water to the top of the highest hills.

Owen mentions the occurrence in the central and northeastern portions of the State in Jefferson, St. Francis, Green, and other counties of lignitic strata that are doubtless the northern continuation of the belt represented by the Camden series of the southwest.

The "Cleveland county red lands" described by Hill, though lithologically similar to the typical Camden series, are "accompanied by extensive deposits of marine shells and greensand which bring into these strata an ingredient of lime, an ingredient which is conspicuously lacking in the underlying beds." *Cardita planicosta*, *Rostellaria velata*, and other forms found also at Claiborne show the probable position that these beds hold in the Eocene series. At White Bluffs, on the Arkansas River, in Jefferson County, Owen mentions a section of Eocene shell marl 50 to 60 feet in thickness containing many Claiborne types.

From the evidence thus afforded the presence of the Lignitic and Claiborne are established, while it is probable that the Buhrstone also occurs. The White limestone is undoubtedly lacking.

LOUISIANA.

The reports of Hopkins and Hilgard, that of the former to the general assembly as State geologist, that of the latter to the New Orleans Academy of Sciences, afford the chief sources of information upon the Eocene geology of Louisiana. As the investigations were hurriedly conducted, admitting in neither case of an extended examination of the deposits, there is much yet to be desired before approximate limits may be given to the several formations, or even the horizons themselves definitely determined.

The Eocene strata are found to the north of a line extending from the Sabine River near the mouth of Bayou Toneau, through Sabine and Natchitoches Counties, crossing the Red River near Cloutierville,

thence through Grant and Catahoula Counties to near Stafford Point on the west bank of the Ouachita River. To the east of the Ouachita River the Eocene is covered by the alluvial deposits of the Mississippi. North of this southern boundary line the strata extends to the Arkansas border.

All the main divisions of the Eocene are probably represented, although we have definite knowledge of but two, the Vicksburg and Jackson. Hilgard describes, under the name of "*The Mansfield group*," a series of beds consisting of lignites, sands, and clays that he states in his first report in part at least overlie deposits with characteristic Jackson fossils. In the final report these deposits are shown to be largely Jackson. Hopkins, about the same time, suggests the identity of a part of the Mansfield group with the "Northern Lignite." Hill, in his Arkansas report, states that similar deposits in Arkansas which he assigns to the Lignitic, and calls the Camden series, represent certainly in part the Mansfield group of Hilgard. If, upon further examination, such proves to be the case, we have in the lignitic strata of northwestern Louisiana the Lignitic represented. That lignitic strata occur at different horizons, as in Mississippi, is beyond doubt, and it may be that the Mansfield group contains representatives of all the divisions from the Lignitic to the Jackson. Too little is known to make positive statements upon this point.

Jackson.—The northern limits of the Jackson group, as finally established, will depend upon the amount of lignitic strata that will be assigned to earlier horizons. In addition to the lignites, with their interstratified sands and sandy clays, are marine strata, consisting of marls, clays, and sands with numerous typical molluscan forms, and at two localities (Grandview on the Ouachita River, and Montgomery, Grant Parish), the remains of Zeuglodon.

Vicksburg.—The limits of the Vicksburg group have been more accurately determined. The strata occupy a belt of country 10 to 12 miles in width, extending from the Ouachita River to the Sabine, and passing through Catahoula, Winn, Grant, Natchitoches, and Sabine Counties. The deposits consist chiefly of yellow and red clays, at times sandy and often very calcareous from the presence of large numbers of limestone nodules, that are filled with casts of shells. Lignitic strata are not altogether absent, though infrequent. Many characteristic Vicksburg fossils have been reported from the different portions of the area, including *Orbitoides Mantelli* and *Pecten Poulsoni*.

TEXAS.

The first information that is afforded us concerning the occurrence of Eocene strata in the State of Texas is presented by Roemer in his work entitled "Texas," etc., published in 1849. At Wheelock, Caldwell

County, he found fossils that he considered identical with those at Claiborne, Alabama. From this he drew the conclusion that—

> It is hardly to be believed that this Tertiary formation is limited only to this point on the Brazos, in Texas, but most probably it is part of a continuous band, as is the case in Mississippi and Alabama, extending along the foot of the Cretaceous, and only the detritus of the later alluvial formations prevents its exposure in most places.[1]

The supposed limits of the formations are given on a map appended to the volume. The later geological notes on this region by Schott, Hall, Conrad, Shumard, and Buckley are very meager and unsatisfactory, and give us hardly more than a general idea as to the position of the Tertiary.[2] Loughridge, in a "Report on the Cotton Production of the State of Texas"[2] of the Tenth Census, gives the general boundaries of the Eocene, although its westward deflection in the drainage of the Rio Grande, adopted on most recent maps, has been lately shown to be erroneous.[3] Hill states that the mistake originated because Conrad referred a specimen of *Cardita planicosta* to a locality (Arroyo de las Minas) in Zavalla County, which, however, upon examination, shows, in the handwriting of the collector, that it came from Mexico.

Heilprin presents an excellent general statement of the stratigraphical relations of the Texas Eocene, so far as they were known up to 1884, in his "Contributions to the Tertiary Geology and Paleontology of the United States." Hill quotes largely from the same work, so far as it relates to the Eocene, in his general summary of "The Present Conditions of Knowledge of the Geology of Texas."[4]

A recent publication of Dr. R. A. F. Penrose, jr., entitled "A Preliminary Report on the Geology of the Gulf Tertiary of Texas, from the Red River to the Rio Grande," in the First Annual Report of the Geological Survey of Texas for 1889, gives us the results of the first systematic study of the Tertiary formations of eastern Texas. The line separating the Cretaceous and Eocene, he states, runs in a general northeast and southwest direction, crossing the Red River west of Texarkana, the Texas and Pacific Railroad between Corsicana and the Trinity River, the Brazos River in the northeast corner of Milam County, the Colorado River 10 miles below Austin, and the Rio Grande River in the northwest corner of Webb County, 3 miles below the Maverick County line and half way between Eagle Pass and Laredo.

Concerning the difficulty of definitely establishing the boundary between the Cretaceous and Tertiary, Penrose says:

> The uppermost part of the Cretaceous and the base of the Tertiary strata are both composed of soft clay and sand beds, which succumb readily to the weathering action of the atmosphere and consequently the line of separation is often impossible to locate exactly.

---

[1] Texas, etc., 1849, p. 372, and U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. 45, 1887, p. 17.
[2] Tenth Census of the U. S., vol. 5, 1884, pp. 653–831.
[3] U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. 45, 1887, p. 85.
[4] U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. 45, 1887.

As regards the composition and origin of the strata he says:

The Tertiary deposits consist of a vast thickness of sand, clay, and glauconite beds, in some places characterized by great quantities of lignite, and in others by beds of littoral fossils. In fact the whole series represents a succession of coastal, subcoastal, or brackish water deposits, alternating with marine deposits of a littoral character, and between these two extremes we find all gradations. The lagoon or subcoastal deposits compose by far the greater part of the series, and the marine strata represent slight and temporary submergencies of the coastal area.

The strike of the strata is northeast to southwest and the dip from 0° to 5° toward the southeast, although local variations in the latter are reported by Penrose by which at times the dip is west or northwest, and one instance in the vicinity of San Ygnacio on the Rio Grande, where for 21 miles the dip is towards the northeast. The strata have been estimated to attain a thickness of 1,000 to 1,300 feet. Penrose divides the deposits into two horizons, which are given below in descending order.

2. The Timber Belt or Sabine River beds.
1. The Basal or Wills Point clays.

The lower division, the *Basal* or *Wills Point Clays*, are composed of—

Stiff laminated clay, yellow, gray, blue, or bluish green in color, frequently interbedded with seems and laminæ of sand, containing many concretionary masses of gray non-fossiliferous limestone. * * * No lignitic beds have been seen as yet in these clays.

The deposits of this division are estimated to be 250 to 300 feet thick. They are considered by Penrose to be absent on the Rio Grande.

The upper division, the *Timber Belt* or *Sabine River Beds*, are composed of—

Siliceous and glauconitic sands, with white, brown, and black clays. The clays, however, are greatly in the minority, and the siliceous sands comprise by far the greater part of the whole series. Lignite beds are of very frequent occurrence, varying from a few inches to 10 and 12 feet thick.

Of the areal distribution of these beds Penrose says that they "occupy an area over 125 miles wide in the northeast part of the State, but thin down to less than 40 miles on the Colorado." On the Rio Grande the Timber Belt Beds are found, according to Penrose, resting directly on the Cretaceous.

Dr. White,[1] however, considers that the Laramie enters into the Rio Grande section between the marine beds of the Cretaceous and Eocene. He says:

These strata (Laramie) dip gradually to the southeastward or approximately in the direction of the river's (Rio Grande) course and disappear beneath the sandy strata of the Eocene Tertiary some 10 or 12 miles above Laredo.

The Timber Belt or Sabine River beds are estimated to attain a thickness of 800 to 1,000 feet. Although the discovery of many fossils is reported from the Texas Eocene, and the identity of several forms with the species recognized in the Alabama and Mississippi strata

[1] Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 35, 1888, pp. 432–438.

claimed, little systematic study has been given them, so that no very definite conclusions can as yet be drawn. *Cardita planicosta*, that ranges so widely and is so characteristic of the Eocene in the Atlantic as well as the Gulf States, has been recognized among other typical forms.

CORRELATION OF DEPOSITS.

There is practical uniformity of opinion at the present time as to the delimitation of the Eocene of the Atlantic and Gulf coast region. Both paleontologically and stratigraphically, the break separating the Eocene and Cretaceous is clearly defined, and except where local details of geographical distribution have not been as yet finally established, the line may be drawn with comparative accuracy. Unconformity of contact is generally apparent, and the types of animal remains are so widely different as to afford at once, when present, a ready means of discrimination.

The Neocene is also found unconformably overlying the Eocene and with fossil forms that at once separate the two horizons, although the distinctions are, perhaps, not so strongly marked as between the Cretaceous and Eocene.

On the other hand, any attempt at a wide correlation of the various divisions of the Eocene established in the different portions of the Atlantic and Gulf coast region is rendered well-nigh fruitless from our incomplete knowledge of their stratigraphy and their fossils. Only in one locality (along the Alabama and Tombigbee Rivers, Alabama) have we even an approximately accurate section of the Eocene series. The literature is filled with incomplete descriptions of local deposits, which, for purposes of widespread correlation of the strata must be used with the greatest care. Moreover, the collections of fossils made by the many authorities cited in the previous pages of this report have been either altogether destroyed or so carelessly labeled and preserved as to be practically worthless for stratigraphical purposes. The collections of the Alabama State Survey are an exception, and I have a fragmentary series from the Atlantic coast deposits. It will thus be seen that the difficulties in the way of any general correlation of deposits are well-nigh insuperable. We are practically ignorant of the fauna, and the very foundations upon which we have to build are thus wanting. Long lists of fossils, it is true, have appeared in many articles and reports upon the region, but the establishment of any complete system of correlation upon such data, is, to say the least, hazardous. Before the work can be satisfactorily done, careful and exhaustive collections must be made. Until that has been accomplished, a provisional statement of the more apparent similarities may not be valueless. Many such attempts have hitherto been made, and it is with some reluctance that the author employs such insufficient data for widespread correlations which require the most accurate information to possess any value. In

the introduction to this report a division of the Eocene into I, Lower; II, Middle; III, Upper, was suggested. Although such a division of the strata can not be definitely established everywhere, it affords a scale to which the facts, so far as we know them, may be referred, and by which the complete series in Alabama may be best interpreted. In the succeeding pages the generalized sections recorded in the several States will be assigned, so far as possible, to a relative position in this scale, although later observations will probably necessitate many changes.

New Jersey.—The Eocene of New Jersey belongs entirely to the Lower division. Its supposed close relationship to the Cretaceous, from a stratigraphical standpoint, was long the cause of associating it with that horizon. Its fossils were subsequently found to possess an undoubted Eocene character, and although lacking some of the more widely represented species, such as *Cardita planicosta*, *Turritella Mortoni*, and *Ostrea sellæformis*, still afford none of the characteristic Cretaceous forms of the underlying rocks. The character of the vertebrate bones and the molluscan remains is a strong indication of its early Eocene age. Conrad[1] stated this position in 1848 and more fully explained the same in 1865. It has been generally held by subsequent writers.

Maryland.—There is some difference of opinion as to the correlation of the Maryland deposits. The strata exhibited at Piscataway Creek, Upper Marlboro, and other points have been generally considered to hold a position well down in the Eocene series, but whether they are to be correlated with the Claiborne, Buhrstone, or Lignitic of the south has not yet been finally determined, so that it is a matter of some doubt whether the Maryland deposits should be considered Lower or Middle Eocene. It is not at all improbable that both may be represented, though we have not sufficient data for establishing a division. That the deposits of Maryland and Virginia occupy about the same horizon is pretty clearly established, both on stratigraphical and paleontological grounds. In the main the fossils are similar. *Ostrea compressirostra*, *Turritella Mortoni*, *Cytherea Meekii*, *Cardita planicosta*, *Cucullæa gigantea*, *Panopæa elongata* are types frequent in both States, while *Turritella Mortoni*, *Panopæa elongata*, and *Cardita planicosta* have a wide geographical range in other portions of the Atlantic and Gulf coast region. Unfortunately the few forms that occur have not, so far as is known, a narrowly circumscribed range geologically, *Cardita planicosta*, for example, ranging through the entire Eocene series. Lithologically, also, the Maryland deposits are, in their widespread green-sand facies, to be intimately associated with the Virginia strata.

Virginia.—The Virginia Eocene region is, as above stated, the southward extension of the Maryland area. The upper strata may represent a higher horizon, but of that we have little to guide us. The fossils

[1] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci. Jour., new ser., vol. 1, 1848, p. 129. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 17, 1865, pp. 71, 72.

are, in the main, identical, though, so far as investigation has gone, the fauna of the Virginia Eocene is more varied than that of Maryland, and in the presence of *Ostrea sellæformis* and other important forms shows a closer relationship with the more southern areas. Whether it is the representative of the Lower or Middle Eocene can not be stated with definiteness, although it seems probable that portions of each are represented. Continuous deposition under similar circumstances seems to have prevailed, and renders any division of the series difficult.

North Carolina.—The fauna of the North Carolina Eocene presents so many differences from that of other areas that it is difficult to correlate the strata. The deposits have much less in common with the Virginia region than with South Carolina, when viewed either from a paleontological or structural standpoint. *Ostrea sellæformis* and *Cardita planicosta* occur sparingly together with other forms that are found in the Middle Eocene of Alabama. Too little is known of the fossils and their range to enter much into details, but there is little doubt that the Middle Eocene is here represented, though its lower portions may be absent. There are also points of relationship between the limestone beds in the eastern portions of the State and the White limestone facies farther south. Too little is known of the fauna to pass final judgment. It seems probable, however, that the Upper Eocene is here represented.

South Carolina.—The Eocene of South Carolina is represented by portions, at least, of the Lower, Middle, and Upper members. That some of the basal and superior beds are lacking, and that there may have been interruptions in continuous deposition seems probable. The irregularly stratified arenaceous beds at the base of the series, classed with the Buhrstone in Tuomey's South Carolina report, are beyond much doubt to be correlated with the Lignitic of Alabama, and are thus Lower Eocene. Although lignitic strata are not wholly lacking, yet the conditions under which the beds were accumulated were very different from those existing in the Gulf region. The seas were open, and sands and clays were chiefly deposited, while lignitic accumulations were forming in the Mississippi embayment. The overlying argillaceous deposits are probably Buhrstone, though they may include also, in part or in whole, the Claiborne. They are of Middle Eocene age. Among the species found that occur in the Middle Eocene elsewhere, though not distinctive in all cases, are *Turritella Mortoni*, *Cardita planicosta*, *Cytherea ovata*, *Crassatella alæformis*, *Pectunculus stamineus*, and *Ostrea sellæformis*. The "calcareous strata of the Charleston Basin," which include the Santee Beds and the Ashley and Cooper Beds of Tuomey, are to be correlated with the White limestone of Alabama, and are thus upper Eocene, though the evidence for the presence of the upper horizon (Vicksburg) is by no means conclusive. The existence of Zeuglodon remains in the different members of the calcareous strata (Santee Beds and Ashley and Cooper Beds), together with the character of the mollusca, is strong proof of their identity of age with the Jackson group of Alabama and Mississippi. Some of the beds on the left bank of the

Savannah, opposite and below Shell Bluff, have been correlated with the Vicksburg, upon evidence previously stated and have been called the "Shell Bluff group."

Georgia.—Although investigated much less fully than in South Carolina, the Eocene deposits of Georgia include probably the three divisions there represented. The "Buhrstone" is described as peculiarly typical for Georgia, though as the term is here used it includes part, if not all, of the Lignitic, Buhrstone, and Claiborne of Alabama. A separation of the series into these horizons is as yet impossible from the lack of accessible data. In the southern portion of the State the Vicksburg group of the White limestone (connecting the Florida and Alabama areas) is doubtless represented, though the evidence is rather of geographical possibility than established fact.[1]

The upper portion of the section exhibited at Shell Bluff, on the Savannah River, was stated by Conrad[2] to represent a horizon underlying the "Orbitolite limestone of the Jackson group."

Hilgard, in a reply to Conrad,[3] says the statement that the *Orbitoides* occurs in the Jackson group is incorrect, and that the "Shell Bluff group" of Conrad is probably the equivalent of his "Red Bluff group," found at the base of the Vicksburg series and overlying the Jackson. Of the importance of *Ostrea georgiana* for purposes of correlation, Hilgard claims that it varies greatly from the Jackson oyster, with which Conrad compared it, but may be similar to *Ostrea giganiea* of the Vicksburg, which, moreover, is not present in the Red Bluff group. From this it appears that the evidence for the correlation of the "Shell Bluff group" is insufficient, and beyond the fact that it is included in the White limestone series and is thus Upper Eocene, it is impossible to go. From the data at hand it is evident that a decided opinion can not be given upon the different horizons represented in Georgia, though it can be stated as probable that the Lower, Middle, and Upper Eocene are present.

Florida.—The Eocene of Florida is confined to the upper division, and in its well marked White limestone phase, containing *Orbitoides Mantelli*, *Pecten Poulsoni*, and other Vicksburg fossils, is readily correlated with the upper member (Vicksburg) of the White limestone of Alabama and Mississippi. A thin layer of silicified Miocene limestone is often, found irregularly overlying both the typical Vicksburg and that later phase of it which has been called Nummulitic and which contains species of Foraminifera that are limited to the Florida deposits so far as known. Johnson[4] says concerning this latter horizon that "possibly these irregular deposits may be remnants of the Nummulitic limestone, which is really a stratum oveylying the Vicksburg rocks, well

[1] Recent observations of Mr. Frank Burns show that the Vicksburg limestone with *Orbitoides* crops out 25 feet thick in Pulaski County.

[2] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 41, 1866, p. 96.

[3] Ibid., vol. 42, 1866, pp. 68–70.

[4] Ibid., vol. 36, 1888, p. 282.

seen at the old iron works near Levyville, Levy County." As regards its taxonomic importance, Johnson further states that "there is no sufficient reason as yet observed to regard it as more than an upper layer, similar to such superadded layers seen in Alabama at the Lower Salt Works on the Tombigbee River."

Alabama.—The extent of the Alabama section, together with the detailed manner in which it has been studied, has led to its acceptance as the type of the Atlantic and Gulf coast Eocene. The Lignitic has been assigned to the Lower, the Buhrstone and Claiborne to the Middle, and the White limestone, with its further subdivisions into Jackson and Vicksburg, to the Upper division of the series. Such separation is locally warranted on both lithological and paleontological grounds, and may for the present at least serve an important purpose in the comparative study of the Eocene deposits of the Atlantic and Gulf Coast region. So far as the stratigraphy of the Eocene is at present known, the entire series is represented in Alabama.

Mississippi.—The deposits of Mississippi are readily correlated with those of Alabama, as most of the members persist with similar facies. The lower division, the Lignitic, as previously described, is widely represented. The Buhrstone and Claiborne, defined as siliceous and calcareous Claiborne by Hilgard, are both present, while the White limestone persists in its two divisions, the Jackson and Vicksburg.

In general the Lignitic increases in importance from Alabama westward, while the members of the Middle Eocene, although represented, form a less marked feature structurally and paleontologically. The White limestone, on the other hand, is much more prominently developed, and affords a most varied fauna in both its upper and lower members. A marked feature of dissimilarity with the eastern representatives of the Upper Eocene, in this respect connecting it with the trans-Mississippi type, is the occurrence of lignitic bands throughout the series.

Mississippi Embayment: Tennessee, Kentucky, Illinois, Missouri, and Arkansas.—The Eocene strata of the region to the north of the border Gulf States, forming the Mississippi Embayment, are chiefly to be correlated with the lower division (Lignitic). The character of the deposits affords almost the only means of comparison, since few localities have been found where fossils are found. In southern Arkansas, from the occurrence of Claiborne fossils, there is evidence of the presence of the Middle Eocene, but it is doubtful whether the Upper Eocene is anywhere represented in this area. So little is yet known of the geological range of the lignitic beds in the Gulf region that the conclusions drawn from their presence or absence have little value. In the States to the south lignitic strata have been found at every horizon of the Eocene; yet from the geographical position of the Mississippi Embayment, it seems hardly probable that more than the Lower, or at the most Middle, Eocene are represented.

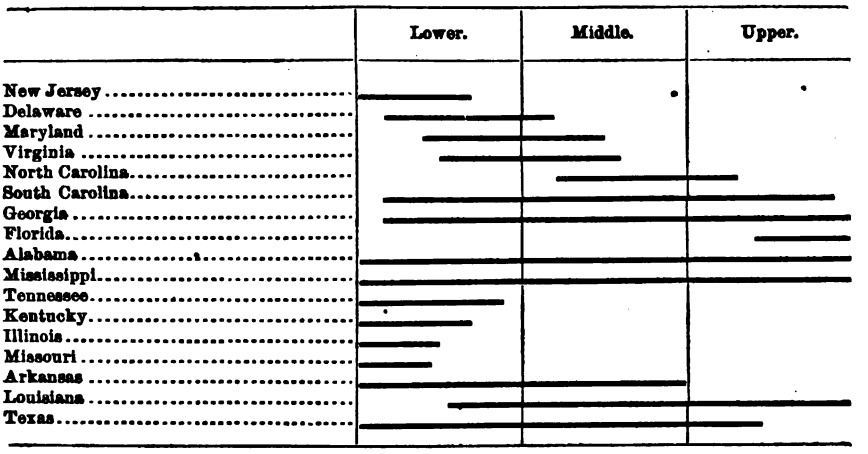
Louisiana.—In a previous chapter the evidence for the existence of the Lignitic in Louisiana was stated. That evidence was chiefly of a lithological character, and the probability that the southern extension of the "Camden series," described by Hill in Arkansas and shown to be Lower Eocene, would coincide with the deposits of northwestern Louisiana. Hilgard has described the lignitic strata of this area under the name of the "Mansfield group," and although in part shown to be Upper Eocene, they are considered by Hill to represent likewise the "Camden series" (Lignitic). The evidence for the presence of the Middle Eocene is chiefly of a geographical character. On the other hand, the Vicksburg and Jackson have a thoroughly characteristic development, the White limestone strata abounding in fossils of species identical with those of Mississippi. Intercalated beds of lignitic strata, on the other hand, are more numerous than in the White limestone series to the east of the Mississippi River.

Texas.—Heilprin[1] and Hill[2] have expressed the opinion that the Tertiary of Texas would be found to afford a tolerably complete section of the Eocene when more complete investigations had been made. Heilprin says that "it may safely be assumed that all, or nearly all, of the divisions ranging from the Eolignitic [Lignitic] to the Grand Gulf, inclusive, are represented."

Concerning the correlation of the Basal or Wills Point Clays, the lower of the two divisions of the Eocene strata established by himself, Penrose says:[3] "These clays probably represent the Eolignitic of Heilprin's Eocene section, the base of Hilgard's 'Northern lignitic' in his Mississippi section, and the Arkadelphia shales at the base of Hill's 'Camden series,' in Arkansas." He states that the upper portion of "The Timber Belt or Sabine River beds," the upper division of the Eocene as established by that writer, on the Brazos and Colorado River, "show Jackson and Claiborne species with a tendency toward an increase of the Jackson over the Claiborne as we ascend the series." The representatives of the Vicksburg seem to be quite or nearly lacking, which has been accounted for on the ground that the oscillation that caused deep-sea conditions in the Vicksburg period over the central Gulf States "may have also raised the Texas region into a land area." When more exhaustive study has been made of the Eocene fauna of Texas it may then be possible to institute more accurate correlation with the series established in Alabama and Mississippi. Until that has been done little more than the statement of the probable presence of representatives of the Lower, Middle, and Upper Eocene may be made.

[1] Contributions to the Tertiary Geology and Paleontology of the United States, 1884, pp. 37–39.
[2] U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. 45, 1887, pp. 84–86.
[3] Geol. Surv. Texas, First Ann. Rept. for 1889, pp. 18, 19.

Tabular representation of the geological range of the Eocene in the Atlantic and Gulf coast region.



PROVISIONAL DIVISION INTO PROVINCES.

As stated in an earlier portion of this paper, the Atlantic and Gulf Coast Eocene is too imperfectly understood to admit of its direct treatment by provinces though certain indications of a paleontological and lithological character render a provisional division possible and necessary.

The Gulf region, due to the fuller representation of the Eocene series and the more exhaustive investigations, that have been there recorded, may be considered to afford the type development of that horizon, and so the standard with which other Eocene areas may be compared. For this reason even a provisional division of the Atlantic and Gulf Coast region into provinces must depend largely upon correlative data, based upon the Gulf series.

Wider investigations may show that what to-day seem restricted characters whether structural or paleontological are to be largely explained on account of our imperfect knowledge. Connecting links now wanting may unite all parts into a consistent whole, so that the wide faunal differences that now appear may be found much less prominent, even if they do not entirely disappear.

Judging from present data four more or less fully defined areas dependent upon structural and paleontological differences may be established in the Atlantic and Gulf Coast region. They are: 1, New Jersey province; 2, Maryland-Virginia province; 3, Carolina-Georgia province; 4, Gulf province.

New Jersey province.—The Eocene area of New Jersey forms an insignificant portion geographically of the Atlantic and Gulf Coast region. In the character of its deposits or its fossils the Eocene of this locality affords few points of comparison with its more southern representatives. Lithologically there is a marked difference. The "Blue Marl" of which

the New Jersey series is largely composed presents an individual type of sedimentation unlike the Eocene strata to the south. This difference, which may be directly traceable to the underlying deposits from which the Eocene has been largely derived is still further shown in the character of the fossils which the beds themselves afford. The more common Eocene types such as *Cardita planicosta*, *Ostrea sellæformis*, *Ostrea compressirostra*, *Cucullæa gigantea*, *Cytherea Meekii* and others so characteristic for the deposits in Maryland and Virginia are lacking, while with the possible exception of *Crassatella alta* none of the more southern forms appear. The species most common for the New Jersey area are with scarcely an exception confined to that region.

The question naturally presents itself in connection with the study of the Eocene deposits of New Jersey, whether the structural and faunal differences are due to differences of contemporaneous origin, upon which alone the claims to separation as a province rests, or whether the horizon of the New Jersey deposits may not be different from that of the strata immediately to the south in Maryland and Virginia, with which comparison has been chiefly made. That the latter may be the case has been by no means disproved. The evidence for or against either one of these suppositions is so inconclusive that final decision can not be rendered. However, for lack of opposing data, the New Jersey deposits may be for the present purpose best treated as a provisional province.

Maryland-Virginia province.—Of much wider geographical extent than the New Jersey region is the Eocene area of Delaware, Maryland, and Virginia, though in its turn much more circumscribed in range than the regions farther south. Although showing greater similarity in the character of its deposits and fossils with the south Atlantic and Gulf Coast Eocene, than the New Jersey province, the Maryland-Virginia province is still sufficiently distinctive in both to require complete separation as a geological unit.

The green-sand marl of which the Eocene deposits of this area are almost exclusively composed, although found elsewhere in the Atlantic and Gulf Coast region is nowhere so extensively developed as in Maryland and Virginia. It is thoroughly characteristic for the Maryland-Virginia province.

The fossils likewise are in the main distinctive and confined to the limits assigned to that province. They are quite unlike the fauna of New Jersey on the one hand and that of the Carolinas on the other. Several forms it is true are comparable with the types of the more southern representatives of the Eocene, especially the common bivalves *Cardita planicosta* and *Ostrea sellæformis*. A sufficient number, however, are limited in their geographical range and thus show that the conditions for their existence in Eocene times were such as to confine them to the Maryland-Virginia region.[1] Similar questions of doubt as

[1] Future investigations may show the differences to be much less marked than they now seem. Fuller comparisons with southern forms may show a greater number of identical species.

to the contemporaneity of the Maryland-Virginia deposits with the type series established for the Eocene arise as in the New Jersey area, but for the same reasons the provisional separation of the Maryland-Virginia region as a geological province is made. The Eocene deposits of this area are termed by Darton the Pamunky formation.

Carolina-Georgia province.—The Carolina-Georgia province affords a much more complete series of Eocene strata than the northern areas. Possessing more important representatives, however, in the Middle and Upper divisions of the Eocene than the Lower, the possibilities of comparison with northern areas are narrowly circumscribed. The earlier Eocene presents a very different facies in the Carolinas and Georgia from that in Virginia, Maryland, or New Jersey. The coarse, incongruous sands and clays show that the mode of accumulation of the deposits was very different and, moreover, ill adapted for the preservation of marine organisms, even if many had found there a congenial habitat. The few fossils that occur are mainly different from those in other areas, but the fauna is very imperfectly understood. The arenaceous character of the beds affords some points of similarity with the Lower Eocene in the Gulf States, although the lignitic strata of the latter are wanting. The later Eocene deposits, formed in a sea which almost no muddy sediment reached, are chiefly limestones and marls and possess a fauna that can have little in common with the northern Eocene, though many identical species[1] with the White limestone horizon of the Gulf States are found.

Gulf province.—The Gulf province, extending from Florida to Texas and including the Mississippi embayment, presents certain characteristic features that separate it both lithologically and paleontologically from the Atlantic coast provinces. The wide development of lignitic strata throughout the Gulf province must have required peculiar conditions for their accumulation that did not exist along the Atlantic coast. Moreover, these conditions were not confined exclusively to the earlier stages of the Eocene, although there predominating, but frequently recurred throughout the entire period. We find that even the Jackson and Vicksburg groups are not without their lignitic beds, although in the eastern portion of the region they are much less frequent.

The *Lower Eocene* of the Gulf province attains great prominence, and in the region of the Mississippi embayment reaches its most marked development. In its geographical extent it is the leading member of the Eocene. It becomes much less lignitic in the eastern portion of the region than in the central and western; its faunal characteristics are there more marine and the beds more calcareous.

The *Middle Eocene* in its two divisions, the Buhrstone and Claiborne, presents a characteristic series of deposits that acquire their most marked individuality in the State of Alabama, where a varied fauna

[1] The fact that most of the Carolina-Georgia forms occur as casts renders a comparison difficult.

characterizes the upper of the two horizons. The Buhrstone largely loses its aluminous character toward the Georgia line and becomes more fossiliferous. The Claiborne, away from the place of its typical development at Claiborne, Alabama, rapidly changes. The various horizons there represented disappear in part, or changes coming in at short distances give the beds quite a different appearance.

The *Upper Eocene*, with its widely developed White limestone beds, affords a sharp contrast to the other members of the Eocene series. In the western portion of the area the White limestone, so typically developed in Alabama, is frequently interstratified with beds of arenaceous deposits containing bands of lignite.

The fauna of the various horizons of the Eocene in the Gulf States is vastly richer than on the Atlantic Coast, and affords many species that do not exist in the latter region. The similarities to the Carolina-Georgia province, however, are much greater than to the more northern areas.

COMPARISON WITH EUROPEAN DEPOSITS.

The attempts of geologists to correlate American Eocene strata with European have decreased in about the ratio that real knowledge of the deposits has increased. The earlier geologists thought nothing of correlating individual beds with the minuter divisions of European strata. At first lithological similarities were thought sufficient, but even after the fossils themselves were considered, generic identity still afforded a basis for correlation of the most detailed character. Of late there has been more of a tendency to study American formations with reference to their own individuality rather than that of some fancied resemblance to the deposits of other lands. When our knowledge of the American Eocene has not progressed to such a point as to admit of a correlation of the strata of contiguous regions, how is it to be expected that wider comparisons can be successfully made?

Some similarities of a general character in deposits and fossils occur, however, and it is these which will be briefly examined. When we take into consideration the deposits forming along existing coast lines, we find how little value for purposes of correlation the similarity or dissimilarity of sediments can possibly have. Both in America and Europe we find a great diversity in the character of the strata. Brackish and marine facies appear, the latter with both littoral and infralittoral deposits. Moreover, the fresh-water sediments occurring in the geographically more circumscribed "basins" of Europe are lacking in the Atlantic and Gulf Coast region of America. Further, when we observe that the geographical range of shallow-water marine species is limited, we can hardly expect that many identical forms will be found common to the American and European Eocene. A few species, however, among which the *Cardita planicosta* is the most important, are widely repre-

sented in the Eocene strata of both continents. Heilprin[1] has made a comparative study of American and European Eocene species, and maintains the identity or close relationship of many forms. Conrad,[2] Morton,[3] Lea,[4] and Meyer[5] have made similar comparisons, a review of whose conclusions are presented in the article by Heilprin. Others, on the other hand, do not consider the existence of identical species in the Eocene of the two continents probable, with the possible exception of *Cardita planicosta* and one or two other less usual forms.

The general character of the faunas of the two continents is, however, sufficiently similar to render it probable that the Eocene series of Europe is represented in the American Eocene series, which latter may likewise include the Oligocene of the Old World, though it does not seem to the writer that the evidence adduced is as yet sufficient to prove either its presence or absence. As stated in the general introduction to this report, the term Eocene, as we have employed it, may or may not include both the Eocene and Oligocene as those terms are used in Europe.

---

[1] Contributions to the Tertiary Geology and Paleontology of the United States, pp. 83–101.

In this article Heilprin discusses briefly the points of similarity in the species that follow:

America.	Europe.
Ostrea compressirostra, Say	(?) O. bellovacina, Lam.
divaricata, Lea (O. falciformis, Conr.)	O. flabellula, Lam.
Cardita rotunda, Lea	(?) C. imbricata.
planicosta, Lam	C. planicosta, Lam.
Cardium Nicolleti, Conr	C. semigranulatum, Sow.
Corbis lirata, Conr	C. lamellosa, Lam.
Pectunculus idoneus, Conr	(?) P. proximus, Wood. (?) P. polymorphus, Desh.
Limopsis aviculoides, Conr. (Pectunculus obliquus, Lea)	(?) Pectunculus (Limopsis) minutus, Philippi.
Trigonocœlia cuneus, Conr. (Nucula carinifera, Lea)	(?) Nucula (Trigonocœlia) deltoidea, Lam.
Corbula oniscus, Conr. (C. Murchisonii, Lea)	C. rugosa, Lam.
Trochita trochiformis, Lea	T. (Calyptræa) trochiformis, Lam.
Tornatella bella, Conr	Auricula (Actæon) simulata, Sow.
Solarium ornatum, Lea	S. canaliculatum, Lam.
Niso umbilicata, Lea	N. angusta, Desh.
Pyrula tricostata, Desh	P. tricostata, Desh.
penita, Conr. (P. tricarinata, Conr.; P. cancellata, Lea; P. elegantissima, Lea)	P. nexilis, Lam.
Cyprædia fenestralis, Conr	Cypræa elegans, Defr.
Oliva bombylis, Conr. (O. constricta, Lea)	(?) O. clavula, Lam.
Voluta limopsis, Conr	(?) V. crenulata, Lam.
Cancellaria tortiplica, Conr	C. (Buccinum) evulsa, Brand.
Sigaretus canaliculatus, Sow	S. canaliculatus, Sow.
Turbinella (Caricella) Baudoni, Desh	Voluta Baudoni, Desh.
Fusus pachyleurus, Conr	(?) F. clavellatus, Lam.
Pleurotoma denticula, Bast	P. denticula, Bast.
acuminata, Sow	P. acuminata, Sow.
Terebra constricta, Lea	Cerithium trilineatum, Phil.
Melania californensis, Heilp	(?) M. mixta, Desh.

[2] Fossil Shells of the Tertiary Formations of North America, 1832, p. 34.

[3] Synopsis of the Organic Remains of the Cretaceous Group of the United States, 1834.

[4] Contributions to Geology, 1833, p. 19.

[5] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 36, 1884, pp. 104–112.

A more detailed correlation of the several divisions of the Eocene of America seems to the writer impracticable. The Claiborne sands have commonly been considered the equivalent of the "Calcaire Grossier" of the Paris Basin and the Jackson of the "Barton Clay" of England, while the Buhrstone and Lignitic have been variously assigned to the lower horizons of the Eocene of Europe. It is unnecessary here to refer in detail to the extensive literature that has dealt with the correlation of the Vicksburg beds, which have been by many held to represent the Oligocene. As stated above, the data are not sufficient to solve the question for or against their equivalence. In short, until we comprehend more fully the complex development of the American Eocene, wider comparisons must be made with the greatest reserve.

APPENDIX.

THE BRANDON FORMATION.

Under the name of *The Brandon formation* the lignitic beds of Vermont, Pennsylvania, and Georgia are included, deposits whose taxonomy has not been yet definitely determined, but which from certain indications may be provisionally referred to the Eocene. It is by no means certain that future observations will establish the contemporaneous formation of the various deposits here described, but with the very insufficient data at hand the strata appear at present to be best interpreted by referring them to a common horizon.

Prof. Edward Hitchcock was the first to call attention to the stratigraphical importance of the lignitic beds of the eastern portion of the United States. In an article[1] in the American Journal of Science for 1853 he describes the "Brown Coal deposit" of Brandon, Vermont, and employs the data thus afforded "to determine the geological age of the principal hematite ore beds of the United States." The association of the lignitic strata with beds of iron ore, kaolin, and clay is stated, and from the occurrence of fossil fruit similar to forms described from the "newer Tertiary" strata of Europe the entire series is assigned to that horizon. On this and other grounds to be referred to later, he states that "the Brandon deposit is the type of a Tertiary formation hitherto unrecognized as such, extending from Canada to Alabama." The same conclusion is stated in a later publication,[2] in which he affirms that "no geologist has doubted that these deposits were all contemporaneous, but their true age has been a mystery."

Hodge,[3] who had examined the iron ore deposits of western New England, was of the opinion that "Hitchcock's Tertiary theory of these deposits has been too hastily adopted." Whitney[4] nevertheless

[1] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 15, 1853, pp. 95–104.
[2] Geology of the Globe, 1853, p. 105.
[3] Am. R. R. Jour. No. 684, 1853.
[4] Metallic Wealth, 1854, pp. 460, 461.

accepted the conclusions of Hitchcock and referred the brown hematites of western Massachusetts to the Tertiary.

The possibility of a wide correlation of the brown hematite deposits upon the data afforded by the Brandon lignites was strongly denied by Prof. J. P. Lesley,[1] who dissented also from the opinion expressed by Hitchcock as to the contemporaneous formation of the deposits thus linked together. He says "there is no sufficient evidence upon the ground at Brandon, in Vermont, that brown hematite, the lignite, and the kaolin are related to each other in any such fixed way as to insure the fact that they are, per se, and not as a mere local and exceptional deposit, contemporaneous." The author considers in this paper that the local occurrence of lignite at Brandon is to be accounted for by the accumulation of vegetable débris in a "sink" formed in the limestone.

Prof. Hitchcock[2] presents a more exhaustive discussion of the question in his report on the geology of Vermont, in which he reaffirms his previous claim as to the contemporaneity of the Brandon deposits and correlates the iron ore beds extending from Canada to Alabama. He calls attention to the occurrence of these beds in limestone (Silurian) valleys.

In an article in the American Journal of Science for 1861 Prof. Lesquereux[3] describes the fossil fruit of Brandon and compares certain of the forms there found with species from the Lignitic of the southwest.

In a paper in the proceedings of the American Philosophical Society for 1865 Prof. Lesley[4] announces the discovery of a deposit of lignite near Chambersburg, Franklin County, Pennsylvania, that is closely analogous to the Brandon bed. He further states that of the many localities mentioned by Hitchcock as affording deposits of contemporaneous age this alone admits of comparison. The author quotes Hitchcock at length to show that he has included other deposits in describing the Brandon lignite formation. He asserts that "the lignite and iron ore are neither of the same age, nor, strictly speaking, possessed of any structural attribute common to both." The iron ore beds are considered Silurian while the lignite deposit is assigned to the late Tertiary.

In 1878 Prof. Prime[5] announced the discovery of lignite at Ironton, Lehigh County, Pennsylvania, though he referred it and the associated iron ore to the Glacial epoch.

The discovery of lignite in Montgomery County, Pennsylvania, was reported by Lewis[6] to the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia at its meeting on September 22, 1879. A month later a succinct review of the opinions that had hitherto been current in regard to the age and

[1] Iron Manufacturer's Guide, 1859, pp. 514, 518, 539.
[2] Geology of Vermont, vol. 1, 1861, pp. 226-240.
[3] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 32, 1861, pp. 355-363.
[4] Proc. Am. Phil. Soc., vol. 9, 1865, pp. 463-480.
[5] Report DD., 2d Geol. Survey of Pennsylvania, 1878, p. 76.
[6] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 32, 1880, pp. 281-291.

correlative value of the lignite beds was presented by the same writer who gave a detailed description of the Montgomery County deposits. As a postscript to the published paper a letter is printed from Prof. N. A. Bibikov, of Augusta, Georgia, announcing the discovery of lignite in Richmond County of that State.

Concerning the association of the iron ore beds with the lignitic strata as claimed by Hitchcock and denied by Lesley, Lewis says that the iron ores of this region probably belong to four different geological ages, and he classes them as (1) Gneissic ore. (2) Primal ore. (3) Tertiary ore. (4) Drift ore. He thus separates the iron ore associated with "the deposits of lignite, plastic clay, kaolin, fire-sand, etc.," from that which has been heretofore confounded either with the primal ore or with the drift ore. "The discovery of lignite below it [the tertiary ore]," he says "proves its restratification in a later age [Tertiary] than the decomposed primal ore that is found in place."

The term Brandon period is proposed by Lewis to designate the age of the lignite beds. He says:

> Since in the present state of our knowledge it is obviously unsafe to make the age of these lignite deposits contemporaneous with any exact geological epoch, and as there is a possibility of their belonging to some period not recognized elsewhere.

Nevertheless, he suggests that they may be most closely correlated with the Oligocene of European geologists.

Vermont.—Hitchcock,[1] in the American Journal of Science and later in the geology of Vermont,[2] describes the deposits of the type locality Brandon, and also mentions other points in the State where similar deposits are found. At Brandon he states that the beds, which dip at a high angle to the northwest, rest upon "yellowish limestone," are associated with clay, kaolin, and iron ore, and are overlaid by drift. The lignitic strata were found to be 20 feet in thickness at the points where they were penetrated.

Lesquereux[3] describes in the American Journal of Science the fossil fruits found at Brandon, and compares certain of the forms with those afforded by the Lignitic of the Southwest. The following species are referred to by Lesquereux:

Carpolithes brandoniana Les.
fissilis Les.
irregularis Les.
Grayana Les.
bursæformis Les.
venosus (?) Stern.
Carya verrucosa Les.
vermontana Les.
Fagus Hitchcockii Les.
Apeibopsis Heerii Les.
Gaudini Les.
Aristolochia Oeningensis Heer.
curvata Les.
obscura Les.
Sapindus americanus Les.
Illicium lignitum Les.
Drupa rhabdosperma (?) Les.
Leguminosites pisiformis (?) Heer.
Nyssa complanata Les.
microcarpa Les.
lævigata Les.

[1] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 15, 1853, pp. 99–104.
[2] Geology of Vermont, vol. 1, 1861, pp. 226–240.
[3] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 32, 1861, pp. 355–363.

Concerning the other localities in the State Hitchcock[1] says:

> Wherever we have found brown hematite and manganese, or beds of ochre, or pipe clay, white, yellow, or red, in connection with beds of coarse sand or gravel, all lying beneath the drift and resting on the rocks beneath, we have regarded the deposit as an equivalent of that at Brandon just described, even though not more than one or two of the substances named be present.

Proceeding upon these grounds he correlates the deposits of 26 localities lying chiefly along the western slope of the Green Mountains.

As stated above, Lesley cast doubt upon the analogous character of these different beds. The statements of Lewis afford a partial explanation of the phenomena, but much more careful investigation is needed at the type locality, Brandon, before the relations of the beds can be fully comprehended.

Pennsylvania.—Several localities have been reported in Pennsylvania where lignite deposits are found under much the same conditions as in Vermont. Lewis[2] described in considerable detail a section which he obtained at Marble Hall, Montgomery County, in an excavation sunk about 40 feet into the unconsolidated strata.

It is as follows:

	Feet.
"Top dirt" yellow, impure	10
Soft white decomposed hydromica slate or impure "kaolin," containing occasional broken seams of sharp quartzite, but no pebbles	13½
Coarse white sand and rounded pebbles; apparently a decomposed sandstone	2
Tough mottled red clay	½
Blue plastic clay	7
Lignite in a very tough dark clay	3
Coarse yellow sand, with fragments of stony iron ore and with pebbles	2

The same locality had been earlier referred to by Lesley,[3] but as the lignite was supposed to be Triassic, its discovery was considered unimportant. Later, Lesley[4] reported lignite at Pond Bank, near Chambersburg, Franklin County, where it occurs in two beds, the lower 18 feet, the upper 4 feet in thickness. They are separated from one another by a bed of sand, while clay and sand are found above the upper layer.

Prime[5] mentioned in 1878 another locality, at Ironton, Lehigh County, where the lignite occurs associated with white clay. The parallelism of the strata described by Lesley and Prime to those in Montgomery County is given on the authority of Lewis. Both Lesley and Lewis assert the analogous nature of the Pennsylvania and Vermont deposits.

---

[1] Geology of Vermont, vol. 1, 1861, p. 234.

[2] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 32, 1880, pp. 282–291. Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., vol. 29, 1880, pp. 427, 428.

[3] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 13, 1861, p. 77.

[4] Am. Phil. Soc., Proc., vol. 9, 1865, pp. 463–482.

[5] Report DD, 2d Geol. Surv. of Penn., 1878, p. 76.

Georgia.—A locality in Georgia near Berzelia, Richmond County, 16 miles from Augusta, is described by Lewis[1] from notes by Prof. N. A. Bibikov, of Augusta. He says concerning the locality:

> It is described as lying back of the outcrops of gneiss and limestone, and is apparently in a very similar geological position to the Pennsylvania locality. Iron ore, plastic clay, kaolin, and decomposed sandstone occur with the lignite. * * * The fossils appear to be fragments of trees, grasses, and other land plants, none of which, however, were sufficiently perfect to be determined.

The section is given below in detail:

	Feet.
Mottled clay	4
Decomposed sandstone, with thin layers of clay and nodules of pyrite at base	24
Lignite	2
Shale and clay	1
Lignite	3
Shale and clay	2
Lignite	1
Shale and clay	3
Lignite	5
Light-colored shale with fossil plants	6
Dark-colored (bituminous) shale	1
White clay with streaks of rose color, etc	8
Sandy clay	1
Ferruginous coarse sand, with nodules of clay-ironstone, clay and quartz pebbles	9
Light-colored shale	4
Yellowish sand	2
Sandy clay	8
White, very fine micaceous sand, with clay	11

Lewis, following in great measure the opinion of Hitchcock, says that the localities previously described in Vermont, Pennsylvania, and Georgia "indicate the existence of a great inland fresh-water Tertiary formation in eastern America during the Brandon period, once 50 miles broad and nearly 1,000 miles long." As stated in the introduction to this chapter, we have not as yet sufficient evidence to warrant such broad generalizations. Indeed, the few facts accessible are hardly indications of the conclusions cited. It seems more probable that the deposits were accumulated in a series of detached bogs and swamps that had been occasioned by depression parallel to the existing coast line.

The absence of fresh-water shells or remains of other forms of life than terrestrial vegetation points to circumscribed areas of deposition.

[1] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 32, 1880, pp. 289–291.

PACIFIC COAST REGION.

PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

The geology of the Pacific coast presents many unsolved problems. By no means the least among them is the interpretation of the Eocene.

By many eminent geologists the very existence of Eocene strata on the Pacific border has been doubted, while others have included much more of the Coast Range series within its limits than is here admitted. It will thus be seen that the wide difference of opinion which prevails among those who have written upon the geology of the Pacific coast must occasion great difficulty when an attempt is made to harmonize their statements.

Meager though our knowledge is, certain characteristic features present themselves which render necessary the separation of the Pacific coast Eocene into two well defined divisions or provinces. The strata of the two divisions, together with their fossil contents, show the diverse character of the conditions attending their deposition. In the one case, an open sea with marine sediments and fauna prevailed; in the other, an estuary where the deposits and life were of brackish-water origin. Stratigraphically the relations of these two divisions to one another are not known, and as the conditions attending the accumulation of the deposits were so different the fossils are in no case identical. The marine deposit has been found in isolated regions from southern California to Washington, and has been named the Tejon group by Prof. J. D. Whitney[1] from its type locality, Fort Tejon, California. The brackish-water deposit has only been recognized in northern Washington, where it occurs in two distinct areas on the eastern and western flanks of the Cascade Mountains. It has been called the Puget group by Dr. C. A. White.[2]

The correlation of the Eocene of the Pacific coast with that of the Atlantic border is rendered difficult, due to the marked difference in the specific characteristics of the fauna as a whole, though sufficient similarity exists in generic and family types to admit of broad comparison. In the succeeding pages the history, stratigraphy, and correlation of the Pacific coast Eocene will be considered.

---

[1] Geological Survey of California, Paleontology, vol. 2, 1869, p. 8.

[2] Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 36, 1888, p. 443; U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. 51, 1889, p. 49.

HISTORICAL SKETCH.

The earliest investigations of the later geological formations of the Pacific coast were conducted by the Wilkes exploring expedition under Prof. James D. Dana,[1] in the year 1846, when large collections of Tertiary fossils were made near Astoria, Oregon. The fossils were described and referred by Conrad to the Miocene, although later considered by the same authority to be Eocene.[2]

In an article in the American Journal of Science for 1848, Conrad[3] describes 14 new species from the same locality, while Shumard,[4] in the Transactions of the Academy of Science of St. Louis, later adds a few more.

An important contribution to the Eocene of California was made by Conrad[5] in 1855, in the Pacific Railroad Reports. He describes a group of fossils he considers to be Eocene, which Blake had discovered in a bowlder at the mouth of the Cañada de las Uvas, in southern California.

The succeeding year Trask[6] read before the California Academy of Natural Sciences a paper entitled a "Description of a new species of Ammonite and Baculite from the Tertiary Rocks of Chico Creek," in which he expresses views that have especial interest on account of the opinions subsequently held as to the geological range of those forms in the Coast Range series.

The geological survey of California, conducted by Prof. J. D. Whitney, published, in 1864, Paleontology, vol. 1, in which the Cretaceous fossils are described by W. M. Gabb.[7] In this work Gabb divides the Cretaceous into Divisions A and B, the latter (B) including the fauna previously referred by Conrad to the Eocene. He also mentions the range of species from Division A into Division B.

A review of this work was published by Conrad[8] in the American Journal of Conchology in which he states that "Mr. Gabb has included the rock of Cañada de las Uvas, which contains *Venericardia planicosta* and *Aturia zic-zac*, in the Cretaceous series, but he has failed to show one Cretaceous fossil from that rock [B]." In regard to the divisions of the Cretaceous strata (A and B), proposed by Gabb, Conrad says further, "The former [A] is, doubtless Cretaceous, and the latter [B], I am sure, will prove to be Older Eocene."

Gabb[9] replies to Conrad's criticism in a paper published in the succeeding volume of the same journal, in which he denies that "he has failed to show one Cretaceous fossil from that rock [B]." He gives a

[1] Wilkes Exploring Expedition, vol. 10, 1849, pp. 611–678.
[2] Am. Jour. Conch., vol. 1, 1865, p. 150.
[3] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 5, 1848, pp. 432–438.
[4] St. Louis Acad. Sci., Trans., vol. 1, 1858, pp. 120–125.
[5] Preliminary Report Pacific Railroad Surveys, Paleontology, 8vo, 1855,; Pacific Railroad Reports, 4to, vol. 5, 1856, pp. 317–329.
[6] California Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 1, 1856, pp. 92–93.
[7] Geol. Survey California, Paleontology, vol. 1, 1864, pp. 55–236.
[8] Am. Jour. Conch., vol. 1, 1865, pp. 362–365.
[9] Ibid., vol. 2, 1866, pp. 87–92.

list of 14 species that are common to the two divisions (A and B), and subsequently proceeds to show the Cretaceous character of some 20 other forms.

A few pages later Conrad[1] defends his earlier position in regard to the age of the strata in question and states that Gabb has only succeeded in referring "one exclusively Cretaceous genus to that division." As regards the presence of similar faunal characters in the two divisions, he suggests in a foot-note the explanation that "the Lower Eocene beds of Jamaica contain masses of Cretaceous limestone, and it may be that the California Lower Eocene strata contain similar masses." Conrad considers the several forms which are held by Gabb to prove the Cretaceous age of the deposits and shows many of them to be Tertiary in character.

The year following the appearance of Paleontology, vol. 1, of the Geological Survey of California, Professor Whitney published Geology, vol. 1. In this work the characteristics of the Upper Cretaceous (Division B—Eocene) are described in detail, and although depending upon the conclusions of Gabb for the taxonomy of the deposits, he presents an important résumé of the stratigraphical features of the beds.

In 1866 there appeared in the Smithsonian Miscellaneous Collections a "Check list of the Invertebrate Fossils of North America—Eocene and Oligocene—by T. A. Conrad." The species placed by Gabb in divison B of the Cretaceous together with five common to A and B are included in the Eocene.

At a meeting of the California Academy of Natural Sciences in November, 1866, a paper by Gabb[2] "On the Subdivisions of the Cretaceous Formation in California" was read, in which omissions in Conrad's Check List from his series of fossils from division B are mentioned. In this article the author restates his previous position in greater detail than before and gives a table showing the geological range of the different species. He enumerates sixteen forms common to the upper and lower divisions.

Two articles appeared in the American Journal of Science for 1867, by Gabb[3] and Conrad[4]. In the first, Gabb gives the substance of his paper before the California Academy of Natural Sciences; while in the second, Conrad defends himself against the charges preferred by Gabb in his latest publications, and at the same time claims, as in earlier papers, that "any evidence so far is wanting to prove the strata in question Cretaceous, and as the group of fossils is so decidedly Tertiary in their forms and some species identical, I am forced to the conclusion of their Eocene origin."

[1] Am. Jour. Conch., vol. 2, 1866, pp. 97–100.
[2] California Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 3, 1867, pp. 301–306.
[3] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 44, 1867, pp. 226–229.
[4] Ibid., pp. 376, 377.

In the preface to Paleontology, volume 2 of the Geological Survey of California, Professor Whitney proposes the name Tejon Group for Division B of Gabb's Cretaceous, from its characteristic occurrence in the vicinity of Fort Tejon.[1] Other important localities are referred to.

Two short articles by J. G. Cooper on the Eocene of California appeared in the Proceedings of the California Academy of Science[2] for 1874, in which the opinions expressed by Gabb and Conrad are commented on.

A very important contribution to the geology of the Pacific coast was published in the Report of the Chief of Engineers for 1876 by Prof. Jules Marcou,[3] being part of the Annual Report of the Geographical Surveys West of the One Hundredth Meridian. The writer defends the position taken by Conrad, but goes further in that he includes in the Eocene the Chico group, upon which the Tejon group conformably rests. In regard to the latter he says:

> I was not able to find a single Cretaceous fossil, nor even any true Cretaceous generic forms in the entire formation; and I am altogether of the opinion expressed by Mr. Conrad, many years before Mr. Gabb, in volume 5 of Pacific Railroad Explorations, pages 318–320 et. seq., who, judging from certain fossils found in an isolated block at the entrance of the Cañada de la Uvas, has very judiciously referred these rocks to the Eocene-Tertiary formation.

He further considers them upper Eocene.

Prof. Dana,[4] in the revised edition of his Manual of Geology likewise asserts the Tertiary age of the Tejon series and refers the same to the Lignitic or Lower Eocene.

Heilprin,[5] in 1882, in a communication to the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, "On the occurrence of Ammonites in deposits of Tertiary age," states the results of an investigation of the original types described by Gabb in the reports of the Geological Survey of California. He says:

> That, with the exception of one solitary fragment of an ammonite, there was, to his knowledge, not a single distinctively Cretaceous type of organism to be found in all the rock fragments, but, on the contrary, several genera, distinctively Tertiary, and not known anywhere to have appeared before that period.

In the same volume of the Proceedings of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, Prof. J. S. Newberry[6] replies to Prof. Heilprin. He considers the evidence brought forward for the Tertiary age of the Tejon group not sufficient to overthrow the conclusions of Gabb and Whitney, who had the advantages of exhaustive study in the field. Dr. Newberry adds, "but there are many species common to the Tejon and Chico groups, and where one goes the other must follow."

---

[1] Geol. Surv. California, Paleontology, vol 2, 1869, p. xiii.
[2] California Acad. Sci. Proc., vol. 5, 1874, pp. 419–421, 422.
[3] Report of the Chief of Engineers for 1876, Part III, pp. 378–382.
[4] Manual of Geology, revised edition, 1880, pp. 491, 508.
[5] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 34, 1882, p. 94.
[6] Ibid., pp. 194, 195.

In a later article "On the Age of the Tejon Rocks of California and the occurrence of Ammonitic Remains in Tertiary Deposits" Heilprin[1] reviews very critically the conclusions of Gabb and shows many errors in the statements of that writer. In conclusion he says:

We believe it has been satisfactorily shown from what has preceded, that the rocks of the Tejon group (Cretaceous, Div. B., of the California Survey), despite their comprising in their contained faunas a limited number of forms from the subjacent (Cretaceous) deposits, and a few undoubted representatives of the Ammonitidæ are of Tertiary (Eocene) age, and for the following reasons:

I. The large percentage (about 80, or possibly considerably more) of specific forms that are peculiar to the group, or, at least are not found in the older deposits;

II. The large proportion of generic forms (33 out of 77) that are not represented in the underlying or older strata;

III. The presence of twenty-two more or less distinctively Tertiary genera: Ancillaria, Bulla, Bullæa (Megistomata), Bullia (s. g. Molopophorus), Conus, Crepidula, Cassidaria, Cancellaria, Cypræa, Ficus (Ficopsis). Gadus, Mitra, Massa, Niso, Olivella, (or Oliva), Pseudoliva, Rimella, Sigaretus (or Naticina), Terebra, Triton, Trochita, and Typhis.

IV. The marked absence (with the exception of about a half a dozen fragments or specimens of Ammonitidæ) of distinctively Cretaceous organic types.

V. The identity or close analogy existing between several of the specific forms and their representatives from other well determined Tertiary (Eocene) deposits.

In an article entitled "Note sur la Géologie de la Californie"[2] Prof. Jules Marcou restates his grounds for including the entire Chico-Tejon series in the Eocene.

In "Notes on the Mesozoic and Cenozoic Paleontology of California" Dr. C. A. White[3] reviews the paleontological evidence presented in the Chico-Tejon series and says:

I think the evidence which has been adduced to show the Eocene age of the upper or Tejon portion of the Chico-Tejon series is as conclusive as any evidence of that kind can be. Now, if we apply the paleontological standard for indicating the age of formations which is generally accepted by geologists, we necessarily refer the fossils of the lower or Chico portion of that series to the Cretaceous.

The more detailed reasons for these conclusions will be examined in the next chapter.

In a later bulletin the same writer[4] considers "The Occurrence of *Cardita planicosta* Lamarck in western Oregon." He cites its discovery at Albany, Willamette Valley, Oregon, in a well-digging.

In "Notes on the Stratigraphy of California" Dr. Becker[5] mentions the conformity that is found between all the beds from the Chico to the Miocene.

In "A Report of the Coal Fields of Washington Territory" Mr. Bailey Willis[6] describes deposits in the vicinity of Puget Sound, on the

[1] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 34, 1882, pp. 196-214. Reprinted in "Contributions to the Tertiary Geology and Paleontology of the United States," 1884, pp. 102-117.

[2] Bulletin de la Société géologique de France, 3e serié, tome 11, 1883, pp. 415, 416.

[3] U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. 15, 1885, p. 16.

[4] U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. 18, 1885, pp. 7-9.

[5] U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. 19, 1885, pp. 12, 16, 17.

[6] Tenth Census of the United States, vol. 15, Mineral Industries, 1885, pp. 769-771.

Green River and at Wilkeson, and also on the east slope of the Cascade Mountains, that he considers to be representatives of the Laramie formation. The evidence, chiefly derived from the fossil flora, is given on the authority of Prof. J. S. Newberry.

In the American Journal of Science for 1888 Dr. C. A. White[1] characterizes the Puget group and indicates its relations to the Laramie formation on the one hand and the Chico-Tejon series on the other. The estuarine character of the fauna is commented on. The discovery of marine Eocene fossils on the Dwamish River is also adverted to.

In a later publication[2] "On Invertebrate Fossils from the Pacific Coast" Dr. White describes the Puget group in greater detail, and gives new localities in Oregon and Washington where the Chico-Tejon series is represented.

From this brief outline of the literature upon the Pacific coast Eocene it will be observed that, except at a very few isolated points the deposits have not been examined, and that even many of those who have written upon the subject have had little opportunity for close observation of the strata. As might be expected, our knowledge of the Pacific Coast region is but fragmentary, and much detailed work remains to be done before the many diverse opinions expressed will be fully harmonized.

STRATIGRAPHICAL AND PALEONTOLOGICAL CHARACTERISTICS.

We have but few facts to guide us as to the distribution of the Eocene upon the Pacific Coast. That it extends more or less widely along the east flank of the Coast Range is known from several isolated exposures that have been examined in central and southern California, and that it is not absent even farther north is proved by the discovery of fossils in Oregon and Washington. To what extent the strata of these separate districts may be continuous it is difficult to judge on account of the lack of data upon which to base conclusions.

As stated in the introduction, two clearly defined divisions have been recognized in the Eocene, the one marine, the other brackish water in character. The former, called the *Tejon group*, is found represented in California, Oregon, and Washington; the latter, the *Puget group*, in Washington alone. Stratigraphically and paleontologically, no direct ground for comparison is afforded, but that the two groups are probably wholly or in part synchronous will be later shown.

THE TEJON GROUP.

The Tejon group, first so called by Prof. Whitney, is typically developed in the vicinity of Fort Tejon, Kern County, California. From this point the strata extend northward and southward along the eastern flank

[1] Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 36, 1888, pp. 443–450.
[2] U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. 51, 1889, pp. 11–32, 49–68.

of the Coast Range Mountains. They form a narrow belt, frequently interrupted as the result of denudation and volcanic outflows, though much of the irregularity is held to be "due to organic irregularity of the coast lines of the sea in which these strata were deposited."[1]

To the north of Fort Tejon the strata are prominently developed near New Idria, where they have been investigated by Dr. White.[2] In Contra Costa County a continuous belt extends from near Marshes to Martinez, while to the north of the Central Pacific Railroad the Tejon group is not known to appear again within the State of California.[3] In Oregon it has been found at Albany, in the Willamette Valley, and in the vicinity of Coos Bay, Cape Arago. Certain strata near Astoria are doubtfully referred by Dr. White[4] to the same horizon, the presence of which later investigations by Dr. W. H. Dall have fully established. Strata with marine fossils, many of them identical with those of the Tejon group of California, have been found on the Dwamish River, in Washington, and have been considered to represent that formation in the extreme north.

It will thus be seen that the marine Eocene strata have been established at many localities along the Pacific coast, and do not form an unimportant member in the Coast Range series. The deposits are chiefly conglomerates, sandstones, and shales, in which beds of lignite are not infrequently intercalated, and which less often contain bands of calcareous rock. The strata of the Tejon group conformably overlie the next older or Chico group,[5] and are in turn conformably overlain by the Miocene, a relationship which was first recognized by the members of the California Geological Survey and since substantiated by White and Becker.

The strata of the Tejon group in the vicinity of Fort Tejon, at the entrance to the Cañadas de las Uvas and de los Alisos, consist chiefly of sandstones and conglomerates.

> The conglomerates are very coarse, containing many bowlders from 3 to 6 inches in diameter of granite and metamorphic rocks. * * * Portions of the sandstones are very fossiliferous and the shells in beautiful preservation. * * * The strata are very much disturbed, both dip and strike being very variable, the former varying from northwest and southeast to northeast and southwest, while the dip is sometimes to the north and again to the south and generally at a high angle.[6]

It was from this locality that Conrad received the fossils described in volume 5 of the Pacific Railroad reports, and from whence Gabb also obtained many of the forms referred by him to Division B of the Cretaceous, in the paleontological publications of the California Geological Survey.

---

[1] U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. 51, 1889, p. 29.

[2] U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. 15, 1885.

[3] U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. 51, 1889, p. 29. (Whitney and Gabb, however, mention localities in Lake and Mendocino counties.)

[4] U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. 51, pp. 31–32.

[5] The Martines group of Gabb is considered part of the Chico group.

[6] Geol. Surv. California, Geology, vol. 1, pp. 190, 191.

In regard to the stratigraphical relations of the Tejon group to the Chico group on the one hand, and the Miocene on the other, White[1] and Becker[2] present some valuable data from the vicinity of New Idria. The former says in regard to the Chico-Tejon series of that locality, that the strata are mainly sandstones and sandy shales, and adds:

They dip to the northward, the angle of dip being high near their contact with the metamorphic series upon which they rest unconformably; but the dip materially diminishes to the northward. From the contact with the metamorphic series before mentioned the thickness of this whole strata is estimated to be about 10,000 feet.

Dr. White further says:

The whole assemblage of strata, nearly 2 miles in thickness, forms one continuous series from top to bottom, and the sedimentation which resulted in the production of these strata was uninterrupted from the beginning to the end of the time in which it occurred. * * * Although this New Idria series is understood to be practically an unbroken one, there is, near its middle, a recognizable change in the aspect of the strata, so that in appearance, and to some extent in the character of the stratification, the upper half differs from the lower half. So far as can be determined, this indistinct line accords with the necessarily artificial division that has been made of the series into the Chico and Tejon groups, since the series is recognized as containing only these two groups, and the line of demarkation between them, as before shown, can not be expected to be distinct. * * * Still the intimate relation of the Chico and Tejon groups for this particular locality is well shown by the unbroken character of the series of strata which here constitutes both groups.

Dr. Becker says in this connection that "the Tejon strata of New Idria are mostly heavy-bedded sandstones of a peculiarly light color, which thus distinguishes them from the tawny Chico sandstones."

At the same time the evidence for the Eocene age of the Tejon group is shown by Dr. White from the stratigraphical position of the deposits. He says:

The opinion that the Tejon group really represents the Eocene is further supported in that no other representative of the strata of that epoch has been discovered in California, and also the Miocene strata everywhere rests conformably upon the Tejon. This conformity was recognized by the members of the State Geological Survey of California, and it has also been observed in numerous cases by Dr. Becker, as well as in several instances by myself. One of these observations I made at the well known Tejon and Miocene locality at the head of Vallecitos Cañon, near the place mentioned as "Griswold" in the California reports, which is only a few miles from the New Idria locality just referred to. I then satisfactorily traced the strata from one formation to the other, and found that not only is the conformity of the two formations with each other clearly apparent, but no break in the order of stratification could be detected between those layers which contain characteristic Tejon fossils on the one hand and those which contain equally characteristic Miocene fossils on the other. In short, I found no room there for the existence of any Eocene strata other than the Tejon.

In regard to the stratigraphical relationship of these beds at New Idria, Dr. Becker also says,[3] "The Miocene seems as strictly conformable with the Tejon as this with the Chico."

[1] U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. 15. [2] U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. 19.
[3] U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. 19, 1885, p. 17.

In Contra Costa County the Tejon group is prominently exhibited as a thick-bedded sandstone, with layers of carbonaceous matter of sufficient thickness to afford workable seams of coal. The relationship of the beds is similar to that before mentioned for the region of New Idria. Prof. Whitney states[1] that "all these strata, from the Cretaceous up to the post-Pliocene, appear to be perfectly conformable to each other." Dr. Becker[2] says upon the same point:

> The stratigraphical relations * * * show a continuous sedimentation * * * between the Chico and Tejon. Between the Tejon and Miocene there is nowhere any suggestion of a nonconformity. * * * At Mount Diablo, for example, the Miocene seems as strictly conformable with the Tejon as this with the Chico.

In regard to the position of the strata Dr. Becker[3] further says:

> Mount Diablo and the surrounding country consist of a core of metamorphic rock, inclosed, nearly or quite quaquaversally by rocks of Chico and Tertiary age. * * * The overlying Chico, Tejon, and Miocene strata are tilted, but otherwise comparatively undisturbed. Over wide areas these three series seem to be perfectly conformable, nor is there any case known on the Pacific coast where there seems any ground for suspecting a nonconformity within these limits.

To the north of Mount Diablo, in the vicinity of Martinez, the Tejon group is prominently represented by sandstones that dip southwest at an angle of 35° to 60°. This locality furnished a large number of the fossils described by Gabb.

The Tejon strata of Oregon have been found in a few widely separated localities in the central and northern portions of the State. The most southern yet observed is on Coos Bay. In the Willamette Valley, at Albany, the Tejon occurs as an "indurated dark colored shale which was found a few feet beneath the surface of the ground in digging a cistern." Inregard to the age of the deposits at Astoria Dr. White entertains doubts, though he considers it probable that the Eocene is represented. Dr. Dall has more recently established the presence of the Eocene at this point. He has found it overlain by Miocene and states that a misunderstanding as to the stratigraphical relations of the beds has hitherto existed. The Eocene is found to consist of a thin band of argilla-ceous material, through which numerous calcareous nodules are scattered, at the center of which fragments of shells are generally found.

The stratigraphy of the beds on the Dwamish River, in Washington, have been studied by Bailey Willis in reference to their relationship to the Puget group and found to afford no data for connection with the strata of that formation. As in the Oregon localities, a comparison of the deposits with those of other areas is based on the similarities afforded by the fossils rather than on stratigraphical grounds.

Having thus briefly reviewed the more striking stratigraphical fea-

[1] Geol. Surv. California, Geology, vol. 2, 1864, p. 32.
[2] U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. 19, 1885, pp. 16, 17.
[3] Ibid., p. 15.

Ammonites jugalis Gabb.
Typhis antiquus Gabb.
Fusus Martinezensis Gabb.
F. Mathewsonii Gabb.
F. diaboli Gabb.
F. californicus Con., sp.
? Neptunea supraplicata Gabb.
Neptunea cretacea Gabb.
Perissolax Blake Con., sp.
Surcula præattenuata Gabb.
S. sinuata Gabb.
S. claytonensis Gabb.
S. raricostata Gabb.
Bela clathrata Gabb.
Cordiera microptygma Gabb.
Tritonium diegoensis Gabb.
T. tejonensis Gabb.
T. fusiforme Gabb.
T. Hornii Gabb.
T. paucivaricatum Gabb.
T. Whitneyi Gabb.
T. californicum Gabb.
Brachysphingus liratus Gabb.
B. sinuatus Gabb.
Bullia striata Gabb.
Nassa cretacea Gabb.
N. antiquata Gabb.
Pseudoliva lineata Gabb.
P. volutæformis Gabb.
Olivella Mathewsonii Gabb.
Ancillaria elongata Gabb.
? Fasciolaria lævisucula Gabb.
Neverita secta Gabb.
N. globosa Gabb.
Naticina obliqua Gabb.
Euspira alveata Con., sp.
Morio tuberculatus Gabb.
Scalaria Mathewsonii Gabb.
Terebra californica Gabb.
Niso polita Gabb.
Cerithiopsis alternata Gabb.
Architectonica cognata Gabb.
A. Hornii Gabb.
Conus Remondii Gabb.
C. Hornii Gabb.
Rimella canalifera Gabb.
R. simplex Gabb.
Cypræa Bayerquei Gabb.
C. Mathewsonii Gabb.
Loxotrema turrita Gabb.
Turritella uvasana Con.
T. martinezensis Gabb.
Galerus excentricus Gabb.
Spirocrypta pileum Gabb.
Nerita triangulata Gabb.
Margaritella crenulata Gabb.
Dentalinum Cooperii Gabb.
D. stramineum Gabb.
Gadus pusillus Gabb.
Bulla Hornii Gabb.
Cylichna costata Gabb.
Megistostoma striatum Gabb.
Martesia clausa Gabb.
Solen parallelus Gabb.

Tellina Hoffmanniana Gabb.
T. Hornii Gabb.
T. californica Gabb.
Donax latus Gabb.
Venus æquilateralis Gabb.
Meretrix uvasana Conn.
M. Hornii Gabb.
M. ovalis Gabb.
M. californica Con.
Dosinia elevata Gabb.
D. gyrata Gabb.
Tapes Conradiana Gabb.
T. quadrata Gabb.
T. cretacea Gabb.
Diodus tenuis Gabb.
Cardium Cooperii Gabb.
C. Brewerii Gabb.
C. linteum Con.
Cardita Hornii[1] Gabb.
Lucina cumulata Gabb.
? L. cretacea Gabb.
Mysia polita Gabb.
Crassatella grandis Gabb.
C. uvasana Con.
Unio penultimus Gabb.
Mytilus ascia Gabb.
M. humerus Con.
Modiola ornata Gabb.
Septifer dichotomus Gabb.
Stalagmium concentricum Gabb, sp.
Avicula pellucida Gabb.
Arca Hornii Gabb.
Cucullæa Mathewsonii Gabb.
Barbatia Morsei Gabb.
Axinæa sagittata Gabb.
A. cor Gabb.
Nucula truncata Gabb.
Leda Gabbii Con., sp.
Pecten interradiatus Gabb.
Placunanomia inornata Gabb.
Ostrea idriaensis Gabb.
Flabellum Remondianum Gabb.
Trochosmilia striata Gabb.

To this list Dr. White[2] has added—

Zirphæa plana White.
Cancellaria Turneri White.

The presence of a sufficient number of the fossils above enumerated at each of the leading localities on the east flank of the Cascade Mountains renders their correlation probable. Although the number of forms found in the more northern and widely separated Oregon and Washington areas is not so great, yet the identification of the few forms discovered leaves little doubt as to the Eocene age of the deposits.

In the Willamette Valley at Albany *Cardita planicosta* Lamarck has been identified, while from Cape Arago Dr. White has recognized—

Nucula truncata Gabb.
Cardita planicosta Lamarck.
Meretrix uvasana Conrad.
Naticina obliqua Gabb.
Turritella uvasana Conrad.
Fusus californicus Gabb.
Perissolax Blakei (Conrad) Gabb.

Concerning the deposits at Astoria, although considering them in part Miocene, Dr. White is of the opinion that the Chico-Tejon series may be also represented. He says in regard to the similarity of their fossils:

The *Nucula divaricata* of Conrad differs, if at all, from *N. truncata* Gabb only in the asserted rounding instead of the truncation of the posterior ("anterior") extremity; and yet one of Mr. Conrad's figures shows such a truncation. The *Mactra albaria* of Conrad is exceedingly like *M. Ashburnerii* Gabb. The *Loripes paralis* of Conrad recalls *L. dubia* Gabb. The *Pyrula modesta* or Conrad is possibly identical with *Ficus* (?) *cypræoides* Gabb, and the Survey collections contain specimens of *Solen* from the Tejon group of California, which closely resemble Conrad's figure of *S. curtus*. Besides this the *Aturia angustatus* of Conrad from Astoria is much like *A. mathewsoni* Gabb of the Tejon group of California; and the presence of that genus in the Miocene strata seems out of place.

[1] Probably Cardita planicosta Lamarck.
[2] U. S. Geol. Surv. Bull. 51, 1889, pp. 15, 25.

The more recent investigations of Dr. Dall, above referred to, establish the truth of these conclusions. He finds that the earlier collections of fossils were made indiscriminately from the Eocene and Miocene horizons, and this accounts for the confusion that has hitherto existed.

The locality upon the Dwamish River, Washington, is the most northerly one yet known that affords fossils of Tejon age. In a collection made at that point the following species have been recognized:

Cylichna costata Gabb.
Conus Hornii Gabb.
Lunatia nuciformis Gabb.
Leda protexta Gabb.
Euspira alveata (Conrad) Gabb.
Fusus diaboli Gabb.
Turritella uvasana Gabb.
Tellina sp. (?)

The above forms establish beyond much doubt the presence of Tejon strata in western Washington.[1]

The faunal relationship of the Tejon group to the Chico on the one hand and the Miocene on the other is deserving of particular attention. It has already been shown that the stratigraphical individuality of the Chico and Tejon groups is not clearly defined, but that the latter rests conformably upon the former and presents but a slight lithological change in its deposits. At the same time several forms are found common to the two groups, and Gabb[2] gives in the second volume of the Paleontology of California, 15 species.

Callianassa Stimpsoni Gabb.
Aturia Mathewsonii Gabb.
Ammonites jugalis Gabb.
Fusus Mathewsonii Gabb.
Euspira alveata Conrad, sp.
Dentalium Cooperii Gabb.
D. stramineum Gabb.
Cylichna costata Gabb.
Martesia clausa Gabb.
Mactra (Cymbophora) Ashburnerii Gabb.
Tellina Hoffmanniana Gabb.
Avicula pellucida Gabb.
Cucullæa Mathewsonii Gabb.
Nucula truncata Gabb.
Leda Gabbii Conrad, sp.

Upon the forms here enumerated as common to the two groups Heilprin[3] has thrown some doubt as to the validity of three, *Mactra Ashburnerii* Gabb, *Tellina Hoffmanniana* Gabb, and *Leda Gabbii* Con., sp. That a commingling of species occurs in the Chico-Tejon series seems to be established. Dr. White[4] says in this connection: "I am satisfied that such a commingling does exist, as before indicated, and that an alternate commingling of species exists throughout the whole of the Chico-Tejon series."

On the other hand, although the Miocene conformably overlies the Tejon group, the faunal relations are not so clearly shown. No species have hitherto been considered identical, though Dr. White says that "a few of the species of each of the two formations are closely related, and it is possible that some of them may yet prove to be specifically identical."

---

[1] U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. 51, 1889, pp. 30–31.

[2] In California Acad. Sci., Proc., vol. 8, pp. 301–305, he gives 16 species. *Nautilus tenuesc* is omitted, however, in the State Report and *Ammonites* n. s. is determined as *Am. jugalis*.

[3] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. —, pp. 18.

[4] U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. 15, 1885, p. 13.

THE PUGET GROUP.

The term Puget group has been applied by Dr. White to a series of brackish-water deposits in Washington. They are found along the eastern side of the Puget Sound Basin on the western flank of the Cascade Range, as well as upon the eastern side of the same mountains, although the identity of the strata in the two regions has not yet been fully determined.

In the Puget Sound region the best sections have been obtained by Bailey Willis in the Wilkeson and Green River coal fields, while to the east of the Cascade Range the strata have been identified by the same observer in several localities, which are enumerated as follows:

> Near the head of the Yakima River and on the Wenatchie River, * * * near Lake Kitchelas, Lake Klealim, and on Schwak Creek, a small tributary of the Yakima from the north * * * south of the Wenatchie, on the spur of the Cascades called the Peshasten Range, which divides that river from the Yakima, and at the head of the Munastash Creek, 25 miles west of Ellensburg, at an elevation of 5,500 feet on the main Cascade Range.[1]
>
> The strata in the Puget Sound Basin consist of alternating beds of yellow and gray fine-grained sandstones and very fine gray arenaceous shales interstratified with many beds of carboniferous shale and coal; the individual strata of sandstone and shale, from 20 to 200 feet thick, maintain the same general character wherever observed, and no well defined horizon has yet been found which might serve as an index to correlate the widely separated exposures.[2]

Mr. Willis, whose description of the deposits has just been quoted, estimates the maximum thickness of the strata at over 10,000 feet. In the Wilkeson field he states that there "are 127 carbonaceous beds, of which 17 are workable coal veins, 3 to 15 feet thick." To the east of the Cascade Range a similar development of carbonaceous strata has an approximate thickness of 1,000 feet, and rests on coarse sandstone and conglomerate.

The character of the deposits and their entombed fossils show that brackish-water conditions certainly prevailed over the area in which the strata are now exposed, and doubtless over a much wider region. If the coal-bearing strata upon the eastern and western flanks of the Cascade Range prove to be of the same age the topography of the period must have been very different from the present, and since the carbonaceous strata have been found absent from the higher portions of the Olympic and Northern Cascade Mountains, it has been supposed that those ranges may have constituted an island and a peninsula respectively. Acting as barriers against the open sea the estuarine conditions necessary for the formation of the carbonaceous strata may have been developed.

---

[1] Tenth Census Report, vol. 15, p. 761. [2] Ibid., p. 759.

The following invertebrate fossils have been obtained from the Puget group:[1]

Cardium (Adacna?) sp.
Cyrena brevidens White.
Corbicula pugetensis White.
Corbicula Willisi White.
Batissa Newberryi White.
Batissa dubia.
Psammobia obscura White.
Sanguinolaria? caudata White.
Teredo pugetensis White.
Neritina sp.
Cerithium? sp.

Among the plant remains examined by Prof. Newberry[2] are *Sphenopteris* (*Asplenium*) *elongata* Newberry, which, according to that distinguished paleontologist, is the same as *Gymnogramma Haydeni* Lesq., *Asplenium subcretaceum* Saporta, and *Anemia subcretacea* Gardner, an important and widespread species. *Calamosis Danæ* Lesq., *Onoclea sensibilis* Linn., *Lygodium Kaulfussi* Herr, the latter probably identical with *L. neuropteroides* Lesq., are mentioned by the same investigator as represented in the Puget group.

GROUNDS FOR THE REFERENCE OF THE TEJON AND PUGET GROUPS TO THE EOCENE.

In the preceding remarks on the Pacific Coast region the assumption has been made that the Tejon and Puget groups are the equivalents of the Eocene of other areas. As this position has been much discussed in the past, particularly as regards the Tejon group, and is not admitted by all geologists to-day, the evidence for their reference to the Eocene will be briefly outlined.

In the Historical Sketch it was stated that Whitney and Gabb considered the entire Chico-Tejon series as Cretaceous, while Marcou as zealously advocated its Tertiary age. In the present paper the Chico is referred to the Cretaceous, the Tejon to the Eocene.

Before considering the grounds for this division of a conformable series of deposits that at the same time possess in common several identical species, let us first examine the evidence for referring the entire formation to the same horizon, in the one case to the Cretaceous and in the other to the Eocene.

The lower division, the Chico, contains a large number of ammonitic forms, which have been hitherto considered by paleontologists to denote the Mesozoic age of the strata in which they are found, among which species of Hamites, Turrilites, Ancyloceras, Crioceras, and Baculites are included, while the lamellibranchiate genera, Trigonia, Inoceramus, Gryphæa, and Exogyra, likewise considered Mesozoic in character, are not uncommon. In the upper division, the Tejon, *Ammonites jugalis* Gabb is found, while several genera of gasteropoda are also cited by Gabb as characteristically Cretaceous, though their determination is shown by Conrad and Heilprin to be founded on error as to the generic relations of the specimens or the localities from which they were derived.

[1] U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. 51, p. 58. [2] Ibid., p. 51.

Concerning the reference of the entire Chico-Tejon series to the Tertiary, on the other hand, Marcou states that the Ammonites are degenerate types, and further that there is "no law which makes it necessary for Ammonites * * * to disappear entirely from the surface of the terrestrial globe with the rocks of the secondary epochs." From the Chico he cites the presence of the following genera that collectively he considers indisputable evidence for the Tertiary age of the fauna: Fusus, Lævifusus, Neptunea, Sycodes, Gyrodes, Natica, Architectonica, Straparollus, Pugnellus, Anchura, Littorina, Turritella, Nerita, Lysis, Calliostoma, Angaria, Margaritella, Dentalium, Patella, Helcion, Ringicula, Cinulia, Cylichna, Martesia, Siliqua, Corbula, Anatina, Cymbophora, Lutraria, Asaphis, Tellina, Venus, Chione, Meretrix, Caryatis, Dosinia, Trapezium, Cardium, Clisocolus, Lucina, Astarte, Anthonya, Mytilus, Modiola, Meleagrina, Meekia, Arca, Cucullæa, Nucula, Leda, Pecten, Lima, Anomia, and Ostrea.

For the Tejon he states that the Tertiary genera, Fusus, Tritonium, Trachytriton, Olivella, Fasciolaria, Lunatia, Turritella, etc., are numerous, and that Eocene species identical with those in Alabama and the London and Paris basins are found.

It seems to me, as already stated by Dana, White, and Heilprin, that the writers above quoted are in part right, in part wrong. The presence of so large a number of ammonitic forms in the Chico, together with such types as Inoceramus, Trigonia, Gryphæa, and Exogyra, is sufficient indication of the Cretaceous age of the Chico group. On the other hand, the presence in the Tejon of Lunatia, Crepidula, Turritella, Tritonium, Nassa, Mitra, Pseudoliva, Oliva, Conus, Cypræa, Rimella, and Donax, together with *Cardita planicosta* Lam. and other species identical or closely related to characteristic Eocene forms of other regions, although associated with a few ammonitic remains of a single species, is sufficiently strong evidence of its Tertiary age.

That no marked break occurred in the continuity of life in the Chico-Tejon series is proved by the fact that several species are found common to the upper and lower divisions. Deposition, from the structure of the beds and the absence of unconformity, was probably continuous. Forms that were numerous in the early part of the period gradually disappeared, and their place was taken by others that increased in importance toward its close.

To what horizon of the Eocene the Tejon should be referred can not be definitely stated. Conrad considered it Lower Eocene, while Marcou has stated that it belongs to the upper division. The presence of *Cardita planicosta* Lam. serves only for general comparison since it has been found ranging from the lower to the upper members of the Eocene in the Atlantic and Gulf Coast region. Heilprin and Marcou have shown the close relationship if not identity of several other species. *Cardita Hornii* Gabb is held to be identical with *C. planicosta* Lam. *Dosinia elevata* Gabb is thought to be the same as *Dosiniopsis*

Meekii Conrad, so common in the Maryland and Virginia Eocene. *Fusopsis* (*Hemifusus*) *Remondii* Gabb is considered to be very closely related to if not identical with *Pyrula penita* Conrad from Claiborne, Alabama. Other comparisons are made, some with forms from the Paris Basin and the English Eocene. From the fact that the Tejon conformably overlies the Chico and is in turn conformably overlain by the Miocene it is not improbable that the Tejon represents the entire Eocene series as elsewhere developed, but upon this point we have as yet too few data to draw conclusions. Further investigation may show that some important points have been hitherto overlooked.

The Puget group has been referred to the Eocene, though there is some doubt as to whether the entire formation can be properly considered such. In its flora Prof. Newberry has shown that the Puget group is to be closely compared to the Laramie, though the conditions under which the deposits of the former were accumulated were, in many particulars, unlike that of the latter. If the Puget group is to be correlated with the Laramie, it is not improbable that we have in the former the representatives of both the Chico and Tejon groups, and thus, as in both the Laramie and Chico-Tejon series, the break between the Cretaceous and the Eocene is, in part at least, bridged over. If such proves to be the case, the Puget group must be referred in part to the one horizon, in part to the other.

Prof. Newberry has compared *Sphenopteris* (*Asplenium*) *elongata* Newberry from the Puget group with *Gymnogramma Haydeni* Lesq. from the Laramie. He also has little doubt of the presence of *Onoclea sensibilis* Linn., which occurs in abundance at Fort Union. In regard to the faunal similarities of the Puget group and the Laramie Dr. White says:

> Such a comparison is especially suggested by the known floral relations of the two groups of strata, their presumble contemporaneity of origin, and the nonmarine character of the molluscan faunas of both. Upon making a comparison, however, important zoological differences appear. It is true there are two species of Corbicula in the Puget fauna that are so closely like Laramie forms as to suggest specific identity upon casual examination, but the differences between the two faunas are strikingly shown by the family and generic characters of the other members of the Puget fauna as compared with the Laramie fauna.

Teredo, Tellina, and Batissa occur in the Puget group, but are absent in the Laramie. The later genus has particular interest from the fact that it has not been found in North America before. It is confined to the Pacific Islands and Asiatic Continent.

At the same time the Puget group shows some points of similarity to the Lignitic of the Gulf border. *Calamopsis Danæ* Lesq. of Mississippi has been identified by Prof. Newberry.

INTERIOR REGION.

PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

The Eocene of the Interior region covers an extensive area on the eastern and western flanks of the Rocky Mountains. Though largely developed in broad continuous tracts, it not infrequently occurs in narrowly circumscribed basins that are found scattered from Colorado on the east to Nevada on the west, and from Montana on the north to Texas on the south. Within the limits designated similar conditions largely prevailed. From an open sea of Cretaceous age, in which the life was marine, a gradual change took place to great fresh-water lakes in which the typical Tertiary deposits of the Interior were accumulated. Although the marine and fresh-water divisions present marked paleontological differences, they are still linked together by a series of brackish-water deposits that afford many points for comparison with both the older and younger horizons. Whether these intervening beds should be referred to the Cretaceous or to the Eocene or considered to represent portions of each has been widely discussed, and no problem in American geology has perhaps furnished so extensive a literature. It seems not improbable that continuous deposition prevailed throughout the Interior region, so that the reference of each member of the series to the more or less fragmentary geological column elsewhere established is attended with great uncertainty.

The opinions of those who have studied the deposits from different points of view differ widely, though the present tendency is to disparage a narrow interpretation of any particular series of facts and to judge the evidence in its entirety.

It will be observed that the Laramie and Puerco formations, regarded by many as Cretaceous, and the Fort Union beds, which by others have been separated from the Laramie and held to be Neocene, are here discussed. The evidence for the Eocene age of all or part of the strata of these several formations will be presented in subsequent pages; and the history, stratigraphy, taxonomy, and correlation of the Eocene of the Interior, in its general and local characters, will be briefly outlined.

HISTORICAL SKETCH.

The reports of the expeditions that entered or crossed the Interior region during the first half of the century present almost nothing of importance upon the Eocene. Certain observations in areas now known

to be of Tertiary age are recorded, but neither the stratigraphical relationship of the deposits nor their taxonomy were in any degree comprehended.

The investigations of Meek and Hayden in Nebraska and the Upper Missouri River country, in 1854, afford the first scientific data upon the geology of the region that it is our province to discuss. The publication of these results appeared in a series of articles in the Proceedings of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia for 1856, and from the fossils collected upon that expedition the authors concluded:

> It is worthy of note that some of the species contained in the collection from the most recent Cretaceous beds of the Upper Missouri country appear referable to genera which, according to high European authority, date no farther back than the true chalk, while many of them are closely analogous to Tertiary forms; so close, indeed, that had they not been found associated in the same beds with Ammonites, Scaphites, and other genera everywhere regarded as having become extinct at the close of the Cretaceous epoch we would have considered them Tertiary species.[1]

Already, at this early period, the peculiarities of the organic remains in the beds intermediate between undoubted Cretaceous and undoubted Eocene were recognized.

In a subsequent paper[2] the same authors refer the lignite deposits of the Upper Missouri River to the Tertiary. They say:

> Although there can be no doubt that these deposits hold a rather low position in the Tertiary system, we have as yet been able to arrive at no very definite conclusions as to their exact synchronism with any particular minor subdivision of Tertiary, not having been able to identify any of the mollusca found in them with those of any well marked geological horizon in other countries. Their general resemblance to the fossils of the Woolwich and Reading series of English geologists, as well as to those of the great lignite formations of the southeast of France, would seem to point ta the lower Eocene as their position.

In regard to the Judith River deposits, which Dr. Leidy[3] had already compared to the Wealden of Europe, the same writers add:

> Inasmuch, however, as there certainly are some outliers of fresh-water Tertiary in these Bad Lands, we would suggest that it is barely possible these remains may belong to that epoch, though the shells appear to be all distinct species from those found in the Tertiary at all the other localities in this region.

Notwithstanding these statements, the same authors, in a section given in later article,[4] following the conclusions of those who had examined the vertebrate and vegetable remains, refer the Judith River deposits to the lowest horizon of the Cretaceous, while the Fort Union beds are considered Miocene.

A geological map, prepared by Dr. Hayden, of the region bordering the Missouri River, appears in the next volume of the Proceedings of Philadelphia Academy,[5] on which the limits of the "Great Lignitic Ter-

[1] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 8, 1856, p. 63.
[2] Ibid., pp. 111-128.
[3] Ibid., pp. 72, 73.
[4] Ibid., p. 269.
[5] Ibid., vol. 9, 1857, p. 109.

tiary Basin" are recorded. In regard to the Great Lignitic deposit he states that "the collection of fossils now obtained show most conclusively * * * that it can not be older than the Miocene period." Small areas in Wyoming, on the Sweetwater, and to the west of South Pass are designated as Tertiary.

Similar conclusions are given in a longer paper by Meek and Hayden,[1] that immediately follows that presented by Dr. Hayden.

In the proceedings of the Academy of Natural Sciences for 1860 Meek and Engelmann refer the Bear River Estuary Beds[2] to the Tertiary.

In the same journal for 1861[3] Meek and Hayden published a complete section of the Tertiary formations of the northwest. A fourfold division is made: (1) Fort Union, or Great Lignite group; (2) Wind River deposits; (3) White River group; (4) Loup River beds.

The first two alone claim our attention. The Fort Union or Great Lignite group is described as characterized by—

Beds of clay and sand, with round ferruginous concretions and numerous beds, seams, and local deposits of lignite; great numbers of dicotyledonous leaves, stems, etc., of the genera Platanus, Acer, Ulmus, Populus, etc., with very large leaves of true fan palms. Also, Helix, Melania, Vivipara, Corbicula, Unio, Ostrea, Potamomya, and scales of Lepidotus, with bones of Trionyx, Emys, Compsemys, Crocodilus, etc. Thickness: 2,000 feet or more. Localities: Occupies the whole country around Fort Union, extending north into the British possessions to unknown distances; also southward to Fort Clark. Seen under the White River group on North Platte River above Fort Laramie, also on west side Wind River Mountains.

The Wind River deposits are described as—

Light-gray and ash-colored sandstones, with more or less argillaceous layers. Fossils: fragments of Trionyx, Testudo, with large Helix, Vivipara, petrified wood, etc. No marine or brackish-water types. Thickness: 1,500 to 2,000 feet. Localities: Wind River Valley; also, west of Wind River Mountains.

Concerning the position of the Wind River group in the Tertiary series they say:

As the Wind River deposits have not yet been seen in contact with any well marked beds of the other Tertiary formations of this region, and few fossils have yet been found in them, their position in the series remains doubtful. It is therefore, only provisionally that we have placed this formation between the Fort Union and White River groups in the foregoing section.

Concerning the Judith River deposits, a foot-note to page 417 contains the following:

At the time we published these facts we were led by the discovery here of fresh-water shells, in such a position, to think that some estuary deposits of doubtful age, near the mouth of the Judith River, on the Missouri, from which Dr. Leidy had described some Saurian remains resembling Wealden types, might be older than Tertiary. Later examinations, however, have demonstrated that the Judith beds contain an entirely different group of fossils from those found in the rock under consideration, and that they are really of Tertiary age, and hold a position at the base of the Great Lignite series of the Northwest.

[1] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 9, 1857, pp. 117–148.
[2] Ibid., vol. 12, 1860, p. 130.
[3] Ibid., vol. 13, 1861, p. 433.

The same section of the Tertiary strata of the Northwest is repeated in the First Annual Report of the Geological Survey of the Territories for 1867. In the discussions that follow, the Judith River deposits are placed with the Fort Union beds as part of the same great series. The more southern extension of the lignitic formation is now for the first time clearly recorded from Wyoming and Colorado and southward as far as Raton Pass in New Mexico. Capt. E. L. Berthoud, whose letter upon this point is included in this first official report of Dr. Hayden, says concerning the age of the lignitic series: "Everything that I have so far seen points out that the coal is either Cretaceous or Tertiary, but I believe it to be Tertiary or of the same age as the coal near Cologne, on the Rhine." Concerning the Wind River deposits he states further on that "they occupy an area about 100 miles in length and 40 to 50 in breadth."

In an article entitled "Notes on the Lignite Deposits of the West," in the American Journal of Science [1] for March, 1868, Dr. Hayden reiterates his previous views.

The same year Dr. J. S. Newberry[2] published "Notes on the Later Extinct Flora of North America, with descriptions of some new species of fossil plants from the Cretaceous and Tertiary Strata," in the Annals of the Lyceum of Natural History of New York. In this paper the flora of the Fort Union beds is described.

Up to this time there had apparently been complete unanimity on the subject of the Tertiary age of the lignitic series, the only varying evidence being found in what Dr. Leidy considered the Wealden type of the Judith River vertebrates.

From the discovery of specimens of Inoceramus in the coal strata at Raton Pass, New Mexico, Dr. J. D. Le Conte[3] claimed that the lignitic deposits of that region were accordingly Cretaceous, though still admitting the Miocene age of the Fort Union beds.

Prof. E. D. Cope[4] raises a doubt concerning the Tertiary age of the entire lignitic series in an article in the transactions of the American Philosophical Society by mentioning *Ischyrosaurus antiquus* Leidy from the "Great Lignitic" of Nebraska as "perhaps of the Cretaceous age," and *Hadrosaurus ? occidentalis* Leidy from the "Cretaceous beds" of Nebraska, while *Palæoscincus costatus* Leidy is referred to the "upper Jurassic Bad Lands of Judith River."

In the Third Annual Report of the Geological Survey of the Territories, Dr. Hayden describes the Tertiary strata under provisional "groups." The lignitic strata are thus locally divided into the Fort Union group, Cañon City group, Raton Hills group, etc., while separated from the true coal-bearing series in the vicinity of Bitter Creek

[1] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 45, 1868, pp. 198-208.

[2] Annals. Lyceum Nat. Hist., New York, vol. 9, 1867, pp. 1-76.

[3] Notes on the Geology of the Survey for the extension of the Union Pacific Railway, E. D., from the Smoky Hill River, Kansas, to the Rio Grande. Philadelphia, 1868.

[4] Am. Phil. Soc., Trans., vol. 14, 1868-'69, pp. 1-252.

is the Washakie group. The Green River shales, Bridger group, and Wasatch group are characterized, though their relations are not fully understood. The Washakie group and Green River shales are held to be Middle Tertiary, the Bridger group Upper Tertiary, while the Wasatch group is simply designated as of Tertiary age.

The volume upon mining industry, of the quarto publications of the U. S. Geological Exploration of the Fortieth Parallel, appeared in 1870, and includes a chapter upon the Green River coal basin, in which the author, Mr. Clarence King, states that the coal-bearing strata are mainly Cretaceous and are unconformably overlain by fresh-water deposits of Tertiary age. In this connection he says:

> The fossil life, which clearly indicates a Cretaceous age for the deepest members up to and including the first two or three important coal beds, from that point gradually changes with a corresponding alteration of the sediments, indicating a transition to a fresh-water period. The coal continued to be deposited some time after the marine fauna had been succeeded by fresh-water types. The species of fossils are in no case identical with the California Cretaceous beds, which occupy a similar geological position on the west of the Sierra Nevada. Their affinities decidedly approach those of the Atlantic slopes, while the fresh-water species which are found in connection with the uppermost coal beds seem to belong to the early Tertiary period.[1]

He states furthur concerning the unconformity of the Tertiary beds and the underlying coal-bearing strata:

> Whatever may be the relations of these beds in other places, it is absolutely certain that within the region lying between the Green River and the Wasatch, and bounded on the south by the Uinta Range, there is no single instance of conformity between the coal beds and the horizontal fresh-water strata above them.[2]

In a letter from Mr. Meek, published in the same chapter, that writer concludes from the presence of Inoceramus and Anchura and the unconformity that exists between the coal-bearing strata and the fresh-water beds that "from all the facts now known I can, therefore, scarcely doubt that you are right in referring these beds to the Cretaceous."[3] He states further that "these beds belong to one of the very latest members of the Cretaceous; or, in other words, that they were probably deposited when the physical conditions favorable to the existence of those forms of molluscan life, peculiarly characteristic of the Cretaceous period, were drawing to a close, or had in part ceased to exist."[4] Concerning the Bear River beds which Meek and Engelmann had referred in 1860 to the Tertiary, the former now admits that they may be Cretaceous, and suggests "the inquiry whether we ought not to carry up the line between the Cretaceous and Tertiary here, so as to include these estuary beds also in the Cretaceous."[5] The similarity of the Judith River deposits is stated in support of this position, "from the fact that there is a formation on the Upper Missouri, near the mouth of the Judith River, the exact age of which has long been regarded as somewhat doubtful, though Dr. Hayden and the writer have generally placed

[1] Op. cit., p. 453. [2] P. 455. [3] P. 461. [4] P. 462. [5] P. 464.

it in the Tertiary, that contains an exactly similar brackish-water group of fossils, some of which are identical with those found in these Bear River estuary beds."

Nevertheless, in summing up, at the close of the letter, the changes that took place during and subsequent to the formation of the coal-bearing strata Meek still clings to his previously expressed idea. He says:

> Whether or not this change from marine to estuary conditions was exactly contemporaneous with the close of the Cretaceous and the commencement of the Tertiary of Europe we may perhaps never know, but that it corresponded in the sequence of geological changes here with the change of physical conditions that closed the Cretaceous epoch and ushered in the Tertiary of Europe, especially in France, seems to me scarcely to admit of any well grounded doubt."[1]

Although he thinks grounds may be found for including portions of the lignitic strata in the Cretaceous, yet he says that all the molluscan remains "seem to point to a later origin."

In an article in the American Journal of Science for 1871,[2] entitled "On the Geology of the Eastern Uintah Mountains," Prof. Marsh gives the results of an expedition of the "Yale College Scientific Party" the previous summer into the Green River Valley. The topographical and stratigraphical characteristics of the early Tertiary deposits of the region are given, together with some general remarks on the character of the vertebrate fauna. In regard to the lignitic deposits Prof. Marsh says:

> As the age of the coal deposits of the Rocky Mountain region has of late been much discussed, a careful examination was made of the series of strata containing the present bed, and their Cretaceous age established beyond a doubt. In a stratum of yellow calcareous shale which overlies the coal series conformably, a thin layer was found full of *Ostrea congesta* Conrad, a typical Cretaceous fossil; and just above, a new and very interesting crinoid, allied apparently to the Marsupites of the English chalk. In the shales directly below the coal bed, cyclodial fish scales and coprolites were abundant, and lower down remains of turtles of Cretaceous types, and teeth of a Dinosaurian reptile resembling those of Megalosaurus, were also discovered.

In the Fourth Annual Report of the Geological Survey of the Territories for 1870 (published in 1872), Dr. Newberry maintains the Tertiary age of the Fort Union beds, a position that had been generally accepted for the northern lignitic strata. Concerning the age of the lignitic deposits of Wyoming, Dr. Hayden states in the same report that "so far as we can determine the coal beds of the Laramie plains are of Eocene age, although the plants are more closely allied to those of the Miocene period in the Old World."[3] Further he says:

> That there is a connection between all the coal beds of the West I firmly believe, and I am convinced that in due time that relation will be worked out and the links in the chain of evidence joined together. That some of the older beds may be of Upper Cretaceous age I am prepared to believe, yet until much clearer light is thrown upon their origin than any we have yet secured I shall regard them as belonging to my transition series or beds of passage between the true Cretaceous and the Tertiary.[4]

---

[1] Op. cit., p. 466.
[2] Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 1, 1871, pp. 191-198.
[3] Op. cit., p. 164.
[4] Op. cit., p. 165.

The Tertiary age of the lignitic strata is claimed in the same report by Lesquereux, who had studied the fossil plants collected in both Wyoming and New Mexico.

The same volume contains an extended description by Dr. Hayden of the Tertiary basin of Southern Wyoming. The following terms: (I) Washakie group, (II) Wasatch group, (III) Green River group, (IV) Bridger group, are used. The strata are considered Miocene in age and unconformable to the underlying deposits. The lithological and topographical characteristics of the several groups in their local developments are given and the occurrence of fossils noted.

A letter from Dr. Newberry, published in Hayden's report, assigns the Green River shales to an earlier period than that stated by Hayden and presents plant evidence for their Eocene age. Concerning the Washakie group Hayden says:

> Although I have hitherto regarded the group of beds which I have denominated the "Washakie group" as separated from those of Green River and to the westward, yet I am now inclined to believe that the upper series is either an extension eastward of the Bridger group, or synchronous with it.[1]

The Wasatch group is shown to be below the Bridger group and probably synchronous with the Green River shales. The position of the Bridger group above the Green River group is established.

The Fifth Annual Report of the Geological Survey of the Territories for 1871 (published in 1872) contains an attempt by Lesquereux to correlate the lignitic deposits of the numerous localities hitherto described with the different horizons of the Tertiary recognized in Europe.

Strong evidence for the Cretaceous age of the lignitic deposits had been up to this time brought forward by King, Marsh, and Cope, and, as we have seen, reluctantly accepted by Meek, so that the evidence from plant remains was alone left to establish the Tertiary age of the strata.

The discovery, during the summer of 1872, of the remains of a Dinosaurian reptile at Black Butte station, on the Union Pacific Railroad, in Wyoming, tended more completely to establish the Cretaceous age of the lignitic deposits. Prof. Cope, who examined the fossils collected from this locality, says:

> From the above description it is evident that the animal of Black Buttes is a Dinosaurian reptile. * * * It is thus conclusively proved that the coal strata of the Bitter Creek Basin of Wyoming Territory, which embraces the greater area yet discovered, were deposited during the Cretaceous period, and not during the Tertiary, though not long preceding the latter.[2]

In another article[3] he says: "this discovery places this group without doubt within the limits of the Cretaceous period." The separation of the "Bitter Creek series" as a distinct group had been already recorded by Prof. Cope in the previous paper.

In the Sixth Annual Report of the Geological Survey of the Territories for 1872 (published in 1873) Lesquereux reasserts his former conclusions

[1] Op. cit., p. 73. [2] Am. Phil. Soc., Proc., vol. 12, 1872, p. 483. [3] Am. Nat., vol. 6, 1872, pp. 669–671.

as to the Tertiary age of the entire coal bearing series which he denominates the "American Eocene." The Washakie group he assigns to the Upper Eocene, while the Green River group is considered Miocene. In the same report Meek considers the "Bitter Creek series" to be of Cretaceous age, and describes many fossils therefrom. The Bear River deposits he thinks may still be Tertiary. In regard to the lignite deposits of Wyoming he says:

> But the most surprising fact to me, supposing this to be a Cretaceous formation, is that we found directly associated with the reptilian remains at Black Butte a shell I can not distinguish from *Viviparus trochiformis*, originally described from the lignitic formation at Fort Clark, on the Upper Missouri, a formation that has always been regarded as Tertiary by all who have studied its fossils, both animal and vegetable. * * * The occurrence of this last mentioned species here, along with a Cretaceous type of reptile and a *Corbicula* apparently identical with *C. cytheriformis* of the Judith River brackish-water beds, together with the presence of Corbulas very closely allied to Judith River species, at lower horizons in this series, and the occurrence of some vertebrates of Cretaceous affinities at the Judith River localities, would certainly strongly favor the conclusions not only that this Judith formation, the age of which has so long been in doubt, is also Cretaceous, but also that even the higher fresh-water lignite formation at Fort Clark and other Upper Missouri localities may also be Upper Cretaceous instead of Lower Tertiary.[1]

In the same report Cope has an article "On the Extinct Vertebrata of the Eocene of Wyoming." The genus Amyzon is described from Osino, Nevada.

Dr. Newberry[2] presents a paper in the April number of the American Journal of Science of the same year, in which he asserts that much of the flora that Lesquereux had described from New Mexico as Eocene he is certain is Cretaceous, while other forms from the Fort Union beds, referred to the same horizon, he is confident are Miocene. Lesquereux[3] defends his position in a later number.

Prof. Cope states in the Bulletin of the U. S. Geological and Geographical Survey of the Territories, No. 1, that—

> Believing, as I do, that the evidence derived from the vertebrate remains requires the reference of the Bitter Creek coal series to the Cretaceous period, and having pointed out, on similar grounds, that the horizon of the Great Lignite from which vertebrate remains have been procured on the Missouri River is undoubtedly Mesozoic, although usually regarded as Tertiary, I suspect that the corresponding strata in Colorado will be found to pertain to the same section of geologic time.[4]

In Bulletin No. 2 the same writer has an extended discussion "On the mutual relations of the Cretaceous and Tertiary formations of the West." In a second paper the Tertiary fishes from Middle and South Parks, Colorado, are described. The first article is reproduced in much the same form in the Seventh Annual Report of the U. S. Geological and Geographical Survey of the Territories for 1873 (published in 1874). In this paper the author, considering the Fort Union and

---

[1] Op. cit., p. 460.
[2] Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 7, 1874, pp. 399-404.
[3] Ibid., pp. 546-557.
[4] Op. cit., p. 10.

Bitter Creek series of like age, but at the same time accepting the evidence offered on the side of paleobotany, says:

There is, then, no alternative but to accept the result *that a Tertiary flora was contemporaneous with a Cretaceous fauna, establishing an uninterrupted succession of life* across what is generally regarded as one of the greatest breaks in geologic time.[1]

The same volume contains reports by Marvine and by Lesquereux, in which the latter still defends his position of the Eocene age of the greater part of the lignitic strata, though the Evanston beds are considered younger and are placed in the upper portion of the series. To the Miocene (middle) he refers the coal basin of Carbon, the Washakie group, and other deposits. To the Miocene (upper) the Green River group; the coal of Elko, Nevada; the Florissant, Colorado, beds; and the deposits of Middle Park. Cope, in the same volume, maintains that from the evidence of vertebrate paleontology the deposits of the Wasatch group are synchronous with the Green River. The same writer speaks of the "Bridger Eocene."

Dr. George M. Dawson[2] published in 1874–'75 several articles bearing on the age of the Fort Union beds, and is decidedly of the opinion that they are Eocene.

Two important contributions from the pen of Prof. Cope appeared in 1875. In the first,[3] which included an account of the vertebrates collected by Dawson on the British boundary, the author finds that "the list of species, short as it is, indicates the future discovery of a complete transition from Cretaceous to Eocene life."

The second contribution is the final report on Cretaceous vertebrates, published as Vol. II of the U. S. Geological Survey of the Territories. It contains the paper already twice referred to. Concerning the occurrence of identical forms in the Fort Union and Judith River deposits, he says:

The presence of gar fishes of the genus *Clastes* in this formation is as yet peculiar to this and the Judith River localities. As these gars have not heretofore been found in North America below the Eocene, they constitute the first case of apparent commingling of Tertiary and Cretaceous animal life yet clearly determined.

Prof. J. J. Stevenson published about this time, in several articles, evidence of a stratigraphical character to show the Cretaceous age of the lignitic deposits.[4]

In the annual report for 1875 of the U. S. Geographical Surveys west of the One Hundredth Meridian, Prof. Cope characterizes the Puerco group and refers it without qualification to the Eocene. He estimates the thickness of the strata at 1,200 feet.

The published results of Maj. J. W. Powell's explorations of the Colo-

[1] Op. cit., p. 442.

[2] Canadian Naturalist, vol. 7, 1874, p. 241. British North American Boundary Commission, Montreal, 1874. Ibid., 1875.

[3] Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 27, 1875, pp. 9, 10.

[4] New York Lyceum Nat. Hist., Proc., 2d ser., No. 4, 1874, p. 93; U. S. Geog. Surys. west 100th Mer., vol. 3, 1875, pp. 404–410; Am. Phil. Soc., Proc., vol. 14, 1875, pp. 447–475.

rado River of the West appeared in 1875. In this report, the section of Eocene strata exposed on the Green River south of Green River Station, on the Union Pacific Railroad, is described in the itinerary of the journey.

The Eighth Annual Report of the Geological and Geographical Survey of the Territories for 1874 (published in 1876) contains far more than any previous publication concerning the lignitic strata. In that portion contributed by Dr. Hayden "the coal-bearing beds of the Laramie Plains and Colorado" are correlated with "the vast group in the Northwest," though exception is made of "the Bear River and Coalville group," which is considered Cretaceous.

Dr. A. C. Peale published in this volume a comparative table setting forth the various opinions that had prevailed as to the several "groups" under consideration. Concerning the Green River and Bridger groups he says that "Profs. Cope, Leidy, and Marsh consider them Eocene, basing their conclusions on the discovery of vertebrate organic remains, while Lesquereux refers them to the Miocene, from his investigations of their fossil flora, calling the 'Liguitic' group Eocene."[1] He considers that "the lignite-bearing beds east of the mountains in Colorado are the equivalent of the Fort Union group of the Upper Missouri, and are Eocene Tertiary; also that the lower part of the group, at least of the locality 200 miles east of the mountains, is the equivalent of a part of the lignitic strata of Wyoming," while "the Judith River beds have their equivalent along the eastern edge of the mountains below the Lignite or Fort Union group, and also in Wyoming, and are Cretaceous, although of a higher horizon than the coal-bearing strata of Coalville and Bear River, Utah."[2] Lesquereux gives an extended argument for the Tertiary age of the lignitic deposits.

In his final report on Invertebrate Paleontology Meek states that it "is certainly highly probable" that the Judith River beds are Cretaceous, although he still maintains that the Fort Union beds are lower Eocene. Further, he says, "the presence or absence of lignite proves nothing of itself, as lignite undoubtedly occurs in both Cretaceous and Tertiary rocks in the far West." The Wind River group he considers to be Miocene, and "probably wholly or in part equivalent to that since called the Bridger group."[3]

The geological report by J. S. Newberry of the exploring expedition under Capt. J. N. Macomb in 1859 appeared in 1876. In this report the deposits that had been given the name of Puerco group by Cope are described and referred to the upper portion of the Cretaceous.

The geology of the Uinta Mountains, by Maj. J. W. Powell, was published in 1876. In this report the Bitter Creek series is fully discussed by Maj. Powell and Dr. White. At a point between Black Buttes and Point of Rocks a "physical break" is announced that

[1] Op. cit., p. 140. [2] U. S. Geological Survey of the Territories, vol. 9, 1876. [3] Op. cit., p. 155.

affords grounds for drawing there the line of separation between the Mesozoic and Cenozoic formations. The Point of Rocks group below the break is referred to the Cretaceous, the Bitter Creek group, above the same, to the Tertiary. Maj. Powell says:

All of the plants described by Prof. Lesquereux and collected by himself and others within this province have been referred by him to divisions in the Tertiary and are found in strata above the physical break, and hence I agree with him in considering them Tertiary. * * * The conclusions reached from a study of the vertebrate paleontology by Profs. Leidy, Marsh, and Cope entirely harmonize with this division of the Cenozoic and Mesozoic.[1]

A single exception is cited.

Dr. White arrived at conclusions similar to those of Maj. Powell. He says:

There is no physical break in the Cretaceous strata from the base of the series to the top of the upper, or Point of Rocks group, at which horizon there is at all observed points, extending over a large region, considerable unconformability by erosion of the lower strata of the Bitter Creek group upon the upper strata of the Point of Rocks group.[2]

Overlying the Point of Rocks group, considered the top of the Mesozoic, are the following groups, that were held by Powell and White to represent the Eocene: (I) Bitter Creek, (II) Lower Green River, (III) Upper Green River, (IV) Bridger, (V) Browns Park. Each group is fully characterized.

The Report on Descriptive Geology, by Messrs. Arnold Hague and S. F. Emmons, of the U. S. Geological Exploration of the Fortieth Parallel, appeared in 1877. In this work the term Lignitic is replaced by that of *Laramie*, which, however, was first used on advance sheets of the atlas, map 1, that appeared in 1875. The deposits of that formation are referred to the Cretaceous. The terms (I) Vermilion Creek, (II) Green River, (III) Bridger, (IV) Uinta are employed for the overlying horizons, which are considered Eocene. Localities in Utah, Wyoming, and Nevada are mentioned and described.

Concerning the taxonomy of the lignitic deposits of the interior, Prof. Marsh says, in his vice-presidential address delivered before the American Association for the Advancement of Science in 1877:

The boundary line between the Cretaceous and Tertiary in the region of the Rocky Mountains has been much in dispute during the last few years, mainly in consequence of the uncertain geological bearings of the fossil plants found near this horizon. The accompanying invertebrate fossils have thrown little light on the question, which is essentially whether the great lignite series of the west is uppermost Cretaceous or lowest Eocene. The evidence of the numerous vertebrate remains is, in my judgment, decisive and in favor of the former view.

The higher vertebrate life of the Tertiary is discussed at length and in the table appended the Eocene is separated into four divisions. (I) Coryphodon beds. (II) "Green River beds." (III) Dinoceras beds. (IV) Diplacodon beds.

[1] Op. cit., pp. 71, 72.

[2] Op. cit., p. 87.

In the Ninth Annual Report of the U. S. Geological and Geographical Survey of the Territories for 1875 (published in 1877), Mr. F. M. Endlich describes the Puerco marls, together with the "Post-Cretaceous" beds of the Trinidad region.

The volume upon Paleontology of the final reports of the U. S. Geographical Surveys West of the One hundredth Meridian contains descriptions of Eocene invertebrate fossils by Dr. White, and vertebrate fossils by Prof. Cope. The latter characterizes the Puerco marls at considerable length, which he states are overlain by sandstones and marls of the Wasatch Group. He says:

> The Puerco marls may belong to the Eocene series, in view of their strict conformability with the superincumbent rocks of that age. But they may represent the Fort Union or lignite beds of the Upper Missouri, some of whose strata they resemble in color and consistence.[1]

The same year Dr. C. A. White published the first of his "Paleontological Papers" in the Bulletin of the U. S. Geological and Geographical Survey of the Territories. The late Mesozoic and Cenozoic fauna are chiefly described in these contributions. In No. 3 a table of the different groups is given, in which the term *post-Cretaceous* is suggested to include the Laramie of King, together with the lower portion of the Wasatch. In this table the Judith River beds are correlated with the Laramie and the Fort Union with the Wasatch. After showing that a few forms of Inoceramus at a doubtful horizon of the Laramie and a single species of Odontobasis, considered by Meek a genus characteristic of the Cretaceous, afford the only invertebrate evidence for the Mesozoic age of the lignitic deposits, he maintains that many forms show a marked similarity to Wasatch species. In this connection he says:

> It is in view of the facts here stated, and also because I believe that a proper interpretation of them shows the strata of the Laramie group and the base of the Wasatch to be of later date than any others that have hitherto been referred to the Cretaceous period, and also earlier than the Eocene epoch, that I have decided to designate those strata as post-Cretaceous, at least provisionally.[2]

In the Tenth Annual Report of the U. S. Geological and Geographical Survey of the Territories for 1876 (published in 1878) Dr. White presents a "table of correlated general sections," in which the Laramie group[3] is made equivalent to the Lignitic group of Meek and Hayden, and the Laramie group of King, while it includes all of the Point of Rocks group of Powell, together with the lower portions of the Bitter Creek group of the last-named author. The remainder of the Bitter Creek series is shown to be commensurate with the Wasatch group established by Hayden, and later termed the Vermilion Creek group by King. The Green River and Bridger groups are exhibited as similarly delimited by the several authorities quoted, while the Uinta group equals the Plioceneof Hayden and Brown's Park group of Powell. The charac-

[1] Op. cit., p. 18. [2] Vol. 3, p. 629. [3] The more general term, post-Cretaceous, is still retained.

teristics of each group are given at considerable length, together with type localities.

Abandoning the position as to general unconformity between the Point of Rocks and Bitter Creek groups, as earlier maintained by Powell and himself, he says:

The fact that this series (Laramie) passes insensibly into the Fox Hills group and into the Wasatch group above renders it difficult to fix upon a stratigraphical plane of demarkation either for its base or summit. I have therefore decided to regard this group as essentially a brackish-water one, referring all strata below that contain any marine Cretaceous invertebrate forms to the Fox Hills group, beginning this series with those strata that contain brackish and fresh water forms, and ending it above with those strata in which the brackish-water forms finally cease. Thus defined, the whole series seems to form one natural paleontological group, as well as to be a sufficiently distinct stratigraphical one, for which I have adopted the name of Laramie group of King. * * * I believe that, upon the evidence of invertebrate paleontology, the Fox Hills group is later than the latest Cretaceous strata of Europe, and I therefore regard the Laramie group as occupying transitional ground between the well marked Cretaceous and Tertiary groups; but the opinion is only tentatively held until further facts are obtained.[1]

In the fourth volume of the Bulletin of the U. S. Geological and Geographical Survey of the Territories, published in 1878, Dr. White contributes three more "Paleontological Papers" (6, 7 and 8), in which the invertebrate fauna of the Laramie is discussed. In the second of these papers the Laramie group is given a much wider significance than hitherto. He says:

The term Laramie group is here used to include all the strata between the Fox Hills group of the Cretaceous period beneath, and the Wasatch group (= Vermilion Creek group of King) of the Tertiary period above. That is, it includes, as either subordinate groups or regional divisions, both the Judith River and Fort Union series of the Upper Missouri River, the Lignite series east of the Rocky Mountains in Colorado, the Bitter Creek series of southern Wyoming and the adjacent parts of Colorado, and also the Bear River Estuary beds, together with the Evanston coal series of the valley of Bear River and adjacent parts of Utah. Strata of this great Laramie group are known to exist in other large and widely separated districts of the western portion of the national domain.[2]

Concerning the stratigraphical relations of the series of deposits overlying the Laramie in the Green River Basin, he says:

In the great region now drained by the Green River there are three well marked groups of strata that come in their order above the Laramie group, and which all agree in referring to the Tertiary period. These are the Wasatch, Green River, and Bridger groups, named in ascending order. The Wasatch group is the lowest of a series of three fresh-water Tertiary groups, all of which are intimately connected, not only by an evident continuity of sedimentation throughout, but also by the passage of a portion of the molluscan species from one group up into the next above. Not only were the three groups, aggregating more than a mile in thickness, evidently produced by a continuous sedimentation, but it seems equally evident that it was likewise uninterrupted between the Laramie and Wasatch epochs, although there was then a change from brackish to fresh waters and a consequent change of all the species of invetebrates inhabiting those waters.

[1] Op. cit., p. 33. [2] Op. cit., p. 721.

The seventh volume of the Final Reports of the U. S. Geological Survey of the Territories is by Mr. Leo Lesquereux on "Tertiary Flora." In this exhaustive treatise the author gives a full expression of his views upon the Laramie group, which he still holds to be Tertiary.

The same year Mr. Clarence King published volume I (Systematic Geology) of the U. S. Geological Exploration of the Fortieth Parallel. In this report the views expressed by Messrs. Hague and Emmons in volume II (Descriptive Geology) are more fully presented. The Laramie is held to be Cretaceous and the Eocene Tertiary is divided into (I) Vermilion Creek group, (II) Green River group, (III) Bridger group, (IV) Uinta group. These different divisions are individually characterized at considerable length. The Fort Union beds are held to be Miocene, and the northward extension of the White River group of Nebraska. He states that unconformities separate the Laramie and Vermilion Creek deposits as well as the members of the Eocene series themselves.

Vol. 5 of the Bulletin of the U. S. Geological Survey of the Territories contains an important article by Cope on "The Relations of the Horizons of Extinct Vertebrata of Europe and North America." In this paper the various groups of the American Eocene are compared with those of Europe upon the evidence afforded by the vertebrates. Concerning the Laramie he says that "its necessary position is between the Tertiary and Cretaceous, but on the Cretaceous side of the boundary,"[1] though later than the latest horizon of the French Cretaceous. According to Cope the post-Cretaceous embraces both Laramie and Puerco, the former commensurate with the Judith River and Fort Union deposits. The same volume contains an article by Peale on "The Laramie Group of Western Wyoming and Adjacent Regions."

The Eleventh Annual Report of the U. S. Geological and Geographical Survey of the Territories for 1877 (published in 1879) contains an article by Endlich upon the geology of the Sweetwater region. The Laramie group is assigned to the post-Cretaceous. The Sweetwater group is placed above the Bridger group, which, with the Green River group, are considered Miocene. The Wasatch group is alone referred to the Eocene.

Dr. White presents a most valuable contribution in the same volume, based upon much enlarged collections of invertebrate fossils that had been made by him from the Laramie and later groups during the previous field season. He believes in "the unity of all the principal brackish-water deposits hitherto known in the western Territories, and * * * their recognition as a comprehensive group of strata under the name of the Laramie group, which represents a great period in geological time, and especially such in the geological history of North America."[2] After admitting the Cretaceous aspect of the ver-

[1] Op. cit., pp. 38, 39.

[2] Op. cit., p. 252.

tebrate fauna of the Laramie on the one hand and the Tertiary aspect of the flora on the other, he states that the invertebrate fauna is "silent on the subject" of the taxonomy of the deposits.

Referring to the appearance of mammalia in great variety of forms in the beds immediately overlying the Laramie, he says:

> Such suddenness of introduction makes it almost certain that it was caused by the removal of some physical barrier, so that ground which was before potentially Tertiary became so by actual faunal occupancy. In other words, it seems certain that these Tertiary mammalian types were evolved in some other region before the close of the Laramie period, where they existed contemporaneously with at least the later Laramie Dinosaurians of Cretaceous types, and that the barrier which separated the faunæ was removed by some one of the various movements connected with the evolution of the continent. The climate and other physical conditions which were essential to the existence of the Dinosaurians of the Laramie period having evidently been continued into the Tertiary epochs that are represented by the Wasatch, Green River, and Bridger groups, they might doubtless have continued their existence through those epochs as well as through the Laramie period but for the irruption of the mammalian horde, to which they probably soon succumbed in an unequal struggle for existence.[1]

The same volume contains a "Report on the Geology of the Green River District," by Dr. A. C. Peale, in which the Laramie is referred to the post-Cretaceous, the Wasatch, Green River, and Bridger groups to the Tertiary, the two latter to the Miocene. Detailed descriptions are given of these various groups in the area investigated.

In the American Naturalist for 1879 Prof Cope[2] describes "The Amyzon Tertiary Beds" of Osino and Elko, Nevada.

The following year the same writer,[3] in the Proceedings of the American Philosophical Society, again refers to the Amyzon beds, and also describes the "Manti" beds of Utah. The latter deposits are further characterized in the American Naturalist[4] of that year.

The sixth volume of the Bulletin of the U. S. Geological and Geographical Survey of the Territories, published in 1882, has two important contributions upon the Eocene; the first by Prof. Cope, "On the Vertebrata of the Wind River Eocene Beds of Wyoming," the second by Prof. Scudder on "The Tertiary Lake Basin of Florissant, Colorado, between South and Hayden Parks."

The Twelfth Annual Report of the U. S. Geological and Geographical Survey of the Territories for 1878 (published in 1883) contains further contributions by Dr. White on the Laramie and later groups, with descriptions of many new species.

In the same volume is a report by St. John on the geology of the Wind River district. The character of the Wind River Eocene and its relations to the other deposits are stated.

A paper upon the "Tertiary Lake Basin at Florissant, Colorado," by Dr. Scudder, appears in the same report, reprinted with additions and alterations from the Bulletin.

---

[1] Op. cit., p. 265.
[2] Am. Nat., vol. 13, 1879, p. 332.
[3] Am. Phil. Soc., Proc., vol. 19, 1880, p. 60–62.
[4] Am. Nat., vol. 14, 1880, pp. 303, 304.

In the Second Annual Report of the U. S. Geological Survey, Capt. C. E. Dutton contributes a paper upon "The Physical Geology of the Grand Cañon District," in which he states that the Lower Eocene only is represented in that region. To the north, first the Middle Eocene, and then the Upper Eocene appear, while the entire series becomes represented as the Uinta Mountains are approached. He thinks the Middle and Upper Eocene were never deposited in the Grand Cañon country. Similar conclusions are maintained by the same writer in Monograph II of the U. S. Geological Survey, entitled "The Tertiary History of the Grand Cañon District."

In the American Naturalist for 1882 Prof. Cope[1] contributed an important paper on "The Tertiary Formations of the Central Region of the United States." In this article the leading characteristics of the Puerco, Wasatch, Bridger, and Uinta groups are presented.

In an article in the Proceedings of the American Philosophical Society, a "Synopsis of the Vertebrata of the Puerco Eocene Epoch"[2] is given by the same writer. Some points of difference shown in the Puerco deposits from true Eocene strata are stated.

The Third Annual Report of the U. S. Geological Survey, published in 1883, contains "A Review of the Nonmarine Fossil Mollusca of North America," by Dr. White. In this paper Dr. White reiterates his former statements as to the transitional position of the Laramie group. He says:

> Geologists are not agreed as to whether this great group should be referred to the Tertiary or Cretaceous period, some contending for the former and some for the latter reference. The truth appears to lie between the two opinions, and I have elsewhere presented reasons for regarding this group as occupying a transitional position between the Cretaceous and Tertiary, * * * and therefore as representing a period partaking of both the Mesozoic and Cenozoic ages.[3]

Concerning the extent of the Laramie he says:

> The "Judith River group," "Fort Union group," "Lignitic group," "Bitter Creek Coal series," "Point of Rocks group," and "Bear River Estuary beds" are all parts of the great Laramie group.[4]

The position to be assigned to the overlying deposits is thus stated by Dr. White:

> The "Wasatch group," "Vermilion Creek group," and "Bitter Creek group" are regarded as at least approximately equivalent strata, constituting the oldest member of the purely fresh-water Eocene Tertiary series of deposits in the West. The Green River and Bridger groups are respectively the second and third members of that fresh-water Eocene series. The Wind River group of Wyoming is regarded as of Eocene age.[5]

The same year there appeared in the American Journal of Science a paper by Dr. White,[6] entitled "Late Observations concerning the Mol-

[1] Am. Nat., vol. 16, 1882, pp. 177–195.
[2] Am. Phil. Soc., Proc., vol. 20, 1882, pp. 461–470.
[3] Op. cit., pp. 414–416.
[4] Op. cit., pp. 415, 416.
[5] Op. cit., p. 416.
[6] Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 25, 1883, pp. 207–209.

luscan Fauna and Geographical Extent of the Laramie Group," in which he says:

> That any true Laramie strata ever alternate with those of the Fox Hills group or any other marine Cretaceous group, or that any true marine fossils were ever collected from any strata of the Laramie group, I can not admit. I regard all such statements as a result of a misunderstanding of the stratigraphical geology of the region in which such observations are said to have been made.

In volume VIII of the Final Reports of the U. S. Geological Survey of the Territories upon "Cretaceous and Tertiary Flora," published in 1883, the author, Mr. Leo Lesquereux, still maintains the Eocene age of the Laramie group.

In an article in the Neues Jahrbuch für Mineralogie, Geologie, and Palaeontologie for 1884, M. Neumayr places the Laramie group in a parallel position with the Intertrappean beds of the Deccan in Hindostan, and between the Cretaceous and the Eocene. Lists of similar fossil plants from the two areas are given.

"A Review of the Fossil Ostreidæ of North America," by Dr. White, appears in the Fourth Annual Report of the U. S. Geological Survey, published in 1884. In this article the author compares the conditions of the Laramie Sea to the Caspian, in which the waters are fresher than those of the ocean.

Prof. Cope[1] presents a short paper on "The Relations of the Puerco and Laramie Deposits" in the American Naturalist for 1885, in which he says:

> Some writers having suspected the identy of the formations above named and the consequences which follow that the Puerco mammalian fauna was contemporary with the dinosaurian fauna of the Laramie age, the following observations on their stratigraphic relations are now given. At the locality where best developed the Puerco beds have a thickness of about 850 feet and contain mammalia to the base. The Laramie beds succeed downward conformably, it is thought by Mr. Baldwin, and have a thickness of 2,000 feet at Animas City, New Mexico. They rest on Fox Hills marine Cretaceous of less thickness.

Concerning the taxonomy of the Puerco group, Prof. Cope now recedes from his formerly expressed opinion that the beds are Eocene, and maintains their Cretaceous affinity on account of "the absence of Perissodactyla and Rodentia, and of course of mammalian orders not found below the Miocene. * * * and in the constitution of the mammalian fauna by Condylarthra, Bunotheria, and Marsupialia." The Puerco group is placed in the post-Cretaceous, which "as a whole may be ultimately distinguished from the Tertiary by these peculiarities [given above], together with the reptilian genus Champsosaurus."

In a presidential address upon "The Application of Biology to Geological History," delivered by Dr. White[2] at the Fifth Anniversary Meeting of the Biological Society of Washington, January 24, 1885, the author reviews briefly the conflicting nature of the evidence afforded

[1] Am. Nat., vol. 19, 1885, p. 985.

[2] Washington Biol. Soc., Proc., vol. 3, 1886, pp. 1–20.

by the vertebrate and invertebrate faunas and the flora of the Laramie group.

In the Fifth Annual Report of the U. S. Geological Survey, and later in Monograph X of the same, Prof. Marsh divides the Eocene into four groups, basing his divisions upon the vertebrate fossils: (I) Coryphodon [Wasatch] beds, (II) Heliobatis [Green River] beds, (III) Dinoceras [Bridger] beds, (IV) Diplacodon [Uinta] beds.

The most exhaustive treatise upon the literature of the Laramie is to be found in a "Synopsis of the Flora of the Laramie Group," by Prof. L. F. Ward, that appeared in the Sixth Annual Report of the U. S. Geological Survey, published in 1885. It has afforded an outline for the present chapter, so far as the history of opinion upon the Laramie is concerned. This important paper presents us with the latest views that paleobotany has to offer upon the interesting problems presented by the Laramie formation.

The writer says:

> The discussions with regard to the age of the Laramie group, which have been rapidly passed in review, have perhaps sufficiently shown that it is impossible to refer that group either to the Cretaceous or the Tertiary, and in so doing harmonize all the facts that the group presents with those in conformity with which other deposits in other countries of the world have been so referred; but they have also sufficiently shown that this is not the fault of the investigators, but, so to speak, of the facts, and that the real disagreement is in the organic forms and the nature of the deposits, so that omniscience itself could never harmonize them with all kinds of forms and deposits in all parts of the world. It is, therefore futile, and indeed puerile, longer to discuss this question, and we may well afford to dismiss it altogether and settle down to the more serious study of the real problems which still lie before us.[1]

In this report Prof. Ward shows that over 20 species of plants are common to the Laramie and Green River groups.

The "Relation of the Laramie Molluscan and Fresh-water Eocene Faunas" is discussed by Dr. White in Bulletin 34 of the U. S. Geological Survey, published in 1886. In this report Dr. White states that there is no known case of a marine Cretaceous form having lived on into Laramie time, though it is probable that some estuarine species may have done so. He mentions the persistence, however, of Laramie fresh-water forms into the Wasatch. The Bear River Estuary beds are placed intermediate between the Cretaceous and Eocene, and probably synchronous with the Laramie, though possessing a wholly different fauna. The Puerco beds are shown to possess an entirely different vertebrate fauna from the Laramie below and the Wasatch above, with both of which they are conformable. The author thinks they may represent the lower portion of the Wasatch of Utah. The upper portion of the Fort Union beds is provisionally correlated with the base of the Wasatch.

In Bulletin 37 of the U. S. Geological Survey, published in 1887, Mr.

[1] Op. cit., p. 435.

L. F. Ward discusses the "Types of the Laramie Flora," in which new data are added to the earlier "Synopsis" that appeared in the Sixth Annual Report.

The same year Dr. White published in the American Journal of Science an important paper[1] entitled "On the Inter-Relation of Contemporaneous Fossil Faunas and Floras." In this article he says: "That faunas and floras of Cretaceous and Tertiary types should have existed contemporaneously is not strange, for a similar diversity now exists as regards the living faunas and floras of different parts of the world." The sudden appearance of so many various mammalian types he maintains was due to "the removal from time to time of certain physical barriers which previously restricted the dispersion of those faunas." He considers that sedimentation from "the Laramie to the Bridger groups inclusive was at no time everywhere interrupted," and thus there is an "unbroken continuity of invertebrate and plant life."

A year later an article by the same writer "On the Relation of the Laramie Group to Earlier and Later Formations"[2] contains reference to the Laramie of Texas and its position as regards the marine Eocene of the Gulf States. The author inclines to the view that the coal-bearing strata of the Laramie are the equivalent in part at least of the "Northern Lignitic" of Hilgard.

In the American Naturalist for 1887[3] and American Geologist for 1888[4] Prof. Cope presents reports upon the "Mesozoic and Cenozoic Realms of the Interior of North America." In each of these papers the Laramie and Puerco are referred to the "Post-Cretacic system," while the Eocene is divided into the (I) Wasatch, (II) Wind River, (III) Bridger, (IV) Diplacodon beds, or Uinta. Two other formations that he considers "contemporary with one or more of these" are the Amyzon beds and the Green River shales.

The stratigraphical relations of certain deposits in the vicinity of Denver that had hitherto been considered Laramie are discussed by Mr. George H. Eldridge[5] and Dr. Whitman Cross[6] in the Proceedings of the Colorado Scientific Society for 1888. These beds are readily divided on both lithological and stratigraphical grounds into two groups; the lower called the Arapaho,[7] unconformable to the Laramie; the upper, the Denver, unconformable to the Arapaho. The more detailed evidence for their separation from the Laramie will be given later.

In the Eighth Annual Report of the U. S. Geological Survey, published in 1889, Prof. Ward contributes a paper on "The Geographical

[1] Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 33, 1887, pp. 364-374.
[2] Ibid., vol. 35, 1888, pp. 432-438.
[3] Am. Nat., vol. 21, 1887, pp. 445-462.
[4] Am. Geologist, vol. 2, 1888, pp. 265-267, 285-299.
[5] The Mining Industry, vol. 3, 1888, No. 3, pp. 24, 25; No. 4, pp. 33-35; No. 5, pp. 44-45, and Colorado Sci. Soc., Proc., vol. 3, 1888, pp. 86-118.
[6] Colorado Sci. Soc., Proc., vol. 3, 1888, pp. 119-133. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 37, 1889, pp. 261-282.
[7] In earlier articles called the "Willow Creek beds."

Distribution of Fossil Plants." The Eocene localities throughout the Interior region where fossil leaves have been found are cited and the literature of the subject freely quoted. A map showing the distribution of fossil plants in the United States is added.

The vice-presidential address of Dr. White[1] at the Toronto meeting of the American Association for the Advancement of Science is a most valuable contribution to the present discussion of the application of the European scheme of classification to the strata of the North American continent. That minute correlation is impracticable is clearly shown. The Laramie group is discussed in the light of recently acquired data.

In the Bulletin of the Geological Society of America, volume I, published in 1890, is an abstract of a paper upon "The Laramie Group," presented by Prof. J. S. Newberry. In this article Dr. Newberry declares "that the floras of the Laramie and Fort Union groups are totally distinct, and that these formations should be referred to different geological systems—the Fort Union to the Tertiary, the Laramie to the Cretaceous."[2] In the discussion that follows he says: "In my judgment the Laramie is the top of the Cretaceous system. I do not know why it should be called post-Cretaceous. It is true there must be somewhere connecting links between the Cretaceous and the Tertiary, * * * but I know of no evidence that the Laramie is such a passage-bed." Dr. Newberry maintains "the interlocking of the Laramie and Fox Hills formations from several localities." In the discussion Prof. Ward admits that the floras of the Fort Union beds and the Laramie of Colorado, Wyoming, and New Mexico "are not identical—they are very different," yet he maintains that there are eight or ten identical species; not one, as stated by Dr. Newberry. Further he says: "Whatever may be true in regard to a difference of age—and it seems to me that the two must go together—I am quite satisfied that a warmer climate prevailed during the period of the deposition of the Wyoming and Colorado beds than that which prevailed during the deposition of the Fort Union beds."

An important contribution to the structural relations of the Interior Eocene was presented at the same meeting by S. F. Emmons[3] in a paper on the "Orographic Movements in the Rocky Mountains."

The reader has doubtless observed that in the present chapter much more attention has been devoted to the Laramie and Puerco groups than to the later horizons. This has been rendered necessary on account of the wide difference of opinion that has existed among those who have studied these groups and the much more extensive literature that has resulted therefrom. Where there has been practical agreement as to the interpretation of facts simple reference to the articles of importance has been deemed sufficient. For the reasons cited the lit-

[1] Am. Assoc. Ad. Sci., Proc., vol. 38, 1889, pp. 205-226.
[2] Op. cit., p. 525.
[3] Geol. Soc. America, Bull. vol. 1, 1890, pp. 245-286.

erature of the Interior region has thus required fuller treatment than that of either the Atlantic and Gulf Coast or Pacific Coast regions.

STRATIGRAPHICAL AND PALEONTOLOGICAL CHARACTERISTICS.

GENERAL REMARKS.

From what has been stated in the previous pages, it is obvious that very diverse opinions have existed as to the delimitation of the Eocene of the Interior. Quite general unanimity prevails at the present time as to the position to be assigned to the boundary between the Eocene and the Neocene, while hardly two writers agree as to the line of demarcation between the Eocene and Cretaceous.

This wide divergence of opinion among those who have had opportunities for extensive observation may be found in the use of different classes of facts and in the investigation of different areas. In the case of many writers stratigraphical data alone have been employed in the consideration of the Eocene, while paleontological evidence has been for the most part ignored. Others, holding the stratigraphical relationship of the beds to be less important, essayed by the use of paleontological data to interpret the taxonomy of the deposits. Of the latter, two classes of investigators have been prominent, the one judging the evidence entirely from the standpoint of paleobotany, the other from that of vertebrate paleontology. As the development of the plants and animals in the Interior region has not been along the same parallel lines as in other areas, much confusion has resulted from an attempted correlation of the strata. By the vertebrate paleontologist much has been included within the Cretaceous that the paleobotanist has referred to the Eocene. Fortunately there appears, at the present time, a tendency to view the evidence in its entirety rather than to employ any single class of facts in determining the age of the various deposits.

The physical changes that took place during and subsequent to the formation of the Eocene deposits have so fully determined the character of the strata that a brief statement of the more important is imperative. For the elucidation of these points geology is indebted to Dr. White, and in the succeeding statement his ideas are largely followed.

Previous to the opening of the Eocene period an open sea had long prevailed over the western Interior region, in which a series of argillaceous and arenaceous sediments of great thickness had accumulated.

Throughout these deposits are found widely represented the typical marine forms of the Cretaceous.

With the elevation of physical barriers to the south the salt waters become brackish, the previous types of marine life could no longer maintain themselves within the area, and gave place to other forms better adapted to the changed habitat. Although the influence of these altered conditions is manifested in the aqueous fauna, the continental animal life of the previous age was able to maintain itself for a longer time.

dinosaurian types, characteristic of the Cretaceous, persisted till the close of the brackish-water period.

With the still further increase of the physical barriers the brackish-water conditions were changed to fresh water; in some cases the invertebrate forms continued their existence, but on account of unknown causes a marked change occurred in the vertebrate life. There was a sudden appearance of highly developed mammalian types that must have existed for a long time without the Interior region, and contemporaneously with the dinosaurian fauna within the area. Whether, as has been suggested, the disappearance of certain barriers to their migration suddenly admitted the mammalia that in the struggle for existence soon overcame the reptilian fauna that had continued here to a later date than elsewhere will probably never be solved, but the explanation given affords a good working hypothesis.

The great fresh-water lakes continued with successively diminished areas during the remainder of the Eocene period. With the advent of the Neocene an extensive region was again covered with fresh-water lakes which finally became drained in the orographic movements accompanying the elevation of the Rocky Mountains. A few salt lakes alone remain to mark their former extension.

During late Tertiary and post-Tertiary times the great elevation that the Interior region received has admitted of extensive denudation throughout the area covered by Eocene strata. This, added to the arid climatic conditions prevailing widely throughout the territory, has afforded advantages for geological investigations not to be found in either the Atlantic and Gulf Coast or Pacific Coast regions. Largely on account of these facts the stratigraphy of the Interior Eocene has been more accurately determined than that of either of the regions previously described. Accordingly, a consideration of the Eocene of the Interior under geographical limitations may be dispensed with and the formation discussed under its various subdivisions.

LARAMIE GROUP.

The strata of the Interior region, described under the name of the Laramie group, have been, for reasons already briefly cited, referred by some writers to the Cretaceous, by others to the Eocene. In the face of this conflicting evidence, and for reasons stated later, I have considered that the Laramie strata are to be referred partly to the one horizon, partly to the other.[1] As the investigation of the deposits has thus far failed to reveal any satisfactory evidence as to the exact position of the dividing line, the entire series will be briefly outlined.

The term Laramie was first employed by members of the U. S. Geological Exploration of the Fortieth Parallel, and finds expression in Vol. I, Systematic Geology (1878), and Vol. II, Descriptive Geology (1877) of the reports of that organization. It had already appeared on

[1] This position has already been taken by Dr. C. A. White in several of his published writings.

map 1 of the atlas, which was distributed in 1875. Hitherto the name Lignitic group, early proposed by Dr. Hayden, had been the generally accepted taxonomic term, though certain lignitic deposits, not correlated with that formation, had, at the same time, received local names from the place of their occurrence. The Judith River beds, the Fort Union beds, the Bear River Estuary beds, etc., had been thus designated by different writers and referred to various horizons in the geologic column. The term post-Cretaceous, suggested by Dr. White,[1] found acceptance for a time, but has been now for the most part abandoned, as it soon was by himself.

The territory in which the Laramie group is represented covers a wide area along the eastern flank of the Rocky Mountains, extending from the region of its typical development in Wyoming and Colorado northward across Montana into Canada, and southward across New Mexico and Texas into Mexico. From the Rocky Mountains it extends eastward to the Great Plains. To the west of the Rocky Mountains it is found somewhat less widely represented, occuring in Wyoming, Utah, Colorado, and New Mexico.

The deposits are chiefly sandstones, shales, and lignites. King has estimated the thickness of the strata on the eastern flank of the Rocky Mountains in Colorado at 1,500 feet, while in southwestern Wyoming the same observer has placed the thickness at 5,000 feet.

Over wide areas the strata lie approximately horizontal, though due to the great orographic movements that have taken place in the Interior region the beds are often highly tilted. The Laramie is found resting conformably upon the next older or Fox Hill group, of whose Cretaceous age no doubts have been expressed. Overlying the Laramie conformably at some points, though unconformably at others, is the Wasatch group, of whose Eocene age similar unanimity of opinion is found. The question that presents itself then is whether the Laramie is to be placed with the Cretaceous on the one side or with the Eocene on the other of the Mesozoic-Cenozoic dividing line.

We have found that the evidence presented by vertebrate paleontology unhestitatingly points to the Cretaceous, from the presence of Dinosauria, which elsewhere are not found later than the closing epoch of the Mesozoic. In fact the uppermost beds of the lignitic series have afforded dinosaurian remains. Cope, however, holds to the term "post-Cretacic" for the Laramie and Puerco groups, thus conceding a later age to the lignitic series of the West than many vertebrate paleontologists.

The weight of authority of the paleobotanists has afforded the chief support to the Eocene position. The types of plant life are decidedly late and several are identical or closely allied to living forms. Moreover, the Tertiary floras of other parts of the world are closely parallel to that of the Laramie. So late is the general aspect of the flora that

[1] U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Territories, Bull., vol. 3, 1877, p. 608

many, including so distinguished a paleobotanist as Heer, have held the deposits to be Miocene.

The evidence afforded by invertebrate paleontology, upon which so great confidence is usually placed for purposes of correlation, is of little value. The conditions that obtained during the accumulation of the brackish-water Laramie deposits were such as to greatly change the invertebrate fauna that had hitherto found a peculiarly favorable habitat in the marine waters of pre-Laramie time. It seems not improbable that outside the barriers of the Laramie sea the marine forms still continued for a time their existence contemporaneously with the brackish-water species. The latter, on the other hand, ceased to exist as the waters became fresh, though in certain areas brackish and fresh water conditions prevailed at the same time, so that the fresh-water species of the Laramie continued their existence into the Wasatch period. The brackish-water types of the Laramie are not distinctive of the age of the deposits. The Cretaceous character of the marine invertebrates of the previous period has never been doubted, while the fresh-water forms of the succeeding period have been for the most part considered Tertiary. The brackish-water species might be either Cretaceous or Eocene, and are doubtless both.

As to the supposed incongruity of evidence afforded by the vertebrates and plants, it seems most fully to coincide with the present method of geological reasoning to suppose that the conditions were favorable for the continued existence of the Mesozoic dinosaurian forms to a later period here than in other areas. The supposition that has been advanced that physical barriers precluded the entrance into the area of the mammalian fauna, that from its highly developed state in the succeeding period must have, before the close of the Laramie, commenced its existence outside, seems fully to accord with the facts. That the plants may have here presented forms that have elsewhere not been known till a later epoch is not improbable when we consider that the development of fossil faunas and floras have not been in many other portions of the globe always along identical lines.

From the evidence above presented there seems no incongruity in supposing that in the Laramie group we have represented the closing events of Cretaceous and the opening epoch of the Eocene.

Concerning the approximately synchronous age of most of the lignitic strata of the Interior region, there is a rather general agreement of opinion. However, the lignitic strata of certain local areas, although held by many geologists to be identical with the typical Laramie, are by others thought to be of widely different age. Among these local deposits, in regard to which considerable discussion has hitherto taken place, may be mentioned the Fort Union beds of Montana, the Bear River Estuary beds of Utah, the Arapaho and Denver beds of Colorado.

FORT UNION BEDS.

The deposits in the vicinity of Fort Union, on the Missouri River, were the first lignitic strata to be scientifically examined, having been, before 1860, explored by Dr. Hayden. During the progress of the U. S. Geological and Geographical Survey of the Territories frequent investigations of the region were made and the results published in the various reports of that organization.

Although the same discussions as to the Cretaceous or Tertiary age of the deposits have been maintained here as in the more southern representatives of the Laramie, there has been a much more general willingness to concede the Tertiary age of the former than of the latter. Prof. Ward,[1] it is true, states that there would be "no inconsistency in assigning to the Fort Union an age as ancient as the closing period of the Cretaceous system." Prof. Newberry,[2] who has for many years studied the Laramie and Fort Union floras, thinks that the two formations should be referred to different horizons, the former to the Cretaceous, the latter to the Tertiary. He says:

> The Fort Union flora may be distinguished from that of the Laramie at a glance by its abundant species of Viburnum, Populus, Platanus, and Corylus, and it includes several species now living, such as *Onoclea sensibilis*, *Taxodium distichum*, and two hazels which can not be distinguished by their leaves from *Corylus rostrata* and *C. Americana*.

Prof. Ward, discussing these statements of Dr. Newberry, says "that although the difference in flora exists," yet the Laramie and Fort Union "must go together," and offers in explanation "that possibly the latitude, taken in connection with a different topography, such as may have existed in the two regions, might account for the great difference in the floras." Prof. Ward further gives a list of 8 identical species from the Laramie and Fort Union groups. Dr. White, from a study of the molluscan fauna, likewise asserts the identity of the Fort Union beds with the Laramie group.

BEAR RIVER ESTUARY BEDS.

The lignitic strata upon the Bear River in western Wyoming and northwestern Utah have greatly puzzled the stratigraphical geologist and paleontologist. The deposits are unconformably overlain by the strata of the Wasatch group, while the fossils show little similarity with those of the typical Laramie from other regions. From what is known of the beds, their position, if they are to be assigned to the Laramie at all, is undoubtedly low down in the series. They will probably be found to be of earlier age.

ARAPAHO BEDS.

The stratigraphical relations of the Arapaho beds, so named from Arapaho County in eastern-central Colorado, where the formation is

[1] Geol. Soc. America, Bull., vol. 1, 1890, p. 530. [2] Ibid., pp. 524–527.

best exhibited, have been investigated by Mr. George H. Eldridge,[1] of the U. S. Geological Survey.

The strata of this horizon are confined to a comparatively small area on the eastern flanks of the Rocky Mountains in the vicinity of Denver. The formation "is composed of a basal member of conglomerate, or gritty sandstone, according to its distance from the foot-hills, with an overlying zone of gray argillaceous or arenaceous shales containing lenticular masses of hard quartzose sandstone with an occasional ironstone; where confined between under and overlying groups, it has a thickness varying between 600 and 1,200 feet. The conglomerate at its base has a thickness over a greater portion of the field of about 200 feet, though this may become the bulk of the formation, as in its type locality, or may decrease to the merest edge, as at its northern limit. It is extremely characteristic, containing as it does pebbles derived from every formation that lies below it in the Denver field, but also from others lying far beyond, especially the Carboniferous." Although the angle of dip is not materially different from the Laramie in some localities, "it is not uncommon to meet with the younger formation resting in the eroding hollows of the older, and containing rolled clays, ironstones, and pieces of sandstone evidently derived from the underlying beds."

The Arapaho beds have afforded dinosaurian remains that show their paleontological affinity to the true Laramie, with which they have generally been confounded.

The marked stratigraphical separation above cited, together with the fact that the fossils, hitherto relied upon to associate this and the succeeding group with the Laramie, have been collected without reference to the horizons represented, afford us no definite evidence that the Arapho formation should be allied directly with the Laramie. When careful collections are made from the different horizons of what in the past has been termed Laramie, wider differences in fauna and flora may be shown to exist than have hitherto been recognized.

Whether the Arapaho group then should be considered as representing a later epoch in the Laramie proper or separated entirely from it is a matter of considerable doubt.

DENVER BEDS.

The Denver beds, so called by Dr. Whitman Cross,[2] are confined to a limited area in the vicinity of Denver, Colorado, where they are found to occupy a basin within the Arapaho formation.

The strata are composed very largely of andesitic materials in which both basic and acid types appear. In general the lower beds of the group are fine grained though very variable in texture, while the upper are represented by coarse conglomerates in which a considerable admixture of materials derived from the Archean and sedimentary rocks is found.

[1] Colorado Sci. Soc., Proc., vol. 3, pt. 1, pp. 97, 98, 100–102, 1888.
[2] Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 37, 1889, pp. 261–282.

In explaining the origin of these andesitic materials Dr. Cross[1] says:

There is no known source which can be assigned with plausibility for any one of the many andesitic types represented in the Denver strata. * * * The andesitic masses which furnished the materials for the lower part of the Denver sediments were so situated as to effectually prevent the access of all Archean and sedimentary débris to the lake of that epoch. That is to say, in the interval between the Arapaho and Denver epochs there was an outpouring of andesitic lavas completely covering the Archean and sedimentary rocks of the area afterward contiguous to the Denver lake. When sedimentation began again only eruptive débris could appear in the deposits until erosion and general degradation had laid bare, here and there, small areas of granite, of gneiss or of sandstone.

Within these deposits is found an extensive fossil flora the true character of which is but imperfectly known. Hitherto the specimens collected from this formation have not been separated from those obtained from the underlying Laramie deposits, so that great confusion prevails. So far as they can be distinguished, many forms not found elsewhere occur.

In the vertebrate fauna the presence of Dinosaurs is interesting, showing that they were able to "survive the changes of condition attending a period of folding and another period of great volcanic activity."

The same difficulty in an attempted correlation of the Denver beds is found as in that of the Arapaho beds.

MIDDLE PARK BEDS.

An occurrence in many particulars similar to the Denver formation is to be found in Middle Park, Colorado, where a series of andesitic breccias and conglomerates, with interstratified sands bearing plant remains, rests unconformably upon the Cretaceous. This series is estimated by Marvine[2] to reach 800 or 900 feet in maximum thickness. Overlying the andesitic beds are sandy shales, sandstones, and grits, chiefly of granitic origin, that in places are found unconformably resting upon the Cretaceous. Seams of lignitic material and numerous fossil leaves are found scattered through the series.

PUERCO BEDS.

The Puerco beds, first described by Cope[3] in the Annual Report of the U. S. Geographical Surveys west of the One Hundredth Meridian for 1875, were long considered by that writer to belong to the Tertiary, although later referred to the "post-Cretaceous." Endlich[4] regarded the beds as a subdivision of the Wasatch.

The geographical extent of the Puerco is limited to northwestern New Mexico and southwestern Colorado, where it is found resting upon the Laramie and in turn overlain by the Wasatch.

---

[1] Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 37, 1889, p. 271.
[2] U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Ann. Rep. for 1873, p. 156.
[3] Ann. Rep. of the Chief of Engineers for 1875, appendix 44, p. 89.
[4] U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Territories, Ann. Rep. for 1875, p. 189.

Lithologically it is characterized by sandstones and gray and green marls, the latter soapy in texture and giving a highly characteristic appearance to the country. At the point of its typical development, at the headwaters of the Puerco River, west of the Jemez and Nacimiento Mountains, in New Mexico, it reaches a thickness of outcrop of about 850 feet.[1]

Cope[2] thus characterizes the faunal relations of the beds:

> The fauna of this horizon is well distinguished from that of the Laramie in the absence of the numerous Dinosauria of the latter, and the presence of numerous Placental Mammalia in the former. On these grounds I at first referred the formation to the Cenozoic series, but further reflection induced me to place it as now arranged. The reason is as follows: Although Placental Mammalia are not known otherwise from the Mesozoic beds, the other forms of the Puerco are especially Mesozoic in character. Such are the Choristodere Reptilia and the Multituberculate Marsupialia, neither of which occur above, while both occur below the Puerco, the Multituberculata down to the Trias, inclusive. Then the Placentialia are entirely peculiar in the absence of the Diplarthra and of the Rodentia, orders always found in the Cenozoic beds. Then the characters of the Condylarthra and Amblypoda and many of the Creodonta, which represent Tertiary types, are so peculiar that we are led to suspect that where the Cretacic Mammalia are fully known they can not differ widely from those of the Puerco.

Concerning the stratigraphical position of this unique formation Dr. White[3] says:

> The lowest strata in which the remains of this fauna have yet been found closely coincide in position with the top of the Laramie group; and they disappear suddenly upon a certain higher horizon which seems to come within the basal portion of the Wasatch group. Moreover, the known area within which this Puerco fauna has been found is only a small part of that within which the Laramie and the Wasatch groups occur. That is, the Puerco fauna has not been recognized at the majority of the localities where the Wasatch has been found overlying the Laramie. In some of the latter cases the two formations have been found to be clearly connected, not only by strict conformity of the strata, but also by an intermingling of their molluscan faunas; and in none of them has any indications of a missing formation been observed.

It will thus be observed that the relations of the Puerco beds to the Laramie and Wasatch in the area where represented is peculiar and "appears to mark an epoch in the history of vertebrate life of North America of which the invertebrate and plant remains, and the stratigraphical conditions of the series of deposits in which they occur, give no indication."

Whether the Puerco beds should be considered Cretaceous or Tertiary the evidence is as yet inconclusive, though it seems probable that they should be referred to the latter. If the upper portion of the Laramie may be considered such, the Puerco beds would necessarily be so interpreted, unless, perchance, they do not rest upon the latest horizon of the Laramie.

---

[1] Am. Nat., vol. 19, 1885, p. 985.
[2] Ibid., vol. 21, 1887, pp. 450, 451.
[3] Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 33, 1887, p. 368.

WASATCH GROUP.

The Wasatch group, so called from the Wasatch Mountains of Utah, upon the flanks of which deposits of this age are extensively developed, is fully characterized by Dr. Hayden in the various Annual Reports of the Geological Survey of the Territories. It is described by the members of the U. S. Geological Exploration of the Fortieth Parallel under the name of the Vermilion Creek group. The former term is, however, generally employed and is here retained by the writer.

The strata are found in four chief areas.

The region of southwestern Wyoming and northwestern Utah has been most extensively explored and consists of reddish sandstones and marls that according to King reach 5,000 to 5,500 feet in thickness.

In northwestern New Mexico a considerable tract of similar strata has been described by Cope, who estimates the thickness of the beds at 2,500 feet.

Intermediate between these two areas in the San Pete Valley of central Utah Dr. White has further determined the presence of Wasatch strata with a varied fresh-water molluscan fauna.

In northwestern Wyoming, also, the Wasatch group has been identified and the beds estimated to reach 4,000 feet in thickness.

The Wasatch strata throughout much of their extent are conformable to the Laramie, but in western Wyoming and eastern Utah a marked unconformity is exhibited. As previously mentioned, the taxonomic position of the lignitic beds of the Bear River area is doubtful, so the existing unconformity may possess less interest when the deposits are more fully comprehended. The stratigraphical relations of the Wasatch and Laramie have been differently interpreted by White[1] and King,[2] the former considering that deposition was in part continuous during the Laramie and Wasatch periods, the latter that it was wholly interrupted.

The fauna of the Wasatch presents a varied series of invertebrate forms, chiefly molluscan in character, and of a typical fresh-water habitus. Some few are identical with species found in the fresh-water strata of the Laramie and others are found to persist into the later horizons of the Eocene. The vertebrate fauna is chiefly mammalian, and from the prevalence of the genus Coryphodon, Marsh has designated the Wasatch group the Coryphodon beds.

Cope[3] in characterizing the vertebrate life of the Wasatch states that it is marked by the "presence of Tæniodonta, Condylarthra, and Pantodonta. Absence of Tillodonta, Dinocerata, Palæosyops, Hyrachyus, Amynodon, Achænodon, Trilpopus, and suilline and selenodont Artiodactyla."

---

[1] U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Tenth Ann. Rept. for 1876, p. 35.

[2] U. S. Geol. Expl., 40th Parallel, vol. 1, Systematic Geology, 1878, p. 353 et seq.

[3] Am. Geologist, vol. 2, 1888, p. 287.

GREEN RIVER GROUP.

The Green River shales have a much more contracted range than the deposits of the previous group and are confined in their typical development to the basin of the Green River in southwestern Wyoming and western Colorado. Here they reach a thickness of about 2,000 feet, and consist "of calcareous sands and slightly siliceous limestones which are overlaid by remarkable fissile calcareous shales."[1] The lower member is about 800 feet in thickness, the upper 1,200 feet. The coarse materials of the preceding period are not present, and in general the sedimentation denotes deep and quiet water. According to King the deposits rest unconformably upon the Wasatch.[2]

The fauna of the Green River group has quite a different character from that of the preceding or succeeding horizons, and consists chiefly of fishes, insects, and mollusks. The molluscan forms predominate in the lower division, while the fishes and insects are confined to the upper member of the series. A common molluscan genus is the Goniobasis that ranges widely throughout the Eocene. The vertebrate fauna, represented by vast numbers of very perfectly preserved individuals of a few species of fishes is, according to Marsh, characterized by the genus Heliobatis, and for that reason the Green River shales are designated in his classification as the Heliobatis beds. The fish-bearing strata contain numerous remains of insects. The types of fish are characteristically Eocene, and in the case of several genera begin to appear in the Wasatch, while two genera range from the latter into the Bridger.

WIND RIVER GROUP.

Although the beds occupying the upper basin of the Wind River and described by Hayden as the Wind River group in the various publications of the U. S. Geological Survey of the Territories do not afford, upon stratigraphical grounds, a basis for a satisfactory correlation with any of the divisions of the southwestern Wyoming area, yet for reasons to be presently mentioned it is generally conceded that the Wind River group represents the Green River group, although Scott[3] would consider it Lower Bridger in age.

Hayden states that the deposits consist of "light gray and ash-colored sandstones, with more or less argillaceous layers," and that "the strata are most beautifully variegated with various shades of pink or brick-red color, so that they sometimes remind one of the Jura-Trias red beds." The deposits extend along the Wind River basin about 100 miles, and are from 1 to 5 miles in width. The aggregate thickness of the strata is estimated at 1,000 feet or more.

Cope[4] states that "the vertebrate fauna consists of the mammalian

[1] U. S. Geol. Expl. 40th Parallel, vol. 1, Systematic Geology, 1878, p. 380.
[2] Ibid., p. 377.
[3] Am. Phil. Soc., Trans., vol. 16, 1889, p. 465.
[4] Am. Geologist, vol. 2, 1888, p. 287.

types Condylarthra, Tæniodonta, Pantodonta, Dinocerata, Palæosyops, and Hyrachyus." He further says:

This fauna indicates the transition between the Wasatch and Bridger, since types are here associated which are elsewhere peculiar to the two horizons named. Thus of the above zoological divisions the following are exclusively Wasatch, Tæniodonta and Pantodonta. The remaining ones are Bridger, excepting the Condylarthra, which probably occur in both Bridger and Wasatch.

Upon paleontological grounds, then, the Wind River group occupies a position intermediate between the Wasatch and Bridger groups of the southwestern Wyoming section, and may be considered the representative of the Green River group.

MANTI BEDS.

In Sevier and San Pete Counties, in eastern Utah, calcareous shales somewhat similar to the Green River strata in lithological character, and known as the Manti beds, are found. The vertebrate fauna is different, although Crocodilus and Clastes occur, forms which are represented in deposits that are found both above and below the Green River group. The Manti beds are generally considered of Green River age. They have been described at length by Prof. Cope.[1]

AMYZON BEDS.

Under the name of the Amyzon beds Cope[2] includes deposits at Osino and Elko, Nevada, South Park, Colorado, and in central Oregon. As to the taxonomic position of the beds he expresses doubt, though he considers that they are probably late Eocene or early Miocene.

King[3] considers the Nevada strata of identical age with the Green River group and has so described and mapped them.

There are no species identical with Green River forms, although Trichophanes is reported by Cope to be closely allied to Amphiplaga of the Green River group. On the other hand Amyzon and Trichophanes, which occur in Nevada, are also found at South Park, Colorado, together with Rhincaster and Amia, neither of which appear in the Green River group.

The beds at Florissant, Colorado, have been investigated by Peale and Scudder,[4] the latter of whom has described the remarkable insect fauna that the beds contain. The strata consist of shales and sandstones and were deposited in a lake basin of limited area.

BRIDGER GROUP.

The deposits of the Bridger group are found chiefly in southwestern Wyoming, on the northern flanks of the Uinta Mountains, and on both

[1] Am. Phil. Soc., Proc., 1880, vol. 19, p. 6; Am. Nat., vol. 14, 1880, pp. 303, 304; Am. Nat., vol. 21, 1887, p. 453.

[2] Am. Nat., vol. 13, 1879; p. 332, Am. Phil. Soc., Proc., vol. 19, 1880, p. 61.

[3] U. S. Geol. Expl. 40th Parallel, vol. 1, Systematic Geology, 1878, p. 393.

[4] U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Bull., vol. 6, pp. 279–300, and Twelfth Ann. Rept. for 1878, 1883, pp. 271–293.

the east and west banks of the Green River. To the east of this region the strata appear also in portions of western Colorado. The larger area, to the west of the Green River, has been termed the Bridger Basin; the smaller, to the east, the Washakie Basin. Both by Hayden and Scott the deposits of these two "basins" are considered to represent different horizons of the Bridger proper, and Hayden not infrequently speaks of the Bridger and Washakie as separate formations. Scott[1] says that but few vertebrate forms are common to the two areas. He considers the types of the Washakie Basin younger than those of the Bridger Basin, since the former area affords forms more closely allied to the Uinta fauna.

King states that the stratigraphical relations of the Bridger and Green River are with difficulty made out, though he thinks the "evidence is in favor of a true nonconformity."[2]

The deposits consist largely of sands and clays, with frequent layers of chert and limestone. King estimates the thickness of the formation in the Bridger Basin at 2,500 feet and Cope that in the Washakie Basin at 1,200 feet. A very rich vertebrate fauna is found in which the mammalian genus Dinoceras is held by Marsh to be the most characteristic. He has designated the Bridger group as the Dinoceras beds on that account.

Of the molluscan types Unio, Planorbis, Goniobasis, and Viviparus are the most common, and according to Dr. White "correspond closely with those of the Green River, some of the species being common to both, all indicating a purely fresh-water condition of the waters in which the strata of both groups were deposited." Remains of birds, reptiles, and fish in considerable numbers are also found in the deposits.[3] Cope states that the Bridger is characterized by the "presence of Tillodonta, Condylarthra and Dinocerata, Hyrachyus, Palæosyops, Amynodon, Triplopus, and Achænodon, absence of Tæniodonta, Pantodonta, and selenodent Artiodactyla."

HUERFANO BEDS.

On the eastern side of the Rocky Mountains, in Huerfano and Las Animas Counties, Colorado, an extensive series of Eocene deposits have been found resting unconformably upon strata of the Laramie and Colorado groups and containing vertebrate fossils (Tillotherium, Hyrachyus, Glyptosaurus, Palæosyops) that point to the equivalence of the beds with the Bridger group of southwestern Wyoming. The strata attain great thickness and their character is shown in the following section by Hills:[4]

[1] Am. Phil. Soc., Trans., vol. 16, 1889, pp. 464, 465.
[2] U. S. Geol. Expl. 40th Parallel, vol. 1, Systematic Geology, 1878, p. 395.
[3] Am. Geologist, vol. 2, 1888, p. 288.
[4] Colorado Sci. Soc., Proc., vol. 3, pt. 2, 1889, p. 218.

	Feet.
Marls, clays, soft shales, and sands, of red, gray, yellow, green and purple colors, red predominating	3,300
Pink and white massive sandstone	300
Soft sandstones and fine conglomerates of a yellowish tint, with occasional bands of yellow clay or marl	3,500

The discovery of fossils has hitherto been limited to the upper division of the series.[1] The beds have been folded and in the vicinity of Spanish Peaks extensively altered "by proximity to the laccolithic mass of the mountains and by the numerous radiating dikes."

UINTA GROUP.

The Uinta group, so named by King,[2] is known only from the northern and southern flanks of the Uinta Mountains, in northern Utah and southern Wyoming. It has been called the Brown's Park group by Powell.[3]

According to Dr. White the strata are unconformable to the other Tertiary beds, and—

it is possible that this group was deposited continuously, at least in part, with the Bridger group, but at the places where the junction between the two groups has been seen in this region there is an evident unconformity, both of displacement and erosion. The group consists of fine and coarse sandstones, with frequent layers of gravel, and occasionally both cherty and calcareous layers occur. The sandstones are sometimes firm and regularly bedded, and sometimes soft and partaking of the character of bad-land material. The color varies from gray to dull reddish brown, the former prevailing north of the Uinta Mountains and the latter south of them. The only invertebrate fossils that have been known to be discovered in the strata of this group are some specimens of Physa very like a recent species. Therefore, invertebrate paleontology has furnished no evidence of its assumed Tertiary age and lacustrine condition of its deposition. Its fresh-water origin, however, seems unquestionable, because of its intracontinental position, its limited extent, and the fact that none but fresh-water deposits are known in this part of the continent that are of later date than the close of the Laramie period.[4]

From the presence of the characteristic mammalian genus Diplacodon the strata have been called by Marsh the Diplacodon beds.

According to Cope its vertebrate fauna is characterized by the "presence of Amynodon and selenodont Artiodactyla; absence of Pantodonta and Dinocerata (Scott)."

Scott[5] says that the mammalian types of the Uinta are closely related to those of the Washakie Basin of the Bridger group.

---

[1] In a more recent publication Hills (Abstract Colorado Sci. Soc., Proc., Feb. 17, 1891) reclassifies the Huerfano beds as follows:

Huerfano series (Eocene)	Huerfano beds.	=	Bridger group.
	Cuchara beds.	}	Lower Eocene.
	Poison Cañon beds.		

[2] U. S. Geol. Expl. 40th parallel, vol. 1, Systematic Geology, 1878, pp. 405–407.

[3] U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, II Div., Geology of the Uinta Mts., 1876, pp. 62, 63.

[4] U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Tenth Ann. Rept., for 1876, pp. 37, 38.

[5] Am. Phil. Soc., Trans., vol. 16, 1889, pp. 466–468.

SUMMARY OF CORRELATIVE EVIDENCE.

The limits assigned to the Eocene of the Interior and the different divisions that have been established for it have been presented in the previous pages.

When the attempt is made, however, to correlate the various horizons of the Interior Eocene with the divisions of that series elsewhere recognized, we have but little to guide us. The conditions under which the deposits were here accumulated afford no parallel in any portion of the earth's surface investigated up to this time. Great inland basins that changed from brackish water to fresh water during this epoch supported an aqueous fauna that presents almost no points of comparison with the fauna of other regions. The vertebrate animal and plant life, although affording unequivocal proof of the Eocene age of the strata from the Wasatch on, does not give grounds for more detailed correlation.

The Laramie has afforded a few plant forms that by Newberry, Lesquereux, and Ward have been shown to be identical or closely related to types recognized in the Puget group of the Pacific Coast and the Lignitic of the Gulf border; but when so little is known of the plant remains of the American Eocene, or even with certainty of the geological range of plant species in general, correlations based upon such evidence can have but little value. That the upper portions of the Laramie may represent a part at least of the Lignitic of the Gulf border and thus the Lower Eocene, as established for the Atlantic and Gulf Coast region, has been advanced by Dr. White, and, as it seems to the writer, upon good grounds. Further correlation of the various members of the Interior Eocene with divisions elsewhere established is at present impossible.

From a stratigraphical standpoint it has been customary to place the Wasatch group in the Lower Eocene; the Green River and Wind River groups, which are considered equivalent to one another, in the Middle Eocene, and the Bridger and Uinta groups, which occur in stratigraphical sequence, in the Upper Eocene. There is no evidence, however, that these divisions are equivalent to those similarly named in the Atlantic and Gulf Coast region.

The Wasatch, Green River, Bridger, and Uinta groups, which occur in stratigraphical sequence in the Green River Basin, may be said to afford the typical Eocene series of the Interior, though it is doubtful whether deposition was continuous throughout the time of their accumulation. The isolated occurrences of fresh-water Eocene elsewhere are interpreted generally by comparison with the southern Wyoming section; still direct parallelism can not always be established.

The evidence for referring the upper portions of the Laramie to the Eocene has been already mentioned. What proportion of Eocene time this horizon of the Laramie should be held to represent can not be

definitely stated, but that an appreciable amount should be so included seems probable.

Overlying the Laramie, in northern New Mexico, are the Puerco beds, that, both from their stratigraphical position and fossil remains, since they lie above the Laramie and below the Wasatch and contain types of life that point to their Tertiary affinity, have been placed in the Lower Eocene. Whether they rest upon the latest horizon of the Laramie or reach to or beyond the base of the Wasatch in other areas is an open question. The supposed break between the two is represented in the accompanying table as bridged over by the Puerco beds.

The Arapaho beds are found resting unconformably upon the Laramie, but there is no evidence that it is the top of that formation elsewhere exposed. In fact the Arapaho itself has been hitherto called Laramie. Certainly the faunal relations of the Arapaho and the overlying Denver beds point to their close affinity with the Laramie, though the structural relations of the deposits of these several horizons show a wide hiatus between them in the area of their occurrence. It seems probable that the Arapaho and Denver beds should be placed in the Lower Eocene, and doubtless below the base of the Wasatch group, since the life indicates an earlier period.

A large part of the Lower Eocene is supposed to be represented in the Wasatch group. The fauna was in a marked degree different from that of the preceding period and the conditions must have altogether changed to have admitted of its existence.

The Green River group is placed as the representative of the Middle Eocene. Correlated with this is the Wind River group, whose contemporaneity it is impossible to show, since the stratigraphical relations of the deposits to the Wasatch and Bridger of the Green River Basin are unknown. The fauna, however, affords forms which show the intermediate position of the Wind River group between the Wasatch and Bridger, and thus in part, at least, its place as the representative of the Green River group. The limits of the two horizons may not be identical.

The Amyzon and Manti beds each afford a fauna that points to their dentity with the Green River group. The evidence presented admits, however, of only the most general comparisons, since but few identical forms have been recognized.

The Bridger and Uinta groups, which are found in superposition, have been referred to the Upper Eocene.

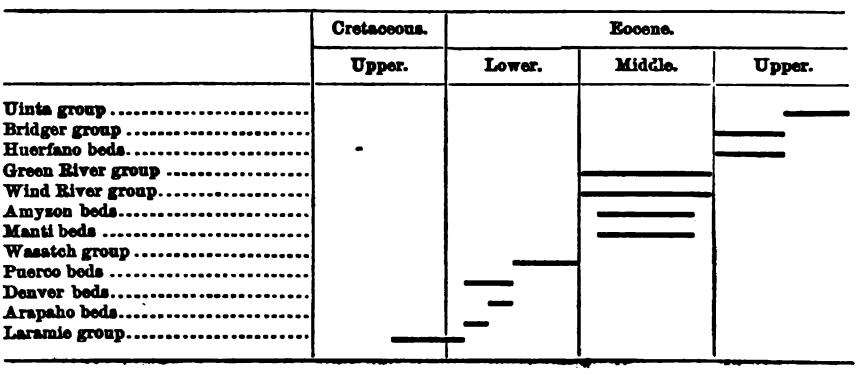
East of the Rocky Mountains a small area in southern Colorado presents a series of deposits that have been called the Huerfano beds, in which vertebrate types similar to those afforded by the Bridger group of the Green River Basin have been found.

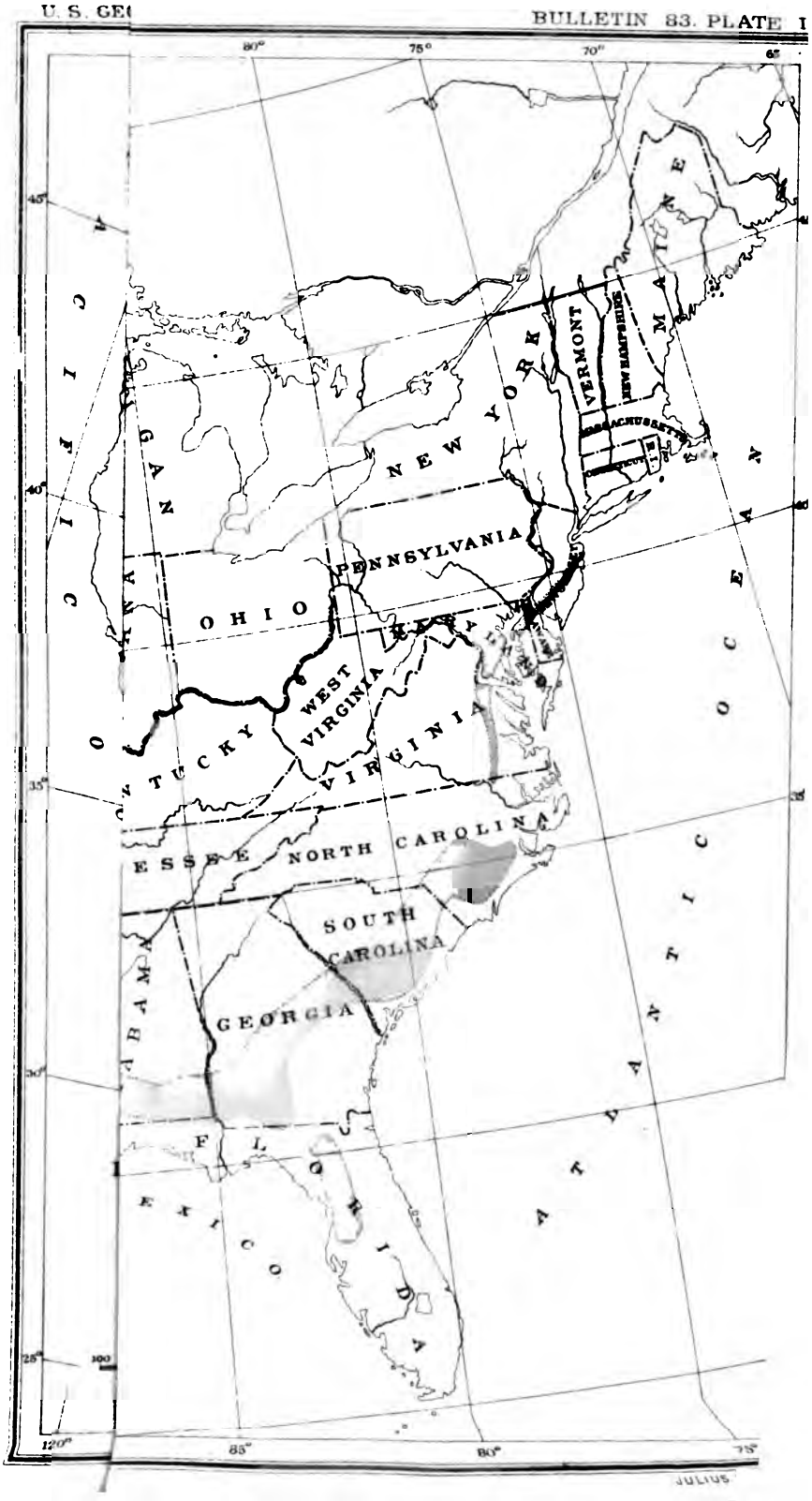
Many isolated occurrences of fresh water deposits throughout the Rocky Mountain area have been referred to the Tertiary, but as evi-

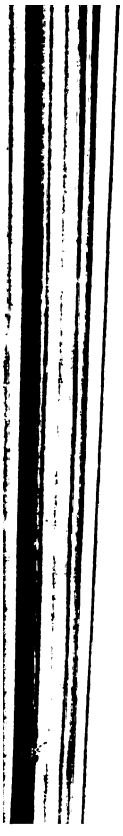
dence is lacking to prove their Eocene age, reference to them is omitted here.

A table is given below in which the approximate position of the deposits just mentioned in the Eocene series is presented. The lines do not indicate the relative thickness of the beds, but rather the proportionate part of Eocene time that may be tentatively assigned for their accumulation.

Table showing the relative position of the Interior deposits in the Eocene series.




80°
75°
70°
65°
45°
40°
35°
30°
25°
120°
85°
80°
75°
100
VERMONT
NEW HAMPSHIRE
MASSACHUSETTS
NEW YORK
PENNSYLVANIA
OHIO
WEST VIRGINIA
VIRGINIA
NORTH CAROLINA
SOUTH CAROLINA
GEORGIA
FLORIDA
ATLANTIC OCEAN
JULIUS



EXPLANATION OF THE MAP.

The Eocene area designated upon the map embraces the extreme limits of outcrop of the deposits of that horizon and not necessarily continuous exposure. More recent deposits frequently cover much of the surface, the Eocene outcropping only along the deeper river channels.

In the Interior region the Laramie is omitted on account of the difficulty of separating that portion to be referred to the Cretaceous, which in extent probably greatly exceeds that belonging to the Eocene.

Any adequate representation of the Eocene of the Pacific coast is wholly out of the question on account of the lack of available information. The limits of the areas designated are unknown.

BIBLIOGRAPHY.[1]

ATLANTIC AND GULF-COAST REGION.

AGASSIZ, L. [Age of Millstone Grit of Georgia.] Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 2, 1846, p. 193.

AKERLY, S. An Essay on the Geology of the Hudson River and the Adjacent Regions; Illustrated by a Geological Section of the Country, from the Neighborhood of Sandy Hook, in New Jersey, northward through the Highlands in New York, toward the Catskill Mountains. New York, 1820, 12 mo. 69 pp. and one plate.

ALDRICH, T. H. Observations upon the Tertiary of Alabama. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 30, 1885, pp. 300–308.

—— Notes on the Tertiary of Alabama and Mississippi, with Descriptions of New Species. Cincinnati Soc. Nat. Hist., Jour., vol. 8, 1885, pp. 145–153.

—— Notes on the Distribution of Tertiary Fossils in Alabama and Mississippi. Cincinnati Soc. Nat. Hist., Jour., vol 8, 1886, pp. 256, 257.

—— and MEYER, O. The Tertiary fauna of Newton and Wautubbee, Miss. Cincinnati Soc. Nat. Hist., Jour., 1886, vol. 9, No. 2, pp. 40–50.

BOOTH, J. C. Memoir of the Geological Survey of the State of Delaware; including the application of the geological observations to Agriculture. Dover, 1841, 8vo, XI and 188 pp.

BUCKLEY, S. B. Notice of the Discovery of a nearly complete Skeleton of the Zygodon of Owen (Basilosaurus of Harlan) in Alabama. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 44, 1843, pp. 409–412.

—— On the Zeuglodon Remains of Alabama. Am. Jour. Sci., 1846, 2d ser., vol. 2, pp. 125–131.

CAMPBELL, J. L. and H. D. William B. Rogers's Geology of the Virginias. A Review. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 30, 1885, pp. 357–374; vol. 31, 1886, pp. 193–202.

CLARK, W. B. On the Tertiary Deposits of the Cape Fear River Region. Geol. Soc. America, Bull., vol. 1, 1890, pp. 537–540.

—— Third Annual Geological Expedition into southern Maryland and Virginia. Johns Hopkins University Circulars, vol. 9, 1890, pp. 69–71.

—— Report of the Scientific Expedition into Southern Maryland. Johns Hopkins University Circulars, vol. 10, 1891, pp. 105–108.

CONRAD, T. A. On the Geology and Organic Remains of a part of the Peninsula of Maryland. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Jour., vol. 6, 1830, pp. 205–217.

—— Fossil Shells of the Tertiary Formations of North America. Philadelphia, 1832, 8vo, vol. 1, 56 pp. 16 pls.

—— Observations on the Tertiary and more recent formations of a portion of the Southern States. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Jour., vol. 47, 1834, pp. 116–129.

—— Observations on a portion of the Atlantic Tertiary Region. Pennsylvania Geol. Soc., Trans., vol. 1, 1835, pp. 335–341, pl. 13.

—— Observations on the Tertiary Strata of the Atlantic Coast. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 28, 1835, pp. 104–111.

—— Fossils of the Tertiary Formations of the United States. Philadelphia, 1838, 8vo, 89 pp. and 49 plates.

—— Notes on American Geology. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 35, 1839, p. 237–251.

—— On the Silurian System, with a Table of the Strata and Characteristic Fossils. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 38, 1840, pp. 86–93.

—— On the geognostic position of the Zeuglodon, or Basilosaurus of Harlan. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 38, 1840, pp. 381–382.

—— Observations on a portion of the Atlantic Tertiary Region, with a Description of New Species of Organic Remains. Nat. Inst. Prom. Sci., Proc., Second Bull., 1842, pp. 171–194.

[1] The works included in the bibliographic list are but a small portion of those examined in the preparation of the essay. Articles of a strictly paleontological character when unaccompanied by stratigraphical references, as well as those which have only a historical value, are for the most part omitted.

CONRAD, T. A. Observations on the Eocene formation of the United States, with descriptions of species of shells, etc., occurring in it. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 1, 1846, pp. 209–220, 395–405, pls. 1–4.
—— Observations on the Geology of a part of East Florida, etc. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 2, 1846, pp. 36–48.
—— Tertiary of Warren County, Mississippi. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 2, 1846, pp. 124, 125.
—— Eocene Formation of the Walnut Hills, etc., Mississippi. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 2, 1846, pp. 210–215.
—— Observations on the Eocene formation, and descriptions of one hundred and five new fossils of that period, from the vicinity of Vicksburg, Mississippi, with an appendix. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci. Jour., new ser., vol. 1, 1848, pp. 111–134. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 3, 1847, pp. 280–299.
—— Remarks on the Tertiary Strata of St. Domingo and Vicksburg, Mississippi. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 6, 1852, pp. 198, 199.
—— Observations on the Eocene deposit of Jackson, Mississippi, with descriptions of thirty-four new species of shells and corals. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 7, 1855, pp. 257–263.
—— Observations on the Eocene Lignite Formation of the United States. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 40, 1865, pp. 265–268.
—— Catalogue of the Eocene and Oligocene Testacea of the United States. Am. Jour. Conch., vol. 1, 1865, pp. 1–35.
—— Observation on the EoceneLignite Formation of the United States. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 17, 1865, pp. 70-73.
—— Notice of a new group of Eocene shells. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 41, 1866, p. 96.
—— Check List of the Invertebrate Fossils of North America (Eocene and Oligocene.) Smithsonian Misc. Coll., vol. 7, 1866, art. 6, pp. 1–41.
—— Notes on American Fossiliferous Strata. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 47, 1869, pp. 358–364.
—— Descriptions of new genera and species of fossil shells of North Carolina in the State Cabinet at Raleigh. Geol. Sur. North Carolina, vol. 1, 1875, Appendix A., pp. 1–28.
COOK, G. H. Report of Prof. Geo. H. Cook upon the Geological Survey of New Jersey, and its progress during the year 1863. Trenton, 1864, 8vo, 13 pp.
—— The Annual Report of Geo. H. Cook, State Geologist, to his excellency Joel Parker, President of the Board of Managers of the Geological Survey of New Jersey, for the year 1864. Trenton, 1865, 8vo, 24 pp.
—— Geology of New Jersey. Newark, 1868, roy. 8vo, xxiv and 900 pp. and 5 maps. Atlas of 8 maps.
—— Geological Survey of New Jersey. Annual Report of the State Geologist for the year 1883. Camden, 1883, 8 vo, 188 pp.
CORNELIUS, E. On the Geology, Mineralogy, Scenery, and Curiosities of Parts of Virginia, Tennessee, and of the Alabama and Mississippi Territories, etc., with Miscellaneous Remarks, in a letter to the Editor. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 1, 1319, pp. 214–226, 317–331.
COTTING, J. R. Report of a Geological and Agricultural Survey, of Burke and Richmond Counties, Georgia. Augusta, 1836, 12 mo. 198 pp.
COUPER, J. H. [The Burr Millstone and its Fossils at Bainbridge, Georgia.] Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 2, 1846, pp. 123–124.
CROOM, H. B. Some account of the Organic Remains found in the Marl Pits of Lucas Benners, Esq., in Craven County, North Carolina. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 27, 1835, pp. 168–171.
DALL, W. H. Notes on the Geology of Florida. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 34, 1887, pp. 161–170.
DANA, J. D. [Eocene.] Manual of Geology (Revised Edition), 1880, pp. 489–527.
DARTON, N. H. Mesozoic and Cenozoic formations of eastern Virginia and Maryland. Geol. Soc. America, Bull., vol. 2, 1891, pp. 431–450.
DESOR, E. [Equivalency of American and European Tertiary.] Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 3, 1850, p. 247.
DICKSON, J. Notices of the Mineralogy and Geology of parts of South and North Carolina. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 3, 1821, pp. 1–5.
EMMONS, E. Fossils of the Sandstones and Slates of North Carolina. Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., Proc., vol. 11, part 2, 1857, pp. 76–80.
—— Report of Prof. Emmons on his Geological Survey of North Carolina. Raleigh, 1852, 12mo, 181 pp.
—— Report of the North Carolina Geological Survey, Agriculture of the Eastern Counties, together with Descriptions of the Fossils of the Marl Beds. Raleigh, 1858, 8vo, xvi and 314 pp.

FINCH, J. Geological Essay on the Tertiary Formations in America. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 7, 1824, pp. 31–43.
FONTAINE, W. M. Notes on the Mesozoic Strata of Virginia. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 17, 1879, pp. 25–39, 151–157, 229–239.
—— The Artesian Well at Fort Monroe, Virginia. The Virginias, vol. 3, 1882, pp. 18–19.
GABB, W. M. and HORN, G. H. Monograph of the Fossil Polyzoa of the Secondary and Tertiary Formations of North America. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Jour., new ser., vol. 5, 1862, pp. 111–179.
GARDNER, J. S. On the relative ages of the American and English Cretaceous and Eocene Series. Geol. Mag., new ser., decade III, vol. 1, 1884, pp. 492–506.
—— On the Relative Ages of the American and the English Cretaceous and Eocene Series. Brit. Assoc. Rept., 54th Meet., 1884, pp. 739–741.
GEIKIE, A. [Eocene of America.] Text book of Geology, 1882, pp. 832–834, 853.
GIBBES, R. W. On the Fossil genus Basilosaurus, Harlan (Zeuglodon, Owen), with a notice of specimens from the Eocene Green Sand of South Carolina. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Jour., new. ser., vol. 1, 1847 pp. 5–15.
—— Monograph of the Fossil Squalidæ of the United States. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Jour., new. ser. vol.1, 1848–'49, pp. 139–147, 191–206.
HALE, C. S. Geology of South Alabama. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser. vol. 6, 1848, pp. 354–363.
HAMMOND, H. South Carolina. Resources and Population; Institutions and Industries. Charleston, 1883, roy. 8vo, 726 pp.
HARLAN, R. Description of the Remains of the "Basilosaurus," a large Fossil Marine Animal, recently discovered in the Horizontal Limestone of Alabama. Pennsylvania Geol. Soc., Trans., vol. 1, 1835, pp. 348–357.
HARPER, L. Preliminary Report on the Geology and Agriculture of the State of Mississipi. Jackson, 1857, 8vo, 350 pp., 7 plates and map.
HAYDEN, H. H. Geological Essays; or an inquiry into some of the geological phenomena to be found in various parts of America, and elsewhere. Baltimore, 1820. 8vo, VIII, 412 pp.
HEILPRIN, A. A comparison of the Eocene Mollusca of the Southeastern United States and Western Europe in relation to the determination of identical forms. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 31, 1879, pp. 217–225.
—— On the Stratigraphical Evidence afforded by the Tertiary Fossils of the Peninsula of Maryland. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 32, 1880, pp. 20–33.
—— On some new Lower Eocene Mollusca from Clarke County, Alabama, with some points as to the Stratigraphical Position of the Beds containing them. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 32, 1880, pp. 364–375, pl. 20.
—— Notes on the Tertiary Geology of the Southern United States. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 33, 1881, pp. 151–159.
—— Note on the Approximate Position of the Eocene Deposits of Maryland. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 33, 1881, pp. 444–447.
—— On the Relative Ages and Classification of the post-Eocene Tertiary Deposits of the Atlantic Slope. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 34, 1882, pp. 150–186.
—— On the Occurrence of Nummulitic Deposits in Florida and the Association of Nummulites with a Fresh-water Fauna. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 34, 1882, pp. 189–193.
—— Contributions to the Tertiary Geology and Paleontology of the United States. Philadelphia, 1884, 4to, 117 pp. and map.
—— The classification and palæontology of the U. S. Tertiary deposits. Science, vol. 5, 1885, pp. 475–476.
—— Notes on the Tertiary Geology and Paleontology of the Southern United States. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 38, 1886, pp. 57, 58.
—— The classification of post-Cretaceous deposits. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 39, 1887, pp. 314–322.
HEINRICH, O. J. The Mesozoic Formation in Virginia. Am Inst. Mining Eng., Trans., vol. 6, 1878, pp. 227–274.
HILGARD, E. W. Report on the Geology and Agriculture of the State of Mississippi. Jackson, 1860, 8vo, XXIV and 391 pp., map and 2 plates.
—— Remarks on the new division of the Eocene, or Shell Bluff Group, proposed by Mr. Conrad. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 42, 1866, pp. 68–70.
—— On the Tertiary Formations of Mississippi and Alabama. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 43, 1867, pp. 29–41.
—— Preliminary Report of a Geological Reconnoissance of Louisiana. New Orleans, 1869, 8vo, 15 pp.
—— On the Geological History of the Gulf of Mexico. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 2, 1871, pp. 391–404. Annual Report of D. F. Boyd, Superintendent Louisiana State University, for the year 1871, pp. 207–222.

HILGARD, E. W. On the Geological History of the Gulf of Mexico. (With a map). Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., Proc., vol. 20, 1871, pp. 222–236.
—— Supplementary and Final Report of a Geological Reconnoissance of the State of Louisiana. New Orleans, 1873, 8vo, 44 pp.
—— The Later Tertiary of the Gulf of Mexico. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 22, 1881, pp. 58–65.
—— The classification and paleontology of the U. S. tertiary deposits. Science, vol. 6, 1885, p. 44.
—— The Old Tertiary of the Southwest. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 30, 1885, pp. 266–269.
—— Dr. Otto Meyer and the southwestern tertiary. Science, vol. 7, 1886, p. 11.
HILL, R. T. The present Condition of Knowledge of the Geology of Texas. U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. No. 45, 1887, 95 pp.
HITCHCOCK, E. First Anniversary Address before the Association of American Geologists, at their second annual meeting at Philadelphia, April 5, 1841. Am. Jour. Sci. vol. 41, 1841, pp. 232–275.
—— Description of a Brown Coal Deposit in Brandon, Vermont, with an attempt to determine the Geological Age of the principal Hematite Ore Beds in the United States. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 15, 1853, pp. 95–104.
—— [Brandon Lignite Deposits.] Report on the Geology of Vermont, vol. 1, 1861, pp. 226–240.
HITCHCOCK, C. H. Note on the Cretaceous Strata of Long Island. Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., Proc., vol. 22, pt. 2, 1873, pp. 131, 132.
—— The Geological Map of the United States. Am. Inst. Mining Eng., Trans., vol. 15, 1887, pp. 465–488, map.
HODGE, J. T. Observations on the Secondary and Tertiary Formations of the southern Atlantic States. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 41, 1841, pp. 332–348. Also in Assoc. Am. Geol., Trans. [Reports], pp. 94–107.
HOLMES, F. S. Notes on the Geology of Charleston, S C. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 7, 1849, pp. 187–201.
—— Observations on the Geology of Ashley River, South Carolina. Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., Proc., vol. 3, 1850, pp. 201–204.
—— Phosphate Rocks of South Carolina and the "Great Carolina Marl Bed." Charleston, 1870, 8vo, 87 pp.
HOPKINS, F. V. First Annual Report of the Louisiana State Geological Survey. In Annual Report of the Board of Supervisors of the Louisiana State Seminary of Learning and Military Academy for the year ending Dec. 31, 1869. New Orleans, 1870, 8vo, pp. 77–109.
—— Second Annual Report of the Geological Survey of Louisiana. In Annual Report of the Board of Supervisors of the Louisiana State University for the year ending Dec. 31, 1870. New Orleans, 1871, 8vo, pp. 1–35, with map.
—— Third Annual Report of the Geological Survey of Louisiana. In Annual Report of D. F. Boyd, Superintendent Louisana State University, for the year 1871. 8vo, New Orleans, 1872, pp. 163–206, with map.
HOTCHKISS, J. Virginia: a Geographical and Political Summary, embracing a Description of the State, its Geology, Soils, Minerals, Climate, etc. Richmond, 1876, 8vo, pp. IV, 319, and 4 maps.
JOHNSON, L. C. [On the Geology of Alabama.] Science, vol. 2, 1883, p. 777.
—— The Structure of Florida. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 36, 1888, pp. 230–236.
KERR, W. C. Report of the Geological Survey of North Carolina. Vol. I, Phsicaly Geography, Résumé, Economical Geology. Raleigh, 1875, 8vo, XVIII, 325 and 120 pp., 8 plates, and map.
—— Distribution and Character of the Eocene Deposits in Eastern North Carolina. Elisha Mitchell Sci. Soc., Proc., vol. 2, 1884–'85, pp. 79–'84.
—— Notes on the Geology of the Region about Tampa, Florida. Elisha Mitchell Sci. Soc., Proc., vol. 2, 1884–'85, pp. 86–90.
—— The Eocene of North Carolina. Am. Naturalist, vol. 19, 1885, p. 69.
KITCHELL, W. First Annual Report of the Geological Survey of the State of New Jersey for the year 1854. New Brunswick, 1855, 100 pp. and 4 plates.
LANGDON, D. W., Jr. Observations on the Tertiary of Mississippi and Alabama, with descriptions of new species. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser, vol. 31, 1886, pp. 202–209.
—— Notes on Variations in the Cretaceous and Tertiary Strata of Alabama. Geol. Soc. America Bull., vol. 2, 1891, pp. 587–606, pl. 23.
LEA, I. Contributions to Geology. Philadelphia, 1833, 8vo, 227 pp. and 6 plates.
LECONTE, J. [Eocene] Elements of Geology. 1882, pp. 499–535.
LEIDY, J. Description of Vertebrate Remains, chiefly from the Phosphate Beds of South Carolina. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Jour., new ser., vol. 8, 1874–1881, pp. 209–262.
LESLEY, J. P. [Brandon, Vt., Lignites.] Iron Manufacturer's Guide, 1859, pp. 514, 518, 539.

LESLEY, J. P. [Lignite Deposit at Pond Bank, Franklin County, Pa., and the post-Paleozoic History of the Appalachian Region.] Am. Phil. Soc. Proc., vol. 9, 1864, pp. 463–482.

LESQUEREUX, L. On some Fossil Plants of Recent Formations. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 27, 1859, pp. 359–366.

—— On the Fossil Fruits found in connection with the Lignites of Brandon, Vt. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 32, 1861, pp. 355–363.

—— On Species of Fossil Plants from the Tertiary of the State of Mississippi. Am. Phil. Soc., Trans., new ser., vol. 13, 1870, pp. 411–433, pls. 14–23.

LEWIS, H. C. A new Locality for Lignite. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 32, 1880, p. 281.

—— The Iron Ores and Lignite of the Montgomery County Valley. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 32, 1880, pp. 282–291.

—— The Iron Ores of the Brandon Period. Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., Proc., vol. 29, 1880, pp. 427–428.

LISTER G. [Vertebrate remains from Washington County, Alabama.] Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 2, 1846, pp. 94–96.

LOUGHRIDGE, R. H. Report on the Cotton Production of the State of Texas, with a discussion of the General Agricultural Features of the State. Tenth Census of the U. S., vol. 5, 1884, pp. 653–831.

LYELL, C. On the Tertiary Formations and their connexion with the Chalk in Virginia and other parts of the United States. Geol. Soc. London, Proc., vol. 3, 1842, pp. 735–742.

—— Notes on the Cretaceous Strata of New Jersey and other parts of the United States bordering the Atlantic. Geol. Soc. London, Proc., vol. 4, 1844, pp. 301–306.

—— Notes on the Cretaceous Strata of New Jersey and parts of the United States bordering the Atlantic. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 47, 1844, pp. 213–214.

—— On the Miocene Tertiary Strata of Maryland, Virginia, and North and South Carolina. Geol. Soc., London, Proc., vol. 4, 1845, pp. 547–563; Geol. Soc., London, Quart. Jour., vol. 1, 1845, pp. 413–429.

—— Observations on the White Limestone and other Eocene or Older Tertiary Formations of Virginia, South Carolina, and Georgia. Geol. Soc. London, Proc., vol. 4, 1845, pp. 563–576. Geol. Soc. London, Quart. Jour., vol. 1, 1845, pp. 429–442.

—— On the Newer Deposits of the Southern States of North America. Geol. Soc., London, Quart. Jour., vol. 2, 1842, pp. 405–410.

—— [Letter on the Tertiary of Georgia and Alabama.] Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 1, 1846, pp. 313–315.

—— On the Delta and Alluvial Deposits of the Mississippi, and other points in the Geology of North America, observed in the years 1845, 1846. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 3, 1847, pp. 34–39.

—— On the relative Age and Position of the so-called Nummulite Limestone of Alabama. Geol. Soc., London, Quart. Jour., vol. 4, 1847, pp. 10–16.

—— On the relative Age and Position of the so-called Nummulite Limestone of Alabama. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 4, 1847, pp. 186–191.

MACFARLANE, J. An American Geological Railway Guide, etc. New York, 1879, 8vo., 216 pp.; second edition, 1890, 8vo, 426 pp.

MACLURE, W. Observation on the Geology of the United States, explantory of a Geological Map. Am. Phil. Soc., Trans., vol. 6, 1809, pp. 411–428.

—— Observations on the Geology of the United States of North America, etc. Am. Phil. Soc., Trans., new ser., vol. 1, 1817, pp. 1–92.

—— Observations on the Geology of the United States of America. Philadelphia, 1817, 8vo, 130 pp.

MARSH, O. C. Address. [The Introduction and Succession of Vertebrate Life in America.] (With a plate). Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., Proc., vol. 26, 1877, pp. 211–258.

MATHER, W. W. On the Physical Geology of the United States east of the Rocky Mountains, and on some of the Causes affecting the Sedimentary Formations of the Earth. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 49, 1845, pp. 284–301.

MAURY, M. F. Physical Survey of Virginia. (Preliminary Report.) Richmond, I, 1868, 8vo, 90 pp. II, 1878, 8vo, 142 pp.

MCCRADY, J. Remarks on the Eocene formation in the neighborhood of Alligator, Florida. Elliot, Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 1, 1859, pp. 282–283.

MCGEE, W. J. Three Formations of the Middle Atlantic Slope. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 35, 1888, pp. 120–143, 328–330, 367–388, 448–466.

—— The Appomattox Formation in the Mississippi Embayment. Geol. Soc. America, Bull., vol. 2, 1891, pp. 2–6.

MCGUIRE, W. W. On the Prairies of Alabama. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 26, 1834, pp. 93–98.

MELL, P. H. The Claiborne Group and its Remarkable Fossils. Am. Inst. Min. Eng., Trans., vol. 8, 1880, pp. 304–313.

MEYER, O. The Genealogy and the Age of the Species in the Southern Old Tertiary. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 29, 1885, pp. 457–468; vol. 30, pp. 60–72, 421–435.

—— Successional Relations of the Species in the French Old Tertiary. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 30, 1885, pp. 151–153.

—— The classification and paleontology of the U. S. Tertiary deposits. Science, vol. 6, 1885, p. 143, 144.

—— Observations on the Tertiary and Grand Gulf of Mississippi. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 32, 1886, pp. 20–25.

—— Beitrag zur Kenntniss der Fauna des Alttertiärs von Mississippi und Alabama. Bericht über die Senckenbergische naturforschende Gesellschaft in Frankfurt a. M. 1887, pp. 1–20.

—— Some remarks on the present state of our knowledge of the North American eastern Tertiary. Am. Geologist, vol. 2, 1888, pp. 88–94.

MILLER, S. A. North American Mesozoic and Cenozoic Geology and Paleontology. Cincinnati, 1881, 8vo., 338 pp.

MITCHELL, E. On the Character and Origin of the Low Country of North Carolina. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 13, 1828, pp. 336–347.

MORTON, S. G. Geological Observations on the Secondary, Tertiary, and Alluvial Formations of the Atlantic Coast of the United States of America. Arranged from the Notes of Lardner Vanuxem. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Jour., vol. 6, 1829, pp. 59–71.

—— Synopsis of the Organic Remains of the Ferruginous Sand Formation of the United States; with geological remarks. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 17, 1830, pp. 274–295; vol. 18, 1830, pp. 243–250; vol. 23, 1833, pp. 288–294; vol. 24, 1833, pp. 128–132. (With 3 pls. in vol. 18, 2 pls. in vol. 23, and 2 pls. in vol. 24.)

——Tabular View of the Organic Remains hitherto discovered in the Cretaceous strata of the United States. Philadelphia Acad. Sci., Jour., vol. 8, 1842, pp. 216–227.

MURCHISON, R. I. Secondary and Tertiary Rocks and superficial deposits of North America. Geol. Soc., London, Proc., vol. 4, 1843, pp. 127–133.

NEUMAYR, M. [Eocene of America.] Erdgeshichte. Vol. 2, 1887, pp. 388–392, 493–494, 497–499.

OLMSTEAD, D. Report on the Geology of North Carolina, conducted under the direction of the Board of Agriculture. 1824, part I, 12mo., 44 pp. 1825, part II, 12 mo., 58 pp.

—— Notice of the Report on the Geology of North Carolina, conducted under the direction of the Board of Agriculture. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 14, 1828, pp. 230–251.

OWEN, D. D. First Report of a Geological Reconnoissance of the Northern Counties of Arkansas, made during the years 1857 and 1858. Little Rock, 1858, 8vo., 256, pp. and 7 plates.

—— Second Report of a Geological Reconnoissance of the Middle and Southern Counties of Arkansas, made during the years 1859 and 1860. Philadelphia, 1860, 8vo., 433 pp., 14 plates, and map.

PENROSE, R. A. F., Jr. A Preliminary Report on the Geology of the Gulf Tertiary of Texas. Geol. Surv. Texas, First Ann. Rept., for 1889–'90, pp. 3–101.

PIERCE, J. Notice of the Alluvial District of New Jersey, with remarks on the application of the rich marl of that region to agriculture. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 6, 1823, pp. 237–242.

—— Practical remarks on the shell marl region of the eastern parts of Virginia and Maryland, and upon the bituminous coal formation in Virginia and the contiguous region. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 11, 1826, pp. 54–59.

PORTER, W. S. Sketches of the Geology, etc., of Alabama. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 13, 1828, pp. 77–79.

PRIME, F., Jr. A Catalogue of Official Reports upon Geological Surveys of the United States and Territories and of British North America. Am. Inst. Min. Eng., Trans., vol. 7, 1879, pp. 455–525.

ROGERS, H. D. Report on the Geological Survey of the State of New Jersey. Philadelphia, 1836, 174 pp. and plate.

—— Description of the Geology of the State of New Jersey, being a final report. Philadelphia, 1840, 8vo, 301 pp., map, and plate.

—— Address Delivered at the Meeting of the Association of American Geologists and Naturalists, held in Washington, May, 1844. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 47, 1844, pp. 137–160, 247–278.

ROGERS, W. B. On the Discovery of Green-sand in the Calcareous Deposit of Eastern Virginia, and on the Probable Existence of this Substance in Extensive Beds near the Western Limits of our Ordinary Marl. Farmers' Register, vol. 2, 1834. Reprinted in Geology of the Virginias, 1884, pp. 3–9.

ROGERS, W. B. Further Observations on the Greensand and Calcareous Marl of Virginia. Farmers' Register, May, 1835. Reprinted in Geology of the Virginias, 1884, pp. 11-20.

—— Report of the Geological Reconnoissance of the State of Virginia, made under the appointment of the Board of Public Works, 1835. Richmond, 1836, 4to, 52 pp., and plate. Reprinted, Philadelphia, 1836, 8vo, 143 pp. and plate, and in Geology of the Virginias, 1884, pp. 21-122.

—— Report of the Progress of the Geological Survey of the State of Virginia, for 1836. Richmond, 1837, 4to, 14 pp. Reprinted, Philadelphia, 1838, 8vo, and in Geology of the Virginias, 1884, pp. 123-145.

—— Report of the Progress of the Geological Survey of the State of Virginia for 1837. Richmond, 1838, 4to, 24 pp. Reprinted, Philadelphia, 1838, 8vo, and Geology of the Virginias, 1884, pp. 147-188.

—— Report of the Progress of the Geological Survey of the State of Virginia for 1839. Richmond, 1840, 8vo, 161 pp. Reprinted in Geology of the Virginias, 1884, pp. 245-410.

—— Report of the Progress of the GeologicalSurvey of the State of Virginia for 1840. Richmond, 1841, 8vo, 132 pp. Reprinted in Geology of the Virginias, 1884, pp. 411-535.

—— Infusorial Deposit of Virginia in the Fort Monroe Artesian Well. The Virginias, vol. 3, 1882, pp. 151, 152. Reprinted in Geology of the Virginias, 1884, pp. 733-736.

ROGERS, W. B. and H. D. Contributions to the Geology of the Tertiary Formations of Virginia. Am. Phil. Soc., Trans., new ser., vol. 5, 1835, pp. 319-341; vol. 6, 1837-'39, pp. 347-370, 371-377, pls. 26-30.

—— Contributions to the Geology of the Tertiary Formations of Virginia. (Abstract.) Am. Phil. Soc., Proc., vol. 1, 1839, pp. 88-90.

RUFFIN, E. Report of the Commencement and Progress of the Agricultural Survey of South Carolina for 1843. Columbia, 1843, 8vo, 120 and 55 pp.

SAFFORD, J. M. Species of Fossil Plants collected near Sommerville, Fayette County, Tennessee. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 27, 1859, pp. 363, 364.

—— On the Cretaceous and Superior Formations of West Tennessee. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 37, 1864, pp. 360-372.

—— Geology of Tennessee. Nashville, 1869, 8vo., xi, 550 pp., 8 plates, and map.

SHALER, N. S. On the Phosphate Beds of South Carolina. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Proc., vol. 13, 1870, pp. 222-236.

SHEPARD, C. U. Geological Observations upon Alabama, Georgia, and Florida. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 25, 1834, pp. 162-173.

—— Note upon the origin of the Phosphatic Formation. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 47, 1869, pp. 338-340.

—— Notes on the occurrence and composition of the Nodular Phosphates of South Carolina. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 47, 1869, pp. 354-357.

SMITH, E. A. On the Geology of Florida. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 21, 1881, pp. 292-309.

—— Remarks on a paper of Dr. Otto Meyer on "Species in the Southern Old Tertiary." Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 30, 1885, pp. 270-275.

—— Tertiary phosphates in Alabama. Science, vol. 5, 1885, p. 376.

—— Phosphatic Rocks of Florida. Science, vol. 5, 1885, pp. 395, 396.

—— Report of the Subcommittee on Cenozoic (Marine). Am. Geologist, vol. 2, 1888, pp. 269-284.

——and JOHNSON, L. C. Tertiary and Cretaceous Strata of the Tuscaloosa, Tombigbee, and Alabama Rivers. U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. 43, 1887, 189 pp. and 21 plates.

TUOMEY, M. Discovery of a Chambered Univalve Fossil in the Eocene Tertiary of the James River, Virginia. Am. Jour. Sci., vol 43, 1842, p. 187.

—— [Correlation of South Carolina Eocene]. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 47, 1844, p. 117.

—— [Eocene of North and South Carolina.] Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., Proc., vol. 1, 1848, pp. 32, 33.

—— Report on the Geology of South Carolina. Columbia, 1848, 4to, VI, 293, and LVI. pp., plate, and two maps.

—— First Biennial Report on the Geology of Alabama. Tuscaloosa, 1850, 8vo, XXXII, and 176 pp. and map.

—— Description of some Fossil Shells from the Tertiary of the Southern States. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 6, 1852, pp. 192-194.

TYSON, PHILIP T. First Report of Philip T. Tyson, State Agricultural Chemist, to the House of Delegates of Maryland, Jan., 1860. Annapolis, 1860, 8vo, XI, 145, and 20 pp. and two maps.

UHLER, P. R. Observations on the Eocene Tertiary and its Cretaceous Associates in the State of Maryland. Maryland Acad. Sci., Trans., vol. 1, 1888, pp. 10-32.

—— Additions to observations on the Cretaceous and Eocene Formations of Maryland. Maryland Acad. Sci., Trans., vol. 1, 1889-'90, pp. 45-72.

UHLER, P. R. Notes and illustrations to "Observations on the Cretaceous and Eocene Formations of Maryland." Maryland Acad. Sci., Trans., vol. 1, 1890, pp. 97–104.
VAN RENSSELAER, J. Lectures on geology. New York, 1825, 8vo, 358 pp.
VANUXEM, LARDNER. Remarks on the characters and classification of certain American Rock Formations. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 16, 1829, pp. 254–256.
VOGDES, A. W. Cretaceous and Tertiary of Charleston, S. C. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 16, 1878, pp. 69, 70.
WAILES, B. L. C. Report on the Agriculture and Geology of Mississippi. Embracing a Sketch of the Social and Natural History of the State. Jackson, 1854, 8vo., xx and 371 pp., 17 plates and map.
WHITE, C. A. The Application of Biology to Geological History. A Presidential Address Delivered at the Fifth Anniversary Meeting of the Biological Society of Washington, January 24, 1885. Washington Biol. Soc., Proc., vol. 3, 1886, pp. 1–20.
—— On the relation of the Laramie Group to earlier and later Formations. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 35, 1888, pp. 432–438.
WHITING, H. Cursory Remarks upon East Florida, in 1838. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 35, 1839, pp. 47–64.
WINCHELL, A. Notes on the Geology of Middle and Southern Alabama. Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., Proc., vol. 10, 1856, pt. 2, pp. 82–93.
—— Statistics of some Artesian Wells of Alabama. Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., Proc., vol. 10, pt. 2, 1856, pp. 94–103.
[——] Limits of tertiary in Alabama. Science, vol. 3, 1884, p. 32.

PACIFIC COAST REGION.

BECKER, G. F. Notes on the Stratigraphy of California. U. S. Geol. Surv. Bull. No. 19, 1885, 28 pp.
CONRAD, T. A. Fossil Shells from Tertiary Deposits on the Columbia River, near Astoria. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 5, 1848, pp. 432, 433, pls. 2–9.
—— Report of, on the fossil shells collected in California by W. P. Blake, geologist of the expedition under command of Lieut. R. S. Williamson. Pacific Railroad Preliminary Reports, 8vo, 1855. Appendix to Geological Report, pls. 2–9.
—— Descriptions of the Fossil Shells. Appendix, Article II, to Geological Report by W. P. Blake. Pacific Railroad Reports, 4to, vol. 5, 1856, pp. 317–329.
—— Catalogue of the Older Eocene Shells of Oregon. Am. Jour. Conch., vol. 1, 1865, pp. 150–154.
—— Observations on certain Eocene Fossils described as Cretaceous by Mr. W. M. Gabb, in his Report, published in the "Palæontology of California." Am. Jour. Conch., vol. 1, 1865, pp. 362–365.
—— Further Observations on Mr. Gabb's Palæontology of California. Am. Jour. Conch., vol. 2, 1886, pp. 97–100.
—— Reply to Mr. Gabb on the Cretaceous rocks of California Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 44, 1867, pp. 376, 377.
COOPER, J. G. The Eocene Epoch in California. Are there really no Eocene strata? California Acad. Sci., Proc., vol. 5, 1874, pp. 419–421.
—— Note on Tertiary Formation of California. California Acad. Sci., Proc., vol. 5, 1874, p. 422.
DANA, J. D. Geological observations on Oregon and Northern California. Wilkes Exploring Expedition, vol. 10, 1849, pp. 611–678.
—— [Pacific Coast Tertiary.] Manual of Geology (Revised Edition), 1880, pp. 491–493, 508.
DILLER, J. S. Notes on the Geology of Northern California. U. S. Geol. Surv. Bull., No. 33, 1886, 23 pp.
GABB, W. M. Reply to Mr. Conrad's criticism on Mr. Gabb's "Report on the Palæontology of California." Am. Jour. Conch., vol. 2, 1866, pp. 87–92.
—— On the Subdivisions of the Cretaceous Formation in California. California Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 3, 1867, pp. 301–306.
—— On the subdivisions of the Cretaceous rocks of California. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 44, 1867, pp. 226–229.
—— Cretaceous and Tertiary fossils. California Geol. Surv., Paleontology, vol. 2, 1869, pp. 1–299, and 36 plates.
HEILPRIN, A. On the Occurrence of Ammonites in Deposits of Tertiary Age. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 34, 1882, p. 94.
—— On the Age of the Tejon Rocks of California, and the occurrence of Ammonitic Remains in Tertiary Deposits. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 34, 1882, pp. 196–214.
MARCOU, J. Report on the Geology of a Portion of Southern California in Annual Report of the U. S. Geographical Surveys west of the 100th meridian. Annual Report of the Chief of Engineers for 1876, pt. III, pp. 378–392.

NEWBERRY, J. S. On supposed Tertiary Ammonites. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 34, 1882, pp. 194, 195.
TRASK, J. B. Description of a new species of Ammonite and Baculite, from the Tertiary Rocks of Chico Creek. California Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 1, 1856, pp. 92, 93.
WHITE, C. A. Notes on the Mesozoic and Cenozoic Paleontology of California. U. S. Geol. Surv. Bull. No. 15, 1885, 33 pp.
—— On the Marine Eocene, fresh-water Miocene, and other fossil Mollusca of western North America. U. S. Geol. Surv. Bull. No. 18, 1885, 26 pp., 3 pls.
—— On new Cretaceous Fossils from California. U. S. Geol. Surv. Bull. No. 22, 1885, 25 pp., 5 pls.
—— The Application of Biology to Geological History. A Presidential Address Delivered at the Fifth Anniversary Meeting of the Biological Society of Washington, January 24, 1885. Washington Biol. Soc., Proc., vol. 3, 1886, pp. 1–20.
—— On the Puget Group of Washington Territory. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 36, 1888, pp. 443–450.
—— The North American Mesozoic. A Vice-Presidential Address Delivered at the Toronto Meeting of the American Association for the Advancement of Science, August, 1889. Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., Proc., vol. 38, 1889, pp. 205–226.
—— On Invertebrate Fossils from the Pacific Coast. U. S. Geol. Surv. Bull. No. 51, 1889, 102 pp., 14 pls.
WHITNEY, J. D. [Cretaceous (Eocene) of California]. California Geol. Surv., Geology, vol. 1, 1865, pp. 31, 35, 57, 190–192.
—— [Tejon Group.] California Geol. Surv., Paleontology, vol. 2, 1869. Preface, p. XIII.
WILLIS, B. Report on the Coal Fields of Washington Territory. Tenth Census of the U. S., vol. 15, 1885, pp. 759–771.

INTERIOR REGION.

COPE, E. D. Synopsis of the Extinct Batrachia, Reptilia, and Aves of North America. Am. Phil. Soc., Trans., vol. 14, 1868–'69, pp. 1–252.
—— The Geological Age of the Coal of Wyoming. Am. Naturalist, vol. 6, 1872, pp. 669–671.
—— On the Tertiary Coal and Fossils of Osino, Nevada. Am. Phil. Soc., Proc., vol. 12, 1872, pp. 478–481.
—— Report on the Vertebrate Paleontology of Colorado. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, (Seventh) Ann. Rept. for 1873, pp. 427–533.
—— Review of the Vertebrata of the Cretaceous Period Found West of the Mississippi River. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Bull., vol. 1, No. 2, 1874, pp. 5–48.
—— The Vertebrata of the Cretaceous Formations of the West. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories. Monograph, vol. 2, 4to., 1875, iv and 302 pp., 57 plates.
—— Report of the Geology of that Part of Northwestern New Mexico examined during the field season of 1874. Ann. Rept. of the Chief of Engineers, 1875, pt. 2, pp. 981–1017.
—— Report upon the Extinct Vertebrata obtained in New Mexico by Parties of the Expedition of 1874. U. S. Geog. Surveys West of the 100th Meridian, vol. 4, Paleontology, pt. 2, 1877, 4to, iv and 370 pp., 83 plates.
—— The Relations of the Horizons of Extinct Vertebrata of Europe and North America. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Bull., vol. 5, 1879, pp. 33–54.
—— The Amyzon Tertiary Beds. Am. Naturalist, vol. 13, 1879, p. 332.
—— On certain Tertiary Strata of the Great Basin. Am. Phil. Soc., Proc., vol. 19, 1880, pp. 60–62.
—— The Manti Beds of Utah. Am. Naturalist, vol. 14, 1880, pp. 303, 304.
—— The Tertiary Formations of the Central Region of the United States. Am. Naturalist, vol. 16, 1882, pp. 177–195.
—— Synopsis of the Vertebrata of the Puerco Eocene epoch. Am. Phil. Soc., Proc. vol. 20, 1882, pp. 461–470.
—— The Relations of the Puerco and Laramie Deposits. Am. Naturalist, vol. 19, 1885, pp. 985, 986.
—— The Mesozoic and Cenozoic Realms of the Interior of North America. Am. Naturalist, vol. 21, 1887, pp. 445–462.
—— Mesozoic Realm. Post-Cretacic System. Am. Geologist, vol. 2, 1888, pp. 265–267.
—— Report of the Sub-Committee on the Cenozoic (Interior). Am. Geologist, vol. 2, 1888, pp. 285–299.

COPE, E. D. Synopsis of the Vertebrate Fauna of the Puerco Series. Am. Phil. Soc., Trans., vol. 16, 1888, pp. 298–367.
CROSS, W. The Denver Tertiary Formation. Colorado Sci. Soc., Proc., vol. 3, part 1, 1888, pp. 119–133.
—— The Denver Tertiary Formation. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 37, 1889, pp. 261–282.
DUTTON, C. E. The Physical Geology of the Grand Cañon District. U. S. Geol. Surv., Second Ann. Rept. for 1880–'81, pp. 47–166.
—— The Tertiary History of the Grand Cañon District. U. S. Geol. Surv., Monograph vol. 2, 1882, xiv and 264 pp.
ELDRIDGE, G. H. On some stratigraphical and structural Relations of the Country about Denver, Colorado. The Mining Industry, vol. 3, July 13, 1888, No. 3, pp. 24, 25; July 20, No. 4, pp. 33–35; July 27, No. 5, pp. 44, 45.
—— On some stratigraphical and structural Features of the Country about Denver, Colorado. Colorado Sci. Soc., Proc., vol 3, 1888, part 1, pp. 86–118.
EMMONS, S. F. Orographic Movements in the Rocky Mountains. Geol. Soc. America, Bull., vol. 1, 1890, pp. 245–286.
ENDLICH, F. M. The San Juan Region. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Ninth Ann. Rept. for 1875, pp. 176–191.
—— Report on the Geology of the Sweetwater District. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Eleventh Ann. Rept. for 1877, pp. 5–158.
HAGUE, A., AND EMMONS, S. F. Descriptive Geology, U. S. Geol. Expl. of the Fortieth Parallel, vol. 2, 1877, 4to., xii and 890 pp., 25 plates.
HAYDEN, F. V. Notes Explanatory of a Map and Section Illustrating the Geological structure of the country bordering on the Missouri River from the mouth of the Platte River to Fort Benton, in lat. 47° 30′ N., long. 110° 30′ W. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 9, 1857, pp. 109–116.
—— [Remarks and observations in regard to the lignite beds of the country on the upper tributaries of the Missouri.] Am. Phil. Soc., Proc., vol. 10, 1867, pp. 300–307.
—— Notes on the Lignite Deposits of the West. Am. Jour. Sci., 2d ser., vol. 45, 1868, pp. 198–208.
—— Formations of Nebraska. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, First Ann. Rept. for 1867 (Reprint, Washington, 1873, pp. 55–64).
—— Review of Leading Groups, etc. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Third Ann. Rept. for 1869 (Reprint, Washington, 1873, pp. 189–192).
—— U. S. Geol. Surv. of Wyoming and portions of contiguous Territories. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Fourth Ann. Rept., for 1870.
—— Brief History of the Lignitic Group. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Eighth Ann. Rept., for 1874, pp. 19–27.
HILLS, R. C. The recently discovered Tertiary beds of the Huerfano River Basin, Colorado. Colorado Sci. Soc., Proc., vol. 3, pt. 1, 1888, pp. 148–164.
—— Additional notes on the Huerfano Beds. Colorado Sci. Soc., Proc., vol. 3, pt. 2, 1889, pp. 217–223.
KING, CLARENCE. The Green River Coal Basin. U. S. Geol. Expl. of the Fortieth Parallel, vol. 3, Mining Industry, 1870, pp. 451–473.
—— Systematic Geology. U. S. Geol. Expl. of the Fortieth Parallel, vol. 1, Washington, 1878, 4to, xii and 803 pp.
LECONTE, J. L. Notes on the Geology of the Survey for the Extension of the Union Pacific Railway, E. D. from the Smoky Hill River, Kansas, to the Rio Grande. Philadelphia, 1868, 8vo, 76 pp. and map.
LESQUEREUX, L. Fossil Flora. U. S. Geol. Surv. of Montana and portions of adjacent Territories. U. S. Geol. Surv. of the Territories, Fifth Ann. Rept., for 1871, pp. 282–318.
—— Lignitic Formation and Fossil Flora. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Sixth Ann. Rept., for 1872, pp. 317–427.
—— The Lignitic Formation and its Fossil Flora. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Seventh Ann. Rept., for 1873, pp. 365–425.
—— On the Age of the Lignitic formations of the Rocky Mountains. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 7, 1874, pp. 546–557.
—— On the Tertiary Flora of the North American Lignitic, considered as evidence of the Age of the Formation. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Eighth Ann. Rept., for 1874, pp. 275–315.
—— Contributions to the Fossil Flora of the Western Territories. Part II: The Tertiary Flora. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Monograph, vol. 7, 1878, xviii and 366 pp. 65 plates.
—— Contributions to the Fossil Flora of the Western Territories. Part III: The Cretaceous and Tertiary Floras. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories. Monograph, vol. 8, 1883, xii and 283 pp., 59 plates.

MARSH, O. C. On the Geology of the Eastern Uintah Mountains. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 1, 1871, pp. 191–198.

—— Introduction and Succession of Vertebrate Life in America. A Vice-Presidential Address delivered at the Nashville Meeting of the American Association for the Advancement of Science, August, 1877. Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., Proc., vol. 26, 1878, pp. 211–258.

—— The Gigantic Mammals of the order Dinocerata. U. S. Geol. Surv., Fifth Ann. Rept., for 1883–'84, pp. 243–302.

—— Dinocerata, a monograph of an extinct order of gigantic mammals. U. S. Geol. Survey Monograph, vol. 10, 1886, pp. i–xviii, 1–243, pls. I–LVI.

MARVINE, A. R. Middle Park Deposits. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Seventh Ann. Rept., for 1873, pp. 83–192.

MEEK, F. B. Preliminary Paleontological Report, consisting of Lists and Descriptions of Fossils, with Remarks on the Ages of the Rocks in which they were found, etc. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Sixth Ann. Rept., for 1872, pp. 431–518.

—— A Report on the Invertebrate Cretaceous and Tertiary Fossils of the Upper Missouri country. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Monograph vol. 9, 1876, LXIV, and 629 pp. 45 plates.

MEEK, F. B., and ENGELMANN, H. Notice of Geological Discoveries made by Capt. J. H. Simpson, Topographical Engineers, U. S. Army, in his recent Explorations across the Continent. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 12, 1860, pp. 126-131.

MEEK, F. B., and HAYDEN, F. V. Descriptions of new species of Gasteropoda from the Cretaceous formations of Nebraska Territory. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 8, 1856, pp. 63–69.

—— Description of New Species of Acephala and Gasteropoda, from the Tertiary formations of Nebraska Territory, with some general remarks on the Geology of the country about the sources of the Missouri River. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., vol. 8, 1856, pp. 111–126.

—— Descriptions of new fossil species of Mollusca collected by Dr. F. V. Hayden in Nebraska Territory; together with a complete catalogue of all the remains of Invertebrata hitherto described and identified from the Cretaceous and Tertiary Formations of that region. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 8, 1856, pp. 265–286.

—— Descriptions of new Genera and Species of Fossils collected by Dr. F. V. Hayden in Nebraska Territory, under the direction of Lieut. G. K. Warren, U. S. Topographical Engineer; with some remarks on the Tertiary and Cretaceous formations of the Northwest, and the parallelism of the latter with those of other portions of the United States and Territories. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 9, 1857, pp. 117–148.

—— Descriptions of new Lower Silurian (Primordial), Jurassic, Cretaceous, and Tertiary Fossils, collected in Nebraska, by the Exploring Expedition under the command of Capt. William F. Raynolds, U. S. Topographical Engineers; with some remarks on the rocks from which they were obtained. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci., Proc., vol. 13, 1861, pp. 415, 447.

NEWBERRY, J. S. Notes on the Later Extinct Floras of North America, with Descriptions of some New Species of Fossil Plants from the Cretaceous and Tertiary Strata. New York Lyceum Nat. Hist., Annals, vol. 9, 1867, pp. 1–76.

—— [Report on Fossil Plants.] U. S. Geol. Surv. of Wyoming and portions of contiguous Territories. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Fourth Ann. Rept., for 1870, pp. 89, 94, 97, 143, 144.

—— On the Lignites and Plant-Beds of Western America. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 7, 1874, pp. 399–404.

—— Geological Report of the Exploring Expedition from Santa Fé, New Mexico, to the Junction of the Grand and Green Rivers of the Great Colorado of the West in 1859, under command of Capt. J. N. Macomb. Washington, 1876, 4to, VII and 148 pp.; 8 plates and a map.

—— The Laramie Group. Geol. Soc. America, Bull., vol. 1, 1890, pp. 524–528.

PEALE, A. C. Stratigraphy, Cenozoic Formations. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Eighth Ann. Rept., for 1874, pp. 140–162.

—— The Laramie Group of Western Wyoming and Adjacent Regions. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Bull., vol. 5, 1879, pp. 195–200.

—— Report on the Geology of the Green River District. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Eleventh Ann. Rept., for 1877, pp. 511–646.

POWELL, J. W. Exploration of the Colorado River of the West and its Tributaries. Explored in 1869, 1870, 1871, 1872. Washington, 1875, 4to, xi and 291 pp.

—— Report on the Geology of the Eastern Portion of the Uinta Mountains, with a Region of Country Adjacent thereto. Washington, 1876, 4to, vii and 218 pp., and atlas.

SCOTT, WM. B. and OSBORN, H. F. The Mammalia of the Uinta Formation. Am. Phil. Soc., Trans., vol. 16, 1889, pp. 461–572.
SCUDDER, S. H. The Tertiary Lake Basin of Florissant, Colorado, between South and Hayden Parks. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Bull., vol. 6, 1882, pp. 279–300; and U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Twelfth Ann. Rept., for 1878, pp. 271–293.
STEVENSON, J. J. The Geological Relations of the Lignitic Groups. Am. Phil. Soc., Proc., vol. 14, 1875, pp. 447–475.
—— Age of the Colorado Lignites. U. S. Geog. Surys. West of the 100th Meridian, vol. 3, 1875, pp. 404–410.
ST. JOHN, O. Report on the Geology of the Wind River District. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Twelfth Ann. Rept., for 1878, pp. 175–269.
WARD, LESTER F. Synopsis of the flora of the Laramie group. U. S. Geol. Surv., Sixth Ann. Rept., for 1884–'85, pp. 399–557, pls. 31–65.
—— The Geographical Distribution of Fossil Plants. U, S. Geol. Surv., Eighth Ann. Rept. for 1886–'87, pp, 663–960.
—— Types of the Laramie Flora. U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. 37, 1889, 354 pp., 57 plates.
—— [Discussions.] Geol. Soc. of America, Bull., vol. 1, 1890, pp. 529–532.
WHITE, C. A. Paleontological Papers No. 3. Catalogue of the invertebrate fossils hitherto published from the fresh and brackish-water deposits of the western portion of North America. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Bull., vol. 3, 1877, pp. 607–614.
—— Paleontological Papers No. 5. Remarks on the paleontological characteristics of the Cenozoic and Mesozoic groups as developed in the Green River region. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Survey of the Territories, Bull., vol. 3, 1877, pp. 625–629.
—— Report on the Geology of a portion of Northwestern Colorado. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Tenth Ann. Rept., for 1876, pp. 5–60.
—— Paleontological Papers No. 6. Descriptions of new species of invertebrate fossils from the Laramie group. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Bull., vol. 4, 1878, pp. 707–720.
—— Paleontological Papers No. 7. On the distribution of Molluscan species in the Laramie group. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Bull., vol. 4, 1878, pp. 721–724.
—— Report on the Paleontological Field Work for the Season of 1877. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Eleventh Ann. Rept., for 1877, pp. 161–319.
—— Contributions to Invertebrate Paleontology. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv. of the Territories, Twelfth Ann. Rept. for 1878, pp. 5–171.
—— A Review of the Non-marine Fossil Mollusca of North America. U. S. Geol. Surv., Third Ann. Rept., for 1881–'82, pp. 403–550.
—— Late Observations concerning the Molluscan Fauna and the geographical extent of the Laramie group. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 25, 1883, pp. 207–209.
—— A Review of the Fossil Ostreidæ of North America. U. S. Geol. Surv., Fourth Ann. Rept., for 1882–'83, pp. 272–432.
—— The Application of Biology to Geological History. A Presidential Address delivered at the Fifth Anniversary Meeting of the Biological Society of Washington, January 24, 1885. Washington Biol. Soc., Proc., vol. 3, 1886, pp. 1–20.
—— Relation of the Laramie Molluscan and Fresh-water Eocene Faunas. U. S. Geol. Surv., Bull. No. 34, 1886, 54 pp., 5 plates.
—— On the Inter-relation of Contemporaneous Fossil Faunas and Floras. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 33, 1887, pp. 364–374.
—— On the relation of the Laramie group to earlier and later Formations. Am. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., vol. 35, 1888, pp. 432–438.
—— The North American Mesozoic; a Vice-Presidential Address delivered at the Toronto Meeting of the American Association for the Advancement of Science, August, 1889. Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., Proc., vol. 38, 1889, pp. 205–226.
—— On the Geology and Physiography of a Portion of Northwestern Colorado and Adjacent Parts of Utah and Wyoming. U. S. Geol. Surv., Ninth Ann. Rept., for 1887–'88, pp. 677–712.

INDEX.

A.

Page.

Agassiz, L., on the stratigraphy of local areas 28
on the formation of the peninsula of Florida 56
Akerly, Samuel, on the "alluvial formation" of northern New Jersey..... 19
Alabama, John Finch on deposits in 19
S. Porter on the shell deposits of 20
I. Lea on fossil shells from 21, 24
T. A. Conrad on the section at Claiborne 21
T. A. Conrad on fossil shells from..... 21
Withers on the geology of St. Stephen's Bluff in 21
Chas. U. Shepard on the Eocene localities of 22
Henry C. Lea on the Eocene fossils from 24
connection of the "White limestone" of, with the "Greensand" of New Jersey, reported by Conrad 25
Lyell on the section at Claiborne... 26
Tuomey on the extent, structure, and stratigraphy of the early Tertiary of 31
presence of lignite horizon between Cretaceous and Eocene in, claimed by Conrad 32
divisions of the Eocene in, proposed by E. A. Smith 35
reports of the State geological survey of, by E. A. Smith 37
limits of the Eocene formations in.. 38
character and extent of the Eocene deposits of 57-66
the Lignitic in..... 58-61
Smith and Johnson's divisions of deposits of 58, 59
the Buhrstone in 61, 62
the Claiborne in..... 62-64
the White limestone in 64-66
correlation of the Eocene deposits of. 83
character of the Gulf province in.... 87, 88
Aldrich, T. H., contributions to Eocene geology by..... 36
Allen, ——, on Eocene stratigraphy.... 28
"Alluvial formation," extent of 18, 19
American and European Eocene, correlation of.....16, 88-89
Amyzon beds, character of the..... 141
Cope on the age of..... 141
localities of..... 141
position of 145
Arapaho beds, character of..... 136
dinosaurian remains from 136
limits of 136
position of..... 145
Arkansas, D. D. Owen on the Eocene of... 31, 75
R. T. Hill's report on the Neozoic formations of..... 37
character of the Camden series (Lignitic) in..... 74, 75
extent of the Eocene deposits in..... 74
character of the deposits of the "Cleveland County red lands" of 75
position of the deposits at Arkadelphia 75
divisions of the Eocene in..... 83
Ashley and Cooper beds, character and fossils of..... 53
Atlantic and Gulf coast region, historical review of the literature of 17-37
boundaries of Eocene of 38
origin of Eocene deposits of..... 39
character of the outcrops in..... 40
dip of Eocene strata in 40
difficulty in accurate correlation of the deposits of 79
division of the deposits in..... 79, 80
four provinces of Eocene of 85
table showing geological range of the deposits..... 85

B.

Bailey, J. W., on orbitolite limestone in Florida 29
Basilosaurus (Zeuglodon) described by R. Harlan 27
Bear River beds, age of 115, 116, 135
Becker, G. F., on conformity between the beds from Chico to Miocene 99
on the age of the Tejon group..... 102
on the position of the strata at Mount Diablo..... 103
stratigraphical relations of the Tejon group 103
Berthoud, E. L., on the age of the lignitic series of the Northwest..... 114

Page.

Bibikov, N. A., on the discovery of lignite in Richmond County, Ga 92
Bitter Creek series, Cope on the age of..118, 119
Booth, J. C., on the geology of Delaware. 23
on the occurrence of Tertiary fossils at Old Duck Creek, Del..... 43
Bouvé, T. T., on Eocene fossils.....28, 29, 50
Brandon, Vt., Hitchcock on the age of the brown coal deposit at 90
fossil fruit from, described by Lesquereux..... 91, 92
Lesley on the age of the lignites at.. 91
Hitchcock on the deposits at 91, 92
Brandon formation, character and extent of..... 90-94
Bridger group, Hayden on the position of the..... 117
White on the stratigraphical relations of the..... 123
Cope on the character of the..... 126
character, thickness, fauna, and position of.....141, 142, 145
Bridger and Green River groups, King on the relations of the..... 142
Buckley, S. B., on Eocene fossils..... 27, 28
reports on the geological and agricultural survey of Texas by 35
Buhrstone, area and character of, in South Carolina..... 51, 52
section of, at Aiken, S. C 52
character and extent of the deposits in Alabama 61, 62
in Mississippi 66
in Arkansas..... 75
in the Gulf province 87, 88

C.

California, controversy between Gabb and Conrad on the age of the formations in..... 96, 97
description of a new group of fossils from, by Conrad 96
Whitney on the characteristics of the Eocene in 96
name "Tejon group" proposed by Whitney for Gabb's Cretaceous in 96
Dana on the age of the Tejon group.. 96
Heilprin on the age of the Tejon group 96, 99
Newberry on the age of the Tejon group 96
Marcou on the age of the Chico-Tejon series 96, 99
character of the deposits at Fort Tejon 101
Becker on the character of the strata at Mount Diablo 103
character of the Tejon series in Contra Costa County 103
character of the deposits at New Idria 102
Camden series, Arkansas, character and section of the 74, 75
Campbell, J. L. and H. D., on Eocene geology 36

Page.

Carolina-Georgia province, character of the deposits in 87
Chattahoochee River, buhrstone on 61
Chester, F. D., on the Cretaceous near Appoquinimink Creek, Delaware. 43
Chico beds, Becker on conformity of, with later deposits..... 99
ammonitic forms from 108
Cretaceous age of..... 108
fossils cited by Marcou as evidence of Tertiary age of 109
Chico-Tejon series, Marcou on the age of..99, 108
White on the age of 99
White on the commingling of species in the..... 106
fossils common to both divisions of.. 109
Claiborne, Ala., I. Lea on fossil shells from 21
Conrad on the section at..... 21
equivalence of the beds at Fort Washington, Md., with those at 21
Lyell on the section at..... 26
Claiborne Bluff, Ala., sections of 62-64
Claiborne group, character of..... 62
detailed sections in Alabama..... 62-64
in Mississippi 66
in Arkansas 75
in the Gulf province 87, 88
Clark, W. B., cited on Eocene of Maryland 44, 45
on the section at Acquia Creek, Virginia..... 47
on intermingling of Eocene and cretaceous fossils in North Carolina. 49
on section at Shell Bluff, Georgia 55
Cleveland, Parker, on the limits of the "alluvial formation" 18
Coastal plain, position of the Eocene in.. 38
Colorado, Cope on Tertiary fishes from.. 118
Hayden on the correlation of the coal-bearing beds of the Laramie plains and 120
Scudder on the Tertiary lake basin at Florissant..... 125
Eldridge and Cross on deposits near Denver..... 129, 135-137
the Puerco beds of southwestern..... 137
occurrence of Green River group in .. 140
Amyzon beds in..... 141
section of the Huerfano beds of 142, 143
position of the Arapaho beds of 145
position of the Denver beds of 145
Conrad, T. A., on the geology and fossils of Maryland 21, 44
on the Eocene formations of the Southern States 21
on the fossil shells of the North American Tertiary..... 21
on the Atlantic Tertiary region 22
on the position of the Zeuglodon or Basilosaurus of Harlan 23
on Tertiary shells 23
on Eocene fossils 27, 28, 29, 31
on the Atlantic Tertiary and its fossils 24, 25

Page.

Conrad, T. A., on *Aturia ziczac* from the upper marl bed of New Jersey 28
on the correlation of the "limestone" of Florida 28
on the strata at San Domingo and Vicksburg (Miss) 29
table of the order of succession of the Eocene groups by 29
correlation of the upper marl bed of New Jersey with southern lignites by 32
proposes name "Shell Bluff group" for certain southern Eocene strata characterized by *Ostrea georgiana* 32
on the Eocene lignitic formations of the United States 32
on the section at Shark River, New Jersey 32
contributions to the history of the life of the Eocene by 34
classificatory list of fossils published by 34
new Eocene fossils from North Carolina described by 35
marls of the upper marl bed of New Jersey, referred to the Eocene by 40
Eocene organic remains from South Carolina described by 50
recognition of Eocene strata in Florida by 55
on the age of the Zeugodon and Orbitoides 65
description of fossils from Jackson, Miss, by 68
on the stratigraphical position of the Vicksburg group 69
on the Eocene in New Jersey 80
comparison of American and European fossils by 89
description of fossils from Southern California by 96
controversy with Gabb on the age of the formations in California 96, 97
fossils from Astoria, Oregon, described by 96

Cook, George H., on the Eocene marls of New Jersey 30–33
annual reports of the New Jersey State Survey by 37
blue marl of New Jersey described by 44
on the unconformity of the upper marl bed to the Cretaceous 41
on the stratigraphical sequence of the deposits of the upper marl bed 41

Cooper, J. G., on the Eocene in California 98

Cope, E. D., contributions to the history of the life of the Eocene by 34
vertebrate fossils from the blue marl of the Upper Marl bed, New Jersey described by 43
on the age of the Lignitic deposits 114, 117, 118

Page.

Cope, E. D., description of Tertiary fishes from Colorado by 118
on fossil vertebrates from the Eocene of Wyoming 118
on the age of the Fort Union and Bitter Creek series 118, 119
on the character and age of the Puerco group 119, 122, 127, 129, 137, 138
on the occurrence of forms common to the Fort Union and Judith River deposits 119
on the vertebrates collected by Dawson on the Canadian boundary .. 119
on the geological position of the Laramie group 124, 127
on the Amyzon Tertiary beds of Nevada 125
on the Manti beds of Utah 125, 141
on the character of the Puerco, Wasatch, Bridger, and Uinta groups 126
on the relations and age of the Puerco and Laramie deposits 127, 129
on the age of the Puerco group .. 127, 137, 138
division of the Eocene into four groups by 129
on the vertebrate life of the Wasatch group 139
on the vertebrate fauna of the Wind River group 125, 140, 141
on the age of the Amyzon beds 141
on the vertebrate life of the Bridger group 142
on the vertebrate fauna of the Uinta group 143

Cornelius, Elias, on the limits of the "alluvial formation" of the Mississippi 19

Correlation of Eocene deposits, difficulties of 16
in Atlantic and Gulf coast region 79–85
in Pacific coast region 108–110
in Interior region 144–146

Cotting, J. R., on the Tertiary deposits of Burke and Richmond Counties, Georgia 23, 24

Couper, J. H., on the stratigraphy of local areas 28

Croom, H. B., on the Tertiary fossils of Craven County, N. C 22

Cross, C. Whitman, acknowledgment to 13
the deposits in the vicinity of Denver, Colo 129
on the Denver beds 136, 137

Cucullaea gigantea, horizon of 45

D.

Dall, W. H., acknowledgment to 13
contributions to Eocene geology by. 36
on the limits of the Eocene deposits in Florida 56

Dana, J. D., on the age of the Tejon group 98
Wilkes exploring expedition conducted by 96

Darton, N. H., contributions to Eocene geology by 36

Page.

Darton, N. H., discovery of *Cardita planicosta* in Delaware by 43
on the existence of the Eocene in Delaware 43
on the horizon of *Cucullæa gigantea* .. 45
on the extent and character of the Eocene deposits in Virginia 46, 47
Dawson, G. M., on the age of the Fort Union beds 119
Delaware, J. C. Booth on the geology of 23, 43
Chester on the Cretaceous of 43
Darton on the Eocene of 43
Heilprin on the Eocene of 43
Denver beds, area and character of the .. 136
Cross on the origin of the 137
fossil flora from the 137
position of the 145
Desor, E., on the equivalence of the American and European Tertiary 29
Dickson, John, on the geology of parts of North and South Carolina 19
Dinosaurian remains from Arapaho beds 136
Ducatel, J., on the Tertiary area of Maryland 23
Dutton, C. E., on the Eocene, in the Grand Canyon district 126

E.

Eldridge, G. H., on the deposits in the vicinity of Denver, Colo 129
on the Arapaho beds. 135, 136
Emmons, E., on the Eocene of North Carolina 30
Emmons, S. F., on the structural relations of the interior Eocene 130
Emmons, S. F., and Hague, Arnold, on the age of the Laramie formation 121
Eocene groups of the Northwest characterized by 121, 124
Endlich, F. M., on the Puerco beds 122, 137
on the geology of the Sweetwater region 124
Eocene, limitations and divisions of 15, 16
first application of term to American deposits by I. Lea 21
European and American Eocene, correlation of 16, 88, 89

F.

Featherstonhaugh, G. W, on the early Tertiary strata in Arkansas 24
Finch, John, on the correlation of the American Tertiary formations .. 19, 20
reference to Maryland Tertiary by ... 44
Florida, Charles U. Shepard on the Eocene localities of 22
Maj. Henry Whiting on the geology of 24
Conrad on the correlation of the "limestone" in 28
Conrad on the Eocene of 28
J. W. Bailey on silicified Polythalamia in 29
Tuomey on the age of the Tampa Bay limestone of 29

Page.

Florida, limits of the Eocene deposits in 56, 57, 82
fossils of the Eocene deposits of 57
Johnson on the Nummulitic in 57, 82, 83
Florissant, Colo., Amyzon beds at 141
Fontaine, W. M., on early Tertiary stratigraphy 34, 35
Fort Union beds, character and fossils of 113
flora of, described by Newberry 114
Newberry on the age of 116, 135
G. M. Dawson on the age of 119
Meek on the age of 120
Ward on the age of 135
correlated with the Wasatch by White 122
Cope on the age of 118, 119
Fort Union and Judith River deposits, Cope on the occurrence of identical forms in 119
Fort Union and Laramie group, White on the identity of the 135
Fort Washington, Maryland, section at .. 45
Fossils, early recognition of importance of 17, 18
from Eocene of New Jersey, Florida, and Mississippi, described by Conrad 28
(Zeuglodon) described by Harlan 27, 28
from Shark River, New Jersey, described by Conrad 32
from the blue marl of the Upper Marl bed, New Jersey, described by Whitfield (list) 42
(vertebrate species) from the Blue marl of the Upper Marl bed, New Jersey, described by Marsh and Cope (list) 43
from the Eocene of Maryland (list) .. 45
from the Eocene of the eastern shore of the Chesapeake (list) 45
from the Eocene of Virginia (list) .. 48
from the Santee beds, South Carolina, described by M. Tuomey (list) 53
from the Ashley and Cooper beds, described by Tuomey 53
from the Bells Landing group of the Lignitic in Alabama 60
from the Claiborne beds, Mississippi 68
(Zeuglodon) in the Jackson group, Mississippi 69
from the Vicksburg group 70, 76
(plants) from Columbus and Wickliffe, Ky., described by Lesquereux 72
(molluscan forms) from the Lignitic of Kentucky, described by Heilprin 72, 73
from the Eocene of South Carolina 81, 82
comparison of American and European Eocene 89
from Brandon, Vt 92
from the Eocene of California, described by Conrad 96
from the Eocene of Oregon, described by Conrad 96

Page.

Fossils from the Eocene of Oregon, described by Shumard 96
(Cardita planicosta) from Oregon, described by White 99
referred to the Tejon group 104, 105
common to the Chico and Tejon groups 106
from the Puget group 108
(vertebrates) from Wyoming, described by Cope 118
(plants) of the Interior region, cited by Ward 129, 130
from the Wasatch group 139
(vertebrates) from the Wind River group 140, 141
(insects) from the Amyzon beds at Florissant, Colo 141
(vertebrates) from the Uinta group 143

G.

Gabb, W. M., on Eocene fossils 31
controversy with Conrad on the age of the formations in California .. 96, 97
list of fossils referred to the Tejon group by 104, 105
list of fossils common to the Chico and Tejon groups 106
Gardner, J. S., contributions to Eocene geology by 36
Georgia, John Finch on deposits at Shell Bluff and Savannah River, in 19
T. A. Conrad on the section at Shell Bluff, Savannah River, in 21
Charles U. Shepard on the Eocene localities of 22
J. R. Cotting on the Tertiary deposits of Burke and Richmond counties. 23, 24
James T. Hodge on the Secondary and Tertiary formations in 24
correlation of the limestone of the Savannah River, with that of Florida, by Conrad 28
Joseph Jones on the Tertiary lime formations of 33
M. F. Stevenson on the geology and mineralogy of 35
reports of George Little, State geologist of 35
outline of the main features of the Eocene of, by T. P. Janes 35
J. T. Henderson on the boundaries and general character of the Eocene belt in 37
character and extent of the Eocene deposits in 54, 55
D. W. Langdon, jr., on the section on the Chattahoochee River, in 55
Dr. Jones on the shell marl of Washington and Jefferson counties 55
section at Shell Bluff, Savannah River, in 55
divisions of the Eocene in 82
the Brandon formation in 90
Bibikov on the discovery of lignite in Richmond County 92
section near Berzelia, Richmond County 94

Page.

Gibbes, R. W., description of new fossils by 28
on the character and geological horizon of the Zeuglodon 28
Gilbert, G. K., letter of transmittal by .. 9, 10
Grand Canyon district, Dutton on the Eocene in the 126
Great Carolina bed, M. Tuomey on 27
designated by Ruffin 27, 51
Great Lignite group, Hayden and Meek and Hayden on the age of 112, 113
southern extension of 114
Green River, section of the Eocene at, by Powell 119, 120
Green River coal basin, age of 115
Green River district, Peale on the 125
Green River group, White on the stratigraphical relations of 123
extent, character, fauna, and age of the 140
position of the 144, 145
Green River and Wind River groups, equivalence of the 144
Gulf Province, geographical extent of .. 87
Lower Eocene in 87
Middle Eocene in 87, 88
Upper Eocene in 88

H.

Hague, Arnold, and Emmons, S. F., localities of Eocene groups in Utah, Nevada, and Wyoming mentioned by 121
on the age of the Laramie formation. 121
Eocene groups of the Northwest characterized by 124
Hale, C. L., on the stratigraphy of local areas 28
on the position of the Zeuglodon 65
Hammond, H., on resources, etc., of South Carolina 37
Harlan, R., Zeuglodon described as a saurian (Basilosaurus) by 27
Harper, L., on the geology of Mississippi. 31
Hayden, F. V., map of the limits of the "Great Lignitic Tertiary Basin" prepared by 112, 113
on the great lignitic deposit 112, 113, 114
on the age of the Washakie group and Green River shales 115
on the coal beds of the Laramie plains 116, 120
on the Tertiary basin of southern Wyoming 117
on the Washakie group 117
on the character of the Wind River group 140
on the Bridger group 142
Hayden, H. H., on the geology of the Coastal plain 18
Heilprin, Angelo, acknowledgment to 13
contributions to Eocene geology by. 34, 36
on the general features of Eocene stratigraphy 37
on the existence of the Eocene in Delaware 42

Page.

Heilprin, Angelo, correlation of the Ashley and Cooper beds with the Jackson group by 53
on the limits of the Eocene deposits in Florida 56
molluscan forms from the lignitic of Kentucky described by 72, 73
on the stratigraphical relations of the deposits in Texas 77
on the Eocene in Texas 84
on American and European Eocene fossils 89
on the age of the Tejon group, California 98, 99
Heinrich, O. J., on early Tertiary stratigraphy 34, 35
Hematite ore beds, age of 90
Henderson, J. T., on the boundaries and general character of the Eocene belt in Georgia 37
Hickman group, in Kentucky 71, 72
Hilgard, E. W., on the position of Shell Bluff group 32
on the Orbitoides limestone and the Vicksburg group of fossils 32
detailed observations on the geology of Mississippi by 33
reports on the geology of Louisiana by 33, 34
on the age of the lignite deposits of the Gulf States 34
contributions to Eocene geology by 36
on the position of the Zeuglodon 65
on the geology of Mississippi 66, 67
generalized section of the deposits in Mississippi by 67
on the character of the lignitic strata west of the "Flatwoods," Mississippi 67, 68
on the Claiborne bed in Mississippi and its fossils 68
on the stratigraphical position of the Vicksburg group 69
section at Vicksburg Bluff, Mississippi, given by 70
on the Mansfield group in Louisiana 76
on the importance of *Ostrea georgiana* 82
on the presence of orbitoides in the Jackson group 82
Hill, R. T., contributions to Eocene geology by 36
report on the Neozoic formations of Arkansas by 37
on the Lignitic formation (Camden series) in Arkansas 74
on the character of the deposits of the "Cleveland County red lands," Arkansas 75
on the Eocene in Texas 84
Hills, R. C., section of the Huerfano beds, Colorado 142, 143
Hitchcock, C. H., on early Tertiary stratigraphy 34, 35
Hitchcock, Edward, on the presence of "plastic clay formation" on Marthas Vineyard and the Elizabeth Islands 20

Page.

Hitchcock, Edward, on the Tertiary strata of Marthas Vineyard 25
on the lignitic strata of the eastern United States 90
on the deposits at Brandon, Vt. 91, 92, 93
Hodge, James T., on the secondary and Tertiary formations of the southern Atlantic States 24
on the iron-ore deposits of western New England 90
Holmes, F. S., on the stratigraphy of local areas 28
on Eocene fossils 29
Hotchkiss, Jed., on the Tertiary geology of Virginia 35
Hopkins, F. V., annual reports on the geology of Louisiana by 35
Huerfano beds, character, extent, fauna and position of 142, 143, 145

I.

Illinois, the Eocene in 75, 83
Interior region, historical review of the literature of 111–131
conditions of deposition of the Eocene in 131, 132, 144–146
table showing relative position of Eocene groups in 146

J.

Jackson group, table showing geological position of, by Conrad 29
Hilgard on the orbitolite limestone of 32
in Alabama, character, extent, and fossils of 64–66
named by Conrad 68
in Mississippi, character, extent, and fossils of the 69
limits of the deposits in Louisiana 76
Hilgard on the presence of orbitoides in the 82
Janes, T. P., outline of the main features of the Eocene in Georgia by 35
Johnson, L. C., contributions to Eocene geology by 36
on the limits of the Eocene in Florida 56
on the nummulitic formation in Florida 57, 82
Johnson, L. C., and Smith, E. A., on the character of the lignite beds in Alabama 56
detailed section of Claiborne group, Alabama 63, 64
detailed description of subdivisions of the White limestone in Alabama 65, 66
Jones, Joseph, on the Tertiary lime formations of Georgia and their fossils. 33
on the shell marl of Washington and Jefferson Counties, Ga 55
Judith River deposits, Leidy on the age of the 112
Meek and Meek & Hayden on the age of the 112, 113, 120
correlated with the Laramie by White 122

Page.

Judith River and Fort Union deposits, Cope on the occurrence of identical forms in 119

K.

Kentucky, reports of the geological survey of 31
reports by N S. Shaler on the geology of 35, 36
extent of the Eocene exposures in..28, 71, 83
division of the series by Loughridge 71
character of the Hickman deposits in- 72
extent of the Lignitic in..... 72
fossil leaves from Columbus and Wickliffe described by Lesquereux 72
Loughridge on the age of the deposits at Hickman 72
Loughridge on the character of the Lignitic in (section)..... 72
Molluscan forms from the Lignitic of, described by Heilprin..... 72, 73
Kerr. W. C., on the Eocene in North Carolina 35, 49
contributions to Eocene geology by.. 35, 36
King, Clarence, on the age and relations of the coal-bearing strata of the Green River coal basin..... 115
on the stratigraphical relations of the Wasatch and Laramie groups.... 139
on the position of the Green River groups 142
on the Amyzon beds..... 141
on the relations of the Bridger and Green River groups..... 142
on the Uinta group (Browns Park group of Powell)..... 143
Kitchell, William, reports of the State geological survey of New Jersey by 30

L.

La Grange group, Tennessee, correlation of with the Appomattox formation 71
Langdon, D. W., jr., contributions to Eocene geology by..... 36
on the section at the Chattahoochee River 55
on the continuation of the Lignitic into the Chattahoochee drainage . 60
occurrence of the buhrstone in the Chattahoochee noted by 61
on the Claiborne group on the Chattahoochee River..... 64
Laramie formation, Hague and Emmons on the age of 121
Laramie group, correlated with the Judith River beds by White 122
Cope on the position of..... 124
Lesquereux on the age of..... 124, 127
White on the 123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 128
Neumayr on the position of 127
Ward on the age of the..... 128
Cope on the age of..... 129
Ward on the types of the flora of the. 129

Page.

Laramie group, White on its relations to earlier and later formations..... 129
discussion of Newberry's paper on the, by Ward 130
Newberry on the 130
character, extent, and age of the....132–135
position of the..... 144
Laramie and Fort Union groups, White on the identity of the..... 135
Laramie Plains, Hayden on the age of the coal beds of..... 116–120
Lea, Henry C., on Eocene fossils from Alabama 21, 24
Lea, I., on the Tertiary of the Atlantic and Gulf coast 21
description of new fossils by 28
comparison of American and European fossils by..... 89
Le Conte, J. D., on the age of the lignitic deposits of Raton Pass, New Mexico..... 114
Le Conte, Joseph, on the formation of Florida..... 30, 56
Leidy, J., on vertebrate remains from South Carolina 34
on the age of the Judith River deposits 112
Lesley, J. P., on the age of the lignites at Brandon, Vt., and Chambersburg, Pa 91
Lesquereux, L., contributions to the history of the life of the Eocene, by. 34
description of fossil leaves from Columbus, and Wickliffe, Ky., by... 72
fossil fruit at Brandon, Vt., described by 91, 92
on the age of the lignitic strata 117, 119
on the age of the coal-bearing series..117, 118
on the lignite deposits of Wyoming.. 118
on the age of the Laramie group 124, 127
Lewis, H. C., on the discovery of lignite in Montgomery County, Pa 91
on the age of the lignite iron ores 92
section of the lignite deposits at Marble Hall, Montgomery County, Pa., by 93
description of Ecoene deposits near Berzelia, Richmond County, Ga., by 94
Lieber, Oscar M., descriptions of the stratigraphy of South Carolina, by... 30, 50
Lignitic deposits, Tennessee 32, 34, 71, 83
Gulf States 34
Alabama..... 58–61, 83
Arkansas 34, 74, 75, 83
Mississippi 67, 68, 83
Kentucky..... 71–73, 83
Illinois 73, 83
Missouri 73, 74, 83
Louisiana 76–89
Texas 78, 84
correlation of Atlantic coast deposits with 80–82
Gulf province 87, 88
Vermont, Pensylvania and Georgia (the Brandon formation) .....

Page.

Lister, G., on the character and geological position of the Zeuglodon..... 28
Little, George, on the Eocene of Georgia. 35, 54
Loughridge, R. H., Nanafalia marl considered Claiborne by..... 60
on the character and subdivisions of the Eocene in Kentucky..... 71, 72
on the character of the Tertiary in Illinois..... 73
on the general boundaries of Eocene in Texas..... 77
Louisiana, annual reports on the geology of, by F. V. Hopkins..... 35
Eocene boundaries in..... 38, 39
localities and character of the Eocene deposits in.....75, 76, 84
Lyell, Charles, on American Tertiary stratigraphy..... 25
on the lithological similarity of the New Jersey Cretaceous to the Eocene and Miocene farther south.. 25
on the Tertiary strata of Marthas Vineyard..... 25
on the character of the Eocene in the southern Atlantic States..... 26
on the Miocene Tertiary strata of Maryland, Virginia, North and South Carolina..... 26
on the geologic position of the Zeuglodon..... 26, 65
on the section at Claiborne, Ala..... 26

M.

Macfarlane, M., geological railway guide 35
Maclure, William, classification adopted by..... 18
Manti, beds, description of..... 141
Marcou, Jules, Conrad's position on the age of the California formations sustained by..... 98
on the age and fauna of the Chico-Tejon series.....99, 109
Marl, analysis of, by Cook..... 33
Marsh, O. C., on Eocene fossils..... 31
contributions to the history of the life of the Eocene by..... 34
vertebrate fossils from the Blue marl of the Upper Marl bed of New Jersey described by..... 43
on the age of the lignitic deposits of the Rocky Mountains.....116, 121
separation of the Eocene into four divisions by.....121, 128
Marthas Vineyard, Edward Hitchcock on the Tertiary strata of..... 20, 25
Lyell on the Tertiary strata of..... 25
Marvine, A. R., on the thickness of the Middle Park beds, Colorado..... 137
Maryland, G. Troost on the stratigraphy of the region about Magothy River, Anne Arundel County in.. 20
James Pierce on the marls of..... 20
I. Lea on the equivalence of the Claiborne beds to those at Fort Washington in..... 21
Conrad on the geology and fossils of. 21

Page.

Maryland, Conrad on the section at Fort Washington in..... 21
J. T. Ducatel on the Tertiary area of. 23
Lyell on the Miocene Tertiary strata of..... 26
notice of Tertiary in reports of Higgins, State agricultural chemist.. 30
presence of lignite horizon in, between Cretaceous and Eocene claimed by Conrad..... 32
reports of the State geological survey of, by Philip Tyson..... 33
distance from the coast line and width of the Eocene exposures in. 38
character and fossils of Eocene deposits in.....43, 45, 80
section at Fort Washington..... 45
correlation of Eocene deposits in..... 80
Maryland-Virginia province, character of deposits in..... 86
Massachusetts, Whitney on the age of the hematite ore in..... 90, 91
Mather, W. W., on the geological reconnoissance of Kentucky, in 1838..... 24
Maury, M. F., reference to Eocene stratigraphy of Virginia by..... 33
McCrady, J., results of observations on the Eocene by..... 30
McGee, W. J., contributions to Eocene geology by..... 36
on the occurrence of the Eocene on the Nottoway River, Virginia..... 46
the LaGrange group of Safford correlated with the Appomattox formation by.....71
Meek, F. B., on the age of the Fort Union beds..... 120
on the age of the Green River coal basin.....115, 116
on the age of the Bear River beds...115, 116
on the age of the Judith River beds.. 120
on the age of the Wind River group.. 120
Meek & Hayden, on the age of the lignite deposits of the Upper Missouri River..... 112
on the age of the Judith River deposits.....112, 113
fourfold division of the Tertiary formations of the Northwest by..... 113
on the age and character of the Fort Union (Great Lignite) group..... 113
on the character of the Wind River deposits..... 113
section of the Tertiary formations of the Northwest.....113, 114
Mell, P. H., contributions to Eocene geology by..... 36
Meyer, Otto, on the order of succession of the Tertiary formations of the Gulf States..... 36
comparison of American and European fossils by..... 89
Middle Park beds, Colorado, description of..... 137

Page.
Miller, S. A., contributions to Eocene geology by 36
Mills's statistics, the geology of South Carolina in 20
Mississippi, contributions to the Tertiary geology of, by Conrad 28, 29
table showing the geological position of the Jackson group in 29, 30
Harper on the geology of 31
Wailes's report on the geology of .. 31
presence of lignite horizon between Cretaceous and Eocene in, claimed by Conrad 32
division of the early Tertiary into four groups in 33
observations on the geology of, by Hilgard 33
extent of Eocene exposures in 38
area, character, fossils, and subdivisions of the Eocene of 66–70
generalized section of the deposits in 67
correlation of Eocene deposits in 83
Mississippi River, Elias Cornelius on the limits of the "alluvial formation" on 19
Missouri, area and character of the Eocene deposits in 73, 74, 83
Missouri River region, Meek and Hayden on the age of the deposits in the 112
Mitchell, Elisha, on the shell deposits of South Carolina 20
Morton, S. G., description of new fossils by 22, 26, 28
comparison of American and European fossils by 89
Mount Diablo, California, character of strata at 103
Murchison, R. I., on the older Tertiary strata of America 26

N.

Nanafalia or Coal Bluff section of the Lignitic in Alabama 59, 60
Neocene, character of 39, 40
Neumayr, M., on the position of the Laramie group 127
Nevada, Hague and Emmons on the Eocene formations in 121
Amyzon beds in 125, 141
Newberry, J. S., on the age of the Tejon group of California 98
plant remains from the Puget group described by 108
on the flora and age of the Fort Union beds 114, 116, 135
on the age of the Green River shales 117
Puerco group referred to the Cretaceous by 120
on the Laramie group 130
New Jersey, James Pierce on the marl deposits of 19
John Finch on the Tertiary deposits of 19
Samuel Akerly on the "alluvial formation" of 19

Page.
New Jersey, similarity of the greensand beds of, to those of Virginia, mentioned by W. B. Rogers 22, 23
H. D. Rogers on the marls of Monmouth County, in 23
Correlation by Conrad of the Eocene deposits of, with the deposits of the Southern States 25, 32
Lyell on the lithological similarity of the Cretaceous of, to the Eocene and Miocene farther south 25
Conrad on *Aturia sicsac* from the Upper Marl bed of 28
Cook on the marl beds of 30, 33
Conrad on fossil remains in 32
Conrad on the section at Shark River 32
Cook on the character and areal distribution of the Eocene in 33
Whitfield on the Brachiopoda and Lamellibranchiata from Monmouth County 37
localities, character, and fossils of the Eocene in 38, 40, 41, 80, 85, 86
lists of Eocene fossils from 42, 43
Conrad on the Eocene in 80
New Mexico, Le Conte on the age of the lignitic deposits of 114
the Laramie group in 132
the Puerco beds in 138, 145
North Carolina, John Dickson on the geology of 19
Dennison Olmsted on the geology of. 20
H. B. Croom on the Tertiary fossils of 22
James T. Hodge on the Secondary and Tertiary formations in 24
Lyell on the Miocene Tertiary strata of 26
M. Tuomey on the character and age of the marl in 27
Emmons on the Eocene of 30
Conrad on the Tertiary in 35
Kerr on the limits of the Eocene in .. 35, 49
chapters on geology in the Handbook of 37
extent and character of the Eocene deposits in 35, 38, 48–50, 81
commingling of Cretaceous and Eocene fossils in 50

O.

Olmsted, Dennison, on the geology of North Carolina 20
Orbitoides limestone of Florida 29
Oregon, description by Conrad and Shumard, Tertiary fossils from 96
White on the occurrence of *Cardita planicosta* in 99
localities of the Tejon strata in 103
White on the age of the deposits at Astoria in 105
Amyzon beds in 141
Ostrea georgiana, occurrence of, at Shell Bluff, Savannah River 32
Horizon of 54
Owen, D. D., on the Eocene of Arkansas. 31, 75

Page.

Owen, R., on the mammalian character of the Zeuglodon (Basilosaurus of Harlan) 27, 28

P.

Pacific coast region, two divisions of Eocene of 95
historical review of the literature of ..96-100
Peale, A. C., on the age of the lignitic strata of Colorado and of the Judith River beds 120
on the age of the Laramie, Wasatch, Green River, and Bridger groups. 125
on the Amyzon beds at Florissant, Colo 141
Pennsylvania, lignite deposits in 91, 92, 93
section of the lignite deposits at Marble Hall, Montgomery County, in. 93
Penrose, R. A. F., jr., on the Gulf Tertiary area 37
on the Tertiary deposits of Texas..77, 78, 84
Pierce, James, on the marls of New Jersey, Maryland, and Virginia..... 19, 20
"Plastic clay formation" on Martha's Vineyard and the Elizabeth Islands, reported by Edward Hitchcock 20
Porter, S., on the shell deposits of Alabama 20
Prime, F., jr., on the lignite of Lehigh County, Pa 91
Powell, J. W., section of the Eocene at Green River, described by.....119, 120
on the Brown's Park group (Uinta group of King) 143
Powell, J. W., and White, C. A., discussion of the Bitter Creek series by .120, 121
Puerco beds, Cope on the....119, 122, 126, 127, 129, 137, 138
Endlich on the.....122, 137
area, age, character, thickness, and fauna of the.....119, 120, 126, 137, 138, 145
referred to the Cretaceous by Newberry 120
Puget group, White on the..... 100
Willis on the..... 107
area, character, and fauna of.....107, 108
section at Puget Sound of..... 107
plant remains from, examined by Prof. Newberry 108
age of the..... 110

R.

Ravenel, Edmund, on Eocene fossils from South Carolina.....24, 27, 29, 50
Roemer, Ferd. on the Eocene of Texas..29, 31, 76, 77
Rogers, H. D., on the marls of Monmouth County, N. J..... 23
outline of opinions regarding American Tertiary formations by..... 27
on the character and geological position of the Zeuglodon..... 28
Rogers, William B., on the Eocene of Virginia 22, 30, 46-48

Page.

Rogers, W. B. and H. D., on the Tertiary formations of Virginia..... 23
Ruffin, Edmund, on the "Great Carolina bed" and the Eocene of South Carolina 27, 50, 51
on the character and fossils of the Eocene marls..... 29

S.

Safford, J. M., on the Eocene of Tennessee 30, 31-32, 34, 70, 71
St. John, O., on the Wind River Eocene . 125
St. Stephens Bluff, Ala., Withers on the geology of 21
Santee beds, character of..... 52, 53
Say, Thomas, on fossil shells..... 21
reference to Maryland Tertiary by.. 44
Scudder, Samuel, on the Tertiary lake basin of Florissant, Colo 125, 141
Scott, William B., on the Bridger group. 142
on the mammalian types of the Uinta group 143
Shaler, N. S., on early Tertiary stratigraphy 34, 35
reports on the geology of Kentucky by 35, 36
Shell Bluff, Ga., character of the deposits at 54, 55
section at..... 55
Shell Bluff group, Hilgard on the position of 32
name proposed by Conrad..... 32, 54
characteristic fossil of..... 54
Shepard, Charles U., on the Eocene of Alabama, Georgia, and Florida.. 22
Shumard, Dr., on the lignite brown coal of eastern and middle Texas..... 31
on fossils from Astoria, Oregon..... 96
Smith, E. A., divisions of the Eocene in Alabama, by..... 35
continued contributions to Eocene geology, by 36
reports of the Geological Survey of Alabama, by..... 37
on the limits of the Eocene deposits in Florida..... 56
on the separation of the Lignitic group from the Buhrstone 58, 59
section of Claiborne Bluff, Alabama, by 62, 63
Smith, E. A., and Johnson, L. C., divisions of the Alabama deposits, established by..... 58
on the character and divisions of the Lignitic in Alabama 58, 59
on the separation of the buhrstone of Alabama from the Lignitic group. 61
detailed section of the Claiborne group, Alabama..... 63, 64
on the general features of the White limestone in Alabama..... 65
detailed description of subdivisions of the White limestone in Alabama..... 65, 66
South Carolina, John Dickson on the geology of..... 19

Page.
South Carolina, John Finch on Tertiary deposits of 19
the geology of, in Mills's statistics... 20
Elisha Mitchell on the shell deposits of 20
Conrad on the section at Eutaw Springs in 21
Dr. Morton on the fossils from the "White limestone" of..... 22
Edmund Ravenel on Eocene fossils from 24
James T. Hodge on the Secondary and Tertiary formations in 24
Lyell on the Miocene Tertiary strata of 26
Edmund Ruffin on the "Great Carolina bed" of 27
Tuomey on the age of the Eocene formations in 27
three divisions of the Eocene formations of, proposed by Tuomey... 28, 51
annual reports of the State Geologist of, Oscar M. Lieber..... 30
presence of lignite horizon between the Cretaceous and Eocene, claimed by Conrad..... 32
H. Hammond on the geology of 37
area of Eocene exposures in..... 38
description of fossils from 50
area, character, subdivisions, and fossils of the Eocene in 50, 54, 81, 82
Stevenson, M. F., on the geology and mineralogy of Georgia 35
on inland boundary of the Eocene deposits in Georgia 54
Stevenson, J. J., on the age of the lignitic deposits of the Northwest 119
Sweetwater region, Endlich on the geology of the..... 124

T.

Tejon group, California, name proposed by Whitney 98
age of..... 98, 99
localities, character, extent, and age of the strata of the..100, 101, 108, 109, 110
character of the deposits in Contra Costa County, Cal..... 103
localities of, in Oregon 103
fossils referred to, by Gabb and White 104, 105
fossils from the Dwamish River, Washington, referred to..... 106
Marcou on fossil genera from the.... 109
Tennessee, G. Troost on the geology of.. 24
Safford on the lignite beds of 31, 34
extent of the Eocene deposits in.... 38, 70
area and character of Eocene in..70, 71, 83
Safford's subdivisions of the Eocene in 70, 71
Tertiary, twofold character of 16
Texas, Roemer on the Eocene of..... 29, 31
Shumard on the lignite brown coal of eastern and middle 31
reports of the Geological and Agricultural Survey of, by S. B. Buckley 35

Page.
Texas, Penrose on stratigraphical relations of the Eocene in Frst Annual Report of the Geological Survey..... 37
area, character, extent, and fossils of the Eocene of..... 76-79
correlation of Eocene deposits of.... 84
Trask, J. B., description of new species from Chico Creek, Cal., by 96
Troost, G., on the stratigraphy of the region about Magothy River, Anne Arundel County, Md..... 10
on the geology of eastern Tennessee. 24
Tuomey, M., on the Eocene stratigraphy of Virginia 24
on the character and divisions of the Eocene in North Carolina....27, 28, 50, 51
on the character and geological horizon of the Zeuglodon..... 28
on the Tampa Bay limestone..... 29
on Eocene fossils 29
on the extent, structure, and stratigraphy of the early Tertiary of Alabama 31
on localities and fossils of the Buhrstone in South Carolina..... 52
list of fossils from the Santee beds by 53
list of fossils from the Ashley and Cooper beds, by..... 53
on the Eocene of Florida..... 55
Turritella Mortoni, horizon of 45
Tyson, Philip T., on the Tertiary geology of Maryland 33, 44

U.

Uhler, P. R., contributions to Eocene geology by..... 36
characteristic fossils from the eastern shore of the Chesapeake reported by 45
on the horizon of *Cucullæa gigantea*.. 45
Uinta group, Cope on the character of the 126
named by King..... 143
White on the character and fossils of the 143
Scott on the mammalian types of the. 143
position of the 144, 145
Upper Marl bed of New Jersey, stratigraphical sequence of the deposits of 41
Upper Missouri River, Meek and Hayden on the age of the lignite deposits of 112
Utah, Hague and Emmons on Eocene groups in 121
Laramie group in 133
Bear River estuary in 135
Uinta group in 143
Cope on the Manti beds of 125, 141
Wasatch group in..... 139

V.

Van Rensselaer., Jer., on northern Tertiary series .....

Page.
Vanuxem, Lardner, on the limits of the Tertiary 20
Vermont, the Brandon formation in 90-93
Vicksburg group, position of the Orbitolite limestone in 30
in Florida 55, 57, 82
in Alabama 64, 66, 83
in Mississippi 69, 70, 76, 83
section at Vicksburg Bluff, Mississippi 70
in Louisiana 76, 84
Virginia, John Finch on the deposits of the James River in 19
James Pierce on the marls of 20
W. B. Rogers on the Tertiary geology of 22, 23
Lyell on the Miocene Tertiary strata of 26
Maury's physical survey of 33
Jed. Hotchkiss on the Tertiary geology of 35
area of Eocene exposures in 38
area, localities, character, and fossils of the Eocene in 46-48, 80, 81
section at Acquia Creek 47
list of Eocene fossils from 48
Vogdes, A. W., on early Tertiary stratigraphy 34, 35

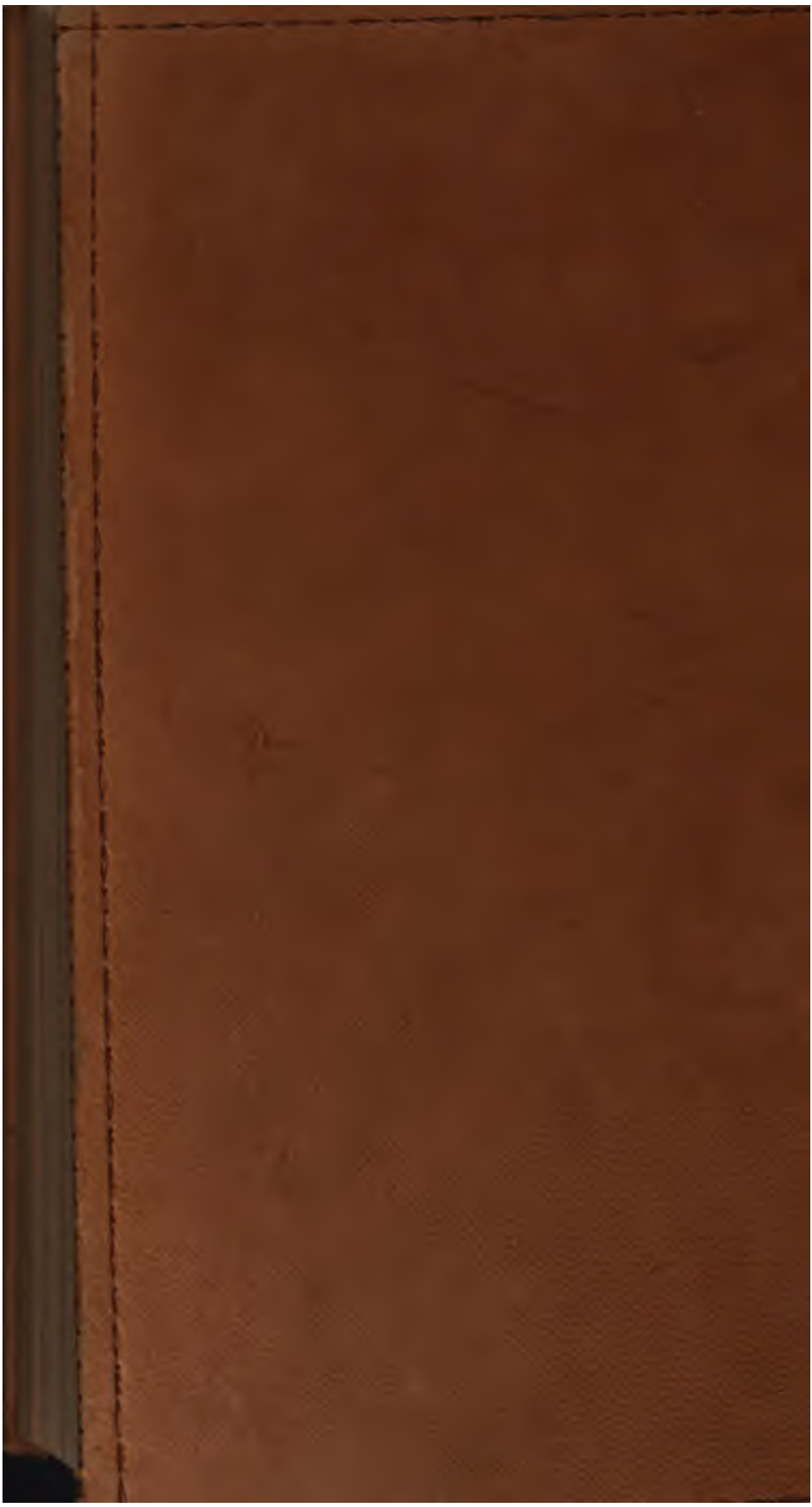
W.

Wailes, B. L. C., report on the geology of Mississippi 31
Ward, Lester F., on the flora and age of the Laramie group 128, 129
localities of fossil leaves from the Eocene of the interior region cited by 129, 130
discussion of Newberry's paper on the Laramie group by 130
list of identical species from the Laramie and Fort Union groups by 135
on the age of the Fort Union beds 135
Wasatch group, position of the ..117, 139, 144, 145
correlated with the Fort Union by White 122
White on the stratigraphical relations of the 123
Cope on the character of the 126
areas, relations, and fauna of the 139
position of the 144, 145
Washakie group, Hayden on the 117
Washington, localities of the Puget group in 100
White on the age of the Puget group in 100
Tejon species from Dwamish River in 106
the Puget group in 107, 108
White, C. A., contributions to Eocene geology by 36
on the presence of the Laramie in Texas 78
on the Puget group 95, 100
on the occurrence of *Cardita planicosta* in Oregon 99
on the age of the Chico-Tejon series .. 99

Page.
White, C. A., on the Chico-Tejon series, in the vicinity of New Idria 102
fossils referred to the Tejon group by 105
on the age of the deposits at Astoria, Oregon 105
on the commingling of species in the Chico-Tejon series 106
on the faunal similarities of the Puget and Laramie groups 110
Fort Union group correlated with the Wasatch by 122
Judith River beds correlated with the Laramie by 122
table of correlated general sections of the western formations by 122, 123
on the conflicting evidence afforded by the fauna and flora of the Laramie group 127-128
comparison of the Laramie Sea to the Caspian by 127
on the relation of the molluscan and fresh water Eocene faunas of the Laramie group 128
on the contemporaneous existence of Cretaceous and Tertiary faunas and floras 129
on the relations of the Laramie to earlier and later formations 129
on the Laramie group..123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 135, 139
on the stratigraphical relations of the Wasatch, Green River, and Bridger groups 123
on the appearance of mammalia in the beds overlying the Laramie 125
on the position of the deposits overlying the Laramie 126
on the identity of the Laramie and Fort Union groups 135
on the stratigraphical position of the Puerco beds 138
on the stratigraphical relations of the Wasatch and Laramie groups. 139
on the character of the Uinta group. 143
White, C. A., and Powell, J. W., discussion of the Bitter Creek series by . 120, 121
White limestone in Alabama, detailed description of 64-66
Whitfield, R. P., on Eocene fossils 31
on the Brachiopoda and Lamellibranchiata from Monmouth County, New Jersey 37
list of fossils from the Blue marl of the Upper Marl bed, New Jersey. 42
Whiting, Maj. Henry, on the geology of eastern Florida 24
Whitney, J. D., on the age of the hematite ore beds in western Massachusetts 90, 91
on the Tejon group 95, 98
on the characteristics of the Eocene in California 97
on the strata in Contra Costa County, California 103

Page.
Willis, Bailey, on the deposits in the vicinity of Puget Sound and on the east slope of the Cascade Mountains 99, 100, 107
Winchell, Alex., on the Eocene of Alabama 30, 36
Wind River beds, of Wyoming, Cope on the character of the 125
character of the 115
Meek on the age of the 120
St. John on the character of the 125
age, character, and fauna of the 140, 141, 144, 145
Wind River and Green River groups, equivalence of the 144
Withers, R. W., on the geology of St. Stephens Bluff, Alabama 21
Worthen, A. H., on the extent of the Eocene strata in Illinois 73
Wyman, Jeffries, on the character and geological horizon of the Zeuglodon 28
Wyoming, Hayden on the Tertiary basin of 117
Cope on fossil vertebrates from 118
Lesquereux on the lignite deposits of 118
Hague and Emmons on Eocene groups in 121
Cope on the Wind River beds of 125
Page.
Wyoming, Laramie group in 133
Wasatch group in 139
Green River group in 140
Bridger group in 141, 142
Uinta group in 143

Z.

Zeuglodon, Conrad on the geologic position of 23
Lyell on the geologic position of 26, 65
described as a saurian (Basilosaurus) by Harlan 27
mammalian character of 27, 28
Buckley on the character and horizon of 28
Gibbes on the character and horizon of 28
Rogers on the character and horizon of 28
Tuomey on the character and horizon of 28
Wyman on the character and horizon of 28
Hale on the position of 65
Hilgard on the position of 65
from the Jackson group 69, 76

O